21562

A

NEW SYSTEM OF GEOGRAPHY:

IN WHICH IS GIVEN,

A General Account of the SITUATION and LIMITS, the MANNERS, HISTORY, and CONSTITUTION, of the ſeveral KINGDOMS and STATES in the known World;

And a very particular Deſcription of their *Subdiviſions* and *Dependencies*; their *Cities* and *Towns*, *Forts*, *Sea-ports*, *Produce*, *Manufactures* and *Commerce*.

By A. F. BUSCHING, D. D.

Profeſſor of Philoſophy in the Univerſity of GOTTINGEN, and Member of the Learned Society at DUISBURG.

Carefully Tranſlated from the laſt Edition of the GERMAN Original.

To the Author's Introductory Diſcourſe are added three *Eſſays* relative to the Subject.

Illuſtrated with Thirty-ſix *Maps*, accurately projected on a new Plan.

IN SIX VOLUMES.

VOLUME the FIRST.

CONTAINING,

DENMARK, NORWAY, GREENLAND, SWEDEN, RUSSIA and POLAND.

LONDON:
Printed for A. MILLAR in the Strand.
MDCCLXII.

III
G R



TO THE

KING.

SIR,

YOUR Majeſty's moſt gracious Condeſcenſion, in permitting this Tranſlation of Dr. *Buſching*'s New Syſtem of Geography to appear under your Royal Protection, emboldens me now to lay it at your Feet, with the utmoſt Humility, Gratitude, and Reſpect.

Though the Original is well known to have been received with univerſal Applauſe by the beſt Judges abroad, yet thoſe for whoſe Uſe this Tranſlation was intended, will juſtly eſteem your Majeſty's Approbation and Countenance to be the ſureſt Teſtimony and the moſt effectual Recommendation of its Merit: as nothing that your

DEDICATION.

Majeſty ſhall think fit to encourage can be regarded with Indifference by your People; convinced as they are both of the Superiority of Talents, and that diffuſive Goodneſs of Heart, which ſo nobly and ſo amiably diſtinguiſh your Majeſty's Character.

That your Majeſty may long continue, to adorn and bleſs your happy Empire, is the ardent Prayer of Millions, and particularly of,

Your Majeſty's

moſt Dutiful,

and moſt Obedient

Subject and Servant,

AND. MILLAR.

ADVERTISEMENT.

IN this Tranſlation of Profeſſor *Buſching*'s celebrated Syſtem of Geography, beſides the extraordinary Pains taken to do Juſtice to the excellent Original, the Reader will find ſeveral Advantages not to be met with elſewhere. Such as,

1ſt. Sundry Additions and Corrections communicated by the Author.

2dly. Three curious Eſſays by a maſterly Hand; containing Enquiries and Conjectures concerning Meaſures of Length: concerning the Spheroidal Figure of the Earth; with Tables ſerving to compare Obſervations relating thereto; and concerning the beſt Form of a Geographical Map; And

3dly. A Set of Maps, accurately projected on the New Plan, eſtabliſhed by this Eſſay.

Theſe Improvements, added to the intrinſic Value of the Work will, it is hoped, ſufficiently diſtinguiſh and recommend the Performance here offered to the Public.

PREFACE.

THE Author has divided this Syſtem of Geography into four * volumes, and to every volume has prefixed a preface. In that to the firſt he has given an account of the work in general; and likewiſe of the method he purſued, and the ſources from which he drew his materials. But as this *Engliſh* edition does not conſiſt of an equal number of volumes with the *German* original, and the countries deſcribed are differently arranged in ſome of them, the Author's preface muſt be adapted to the tranſlation. I ſhall therefore extract only ſuch paſſages as relate to the volume before us, and the work in general; omitting ſuch particulars as have an immediate relation to the firſt *German* edition, and the manner of publiſhing it, which would ſwell this preface to an immoderate length. M. *Buſching* gives us the following account of his undertaking, *&c.*

'My deſign is to give an accurate and uſeful Deſcription of the Earth 'as far as it is known, from the beſt helps that could be procured on 'the ſubject. For this end, I was under an indiſpenſable neceſſity of 'ſetting about the Work, as if no Syſtem of Geography had been extant 'before. I am very ſenſible that there are many treatiſes of that nature 'publiſhed: However, I could not implicitly depend upon, nor ſafely copy 'after any of them; but was obliged carefully to examine every particular, 'and to have recourſe to the firſt and beſt ſources. My predeceſſors in 'this Science, indeed, generally copy from each other; and ſuch as have 'not copied from other Syſtems of Geography, have uſed ſuch helps as 'are univerſally known, and open to every one's peruſal, if we except 'ſome few particulars. And it is evident they either had not, or could 'not have recourſe to the beſt ſources; or, which has generally been the 'caſe, did not uſe them with a proper degree of care and impartiality.

* It is to be obſerved that each of thoſe volumes contain two parts, ſo that the four may more properly be conſidered as eight. We thought it neceſſary to mention this, leſt it ſhould be imagined that we have increaſed the bulk of this work unneceſſarily, for our own intereſt.

'Hence a perſon who has the leaſt ſkill in geography, or knowledge of 'the Terraqueous Globe, has reaſon to complain, that the Syſtems of Geo-'graphy hitherto publiſhed are of very little ſervice. Theſe were my 'motives for not blindly following my predeceſſors who have written on 'this ſubject; on the contrary, I had recourſe to the ſame originals from 'which they derived their materials, and likewiſe to other ſources which 'they could not have acceſs to; or if they had, which they made no 'uſe of. Now as I can truly aver, that I have neither retailed, new-'modelled, nor made the labours of my predeceſſors on this ſubject the 'ground work of mine; but proceeded as if no ſuch books had been 'extant, and I myſelf had been the firſt who wrote on the ſubject, I leave 'it to the determination of any competent judge, whether my Geography 'can admit of any improvement from the labours of former geographers? 'At leaſt when I compared their works with the Deſcription which I 'had finiſhed, I found nothing to add, which was either neceſſary, or 'uſeful to be known. And if they happen to mention ſome circum-'ſtances, about which my helps were ſilent, I have ſcrupled to admit ſuch 'particulars into my account, and, I think, with reaſon reſerved them for 'a future enquiry. This I look upon as the only means to bring Geography 'to a greater degree of perfection than it has hitherto acquired; and I 'hope the Learned will allow that by this method I have laid a good 'foundation for it. I am well convinced that others who ſhall write on 'this ſubject after me, will, by experience, find what I have here ad-'vanced to be true; and it is my earneſt requeſt that they would, in the 'manner I have done, examine every particular as far as it is poſſible, 'without truſting to others.

'The rules which I have obſerved in the proſecution of this work are 'the very ſame that I recommended as rules of conduct for a Geographer 'in §. 3. of the Introduction *. However, I muſt add, that though I think 'it both a neceſſary and uſeful direction, with regard to any particular 'country, to follow the accounts written on the ſpot, as they generally 'exhibit a more accurate and juſt deſcription than any other geographical 'or topographical treatiſe extant, and are drawn from the proper ſources: 'Yet it is always proper, in the uſe of ſuch helps, to proceed with cir-'cumſpection, and, at the ſame time, to join our own enquiries with 'them. For inſtance, in *Szaſzky's Introductio in Orbis hodierni Geogra-'phiam*, there is nothing that can be of uſe to a Geographer but the 'chapter which treats of *Hungary*; for that article, on account of the 'care employed by the Author who was an *Hungarian*, may ſerve for a 'ſhort chorographical deſcription of that Kingdom, and conſequently may 'be reckoned among the genuine ſources of that part of Geography.

* See page 7.

'It

'It is my deſign, that the Syſtem of Geography ſhall be neither too ſhort and conciſe, nor too tedious and circumſtantial; and I purpoſe to bring together into one view the beſt chorographical and topographical deſcriptions extant; and to ſelect many hiſtorical and phyſical remarks, and obſervations which are to be met with in a great number of printed books and manuſcripts. I ſhall alſo continue to carry on an extenſive correſpondence by Letters, not without a conſiderable expence, with men of learning and politeneſs in different parts of the world, in order to gain a more exact knowledge of the preſent genuine ſtate of countries and places, than it is poſſible to acquire from printed accounts. And indeed I have had the good fortune, hitherto, to find almoſt every perſon to whom I applied for this purpoſe, inclined to promote my deſign; beſides ſome hundreds who have voluntarily contributed to it. I have tranſmitted my original ſketch to ſeveral places, in order to be improved and corrected. Beſides, I apply to perſons of all ranks who are capable of being ſerviceable to my deſign, on whom I make modeſt demands of aſſiſtance; and my travels have turned out to very good account, as they gave me an opportunity of making immediate enquiries and obſervations on the ſpot in ſeveral kingdoms.

'In deſcribing the various countries in the known world I obſerve the following method. In the firſt place, I treat of their Polity or civil conſtitution, in an authentic and conciſe manner, with impartiality and circumſpection. I have, with regard to the conſtitution or form of government of ſeveral countries, had the good fortune, hitherto to procure important and authentic accounts, and ſuch as rarely fall into the hands of the Learned. Thoſe who are competent judges in theſe matters will find them ſcattered with no ſparing hand in this firſt volume. The plan I have laid down, and the neceſſary caution and prudence to be obſerved on theſe occaſions, forbid me to communicate any more of thoſe anecdotes to the Public. I have candidly pointed out all the advantages which every country enjoys, or at leaſt, ſuch as have come to my knowledge; and there is not a ſingle country on the Globe which cannot boaſt of ſome peculiar advantages. It would be highly abſurd and blameable in a Geographer, to deſpiſe any country becauſe it has not ſome particular advantage or conveniency with which, perhaps, another region is bleſſed. Such a writer pours contempt on the works of GOD, and the ſeveral domains of his extenſive kingdom; and finds faults with Divine Providence, which deals out the good things and commodities of the Earth with the moſt conſummate wiſdom and benevolence, and imparts to every country what is indiſpenſably neceſſary for its inhabitants. I wholly avoid giving the characters of nations, it being not only a very difficult taſk in itſelf, but ſuch general characters are alſo, at beſt, uncertain, and for the moſt part ill-grounded and partial. I refer to what I have written on this

'head

head n. 8, 70. of the Introduction. As the extending and increasing of commerce is now one of the principal objects which most nations have in view, I have given an exact account of the present state of trade in those countries where it flourishes most. The reader will find this article, with regard to the Northern Countries, accurately described in this volume.

Next to the general account of the Polity of States and Kingdoms follows the particular geographical description of every country, in which I lay down the actual political divisions into greater and smaller districts as the basis of it, including, at the same time, the Ecclesiastical Polity of every country. I do not designedly omit one natural or artificial curiosity that deserves notice in any place which I have described: but touch on it at least, if I cannot give a circumstantial account of it. The principal cities and towns in every country I describe according to the chorographical plans we have of them, and that pretty largely, as they contain several things worthy of notice. I have not used the expressions, *great, small, handsome, eminent, inconsiderable, mean*, &c. indifferently or partially; but employed them according to the Knowledge I had acquired of every particular place. I could wish we had, in this respect, a certain rule to go by; but such a standard is difficult to be found. A town is large, handsome, and well-built; or little, mean, and inconsiderable, only as considered with respect to other towns in the same country; but when compared with those of other countries, may deserve different epithets. For what is called a large and beautiful place, and really is so in one kingdom, may be justly called little and inconsiderable, or a place of no great note, in another. However, there are towns, &c. in every country, which may in general be called large and elegant. I have set down the probable number of inhabitants in several countries and great cities, or inserted an account of their births and burials from the annual Bills of Mortality; but this could not be done for all. In describing others, I have also shewn how the Names of places are properly pronounced, a necessary information in a System of Geography; but this I cannot pretend to have done in all in a satisfactory manner. Upon the whole, I must observe that it is not possible to describe every country with equal accuracy and authenticity, the same helps, and vouchers of equal credit, cannot be procured for them all. My descriptions, however, will be found tolerably uniform and of a piece in proportion to the extent and importance of the countries described; and what is still wanting in my account of several places may possibly be supplied hereafter.

'To write a System of GEOGRAPHY, or, in other words, to give a Description of the Earth, is a very difficult, laborious, and important task, and requires the united efforts of whole Societies: what an arduous undertaking must it then be for a single person? I doubt, whether

'ther any one has beſtowed more pains on the ſubject, or treated with 'greater application and more unwearied diligence than myſelf; and 'this is the only merit I aſſume. Whoever expects a perfect work of 'this kind, does not underſtand wherein the perfection of it conſiſts. 'Thoſe who are competent judges of the ſubject will conſider whether 'the whole performance is good in its kind; for errors in ſome particulars 'are unavoidable when we treat of a ſubject that admits of gradual 'improvement. I hope I may without vanity call my Syſtem of Geo-'graphy *new* and *more perfect* than any book of the kind yet publiſhed; 'but I do not pretend to impoſe it on the Public as a work abſolutely 'perfect in itſelf, being well apprized that a great number of additions and 'corrections are requiſite to render it ſuch, and conſequently that it falls 'far ſhort of perfection.

'It was, at firſt, my deſign to annex to every volume ſome critical 'obſervations on the books which I made uſe of in deſcribing every 'country; but this I muſt defer to ſome other opportunity. In the In-'troduction however, to the deſcription of every State or Kingdom I ſhall 'give a liſt of moſt if not of all the Authors of note who have treated 'of that country, and ſet down the titles of the books, &c.

'This firſt volume begins with the Northern States of *Europe*. It has, 'indeed, been uſual for ſeveral years paſt to begin books of Geography 'with *Portugal*: But that method was neither neceſſary nor regular, and, 'probably, owes its origin to the following trifling circumſtance. The 'map of *Europe*, in order to aſſiſt the memories of children, has been 'repreſented under the figure of a Woman who was to be deſcribed 'from head to foot; and therefore Geographers began with *Portugal*, which 'was ſuppoſed to be the head-dreſs of this imaginary Lady. On the con-'trary, the Geographers of the ſixteenth and the firſt part of the ſeven-'teenth century, as namely, *Mercato*, *Ortelius*, *Hondius*, *Janſſon*, &c. begin 'with the Northern parts of *Europe*. I have followed their example 'rather out of chance than deſign, Providence having, for ſome years, 'placed me in thoſe parts; and therefore I begin with the deſcription of 'them. The Northern Parts have been, hitherto, generally the leaſt 'regarded by foreigners, and deſcribed with far leſs care and accuracy 'than the ſouthern and weſtern countries of *Europe*, though their im-'portance and extent deſerve more particular notice. For this reaſon I 'have allowed the Northern kingdoms more room in my Syſtem of Geo-'graphy than other Authors have done in books on this ſubject. Before 'I enter on the deſcription of theſe countries, I have premiſed ſomething 'by way of Introduction to every State, *&c.*

'In the firſt place, I have, ſhewn the UTILITY of Geography, and 'particularly recommended the neceſſity and uſefulneſs of this ſcience, as 'it ſerves to diſplay the power and wiſdom of GOD, and promotes his glory.

'In

'In the next, I have ſubjoined a ſhort INTRODUCTION to Geography, in which I have given and explained the Definition of that ſcience, taken notice of the maps drawn by the geographers of the ancient, middle, and modern ages; and treated of the Mathematical and Phyſical part of Geography. In explaining theſe heads I have avoided prolixity as much as poſſible, and touched merely on ſuch particulars, as ſerve to facilitate and promote the ſtudy of Geography; and conſequently the reader ought previouſly to be well acquainted with them. I hope too I may, at leaſt, be entitled to the approbation and thanks of many of them, for having with great labour and aſſiduity collected the moſt important, uſeful, and entertaining accounts and obſervations, which, before, lay ſcattered in a great number of volumes.

'Laſtly, I have treated pretty largely on the ſurrounding and intercurrent SEAS in the ſeveral parts deſcribed in each volume, and collected the moſt important remarks and obſervations that were to be met with concerning the nature and qualities of them.

'Next to this comes a general view of EUROPE; and then follow the Kingdoms and States contained in it. Among theſe that of DENMARK preſents itſelf firſt to the Reader's view. In deſcribing this country, I had no account of it which had been taken on the ſpot to ſerve as the ground work of my deſcription; but was obliged to deſcribe it after a new method. My helps in print were the following;

'HOLBERG's *Hiſtory of* Denmark.
'PONTOPPIDAN's *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory.*
'*Theatrum et marmora Dancia ſelectiora.*
'BERUTSEN's *Glory of* Denmark *and* Norway *in* German.
'HERMANSEN's *Deliciæ regnorum Daniæ, Norwegiæ,* &c.
'VERNON's *Relation d' un voyage fait en Danamarc.*
'*The* Daniſh *Vitruvius.*
'*The* Daniſh *Library.*
'*Scripta Societatis Hafnienſis, bonis artibus promovendis deditæ.*
'*The* Daniſh *Magazine.*
'THURA's *Idea Hiſtoriæ Literariæ Danorum.*
'ANCHERSAN's *Præfat. ad Fab. Geogra. ſynopt.*
'*The Religious State of* Denmark *and* Norway.
'Colonel THURA's *Hafnia Hodierna.*
'RESENII *Deſcriptio Samſoæ.*
'AAGARDI *Deſcriptio Othiniæ.*
'*Obſervations on the Iſlands of* Faalſter *and* Laaland.
'ERICKSO's *Deſcription of the Village of* Viborg.
'TERPAGER's *Deſcriptio Urbis Ripenſis.*
'DANKWERTH's *New Chronographical Deſcription of the Dutchies of* Sleſwick *and* Holſtein.

WEST-

'WESTPHALEN's *Monumenta inedita rerum Germanicarum, præcipuè Cimbricarum, &c.*

'NOODT's *Supplement to the history of the Dutchies of* Sleswick *and* Holstein.

'MOLLERI *Isag. ad Hist. Ducat.* Sleswick *and* Holstein.

'LASS's *Collection of the accounts of the towns of* Husum.

'KRAFTEN's *Ecclesiastical and Literary History of* Husum.

'Besides these authors, I have compared my account of *Denmark*, after 'I had corrected and improved it, with HUBNER's *Large, and Small System* 'of *Geography*, translated into *Danish*. With regard to the Dutchy of 'Sleswick, I have made the short Description of it, which I published in '1752, the ground-work; but at the same time, I new-modelled and greatly 'improved it. I have not only described several parts of the Kingdom of 'Denmark from my own personal observations; but was also favoured, in 'that article, beyond any of my predecessors on this subject, by the assistance 'of several persons of great abilities and distinguished characters.

'In describing NORWAY I consulted the following books.

'CLAUSSON's, WOLF's, *and* JONAS RAMUS's Descriptions of that country.

'PONTOPPIDAN's *Natural History of* Norway *.

'MULLER's *Description of the town of* Tonsberg.

'SCHRODER's *Description of the town of* Frederickshald.

'HOLBERG's *Description of the town of* Bergen.

'All these treatises are written in the *Danish* language.

'The Description of the islands of *Faroe* is almost entirely taken from 'DEBES. In describing *Iceland*, I have made use of the following books.

'ARNGRIM JONAS's *Chrimogæa.*

'OLAVII *Enarrationes Hist. de natura & constitutione Islandiæ.*

'ANDERSON's *Description of Iceland*, with that of HORREBOW, who re-'futed the account given by the former.

'THORLACII *Dissertatio de Islandia.* THORLACII (who was another 'writer of the same name) *Dissertatio de ultimo montis Heclæ incendio.*

'SAMUNDSEN's *Account of the eruption of Krabla*, in Danish.

'Lastly, in describing *Greenland* I consulted TORFÆI *Gronlandia antiqua*; 'EGEDE's *Account of the rise and progress of the Greenland Mission*; and *The* 'new *Perlustration of ancient Greenland.* I am likewise obliged to some 'learned men for several historical accounts relating to these countries. My 'description of *Iceland*, I may venture to recommend as more accurate and 'complete than any that was extant before.

'I have been enabled to acquaint the reader with many important parti-'culars concerning the constitution of SWEDEN, which were hitherto but 'little known. For the Geographical description of that Kingdom, I make

* An elegant translation of this curious work was published at *London* in 1755, by A. *Linde*. That beautiful edition is illustrated with copper-plates, and an accurate map of *Norway*.

'*Erick Tuneld*'s excellent treatiſe, entitled *The Geography of Sweden*, my ground-work. Beſides, I have borrowed many curious remarks from the following authors.

'BRING *de Etymo Sueciæ.*
'BENZELIUS *de Propagat. Rel Chriſt. in Suecia.*
'*The Deſcription of* Sweden, *publiſhed at* Ratiſbon *in* 1707.
'ROBINSON'S *Etat preſent de la Suede.*
'LOCCENII *Antiq. Sueco-Gothia.*
'BRING *de comitiva Dignitate, præſertim in Sviogothia.*
'*The Diſſertations of the Royal Academy of Sciences in* Sweden.
'STROMWALL'S *Diſſertatio Apologetica contra Johannem Hubnerum.*
'HARLEMANN'S *Travels through ſeveral provinces of* Sweden.
'BRING *de Origine urbis antiquæ Sviogothiæ, & de Hallandia in genere.*
'RYDELIUS *de Blekingia.*
'BRING *de Blekingia.*
'FRONDIN *de Helſingia.*
'SERENIUS *de Uplandia.*
'BIOERNER *de Stockholmia antiqua.*
'ASP *de Nycopia.*
'BRONWELL'S *Hiſtoria linquæ Darlecarliæ.*
'HERMANSSON *de Prefectura Naeſgardenſi Dalecarliæ.*
'HAGSTROM'S *Deſcription of the province of* Jemtland.
'TORNER *de origine ac religione Fennonum.*
'HARTMANN *de primis initiis Biorneburgi.*
'OUTHIER'S *Journal d'un voyage au Nord.*

'In my Deſcription of *Lapland* I have conſulted *Peter* HOGSTROM'S Deſcription, compared with SCHEFFER'S *Lapponia* and SCHELLER'S Travels, as the ground-work. As Count DAHLBERG'S pompous and valuable Work, entitled *Suecia antiqua & hodierna*, is ſcarce, I have particulariſed thoſe towns and caſtles of which he has inſerted draughts and perſpective views in his *Suecia.*

'Next follows the RUSSIAN EMPIRE with all its ancient and new conquered countries in *Europe* and *Aſia.* I have given this vaſt Empire in one view, as it lies naturally connected; and conſequently have deſcribed, at the ſame time, a conſiderable part of *Aſia* in this volume. As Geographers have, hitherto given but very imperfect accounts of that powerful Empire, my attempt may be conſidered as the firſt eſſay towards an accurate and authentic deſcription of it. In 1745, *A compendious treatiſe of Political Geography* was publiſhed at *Petersburg.* That work gives a circumſtantial deſcription of the *Ruſſian Empire*, but is extremely faulty and defective: However, it contains ſome authentic hiſtorical accounts. Beſides that treatiſe, I have made uſe of the following books in deſcribing *Ingria*, and *Livonia*, &c.

'The

'*The hiſtorical, political, and geographical Deſcription of* Sweden.
'KELCHEN's *Hiſtory of* Livonia.
'*Deſcription de la Livonie.*
'STRUBYCZII *brevis deſcriptio Livoniæ.*
'*The Chronicle of Livonia, publiſhed by* GRUBER *and* ARND.
'JETZEN's *Account of the white hares in* Livonia.
'*The Monument of* DORPAT.
'*Peter von* HAVEN's *New Account of the* Empire *of* Ruſſia, *written in* 'Daniſh, *and improved.*
'WEBER's Ruſſia *metamorphoſed.*
'*A collection of the* Ruſſian *Hiſtory by* MULLER *and* BAYER.
'MARTINI's *Account of* Ruſſia.
'*The Moſcovite Letters*, as they are called, with remarks. The text is 'in many places erroneous and abſurd, and the remarks are not to be 'depended on.
'HEGELMAYER's *Impartial Account of the ſeveral remarkable things in* 'Ruſſia.
'STRAHLENBERG's *Northern and Eaſtern parts of* Europe *and* Aſia.
'GMELIN's *Flora Siberica, and his Travels through* Siberia, *with his re-* 'marks *on* L' Hiſtoire genealogique des Tartars.
'*The preſent ſtate of* Ruſſia written by SALMON, and publiſhed with 'great alterations by *Reichard*, may very well ſupply the place of *Weber*, '*Haven*'s *Travels in* Ruſſia, *Strahlenberg*, *Martini*, and the *Collection of* 'Ruſſian *hiſtorical pieces*; as the ſubſtance of them is to be found in '*Reichard*'s performance; but of this I made no uſe in my deſcription of '*Ruſſia.* During my ſtay at *Peterſburg*, I collected ſeveral good accounts 'of the Empire of *Ruſſia*, and made proper enquiries into many particu-'lars myſelf. The *Ruſſian* Imperial Academy alſo cauſed my deſcription 'of that Empire to be carefully reviſed and improved by profeſſor *Muller*. 'My ſhort Introduction to *Ruſſia* contains a more accurate, juſt, authen-'tic, and impartial account of the conſtitution of that Empire than many 'other voluminous works.
'I come in the next place to the Kingdom of PRUSSIA; and in deſcrib-'ing this country, BOCK's *Introduction to the ſtate of* Pruſſia; Pruſſia *diſ-'played*; the *Acta Boruſſica*, and *the Remarkables of* Pruſſia; have been 'of greater ſervice to me than ABEL's *political Geography of* Pruſſia *and* 'Brandenburg, with its continuation. I have myſelf made ſeveral obſerva-'tions in my travels through *Pruſſia*; and a learned *Pruſſian* alſo ſent 'me authentic accounts of *Pruſſia* and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, 'for which I take this opportunity of making a due acknowlegement.
'After *Pruſſia*, I deſcribe POLAND and LITHUANIA, and for that pur-'poſe, I conſulted the following books.

'*Gabriel* RZACZYNSKI's *Hiſtoria naturalis curioſa regni Poloniæ.*
'PISTORII *Corpus Hiſtoriæ Polonicæ.*
'CROMER's *Deſcription of the Kingdom of* Poland.
'STARAVOLSCI *Polonia.*
'*Caſim. Aloys.* HOLOWKA's *Compendium Geographiæ.*
'CELLARII *Deſcript. Regni Poloniæ.*
'HARTKNOCH *de republica Polona.*
'LENGNICH *de jure publico regni Poloni.*
'*Pacta Conventa Auguſti tertii cum Lengnichi Commentario.*
'KRZISTANOWITZ's *Curious Deſcription of the Kingdom of* Poland.
'*Dugloſſi*; *Hiſtoria Polnica.*
'LENGNICH's Poliſh *Hiſtory.*
'DANOZKI's *Lexicon of the learned men now living in* Poland, *&c.*
'With *Poland* I have connected the deſcription of *Poliſh Pruſſia*, which 'I look upon as a far more juſt and commodious method, than the common 'way of deſcribing it with the Kingdom of *Pruſſia*; for, at preſent, it has 'no manner of connection with the latter. My helps in this part were as 'follows.
'LENGNICH's *Hiſtory of* Regal *or* Poliſh Pruſſia.
'*The Pruſſian Collection of Records*, and manuſcript accounts which have 'never been publiſhed.
'HARTWICH's *Deſcription of the three Werders lying in* Poliſh Pruſſia.
'CELLARII *Deſcriptio regni Poloniæ, & privilegium civitatum minorum 'Pruſſiæ occidentalis, commentario illuſtratum.*
'My own obſervation and experience have alſo ſupplied me with ſeveral 'uſeful hints in deſcribing this country.
'Laſtly, under the article of *Poland*, I have deſcribed the Dutchies of '*Courland* and *Semigallia*. I am perſuaded that the deſcription I have given 'of theſe countries will ſufficiently recommend itſelf to all impartial judges, 'as a new, authentic, and accurate account. The true ſtate of this country 'is, at preſent, but little known. In my journey through *Courland*, I care-'fully informed myſelf about its conſtitution from perſons of great ſkill 'and political knowledge; and likewiſe made uſe of the following printed 'accounts.
'NETTELBATT's *Faſciculus Rerum Curlandiæ.*
'The ſame author's *Anecdota Curlandiæ*, and
'His Treatiſe which clearly ſhews the right of electing a Duke to be 'derived to the *Courlanders* from their anceſtors.
'*Privilegia & Jura præcipua ducat. Curlandiæ & Semigalliæ*, beſides 'other public acts.
'TETSCH's *Eſſay towards an eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory of* Courland.
'*Deſcription de la Livonie*, which alſo treats of *Courland.*
'*The Life of Erneſt John, Duke of* Courland.

'*The ſhort geographical account of the Dutchies of* Courland *and* Semigallia, inſerted in *The Coſmographical Accounts and collections for the year* 1748.

'HARTNOCH's *Diſſertatio de Curonum & Semigal. Republ.*

'I thought myſelf obliged to point out theſe authors as vouchers of the truth or credibility of my accounts of theſe different countries; and I found it as difficult to procure them, as it was laborious and irkſome to peruſe them all. From this the candid reader may form ſome idea of the difficulty of this undertaking; which will appear ſtill more arduous, when he has carefully peruſed this work.'

CON-

CONTENTS

TO THE

FIRST VOLUME.

Of the UTILITY of GEOGRAPHY. page 1

INTRODUCTION to GEOGRAPHY,

CHAP. I.

OF Geography in general. page 6

CHAP. II.

Of Mathematical Geography 12

CHAP. III.

Of the Natural State of the Earth, or Phyſical Geography. page 36
Of the Earth's Atmoſphere ibid.
Of the Earth in general 39
Of the Water 49

A NEW SYSTEM of GEOGRAPHY.

Of Europe in general 57
Of the Seas, by which the countries deſcribed in this volume are encompaſſed, or ſeparated from each other 59

DENMARK.

Introduction 67
Seeland 84
Funen 114
North Jutland 123
Wiborg 129
Aarhuus 131
Ripen 136
Slefwick 142

NORWAY.

Introduction 171
Chriſtiana 184
Chriſtianſand 193
Bergen 197
Drontheim 201
Norwegian iſlands 212
Faroe ibid.
Iceland 215
Greenland 231

The

CONTENTS.

The KINGDOM of SWEDEN.

Introduction	page 249	Halſingland	page 331
Gothland	273	Medelpad	333
Eaſt Gothland	274	Jamtland	334
Smaland	278	Harjedalen	336
Oeland	283	Angermannland	337
Gottland	284	Weſt-Bottn	338
Weſt Gothland	286	Lapland	341
Warmeland	293	Jamtland-Lapmark	355
Thal-land	295	Aſele-Lapmark	356
Bohus-Lehn	296	Umea-Lapmark	357
South-Gothland	299	Pite-Lapmark	358
Schonen	ibid.	Lulea-Lapmark	ibid.
Halland	304	Tornea-Lapmark	359
Blekingen	306	Kiemi-Lapmark	360
Sweden, properly ſo called,	309	Finnland	361
Upland	ibid.	Finnland, properly ſo called,	363
Sudermannland	319	Aland	366
Nerike	323	Eaſt-Bothnia	ibid.
Weſtmannland	324	Tawaſtland	369
Swediſh Thal-land	327	Nyland	370
Nordland	330	Sawolax	372
Gaſtrickland	ibid.	Kymmenegards-Lehn	ibid.

The RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

Introduction	377	Smolenſk	457
European part of the Ruſſian Empire	411	Kiew	458
Livonia	414	Bielogorod	464
Riga	422	Woroneſh	466
Reval	425	Aſiatic part of the Ruſſian Empire	469
Narva	427	Ruſſian Tartary	475
Ingermannland	428	Aſtracan	477
Wiburg	441	Orenburg	479
Nowogrod	443	Kaſan	480
Archangel	446	Siberia	483
Moſcow	450	Tobolſk	501
Niſhnei-Novogrod	456	Yeniſei	511
		Irkutſk	517

PRUSSIA

CONTENTS.

PRUSSIA.

Introduction	page 527	Little Lithuania	page 558
Konigsberg	538	Polish Governments	562
German Samland	544	Oletzko	ibid.
Old Natangen	548	Rhein	563
Oberland	553	Johannesberg	564

POLAND, LITHUANIA, POLISH PRUSSIA, and COURLAND.

Introduction	567	Lithuanian Russia	620
Great Poland	588	Woiewodztwo Inflantskie	624
Cujavia	592	Zmuyds	625
Masovia	594	POLISH PRUSSIA	626
Polish Prussia	597	Pomerellia	632
Little Poland	ibid.	Culm	638
Cracow	ibid.	Marienburg	647
Podlachia	606	Ermeland	652
Red Russia	607	COURLAND	654
Podolia	610	Courland, properly so called,	662
Kiow	612	Semigallia	664
Volhinia	ibid.	Pilten	666
LITHUANIA	614		

OF

ENQUIRIES and CONJECTURES

CONCERNING

MEASURES of LENGTH.

1. THE *Meaſures of Length*, on which all others depend, were, for want of a more fixt ſtandard, taken from the human body: as the denominations of *Fathom*, *Pace*, *Cubit*, *Foot*, *Span* and *Digit*, evidently ſhew. Multiples of theſe make the higher denominations of *Stadia* and *Miles*; and grains of *Barley* and *Wheat*, or *Hairs-breadths*, were uſed for their ſubdiviſions.

2. In the Eaſtern Nations, the firſt ſeats of arts and magnificence, even in the ante-diluvian age *, their ſtandard meaſure was a *Cubit*. In *Greece*, *Italy*, and other weſtern countries, where racing and manly exerciſes were more cultivated, a *Foot*, with its multiples and aliquot parts, were found the moſt convenient meaſures.

But a *Foot* not being an aliquot part of a *Cubit*, wherever the one was the *Standard*, the other was in a manner excluded as a *Meaſure*. And this ſeems to have been one great ſource of the diverſity we find in the ancient meaſures, or rather in the accounts authors give of them. The *natural* ſtandard of a *Cubit*, or of a *Foot*, would every where be nearly the ſame, if ſome ſingular affectation or caprice did not interfere; the dimenſions of *Egyptian* mummies, and of their repoſitories, ſhewing the human ſtature to have continued much the ſame from the earlieſt ages. But when authors give us eaſtern meaſures in the language of the weſt, or the contrary, we may generally ſuſpect ſome inaccuracy in the reduction of the one to the other: the *Greek* and *Latin* writers commonly calling $\frac{3}{2}$ of a *Foot*, a *Cubit*, which in its natural dimenſion is really $\frac{9}{5}$ of a *Foot* †; and, thence, the *natural* cubit being to the *nominal* as ſix to five, greater by $\frac{1}{6}$ of the former, or by $\frac{3}{10}$ of a foot.

* Gen. VI. 15. † Sir Iſaac *Newton* on the ſacred cubit.

3. A greater variety ſtill aroſe from both ſtandards being admitted together; as happened among the *Arabs*. A *Cubit* was their original *local ſtandard*; the *Foot*, *Stadium*, and *Mile*, they took from the *Greeks* and *Romans*: and theſe, mixed and combined, produced the different eſtimates they give of the ſame diſtances, and *four*, if not *ſeven*, different ſorts of *Cubits*. *

Yet this variety, as well as the proportions of ſome of thoſe cubits to one another, may be partly accounted for from the oriental cuſtom of a *Royal Cubit*, exceeding the *mean* cubit by three *digits* †; and from the *commercial* or *nundinary* meaſures being, for the moſt part, leſs than the *mean*, not only in the *Eaſt*, but every where elſe. The former probably had its name from being the meaſure, which deſpotic Princes exacted in the conſtruction of their buildings and public works; while a cubit ſomewhat ſhort of the *mean* was allowed of in private bargains, and when ſkilful artiſts were to be paid for their labour.

From theſe two conſiderations, but eſpecially from the *natural* proportion of the *Cubit* and *Foot*, we may form ſome conſiſtent notion of the ancient meaſures, the changes they have undergone, and their relations to one another, as well as to the principal ſtandards of modern times.

As for the *ſecondary* and *provincial* meaſures uſed in different ſtates or cities, or in the ſeveral provinces of the ſame country, it were endleſs to enumerate them, and impoſſible to account for differences ariſing from ſo many different cauſes; from *accident*, perhaps, or *deſign*, from the *indolence* of magiſtrates, the *errors* or *caprice* of artiſts, the gradual *alterations* of time, from *fraud*, *exaction*, or *policy*, and even from the *quality* of the *ſubjects* meaſured. Nor does ſuch diverſity of weights and meaſures much diſturb the ordinary courſe of commerce; although it were to be wiſhed that a greater uniformity could be eſtabliſhed, at leaſt among all the ſubjects of the ſame Prince. Merchants can always compare their own meaſures with thoſe of foreign nations; and are not often miſtaken in valuing the precious metals, or in the juſt *par* of exchange.

4. In the ſciences, the caſe is very different; in *Geography*, *Aſtronomy*, and in all *Phyſical* enquiries: which cannot be managed, or even underſtood, without more exact rules of actual menſuration than either vulgar uſe requires, or the ancients could attain; in a word, without ſome *fixed univerſal Standard*, to which every obſervation and experiment may be referred.

And ſuch a Standard only thoſe ſciences *themſelves* could furniſh: *The length of a pendulum beating ſeconds at a particular place*, *as* London *or* Paris; or, *The length of a degree of ſome terreſtrial meridian*, *meaſured at*

* See Mr. *Bernard* de menſuris veterum, and the authors by him quoted.

† *Herodot.* Clio.

a particular latitude. Theſe may always be compared with each other, and every other meaſure of length with either of them.

5. If *Eratoſthenes*, *Poſidonius*, *Marinus Tyrius*, or *Ptolemy* had meaſured an arc of the meridian in *Stadia*, with the ſame care and ſucceſs as the *French* mathematicians have done in *Toiſes*, we could compare their meaſures to the modern with great certainty. But we find no operation of this kind which can be depended on, till the revival of Aſtronomy under the *Caliphs*, when *Almamon* ordered ſome ſkilful mathematicians to meaſure a degree in the plain of *Singara* in *Meſopotamia*. From their determination indeed, founded on an actual ſurvey, with the difference of latitude carefully taken, we may not only fix the proportion of their *foot-meaſure* to *ours*, but form a probable conjecture concerning the *Standard* uſed in *Greece*, and the derivation of the other principal Standards, the *Roman*, *French* and *Engliſh* from it. For it ſeems reaſonable to ſuppoſe, and has been admitted by the beſt writers on this ſubject, " That a nation ſubduing, or " ſettling in, another more poliſhed and civilized than themſelves, will " learn their arts, and adopt their cuſtoms; as a more civilized nation will " introduce good regulations where there might be none before."

Now the *Athenian* weights and meaſures had been fixed by an expreſs law to the Standards firſt eſtabliſhed by *Solon* *: and theſe were the principal ſtandards in *Greece*, in their *Iſlands* and *Colonies*, and in the neighbouring countries of *Aſia Minor*. They were probably adopted by the later poſſeſſors of thoſe countries, the *Arabs:* and it will appear preſently that the foot meaſure of the *Arabs*, was exactly, or very near, the ſame as the *Pied du Roi*, or ſtandard foot of *Paris*.

How the one or the other may have been brought into *France* we may eaſily imagine: the colony of *Marſeilles* might introduce the *Grecian* meaſures; † or, if that date is thought too ancient, why might they not be borrowed from the *Eaſt*, at ſecond hand, in the time of the *Croiſades*.

6. The aſtronomers commiſſioned by *Almamon* found a degree of the earth's meridian to contain $56\frac{2}{3}$ miles of 4000 cubits, or 6000 feet, each ‡. The degree therefore was $56666\frac{2}{3}$ *Arabian* fathoms or *Toiſes*; and if we ſuppoſe theſe equal to *French Toiſes*, the error of their operations was only $516\frac{1}{3}$ *Toiſes*, which their degree wants of 57183, the degree of M. *Picart*, corrected; and this the earth being Spherical.

But if it is a *Spheroid*, whoſe axis is to the equatorial diameter as 230 to 231, the *Arabians* meaſuring their degree at $49°\frac{1}{3}$ latitude inſtead of about 34°, muſt have given it 56860 toiſes; and the difference would now

* *Andocidis* Orat. apud Budæum de Aſſe. Lib. v.

† *Strabo* informs us that the *Gauls* owed their learning and the arts of civil life to the academy of *Marſeilles*; whoſe high reputation, in his time, drew the *Roman* youth to ſtudy there, inſtead of going to *Athens*, Geogr. Book IV. and their form of government ſeems to have been the model of ſeveral Ariſtocracies, afterwards eſtabliſhed in *Europe*.

‡ *Bernard* de Menſ. Vett.

be reduced to 323 toiſes, anſwering to an angle of about $\frac{1}{3}$ of one minute of a degree. Which error being of the quantity that might be expected from the ſkill of the artiſts on the one hand, and the difficulty of their taſk on the other, we may conclude *the Arabian Meaſures of Length to have been very nearly if not altogether the ſame as the French.*

7. There are two other *Arabian* meaſurements mentioned by their writers *. In one, the degree is found to be 68 miles, agreeing with the former determination of $56\frac{2}{3}$ miles: only that in the one a mile is 5000 feet, according to the *Roman* way of reckoning; in the other it was 6000: theſe numbers being reciprocally as 68 and $56\frac{2}{3}$. An agreement ſo very preciſe that one would ſuſpect it was not owing to an actual menſuration of the ſixty-eight miles.

In another *Arabian* eſtimate of a degree of the terreſtrial meridian, it is ſaid to contain $66\frac{2}{3}$ miles; and this likewiſe will nearly coincide with the former determination, if we can ſuppoſe the authors of this laſt to have imagined they could compenſate the ſhortening their mile one ſixth part, by lengthening their foot meaſure a ſixth part. For $\frac{7}{6} \times \frac{5}{6}$ or $\frac{35}{36} = \frac{66\frac{1}{9}}{68}$: or $\frac{7}{6} \times 56\frac{2}{3} = 66\frac{1}{9}$. Suppoſing this, if we take a mean between $66\frac{2}{3}$ miles and $66\frac{1}{9}$ (thus deduced from the $56\frac{2}{3}$ miles) the *mean* length of a degree, according to the *Arabians*, will want but ſeventy two toiſes of the quantity aſſigned to it by the *French*; the earth being a homogeneous *Spheroid.*

And if we compute upon the $66\frac{2}{3}$ miles alone, they will give to the degree 57379 toiſes; exceeding M. *Picart*'s degree by 196 toiſes, and Mr. *Norwood*'s by 79.

In any caſe, ſuppoſing the operations of the *Arabian* aſtronomers to have been performed with due care, which their near coincidence may well juſtify, it follows that the difference, if any, between the *Arabian* and the *French* foot is too ſmall to be by any means verified or determined.

8. This is further confirmed by the meaſurement of † *Fernelius*, giving to the degree near *Paris* 68.095 miles *French* meaſure, or 56746 toiſes; leſs than what the aſtronomers of *Almamon* would have made it by between 120 and 130 toiſes. Father ‡ *Riccioli*, indeed, ſuſpects this determination, as if *Fernelius* had accommodated it to the numbers of the *Arabians:* but the ſuſpicion is groundleſs, that author having very fairly deſcribed his method of proceeding, and his meaſure having been verified by all the ſubſequent ſurveys. The truth is, *Riccioli* was not aware of the equality of the *Arabian* and *French* meaſures of length; and wanted chiefly to eſtabliſh the reſult of his own enquiries.

9. The *Roman* foot, copied probably, with other *Athenian* inſtitutions, by the *Decemviri* ‖, might, originally, be the ſame as the *Attic:* but it was afterwards, whether deſignedly or by a gradual alteration, diminiſhed in the

* See Dr. *Bernard.* † See his *Coſmography.* ‡ *Almageſt.* ‖ *Liv.* III. 31.

ratio

ratio of 25 to 24, or near half an inch; *Cenſorinus* * informing us that they gave 625 feet to the *Stadium*, which contained but 600 feet *Attic* meaſure; and *Polybius*, in *Strabo* †, ſays they reckoned $8\frac{1}{3}$ *Stadia* to the *mile*; which comes to the ſame thing: $8\frac{1}{3}$ multiplied into 600 being the ſame as 8 into 625. Their mile was 8 ſtadia of 600 *Attic* feet, and is always ſo rated in *Pliny* and other ancient writers; but uſing their own foot meaſure, they found there wanted $\frac{1}{3}$ of a ſtadium of 600 feet to complete the mile.

10. This foot ſeems to have been the more general ſtandard of the *Roman Itinerary* meaſures. But the architects and artificers, in imitation of the *Greeks*, uſed one ſomewhat leſs; which from antient monuments, and from ſome ſtandards that have been preſerved in metal, is to the *Engliſh* foot, as 967 to 1000: others ſays as 970 to 1000. That is, the *Engliſh* foot exceeds the *leſſer Roman* by $\frac{1}{32}$ or by half a *digit*; for 31 is to 32 as $968\frac{3}{4}$ to 1000.

And indeed, excepting as far as accident or inaccuracy may have intervened, we ſhall generally find *the differences of meaſures to proceed by the ſimpleſt fractions of a* digit, *or of an* inch, *that is by biſſection, ſometimes combined with triſection.*

11. The *Palmo* of 9 inches, or $\frac{3}{4}$ of a foot, uſed by the modern *Roman* architects, is taken from this *Standard*, but ſomewhat increaſed. M. *Auzout* ‡ found it in proportion to the *Paris* foot as $988\frac{1}{2}$ to 1440; and the *Paris* foot being to the *Engliſh* as 114 to 107, the *Engliſh* foot will exceed the foot whereof the modern *Palmo* is $\frac{3}{4}$ by no more than $\frac{1}{40}$; whereas it exceeds the foot of the ancient architects by $\frac{1}{32}$; the difference of theſe being $\frac{1}{160}$ of a foot *Engliſh*, or $\frac{1}{12}$ of an inch of the ancient foot of the *Roman* artificers.

12. The *Roman* foot ſeems to have varied occaſionally; as indeed they were not over exact in ſuch matters, eſpecially in their itinerary meaſures ‖. The *Rhinland* foot taken from the remains of a *Roman* foot in *Germany*, and which *Scaliger* and *Snellius* held to be the true ſtandard, is to the *Engliſh* as 1033 to 1000. And thence the *Engliſh* foot is an arithmetical mean between *it*, and the foot of the ancient architects: 967. 1000. 1033.

13. The celebrated *Peireſc* ⸸ had, in his collection, weights of 1, 3, 10, 30 *Roman* pounds, which, compared very carefully with ſtandard weights ſent him from *Paris*, gave 10 *Paris* ounces nearly equal to twelve *Roman*. And if the *French* and *Roman* weights and meaſures of capacity, bore a like analogy to their meaſures of length, the *Paris* foot will be to that upon which the *Roman* ounce was adjuſted as the cube root of 12 to the like root of 10, or as 17 to 16; exceeding it by one digit:

* *De die natali*, cap. 13. † Lib. VII. p. 322. ‡ *Bernard*, p. 201.
‖ See the inſtances given by *Caſſini* in *Memoires de l'academie*. ⸸ *Gaſſend.* in Vitâ, p. 120.

and

and the *Paris* foot exceeding the *Engliſh* by much the ſame difference, *that Roman* foot muſt have been nearly equal to the *Engliſh*.

Gaſſendus indeed, who gives us this account, tells us that from his own experiments on the contents of *Veſpaſian*'s *Congius* preſerved in the Capitol, he found 120 *Roman* ounces equal to $111\frac{3}{4}$ *Paris* ounces: whence it would follow that the foot upon which the *Congius* was faſhioned wanted but $\frac{1}{44}$ of the foot of *Paris*. But ſuch experiments are ſo ſlippery, and the concluſions which different authors have drawn from the contents of this *Congius* are ſo various, that they are not much to be depended on: eſpecially as the proportions of the *Roman* and *Engliſh* meaſures to the *French*, which *Gaſſendus* deduces from the ſame ſource, are certainly none of the exacteſt. We may ſee however, in general, it was intended that this veſſel ſhould contain the eighth part of a cubic foot; and that the foot by which it was made was not much different from the ancient *Roman* foot.

But Mr. *Greaves*, by weighing many ancient well preſerved coins, found the *Attic Drachm*, which is the hundredth part of an *Attic Mina*, to be to the *Roman Denarius* or the eighty-fourth part of the *Roman Libra*, as 67 to 62 *. The weight of the former being at a medium 67 grains, or $\frac{67}{5760}$ of a pound *Troy*; and that of the latter 62 grains.

Hence the *Roman Libra* is to the pound *Troy* as 217 to 240; and the linear meaſures analogous to theſe weights are as the cube roots of 217 and 240, that is as $969\frac{3}{4}$ to 1000, nearly as 30 to 31. Or, allowing about $\frac{1}{3}$ of a grain which Mr. *Greaves*'s *denarii* may have loſt of their juſt weight; the cube roots, or the meaſures proportional to them, will be exactly as 31 to 32; as the foot of the *Architects* to the ſtandard foot of *England*. The foot of the *Roman* architects therefore was the ſame which they uſed in their mint.

Again, the *Attic Mina* is by Mr. *Greaves's* experiments to the pound *Troy* as 335 to 288. And the *pes monetalis* † of *Athens* to a foot *Engliſh* nearly as 20 to 19, in a ratio leſs than of 114 to 107, which we gave for that of the *Attic* foot to *ours*; and therefore we muſt either conclude this ratio to have been aſſumed too great; or, which is more probable, that the *Attic* foot uſed in their mint was leſs than their itinerary foot; the difference being about $\frac{1}{80}$, or $\frac{1}{5}$ of a digit; allowing ſomewhat for the wear of the coins.

14. The foot of *Bologna* is to the *Engliſh* as 1686 to 1350, according to the Abbé *Picart* ‡, or as 1.249 to 1. And *Riccioli* makes the ſame foot to the *Roman* as 5 to 4. He finds likewiſe the diſtance

* See his treatiſe on the *Denarius*.

† This epithet is found in *Hyginus*, and is underſtood by the commentators to ariſe from the diviſion of a foot, as of the *As* (and every other integer) into *Unciæ*: but I ſhould rather tranſlate it, the *Standard foot of the mint*.

‡ *Meſure de la Terre*.

between

between *Bologna* and *Modena*, which, in the *Itinerary*, is always marked 25 miles, to be 20 miles *Bologneſe* meaſure, inverſely as 4 and 5. And therefore the *Roman* foot, by which that diſtance was meaſured, is very nearly the ſame as the *Engliſh*. If *Riccioli*'s diſtance is more ſtrictly $19\frac{3}{4}$ miles, that *Roman* foot will want of the *Engliſh* about $\frac{1}{64}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ of a digit.

15. The diſtance from *London* to *Verulam*, by the itinerary, is 21 miles; the ſame diſtance meaſured * is 20.37 miles of 5000 feet *Engliſh*. Whence this *Itinerary* foot was leſs than the *Engliſh* by $\frac{1}{32}$, or half a digit. But perhaps the terms from which theſe diſtances were anciently reckoned are not very well aſcertained.

16. The mole which joined the *Pharos* at *Alexandria* to the main land is, in *Strabo* and *Ammianus*, 7 *Stadia*, which *Cæſar* † values at 900 paces, or 4500 feet. Whence the *Roman* foot is to the *Alexandrian* as 42 to 45 ſhorter by $\frac{1}{14}$ of the former. But if we ſuppoſe this *Alexandrian* foot to have been the ſame as the *Attic*, the 7 *Stadia* will make 4375 *Roman* itinerary feet, which are to 4500 as 35 to 36. The foot therefore by which *Cæſar* meaſured is ſhorter than the *itinerary* foot of *Strabo* and *Cenſorinus* in the ſame proportion. And thus we may underſtand him in his deſcriptions of bridges, encampments, lines, and military engines.

17. From theſe, and many other examples that might be given, it appears how various the *Roman* meaſures of length have been; eſpecially under the Emperors, and in the decline of the Empire. But all thoſe variations are confined within the limits of the ancient *Itinerary* foot, and that of the *Architects*, to the ſpace of about $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch; ſo that we may always make a near enough eſtimate of the diſtances which occur in the *Roman* hiſtory and geography: obſerving only not to truſt too much to the Itineraries without ſome collateral proof.

18. Let us now ſuppoſe the *Attic* foot equal to that of *Paris*, and either of them to be $\frac{5}{9}$ of the true *Cubit* uſed in the Eaſtern Nations, and the conſequences will perhaps juſtify our ſuppoſition.

The *Roman Itinerary* foot being to the *Attic* as 24 to 25, and this to the *Engliſh* as 114 to 107; the *Itinerary* foot will be to the *Engliſh* nearly as 45 to 44, greater by a little more than $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch.

And the *Engliſh* foot being to the leſſer *Roman* as 32 to 31, the *Roman Itinerary* foot will be to this laſt nearly as 19 to 18; that is, nearly as the *pes monetalis* of *Athens* to the *Engliſh*, ſee §. 13. Where it is remarkable that theſe numbers are nearly in the inverſe ratio of 5000, the number of feet in a *Roman* mile, to 5280, the feet *Engliſh* in a *Statute* mile.

Anciently the inhabitants of *Britain* had no other way of marking the diſtances of places but what had been common to all nations, which is ſtill uſed in *Germany*, and every where in ſpeaking of ſea-voyages; namely, by

* *Bernard*, pag. 133. † de Bello Civili, Lib. III. ſub finem.

the

the time of travelling or ſailing from the one to the other. They probably took the *Extent*, as well as the *Name* of a *Mile*, juſt as the *Romans* gave it them: but having at the ſame time adopted the leſſer *Roman* foot for their common *Standard*, they found about 5280 ſuch feet in the mile. And when, afterwards, the length of a mile came to be fixed by *Statute*, the ſame number of feet was retained, although the foot itſelf was now increaſed in the *Ratio* of 31 to 32. By which means, although the number of feet in our *Statute* mile exceeds the number of feet in the *Roman* mile, in the ſame proportion as the *Itinerary* foot exceeds that of the ancient *Architects*, yet the Extent of our mile is to the *Roman* mile only as 32 to 31; as our foot is to the foot of the *Architects*.

Half a quarter of this mile is a *Stadium*, or furlong, $\frac{1}{40}$ of which is a *Perch* of 16 $\frac{1}{2}$ feet, or 5 $\frac{1}{2}$ yards.

19. Mr. *Greaves* * ſays he found the ſide of the ſquare baſis of the great *Egyptian* pyramid to be 693 feet *Engliſh*; and the ſide of the ſquare ſpace which terminates it a-top 13.28 feet. From theſe, compared with the dimenſions taken within the pyramid by the ſame gentleman, and giving to the ſide of the baſe 400 cubits, Sir *Iſaac Newton* concludes the cubit of *Memphis*, according to which the pyramid was built, to have been nearly 1.73 of a foot *Engliſh*. And $\frac{5}{9}$ of this being $\frac{24}{25}$, the *Memphitic* foot (if they had uſed that meaſure) would have wanted but half an inch of our foot; that is, their cubit was the *Cubit of a Man*; taken from his *mean* ſtature, 5 foot 9 inches *Engliſh* †.

The ſide of the ſame baſe is, in *Diodorus*, 700 feet; wanting of $\frac{9}{5}$ of 400, only 20 feet.

The ſame diſtance *Strabo* makes leſs than a *Stadium*, of 600 *Grecian* feet. That is, his reduction proceeds upon the ſuppoſition that a *Cubit* is to a *Foot* as 3 to 2; and (which is true) that the foot of *Memphis* was leſs than the *Attic*.

In *Herodotus* the ſide of the baſe is 800 feet; with him, the cubit of *Memphis* (like that of *Babylon*) makes two feet; or having actually meaſured by the ſtandard of his own foot, he might find that number.

Pliny extends it to 883 feet. But from what author he copied this is uncertain, as he names no fewer than twelve who had written on the ſubject of the pyramids. Mr. *Greaves* ſuſpects the paſſage in *Pliny* to have been corrupted: the area of the baſe being, there, no more than 8 *jugera*; whereas, if the ſide is 883, it wants not much of 28. But *Pliny* might perhaps take the linear dimenſions from one author, and the ſuperficial from another; without examining whether they were conſiſtent.

* See his *Pyramidography*, and the authorities there quoted.

† It happens that the mean cubit (1.732) is to the foot Engliſh (1) as the ſide of an equilateral triangle to the ſemidiameter of the circumſcribed circle, nearly.

However

However this be, a foot, which ſhould be to the *Engliſh* foot as 693 to 883, certainly falls too far ſhort of the natural ſtandard. And the number 883 either comes from an author who had never ſeen the pyramid, and wanted to magnify its dimenſions; or, ſome author having given that number of feet for the longeſt line that could be drawn in the baſe, from angle to angle, *Pliny* might underſtand him to mean the length of the ſide. For if the ſide is taken to be a *Stadium* of 625 *Roman* feet, the diagonal will be 883.88.

20. Sir *Iſaac Newton*, from a paſſage in *Purchas*'s travels, deduces a *Babylonian* cubit equal to two feet *Engliſh*. This was of the cubits called *Royal*, $\frac{5}{9}$ of it being $1\frac{1}{9}$ of an *Engliſh* foot. And from ſeveral authorities mentioned by Dr. *Bernard* and Sir *Iſaac*, 10000 cubits of the *Eaſt* are held equal to 18000 *Attic* feet: the *Attic* foot therefore is $\frac{5}{9}$ of that cubit. And putting the *Attic* foot equal to the *Pied du Roi*, which is $\frac{1067}{1000}$ of a foot *Engliſh*, the cubit of the *Eaſt* will be to this laſt as 1026 to 535, nearly the double: that is, nearly as was found from Mr. *Allen*'s meaſures in *Purchas*.

21. *Pliny*, in Book VI. Ch. 26. writes thus of *Babylon*: "Chaldaicarum "gentium caput diu ſummam claritatem obtinuit in toto Orbe, propter "quam reliqua pars Meſopotamiæ Aſſyriæque Babylonia appellata eſt, ſex- "aginta millia paſſuum amplexa muris, ducenos pedes altis, quinquaginta "latis, *in ſingulos pedes ternis digitis menſurâ ampliore quam noſtra.*"

This paſſage may admit of two different meanings.

1. The *Babylonian* foot being $\frac{10}{11}$ of the *Roman*, and the cubit being $\frac{9}{5}$ of the foot; the *Babylonian* cubit will be to *Pliny*'s foot as 171 to 80, more than its double; which ſeems too great a proportion in a building of ſuch antiquity: for in the firſt ages, the deviations from the ſtandard of nature were not exceſſive; as we have ſeen in the inſtance of the pyramid.

Or, 2. If *Pliny* according to the inaccurate eſtimate of his country, by a *Babylonian* foot meant not $\frac{5}{9}$ but $\frac{2}{3}$ of the *Babylonian* cubit; then $\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{9}{5}$ or $\frac{6}{5}$ being nearly equal to $\frac{10}{11}$, we may reckon the difference he makes between the *Babylonian* foot and the *Roman*, to ariſe chiefly from the difference between the *Natural* and *Nominal Ratios* of the foot and cubit. Thus, ſuppoſe *Pliny* to have learned from one of his authors, that the wall of *Babylon* was 200 *Roman* feet high, which in his way of reckoning make $133\frac{1}{3}$ cubits; and to have been aſſured by another that its heighth was $111\frac{1}{9}$ cubits; he might eaſily be led to think the *Babylonian* cubit (and foot) to be to the *Roman* as $133\frac{1}{3}$ to $111\frac{1}{9}$, or as 6 to 5, nearly as 19 to 16.

22. But indeed, with reſpect to the meaſures anciently uſed in the eaſt, our *data* are ſo few, and ſo uncertain, that no very poſitive concluſion can be drawn from them. *Strabo* in his XI and in his XVII Book tells us, that when he ſailed up the *Nile*, the length of the Egyptian *Schænus* varied at every town he paſs'd; a greater number of *Schæni* often giving a leſs

diſtance, and the contrary. And *Pliny* * informs us that, though *Eratoſthenes* gave 40 *Stadia* to that meaſure, others reckoned only 32. The caſe was the ſame with the *Paraſang* of *Perſia*, which was rated at from 30 to 60 *Stadia* *. But the value of the one and the other was, by the moſt ancient and authentic account of *Herodotus*, 30 *Stadia* of *Greece*, making, as was ſaid above, the *Attic* foot equal to $\frac{5}{9}$ of the eaſtern cubit.

23. How various the meaſures of length have been in the eaſtern nations appears likewiſe from the different *Cubits* in uſe, at one time or other, among the *Arabians*; moſt of which probably had the authority of ſome ancient example, or were founded in ſome rule, ſuch as it might happen to be: the *Archetype* of all, being no doubt, the ſame in the *Eaſt* and *Weſt*; the *human Body*; of a ſtature above the common; yet not gigantic, even for the larger meaſures. For, if *ex pede*, or, *ex menſura pedali Herculem*, he muſt have been about $4\frac{6}{7}$ of 6 Engliſh feet high, or 6 feet, $4\frac{3}{4}$ inches. Such was the foot which ſeems to have been moſt univerſally uſed in the ancient Geographical meaſures. In other caſes, a foot approaching more to the *mean* natural length was ſubſtituted for it: ſuch as the *leſſer-Greek*, the *Roman*, and *Engliſh* are; being of more convenient and ready uſe in buſineſs. The foot of a full grown man was then nearly of that length, bearing a greater proportion to his ſtature than now when it is crampt by modern faſhions: as we may ſee in the beſt antique ſtatues and ſculptures, and in the paintings which have been done in that taſte.

24. The *Arabs* having, at their firſt ſettling in the leſſer *Aſia*, accuſtomed themſelves to reckon by *Feet*, and by *Cubits* of $\frac{3}{2}$ of a foot, found afterwards that their cubit was thus ſhortened of its *due* length. And that, even when they had corrected this by increaſing it in the ratio of 5 to 6, it ſtill wanted of ſome ancient ſtandards of the Eaſt, they increaſed it farther in the ratio of 14 to 15. All this was very well. But if, inſtead of thus increaſing their *firſt* cubit, which was $\frac{3}{2}$ of an *Attic* foot, their ſucceſſors came, by whatever means, to increaſe the *Attic* foot itſelf in the ſame ratio, there would then be produced meaſures exceeding their juſt dimenſions as 9 exceeds 7.

Such the *Haſemæan* cubit, in Dr. *Bernard* pag. 218, ſeems to have been. From an *Arabian* Author by him quoted, the heighth of S. *Sophia* from the cupola to the ground is 78 *Haſemæan* cubits, $\frac{9}{5}$ of which is 140.4 *Haſemæan* feet: and the ſame heighth, according to *Evagrius*, is 180 *Grecian* feet. The *Haſemæan* meaſures therefore are to the *Grecian* as 9 to 7.

Put the meaſures of *Greece* to the *Engliſh* as 114 to 107, and the heighth of S. *Sophia* will be 192 feet *Engliſh*. Now there is preſerved in an *Arabian* MS. at *Oxford*, a draught of the *Haſemæan* cubit, which is 28.9 inches *Engliſh*: whence the *Haſemæan* cubit is to the *Engliſh* foot as $2\frac{49}{120}$ to 1; and $2\frac{49}{120}$ into 78 is $187\frac{17}{20}$; wanting but $4\frac{3}{20}$ of the 192 feet *Engliſh*; which difference, making a reaſonable allowance for the ſhrinking of

* *Strabo* XI. pag. 518.

the

the MS. vaniſhes altogether. So that we may ſuppoſe the foot in *Evagrius* to be no other than the *Attic*, which we have all along made nearly the ſame as $\frac{16}{17}$ of the *Engliſh*.

25. A degree of the meridian being, according to the *Arabians*, 56 $\frac{2}{3}$ miles of 6000 feet each; if theſe are the ſame as *Attic* feet, it will follow, that the whole circumference is 204000 attic *Stadia*; leſs than the famous determination of *Eratoſthenes* (252000) by $\frac{4}{17}$, near a fourth part: which might at firſt view, create a ſuſpicion, that either we have not the true number of *Eratoſthenes*, or that he reckoned by a *Stadium* very different from the *Attic*; which would contradict, or confound every thing in the ancient Geography.

That his numbers have not been altered we are aſſured from many paſſages in *Strabo* and *Pliny*, and in all the ancient writers who mention him: and ſtill more from his own determination of the diſtance between *Rhodes* and *Alexandria*; which, *Strabo* ſays, he found to be 3725 *Stadia*; this number being very nearly to 252000, as the difference of latitude of thoſe cities (ſuppoſed to lye in the ſame meridian) is to 360 degrees.

The account given, in groſs, by *Cleomedes* * and others, is this: That *Eratoſthenes* finding by a gnomon the difference of the latitudes of *Alexandria* and of *Syene*, under the tropic, to be $\frac{1}{50}$ of the circle, and 5000 *Stadia* being given him for the terreſtrial diſtance, it followed that the circuit of the earth was 250000: and *Balfour*, who tranſlates and comments on *Cleomedes*, wonders why *Pliny* and ſo many others ſhould add 2000 *Stadia* more.

But this account is not exact; and *Eratoſthenes*'s computation had been faultleſs but for the error of the terreſtrial diſtance. In his time the obliquity of the *Ecliptic* was held to be 23°. 51′, and the latitude of *Alexandria* 30°. 58′. Increaſe this only by 1′ $\frac{1}{2}$, and the difference of latitude of *Alexandria* and *Syene* will be $\frac{1}{50\frac{2}{5}}$ nearly $\frac{5}{7}$° of a degree, or 7°. 8′ $\frac{1}{2}$, of the circle: and if this gives 5000 *Stadia*, the whole circle will be 252000. The fractional part of the denominator 50 $\frac{2}{5}$ was neglected by *Cleomedes*, but the reſult remains in all the other authors.

The account which *Cleomedes* gives of *Poſidonius*'s eſtimate is leſs tolerable ſtill. He ſays that *Poſidonius* having obſerved the ſtar *Canopus* (the next to *Sirius* in magnitude) juſt to appear in the horizon of *Rhodes*, and, at *Alexandria*, to have its meridian altitude 7° $\frac{1}{2}$, or $\frac{1}{48}$ of the circle, the diſtance of thoſe cities, ſuppoſed under the ſame meridian, being 5000 *Stadia*; he thence concluded the earth's circumference to be 48 into 5000, or 240000 *Stadia*.

But is it probable that *Poſidonius* could ſo far miſtake either the difference in latitude of *Rhodes* and *Alexandria*, or their diſtance? *Eratoſthenes* having determined the former by obſervation, and thence deduced the diſtance of 3725 *Stadia*, in proportion to his own eſtimate of the circumference.

* *Meteor. Burdigalae*, 1605.

Strabo indeed ſays, that diſtance had been rated at 5000 *Stadia*, that the ſeamen reckoned it 4000, but that *Eratoſthenes* found it as above, to be no more than 3725.

If therefore *Poſidonius*'s numbers have not been altered, he muſt, probably, have rated the difference of latitude at 6°, or $\frac{1}{60}$ of the circle, and taken the diſtance to be 4000 *Stadia*; 60 into 4000 giving the ſame reſult as the 48 into 5000 of *Cleomedes*.

But why may we not ſuppoſe *Poſidonius*, who had all the ſkill and the opportunity neceſſary for an exact determination, to have hit on the truer number of 204000 *Stadia?* which might, afterwards, be altered into 240000, by the miſtake or the officious care of ſome aſtronomical compiler; eſpecially as this would bring it nearer to the received eſtimate of *Eratoſthenes*.

26. However this be, there ariſes a queſtion, which, though not belonging to the preſent ſubject, we ſhall take this opportunity to mention, leaving it to the conſideration of Aſtronomers: " How *Canopus* ſhould, in the " times of *Eudoxus*, *Poſidonius*, and *Geminus*, be ſeen juſt to touch the hori- " zon of *Rhodes*, while it is now ſeen conſiderably elevated above it?"

Strabo's account (tranſlated) is this. " *Poſidonius* refert ſe de excelsâ " quâdam domo in urbe ab iis locis" (*ubi dies longiſſima horarum* 14 $\frac{1}{2}$) " ad " 400 ſtadia diſtante, ſtellam vidiſſe quam exiſtimaverit (τετμαίρεσθαι) eſſe " Canopum, et qui inde verſus meridiem ex Hiſpania progreſſi ſunt, fateri " ſe eum cernere. Quod etiam hiſtoria Cnidia teſtatur: eſt enim in Cnido " Eudoxi ſpecula, non multo domibus ſublimior, ex quâ is fertur Canopum " ſpectaſſe: eſſe autem Cnidum in Rhodiaco climate, in quo et Gades et " ora maritima ejus." And *Geminus* *, (Element. Cap. 2.) ſays, " Inſignis " ſtella quæ fita eſt in ſummo gubernaculo navis Argûs Canobus dicitur; " atque hæc Canobi ſtella in Rhodo difficulter videri poteſt, aut in locis " planè excelſis apparet, at Alexandriæ prorſus videri poteſt, nam feré quartâ " parte ſigni Canobus ab horizonte elevatus apparet." Which is copied by *Pliny* (Lib. II. 70.) " ut Canopus quartam feré partem ſigni ſupra terram " eminere Alexandriæ intuentibus videatur, eadem a Rhodo terram quod- " ammodo ipſam ſtringere."

Now ſuppoſing *Eudoxus* to have obſerved 360 years before the birth of *Chriſt*, the annual *Præceſſion* to be 50″, the obliquity of the *Ecliptic* 23° $\frac{1}{2}$, the latitude of *Canopus* (as in our tables) A. D. 1720, to have been 75°. 51′, and his longitude 11°. 9′ of *Cancer*, it will follow that in the age of *Eudoxus*, his longitude was 1°. 6′ $\frac{2}{3}$ of *Gemini*; and his declination 52°. 47′ $\frac{1}{3}$. He touched the horizon therefore in the latitude 37°. 12′ $\frac{2}{3}$, conſiderably to the north of *Rhodes*, or *Cnidos*; and by the refraction muſt have been ſenſibly elevated above it.

Poſidonius was old when *Cicero* viſited him, ſo that we may place the time when he obſerved the ſtars about 80 years before the birth of *Chriſt*;

* *Apud Petav. in Uranologia.*

making

making the declination of *Canopus*, at that time, 52°. 37′. And the ſtar, by refraction, might be ſeen a whole degree north of the parallel of *Rhodes*. Yet *Poſidonius*, 400 *Stadia*, more than $\frac{2}{3}$ of a degree, to the ſouth of that parallel, could only *conjecture* the bright ſtar he ſaw on the horizon to be *Canopus*.

Ptolomy obſerved about A. D. 136. So that in his time, the declination of *Canopus* was nearly 52°. 31′. And he might (with the refraction) be ſeen in N. Latitude 37° 29.

Note. The præceſſion from *Ptolomy*'s time to A. D. 1720, being 22°, the ſtar was then 10°. 51′ on the other ſide of the ſolſtitial *Colure*, that is in 19°. 9′ of *Gemini*; whereas *Ptolomy* in his *Almageſt* makes it 17°. 30′, leſs by 1°. 39′.

Proclus is thought to have compoſed his Book on the Sphere about A. D. 500. At which time *Canopus* was in the ſolſtitial colure, or nearly ſo: and his diſtance from the S. Pole 37°. 29′. Yet he ſays, according to *Balfour*'s account in his comment on *Cleomedes*, that " the ſtar was hardly to be ſeen " at *Rhodes*. " *Proclus* — fatetur videri, ægre tamen, atque ex editis tan- " tum locis:" but this ſeems plainly to be copied from *Geminus*.

Upon the whole, it is ſubmitted to the Aſtronomers whether we ought to aſcribe to this ſtar a particular motion, beſides the change of declination from the præceſſion of the *Colures*? Or, if we may not reconcile, or rather account for, the above-cited paſſages, by ſaying they have probably been copied one from another; and all of them from ſome ancient obſervation, when *Canopus* was actually ſeen on the horizon of *Rhodes*? — *horizontem ipſum ſtringere*.

If we put the latitude of *Rhodes* 36°. 20′, we ſhall find that 50 years before *Chriſt*, *Canopus* juſt touched its horizon, and might by the refraction, be ſeen near an hour and a half. And this falls nearly in the time of *Pythagoras* and other ancients, who had travelled, and begun to cultivate Aſtronomy.

As to the difference in the declination of this ſtar obſerved by M. *de la Coudamine*, in *Peru*, (1738) from that which is marked in the *Britiſh* Catalogue, (*Phil. Tranſ.*) it is ſufficiently accounted for from the *Præceſſion* alone.

Strabo indeed ſays, that diſtance had been rated at 5000 *Stadia*, that the ſeamen reckoned it 4000, but that *Eratoſthenes* found it as above, to be no more than 3725.

If therefore *Poſidonius*'s numbers have not been altered, he muſt, probably, have rated the difference of latitude at 6°, or $\frac{1}{60}$ of the circle, and taken the diſtance to be 4000 *Stadia*; 60 into 4000 giving the ſame reſult as the 48 into 5000 of *Cleomedes*.

But why may we not ſuppoſe *Poſidonius*, who had all the ſkill and the opportunity neceſſary for an exact determination, to have hit on the truer number of 204000 *Stadia*? which might, afterwards, be altered into 240000, by the miſtake or the officious care of ſome aſtronomical compiler; eſpecially as this would bring it nearer to the received eſtimate of *Eratoſthenes*.

26. However this be, there ariſes a queſtion, which, though not belonging to the preſent ſubject, we ſhall take this opportunity to mention, leaving it to the conſideration of Aſtronomers: " How *Canopus* ſhould, in the " times of *Eudoxus*, *Poſidonius*, and *Geminus*, be ſeen juſt to touch the hori- " zon of *Rhodes*, while it is now ſeen conſiderably elevated above it?"

Strabo's account (tranſlated) is this. " *Poſidonius* refert ſe de excelsâ " quâdam domo in urbe ab iis locis" (*ubi dies longiſſima horarum* 14 $\frac{1}{2}$) " ad " 400 ſtadia diſtante, ſtellam vidiſſe quam exiſtimaverit (τεκμαίρεσθαι) eſſe " Canopum, et qui inde verſus meridiem ex Hiſpania progreſſi ſunt, fateri " ſe eum cernere. Quod etiam hiſtoria Cnidia teſtatur: eſt enim in Cnido " Eudoxi ſpecula, non multo domibus ſublimior, ex quâ is fertur Canopum " ſpectaſſe: eſſe autem Cnidum in Rhodiaco climate, in quo et Gades et " ora maritima ejus." And *Geminus* *, (Element. Cap. 2.) ſays, " Inſignis " ſtella quæ ſita eſt in ſummo gubernaculo navis Argûs Canobus dicitur; " atque hæc Canobi ſtella in Rhodo difficulter videri poteſt, aut in locis " planè excelſis apparet, at Alexandriæ prorſus videri poteſt, nam feré quartâ " parte ſigni Canobus ab horizonte elevatus apparet." Which is copied by *Pliny* (Lib. II. 70.) " ut Canopus quartam feré partem ſigni ſupra terram " eminere Alexandriæ intuentibus videatur, eadem a Rhodo terram quod- " ammodo ipſam ſtringere."

Now ſuppoſing *Eudoxus* to have obſerved 360 years before the birth of *Chriſt*, the annual *Præceſſion* to be 50″, the obliquity of the *Ecliptic* 23° $\frac{1}{2}$, the latitude of *Canopus* (as in our tables) A. D. 1720, to have been 75°. 51′, and his longitude 11°. 9′ of *Cancer*, it will follow that in the age of *Eudoxus*, his longitude was 1°. 6′ $\frac{2}{3}$ of *Gemini*; and his declination 52°. 47′ $\frac{1}{3}$. He touched the horizon therefore in the latitude 37°. 12′ $\frac{2}{3}$, conſiderably to the north of *Rhodes*, or *Cnidos*; and by the refraction muſt have been ſenſibly elevated above it.

Poſidonius was old when *Cicero* viſited him, ſo that we may place the time when he obſerved the ſtars about 80 years before the birth of *Chriſt*;

* *Apud Petav. in Uranologia.*

making

making the declination of *Canopus*, at that time, 52°. 37′. And the ſtar, by refraction, might be ſeen a whole degree north of the parallel of *Rhodes*. Yet *Poſidonius*, 400 *Stadia*, more than $\frac{2}{3}$ of a degree, to the ſouth of that parallel, could only *conjecture* the bright ſtar he ſaw on the horizon to be *Canopus*.

Ptolomy obſerved about A. D. 136. So that in his time, the declination of *Canopus* was nearly 52°. 31′. And he might (with the refraction) be ſeen in N. Latitude 37° 29.

Note. The præceſſion from *Ptolomy*'s time to A. D. 1720, being 22°, the ſtar was then 10°. 51′ on the other ſide of the ſolſtitial *Colure*, that is in 19°. 9′ of *Gemini*; whereas *Ptolomy* in his *Almageſt* makes it 17°. 30′, leſs by 1°. 39′.

Proclus is thought to have compoſed his Book on the Sphere about A. D. 500. At which time *Canopus* was in the ſolſtitial colure, or nearly ſo: and his diſtance from the S. Pole 37°. 29′. Yet he ſays, according to *Balfour*'s account in his comment on *Cleomedes*, that "the ſtar was hardly to be ſeen "at *Rhodes*. "*Proclus* — fatetur videri, ægre tamen, atque ex editis tan- "tum locis:" but this ſeems plainly to be copied from *Geminus*.

Upon the whole, it is ſubmitted to the Aſtronomers whether we ought to aſcribe to this ſtar a particular motion, beſides the change of declination from the præceſſion of the *Colures*? Or, if we may not reconcile, or rather account for, the above-cited paſſages, by ſaying they have probably been copied one from another; and all of them from ſome ancient obſervation, when *Canopus* was actually ſeen on the horizon of *Rhodes*? — *horizontem ipſum ſtringere*.

If we put the latitude of *Rhodes* 36°. 20′, we ſhall find that 50 years before *Chriſt*, *Canopus* juſt touched its horizon, and might by the refraction, be ſeen near an hour and a half. And this falls nearly in the time of *Pythagoras* and other ancients, who had travelled, and begun to cultivate Aſtronomy.

As to the difference in the declination of this ſtar obſerved by M. *de la Coudamine*, in *Peru*, (1738) from that which is marked in the *Britiſh* Catalogue, (*Phil. Tranſ.*) it is ſufficiently accounted for from the *Præceſſion* alone.

II.

Of the SPHEROID-FIGURE *of the* EARTH;

With Tables ſerving to compare the obſervations concerning it.

OUR author having touched but lightly on the ſubject of the true *Figure of the Earth*, we have thought proper to add the following articles; containing a ſhort account of the ground and determination of that figure, and the uſes to which the knowledge of it may be applied.

§. 1. *Of the difference of the methods wherein* M. Huygens *and* Sir Iſaac Newton *treat this ſubject.*

Monſieur *Richer* having found, by repeated experiments, that bodies, near the equator, loſe ſomewhat of the actual gravity which they had in higher latitudes; M. *Huygens* attributes this diminution of gravity *ſolely* to the centrifugal forces ariſing from the earth's diurnal rotation; which leſſens the force of gravity, in different latitudes, in the ratio of the ſemi-diameters of the parallels of latitude, and that of the coſines of the latitudes, conjunctly: and thence by a calculation equally ingenious and accurate concludes the equatorial diameter of the earth to be to its axis as 578 to 577 *.

But Sir *Iſaac Newton*, agreeable to his principle of univerſal gravitation, adds to the diminution of gravity from the diurnal rotation, another ariſing from the figure of the earth itſelf; and from theſe two cauſes combined, he computes the diameter of the equator to be to the Axis as 230 to 229: the earth being ſuppoſed of the ſame figure that a homogeneous fluid would take, whoſe velocity of rotation round its axis was the ſame as that of the earth †.

It was neceſſary to take notice of this difference between the two methods, becauſe even very good writers ſeem not to have properly diſtinguiſhed them ‡.

§. 2. *That a homogeneous fluid revolving equably round its axis will take the figure of an oblate* Spheroid, *generated by a Conical* Semi-Ellipſis *turned round its leſſer axis.*

This propoſition, having been left undemonſtrated by Sir *Iſaac*, was for ſome time conteſted by ſeveral eminent mathematicians; and demon-

* *Huygen.* de cauſâ gravitatis. † Princip. Lib. III. Prop. 19.

‡ See *Don Juan* in his preliminary diſcourſe.

ſtrations

ſtrations were produced, that the figure of ſuch a fluid would not be that of a geometrical ſpheroid, but only approaching to it.

The fault of thoſe demonſtrations was, that they depended on *infinite ſeries*, of which the terms that were thought inconſiderable had been rejected: a liberty which ſhould be cautiouſly uſed, when the quantity to be determined is itſelf but ſmall; for, in the preſent caſe, it was this very rejection which created the difference thoſe authors found between their ſpheroid and a geometrical one.

At laſt Mr. *Mac Laurin* gave a juſt *ſynthetical* demonſtration of the propoſition, in his treatiſe of fluxions: and its truth may ſtill more eaſily be ſhewn as follows; taking for granted only the common doctrines of centripetal forces, and of the preſſure of fluids, one or two propoſitions of the *Principia*, and this plain *Axiom* in *Statics*:

That "Any number of powers being in *æquilibrio*, if they are all "increaſed (or diminiſhed) in the ſame ratio, they will remain in *æquili*-"*brio* ſtill, provided their directions are not altered."

A fluid at reſt, and undiſturbed by any external force, forms itſelf into a ſphere. In the *figure* annexed, let Pp be the diameter of ſuch a ſpherical fluid, C its Centre, PDpd a ſection of it through the centre; and imagine the whole ſphere to be divided by parallel planes into circular *Laminæ* of equal thickneſs, perpendicular to the axis Pp, whoſe common ſections with the plane of the circle PDpd are repreſented by Kx, Ny, &c. which ſhall likewiſe repreſent *columns* of the fluid communicating with a *canal* in the axis.

Then ſeeing particles of a given magnitude, in the axis, as at P, N, K, gravitate to the centre C in proportion to their diſtances from it, PC, NC, KC (by princip. I. 70) the ſums of theſe gravitations, or the preſſures of the fluids in the canals PC, NC, KC, on the centre, will be as the ſquares of thoſe diſtances. And thence, the preſſure of the fluid in the canal PN, at N, which ſupports the perpendicular column Ny, will be to that of the fluid in PK, which balances Kx, as PCq—NCq is to PCq—KCq, or as the ſquare of Ny to that of Kx: that is, *the preſſures or weights of the columns N y, K x, on the axis, are as the ſquares of their heights.*

Let now the ſphere begin to revolve on its axis Pp, till, by indefinitely ſmall accelerations, it acquires any given velocity of rotation, the fluid which riſes between the planes being ſupplied by ſyphons, at the poles P p; then, if we ſuppoſe it to have riſen according to the ordinates N Y, KX, of an ellipſe whoſe leſſer axis is Pp; when the acceleration ceaſes, *the fluid will remain* in æquilibrio, *as before it began to revolve.*

For if we conceive the perpendicular preſſure of any canal, as NY, upon the fluid in the axis, to conſiſt of two parts, one, the preſſure of the column Ny, while the ſphere was at reſt, the other that *additional* weight it has now acquired, this laſt is manifeſtly equal to the *additional* weight

in

in the canal PN added to the ſum of the centrifugal forces in the column NY. But (by *Princip.* I. 91. Cor. 3.) the ratio of the weight of PN to that of any other canal in the axis, as PK, is the ſame in the ſpheroid as in the ſphere; and therefore, by diviſion, the differences of the weights in the ſphere and ſpheroid, or the *additional* weights of the fluid in the canals PN, PK, at N and K, will be as the ſquares of Ny, Kx, or by the property of the ellipſe, as the ſquares of NY, KX.

Again, let the fluid in the columns NY, KX be divided into the ſame number of particles proportional to their diſtances from the axis, as f and F. And the *Momenta* generated by the centrifugal forces being every where as the rays of circumvolution and the magnitudes of the particles jointly; the centrifugal *Momenta* of the particles f, F, and *componendo*, the ſums of thoſe momenta in the columns NY, KX, that is the weights in thoſe columns that are ſupported by the centrifugal forces, will be as the ſquares of NY, KX; in the ſame ratio as the *additional* preſſures of the canals were found to be. And thence the ſums of theſe, or the *additional* weights in the columns NY, KX, which thoſe ſums balance, are as the ſquares of NY, KX, or of Ny, Kx. The weights therefore in the columns perpendicular to the axis, and the forces that ſuſtain them, having been all along increaſed in the ſame ratio, the fluid will remain in æquilibrio, by the *Axiom.* And the adequate effects of the rotation being thus found in the geometrical ſpheroid only, all other figures are of conſequence excluded, ſo long as the fluid continues to be homogeneous, and its parts to attract one another according to the received law *.

§. 3. *Of the figure of the Earth.*

There are two ways of determining this queſtion; one, that of Sir *Iſaac Newton*, which ſuppoſes only that we know the actual gravity of bodies at a particular place, as deduced from the *Huſgenian* doctrine of Pendulums; the quantity of centrifugal force at the equator, inferred from its ſemidiameter nearly known; and the time of a diurnal revolution, which is about 23 hours 56′: and thence the quantity that muſt be added to the actual gravity of bodies to compenſate what is taken off by the centrifugal force at a given parallel of latitude. His own theory gave him the attractive forces of a homogeneous ſpheroid at its pole and equator: and his concluſions are, that the centrifugal force at the equator is about $\frac{1}{289}$th part of the force of gravity, as *Huygens* likewiſe had computed it; and that, the earth, taking the form of a homogeneous fluid, muſt have its equatorial diameter to its axis as 230 to 229 †. Others, from

This *analytical* demonſtration the learned Mr *Kneſtner* ſeems to think all one as the *ſynthetical* by Mr. *Mac Laurin.* See a note of his to his tranſlation of *Luloff*'s book on the *Earth* from *Low Dutch* into *German.*

† *Princip.* III. 19.

more

more exact determinations of ſome of the *Data*, and by a more rigorous *Calculus*, make it as 231 to 230; and the ratio upon which the following tables are computed is very nearly the ſame as this laſt, being that of 8789 to 8751; the length of a *Second Pendulum*, at *Paris*, taken from Mr. *de Mairain*'s experiments, being of 440 $\frac{1}{10}$ *Lines*, or 12th parts of an inch, *French* meaſure. *

The other way of determining the earth's figure is by *actual menſuration*; and that, either of two *degrees* of the meridian, or of two *ſecond Pendulums*, in diſtant latitudes. For the compariſon of the arcs, or of the lengths meaſured, will (by a *rule* in the *note* ſubjoined †) give the ratio of the earth's diameters; on the *Hypotheſis*, however, that its figure is that of a geometrical ſpheroid.

* In *Phil. Tranſ.* Vol. XLVIII. Part. 1. N° 2. The ratio of the diameter is ſaid to be 226:225; probably from having aſſumed the length of a *ſecond pendulum* ſomewhat too great.

† The ſemidiameter of the equator (and radius) being 1; write S, s, for the ſines of the given latitudes, C, c, for their coſines, and L, l, for the lengths of the *Iſochrone* pendulums, Or, for the cube roots of the number of toiſes in the degree meaſured: So ſhall the ſemiaxis be the ſquare root of $\frac{c^2 l^2 - C^2 L^2}{S^2 L^2 - s^2 l^2}$.

EXAMPLES.

The degree meaſured at the polar circle (corrected for the refraction) is 57422 *Toiſes*; that of M. *Picard* (corrected) is 57183; and, taking a *mean* of the obſervations made by the French and Spaniſh gentlemen, the degree at the equator is 56754. Let theſe three meaſurements be denoted by the letters A, B, C; and the reſults will be as follows:

	Lat.	Toiſes.	Combin.	Ratio.		Lat.	Lines.	Combin.	Ratio.
A	66°.20′	57422	A B	189:188	a	66°.48′	441.17	a b	204:203
B	49°.22′	57183	A C	215:214	b	48. 50	440$\frac{17}{35}$	a c	187:186
C	0°. 0′	56754	B C	229:228	c	0°. 0′	439.2	b c	179:178

In the ſame tablet are marked the ratios of the earth's diameters computed from the lengths of three *ſecond-pendulums*, a, b, c. All which differ from one another, as the former did. And the like will happen whatever obſervations you compute from.

We make no uſe of Mr. *Norwood*'s degree of 57300 toiſes, on a twofold account (1°) His *Engliſh* meaſures have been reduced into *French* upon Mr. *Greaves*' proportion of 1068 to 1000; whereas if they had been, more truly, reduced as 114 to 107, Mr. *Norwood*'s degree would have been 57441 toiſes. Nor (2°) are *London* and *York* under the ſame meridian, as he ſuppoſed; the latter having in ſome maps 1° longitude weſt, in others 50′. Call it 1°: then the difference of latitude being 2°. 28′, if we ſuppoſe the ratio of the earth's diameters to be 231 to 230 (as it nearly is) a degree in the middle of that arc will be 57226 toiſes; which increaſed in the ratio of 2°. 28′ to 2°. 32′$\frac{1}{2}$ (the arc joining the two cities) amount to 58901, exceeding Mr. *Norwood*'s meaſure of 57441, by 1460 toiſes. If we make the difference of longitude only 50′, the error will ſtill be greater than we can impute to ſo accurate an artiſt as Mr. *Norwood*. To take it wholly away that difference muſt not exceed 21′$\frac{1}{4}$. And therefore till our maps are corrected, by an exact meridian drawn thro' the iſland, we may ſuſpect an error of about half a degree in its poſition with reſpect to the cardinal points.

Mr. *Bouguer*, wanting to correct the inaccuracy of ſuppoſing the *ſpecies* of the figure already known, which in ſtrictneſs may ſeem a begging the queſtion; propoſes to inveſtigate a figure which ſhould anſwer to any number of obſervations given. And it is plain that ſuch a figure may be found, either in his way, or by applying the *differential method*. But this would be preſuming a far greater exactneſs in the obſervations than can in reaſon be allowed, and ſacrificing all elegance of ſolution to an advantage purely imaginary: for the errors of the obſervations will generally be greater than what can ariſe from the difference between the earth's figure and that of a true ſpheroid. Beſides, the adding or taking away but one obſervation would, in M. *Bouguer*'s method, alter the *ſpecies* of the figure found, and leave us bewildered in the ſame uncertainty as before.

If therefore we would uſe, or examine any obſervations, to ſee how far they agree with the theory, we muſt retain the hypotheſis of a homogeneous earth, and compute by ſome rule like that in the foregoing note. We ſhall indeed arrive at different concluſions in almoſt every operation; as appears from the examples there given: and ratios of the earth's diameters might perhaps reſult, more differing from one another than either of them does from that aſſigned by Sir *Iſaac:* though all of them will conſpire in confirming his Theory, and in exploding the Hypotheſis of Monſieur *Caſſini*, " that the earth is elevated towards the poles."

The truth is, we may not only aſſume, without ſcruple, the ſpheroidal figure of the earth in general, but even that proportion of its diameters which reſults from the theory; nearly that of 231 to 230. For if, by the following tables, thence computed, we compare the ſeveral obſervations with one another, we ſhall better reconcile them, on this Hypotheſis, than on any other that can be deviſed. And the differences between the Theory and the Obſervations will be no greater than what may in reaſon, by the allowance of the moſt approved writers *, be aſcribed to the errors in obſerving and meaſuring: eſpecially, if we attribute, as we ought to do, ſome part of thoſe differences to particular *phyſical* cauſes, either probable, or perhaps altogether unknown.

By the obſervations of Mr. *Colin Campbell* in the iſland of *Jamaica*, the *Second-pendulum* is there conſiderably ſhorter than the theory of a homogeneous earth requires. This, Mr. *Stirling* thinks †, may be owing to " the vicinity of a great quantity of water, which being ſpecifically lighter " than land, attracts leſs in proportion to its bulk." He computes likewiſe that the odds in the pendulums is not greater than what may be

* M. *Clairaut* ſays there may have happened an error of 60, or as far as 80, toiſes, in the degree meaſured in *Lapland*. *Fig. de la Terre*, pag. 300. And *Don Juan* allows the error in his aſtronomical obſervations may amount to 6 or 8 *ſeconds*. *Liv.* VII. *Chap* 5.

† *Phil. Tranſ.* N° 438.

accounted

accounted for on that ſuppoſition. And if the ſubject be thought worth further enquiry, his conjecture will ſuggeſt an experiment, eaſily made, and deciſive as to this point; " namely, to obſerve with an invariable " pendulum, of Mr. *George Graham*'s conſtruction, firſt in an iſland, and " then in the inmoſt places of the continent, under the ſame parallel of " latitude."

But not only may we adopt the *Newtonian* ſpheroid as the *natural* figure of the earth; as the moſt *convenient* and beſt *ſuiting the obſervations:* we are even forced into this hypotheſis, by the theory and the obſervations themſelves.

Ever ſince the figure of the earth became a ſubject of mathematical enquiry, authors have been diſpoſed to attribute to the obſervations and meaſurements a higher degree of accuracy than they could well have: and thence, finding a ſenſible diſagreement between *Theory* and *Experiment*, they were led to frame various hypotheſes of the internal conſtitution of the earth, by which that diſagreement might be explained and adjuſted.

The late Mr. *MacLaurin*, and the celebrated *Alexis Clairaut*, chiefly diſtinguiſhed themſelves in this difficult enquiry; the former in his immortal work on the *method of fluxions*; the latter in the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*, and, afterwards, in a particular treatiſe printed in the year 1743. Theſe ſkilful analyſts examined all the hypotheſes they could reaſonably imagine; and altho' they miſſed of their firſt aim, *the reconciling theory and experience, from the internal conſtitution of the earth*, yet they have eſtabliſhed two propoſitions, which will bring us nearer the truth than any hypotheſis they could frame.

1°. That in a homogeneous ſpheroid, revolving on its axis, the degrees of the meridian, and the lengths of an iſochrone pendulum, will always increaſe together, from the equator to the poles; and that in ſtated aſſignable proportions.

2°. That unleſs we would run into very unnatural and extravagant ſuppoſitions, any hypotheſis of a heterogeneous earth, that increaſes the degrees above their ſtated proportion, will diminiſh the due length of the pendulum; as whatever hypotheſis lengthens the pendulum above its due proportion, will bring the degrees below theirs*.

And ſuch conſequences being manifeſtly inconſiſtent with all the beſt experiments; which generally increaſe or diminiſh, above or below their juſt proportions, the length of a degree and of a pendulum together; we muſt return to whence we ſet out, the hypotheſis of Sir *Iſaac Newton*. And what diſagreement may happen, between the theory and the obſervations, we may impute to the cauſes juſt now mentioned; and, in part, even to ſome latent prepoſſeſſions of the obſervers, which might a little affect their operations, without their ſuſpecting any ſuch thing.

* See *Fluxions* art. 667, &c. and M. Clairaut, *Fig. de la Terre.*

The gentlemen who executed the arduous undertaking of measuring the earth, appear to be men of strict honour and integrity, as well as of consummate skill: and the world is greatly indebted to them, and to the Princes who patronized and employed them. Yet may we not, without offence, subject them to some degree of a weakness common to all mankind? instances of which have been seen in almost every dispute, tho' purely speculative; and particularly in the controversy concerning the earth's figure.

M. *Cassini* was a follower of *des Cartes*, whose world Sir *Isaac Newton* was born to destroy. Was it any wonder that *Cassini* should incline to give the earth a figure opposite to Sir *Isaac*'s? or, that he should lead after him a few *Leibnitian Germans?*—The gentlemen who went to the north were genuine disciples of *Newton*; and we see they give him more than he wants; even after Mr. *Picard*'s degree is corrected. M. *Bouguer* seems shy to accept of any assistance from his predecessors: and it is perhaps for this reason that, when his operations are finished, he hesitates about the conclusion; whether he should rate the increments of degrees by the squares, or the cubes, or the fourth powers of the sines of latitude.—On his return, however, he yields, I am told, to the established *authority*, and is willing to let the ratio of the earth's diameters be that of 179 to 178.—Don *Juan*, on the contrary, lays aside his terrestrial measures, which had cost him so dear, because his degree, compared with others measured elsewhere, gave him, every time, a different conclusion; and trusting wholly to the length of the pendulum, thence brings out the difference of the semidiameter of the equator and the semiaxis to be $\frac{1}{200}$; precisely the same as that assigned by his friend M. *Clairaut* in *Phil. Transf.* N. 449—Now may not the authority, as well as the theorems of M. *Clairaut*, have had some part in this determination? other instances might be given.

But, passing this, we have to observe further, that altho' the constitution of the earth were so far from being uniform, as sensibly to affect the observations; yet rules and tables adapted to the *primary hypothesis* of a *homogeneous* earth, would still be necessary; as a *fixt standard* for readily comparing and weighing all those observations; and by which indeed any student of geography, who is master of common arithmetic and trigonometry, may reap all the fruits that can be expected from this grand enquiry; which has so long exercised the heads and hands of the learned, and has filled so many volumes, in almost all the languages of Europe.

§. 4. The

§. 4. The *Conſtruction and Uſe of* Table I. *Of the ſemidiameters of the parallels of latitude.*

CONSTRUCTION.

In the ſcheme annexed, if ZT be a tangent line to the meridian of any place Z, meeting the diameter EQ of the equator, produced, in T, and ZG perpendicular to it cut EQ in G; the angle ZGT will be the latitude of the place Z; and ZL, parallel to EQ, is the ſemidiameter of its parallel of latitude.

The numbers in Tab. I. are thoſe ſemidiameters ZL; CE being unity; and are thus computed:—*Cp, the ſemiaxis, being denoted by m, to the Log. tangent of the Co-latitude add the log.* $\frac{1}{m}$ (= 0.0018818) *So ſhall the ſine of the angle, whoſe tangent the ſum is, be the ſemidiameter ſought.*

USE.

1°. Let the latitude of Z, for example, be 56°; then ZL will be .560858; exceeding the coſine of 56° which is .559195, by .001665, or nearly $\frac{1}{336}$ part. That is, the parallel of 56° on the ſpheroid exceeds that on the ſphere by no more than $\frac{1}{336}$. And every where elſe, ſimilar arcs of the ſame parallel of latitude, on the ſphere and ſpheroid, will be ſo nearly equal, that in the *practice* of *ſailing* their difference may be neglected.

2. The ſemidiameters ZL, (zl), being every where given, we can, by a very obvious proceſs, meaſure the right line which connects any two given points Z, z, in the ſurface of the ſpheroid; whether thoſe points lye in the ſame or in different meridian planes.

§. 5. The *Conſtruction and Uſe of* Table II. *Of the lengths of an iſochronous pendulum; its length at the pole being unity.*

CONSTRUCTION.

The numbers in this table are proportional to the lines ZG perpendicular to the tangent ZT, and terminated by the greater axis of the generating ellipſe: the actual gravity of bodies, and the length of the pendulum which meaſures it, being, by Mr. *Mac Laurin*'s theorems *, proportional to thoſe lines.

They are thus eaſily computed: *To the logarithm of the Semidiameter of the parallel of lat. (in Tab. I.) add 2 log. m.* (—1.9962364.) *and from the ſum take the log. coſine of the latitude, ſo ſhall the remainder be the logarithm of ZG.*

USE.

1°. The lengths of pendulums, that have been any where obſerved, are hereby compared with the lengths which a homogenous ſpheroid requires; and the difference between theory and experience immediately found.

* Fluxions §. 640.

Thus

Thus the number in the table for the latitude of *Paris* (48° 50′) being .9981195, and in lat. 66°. 48′, at *Pello*, .999326, and the former being to the latter as 440 $\frac{17}{30}$ *lines* (M. *de Mairan*'s pendulum) are to 441.099, this is the pendulum's length due to a homogeneous earth at lat. 66°. 48′. And Mr. *de Maupertuis*, with Mr. *Graham*'s excellent inſtrument, makes it but 441.170, exceeding the former by about $\frac{1}{170}$ of an inch.

Again, by the experiments of the *French* and *Spaniſh* gentlemen at the equator, the mean length of a ſecond pendulum was there about 438.79 *lines*, which reduced to the level of the ſea they rate at 439.2 The number in the table for lat. 0° is .995677, and .9981195 is to it as 440 $\frac{17}{30}$ lines to 439.484. The theory therefore exceeds the obſervation by ſomewhat more than $\frac{1}{4}$ of a *line*.

2°. The ſame table ſerves for comparing the terreſtrial meaſures; only *the cubes of the numbers muſt be uſed, not the numbers themſelves:* the ray of curvature at any point Z being proportional to ZG *cub* *.

The numbers for the latitudes 66°. 20′ and 49°. 22′ are .999300 and .9981595; and their cubes are as 1.00000 to .9965805, or as 57422 *toiſes* (the degree meaſured by M. *de Maupertuis*) to 57225.6; exceeding Mr. *Picard*'s degree corrected (57183) by 42.6 toiſes; equivalent to an *error in the aſtronomical part of about* 2$\frac{2}{3}$ ſeconds.

And the ſame cube is to the cube of .995677 (belonging to lat. 0°) as 1.000000 to .989163, or as 57422 is to 56800 toiſes; exceeding the degree at the equator, as meaſured by the *French* and *Spaniſh* gentlemen †, by 46 toiſes.

But if we ſay as the cube of the number belonging to 49°. 22′, to the cube of .995677, ſo 57183 to 56757$\frac{4}{10}$ toiſes this number will exceed the equator-degree only by 3$\frac{4}{10}$ toiſes.

Upon the whole, we find the differences between the beſt obſervations and the theory, to be no greater than what may ariſe from errors which no obſerver, with his utmoſt care, and with the beſt inſtruments, can altogether avoid. We ſee likewiſe what an unmanageable *Proteus* the earth would prove, were we to take its figure from the obſervations alone; without correcting and comparing them.

3°. We have been told that the knowledge of the earth's figure is of importance in *levelling*, and in conveying of water; how far it is ſo will be ſeen by an example.

Suppoſe an aqueduct is to be carried ſixty minutes or miles from *lat.* 48° to *lat.* 49°, and that the effect propoſed requires, that the ciſtern or reſervoir ſhould be M feet high at *lat.* 48°. the earth being ſuppoſed to have no diurnal rotation, and conſequently, a *ſecond-pendulum* to be every where of the ſame length. Then ſeeing by Tab. II. the decrement of

* See de *Moivre*'s Miſcell. Analyt. and McLaurin §. 657.

† F. *Friſi* Diſquiſitio *Milan* 1752.

gravity

gravity from 49° to 48° is but $\frac{75}{99813}$, to balance it, we need only add to the heighth M about $\frac{1}{13308}$ of itſelf; which, if M be a ſtatute mile of 5280 feet, does not amount to five inches.

4°. To find the radius of a circle *æquicurve* to the meridian, at any given latitude, *from thrice the logarithm of the number in Tab.* II. *take* 4 *times the logarithm of* m *(which is* — 1.9924728) *the remainder ſhall be the log. of the radius ſought* *.

And hence the diſtance of two places whoſe latitudes and difference of longitude are given, may be nearly found. *Find their diſtance as if they lay in the ſurface of a ſphere, whoſe ſemidiameter is the ſame as that of the equator* CE; *and increaſe or diminiſh that diſtance in the ratio of* CE *to half the ſum of the rays of Curvature at the given latitudes.*

5°. If the moon's horizontal parallax of altitude at the equator, (or more ſtrictly, the tangent of that angle) is repreſented by its ſemidiameter CE, her horizontal parallax at any latitude ZGE, will be Zg; that is, ZG produced till it meets the diameter OH drawn parallel to the tangent ZT.

The lines Zg are computed either by taking the logarithms of the numbers in Tab. I. from the *Log.* coſines of the latitudes; or, by taking the logarithms of the numbers in Tab. II. from the logarithm of *m* (—1.9981182.) In either way the remainder will be the logarithm of Zg, the meaſure of the moons horizontal parallax for the latitude ZGE.

Thus in *lat.* 52°. The logarithm of Lg, will be—1. 998833: and thence, if at a certain diſtance of the earth and moon, the parallax at the equator is 60′, adding the *log.* of 60, there will be produced the *log.* of 59′.839, and the parallax is leſſened by $9\frac{1}{3}$ ſeconds. But this equation of the moon's parallax can never exceed $\frac{1}{231}$ of the greateſt parallax (61′ 7″) and at the pole would not riſe to 16″.

6°. To find the parallax of the moon's *Azimuth*; take from ZG (in Tab. II. $\frac{1}{331}$ of itſelf, to reduce it to radius CE, in parts of which Zg is expreſs'd; and ſubſtract the remainder from Zg found by the rule in N° 5. So ſhall their difference Gg be given. Say then as radius to the tangent of *lat.* ſo Gg to Cg, the parallax ſought.

In lat. 52° we found juſt now that Zg is .997320, (the number whoſe *log.* is—1,998833) and ZG, reduced as above, is .994032: Gg, therefore, their difference is .003288; and 1: tang. 52° : :0 .003288: 0.00420845 = Cg in parts of the equator. Which multiplied by 61′. 7″. gives it $15\frac{2}{3}$ *ſeconds* for the greateſt parallax of *Azimuth*, at 52° lat. And this is to be diminiſhed, on either ſide of the prime vertical, in the ratio of the *coſine* of the moon's diſtance from it †.

* The radius of curvature becomes equal to CE, or unity, at *lat.* 54° $47'\frac{1}{3}$.

† Whether ſuch equations of the moon's place are worth the notice of practical aſtronomers, themſelves can beſt judge.

§. 6. The

§. 6. The *Conſtruction and Uſe of* Table III.

The numbers of this table were computed from a *ſeries*, which converges very quickly to any degree of exactneſs; the difference of the earth's diameters being ſo ſmall. Its uſe is plain from the table itſelf, which, in *navigation*, is but inconſiderable; the greateſt difference of the elliptical and ſpherical arcs (at 54°. 47½) being but 176.15 *minutes* of the equator. And therefore it was thought ſufficient to compute for every 5th degree.

§. 7. *The Conſtruction and Uſe of* Table IV.

The meridional parts of the ſpheroid are calculated as follows.

The ſemidiameter of the equator (and the radius of the tables) being *unity*, write m for the *ſemiaxis*, q for $1-m^2$, s for the ſine of the given latitude: and let A be the arc whoſe *log.* ſine is $\frac{1}{2}$ *log.* q—*log.* × s. Then, *the logarithm of* log. *co-tangent of half the compliment of* A, *added to the ſum of* $\frac{1}{2}$ log. q *and the conſtant* log. 3.8984895, *will be the logarithm of the exceſs of the meridional parts on the* ſphere *above thoſe on the* oblate ſpheroid, *at the lat. whoſe ſine is* s.

The improvement of navigation having been looked on as the chief motive to the laborious and expenſive undertakings of the French academicians, no ſooner had M. *de Maupertuis'* book appeared, than *nautical* tables for the *ſpheroid* were publiſhed in a treatiſe which, the year after, was tranſlated into French, and publiſhed with additions, by the late M. de *Bremond* *.

The truth is, there was then ſome appearance of uſe for ſuch tables: it was poſſible to deviſe a ſhip's courſe in which the difference between the ſphere and ſpheroid might not be inſenſible. But the earth having, ſince that time, much contracted her equatorial diameter, ſo much that we can ſcarce do better than take her up in the ſhape in which Sir *Iſaac* left her; the numbers in this table only ſhew that ſeamen may do very well without them.

GENERAL CONCLUSION.

Altho' the effects of the earth's ſpheroid figure are thus inconſiderable in practical arts; yet are not the ſpeculations concerning it altogether uſeleſs, nor the pains that have been taken for its exact determination, labour loſt.

* Thoſe tables were computed upon the compariſon of the degree in *Lapland* (57438 T.) with that of M. *Picard* (57060); making the diameter of the equator to the axis nearly as 89 to 88.

1°. Had

1°. Had the French academy of Sciences, and the reſt of the learned world, acquieſced in M. *Caſſini*'s determination ſo ſpecioufly exhibited, the errors in *navigation* would have been really of dangerous conſequence; as the late Profeſſor *Celſius* has ſhewn: And as any one may ſatisfy himſelf by conſtructing from a rule of Mr. *Maclaurin*'s † table of meridional parts for *Caſſini's*, earth, and comparing the reſults.

2°. Theory and experience agreeing to make a very ſenſible difference between the ſpheroid of Sir *Iſaac Newton* and that of *Huygens*, Sir *Iſaac*'s theory of attraction, in conformity to which that difference ariſes, receives an undoubted confirmation.

3°. It is from the figure, and internal conſtruction of the earth, that the quantity of the equinoctial preceſſion, and of the nutations of the earth's axis are computed.

4°. This ſcurf of the earth which we inhabit, and into which we can penetrate but a little way, is compoſed of an endleſs variety of ſubſtances, differently concreted, and of different ſpecific gravities. And hence we are eaſily led to imagine a like variety of denſity throughout the whole maſs of the Earth. But there ſeems to be little ground for this notion, either in experience or in Philoſophy. All the beſt obſervations ſuit very well to a homogeneous earth: and ſuppoſing them perfectly exact, the whole difference between them and the theory, might fairly be aſcribed to an exceſs or defect of attraction, from particular accidental cauſes.

A variety of ſubſtances of different qualities and denſities was abſolutely neceſſary in the ſuperficial parts; for by their *elemental ſtrife* all things are *generated*, *preſerved*, and *deſtroyed*. But this reaſon ceaſes in the dead maſs below: to which it will be difficult to aſſign any other uſe than to ſerve as a baſis for the ſurface to reſt on, and to receive and exert the quantities of attractive force neceſſary to keep the earth and her ſatellite in their deſtined courſes. Ends which can be as well effected, and with more ſimplicity, in a homogeneous maſs, than in any other that can be aſſigned. And *God and nature do nothing in vain.*

We may therefore, for the preſent, ſafely ſet aſide the hypotheſis of a variable denſity in the internal parts of the earth, with the concluſions drawn from it. Particularly we may hold for ſuſpected at leaſt, any aſtronomical calculations that are partly founded in that hypotheſis.

† Fluxions §. 895, *&c.*

TABLE I.

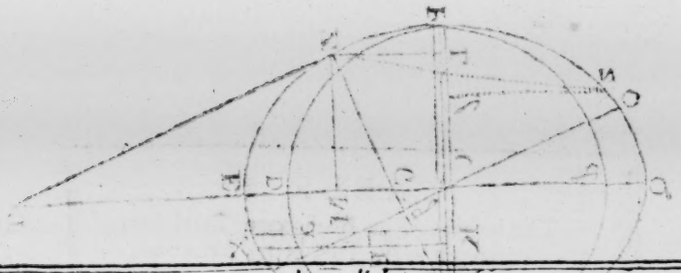
Of the Semidiameters of the Parallels of Latitude, Rad. of the Equator being 1.000000.

Lat.	Semid.	Lat.	Semid.	Lat.	Semid.
1°	.999849	31	.858150	61	.486418
2	.999396	32	.849077	62	.471059
3	.998641	33	.839746	63	.455553
4	.997585	34	.830158	64	.439907
5	.996227	35	.820317	65	.424124
6	.994569	36	.810226	66	.408209
7	.992610	37	.799886	67	.392167
8	.990351	38	.789303	68	.376004
9	.987793	39	.778477	69	.359723
10	.984936	40	.767414	70	.343331
11	.981781	41	.756115	71	.326831
12	.978330	42	.744585	72	.310230
13	.974583	43	.732826	73	.293532
14	.970541	44	.720842	74	.276742
15	.966205	45	.708637	75	.259867
16	.961576	46	.696215	76	.242911
17	.956657	47	.683578	77	.225878
18	.951448	48	.670731	78	.208775
19	.945951	49	.657677	79	.191607
20	.940167	50	.644421	80	.174376
21	.934098	51	.630967	81	.157097
22	.927746	52	.617318	82	.139766
23	.921112	53	.603478	83	.122391
24	.914198	54	.589452	84	.104977
25	.907020	55	.575244	85	.087531
26	.899540	56	.560858	86	.070058
27	.891800	57	.546299	87	.052563
28	.883788	58	.531571	88	.035051
29	.875508	59	.516678	89	.017528
30	.866961	60	.501020	90	0

TABLE II.

The lengths of an Isochronous Pendulum; its length at the Pole being 1.000000.

Lat.	Length.	Lat.	Length.	Lat.	Length.
0°	.995677				
1	.995678	31	.996818	61	.998978
2	.995681	32	885	62	.999042
3	687	33	953	63	104
4	697	34	.997022	64	164
5	709	35	092	65	223
6	723	36	164	66	281
7	740	37	236	67	337
8	759	38	309	68	390
9	781	39	382	69	442
10	806	40	456	70	492
11	833	41	530	71	539
12	862	42	605	72	584
13	894	43	680	73	628
14	928	44	755	74	670
15	964	45	831	75	709
16	.996003	46	907	76	745
17	044	47	982	77	780
18	087	48	.998057	78	812
19	132	49	132	79	842
20	179	50	207	80	869
21	228	51	281	81	894
22	280	52	354	82	.999917
23	333	53	427	83	36
24	387	54	499	84	52
25	443	55	571	85	67
26	502	56	642	86	79
27	563	57	712	87	88
28	625	58	780	88	95
29	688	59	847	89	99
30	752	60	913	90	1.000000



TAB. III.

Arcs of the Meridian in minutes of the equator to every fifth degree of Latitude.

Lat.	Spheroid.	Sphere.	diff.
	1 :	R ::	
0	:9956764	:1.000	0.
1	59'.49	60	0'.54
5	297.27	300	2.73
10	596.50	600	3.50
15	892.49	900	7.51
20	1190.27	1200	9.73
25	1488.24	1500	11.76
30	1786.49	1800	13.51
35	2085.00	2100	15.00
40	2383.85	2400	16.15
45	2683.03	2700	16.97
50	2982.54	3000	17.46
55	3282.39	3300	17.61
60	3582.56	3600	17.44
65	3883.02	3900	16.98
70	4183.75	4200	16.25
75	4484.69	4500	15.31
80	4785.81	4800	14.19
85	5087.04	5100	12.96
90	5388.33	5400	11.67

TAB. IV.

Meridional Parts on the Sphere and Spheroid to every fifth degree of Latitude.

Sphere.	Spheroid.	diff.
0'.	0'.	0
60.00	59.49	0.51
300.38	297.80	2.58
603.07	597.92	5.15
910.46	902.78	7.68
1225.14	1214.96	10.18
1550.00	1537.47	12.53
1888.37	1873.53	14.84
2244.29	2227.26	17.03
2622.69	2603.60	19.09
3029.94	3008.94	21.00
3474.47	3451.71	22.76
3967.97	3943.62	24.35
4527.37	4501.62	25.75
5178.81	5151.86	26.95
5965.92	5937.97	27.95
6970.34	6941.64	28.70
8375.19	8345.90	29.29
10764.62	10734.99	29.63
∞	∞	29.752

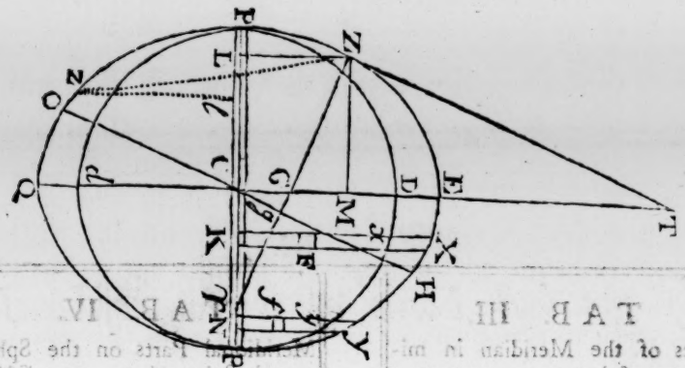
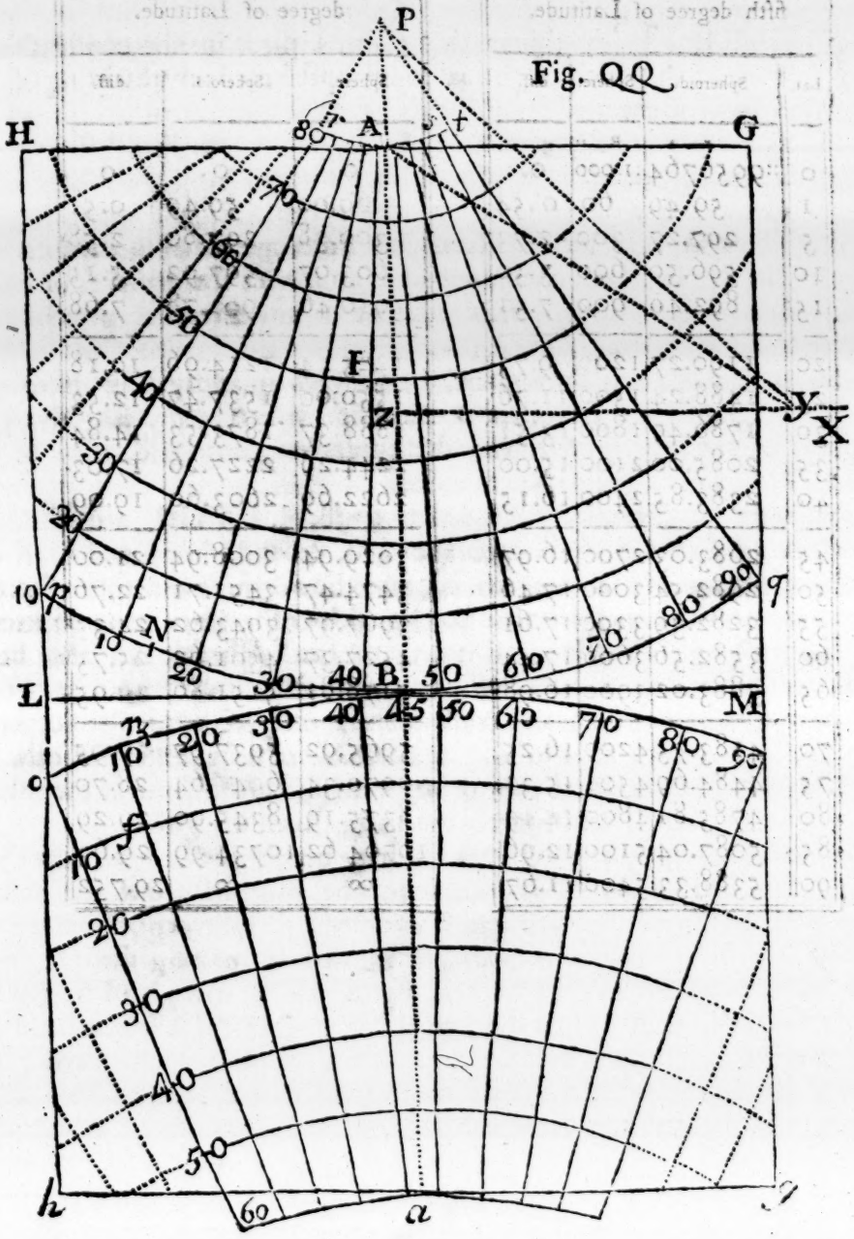
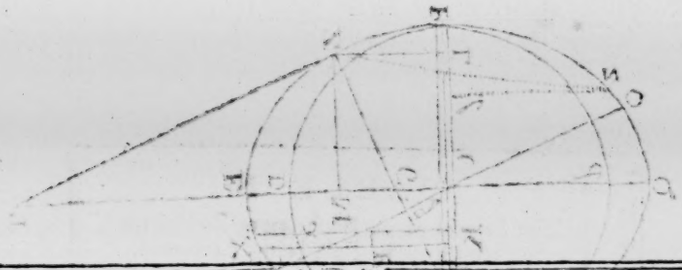


Fig. QQ





TAB. III.

Arcs of the Meridian in minutes of the equator to every fifth degree of Latitude.

Lat.	Spheroid.	Sphere.	diff.
	e : 1	R ::	
0	::9956764	:1.000	0.
1	59'.49	60	0'.54
5	297.27	300	2.73
10	596.50	600	3.50
15	892.49	900	7.51
20	1190.27	1200	9.73
25	1488.24	1500	11.76
30	1786.49	1800	13.51
35	2085.00	2100	15.00
40	2383.85	2400	16.15
45	2683.03	2700	16.97
50	2982.54	3000	17.46
55	3282.39	3300	17.61
60	3582.56	3600	17.44
65	3883.02	3900	16.98
70	4183.75	4200	16.25
75	4484.69	4500	15.31
80	4785.81	4800	14.19
85	5087.04	5100	12.96
90	5388.33	5400	11.67

TAB. IV.

Meridional Parts on the Sphere and Spheroid to every fifth degree of Latitude.

Sphere.	Spheroid.	diff.
0'.	0'.	0
60.00	59.49	0.51
300.38	297.80	2.58
603.07	597.92	5.15
910.46	902.78	7.68
1225.14	1214.96	10.18
1550.00	1537.47	12.53
1888.37	1873.53	14.84
2244.29	2227.26	17.03
2622.69	2603.60	19.09
3029.94	3008.94	21.00
3474.47	3451.71	22.76
3967.97	3943.62	24.35
4527.37	4501.62	25.75
5178.81	5151.86	26.95
5965.92	5937.97	27.95
6970.34	6941.64	28.70
8375.19	8345.90	29.29
10764.62	10734.99	29.63
∞	∞	29.752

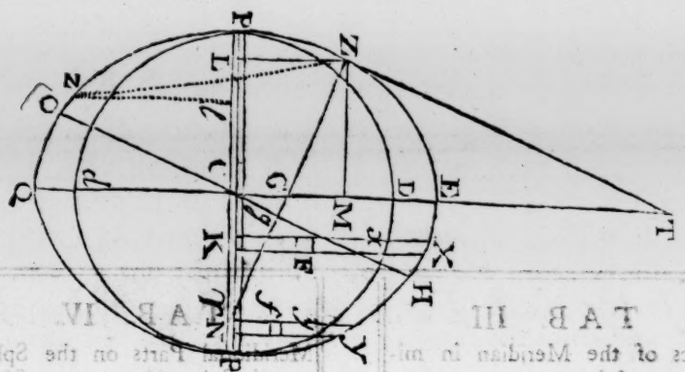
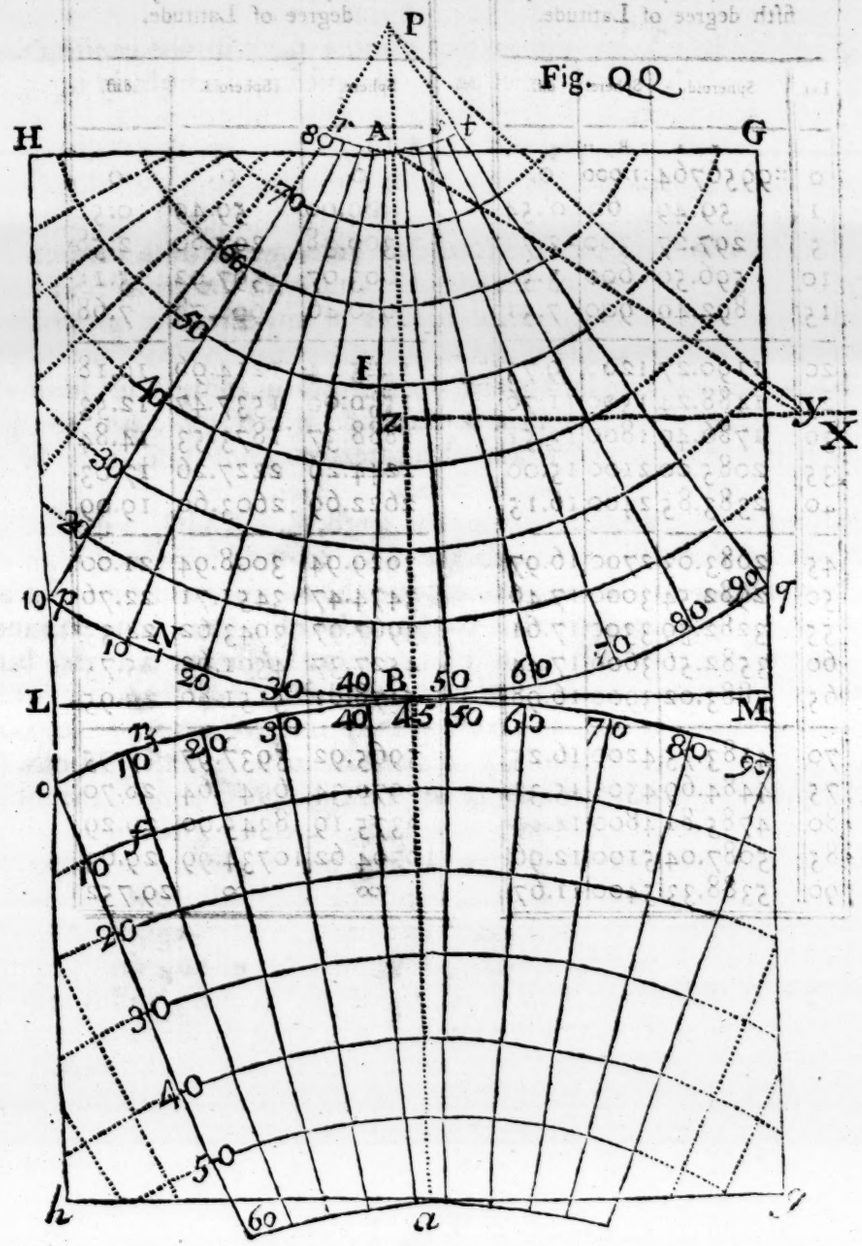

P
Z
N
O
Q
L
C
G
D
E
M
K
F
T
X
H
p
y

Fig. QQ


P
H
G
A
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
I
Z
y
X
p
N
q
B
L
M
n
0
h
a

III.

Of the beſt Form of a Geographical Map.

THERE are *Six* things that claim a place in the conſtruction of a map, and which ought all to be repreſented, as nearly as poſſible, in their juſt dimenſions.

1°. The *latitudes* of places.
2°. Their *longitudes*.
3°. Their *diſtances*:
4°. Their *bearings*, or the *Rumb*-line from one place to another.
5°. The *angles* in which the *meridians* interſect the *parallels* of latitude.
6°. And laſtly, the *ſuperficial* content of any *Zone*, or part of a zone, that is to be deſcribed.

To exhibit all theſe on a plane, in the juſt quantity they have on the globe, is impoſſible: but that conſtruction which repreſents the greateſt number of them *accurately*, and the others very *nearly* ſo, may be called the beſt form of a geographical map.

In the *Philoſ. Tranſact.* of the year 1758, §. LXXIII, a method of deſcription is propoſed, by which the firſt, ſecond, fifth, and ſixth of the above conditions are ſtrictly ſatisfied, and the *bearings* and *diſtances* are likewiſe very near the truth, unleſs the breadth of the given zone be exceſſive.

The method is founded in this; that a *conical* ſurface is a *mean* between a *convex* ſurface and a *plane*. In one direction, it accommodates itſelf to the curvature of a globe, and conſequently receives a truer projection than a plane ſurface can; after which it is capable of being extended on a plane, the diſtances between any two points remaining the ſame as they were on the conical ſurface, that is nearly the ſame as on the globe.

From this principle ſeveral rules may be derived; which the reader may ſee in the above *tranſaction*, and the *addenda*. But the following may be recommended as the eaſieſt in practice, and at the ſame time ſufficiently exact; as any one may ſatisfy himſelf by making the compariſon.

1. The artiſt having fixt upon the depth he can give his map from north to ſouth, let him draw the line AB (Fig. QQ.) equal to it; and divide this line into as many equal parts as there are degrees between the extreme latitudes. As if the extreme latitudes are 10° and 80°, the line AB is to be divided into 70 equal parts.

2. From

2. From Z, the middle latitude, raiſe the perpendicular ZX, and from the point A draw AY meeting AX in Y, and making the angle ZAY equal to the complement of half the difference of latitude. Thus in our example, half that difference being 35°, the angle ZAY will be 55°. Then draw YP making the angle AYP equal to the complement of the greater latitude, and cutting AB produced in P, ſo ſhall the point P be a common centre from which all the parallels of latitude are to be deſcribed as in the figure.

Or, if you had rather uſe numbers; *multiply the co-tangent of half the difference of the extreme latitudes by the co-tangent of the middle latitude, and the product by half the depth of your map, in inches*; ſo ſhall this laſt product be the number of inches from the middle of the map to the centre of the parallels.

Thus the depth of the map being 50 inches, and the extreme latitudes being 10° and 60°, half the diff. of lat. is 25°, and the mean lat. 35°; whoſe co-tangents are 2.144507 and 1.428148; their product is 3.06267; and this multiplied by 25 gives, for the diſtance ſought, 76.567 inches.

3. Take the angles of *longitude*, as BPp, BPq, and their ſubdiviſions, in proportion to the angles on the globe, which they are to repreſent, as the ſine of the middle latitude is to radius; and through the points of diviſion draw the meridians P10, P20 &c. Thus if pBq is to repreſent 90° of longitude. The middle latitude in our example being 35°, whoſe ſine is .7071, to Rad. 1.0000; the angle pPq will be 90°× .7071 or 63°. 38′, and any angle of 10°, will be about 7°. 4′½.

4. If it be required that the map ſhould ſerve likewiſe for a *ſea-chart*; to the common pole P, from as many centers as is neceſſary, draw as many *logarithm-ſpirals* as are neceſſary; and they will be ſo many rumb lines on the map, each of them cutting all the meridians in the ſame angle; and directing a ſhip's courſe to as great a degree of exactneſs as is attainable in the practice of ſailing.

Theſe may be deſcribed *mechanically*, by a rule deduced either from one of Mr. *Cotes*'s propoſitions, or from a caſe of *Mercator-ſailing*.

5. Hitherto the whole map has been ſuppoſed to lye on the ſame ſide of the equator. If it does not, there ariſe two caſes.

Firſt, when the zones, to the north and ſouth of the equator, are of a ſmall breadth and nearly equal: then we may, without ſenſible error, extend the leſſer to an equality with the greater, and project on a Cylindric ſurface cutting the globe in the two circles of *mean latitude*.

Secondly, if the zones differ much in breadth, we are to deſcribe the northern as above directed (the arc pBq, in our figure, now repreſenting 90° of the equator) and by the ſame rules, the ſouthern zone is to be deſcribed on the other ſide of the tangent LM.

Only it is to be obſerved, that the diſtance of two places (F, f,) that lye on different ſides of the equator, cannot, on this map be meaſured *immediately*.

diately. We muſt firſt find the point N in the equator where a great circle through F, f, cuts it; which is done by an eaſy conſtruction; or by the following analogy.

As the ſum of the tangents of the two latitudes is to their difference: ſo is the tangent of half the difference of longitude to the tangent of an angle, which added to half the difference of longitude will determine the point N.

Thus F being in N. lat 50°, and f in S. lat. 10° and their diff. of longitude 30°, the arc found will be 26°¼; which are to be counted off on the equator from the meridian of F, to find the point N. After which the right lines FN, fn, join'd and added, will give the diſtance from F to f near enough to the truth, unleſs the zones are very broad.

Note, *Ptolemy*, or whoever wrote the laſt chapter, Book I. of his geography, propoſes to deſcribe the then known world, from the *Parallel* of *Thule* in 63° north, to the parallel oppoſite to that of *Meroe*, with 180° of longitude; and his method ſo far reſembles this, that the meridians are right lines drawn through a centre of the parallels.

But it muſt be owned, that as his rule is not general, being adapted only to that particular purpoſe; ſo neither is it ſo accurate as it might have been, from principles well known to *Ptolemy*. The zone, particularly, which lies beyond the equator, is delineated in plain contradiction to the rules of art.

Senſible of thoſe defects, the author gives, in the ſequel of that ſame chapter, a rule which he prefers to the other; as indeed it might ſuit his purpoſe better. But this preference ſeems to have been one cauſe why geographers have ſo long copied *Ptolemy* and one another, to the neglect of a method which, in moſt caſes, is more eaſy and elegant, as well as more exact. Some of our beſt artiſts have, for more than a century paſt, ſeen the advantages of it; and the ingenious Mr. *Kitchin* hath generally uſed it, in the maps with which the following volumes are enriched.

THE

OF THE UTILITY OF GEOGRAPHY.

THE Utility of GEOGRAPHY is very conſiderable, and deſerves a particular diſcuſſion; but this, according to the plan I have laid down, muſt not be too long. What I ſhall chiefly dwell upon is, its principal uſe, by obſerving 'That the knowledge of 'GOD, the Creator and Preſerver of all things, is eminently 'promoted by this Science.'—Our Earth, indeed, is but a ſmall, yet no contemptible, part of his glorious works; and as the whole Univerſe taken together demonſtrates the Exiſtence of a GOD, ſo the Earth in particular exhibits the moſt indiſputable proofs of that great Truth. For wherever we turn our eyes, we cannot but obſerve evident traces of the power, wiſdom, and goodneſs of the Supreme Being. Such an attentive obſervation of the wonders that ſurround us is more incumbent on us, and the more to our advantage, as we cannot ſo perfectly view and admire thoſe parts of the Creation that are detached from the Earth we inhabit; I mean the ſhining orbs that ſtrike the admiring eye, on viewing the heavens with all their magnificent apparatus; which are at too great a diſtance for us to have any perfect knowledge of them, or to diſcover their nature and ſymmetry, ſo as to enlarge our conceptions of the great Creator. Our Earth, however, is at preſent ſufficient to impart to us that knowledge of GOD which is attainable by conſidering the works of nature; for it is ſo full of the ſtupendous works of GOD, that even after the moſt aſſiduous enquiries and moſt careful obſervations, we have a thorough inſight but into the leaſt part of them; nay, properly ſpeaking, we have not a perfect knowledge of any ſingle part of the Creation. We may therefore juſtly conclude that if this terraqueous Globe, which is but a very ſmall portion

of the WHOLE, is ſtored with ſo many glorious inſtances of the Divine wiſdom and power that even a general ſurvey of it proves ſo laborious, ſo difficult and extenſive a taſk; we might ſay infinitely more, could we but attain ſuch a general knowledge of the Univerſe, as we have gradually acquired of this our Earth.

GOD made the Earth and every thing that is in it. It was not his deſign to leave it 'empty and void;' but he ſtocked it with animate and inanimate Beings. The former, indeed, exceed the latter in excellence; but all of them taken together are admirable, and aſtoniſhingly glorious. On every ſide we ſee great and ſtupendous works, either of nature or art, or both at the ſame time. GOD is indiſputably the author of both. The beauty, luſtre, pomp, and magnificence of Nature diſplay his creating and preſerving power; and even the ſkill of man in various arts and ſciences, is the gift of GOD. The nature or conſtitution of the ſeveral parts and regions of the earth is far from being every where the ſame, but is wonderfully diverſified; every country having a different temperature of air, with different plants, fruits, and animals. All theſe things exiſt for the ſake of Men, who, according to the wiſe appointment of GOD, are deſcended from one common Father, whoſe numerous poſterity are ſpread over the whole face of the Earth, and between whom, in proceſs of time, a wide difference is ariſen, with reſpect to their outward form and manner of life. Now as innumerable families deſcended from one pair, and from theſe again many and great nations and people derive their origin, GOD allotted to each of them the 'bounds of their habitations;' for the limits and extent of their countries are grounded neither on chance, nor on the choice of the nations themſelves, but on an almighty and all-wiſe-Providence, of which perſons of attention and reflection may very ſoon be convinced.

The different political conſtitutions and all their changes and revolutions are likewiſe owing to GOD's ſole appointment; which, as King and Lord of the Univerſe, he regulates by the moſt unerring wiſdom, and determines the mutual relation, which, from time to time, they bear to each other. By his all-wiſe, governing Providence alſo, the moſt diſtant parts of the known world are connected by a mutual commerce. One Nation has been of great ſervice to another towards attaining the knowledge of the true God, and our Saviour Jeſus Chriſt; has inſtructed it in arts and ſciences; and directed its progreſs in learning and knowledge. The ſuperfluity of one country abundantly ſupplies the wants of another: And there is not a ſingle country which produces ſuch plenty of every thing as to ſupply its own neceſſities, conveniences, and pleaſure, and to be able entirely to ſubſiſt without the reſt of the world. On the contrary, one country may ſtand in need of another, either to ſupply its wants, or to take off its ſuperfluities: And as every Nation is concerned for its own welfare, the common and general advantage of all is promoted, whether they deſign it or no.

It

It was undoubtedly by the direction of Providence, that men took occaſion, both in ancient and modern times, to ſend out greater or ſmaller colonies from among them into the moſt diſtant countries, in order to get ſubſiſtence, or to raiſe their fortunes. The mixture of people ariſing from ſuch tranſmigrations has produced a ſimilitude of manners and a cloſer union among them; which indeed gave occaſion to the propagation of many vices, but at the ſame time of many virtues.

Let us in the next place conſider, how various nations have improved and cultivated their native land, or conquered provinces; what impregnable towns and fortreſſes, what magnificent and ſurprizing edifices they have built; what elegant gardens and other embelliſhments they have planned, and we muſt be aſtoniſhed at the intellectual powers, the noble talents, and amazing ſkill, which God has graciouſly imparted to men. How few and inconſiderable were the cities and towns in *Denmark*, *Germany*, and other kingdoms a thouſand years ago? But, without going ſo far back, if we look into the annals of modern times; we ſhall find that about two hundred, or a hundred, or even fifty years ſince, here ſtood a deſolate and waſte region, there an extenſive dreary wood; here rugged and deſart rocks, and there an inacceſſible fen or moraſs, in places which are now adorned with a populous and elegant town, a magnificent palace, a ſtrong caſtle, or other place of defence. Nature has been thus ſo far ſubdued and conſtrained by art and indefatigable induſtry, as to make all this appear next to a wonder in the eyes of the intelligent and experienced ſpectator. With what admiration and ſurpriſe muſt we view theſe great and ſumptuous works? Are they to be conſidered merely as the effects of human efforts?—By no means: They have only lent their hands to the work; by which inſtruments GOD, who has girded them with ſtrength, and furniſhed them with wiſdom and ſkill, produced theſe wonders. Had theſe things been contrary to his ſupreme will, how eaſy had it been for infinite power to have defeated all human endeavours; and how often indeed has ſuch an intervention actually happened? As for many famous cities founded in ancient, middle, and modern ages, we may now aſk with aſtoniſhment where are they?—Conſumed with fire from heaven, laid waſte by cruel enemies, ſwallowed up by the earth or the ſea; covered by mountains, or buried in the vaſt abyſs. All this hath the LORD done, the GOD who made the heavens and the earth. But from whence do we learn this truth?—It is from the following conſideration. The overthrow of ſeveral renowned and populous cities appeared to the inhabitants and the reſt of the world, and even to thoſe who were employed as inſtruments to deſtroy them, altogether improbable and incredible. But God had foretold and expreſly threatened, that he would accompliſh the deſtruction and deſolation of ſome of thoſe cities. That the fate of *Babylon*, *Tyre*, *Jeruſalem*, &c. happened in conſequence of ſuch predictions, we are well aſſured.

And though God did not by his prophets foretel the downfal of other cities, that have been deſtroyed in a ſignal manner; yet from theſe inſtances we muſt acknowledge his all-governing Providence to have been the efficient cauſe of ſuch events. I might indeed enlarge on this important ſubject, which would, probably, be both uſeful and entertaining, if my plan would admit of it: But this ſhort ſketch is ſufficient to prove the propoſition which I would chiefly inculcate to my readers, namely, That a good ſyſtem of Geography exhibits evident proofs of, and arguments for the doctrine of God's Providence; and that conſequently it ought to be ranked among the moſt uſeful and neceſſary books, as of equal importance with any theological treatiſe written on that ſubject. It is much to be lamented that Geography has hitherto been ſo little conſidered in this light, and ſo ſeldom, if at all, inculcated, on the minds of youth in particular, with that view. On the contrary, the ſtupendous works of God diſplayed in the Creation, are too much diſregarded by the generality; though they contain the firſt principles by which we attain the knowledge of a God, and to which we are ſo often referred in the holy Scriptures. The rational and ſerious conſideration of the Creation ſupplies us with exalted ideas of God; and if to this we join the comfortable doctrine of God's Reconciliation to guilty man by the mediation of Chriſt, he will appear to us an object ſo highly deſerving of our love, as neceſſarily to produce the ſtrongeſt affiance in him, and make us reſolve to conform our lives to his ſacred will from a principle of gratitude. It is therefore my deſire and requeſt that all, who ſhall in theſe ſheets read the deſcription of the kingdoms, ſtates, and cities of the world, would reflect, that it is not an account of the works of men, but rather of the works of GOD, the Creator and Preſerver of the world; and, indeed, of the ſmalleſt part of the Univerſe or amazing WHOLE. In particular, I could wiſh that the inſtructors of youth would labour to inſpire their pupils with an aweful conception of that tranſcendently glorious and infinitely wiſe Being, of whoſe immenſe domain this Earth conſtitutes ſo inconſiderable a part, and whoſe vaſſals Princes, Kings, and Emperors are; a conception, I ſay, ſuitable to his grandeur, and fit to inſpire us, his creatures, with admiration, complacency, and delight.

Moreover, the Utility of Geography is ſtill more extenſive. It is in general entertaining, uſeful, and neceſſary to bring us acquainted with the Earth on which we live. It muſt be very diſagreeable, not to ſay worſe, to be ignorant of the ſituation, *&c.* of foreign Countries when, in converſation, or peruſing hiſtories, we hear of battles, ſieges, travels by land, voyages by ſea, and other remarkable occurrences. For, without a competent knowledge of Geography, it is impoſſible for us to form to ourſelves a juſt or uſeful idea of ſuch things. Even many learned men are ſtrangers to their own country and native place, not to mention foreign countries; and how mortifying a circumſtance is this? Were children, inſtead of the idle

idle ridiculous tales of ghoſts and fairies, early inſtructed in the knowledge of the Earth we inhabit, how great would be the advantage ariſing from ſuch inſtructions? In ſhort, Geography is a ſcience not only uſeful for all, but indiſpenſibly neceſſary to ſome perſons. A Sovereign muſt needs be acquainted with the ſtate of his own and of foreign countries; particularly of the neighbouring kingdoms: And the more accurate his knowledge of them is, the greater advantage he will reap from it. None can pretend to be a Stateſman without a competent ſkill in Geography: For, how ſhould he come to the knowledge of the weakneſs and ſtrength of the dominions of his ſovereign, and of the princes with whom he is connected by alliances, without a treatiſe on political Geography? Such books are the moſt neceſſary and indiſpenſible in his library. But it may, perhaps, be objected againſt this ſcience, That deſcriptions and maps are betrayers of the countries they repreſent, by ſupplying miniſters of ſtate and Generals of armies with a knowledge, which often proves very prejudicial to thoſe countries. This pretended objection has no appearance of reaſon, unleſs ſuch deſcriptions are too explicit and circumſtantial; but in general is groundleſs and trifling. For never was a country conquered by means of a treatiſe on political Geography; but power and conduct are generally neceſſary for the conqueſt or defence of a ſtate, though a juſt knowledge of the Geography of the country to be attacked muſt be of uſe to the aſſailant. When an enemy has once conquered a country, he will hardly be at a loſs to force it to contributions, nor to acquire an exact knowledge of its ability or riches, though he be not furniſhed with a geographical treatiſe in which theſe particulars are accurately deſcribed. But ſuppoſing that geographical deſcriptions ſhould ſerve the enemy as a guide into the dominions which they intend to attack, they may be of the ſame ſervice, not only to one or two, but to all ſovereigns and commanders; ſo that this advantage is general, and does not cauſe, or promote, wars and invaſions. However the ſafety or danger of countries is far from depending on the political deſcriptions of them, which in other reſpects, are of great uſe and advantage to mankind. The Divine can neither fully underſtand nor juſtly explain the holy Scriptures, nor have his mind duly impreſſed with a ſenſe of God's power exhibited in his glorious works, nor make a proper diſplay of thoſe works to others, if he be wholly unacquainted with Geography. The natural Philoſopher may likewiſe employ this ſcience with uncommon advantage for his philoſophical purpoſes. To the Merchant, whoſe commerce is of ſo extenſive a nature, the knowledge of Geography muſt be of indiſpenſible neceſſity. Laſtly, what benefit may not a Traveller derive from a well written ſyſtem of Geography? It will inform him of all the remarkable objects in every city and country, and conſequently will point out to him all thoſe places that are worthy of his notice and obſervation. In a word, Geography will prove an uſeful amuſement to every curious and inquiſitive mind.

INTRO-

INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY.

CHAP. I.

Of GEOGRAPHY *in General.*

§. 1. BY GEOGRAPHY we underſtand 'An authentic and accurate 'account of the natural and civil ſtate of the known parts of 'the Earth.' This definition contains two diſtinguiſhing characteriſtics of Geography.

§. 2. One of theſe characteriſtics relates to the object of Geography, which is, 'The natural and civil ſtate of the known world.' Now as the Earth conſtitutes but a part of the Univerſe, ſo Geography is properly but a part of Coſmography, with which it is intimately connected, and is very much illuſtrated by it. Geography treats of the terraqueous Globe as far as it is known to us: For towards the north and ſouth Poles are countries either unknown *, or of which we have ſcarcely any further knowledge than that they merely exiſt. The exiſtence of other countries beſides the known parts of the Earth is bare conjecture, as no certain account of them has been given, to this day. The known parts of the Earth are to be conſidered as well in their 'natural as civil ſtate.' In the *natural* deſcription is comprehended, *firſt*, either the mathematical conſideration of the Earth as it conſtitutes a planetary orb, and under this head we examine its figure, magnitude, ſituation and proportion, *&c.* to the other bodies that conſtitute the Univerſe; or, *ſecondly*, the knowledge of what is moveable and immoveable upon and under the ſurface of the Earth, which we may denominate the proper *phyſical* Geography. Of both theſe I ſhall hereafter treat more at large in diſtinct chapters of this Introduction. As for the *civil* or political ſtate of the Earth, we ſhall conſider its many and various civil conſtitutions; which we ſhall not only examine in general, ſo as to give the reader a juſt notion of the extent, ſtrength, inſtitutions, forms of government, inhabitants, *&c.* of it; but alſo to deſcribe what is peculiar to each mode of polity and government, with its eccleſiaſtical ſtate; and likewiſe the cities, towns, forts, caſtles, villages, and other places and foundations that claim any attention.

* Theſe unknown parts are called by Geographers *Terra incognita Auſtralis, Boreales*, &c.

This

This is the principal deſign of my GEOGRAPHY or Deſcription of the Earth; and therefore any further preamble is unneceſſary.

§. 3. The other diſtinguiſhing characteriſtic in the above definition of Geography is, that it gives an 'authentic and accurate account' of all theſe particulars. Such an account may be either more conciſe, or more diffuſe, according to the ſeveral plans laid down by different authors; but muſt every where exclude all unintereſting and trifling particulars, which might ſwell Books of this kind to an uncommon and unweildy ſize, leſt more uſeful and important accounts be precluded by trivial ſubjects, mere empty words, indecent abuſe, irony, ſarcaſm, and religious diſputes. Hence it appears that the more ſignificant, expreſſive, grave, and ſimple the author's manner of writing, or the diction is, conſiſtently with perſpicuity and elegance, the better and the more ſerviceable his geographical treatiſe may be deemed. But his endeavours to write in a conciſe and expreſſive manner muſt not derogate from the authenticity and accuracy of the accounts; for a ſyſtem of Geography ought to contain more than a chart or map, with a bare liſt of names. The exactneſs and authenticity of the accounts alſo require a proper arrangement or diſpoſition, which muſt not be arbitrary, whimſical or capricious, but adapted to the conſtitution of the ſeveral countries, and the ſituation of their ſeveral parts and diviſions, ſo as to facilitate the knowledge of them to the reader. But the principal head of Authenticity conſiſts in the geographer's not framing deſignedly any fictitious accounts, nor credulouſly taking up any fables on truſt; but, as well in the choice of the ſources from whence he draws his accounts, as in the uſe of them, proceeding with caution and deliberation, ſo that his ſyſtem of Geography may be as juſt and authentic as poſſible. His ſources muſt not be other general ſyſtems of Geography, but accurate deſcriptions of ſingle countries and provinces, and his own aſſiduous enquiries. Among the chorographical and topographical deſcriptions he ought to give the preference to ſuch as have been executed on the ſpot in thoſe ſeveral countries, by perſons of abilities and impartiality, with a proper degree of care; and indeed he ſhould not uſe any other accounts but theſe, whether they be printed or communicated to him in manuſcript. And among theſe the later accounts are more ſerviceable than the old; but the latter ſhould at the ſame time be conſulted and made uſe of. In examining theſe helps many tedious and irkſome critical enquiries muſt be undertaken with unwearied patience, and unremitting care and aſſiduity; either for diſcovering truth amidſt the darkneſs, obſcurity, and doubt in which it may happen to be involved; or, where the helps prove contradictory, to come as near it as poſſible. The author's own diligent and cautious enquiries are likewiſe of great uſe; and the opportunities for making ſuch enquiries are to be as advantageouſly employed, as they are eagerly to be ſought after.

§. 4. Ich-

§. 4. Ichnographical deſcriptions of the Earth, which we call Maps, are an important and neceſſary help to the knowledge of Geography. Theſe exhibit to the eye either both hemiſpheres of the Earth, or the four principal parts, or certain diſtricts of it. A collection of theſe maps is called an ATLAS. That ſuch maps may be exact and ſerviceable, the ſituation of countries with reſpect to the cardinal points, their extent, and the diſtance of places from each other ſhould be accurately determined in them, by aſtronomical obſervations carefully made, and by juſt admeaſurements and ſcales, which ſhould be accompanied with authentic hiſtorical accounts, as the baſis of the whole. The method of projecting or delineating maps ought likewiſe to be juſt and rational, ſo as to exhibit a true repreſentation of the Earth, and its greater and ſmaller parts. According to the Inſtitutes of the *Coſmographical Society*, the ſtereographic projection on the horizontal plane is the beſt adapted to that purpoſe, as it bears the greateſt reſemblance to the ſphere. When maps are delineated in great and ſmall according to theſe rules, they are engraven on copper plates, printed off on paper or parchment, and carefully and neatly painted with various bright colours, to mark the limits and confines of adjoining countries that they may the better ſtrike the eye. This manner of illuminating maps is called the *methodical*, and was firſt attempted by *John Hubner* the elder, and afterwards improved by Dr. *E. D. Hauber*, to whom we owe the firſt illumination of the four parts of the world, according to the different religions and languages of the inhabitants, and alſo of *Germany*. Laſtly, this art was farther perfected by M. *Schatz*.

It is not known for certain who was the firſt inventor of geographical tables or maps. *Euſtathius* relates, that *Seſoſtris*, King of *Egypt*, cauſed the countries he paſſed through to be delineated in a chart, which muſt have been the moſt ancient map of any we read of. There ſeem, indeed, to be ſome traces of a map in the holy Scriptures, namely, in *Joſhua*, chap. xviii. ver. 8, 9. In ſucceeding ages the ancients, particularly the *Greeks* and *Romans*, delineated ſeveral other maps or charts. Antiquity has handed down to us only thoſe maps which *Agathodæmon* made, to illuſtrate *Ptolemy*'s Geography, and the celebrated *Peutinger*'s Table or map, which was found by *Conrad Celtes*, and purchaſed by the learned *Conrad Peutinger* a Burgomaſter of *Augſburg*, from whom it derives its name. This ancient map was publiſhed and explained by the celebrated *Beatus Rhenanus* and *Marcus Velſerus*. The laſt ſurvivor of the *Peutinger* family diſpoſed of the original to *Paul Kuhze*, a bookſeller at *Augſburg*, in lieu of payment for ſome books; and *Kuhze* ſold it to Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy*, after whoſe death it came into the Emperor's library at *Vienna*, together with the prince's collection of books. *Francis Chriſtopher* von *Scheyb* has delineated it more accurately than had been done before, on twelve copper-plates, which he publiſhed in 1753; and this is the neweſt and beſt edition of that curious

curious piece of antiquity. This Table is a map or delineation of a journey through *Europe* and *Aſia*, beginning at *Hercules*'s pillars, and ending at the ocean which terminated the conqueſts of *Alexander the Great*. This map ſeems to have been firſt delineated in the fourth century after Chriſt: But that of *Vienna* is not the original draught, as ſome antiquarians imagine; for the ſhape of the letters reſembles the *Longobard* or Monkiſh hand, and the human figures are like thoſe we ſee in old glaſs windows, *&c.* ſo that it is very probably of a more modern date than that mentioned above. It appears to be the very ſame which the author of the *Annales Colmarienſes* delineated in the year 1265.

Upon the revival of Arts and Sciences in the ſixteenth century, the method of delineating geographical tables or maps was cultivated among the reſt. Thoſe maps, which were inſerted in the Manuſcript of *Ptolemy*'s Geography, are the baſis and foundation of all that have been executed ſince that time. *Sebaſtian Munſter* laid theſe down as the ground-work, and by that means furniſhed others with a plan for delineating ſeparate maps of different countries, which *Abraham Ortelius* and *Daniel Cellarius* afterwards collected, and *Gerhard Mercator* reduced to a ſyſtem. This collection *William* and *John Bleau*, *John Janſſon* and others, adopted as a foundation for maps; till *Sanſon* delineated new maps, which were improved by *Francis de Wit* and the younger *Viſcher*, whoſe maps the *German* geographers copied, till more lately *de l'Iſle* in *France*, and *Hermon Moll* in *England* delineated new maps. The former began to pay a greater regard to aſtronomical obſervations in his maps, and to uſe a better method of delineating than *Sanſon* and his ſucceſſors, which, however, is far from being the beſt method, nor is it the ſame in all his maps. Beſides this inaccuracy, he had not ſufficient knowledge of the hiſtorical accounts of countries. In *Moll*'s maps the paper exceeds the workmanſhip: However, he, as well as *de l'Iſle*, very much improved this art, for they both took quite a new and laborious method in delineating their maps. *J. M. Haſe* ſucceſsfully proſecuted, and rendered the reformation of maps, which *de l'Iſle* had already began, more perfect. In delineating all his maps he has kept to the ſtereographic projection which coincides with the Horizon, ſo that the eye is ſuppoſed to be in the centre of the map, and all the remarkable places in a country directly oppoſite to it. On his principles the *Coſmographical Society* at *Gottingen* now proceed, whoſe maps, publiſhed by *Homann*, may juſtly diſpute the preference, in point of accuracy, with any that are extant, and therefore are the beſt and moſt ſerviceable. *M. D'anville* contributes much to the improvement of maps in *France*. Since Maps or Geographical tables have been publiſhed, the ſeveral ſorts of general and particular maps are ſuppoſed to amount, at leaſt, to 16,000; but of theſe not above 1700 are originals, all the reſt being only copies. And as the former, for the moſt part, are executed on a wrong plan, or are become uſeleſs by reaſon of their ancient date; it

appears from hence how few accurate and ſerviceable maps have been hitherto publiſhed. To be convinced of this, let any one but read *Homann*'s propoſals for the neceſſary improvement of Coſmography, and for a new Academy to be erected on his plan, with the coſmographical accounts and collections for the year 1748, p. 348 & *ſeq.* As to the hiſtory of general Maps, as well as thoſe of particular countries, there is no better extant than M. HAUBER's *eſſay on a circumſtantial hiſtory of Maps*, his uſeful *Diſcourſe on the preſent State of Geography*, and his *Thoughts on, and propoſals for the beſt and propereſt method of compiling a hiſtory of Geography.*

§. 5. The moſt ancient geographers, whoſe books are ſtill extant, are *Dionyſius Periegetes*, *Strabo*, and *Ptolemy*. The firſt has written a *Greek* poem on Geography. The ſeventeen books of the ſecond on Geography contain many valuable hiſtorical accounts and uſeful extracts of the beſt hiſtorical books of antiquity. The eight geographical books of the third are more conciſe and dry, but more accurately determine the ſituation of the places therein mentioned, though not without a great many faults, which for the moſt part are juſtly to be attributed to the copiers of his work.

Among the ancient *Greek* books on Geography, the following may alſo be reckoned: *viz.* that of *Euſebius Pamphilus*, of *Cæſerea* in *Paleſtine*, on the names of the places mentioned in the holy Scriptures; the Geographical Lexicon of *Stephanus Byzantinus*, with *Hermolaus*'s abridgement of it; the twelve books by *Coſmas Indopleuſtez*, as he is called, of the Chriſtian Geography of the whole world; and other ſmaller books and treatiſes, publiſhed in four volumes by *John Hudſon*.

Among the ancient geographical books written in *Latin* the moſt uſeful are the following: POMPONIUS MELA *de ſitu orbis*; JULII SOLINI *polyhiſtor*, ſc. *Collectanea rerum memorabilium*; PLINII SECUNDI *hiſtoria naturalis*; the Itineraries aſcribed to the *Emperor Antoninus*, and to *Æthicus* of *Iſtria*; VIBIUS SEQUESTER *de fluminibus, fontibus, lacubus, nemoribus, paludibus, montibus, gentibus.* In the middle ages the following are the moſt remarkable, *viz.* ADAMANNUS *de ſitu Terræ ſanctæ & quorundam aliorum locorum*; The Travels of the Monks *John de Plato Carpini*, *Aſcelinus*, and *William de Rubruc* or *Rubruquis* into *Aſia* in the 13th century; *de regionibus orientalibus, lib.* 3. by MARCUS PAULUS, of *Venice*; JAC. DE VITRIACO *hiſtoria orientalis & occidentalis*; and the Travels of *William de Baldenſel*, *Rud. de Frameynſperg*, *Anſelmus*, *Ludolph de Suchem*, *Breitenbach*, *John de Duſſeldorp*, and *John de Heſe*, to *Paleſtine* or the *Holy Land.*

The moſt famous *Arabian* geographers are *Abu Abdallah Muhammed*, *Iſmael Abu'l Feda*, *Safieddin Abdalmumen Ebn Abdalhakki*, *Naſſir Eddin*, and *Ulug Beig*. The *Jewiſh* Geographers, are, Rabbi *Benjamin Ben Jona* of *Tudela*, R. *Moſche Petachia*, and R. *Abraham Ben Mordechai Perizol.*

In ſhort, ſeveral books of travels were written about the cloſe of the 15th century: As thoſe by *John de Mandeville*, both in *Engliſh* and *French*,

Joſ.

Joſ. Barbarus, *Ambr. Contarenus*, and *Nic. di Conti* in *Italian*, *John Tucher*, and *Felix Faber* in *German*.

From the beginning of the 16th century Geography put on a better form, and was cultivated with greater care by ſeveral perſons of great ſkill and abilities. Among theſe we have,

1. Modern Authors who have treated of the ancient Geography, as ABRAHAM ORTELII *Parergon*, ſc. *tabulæ veteris Geographiæ*; PETRI BERTII *Geographia vetus*; GEORGII HORNII *accurat. orbis antiqui delineatio*; CHRISTOPH. CELLARII *Geographia antiqua, & notitia orbis antiqui*; KOLER's *Deſcriptio orbis antiqui*, and his Introduction to the Geography of the ancient and middle ages.

2. Others have attempted to connect the ancient and modern Geography together. Such are thoſe who have illuſtrated *Ptolemy*'s geographical book with new maps and explanatory notes. Among theſe *Servetus* was one of the firſt and the principal author, and *John Ant. Maginus* one of the lateſt; whoſe *Commentarius in Geographiam & tabulas Ptolemæi*, or the *Geographia vetus & nova* are by ſome, through miſtake, ſuppoſed to be two different treatiſes. In this claſs may be ranked the following books: CLUVERII *Introductio in Univerſam Geographiam, tàm veterem quàm novam*; JOHAN. LUYTS *Introd. ad Geographiam novam et veterem*; JOHN BAPT. D'AUDRIFFET's *Geographie ancienne, moderne, & hiſtorique*; NOBLOT's *Geographie univerſelle*; LENGLET DU FRESNOY's *methode pour etudier la Geographie*, particularly the eighth book, in 4 volumes; SEB. MUNSTER's *Coſmography, or deſcription of all countries*; PETER D'AVITY's *Eſtats, empires, roy-aume, & principautez du monde*; JOHN LUD. GOTTFRIED's (i.e. *Abelin*) *Archontologia coſmica*; Dr. PETER HEYLIN's *Coſmography*, HENRY WILSON's *Compleat univerſal hiſtory of the ſeveral dominions of the known world*; PAULI MERULÆ *Coſmographia generalis & particularis*; SAM. PURCHAS's *Pilgrimage*, or *Relations of the world*; JOHN CASP. FUNKEN's and CHRIST. BENJ. HACKHEL's *Univerſal new Coſmography*; and the *Introduction to ancient and modern Geography, exhibited in* 37 *maps by the Jeſuit F. W.*

3. Others have treated of modern Geography only, either

In *large volumes*, among which the principal are theſe, viz. *Joh. Boters des Beneſers*'s *Univerſal Coſmography*, tranſlated from the *Italian*; LUCÆ DE LINDA *deſcriptio orbis & rerum publicarum*; SANSON D'ABBEVILLE's *ſphere du monde*; JOH. CHRISTOPH. BECMANNI *Hiſtoria orbis terrarum geographica & civilis*; DENYS MARTINEAU DU PLESSI's *Nouvelle Geographie*, which is the ground-work of the Abbe *Lenglet du Freſnoy*'s *Methode pour etudier la Geographie*; JACQ. ROBBE's *Methode pour apprendre facilement la Geographie*; CHRISTIAN WIGAND's *Political Geography*; MELISSANTES (i. e. *Joh. Gottfr. Gregorii*) *Geographia noviſſima generalis, ſpecialis & ſpecialiſſima*; The compendious political deſcription of the world; JOHN CHRISTIAN VON KOLICHEN & RISCHTERN's *Deſcription of the whole world*; JOHN CHRISTIAN

MARTINI's *Introduction to the modern political Geography*; JOH. HUBNER's the younger *Compleat Geography*, which is alſo inſerted in JOH. HAGER's *Syſtem of Geography*; JOH. JAC. SCHATZEN's *Atlas Homannianus illuſtratus*; Jo. TOMKA SZASZKY's *Introductio in orbis hodierni Geographiam*; and the new *Political and itinerary Geography of* Europe.

Or in *ſmaller volumes*, or abridgments, the principal of which is that by CLUVERIUS, who in the former part of the laſt century was almoſt the only one who reduced Geography into a Syſtem. The following Authors alſo wrote compendiums of Geography: *Peter Bertius, Jo. Matth. Meyfart, Abrah. Goelnitzen, Eberh. Schult, Tob. Wagner, Joh. Buno, Chriſtoph. Cellarius, Pietro di Valle, Joh. Jac. Martin, Nic. de Fer, John Hubner, Joh. Dav. Koeler, Gotthilf Werner, Hier. Freyer, Joh. Jac. Schatzen*, &c.

4. Laſtly, we muſt not omit the geographical Dictionaries; as ABRAH. ORTELII *Theſaurus geographicus*; PHIL. FERRARII *Lexicon geographicum*; MICH. ANT. BAUDRAND's *Geographia ordine literarum diſpoſita*; FRANC. THOM. CORNEILLE's *Dictionaire Univerſel, geographique & hiſtorique*; ALPH. LAZORIS A VAREA *Univerſus orbis terrarum ſcriptorum calamo delineatus*; AUGUSTIN BRUZEN LA MARTINIERE's *Grand Dictionaire geographique & critique*; and *The complete Lexicon of the ancient, middle, and modern Geography*, publiſhed at *Leipſick* in 1729. To theſe may be added the Lexicon, publiſhed with a preface by *Hubner*, entitled *The Real Geographical and Political Lexicon*.

The number of Travels, and chorographical and topographical Deſcriptions is ſo conſiderable, as not to admit of a place here. Theſe are daily increaſing, as, in this century, a peculiar taſte for Geography prevails; and ſuch a reigning taſte is highly neceſſary and advantageous for the improvement of this Science.

CHAP. II.

Of MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

§. 6. MAthematical Geography conſiders the Earth as one of the bodies that conſtitute the Univerſe, and inveſtigates its figure, magnitude, and ſituation in the ſyſtem of the World, with other particulars belonging to it.

§. 7. Scarce any figure can be thought of, which has not been aſcribed to the Earth: But that it is round, or nearly reſembling a globe, the lunar eclipſes plainly demonſtrate. For theſe being cauſed by the Earth's ſhadow, whoſe ſection on the diſk of the moon is in all poſitions round or circular, we may conclude that the Earth itſelf muſt be of that form; ſince none but a ſphe-

a ſpherical body is capable of throwing or projecting a round ſhadow on a ſurface directly oppoſed to it, in all the different poſitions of the light which produces that ſhadow. The great number of high mountains on the ſurface of the Earth are no obſtacle to its being of a ſpherical figure, as their bulk is very inconſiderable when compared to the magnitude of the terraqueous globe; nor can they be any impediment to the roundneſs of the Earth's ſhadow in the eclipſes of the moon.

§. 8. In confirmation of this figure of the Earth, a variety of appearances might be alledged, which at the ſame time are illuſtrated and rendered intelligible by that ſuppoſition. If we travel from north to ſouth the ſouthern ſtars riſe above the Horizon, and the northern ſtars ſink under it. The ſame thing happens, *vice verſâ*, when we travel from ſouth to north; and is firſt obſervable in the polar ſtar, which riſes about a degree above the Horizon, on approaching 15 *German* or geographical miles * from the Equator towards the north Pole. If we travel 15 geographical miles from weſt to eaſt under the Equator, we alſo find that the ſun and ſtars riſe there an hour ſooner than at the place from which we ſet out; and in general, experience teaches us that thoſe people who live towards the eaſt ſee the ſun and ſtars riſe ſooner than thoſe to the weſt, the reaſon of which can be no other than the ſpherical figure of the Earth. This is alſo further confirmed by the experience of navigators and travellers, who ſee the tops of high towers, mountains, and maſts of ſhips at a conſiderable diſtance, while the lower parts of ſuch objects are ſtill hid under the Horizon. It is alſo owing to this orbicular figure of the Earth that the eclipſes and other phenomena in the heavens anſwer to the time calculated beforehand. Laſtly, we may hence conclude that it is poſſible to ſail round the world; an attempt which has already been ſeveral times undertaken.

The firſt who undertook ſuch a voyage was *Ferdinand Magellan*, a *Portugueze:* And though he was killed on the iſland of *Sebu*, one of the *Philippines*, in a ſkirmiſh with the *Indians*, before he completed his expedition; yet one of the five ſhips, with which he ſailed from *Seville*, *Aug.* 10, 1519, returned again *Sept.* 7, 1522, into the harbour of St. *Lucar* near *Seville*, after having finiſhed the voyage round the world in three years and twenty-eight days.

The ſecond who performed a voyage round the globe was Sir *Francis Drake*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſet ſail from *Plymouth November* 15, 1577; but being obliged to put back again by a ſtorm, he ſet ſail a ſecond time *Dec.* 13, and arrived at the ſame harbour, after he had completed his voyage, *Sept.* 16, 1580.

* The Author means one degree of Latitude which is equal to 15 *German*, which we ſhall call *geographical* miles.

The

The third was *Thomas Cavendiſh*, who was likewiſe a native of *England*: He ſet ſail on *July* 21, 1586, from *Plymouth*, and returned thither again *Sept.* 9, 1588.

The fourth was *Simon de Cordes*, a *Hollander*, who undertook this voyage in 1590.

The fifth was *Oliver van Noort*, who was alſo a *Hollander*: He ſet ſail from *Rotterdam Sept.* 13, 1598, and returned to the ſame place *Aug.* 22, 1601.

The ſixth was *George Spielbergen*, a *German*, who ſet ſail *Aug.* 8, 1614, and returned again to *Holland July* 1, 1617.

The ſeventh was *William Cornelius Schouten*, a *Hollander*, who left the *Texel*, *June* 14, 1615, and came into it again in *July*, 1617.

The voyage round the world was undertaken the eighth time by the *Duch* Admirals *Jac. l'Hermite* and *Joh. Hugo Schapenham*, who ſet ſail from *Goeree* in *South-Holland*, *April* 29, 1623, and arrived in the *Texel* on *July* 9, 1626.

The ninth who made this voyage was *William Dampier*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſet ſail in 1689, and returned to *England* in 1691.

The tenth was *Giovanni Franceſco Gemelli Carere*, an *Italian*, who embarked *June* 13, 1693, and returned in 1698.

The eleventh was *Edward Cooke*, an *Engliſhman*, who was on the voyage from 1708, to 1711.

The twelfth was *Woodes Rogers*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſailed from *Briſtol June* 15, 1708, and returned in 1711.

The thirteenth was *Gentil de la Barbinais*, who was on his voyage round the world from 1715 to 1718.

Clipperton and *Shelvocke* who left *England*, their native country, *Feb.* 13. 1719, undertook this voyage the fourteenth time. The former arrived at *Galloway* in *Ireland* about the beginning of *June*, and the latter at *London*, *Aug.* 1, 1722.

The fifteenth was *Roggewein*, a *Dutchman*, who ſailed out of the *Texel*, *July* 16, 1721; and returned to the ſame place, *July* 11, 1723.

The ſixteenth and laſt that we know of was *George Anſon*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſet ſail from St. *Helen's*, * *Sept.* 18, 1740, and arrived at *Spithead*, *June* 15, 1744. All theſe voyages were performed ſouthwards, round *America*, through the South-Sea, and round the *Cape of Good Hope*.

§. 9. But, notwithſtanding theſe voyages, the exact figure of the Earth was not accurately known: For about the cloſe of the laſt century the Learned began to diſpute, whether it was depreſſed, or elevated, towards the Poles. *Huygens* and Sir *Iſaac Newton* maintained the former, and

* The Author through miſtake ſays St. *Helena*; whereas Lord *Anſon* ſailed from St. *Helen's* road near *Portſmouth*.

Eiſenſchmid and *Caſſini* inſiſted on the latter hypotheſis. This diſpute continued for above fifty years; and at length proper perſons were ſent by the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, at the *French* king's expence, ſome to the north Polar Circle, and others to the Equator, in order to decide this affair by meaſuring at each place a degree of the Meridian; ſo that by comparing one of theſe degrees with a degree in *France*, and the two former with each other, the figure of the Earth might be determined as accurately as was poſſible. The Party which went to the north conſiſted of Meſſ. *Maupertuis*, *Clairaut*, *Camus*, *Le Monnier*, and *Outhier*, who were joined by M. *Celſius* a profeſſor of the univerſity of *Upſal*. They ſet out from *Paris*, *April* 20, 1736, and arrived at *Tornea*, *June* 20. They ſet about their menſurations in the neighbourhood of the latter, and returned to *Paris*, *Auguſt* 19, 1737. The company which went to *Quito* in ſouth *America* conſiſted of Meſſ. *Godin*, *Bouguer*, and *de la Condamine*, who were natives of *France*; and theſe were joined at *Carthagena* by two *Spaniards*, namely, *Antonio de Ulloa*, and *George Juan*. The *French* Academicians ſet ſail *May* 16, and the *Spaniards May* 26, 1735, and finiſhed their obſervations in 1744. The company that went to the north, ſet out, indeed, after the latter; but completed their obſervations before them. Accordingly they informed the Public, that a degree of the Meridian, interſecting the Polar Circle is much greater than a degree of the Meridian in *France*; the former containing 57,437 rods, and the latter, according to *Picard*'s determination, but 57,060; that the gravity of bodies increaſes conſiderably towards the Polar Circle; and that we dwell on a *ſpheroid* which is depreſſed at the Poles. This was confirmed by the admeaſurements of the *American* company, who found, that a degree of the Meridian under the Equator contained 56,753 rods; and Meſſ. *Bouguer* and *de la Condamine*'s computation differed but 18 *toiſes* * from that made by the *Spaniſh* officers along with M. *Godin*. The obſervations of both companies were alſo at length confirmed by the diſcoveries which M. *Caſſini de Thury*, and the *Abbé de la Caille* afterwards made. The latter meaſured the 36th degree of ſouth Latitude at the *Cape of Good Hope*, and found it greater than an Equatorial degree, but leſs than a degree at the north Polar Circle. Theſe laudable attempts, it is true, were attended with ſome diſappointments and difficulties; however, we now know ſo much for certain, that the Earth is higher at the Equator than it is at the Poles, and that the Diameter of the Equator to the *Axis* of the Globe is as 178 to 177 nearly. Sir *Iſaac Newton* computed the *ratio* to be as 230 to 229; ſo that according to that Philoſopher, the Earth under the Line is higher by about 3 ½ geographical miles, than it is under the Poles; but by later diſcoveries the difference amounts to ſomething more than 10 geographical miles. †.

* A *toiſe* is equal to ſix feet. † What the Author calls a geographical, is a common *German* mile, 15 of which are equal to a degree of the Equator, as I obſerved above.

§. 10. This

The third was *Thomas Cavendiſh*, who was likewiſe a native of *England*: He ſet ſail on *July* 21, 1586, from *Plymouth*, and returned thither again *Sept.* 9, 1588.

The fourth was *Simon de Cordes*, a *Hollander*, who undertook this voyage in 1590.

The fifth was *Oliver van Noort*, who was alſo a *Hollander*: He ſet ſail from *Rotterdam Sept.* 13, 1598, and returned to the ſame place *Aug.* 22, 1601.

The ſixth was *George Spielbergen*, a *German*, who ſet ſail *Aug.* 8, 1614, and returned again to *Holland July* 1, 1617.

The ſeventh was *William Cornelius Schouten*, a *Hollander*, who left the *Texel*, *June* 14, 1615, and came into it again in *July*, 1617.

The voyage round the world was undertaken the eighth time by the *Duch* Admirals *Jac. l'Hermite* and *Joh. Hugo Schapenham*, who ſet ſail from *Goeree* in *South-Holland*, *April* 29, 1623, and arrived in the *Texel* on *July* 9, 1626.

The ninth who made this voyage was *William Dampier*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſet ſail in 1689, and returned to *England* in 1691.

The tenth was *Giovanni Franceſco Gemelli Carere*, an *Italian*, who embarked *June* 13, 1693, and returned in 1698.

The eleventh was *Edward Cooke*, an *Engliſhman*, who was on the voyage from 1708, to 1711.

The twelfth was *Woodes Rogers*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſailed from *Briſtol June* 15, 1708, and returned in 1711.

The thirteenth was *Gentil de la Barbinais*, who was on his voyage round the world from 1715 to 1718.

Clipperton and *Shelvocke* who left *England*, their native country, *Feb.* 13. 1719, undertook this voyage the fourteenth time. The former arrived at *Galloway* in *Ireland* about the beginning of *June*, and the latter at *London*, *Aug.* 1, 1722.

The fifteenth was *Roggewein*, a *Dutchman*, who ſailed out of the *Texel*, *July* 16, 1721; and returned to the ſame place, *July* 11, 1723.

The ſixteenth and laſt that we know of was *George Anſon*, an *Engliſhman*, who ſet ſail from St. *Helen's*, * *Sept.* 18, 1740, and arrived at *Spithead*, *June* 15, 1744. All theſe voyages were performed ſouthwards, round *America*, through the South-Sea, and round the *Cape of Good Hope*.

§. 9. But, notwithſtanding theſe voyages, the exact figure of the Earth was not accurately known: For about the cloſe of the laſt century the Learned began to diſpute, whether it was depreſſed, or elevated, towards the Poles. *Huygens* and Sir *Iſaac Newton* maintained the former, and

* The Author through miſtake ſays St. *Helena*; whereas Lord *Anſon* ſailed from St. *Helen's* road near *Portſmouth*.

Eiſenſchmid and *Caſſini* inſiſted on the latter hypotheſis. This diſpute continued for above fifty years; and at length proper perſons were ſent by the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, at the *French* king's expence, ſome to the north Polar Circle, and others to the Equator, in order to decide this affair by meaſuring at each place a degree of the Meridian; ſo that by comparing one of theſe degrees with a degree in *France*, and the two former with each other, the figure of the Earth might be determined as accurately as was poſſible. The Party which went to the north conſiſted of Meſſ. *Maupertuis*, *Clairaut*, *Camus*, *Le Monnier*, and *Outhier*, who were joined by M. *Celſius* a profeſſor of the univerſity of *Upſal*. They ſet out from *Paris*, *April* 20, 1736, and arrived at *Tornea*, *June* 20. They ſet about their menſurations in the neighbourhood of the latter, and returned to *Paris*, *Auguſt* 19, 1737. The company which went to *Quito* in ſouth *America* conſiſted of Meſſ. *Godin*, *Bouguer*, and *de la Condamine*, who were natives of *France*; and theſe were joined at *Carthagena* by two *Spaniards*, namely, *Antonio de Ulloa*, and *George Juan*. The *French* Academicians ſet ſail *May* 16, and the *Spaniards May* 26, 1735, and finiſhed their obſervations in 1744. The company that went to the north, ſet out, indeed, after the latter; but completed their obſervations before them. Accordingly they informed the Public, that a degree of the Meridian, interſecting the Polar Circle is much greater than a degree of the Meridian in *France*; the former containing 57,437 rods, and the latter, according to *Picard*'s determination, but 57,060; that the gravity of bodies increaſes conſiderably towards the Polar Circle; and that we dwell on a *ſpheroid* which is depreſſed at the Poles. This was confirmed by the admeaſurements of the *American* company, who found, that a degree of the Meridian under the Equator contained 56,753 rods; and Meſſ. *Bouguer* and *de la Condamine*'s computation differed but 18 *toiſes* * from that made by the *Spaniſh* officers along with M. *Godin*. The obſervations of both companies were alſo at length confirmed by the diſcoveries which M. *Caſſini de Thury*, and the *Abbé de la Caille* afterwards made. The latter meaſured the 36th degree of ſouth Latitude at the *Cape of Good Hope*, and found it greater than an Equatorial degree, but leſs than a degree at the north Polar Circle. Theſe laudable attempts, it is true, were attended with ſome diſappointments and difficulties; however, we now know ſo much for certain, that the Earth is higher at the Equator than it is at the Poles, and that the Diameter of the Equator to the *Axis* of the Globe is as 178 to 177 nearly. Sir *Iſaac Newton* computed the *ratio* to be as 230 to 229; ſo that according to that Philoſopher, the Earth under the Line is higher by about 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ geographical miles, than it is under the Poles; but by later diſcoveries the difference amounts to ſomething more than 10 geographical miles. †.

* A *toiſe* is equal to ſix feet. † What the Author calls a geographical, is a common *German* mile, 15 of which are equal to a degree of the Equator, as I obſerved above.

§. 10. This

§. 10. This diſcovery of the true figure of the Earth is attended with great advantages. It exhibits a freſh proof of the Earth's turning or revolving upon its *Axis*; ſets the Theory of Gravity in a new light; ſerves to improve the art of Levelling; greatly contributes to the determining of the moon's *Parallax*, and is of great importance to Geography and Navigation. To mention only the two laſt; in Geography as well as Navigation, the principal thing is, to know the exact ſituation of different countries and ſea-coaſts with reſpect to each other, and the place of a ſhip on the vaſt Ocean. And for this purpoſe it is neceſſary that we ſhould be provided with accurate maps and ſea charts, exhibiting the true ſituation of places with their north or ſouth Latitude, and eaſt or weſt Longitude. Theſe particulars cannot be known, without being acquainted with the length of every degree of the Parallel Circles in miles, or leagues, which muſt be calculated according to the true magnitude and figure of the Earth. *Andrew Celſius*, in the Memoirs of the *Swediſh* Academy of Sciences, has ſhewn by ſeveral Inſtances, that ſuch incidents may happen in Navigation, when for want of the neceſſary knowledge of the true figure of the Earth, life and goods may be in danger of being loſt. For example, on ſailing eaſt or weſt of a certain place in 45° of Latitude, ſome rocks, ſhoals, or ſand-banks are to be avoided, about 8° 30′ from that place; but if we follow *Caſſini*'s table of degrees (who at the 45th degree of Latitude makes every degree of Longitude ſhorter by 645 toiſes than it really is) we might imagine ourſelves at the diſtance of a *Swediſh* mile from a rock, at the inſtant we were going to be wrecked upon it. In the ſame manner when we would ſail north or ſouth on a certain Meridian from a place that lies under the Equinoctial Line (where *Caſſini* makes the firſt degree of Latitude 1395 toiſes larger than it really is) we know from the chart that in the 8th degree of Latitude we are to ſteer weſtward in order to make a certain harbour or bay: But by *Caſſini*'s tables we ſhould imagine ourſelves to be juſt before the harbour, when we were two *Swediſh* miles ſhort of it; and by altering our courſe, run foul of land and rocks, at the time we apprehended that we were in the mouth of the harbour; eſpecially if the weather ſhould be ſo cloudy as to give us no opportunity of obſerving the ſun or ſtars.

§. 11. Before we can determine the circumference of the Earth, we muſt previouſly deſcribe certain meaſures which are uſed in different parts of the world. The moſt remarkable and beſt known among theſe are the *Rhinland*, the *Engliſh*, and the royal *French* foot; the mutual *ratio* or proportion of which to each other is as follows: 29 *French* are equal to 30 *Rhinland* feet; 15 *French* are equal to 16 *Engliſh* feet; and 225 *Rhinland* feet are equal to 232 *Engliſh* feet. Hence it appears that the *French* is the largeſt, and the *Engliſh* foot the leaſt of all the three. A geometrical, or rather a geographical pace contains $5\frac{6719}{7350}$ *Rhinland* feet, or $6\frac{1042}{9375}$ *Engliſh* feet. As the Earth is ſpherical (§. 7.) we may imagine a circle going quite round

round it, which like all circles in Geometry we may divide into 360 equal parts or degrees, every degree into 60 minutes, and, consequently, the whole circle into 21,600 minutes. That distance on the Earth, which constitutes such a minute, contains 1000 geometrical paces.

§. 12. The Curious from the earliest ages have attempted to determine the circumference of the Earth; but among the moderns

Norwood found it to be 132,190,560 *English* feet
Picard — — 131,466,240,
Cassini — — 132,000,768.

By *Cassini*'s calculation, which has gained the greatest credit among geographers, the diameter of the Earth is 42,017,145 $\frac{309}{355}$ *English* feet. Now as we generally reckon a degree in a great circle of the Earth to be equal to 15 *German*, or rather geographical miles *; the whole circumference of the circle which we suppose to encompass the earth must amount to 5400 such miles. To a geographical mile, we must allow 24,444 $\frac{44}{75}$ *English* feet, which are equal to 23,611 *Rhinland*, or 22,824 royal *Paris* feet. The diameter of the Earth according to the common calculation is 1720 geographical miles, and consequently the whole surface of the Earth is 9,288,000 square geographical miles, and its solid contents 2,662,560,000 cubic geographical miles. According to the new discoveries made of the true figure of the Earth (§. 9.) these calculations are somewhat deficient.

§. 13. As to the situation of the Earth with respect to the other bodies that constitute the Universe there are three principal opinions concerning it. *Ptolemy* imagined its place to be exactly in the centre of the Universe, where he supposed it to be fixt and immoveable. Next to the Earth he placed 1. The Moon. 2. *Mercury*. 3. *Venus*. 4. The Sun. 5. *Mars*. 6. *Jupiter*. 7. *Saturn*, and lastly the fixt stars, in crystalline orbs. This opinion is very absurd, and proved contradictory to experience. True Astronomy shews us a quite different situation and disposition of the parts of the Universe; and the comets, which in their course intersect the orbits of all the planets, plainly demonstrate that the circles in which the planets perform their revolutions, and that wherein the fixt stars seem to move, do not consist of any solid matter. *Tycho Brahe* attempted to improve the *Ptolemaic* System. He left the Earth immoveable in the centre of the World. Round it he made the Moon and Sun to perform their revolutions; but supposed that *Mercury*, *Venus*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn* moved round the Sun as their centre. Lastly he made the Earth, not the Sun, the centre of the fixt stars. But from this intricate and absurd system we can assign no reasons for the celestial phænomena; and therefore Astronomers justly reject it. *Nicolas Copernicus* revived an ancient Hypothesis concerning the System of

* We shall use these Geographical miles, as the author calls them, in the Translation, since they will render calculations easier, than if they were reduced to *English* miles.

the World, which he propoſed in a more diſtinct and clear manner than the *Pythagoreans* had done before, and compared with the celeſtial appearances. This Hypotheſis has been adopted, improved, and confirmed by the greateſt and moſt judicious of the modern Aſtronomers. According to *Copernicus* the Sun, indeed, does not occupy the very centre of the ſyſtem, ſince this luminary, as well as all the planets, moves round the common centre of gravity*; yet it is placed ſo near that centre that it may very properly be ſuppoſed to be fixed in it. It takes up between 27 and 28 days in revolving about its *axis*. The planets move round the ſun, and thoſe which lie near it, having but a ſmall ſpace to run through, finiſh their period ſooner than thoſe that are at a greater diſtance from it. During their revolutions they alſo turn conſtantly about their own *axes*. Next to the Sun is *Mercury*; then follows *Venus*; then the Earth, round which the moon, as a ſecondary planet, performs its revolution; then comes *Mars*; after this *Jupiter* with its four moons or *ſatellites*; and laſt of all *Saturn*, with five moons revolving about it. The fixt ſtars are immoveable, being placed far above the planets in the expanſe † of heaven; but we may reaſonably conclude that they turn round their own *axes*. From this regularly diſpoſed ſyſtem, every phænomenon, with regard to the revolutions of the planets, may be eaſily accounted for. As the Earth revolves on its *axis* in 24 hours, the ſun, planets, and fixt ſtars ſeem to move round the Earth; become ſucceſſively viſible on our Horizon; and are obſerved to riſe and ſet. This may ſerve as an anſwer to an ill grounded objection, which ſome make againſt the *Copernican* Syſtem from ſuch expreſſions being uſed in the holy Scriptures ‡. The Earth in the ſpace of a year revolves in the Ecliptic round the Sun, which makes the ſun ſeem to move in the ſame ſpace of time through the twelve celeſtial Signs, into which the Ecliptic is divided. For farther particulars on this ſubject the reader muſt have recourſe to Aſtronomy.

§. 14. Notwithſtanding the *Copernican* hypotheſis concerning the Syſtem of the World has ſo much probability on its ſide; yet in explaining the principles of Geography we ſuppoſe the Earth to be placed in the centre of the Univerſe and of all the celeſtial circles. In this ſuppoſition we are guilty of no great error: For though the Earth is not fixed in the centre of the

* Aſtronomers ſuppoſe that the centre of the ſolar Syſtem does not coincide with the centre of the Sun; but that the former is, however, in the body of that luminary.

† The word *firmament* in the original is rendered *expanſe* here, as the former conveys an idea of firmneſs or ſolidity, was invented by falſe Philoſophy, and might miſlead the learner. The LXX. in tranſlating the *Pentateuch* rendered the *Hebrew* word רקיע an Expanſe, by στερεωμα a firmament in conformity to the erroneous philoſophy of the *Greeks*. But ſuch a word is inconſiſtent with true Aſtronomy, and ſhould not be uſed in ſuch treatiſes as this.

‡ We ſay in common converſation, and even in theological and hiſtorical books, the ſun, or the moon, riſes and ſets, *&c.* in compliance with the common conceptions of mankind; and indeed it would be ridiculous to expreſs ourſelves otherwiſe, unleſs it be in philoſophical treatiſes.

Univerſe,

Univerſe, yet its diſtance from it, in compariſon to the aſtoniſhingly immenſe diſtances of the other bodies that conſtitute the Univerſe from the Earth, is to be looked upon as very inconſiderable. To which we may add, that on any part of the Earth, we may always ſee two ſtars at the ſame time which are diametrically oppoſite to each other, being placed at the diſtance of 180 degrees, or a ſemi-circle. When we thus ſuppoſe the Earth to be in the centre of the Univerſe, and that the whole heavens perform a complete revolution about it once in 24 hours (which, on viewing the heavens, they actually appear to do) there muſt be two oppoſite immoveable points in the heavens about which they revolve. Theſe are called the Poles of the Heavens; and as there is a ſtar to be ſeen near each pole; hence they derive the name of Polar Stars. That at the north is called the North-Pole, or, from a conſtellation ſtanding near it, the *Arctic* * Pole; but the ſtar at the ſouth is termed the South-Pole. In our hemiſphere we ſee the north polar ſtar only, the ſouth polar ſtar being always inviſible to us. Neither of theſe ſtars ever riſes or ſets. Now if we farther imagine a right line drawn from one of theſe Poles to the other, the *axis* of the heavens muſt paſs through the centre of the Earth, which we here ſuppoſe to be placed in the centre of the concave ſphere of the heavens. The two points, where the ſaid line or axis makes its ingreſs and egreſs on the ſurface of the Earth, are alſo denominated Poles; but to diſtinguiſh them from the Poles in the heavens, they are called the Poles of the Earth. Theſe alſo ſtand diametrically oppoſite at the diſtance of 180 degrees from each other. That part of the *axis* of the heavens, which paſſes through the terraqueous Globe is called the *axis* of the Earth.

§. 15. On any part of the ſurface of the Earth I can imagine to myſelf a right line drawn from the centre of the Earth through the middle of my head quite to the utmoſt extent of the heavens. The point which this imaginary line marks out in the heavens is called the *Zenith*, the Vertex, or Vertical point of the place on which I ſtand; and the oppoſite point to which I imagine this line to paſs under my feet through the lower half of the Earth quite to the heavens underneath, is called the *Nadir* of the place. Hence it follows that every man has not only his peculiar *Zenith* and *Nadir*, but alſo gains new ones, as often as he changes his place. By reaſon of the immenſe magnitude of the ſphere of the Univerſe, in compariſon of which the Earth is very ſmall and inconſiderable, we generally allow a whole city but one *Zenith*.

§. 16. When we ſtand on the ſurface of the Earth, we always ſee one certain part of the heavens, which proves large when that part of Earth on which we happen to be, is level; on the contrary, when the ſpot on

* The Author means the Bear, called in *Greek* ἄρκτος. The South Pole is alſo called the *antarctic* from its being diametrically oppoſite to the *arctic* or North Pole.

which we ſtand is encompaſſed with mountains, buildings, or trees, that part of the heavens which is within our view is but ſmall. But we will ſuppoſe ourſelves placed on an extenſive perfect level or plain, or on the ſurface of a calm ſea; then the heavens will appear like a large round vault reſting on the ſurface of the Earth or Sea, by which it will ſeem to be interſected all around. The great circle which thus appears to interſect the ſphere of the heavens, is called the viſible Horizon * of the place where we happen to be, and conſtitutes the limits between the viſible and inviſible part of the heavens. When a ſtar becomes viſible above this circle or boundary, we ſay it riſes; but when it becomes inviſible, or ſinks under it, we ſay it ſets. If we ſuppoſe the globe of the Earth to be cut through the centre, parallel to the Horizon, into two equal parts, and the upper half removed, we have a large, round, plane ſurface, in the middle of which is the centre of the Earth. This centre we reckon, in Aſtronomy, as the point of view from which we are to calculate the appearances as they would affect the eye were it placed there. The place where this imaginary central ſurface of the globe of the Earth interſects the concave ſphere of the heavens is called the true or rational Horizon. The true Horizon of a place is every way 90 degrees diſtant from the place where the obſerver ſtands, but exactly parallel with the ſenſible Horizon, and at the diſtance of about a ſemi-diameter of the Earth from it. The true Horizon divides the globe of the Earth into two equal parts; one, directly over which the *Zenith* (§. 15.) ſtands, being called the upper, and the other which lies towards the *Nadir*, the lower half or Hemiſphere. But as it is impoſſible for us to ſtand in the centre of the Earth, it may be ſaid that we never ſee the true Horizon; ſo that we muſt be contented with the apparent or ſenſible Horizon; and *imagine* the former to ourſelves, as we do all the points and lines on the Globe both ſtraight and curve. Laſtly, we generally call the extent of ground which we can ſee on the Earth from an eminence, the geographical Horizon; which is the more extenſive, the higher the obſerver's ſtation is, and the more level the country.

§. 17. The Equator or equinoctial line is a Circle which goes round the whole terraqueous Globe at the diſtance of 90 degrees from either Pole, and divides it into two equal parts, namely, the northern and ſouthern Hemiſphere. This like all other circles is divided into 360 degrees.

§. 18. The Meridian of a place is a Circle which ſurrounds the Earth, paſſes through both the Poles, croſſes the Equator twice, and divides the entire concave ſphere of the heavens, above the Horizon of the place, into two equal parts; namely, into the eaſtern, in which the ſun riſes, and the weſtern where it ſets. It is, like all other circles, divided into 360 degrees; and only one half of it is uſually denominated the Meridian. Every

* It is called by others the ſenſible Horizon, to diſtinguiſh it from the rational or true Horizon.

place

place has one Meridian, which paſſes directly over many other places on the ſurface of the Earth. The ſun appears in the Meridian of a place when it is noon there; being equidiſtant from the place where it roſe, and where it is to ſet.

§. 19. By the firſt Meridian we underſtand that particular one, among the other innumerable Meridians, from which we begin to reckon the degrees on the Equator from weſt to eaſt. Nature has indeed fixt no particular Meridian for this purpoſe, all of them having an equal right to this honour; ſo that it is left entirely to our choice to fix upon any one of them for the firſt Meridian: However, it were to be wiſhed that all geographers were agreed in this point. Though they are ſo far agreed as to begin to reckon weſtward from *Europe*; yet one draws the firſt Meridian through the iſland of *St. James* in the *Pacific* Ocean; another through the iſland of *St. Nicolas* near the coaſt of *Africa*; a third through *Flores*, or *Elcorvo*, two iſlands among the *Azores*; a fourth through the iſland of *Teneriffe*, one of the *Canaries*, in which ſtands a high mountain called *Pico*; a fifth through the weſtern coaſt of *Ferro*, another of the *Canary* iſlands; and a ſixth again through the iſland of *Palma*, which is alſo one of the *Canaries*. The *Hollanders* and many others fix their firſt Meridian at *Pico* on the iſland of *Teneriffe*; as, on the contrary, the *French*, ever ſince the year 1634, by order of *Lewis* XIII. draw the firſt Meridian through the iſland of *Ferro*, and in this they are generally followed by modern geographers; particularly by the Coſmographical Society at *Nurenberg*, and by the authors of the *Berlin* Sea-Atlas publiſhed in 1749. The *Swedes* draw their firſt Meridian through *Upſal*.

§. 20. The Latitude of a place is nothing but the diſtance of it from the Equator towards either Pole. If the place be ſituated between the Equator and the north Pole it is called North Latitude, but if it be between the Equator and ſouth Pole it is termed South Latitude. It is meaſured on an arc of the Meridian of any place, and is always equal to the elevation of the Pole in that place; ſo that when we have found the latter we cannot be ignorant of the former *. If you deduct the degrees of any given Latitude from 90° you have the diſtance of that place from the neareſt Pole, and, at the ſame time, the height, or elevation of the Equator above the true Horizon of that place. For inſtance, if you ſubtract the north Latitude, or elevation of the Pole, at *Copenhagen*, which is 55°, 40′, 59″ from 90 degrees, the remainder will be 34°, 19′, 1″ the height of the Equator; which is, at the ſame time, the diſtance of that city from the north Pole. Places lying under the Equator have no Latitude, and conſequently no elevation of the Pole; for both the Poles are on their Horizon: On the contrary, a place that lies under either of the Poles has the greateſt Latitude and elevation; for there the Equator and the Horizon coincide.

* And *Vice verſâ*.

§. 21. The

which we ſtand is encompaſſed with mountains, buildings, or trees, that part of the heavens which is within our view is but ſmall. But we will ſuppoſe ourſelves placed on an extenſive perfect level or plain, or on the ſurface of a calm ſea; then the heavens will appear like a large round vault reſting on the ſurface of the Earth or Sea, by which it will ſeem to be interſected all around. The great circle which thus appears to interſect the ſphere of the heavens, is called the viſible Horizon * of the place where we happen to be, and conſtitutes the limits between the viſible and inviſible part of the heavens. When a ſtar becomes viſible above this circle or boundary, we ſay it riſes; but when it becomes inviſible, or ſinks under it, we ſay it ſets. If we ſuppoſe the globe of the Earth to be cut through the centre, parallel to the Horizon, into two equal parts, and the upper half removed, we have a large, round, plane ſurface, in the middle of which is the centre of the Earth. This centre we reckon, in Aſtronomy, as the point of view from which we are to calculate the appearances as they would affect the eye were it placed there. The place where this imaginary central ſurface of the globe of the Earth interſects the concave ſphere of the heavens is called the true or rational Horizon. The true Horizon of a place is every way 90 degrees diſtant from the place where the obſerver ſtands, but exactly parallel with the ſenſible Horizon, and at the diſtance of about a ſemi-diameter of the Earth from it. The true Horizon divides the globe of the Earth into two equal parts; one, directly over which the *Zenith* (§. 15.) ſtands, being called the upper, and the other which lies towards the *Nadir*, the lower half or Hemiſphere. But as it is impoſſible for us to ſtand in the centre of the Earth, it may be ſaid that we never ſee the true Horizon; ſo that we muſt be contented with the apparent or ſenſible Horizon; and *imagine* the former to ourſelves, as we do all the points and lines on the Globe both ſtraight and curve. Laſtly, we generally call the extent of ground which we can ſee on the Earth from an eminence, the geographical Horizon; which is the more extenſive, the higher the obſerver's ſtation is, and the more level the country.

§. 17. The Equator or equinoctial line is a Circle which goes round the whole terraqueous Globe at the diſtance of 90 degrees from either Pole, and divides it into two equal parts, namely, the northern and ſouthern Hemiſphere. This like all other circles is divided into 360 degrees.

§. 18. The Meridian of a place is a Circle which ſurrounds the Earth, paſſes through both the Poles, croſſes the Equator twice, and divides the entire concave ſphere of the heavens, above the Horizon of the place, into two equal parts; namely, into the eaſtern, in which the ſun riſes, and the weſtern where it ſets. It is, like all other circles, divided into 360 degrees; and only one half of it is uſually denominated the Meridian. Every

* It is called by others the ſenſible Horizon, to diſtinguiſh it from the rational or true Horizon.

place

place has one Meridian, which passes directly over many other places on the surface of the Earth. The sun appears in the Meridian of a place when it is noon there; being equidistant from the place where it rose, and where it is to set.

§. 19. By the first Meridian we understand that particular one, among the other innumerable Meridians, from which we begin to reckon the degrees on the Equator from west to east. Nature has indeed fixt no particular Meridian for this purpose, all of them having an equal right to this honour; so that it is left entirely to our choice to fix upon any one of them for the first Meridian: However, it were to be wished that all geographers were agreed in this point. Though they are so far agreed as to begin to reckon westward from *Europe*; yet one draws the first Meridian through the island of *St. James* in the *Pacific* Ocean; another through the island of *St. Nicolas* near the coast of *Africa*; a third through *Flores*, or *Elcorvo*, two islands among the *Azores*; a fourth through the island of *Teneriffe*, one of the *Canaries*, in which stands a high mountain called *Pico*; a fifth through the western coast of *Ferro*, another of the *Canary* islands; and a sixth again through the island of *Palma*, which is also one of the *Canaries*. The *Hollanders* and many others fix their first Meridian at *Pico* on the island of *Teneriffe*; as, on the contrary, the *French*, ever since the year 1634, by order of *Lewis* XIII. draw the first Meridian through the island of *Ferro*, and in this they are generally followed by modern geographers; particularly by the Cosmographical Society at *Nurenberg*, and by the authors of the *Berlin* Sea-Atlas published in 1749. The *Swedes* draw their first Meridian through *Upsal*.

§. 20. The Latitude of a place is nothing but the distance of it from the Equator towards either Pole. If the place be situated between the Equator and the north Pole it is called North Latitude, but if it be between the Equator and south Pole it is termed South Latitude. It is measured on an arc of the Meridian of any place, and is always equal to the elevation of the Pole in that place; so that when we have found the latter we cannot be ignorant of the former *. If you deduct the degrees of any given Latitude from 90° you have the distance of that place from the nearest Pole, and, at the same time, the height, or elevation of the Equator above the true Horizon of that place. For instance, if you subtract the north Latitude, or elevation of the Pole, at *Copenhagen*, which is 55°, 40′, 59″ from 90 degrees, the remainder will be 34°, 19′, 1″ the height of the Equator; which is, at the same time, the distance of that city from the north Pole. Places lying under the Equator have no Latitude, and consequently no elevation of the Pole; for both the Poles are on their Horizon: On the contrary, a place that lies under either of the Poles has the greatest Latitude and elevation; for there the Equator and the Horizon coincide.

* And *Vice versâ*.

§. 21. The

§. 21. The Longitude of a place is the diſtance of its Meridian from the firſt Meridian. (§. 18, 19.) It is determined by the number of degrees in the arc of the Equator which is included between both Meridians. The eaſieſt and moſt accurate method hitherto known of finding out the Longitude of a place is, to obſerve the beginning and end of the eclipſe of the firſt *ſatellite* of *Jupiter* with the help of *Caſſini*'s table, and to compare that time, when known, with the time of the Meridian of *Paris*, in order to reduce the difference of the hours to degrees and minutes of the Equator: And as the Longitude of *Paris* is known, which, according to *Caſſini* is 22° 30′, add the difference of the Meridians to the Longitude of *Paris* when the place lies to the eaſt of *Paris*, and conſequently the beginning of the eclipſe of the *ſatellite* happens ſooner there than at *Paris*: On the contrary, when the place lies to the weſt of *Paris*, and the beginning of the eclipſe is obſerved later than at *Paris*, ſubtract the difference of the Meridians from the Longitude of *Paris*. By this operation you will find the ſought Longitude of either place.

§. 22. Hence it is evident, that when the Longitude and Latitude of a place are given in numbers, or degrees, its ſituation on the Earth may be very accurately determined; on which account great pains have been taken to find out thoſe of the principal places on the Terraqueous Globe. Such knowledge is of very great importance to perſons that are driven out of their courſe by a ſtorm at ſea, and know not whereabouts they are; who, upon finding the Longitude and Latitude of the place where they happen to be, marked in a chart, may avoid places of danger, and with ſafety proceed on their voyage. Perſons at ſea may pretty well make out the Latitude by taking an obſervation of the ſun or a known fixt ſtar; but the finding out of the Longitude is attended with very great difficulty. This induced the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *French*, many years ſince, to promiſe a very conſiderable reward to any perſon who ſhall invent a Method of finding the Longitude at ſea with diſpatch and accuracy.

§. 23. The Parallel Circles, ſo called becauſe they run parallel with the Equator, have the north or ſouth Pole for their centre, and decreaſe in circumference the nearer they approach to the Pole. Hence the 360 degrees into which every one of theſe circles is divided grow leſs and leſs; the degrees on the Equator being the largeſt. Now as it is often a matter of importance to know with diſpatch the proportion of the degrees in every Parallel Circle to thoſe of the Equator in geographical miles, the following table is inſerted for that purpoſe, in which a geographical mile * is divided into 60 minutes, or parts.

* Fifteen geographical miles, as mentioned above, are equal to one degree or 60 minutes on the Equator; it were therefore to be wiſhed the Author had called the parts of a mile by any other name, to avoid confuſion.

Degr.

Degr. of Lat.	Geogr. Mil.	Min.	Degr. of Lat.	Geogr. Mil.	Min.	Degr. of Lat.	Geogr. Mil.	Min.
0	15	0	31	12	51	61	7	16
1	14	59	32	12	43	62	7	2
2	14	59	33	12	35	63	6	48
3	14	58	34	12	26	64	6	34
4	14	57	35	12	17	65	6	20
5	14	56	36	12	8	66	6	6
6	14	55	37	11	59	67	5	52
7	14	53	38	11	49	68	5	38
8	14	51	39	11	39	69	5	23
9	14	48	40	11	29	70	5	8
10	14	46	41	11	19	71	4	53
11	14	43	42	11	9	72	4	38
12	14	40	43	10	58	73	4	23
13	14	37	44	10	47	74	4	8
14	14	33	45	10	36	75	3	53
15	14	29	46	10	25	76	3	38
16	14	25	47	10	14	77	3	23
17	14	21	48	10	2	78	3	8
18	14	16	49	9	50	79	2	52
19	14	11	50	9	38	80	2	36
20	14	6	51	9	26	81	2	20
21	14	0	52	9	14	82	2	5
22	13	54	53	9	2	83	1	50
23	13	48	54	8	49	84	1	34
24	13	42	55	8	36	85	1	18
25	13	36	56	8	23	86	1	3
26	13	29	57	8	10	87	0	47
27	13	22	58	7	57	88	0	31
28	13	15	59	7	44	89	0	16
29	13	7	60	7	30	90	0	0
30	12	59						

This table ſerves for calculating the diſtances of places on general maps or charts, and is a far more accurate method than that of meaſuring them by the ſcales commonly annexed, which cannot ſafely be depended upon. When I want to meaſure the length of any country, I firſt reckon the number of degrees included between its two outermoſt or extreme Meridians: Then I enquire how many degrees the Parallel Circle between them is diſtant from the Equator; and in this table I look for the number of miles equal to a degree in that Parallel. Laſtly, I multiply the number of de-

grees included between the two extreme Meridians by the number of miles contained in ſuch a degree, and the product ſhews the greateſt length of that country. For example, the two extreme Meridians of *France* include 13 degrees of Longitude between them; the Parallel that interſects them is diſtant 49 degrees from the Equator, and one degree of this Parallel according to the foregoing table is 9 geographical miles 50 minutes; ſo that by multiplying theſe 9 miles 50 minutes by the 13 degrees juſt mentioned, the greateſt length of *France* appears to be 128 geographical miles *. The two extreme Meridians of the Empire of *Ruſſia* are 160 degrees from each other, and the Parallel Circle between them is 60 degrees diſtant from the Equator; conſequently by the foregoing table one degree of it is 7 $\frac{1}{2}$ geographical miles. By multiplying the 160 degrees by 7 miles 30 minutes, I find that the greateſt length of the *Ruſſian* empire from eaſt to weſt amounts to 1200 geographical miles. By this table we may alſo calculate how many miles and parts of a mile any particular place runs over in a certain time by the diurnal motion of the Earth round its *axis*. For as all the 360 degrees of the Equator and Parallel Circles perform a complete revolution in 24 hours, they muſt move at the rate of 15 degrees every hour. But as the degrees of the Parallel Circles are leſs than thoſe of the Equator; ſo a place ſituated under the latter runs over a greater ſpace in an hour, than a place that lies under any of the former; and conſequently under the Poles, where the Parallels end in a point, there can be no ſuch motion. Hence it appears that a place ſituated juſt under the Equator muſt in an hour run over 15 times 15, or 225 geographical miles; whereas *Peterſburg*, where the elevation of the Pole is 60 degrees, on account of the diſtance of its Parallel from the Equator, runs over but 112 $\frac{1}{2}$ geographical miles in an hour.

§. 24. The proportion that the miles, moſt generally known, bear to a degree of the Equator, and likewiſe to each other, may be ſeen in the following table.

* It is but 127$\frac{8}{9}$ when multiplied according to the method preſcribed by the Author, and conſequently wants $\frac{10}{60}$ or 10 minutes, of 128 miles.

A degree

A degree of the Equator is equal to

Miles placed according to their length.

10½ *Swediſh* miles.
13⅓ *Hungarian* miles.
15 Common *German*, or geographical miles.
17½ *Spaniſh* miles.
20 Great *French* miles or leagues.
22⅔ *Perſian* miles, or *Paraſanga's*.
25 Small *French* miles or leagues.
30 *Indian* miles.
56⅔ *Arabian* miles.
60 Common *Italian* miles *.
66⅔ *Turkiſh* miles, or *Berri*.
69 4/11 or 70 *Engliſh* miles.
104½ *Ruſſian* miles, or *Werſts*.
250 *Chineſe* miles, or *Li*.
60,000 Geometrical paces.

In alphabetical order.

Arabian miles — —	56⅔
Chineſe miles — —	250
Engliſh miles —	69 4/11 or 70
French great miles or leagues	20
French ſmall miles or leagues	25
German miles — —	15
Hungarian miles — —	13⅓
Indian miles — —	30
Italian miles — —	60*
Perſian miles — —	22⅔
Ruſſian miles — —	104½
Swediſh miles — —	10½
Spaniſh miles —	17½
Turkiſh miles — —	66⅔

§. 25. The Sun has apparently two different motions: For, in the firſt place, it ſeems to move once round the Earth in 24 hours; and this is called its *diurnal* motion, which is from eaſt to weſt. The Sun does not ſtand always at an equal height in the Meridian of any place, but, with reſpect to the Horizon, it is ſometimes higher, and ſometimes lower. About the beginning of the Spring it comes to the celeſtial Equator, or Equinoctial Circle, when the day and night are of an equal length. After the vernal Equinox it aſcends higher every day at noon, and approaches towards the north Pole, till it comes to a certain Parallel Circle, diſtant 23°, 30′ from the Equator, which is called the Tropic of *Cancer*, or the north Tropic. At this time, when the ſun is in its Solſtice, we, who inhabit that part of the Earth which lies between the Equator and north Pole, have the longeſt day. After the ſummer Solſtice the Sun returns, and daily approaches to the Equator, where it arrives in Autumn, at which time the day and night are of an equal length; and then it daily advances further ſouthward, till it comes again to the winter Solſtice in a certain fixt Parallel Circle, which is alſo at the diſtance of 23°, 30′ from the Equator, and is called the South Tropic, or Tropic of *Capricorn*. At this time, thoſe who inhabit that part of the globe lying between the Equator and ſouth Pole have the longeſt day; but we who are to the north of the Equator have then the ſhorteſt

* The Author makes an *Italian* mile longer than an *Engliſh* mile; whereas 76 of the former are generally reckoned equal to a degree of the Equator.

day. After the winter Solſtice the Sun returns, and comes again to the Equator the following Spring. This motion of the ſun, which is performed from weſt to eaſt, is called its *annual* or proper motion; and is in a quite contrary direction to the *diurnal* motion. The path in which the annual motion of the ſun ſeems to be made is called the Ecliptic, or the Sun's Way; which we may imagine to ourſelves to be a circle which interſects the Equator at an angle of 23°, 30′ in two oppoſite points, which are called the Equinoctial Points. This circle is not only divided into 360 degrees, but alſo into 12 equal parts; every one of which contains 30 degrees, and derives its name from the conſtellation which in ancient times lay near it. Theſe 12 celeſtial ſigns, as they are called, are, in their order from weſt to eaſt, as follows:

Aries.	*Taurus.*	*Gemini.*	*Cancer.*	*Leo.*	*Virgo.*
♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍
Libra.	*Scorpio.*	*Sagittarius.*	*Capricornus.*	*Aquarius.*	*Piſces.*
♎	♏	♐	♑	♒	♓

If you ſuppoſe a great circle to be drawn from the Poles through the equinoctial and ſolſtitial Points, the former is called the equinoctial Colure, and the latter, the ſolſtitial Colure.

§. 26. Two of the Parallel Circles (§. 23.) which the Poles of the Ecliptic deſcribe round the Poles of the Equator are called Polar Circles. That neareſt the North Pole is called the north Polar Circle, and that neareſt the South Pole, the ſouth Polar Circle. Each of theſe circles is diſtant from its reſpective Pole 23°, 30′.

§. 27. That ſpace of the Earth which lies between two certain Parallel Circles (§. 23.) is called a Zone, of which there are reckoned five.

§. 28. That ſpace of the Earth lying between the two Tropics (§. 25.) which is divided into two equal parts by the Equator, and is 47° in breadth, is called the Torrid Zone; becauſe the heat, on account of the ſolar rays falling for the moſt part perpendicularly on that Zone, is continually very intenſe. The ſuperficies of the Torrid Zone amounts to 3,842,008$\frac{6}{11}$ ſquare geographical miles. Thoſe who inhabit the parts of the Earth which lie under either of the Tropics, have the ſun but once a year directly over their heads. This happens to thoſe under the Tropic of *Cancer* on *June* 21, when the ſun enters into *Cancer*, and cauſes the longeſt day; but to thoſe under the Tropic of *Capricorn* on *December* 21, when the ſun enters into *Capricorn*, and makes the ſhorteſt day with us. Thoſe who live within the Torrid Zone have the ſun twice a year vertical, or directly over their heads, *viz.* when it moves from the north Tropic down to the ſouth, and again when it returns from the ſouth to the north Tropic; conſequently they have alſo two ſummers, and only one winter in a year. But thoſe who live under the Equator, have yearly two ſummers and two winters. The days and nights in the Torrid Zone are nearly equal throughout the

the year; and as, in the night, the ſun is depreſſed a great way below their Horizon, the nights are pretty cool: The great heat of the ſun is alſo in ſome meaſure tempered by the conſtant eaſterly breeze which blows in this Zone. Every place whoſe Latitude is leſs than 23°, 30′ lies in the Torrid Zone.

§. 29. By the temperate Zone we underſtand that part of the Earth, which lies between a Tropical and a Polar Circle, of which there are two; and the ſuperficies of each is about 2,335,032$\frac{487}{1773}$ ſquare geographical miles. All places, whoſe Latitude exceeds 23°, 30′, but is under 66°, 30′, lie in the temperate Zones. The ſun is never vertical to the inhabitants of theſe Zones, but is leſs or more diſtant from their Zenith or Vertex, as they live nearer to, or farther from either of the Tropics. They have yearly but one ſummer and one winter. When it is ſummer in the northern temperate Zone it is winter in the ſouthern; when the days increaſe in one they decreaſe in the other; and when it is the longeſt day in the former it is the ſhorteſt day in the latter, and *vice verſâ*.

§. 30. We call that ſpace of the Earth the Frigid Zone, which is included within either of the two Polar Circles, and in the Centre of which the Pole ſtands. Of theſe there are alſo two; and the area of each is reckoned at 384,921$\frac{63}{1773}$ ſquare geographical miles. All thoſe places which have a greater Latitude than 66°, 30′ lie, in the Frigid Zones; and as the ſun is always at a great diſtance from theſe Zones, it is generally very cold in thoſe parts of the Earth. The Frigid Zones have this peculiarity above the other Zones, namely, that the ſun every year, for ſome days at leaſt, never ſets, and afterwards never appears above the Horizon for as many days. It is day for one half of the year, and night the other half at the Poles; but the dark night is hardly of two months duration there, as for ſome months together the evening and morning twilights prevent it. Beſides, the darkneſs of the nights is leſſened by moon-light and the *Aurora borealis*, ſo that we may juſtly affirm, that there is leſs dark night under the Poles than in other parts of the Globe.

§. 31. The farther you remove from the Equator towards the Poles, the greater will be the inequality of days and nights; and every place in thoſe parts has once a year its longeſt day, and as often its ſhorteſt day. But the longeſt days in different parts are not of the ſame duration; and therefore a Parallel (§. 23.) is drawn through thoſe degrees of Latitude, where the duration of the longeſt day in the year increaſes about half an hour; and the ſpace included between two ſuch Parallels is called a climate. The following table exhibits the number of climates, the degree of Latitude where they begin, and the hours of the longeſt day in every climate.

Climate		Latitude Degr.	min.	Longeſt day Hours.
1		0	0	12
2		8	25	12½
3		16	25	13
4		23	50	13½
5		30	20	14
6		36	28	14½
7		41	22	15
8		45	29	15½
9		49	1	16
10	Begins	51	58	16½
11		54	27	17
12		56	37	17½
13		58	29	18
14		59	58	18½
15		61	18	19
16		62	25	19½
17		63	22	20
18		64	6	20½
19		64	49	21
20		65	21	21½

Climate		Latitude Degr.	Min.	Longeſt day Hours.
21		65	47	22
22	Begins	66	6	22½
23		66	20	23
24		66	28	23½

At the end of the 24th Climate under 66°, 31′ the longeſt day is 24 hours in length; and conſequently there can be, at that time, no night there. The Climates, properly ſpeaking, are but 24 in number. The ſix following Climates are improperly ſo called.

Climate		Latitude Degr.	Min.	Longeſt day Months.
25		67	30	1
26		69	30	2
27		73	20	3
28	Begins	78	20	4
29		84	0	5
30		90	0	6

The length of a day is reckoned from the true riſing to the real ſetting of the ſun; and conſequently the morning and evening twilights muſt not be taken into the account. On knowing the Latitude of a place, we may eaſily find to what Climate it belongs. For example, the Latitude of *Copenhagen* is 55°, 40′, 59″; conſequently that city lies a little beyond the middle of the 11th Climate. The following is ſtill an eaſier method of finding what Climate any place is in, *viz.* when you know how many hours the longeſt day in a place conſiſts of, if you deduct 12 from it and double the remainder it will give you the number of the Climate. For inſtance, the longeſt day at *Copenhagen* is 17½ hours, on deducting 12 from this

this number the remainder will be 5 ½, which I double; and the number 11, or twice 5 ½, ſhews that *Copenhagen* is in the 11th Climate.

§. 32. Thoſe people who live under the Equator have a Right Sphere, as the celeſtial Equator with its Parallels are perpendicular to the Horizon, and the ſun and ſtars riſe in the ſame direction. Hence they have no elevation of the Pole, as, with reſpect to them, both Poles lie in the Horizon. At noon alſo, when the ſun is in the Equator, and conſequently directly over their heads, they caſt no ſhadow; on which account they are called Ἄσκιοι or *Aſcii* *. At other times of the year their ſhadow extends either northward or ſouthward; hence they are alſo called Ἀμφίσκιοι or *Amphiſcii* †.

§. 33. Under the Poles the Sphere is Parallel; for there the Equator coincides with the Horizon; one Pole is in the Zenith, the other in the Nadir; and conſequently the Equator and its Parallels are parallel with the Horizon; and the ſun, ſtars, *&c.* move in the ſame direction. In a Parallel Sphere alſo the ſame hemiſphere is always above the Horizon, and the other hemiſphere is inviſible; the ſtars never riſe or ſet, and only one half of their number is ſeen. Laſtly, in ſuch a Sphere there is the greateſt elevation of the Pole poſſible, which is 90 degrees. If there are inhabitants under the Pole, their ſhadow, when it is day with them, deſcribes an entire circle in the ſpace of 24 hours (as the ſun for one half of the year moves quite round them every 24 hours) hence they are called Περίσκιοι or *Periſcii* ‡. The ſame thing alſo happens to ſuch as inhabit thoſe parts of the Earth which lie from 90° to 66°, 30′ north or ſouth Latitude, during the days in which the ſun does not ſet with them.

§. 34. All the other inhabitants of the Globe from the firſt degree of Latitude to the 90th have an oblique ſphere, the Horizon and Equator interſecting each other obliquely. Hence the ſun and ſtars appear to them to riſe and ſet obliquely, and ſome of the celeſtial bodies are always below, and others always above their Horizon. The ſhadow of thoſe who inhabit the Temperate Zone, falls at noon, during the whole year, always on one ſide, namely, with us in the northern Hemiſphere towards the north; and that of the inhabitants of the ſouthern Hemiſphere towards the ſouth. Hence they are called Ἑτερόσκιοι, or *Heteroſcii* ‖.

§. 35. Thoſe inhabitants of the Earth who have their feet oppoſed to ours are called our *Antipodes*, or *Antichthones*. They live in oppoſite parallels, and that part of the ſame meridian circle which is directly oppoſite to us. They have the heavens over their heads and the Earth under their feet as we have: On the contrary it is ſummer with them when it is winter with us, and *vice verſâ*. They have day when we have night, and

* *i. e.* Without ſhadows.
† *i. e.* Having ſhadows on both ſides.
‡ *i. e.* Caſting ſhadows all round.
‖ *i. e.* Caſting ſhadows one way.

night,

night, when we have day. When the ſun riſes with us it ſets with them, and when it ſets with us it riſes with them. Whoever conſiders that the Earth is ſpherical; that men and other things on its ſurface have, by divine appointment, a perpendicular direction, or gravitate to the Earth's centre; and that voyages have often been performed round the Globe (§. 8.) can have no manner of doubt about the exiſtence of *Antipodes*. Indeed the oppoſite points of the Globe to ſeveral particular places are in the ocean; however, ſhips often ſail in thoſe parts.

§. 36. The inhabitants of thoſe places that lie in the ſame half of the Meridian (§. 18), and conſequently have the ſame Longitude, and are alſo equidiſtant, towards the north or ſouth Pole, from the Equator, are called *Antioeci* *. Theſe are therefore diſtinguiſhed as having quite contrary ſeaſons; for when it is ſummer in one of theſe places, it is winter in the other. Thoſe who live under the Equator have no *Antioeci*.

§. 37. Thoſe who live in the ſame Parallels, and conſequently in the ſame northern or ſouthern Latitude, but in oppoſite parts of the ſame Meridian, or whoſe Longitude differs juſt 180° are called *Perioeci*. They are in the ſame Zone and Climate, and their ſeaſons and length of days are exactly the ſame; but they reckon their hours differently. For example, when in one of theſe places it is 12 at noon, in the other it is midnight; and when in the former it is 3 in the afternoon, in the latter it is 3 o'Clock in the morning. If there are any inhabitants under the Poles, they have no *Perioeci*.

§. 38. That part of the Horizon where the ſun riſes, is called the Eaſt, and that part where it ſets is termed the Weſt; where the ſun is at noon is called the South, and that part oppoſite to the laſt, we call the North. Theſe are the four principal or cardinal Points of the World, which by the *Hollanders* are called *Oſt*, *Weſt*, *Sud*, and *Nord*. They are beſt pointed out by drawing an accurate Meridian-Line, *i e.* a line, one extremity of which points due South and the other due North; but they are commonly found by the Compaſs. On account of the variety of winds, and for the conveniency and improvement of navigation, ſmaller diviſions have been made between theſe cardinal points, which are called *collateral*, and have their names from the two principal adjoining points; but of the latter the ſouth and north are firſt named. Theſe are called *South-Eaſt*, *South-Weſt*, *North-Weſt*, *North-Eaſt*. The arches of the Horizon lying between theſe 8 points are ſub-divided into 2 equal parts; and in the middle are placed theſe eight collateral points, viz. *South-South-Weſt*, *Weſt-South-Weſt*, *Weſt-North-Weſt*, *North-North-Weſt*; *North-North-Eaſt*, *Eaſt-North-Eaſt*, *Eaſt-South-Eaſt*, *South-South-Eaſt*. And laſtly, the arches of the Horizon between theſe 16 equal parts are once more biſected, which conſtitute the

* From ἀντι and οἰκεω, *i. e.* dwelling over againſt each other.

16 fol-

16 following collateral points; viz. *South-by-Weſt*, *South-Weſt-by-South*, *South-Weſt-by-Weſt*, *Weſt-by-South*, *Weſt-by-North*, *North-Weſt-by-Weſt*, *North-Weſt-by-North*, *North-by-Weſt*; *North-by-Eaſt*, *North-Eaſt-by-North*, *North-Eaſt-by-Eaſt*, *Eaſt-by-North*, *Eaſt-by-South*, *South-Eaſt-by-Eaſt*, *South-Eaſt-by-South*, *South-by-Eaſt*. Theſe 32 points are beſt known from the Mariners Compaſs.

§. 39. As Geographers, when they have maps lying before them, always turn their faces to the North, they call the Eaſt the right ſide of the Earth, and Weſt the left ſide of it. When they want to point out the right or left ſide of a river, they turn their faces towards its ſource; and then they denominate that bank of the river which lies to their right, the right ſide and that to the left, the left ſide of the river. This is what they mean when, for example, they ſay *Hamburg* lies on the left, and *Meiſſen* on the right ſide of the *Elbe*.

§. 40. As the Earth is ſpherical (§. 7.) it may be very eaſily repreſented in miniature by an artificial round ball. The ſpheroidal figure of the Earth (§. 9.) cannot conveniently be exhibited by ſuch a ball or Globe; and therefore it is made exactly round or ſpherical. Who the firſt inventor of a Terreſtrial Globe was, we are not certain. The accounts of artificial Globes given by ancient authors are collected by *J. A. Fabricius* in his *Biblioth. Græca lib.* iv. *c.* 14; with which the reader may compare D. *Hauber*'s Hiſtory of Maps, p. 57, and the Appendix to it, p. 38, where many hiſtorical hints about Terreſtrial Globes are to be met with. If the conjecture advanced by both theſe Authors (namely, that the chapiters of the two pillars in *Solomon*'s temple mentioned in 1 *Kings* ch. vii, v. 16—20, were Globes) be probable, thoſe muſt have been the moſt ancient of which we have any account. According to *Diodorus Siculus*, *Atlas* King of *Mauritania* was the firſt who conſtructed a Sphere. This gave riſe to the fictitious ſtory which was related of that monarch, namely, that he bore up the Heavens on his ſhoulders, and that he was metamorphoſed to a high mountain of the ſame name. As to the Terreſtrial Globes made in more modern times, the firſt are thoſe executed by *Mart. Behaim* and *Fracaſtorius*. The Globe made by the former is ſtill to be ſeen in the *Behaim* family at *Nurenberg*, and is but little regarded at preſent. The next after theſe were made by *Jod. Hondius* the elder, *Will. Bleau*, and *P. Coronelli*; but thoſe made by *Gerh. Valken* were the moſt common. After theſe, other Globes that were far more accurate, were publiſhed by *De l'Iſle* and *Moll*. *Erhard Weigel*, *Joh. Beyer*, *J. L. Andre*, and *J. G. Dopplemayer* have publiſhed new terreſtrial globes in *Germany*, which were delineated by *Joh. Geo. Puſchner* *. At this time Profeſſor *Lowitz* at *Gottingen* is making a pair of

* It is a wonder the author paſſes over in ſilence our ingenious countryman, the late Mr. *Senex*, whoſe Globes are ſo much admired for their beauty and correctneſs.

Globes,

Globes, three *Paris* feet in diameter, which will be more accurate than any thing of that kind that has hitherto appeared in the world. At *Elbing* in *Pruſſia* *J. F. Enderſb* has been employed for ſome time on a pair of beautiful new Globes. Some Terreſtrial Globes of an extraordinary ſize and value have been made by ingenious artiſts from time to time. The firſt among theſe was that made by the heirs of *W. Bleau* between the years 1645 and 1650, which is 7 *Engliſh* feet in diameter, and is now to be ſeen at *Petersburg*. The next to this was a Globe begun by *Andr. Buſh*, at the command of *Frederic* III. duke of *Holſtein Gottorp* in 1654, under the inſpection of *Ad. Olearius*, which was not finiſhed till 1664. Theſe extraordinary Globes are deſcribed in this Work under the articles *Gottorp* and *Petersburg*. After this Cardinal *d'Etrees* cauſed a pair of Globes to be made by *P. Coronelli* for *Lewis* XIV. which are 12 *Paris* feet in diameter. They were begun in the year 1683, and are ſtill to be ſeen in the *French* king's library at *Paris*. The earl of *Caſtlemain* and *E. Weigel* alſo cauſed large Globes of an uncommon ſize to be made.

§. 41. A Terreſtrial Globe exhibits on its ſurface not only the dry Land, the ſeas, the moſt extenſive lakes, principal rivers, cities and towns, in proportion to their magnitude, with their ſituation and diſtance from each other; but alſo the ſeveral Points and Circles, which mathematicians have imagined on the Earth, and have been deſcribed above. Whoever therefore would form a diſtinct notion of the Earth, and rightly underſtand the mathematical part of Geography explained above, muſt procure a good Terreſtrial Globe. In and upon the ſurface of ſuch an artificial Globe he will find the terreſtrial *Axis* and Poles (§. 14), the Equator (§. 17), a Meridian Circle divided into 4 Quadrants, which is commonly made of braſs; beſides a Meridian line drawn (§. 18) on the Globe itſelf at every 5 or 10 degrees of Longitude, and alſo a Parallel Circle (§. 23) at every 5 or 10 degrees of Latitude; the Ecliptic (§. 25), the Tropics (§. 25), the Polar Circles (§. 26), and the Horizon (§. 16). The laſt is commonly made of wood, and is ſupported by four feet. The globe ſtands in this wooden Horizon, in which the brazen Meridian is inſerted. The Zones (§. 27—30), the Climates (§. 31), the Right, Parallel, and Oblique Spheres (§. 32—34), the *Antipodes* (§. 35), *Antioeci* (§. 36), *Perioeci* (§. 37), and ſeveral other particulars are beſt explained by ſuch an artificial Globe. Round the North-Pole there is a ſmall horary Circle of braſs, divided into twice 12 hours, with an index which may be turned round the *Axis* of the Earth and fixt at any particular hour. On the wooden Horizon are alſo to be ſeen the 32 Points of the Compaſs and a Calendar. In order to place the Terreſtrial Globe according to the Cardinal Points a Compaſs is neceſſary, or when there is none affixed to the pedeſtal of the Globe we draw a Meridian Line on the table, by the help of a pair of compaſſes, and ſet the Terreſtrial Globe in ſuch a manner over it, that the brazen Meridian

Circle may coincide with that line; and then the Globe ſtands in a right poſition. I ſhall here adduce the chief problems which may be ſolved by the Terreſtrial Globe.

§. 42. In order to find the Latitude (or the elevation of the Pole) of any given place on the Terreſtrial Globe, you muſt bring it under the brazen Meridian; and on the degrees of the latter you will find the diſtance of the place from the Equator, which is the thing ſought for (§. 20). By reckoning on the Equator the number of degrees from Weſt to Eaſt between the firſt Meridian (§. 19) and the brazen Meridian, you have alſo the Longitude of the place.

§. 43. In order to rectify the Terreſtrial Globe according to the actual Horizon of any place, we firſt find out the Latitude of the place (§. 42); then we reckon as many degrees as it comes to, on that quarter of the brazen Meridian which is on the other ſide of the North Pole *, and fix the degree of Latitude, when found, at the northern edge of the Horizon. After this we bring the place under the brazen Meridian; and the wooden Horizon ſhews the actual Horizon of the given place.

§. 44. As on the wooden Horizon of the new Terreſtrial Globes the days and months according to the new ſtile † are ſet down as well as the courſe of the ſun; in order to find the ſun's place in the Ecliptic (§. 25) for any given day, we need only look for that day of the month on the wooden Horizon, and obſerve what degree of the celeſtial Sign ſtands over againſt it, and it will ſhew the place of the ſun for that day, which was the thing required. For example, to day being the 2d of *April*, I look for it on the wooden Horizon; and I find over againſt it the 14th degree of *Aries*, which is the ſun's place in the Ecliptic for that day. If it happens to be leap year, after the 24th of *February* we muſt always add one to the day of the month.

§. 45. In order to find when the ſun riſes and ſets, on any given day, you rectify the Globe according to the Horizon of the place (§. 43); or, which is the ſame thing, you give it its proper elevation of the Pole, and bring the place under the brazen Meridian. Then you ſeek for the ſun's place in the Ecliptic for that day on the wooden Horizon (§. 44), and when you have found the ſame in the Ecliptic on the Globe, bring it under the brazen Meridian. After this you muſt hold the globe ſteady, and place the index of the horary circle at XII. but it muſt not be the inferior XII. or that which lies below the North Pole, but that above it towards the Zenith. Then you ſet your finger or a pin at the ſun's place in the Ecliptic, and turn the Globe round till it comes down to the wooden Horizon on the eaſt, and weſt ſide of the Globe; and the index of the horary

* It is here ſuppoſed that the globe is placed according to the cardinal points (§. 41) and that your face is turned towards the north.

† The calendar of the *Engliſh* globes exhibits both the old and new ſtile on the wooden Horizon.

Circle

Circle ſhews, by the former the riſing, and by the latter, the ſetting of the ſun. If you double the hour of the ſun's riſing, you have the length of the night, and if you double the hour of its ſetting, you have the length of the day in the given place.

§. 46. By knowing the hour of the day in any given place, in order to know what o'clock it is in other parts of the world, you bring the given place under the graduated edge of the brazen Meridian; then hold the Globe ſteady, and ſet the index of the horary Circle to the hour of the day at the given place. After this you muſt bring the other places required under the brazen Meridian, and obſerve what hour the index points out at each place, which will give you the hour of the day at thoſe ſeveral places.

§. 47. In order to find in what places the ſun on any given day is vertical at noon, you muſt firſt ſeek the ſun's place on the wooden Horizon (§. 44), and then in the Ecliptic delineated on the Globe; which you muſt bring under the brazen Meridian, and mark the degree ſtanding over it on the graduated edge: After this you muſt turn the Globe round, and the places ſought are all thoſe which paſs under the degree you have marked on the brazen Meridian.

§. 48. The hour of the day at any place being known, you may find all thoſe places on the Globe where it is noon at the ſame inſtant by bringing the given place under the brazen Meridian, then placing the index on the hour of the day at the given place, and afterwards turning the Globe till the index points to 12 o'clock. This being done, you will find all thoſe places, where it is noon at that inſtant, lying under the brazen Meridian.

§. 49. To find the oppoſite point on the Globe to any place, you bring the given place under the brazen Meridian, and ſet the index at the ſuperior XII. or noon. Then you turn the Globe round, till the index points at the inferior XII. or midnight. After this you muſt reckon on the brazen Meridian from the Equator towards the ſouth an equal number of degrees to the Latitude of the given place; and at the end of theſe degrees under the meridian, you have the oppoſite point to the given place; and conſequently the *Antipodes* of its inhabitants *.

* The Author ſuppoſes the given place to be in a northern Latitude On the contrary, if the given place be ſouth of the Equator, its oppoſite point is to be found as many degrees north of the Equator, as the Latitude of the given place comes to.

CHAP. III.

Of the NATURAL STATE *of the* EARTH, *or* PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

§. 50. THE deſcription of the natural ſtate of our Earth is of great importance, and attended with no ſmall pleaſure, but as yet is very imperfect. I ſhall, however, briefly deſcribe it according to the moſt accurate diſcoveries that have been hitherto made; which may ſerve to give a general idea of what is moveable and immoveable, both upon and under the ſurface of the Earth; and alſo to explain what phyſical remarks may be met with in the deſcription of particular countries in the following ſheets.

Of the EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE.

§. 51. The Earth is encompaſſed with the Air; but this is not ſo pure and ſubtle as *Æther*; for it is charged with vapours, or heterogeneous particles detached from the land, but principally from the water, which renders it denſer, and leſs pure than the latter. Hence it is called the Atmoſphere of the Earth; and is ſuppoſed to extend 9 or 10 geographical miles in height, as it ceaſes to refract the ſolar rays at that diſtance from the Earth. The denſity of the Atmoſphere decreaſes in proportion to its height. It is divided into three Regions. The loweſt Region extends from the Earth's ſurface as far as that part of it where the air is not warmed by the ſolar rays, reflected from the Earth. This Region is conſequently the warmeſt; but we do not know exactly to what diſtance from the Earth's ſurface this Region extends. The middle Region reaches from the loweſt Region to the ſummits of the higheſt mountains; or even as far as the higheſt clouds, which may be ſeen floating in the air ſeveral fathoms lower than the tops of ſome very high mountains, as the *Cordilleras* in *Peru*. The middle Region is much colder than the loweſt, as it is only warmed by the direct rays of the Sun paſſing through it. The third and higheſt Region extends from the middle Region to the extremity of the Atmoſphere; but its limits are as uncertain as thoſe of the Atmoſphere itſelf. It is, probably, far colder than the two other Regions, as the reflected ſolar rays have ſtill leſs influence on it than they have on the two former.

§. 52. The particles exhaled from the Earth into the Atmoſphere are of various ſpecies; ſome being aqueous, ſome terrene; others metallic, others again ſulphureous, and others ſaline, *&c.* Now, in ſome parts of the Earth one ſort, and in others another ſpecies of particles are more copi-

ouſly

ouſly exhaled; hence ariſes a great difference in the temperature of the Air, often obſervable in places at no very great diſtance from each other. A denſe heavy air is more conducive to health than a rare or light air; for, in the former, the circulation of the blood and the imperceptible perſpiration are more eaſily performed than in the latter. When the air is heavy it is generally clear; but a light air is always accompanied with fogs, rain, or ſnow, ſo that it is at the ſame time moiſt. The exhalations help to increaſe the weight or preſſure of the Air; and in very hot weather, when they mount to a great height, the Air, notwithſtanding the aqueous vapours with which it is charged, is very dry. Too great a degree of drineſs very much waſtes the juices in the human body, and conſequently is extremely prejudicial to its health: This, indeed, happens only in very dry and ſandy deſarts. A moiſt Air is very hurtful to the human body; as it relaxes the fibres, obſtructs inſenſible perſpiration, and, if it be warm at the ſame time, renders the juices liable to putrefaction. The warmth of the Air rarefies and expands the fluids in the human body, and promotes ſweat: Hence proceed laſſitude and ſleep. Too great a degree of cold in the Air braces up and contracts the ſolids too much, and at the ſame time condenſes and inſpiſſates the fluids in the human body: Hence obſtructions and inflammations frequently ariſe. But by exerciſe, warm clothing, and cuſtom, ſuch bad conſequences may be prevented. Hence we may conclude that temperature of the Air to be the beſt, which is rather heavy than light, neither too dry nor too moiſt, and is charged but with few, or no noxious exhalations. The inhabitants of *Quito* in *America*, who dwell on the higheſt part of our Earth hitherto known, breathe the pureſt Air. The weſtern parts of *Africa*, under the torrid Zone, have the greateſt degree of heat of any place on the Globe.

§. 53. The Atmoſphere is the cauſe of clouds, rain, ſnow, dew, thunder, lightning, and various other phænomena in the air. The rays of light are alſo refracted by the Atmoſphere, ſo that we have the rays of the Sun ſooner, and enjoy them longer, than we do the ſight of the Sun itſelf. Hence it comes to paſs, that we have morning and evening twilights; ſo that the glare of day does not break in upon us at once, but gradually advances, and retires in the ſame manner; and to the ſame cauſe it is owing that inhabitants of the two Polar Circles enjoy the Sun for ſeveral days in winter, even while it is below their Horizon.

§. 54. Where the Air is charged with vapours, it is heavier than where it is free from ſuch aqueous exhalations; hence the former is more elaſtic, and conſequently its preſſure is greater than that of the latter. This cauſes a motion in the Air which we call Wind. The Winds are divided according to the points of the compaſs (§. 38); and as the places from whence they happen to blow are warm, cold, or moiſt, the Winds partake of the ſame quality. The Winds have a great influence on the health of the human

ſpecies;

ſpecies, and ſerve to purge the Atmoſphere of the noxious exhalations wherewith it is impregnated; which are either diſſipated by Winds or diſcharged on the Earth by the rain. A cold and moiſt Wind is the moſt pernicious of all the reſt.

§. 55. It has been found, by repeated experiments, that the velocity with which the Wind moves is never above 50 feet in a ſecond. We call that a Guſt or ſquall of Wind which ſuddenly begins to rage with a great degree of violence, is again ſoon laid, and continues to do ſo, as it were, by fits. The Wind generally blows parallel with the Horizon; but when its direction is perpendicular to the Horizon it cauſes a Whirlwind. The courſe of the Wind is more direct at ſea than it is on land; for on the former, it has a free and uninterrupted paſſage; but on the latter, mountains, woods, cities, and other impediments intercept its current. The Sea-Winds or breezes alſo blow ſtronger and more conſtant than thoſe at land. Thoſe Winds which blow from the Eaſt, or either of the Poles, are ſtronger at ſea than thoſe that blow from the Weſt and the Equinoctial Line: Whereas, at land, according to the different ſituation of places, the Weſt and the South Winds are ſometimes ſtronger, and ſometimes weaker than the Eaſt and North Winds. The Winds are more violent, both at ſea and land, in ſpring and autumn than in ſummer and winter. On eminences, and in narrow defiles formed between ranges of hills or contiguous buildings, the Winds are more boiſterous than on a plain or level country. Under the Equator and between the Tropics, the Wind blows conſtantly during the whole year in one direction, which is cauſed by the heat of the ſun, and moves the ſame way with it, namely from Eaſt to Weſt; ſo that they have a continual eaſterly Wind there. However, at different ſeaſons of the year, it blows from different points between the Tropics; for it generally comes from the South-Eaſt from *April* to *November*, and from *November* to *April* it blows from the North-Eaſt points. It is likewiſe obſervable that the Wind on this ſide the Equator blows moſtly from the North-Eaſt, and on the other ſide of it from the Eaſt-South-Eaſt.

§. 56. The Weather, or temperature of the air, depends much more on other circumſtances than on the diſtance of a place from the Pole, or its proximity to the Equator. All thoſe places which are ſituated between the Tropics are not the hotteſt on the Globe, nor are all the places included within the Polar Circles ſo intolerably cold, as is generally imagined. Two places may be in the ſame Latitude, and yet one of them may be very hot, or cold, and the other temperate. In many places ſituated far to the North, as at *Peterſburg* for example, the heat is far more intenſe at certain times than it is between the Tropics. The Weather, in a great meaſure, depends alſo on the Wind, to which the variableneſs or change of it is for the moſt part owing. It has, however, been obſerved in general, that places lying far to the

the East are colder than those which lie under the same Parallel, or Latitude, more towards the West.

Of the EARTH *in general.*

§. 57. The *Terra firma*, or dry land, as far as it is hitherto known, does not take up a third part of the surface of the Terraqueous Globe. I shall here treat in particular of the Land, and afterwards of the Water.

§. 58. On looking around us on dry Land, we see a great inequality of hills and valleys, a great diversity of soils, with a surprizing variety of countries. Mountains may be reckoned among the most striking proofs of the Divine power, wisdom, and goodness. They are an ornament to the Earth, affording the most beautiful prospects; contain in their bowels large stores of metals, precious stones, and other minerals; and give rise to cooling springs, brooks and rivers *. On the Mountains we also find refreshing breezes and wholesome air, good pasture for cattle, salutary herbs, medicinal simples, vines, shrubs, trees, &c. In a word, they render the Earth a commodious habitation for men and beasts. They appear indeed at first sight as if they were interspersed at random on the surface of the Earth; but, upon a nearer view, we find, that in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, the vast ranges of huge Mountains for the most part extend from East to West; whereas in *America* they stretch mostly from North to South. The shape or figure of the Mountains in various parts of the Earth differs extremely. Some of them form high ridges, the height of which, for a long tract of land, is pretty equal; others are separated asunder by very deep valleys. Some have a circumference that is tolerably regular; that of others is very irregular: and sometimes we see a mountain standing by itself, or detached in the middle of a vale or plain. The Mountains that are situated between the Tropics are higher than those in the Temperate Zones; and the latter are higher than those in the Frigid Zones. Hence it appears, that the nearer we approach to the Equator, the greater inequalities we find on the surface of the Earth. The *Cordilleras* in *America*, which lie under the Equator, are reckoned the highest Mountains on the Globe; and one of them, which is called *Chimboraſſo*, is the highest hill hitherto known, its height being computed at 19,300 *Paris* feet. Formerly the *Pico* on the island of *Teneriffa* boasted of that pre-eminence. The *Swiss* look upon the *Titlisberg* to be the highest hill in their country; and *Canigou* is reckoned the highest among the *Pyrenees*. In several Mountains and Rocks there are large and remarkable caverns.

§. 59. Many of the Mountains on the surface of the Earth exhibit fiery eruptions. These *Volcano's*, at certain times, emit, at the aperture on the summit of them, smoke, fire, ashes and stones; and sometimes discharge a

* The Author might have added, fruitful showers, as the mountains, in part, are the cause of them by condensing the vapours, &c.

ſtream of fire, reſembling ignited or melted metal. The moſt remarkable burning mountains in *Europe* are *Veſuvio* in the kingdom of *Naples*, *Ætna* in *Sicily*, *Stromboli* on the iſland of the ſame name, *Hecla* and *Krabla*, with ſome other mountains, in *Iceland*. There are *Volcano's* alſo in *Kamtſchatka* in *Aſia*, on an iſland not far from it, and on the iſland *Ternate* one of the *Moluccas*; on *Fuego* one of the *African* iſlands, and in *Peru* and other places in *America*. The cauſe of theſe *Volcano's* is to be attributed to the kindling of ſulphureous vapours under the Earth. When this ſubterraneous fire finds no ſuch ſpiracle or vent as *Volcano's* are, it ſhakes the Earth, or even tears it aſunder; and this is called an Earthquake, which is commonly accompanied with a dreadful rumbling noiſe, or loud exploſion, cauſed by the rarefaction and expanſion of the impriſoned air by the ſubterraneous heat. Earthquakes every day become more common than they were heretofore.

§. 60. Vallies are the neceſſary conſequence of Mountains; but I have nothing particular to obſerve concerning theſe. Uninhabited Wilds, and uncultivated places are called Deſerts. I ſhall only obſerve, that ſome of theſe remain uninhabited on account of their ſandy waſtes, damp moraſſes, and barren ſoil; others are uncultivated becauſe of their vaſt diſtance from any inhabited country. The ſandy Deſerts of *Africa* and *Arabia* are the moſt remarkable on the Globe. In the north of *Aſia* there are alſo many uncultivated places which are commonly called *Steppen*, being of the ſame nature with what we call Heaths.

§. 61. As Natural Philoſophers divide the external and internal produce of the Earth into certain general claſſes, which they call KINGDOMS, I ſhall briefly recount the principal of theſe natural Kingdoms. The MINERAL KINGDOM ſtands firſt in order, and contains all thoſe bodies which are produced in the Earth, but have neither life nor any viſible juices contained in tubes or veins. Minerals may be divided into four principal *Genera*.

§. 62. To the *firſt* principal *Genus* belong the different ſpecies of EARTHS *(Terræ)*, or thoſe Mineral bodies which conſiſt of parts that have little or no coheſion, are not ſoluble in oil or water, tho' they may be in ſome meaſure malaxable in the latter, and from which ſtones derive their origin. Under this *Genus* four principal *ſpecies* are included, which are as follows:

1. The *ſpecies* of duſt, Earth, or Mould, *(Humus)*, including black or garden mould, red mould or *Engliſh* Earth; Umber or brown Earth; black flaky Earth or *Indian* ink; peat or turf, and animal Earth, derived from putrid animals.

Chalk, *(Creta)*, the ſpecies of which are, white chalk; *Engliſh* white chalk; pale chalk; *Lac Lunæ*; *Guhr*; *Calx*, or *Terra alkalina*; browniſh-red chalk, and green or *French* chalk.

2. The *ſpecies* of Clay *(Argilla)*, which is ſtiff, firm, unctuous, *&c.* are a whitiſh-blue variegated Clay, fullers Clay, Clay that will bear the fire; ſeven ſpecies of Bole (which, when formed into ſmall round cakes, is called *Terra*

Sigillata, or Sealed Earth, becauſe it is marked with a ſtamp); looſe, and ſtone Clay.

Marl, *(Marga)* the ſpecies of which are, genuine porcelain-earth, tobacco-pipe-clay or baſtard porcelain-earth, chalky-marl, fullers-earth, marl uſed for manuring a barren ſoil, ſtone-marl, and caſting-marl.

3. The *ſpecies* of Earth mixed with ores, which properly belong to the third principal claſs of the Mineral Kingdom; and are either mixed with ſalt, as Vitriol, Alum, ſalt-petre, common ſalt, and alkaline ſalt mixed with earth; or with ſulphur, as the bitumenous and foſſile ſulphur; or with metals, as Calamine, iron ore, and Verdigriſe.

4. The *ſpecies* of Sand, as dry ſand, *arena pulverulenta*, quickſand, claiey ſand, and *Tripoly* of various kinds, of which the yellow ſort is uſed for poliſhing; Stone-ſand *(arena petroſa)* or properly ſand; Ore-ſand, as iron, tin, and gold ſand; and laſtly Animal-ſand.

§. 63. To the *ſecond* principal *Genus* belong the ſpecies of STONES. Theſe are firm, compact bodies, which are not malaxable in water or oil, and of different degrees of hardneſs. Stones are divided,

1. Into the *ſpecies* of *Calx*, which are reducible to powder by fire, but being mixed with water, or any other liquid, acquire a great degree of hardneſs again, and are of ſo looſe a texture as not to ſtrike fire with ſteel. To this claſs belong Lime-ſtone; and Marble, which conſiſts of fine particles, admits of a beautiful poliſh or luſtre, with ſtrong, vivid colours, and, after lying for a long time expoſed to the air, crumbles to pieces. Some ſorts of Marble are of one colour; as the white, black, grey, red, yellow, dark-brown and green marbles. Others are Variegated with the different colours juſt mentioned, intermixed in ſpots or veins. Others again are Picturesque, or marked with all manner of figures, &c.

Gypſum, the *ſpecies* of which are Alabaſter, which admits of a poliſh, but has not the ſame luſtre as marble; cryſtal *gypſum*; *Selenites* which conſiſts of pure tranſparent *laminæ* or flakes; radiated *gypſum*, tranſparent *gypſum*; ſhining or *Bononian* ſtone, and *Lapis Nephriticus*.

Spat, or Spar, the *ſpecies* of which are cubic, flaky, granular *Spat*, and tranſparent *Spat*; *Double-ſtone*, or *Iceland-cryſtal*, which exhibits every object that is ſeen thro' it double; cryſtal *ſpat*; *ſwine-ſtone*, which, when rubbed, ſmells rank; glaſs *ſpat*, and field *ſpat*.

2. The *ſpecies* of *Glaſs-ſtones (Terræ vitreſcentes)*, under which are comprehended thoſe ſtones which, when melted in the fire, vitrify or turn to glaſs, and which are generally ſo hard as to ſtrike fire with ſteel. To this claſs belong *Schiefer*, or a kind of ſlate which breaks in layers, flakes or *laminæ*; and Sand-Stone, which breaks in rough ſquare pieces.

Flint-ſtones, or *Achate*, which are all hard, produce fire when ſtruck with Steel, and vitrify in the fire. There are opaque and coarſe flint-ſtones, as

well as coloured and *ſemi-tranſparent*, which are properly call'd *Achate*. To the latter ſpecies belong the

Dendrachates, which is white; *Cornelian*, which is moſtly red; *Chalcedony*, which is of a light-gray colour; the *Onyx*, which conſiſts of circular *laminæ* of different colours laid one upon another; the *Opal*, which changes its colour according to its different poſitions with regard to the light, and is inimitable; *Oculus mundi*, which by poliſhing receives a beautiful luſtre, and is partly ſpotted or ſtriped, partly pictureſque; and the mineral *Lapis Chelidonius*, or Swallow-Stone, which is no bigger than lin-ſeed.

Jaſper, which in poliſhing does not acquire a ſtrong luſtre: There are opaque *Jaſpers* as well as thoſe of a vivid colour. The latter are properly called *Jaſper*, and when poliſhed acquire a perfectly beautiful luſtre, but are not tranſparent. Theſe are either of one colour, *viz.* green; or blue, as *Lapis lazuli*; or ſpotted *Jaſper*; or red, as the *Jaſponyx* and *Porphyry*.

Quartz, or a ſpecies of flint which is extremely hard.

Cryſtals, or genuine precious ſtones, which are quite hard, tranſparent, and pellucid. Theſe are either

Hexagonal, which are properly called Cryſtals, namely, Rock-*Cryſtal*, baſtard-*Ruby*, baſtard-*Sapphire*, baſtard-*Topaz*, baſtard-*Emerald*, and brown-*Cryſtal*;

Or *polygonal*, all which are called genuine Precious Stones, being remarkbly clear and without ſpots, are poliſhed with great difficulty, and then acquire a ſurpriſing luſtre. Theſe are

The *Diamond*, which is the hardeſt of all ſtones, and is, like water, without colour.

The *Ruby*, which is of a beautiful red colour.

The *Sapphire*, which is of a lively blue.

The *Topaz*, which is of a vivid golden or yellow colour.

The *Smaragdus*, or *Emerald*, which is of a lively green.

The *Chryſolite*, which is of a greeniſh yellow hue.

The *Amethyſt*, which is of a violet colour.

The *Granite*, which is of a dark-red.

The *Hyacinth*, which is of a yellowiſh-red; and

The *Beryl*, which is of a faint, or ſea-green colour.

3. Fire Stones, which bear the fire without turning to glaſs or *calx*, and for the moſt part are ſo ſoft and rough that they will not ſtrike fire with ſteel. To this claſs belong Friable Stones, which are moſtly ſoft, and may be crumbled to pieces by rubbing or grinding, and feel ſomething unctuous. Of this ſpecies are

Muſcovy-glaſs, or *Lapis-ſpecularis*, which conſiſts of flexible and entirely clear, tranſparent *laminæ*; *Cats-gold*, which is ſemi-tranſparent, *&c.*

Talc, which is ſoft, ſmooth and unctuous like tallow. Of this ſort there are white, gold colour, and green *Talc*.

Tophus,

Tophus, which feels unctuous, and may be beat ſmall, turned or ground with iron inſtruments. To this ſpecies belongs the *ſerpentine* marble; the cloſe, lax, and coarſe-grained *Tophus*.

Horny-ſtone, which is ſomething hard, but may be rubbed or beaten to pieces.

Amianthus, which is the ſofteſt and lighteſt kind of Stone, and may be ſpun and weaved. It undergoes no other change in the fire than that it grows whiter and ſomething harder, but becomes friable at the ſame time. To this ſpecies belong *Rock-flax*, *Rock-leather*, *Rock-fleſh*, and *Rock-cork*.

Aſbeſtos is ſomething hard and friable, will not float in the water, and acquires a greater degree of hardneſs in the fire. Of the ripe *Aſbeſtos*, paper, thread, and linen may alſo be made; but it muſt be previouſly beaten ſmall and well worked together.

4. Rocks, which are large maſſes compoſed of the abovementioned ſpecies of ſtones.

§. 64. In the *third* principal *Genus* the different *ſpecies* of ORES are included, which are *ſpecies* of Earths or ſtones, impregnated either with ſalt, ſulphur, or metal.

1. The *ſpecies* of Salts, which diſſolve in water, melt in the fire, evaporate without burning, and have a pungent taſte on the tongue, are

Vitriol, which has a rough, nauſeous taſte. In this claſs are, a blue or copper-vitriol; a green or iron-vitriol; a white-vitriol, which is alſo an iron-vitriol; a mixt vitriol, a vitriolic earth, and *Atrament* or vitriol-ſtone.

Alum, which has a very aſtringent taſte. In this claſs are native alum, an alumy Earth, flaky alum, an alumy calx, and alum-wood.

Saltpetre, which taſtes ſalt and bitter. Saltpetre derives its origin from a nitrous earth; for we know of no other cauſe that produces it.

Common Salt. This is either Foſſile Salt, which is dug out of the Earth; or Rock-ſalt, which is hewn from Rocks; or *Sal Gemmæ*, which is as white and tranſparent as cryſtal; or laſtly is extracted from the ſea-water, either by the heat of the ſun, or by the fire; or elſe boiled from ſalt-ſprings.

Alcaline Salt. This has either a hot taſte or a fetid ſmell; it is either mixt with earth or ſpring-ſalt, and iſſues out of old walls.

Acid Salt. This has an acid taſte, and is properly a ſulphureous exhalation or ſteam.

Neutral Salt. This has a bitteriſh nauſeous taſte. The *Engliſh*, *Sedlitz*, *Egra* Salt, *&c.* are of this ſpecies. It is called *Neutral* Salt becauſe it occupies the medium between the alcaline and acid ſalts.

Sal-armoniac. This has a bitter, urinous, and unpleaſant taſte. The common *Sal-armoniac* comes from *Egypt*, where it is prepared from ſoot, collected from dried dung burnt in furnaces or on hearths.

Borax is of an acid and bitter taſte. Its *ſpecies* are a bluiſh kind called *Tinkal*, and the proper *borax*, which is a purified *Tinkal* and appears white.

2. The *ſpecies* of Sulphur; which burn and evaporate in the fire, and are ſoluble by oil, but not by water. Theſe are as follows:

Bitumen, which is either liquid, ſoft, or hard; and generally of a black colour. The *ſpecies* of *Bitumen* are *Naphtha*, an inflammable oil; *Petroleum*, which is found either floating on ſprings, or diſtils thro' the clefts of rocks and cliffs, near the water; *Mineral Tar*, which is black and thick; *Mineral* or *Jews Pitch*, reſembling the common pitch; *mineral pitchy-earth*, or *mineral peat*; *Coals* or *jet*, which is a black mineral pitch of the hardneſs of ſtone, of which ſnuff-boxes, buttons, *&c.* are made.

Amber, which burns and melts in the fire, and emits an agreeable ſmell: It is either tranſparent, or opaque, and coloured.

Ambergriſe, which is ſoft but tough, yields an agreeable ſmell in the fire, and is moſtly of a dark colour.

Brimſtone, or *Sulphur*, which, when pure, is of a yellow colour, burns with a blue flame, and yields an acid fetid ſpirit.

3. Semi-metals are heavy foſſile bodies, which may be ignited, and glow in the fire, but are not at all, or in a very ſmall degree, malleable. In this claſs are

Mercury or Quickſilver, which is quite fluid and of an argentine luſtre, is next to gold in weight, and adheres to, and penetrates other metals. Its ſpecies are *Native* Quickſilver; and *Cinnabar*, which is of a red colour.

Arſenic is quite friable and brittle, of a white colour; or is of the *Glaſſy Species*, and diſſolves in any liquid. Its *ſpecies* are native *Arſenic*, yellow *Arſenic*, black *Arſenic*, Orpiment, teſtaceous Cobolt, Mocklead, arſenical earth, *&c.*

Cobolt, which is almoſt a ſpecies of earth, but hard and of a pale colour. The *ſpecies* of it are Cobolt-ore, ſpeculum *Cobolt*, *&c.*

Antimony, which is a brittle whitiſh ſubſtance, is ignited with difficulty in the fire, and is uſed in purifying gold from other metals.

Biſmuth, which is a kind of imperfect metal, of a yellowiſh colour.

Zink, or Spelter, which is the moſt malleable and ductile of all this claſs, and of a white colour.

4. Metals are the heavieſt earthy ſubſtances; they fuſe and ignite in the fire; are alſo malleable and ductile; and retain their fixidity in the fire for a longer or ſhorter time before fuſion. There are ſix ſorts belonging to this claſs; and theſe are divided into BASE metals which are *leſs malleable*, and *leſs fixt* in the fire; and NOBLE metals. Of the former ſort are reckoned Iron, Copper, Lead, and Tin; and to the latter ſort belong Silver and Gold. The baſer Metals, with regard to ſmelting, are divided into

1. Such as are *hard*, and *difficult to fuſe*. Of this ſort are,

Iron,

Iron, which is the leaſt ductile but the hardeſt and moſt elaſtic of all metals, and the toughеſt, except Gold. We are not yet certain whether there be any *native* Iron: For it is the common opinion that Iron cannot withſtand acid vitriolic ſpirits, by which it is ſuppoſed to be ſoluble. When Iron is deprived of its natural ſulphureous unctuouſneſs it grows hard, and becomes what we call *Steel*. Steel mines are, indeed, ſometimes found, tho' very rarely. There is one in *Alſace*, near the little town of *Dambach*, in the *Waſgau* mountains, and another in *Switzerland* in the high mountains of *Sargans*. The *Load-ſtone* or Magnet belongs alſo to this Mineral. The Magnet, with regard to its internal ſtructure, or to the form and figure of its pores or interſtices, differs from all other ſtones. Its virtue of attracting iron is well known. There are alſo artificial Magnets, which have this quality. *Ocre* alſo belongs to the ſpecies of Iron-ores, and *Emery* is the hardeſt of that ſort.

Copper, which is more malleable but leſs elaſtic than Iron. It is not ſo hard as Iron, and comes next to Silver in toughneſs. It ignites before it fuſes. In an intenſe and conſtant fire it partly diſſipates into fume, and partly vitrifies or becomes a brown or pale-green glaſs, or ſlag. Among the *baſe* metals, Copper retains its fixidity the longeſt in the fire next to Iron. This metal, however, is found in different forms, as native Copper, that which is produced by vitriolic ſprings, *&c.*

2. Or *ſoft* metals, which are *eaſily fuſed*. Theſe melt before they ignite, and are very ſoft and flexible. Of this ſort are,

Lead, which is the baſeſt and ſofteſt of all metals. It is next to quick-ſilver as to its weight, and is eaſily fuſed. There is a Native a Lead, Lead-ore, *&c.*

Tin, which is leſs ductile than Lead, and next to the latter is the ſofteſt and moſt flexible of metals. It is alſo the lighteſt of all metals, but heavier than any other bodies, and is ſoon fuſed in the fire. The *Engliſh* Tin is the beſt.

The NOBLE metals are bodies of the greateſt Malleability, and have the greateſt purity and fixidity in the air, as well as in the water and fire. They alſo fuſe as ſoon as they are ignited. Theſe are

Silver, which, next to Gold, is the moſt ductile of all metals. It is harder than Gold, Tin, or Lead, but not ſo tough as Gold or Iron; and heavier than Copper, Iron or Tin. It retains its fixidity ſo long in the fire, that it loſes no more than $\frac{1}{17}$ part of its weight when put in the moſt intenſe fire for two months. None of the above metals are found pure, in leſs quantities than Silver, in proportion to its ore.

Gold is the heavieſt of all bodies, and the moſt valuable and toughеſt among metals. It loſes nothing of its weight in the moſt conſtant and intenſe fire, and is ductile and malleable to an uncommon degree of ſubtilty or fineneſs: So that from one grain of it a thread of 500 feet (or according

ing to others, ells) in length has been drawn. *Native* or pure Gold is found in various ſorts of ſtones, ores, earths, and ſand. The two laſt ſorts are found in rivers and brooks. The rivers that contain Gold among their ſand are the *Rhine*, the *Danube*, the *Elbe*, the *Sale* near *Halle*, the *Eder* in the County of *Waldeck*, the *Schwartze* in the county of *Schwartzburg*, and the *Bober* in *Sileſia*, in GERMANY; the *Aar* in SWITZERLAND; the *Rhône*, *Garonne*, *Doux*, *Ceze* and *Gardon* in the *Cevennes*, the *Ariege* and the *Salat*, which riſe in the *Pyrenees*, and the ſmall brooks *Ferrit* and *Benagues* near the caſtle of *Pamiers*, in FRANCE; the *Po* in ITALY; the *Tagus* in SPAIN and PORTUGAL; the *Hebrus* in THRACE; the *Pactolus* in LYDIA; the *Phaſis* in COLCHIS; and the *Ganges* in INDIA. A whitiſh ſort of Gold, called *Platina del Pinto*, is imported into *Spain* from the *Weſt-Indies*, which ſome look upon as a ſeventh ſpecies of Metal.

§. 65. Laſtly, the *fourth* principal *Genus* of Minerals contains LAPIDEOUS CONCRETIONS, compoſed of minerals, earths, ſtones, and ores, which, being mixt after the diſſolution of their parts, adhere together, or are generated anew in an uncommon manner, *&c.* Theſe are,

1. Lapideous Concretions generated as well in the fire, namely, *Pumice Stone*; as in the water, namely, *kettle-ſtone* or *Tophus*; *ſtalactical* ſubſtances or ſparry icicles, *&c.*

2. PETRIFACTIONS of various ſorts, as Petrified Vegetables, whether plants, wood, roots, ſtalks, or leaves; or vegetables imprinted on ſtone; alſo Corals of different ſpecies.

Petrified animals, as human bones and entire limbs, bones of animals, birds, fiſhes, *&c.*

Petrified ſhells, the number of which claſs is very conſiderable.

3. Pictured, figured, and uncommonly ſhaped STONES, which are called *Luſus Naturæ*.

4. RESEMBLANCES of STONE, ſuch as the *calculus* generated in animals, *&c.*

§. 66. The VEGETABLE KINGDOM compriſes all the *Genera* and *ſpecies* of Plants. The vegetable sgrowing on the Earth are divided into *Trees*, among which are alſo reckoned ſhrubs; and *Herbs*. None of theſe are produced without their own proper ſeed. They do not derive their nouriſhment from the Earth, but from the Water. It is not conſiſtent with my plan to enlarge on the Vegetable Kingdom, as I ſhall ſeldom touch upon it in my Syſtem of Geography: But the few curioſities of this ſort that occur ſhall be deſcribed briefly in their proper places.

§. 67. The ANIMAL KINGDOM comprehends all the *Genera* and *ſpecies* of Creatures endued with ſenſe and motion. Of this Kingdom I cannot here give any ſketch, as it is ſurpriſingly large and extenſive; but the rareſt animals in every country ſhall be deſcribed where they occur. I ſhall therefore briefly take a general view of the Human Species only, as they are the no-

bleſt and moſt important Creatures on the Earth; and are appointed by GOD to acquire the knowledge of, and dominion over it.

§. 68. In order to form a probable conjecture of the number of men that may be living at the ſame time, and of the proportion between the yearly births and burials, the following particulars, which are derived from experience, deſerve our obſervation.

The number of births is almoſt always greater than the number of burials; and conſequently, the Human race is in a continual ſtate of increaſe. Were the caſe otherwiſe, and the latter were to exceed the former, a country, in the common courſe of things, would in a few centuries be quite depopulated; eſpecially if war and peſtilence concurred with this cauſe. If in one and the ſame country the number of burials be half as much, or double to what it was before, half as many, or double the number of living inhabitants muſt then be found in that country*.

Among the impediments to the increaſe of Mankind, the plague is one of the greateſt: hence the return of it is not very frequent; for, in that caſe, it would ſweep away all the inhabitants of a country. The other impediments, next to the plague, are war, famine, and the ſingle ſtate or celibacy. *Roman*-catholic countries, on account of their great number of convents, ſuffer the greateſt detriment by celibacy. To theſe may be added the obſtacles to a married life, and whatever renders Mankind leſs prolific, or tends to ſhorten the lives of thoſe who are already born. Laſtly cities, eſpecially the moſt populous, are an impediment to the increaſe of Mankind; for in towns and cities the burials are, at leaſt, equal to the births, and generally exceed them; which is owing chiefly to the irregular manner of living in ſuch places, and to the unhealthfulneſs of the ſituation, and quality of the air, of many cities and populous towns.

Three thouſand millions of inhabitants might commodiouſlly live at the ſame time on the Earth; but there is ſcarce the third part of this number, or 1000 millions actually living at the ſame time. Now, if with the ancients we reckon 33 years to a generation, 1000 millions will be born, and as many die, during that ſpace of time. Hence it appears that above 30 millions of the Human Species die in a Year, above 82,000 every Day, above 3,400 every Hour, about 60 every Minute; and conſequently to every Second we may reckon one. The liſt of baptiſms ſhews, that the number of males that are born exceeds that of the females: So that the proportion of the former is to the latter as 91 to 86, 364 to 344, 1050 to 1000, 105 to 100, or 21 to 20; that is, ſuppoſing there are 1050 males born, there are but 1000 females born in the ſame ſpace of time. However, diſeaſes and other accidents take away this odds by death, and reduce the ſexes to an equality. It is thought that there are more women than men in *Spain*, but this muſt

* We muſt, in this caſe, ſuppoſe the place to be always equally healthy and free from the devaſtations of war, *&c.*

be

be owing to their great number of Monaſteries; for there are ſeven eccleſiaſtics and monks, in that kingdom, to two nuns. In towns there are uſually more women than men living; but in the country the reverſe happens. This proportion of the Sexes to each other is a ſtrong argument againſt polygamy, or a multiplicity of wives. The increaſe and decreaſe of the inhabitants of a city, or a whole country, may be known by the Bills of Mortality; and from this we may alſo determine the number of the living. For in very large and populous towns we muſt reckon from 24 to 28 living, to one that dies; in middling and ſmall towns the proportion is from 30 to 32 to one; but in the country it is about 40 or 42 to one. Hence ſome, taking the towns and villages of a country collectively, reckon that one perſon out of 32 or 33 dies every year, and in ſome countries but one out of 37.

§. 69. Men differ externally chiefly in colour or complexion; hence they may be divided into White, Black, and a Middle ſort which are either red, brown, or olive colour. In the White claſs we reckon almoſt all *Europeans*, and many of the inhabitants of the temperate Climates of the other parts of the world. The Black claſs properly comprehends the *Moors* of *Africa*, and the *Mulatto*'s. The Middle ſort includes whole nations, and many inviduals, in all the four parts of the world; but particularly in *Aſia*, *Africa*, and *America*. The Inhabitants of *Cape Verde* in *Africa*, and the iſland *Goree*, are the blackeſt of all the human ſpecies; for their ſkin is of a gloſſy ſhining black, like ebony. This difference in colour or complexion is principally to be aſcribed to the difference of climate, diet, and manner of living. The inhabitants of the temperate Climates have the whiteſt or faireſt complexions. But whether theſe are the moſt beautiful among the ſpecies, or whether a well proportioned *Moor* or Black may not be reckoned as beautiful, I leave to the impartial determination of others.

§. 70. Men alſo differ greatly in their make, ſize, method of living, and in their manners. But as to the difference in their intellectual faculties, we are not to look for that in their nature, or climate, but in the greater or leſs opportunity they have of improving and exerciſing their mental powers. An inhabitant of *Greenland* or *Lapland*, a *Moor* or a *Hottentot*, is in his way as intelligent as one among the more civilized nations; and if the former had the ſame opportunities of improving his underſtanding and regulating his paſſions as the latter enjoys, he would not be at all inferior to him. Almoſt every nation have their own peculiar manners and cuſtoms: And as the notions of what is decent and becoming differ as much as the people who obſerve them do, it is unreaſonable and abſurd for one nation to ridicule another, on account of their difference in this particular. Many nations and individuals, who pretend to rank themſelves among the civilized part of their ſpecies, have ſo many odd and abſurd cuſtoms as might juſtly expoſe them to the ridicule of thoſe, who are called Barbarians and uncivilized.

civilized. It may be obſerved in general, that among all people and nations of the Earth, there are ſome men of a reaſonable, and others of an unreaſonable diſpoſition or turn of mind; as there are alſo in every country graceful and aukward, candid and diſingenuous, virtuous and vitious, mild and auſtere, polite and ill-bred, noble and ignoble perſons.

Of the WATER.

§. 71. It remains, laſtly, that we treat of the Water on the ſurface of the Earth; and this branch of Geography is by ſome termed Hydrography. Dr. *Wallerius* was the firſt who made accurate enquiries into the AQUEOUS KINGDOM, or Hydrology, and claſſed it among the other Kingdoms of Nature. We may divide the Water into two principal *Genera*, namely, into COMMON and MINERAL Water. COMMON Water, or that which is called ſweet or freſh Water, has no particular taſte, ſmell, or colour, and falls either in dew, rain, or ſnow from the air, whither it was conveyed from the Earth in vapours and exhalations; or elſe it is found on the Earth in its proper channels and cavities. Running Water is the lighteſt among the latter ſort, and is alſo called living Water; of which, Spring-Water, which ſprings naturally out of the Earth, and continually keeps running, is a ſpecies. Springs, in all appearance, owe their origin to mountains, on which the vapours exhaled from the Earth fall in dew, rain, and ſnow; which, penetrating into the mountains, are collected together, and break out in ſprings below. Thoſe ſprings which ariſe in ſandy eminences produce the pureſt Water. Moſt ſprings are perennial, or flow conſtantly; others begin to run in ſpring, on the melting of the ſnow or ice, and ceaſe again towards autumn, and are called temporal Springs. Others again flow only for certain hours of the day, and ſome of theſe only in ſummer, which muſt be owing to certain ſubterraneous cavities in the mountains from which they are ſupplied. Many ſprings emit Water as cold as ice, and yet bubble up and make a noiſe, like a pot boiling over the fire; which ſeems to be owing to the rarefied ſubterraneous air. Some ſprings riſe and fall as if they were regulated by the ebbing and flowing of the ſea. In many places Wells are alſo dug in which water is collected for uſe.

§. 72. Running Springs produce Brooks; and a conflux of ſeveral Brooks form a Rivulet, or Stream; and many Streams or Rivulets uniting together make one great current, called a River. Rivers have a ſteep or ſhelving bottom; and the greater the ſlope or declivity, the more rapid and ſtronger is their current. If the bed or channel of a River be very wide, its rapidity is not ſo great as when it is narrow. The water of Streams and Rivers often falls down from a precipice; and as the Rivers which form them happen to be ſmaller or greater, ſo are the caſcades ſmaller or greater in proportion. Several Rivers alſo, at certain ſeaſons of the year, being increaſed

or ſwelled by the melting of ice or ſnow, and rain-water, overflow their banks, and lay the adjacent country under water. It is obſervable that Water, eſpecially when its current is rapid, has a great degree of force, ſo as to demoliſh bridges, dams, and the like obſtacles, and carries along with it maſſes of ſurpriſing weight and bulk. The greater the number of mountains there are in a country, the greater alſo will be the number of rivers there. There are ſome rivers whoſe currents ſtop ſuddenly in the middle of their courſe, as has been obſerved of the *Motala* in *Sweden*, which is owing either to a great flux and reflux, or to the wind which repels the ſtream, or to a ſudden keen froſt in winter. Whether there are actually any rivers, which, in their courſe are ſwallowed up by the Earth, and emerge again at other places, I have not yet been able to gain ſufficient information. As for rivers which have gold duſt, we have treated of them above (§. 64). Many entertain a doubt whether there be any rivers that produce ſilver ſands; but iron is found in ſeveral, and copper and lead in ſome rivers.

§. 73. To the claſs of COMMON Water alſo belongs Stagnant or ſtanding Water; this is heavier than the running Water, and is found either in Ponds or Lakes. Some Lakes are ſupplied with water by melted ſnow or rain, and are dried up in ſummer. Several Lakes receive, and diſcharge conſiderable rivers; and, indeed, moſt Lakes are of this kind. There are alſo Lakes which receive rivers, but diſcharge none; and theſe muſt loſe their water by evaporation. Other Lakes receive no river, and yet a ſtream runs out of them; ſo that theſe are to be conſidered as large ſprings, which have this ſuperfluity of Water from huge mountains, near which they are always ſituated. We alſo meet with bubbling lakes that overflow their banks, and others that riſe and fall regularly with the ebbing and flowing of the ſea.

§. 74. MINERAL Water has commonly ſome degree of ſmell, a particular taſte, and generally differs in colour from pure water. It is alſo ſeldom or never congealed into ice. There are Cold, as well as Hot Mineral Waters. The Cold includes three ſorts: 1. A ſpecies which contains ſome light and volatile mineral particles that evaporate only by a gentle heat. To this ſpecies belong *volatile-vitriolic-acid* Waters, which emit either a ſalubrious, or a ſuffocating vapour; and *volatile-alcaline* Waters. 2. There is another ſpecies of mineral cold Water which is more turbid and contains a great quantity of terrene matter, which either incruſts with a rind whatever ſubſtance is laid in it, or lodges its earthy particles in the pores of bodies, and renders them as hard as ſtone; or even petrifies or converts them to ſtone. Another ſort of this ſpecies is *vitriolic*; to this belong thoſe called *Cement*-Waters, that contain the vitriolic copper; and on laying clean iron in them they corrode its particles, and ſubſtitute others of copper in their places. The *vitriolic* iron Water, the *Zink-vitriol*-Water, and Waters im-

pregnated with Alum, which is found in the Alum-pits; or with common Salt, as Sea-Water and Salt-Spring-Water, alcaline-ſalt, a neutral ſalt, *ſal-armoniac*, *Bitumen* (of which ſort are the mineral oily waters, mineral bitumenous, and red or ſanguine waters) *ſulphur*, or laſtly with *Arſenic*. 3. A third ſpecies of cold Mineral Waters is the acid Spring-Water, which is either ferruginous, or impregnated with common, alcaline, or a neutral ſalt.

As to the hot Mineral Waters, which ſpring with a greater or leſs degree of heat out of the Earth, there are 1. Clear Baths, which contain nothing of a groſs mineral; and of this ſort are the pure and the ſubtile bath Waters. 2. Turbid Baths, which by the groſſneſs of the mineral particles immediately diſcover their nature, and are either ferruginous, alcaline, or contain a neutral ſalt. From whence theſe waters derive their warmth, is uncertain; there being various, and ſome improbable conjectures formed about it: However, there can be no doubt that it is owing to a ſubterraneous fire. The waters of ſeveral ſprings are ſo hot as to boil fleſh fit for the table; of which ſort there are ſome in *Iceland* *.

§. 75. Rivers and large ſtreams at laſt diſembogue themſelves into the Sea, which is the general receptacle of Water. The Sea conſtitutes about two thirds of the ſurface of the Terraqueous Globe, and may properly be divided from North to South into two large, but unequal parts. One part comprehends the Sea which flows between *Europe* and *Africa* on the one, and *America* on the other ſide; and in the other part is included the Sea between *America* and *Aſia*. The *Terra firma*, or dry land is quite environed by the Ocean. The bottom of the Sea is of the ſame nature with the *Terra firma*, being only a continuation of it under the Water. For there are in the Sea mountains, rocks, vallies, caverns, plains, ſand-banks, all ſorts of ores and ſtones, ſprings and rivers, vegetables and animals. The Sea is not unfathomable in any part, and its depth is very unequal; for in ſome few places it amounts to a whole geographical mile, but in moſt parts it is not near ſo deep. Mariners ſound the Sea with the Plummet, which is a cylindrical piece of lead, uſually weighing twelve pounds, and ſometimes more. The lower end of the Plummet is greaſed with tallow; and when it is let down at the end of the Plumb-line ſomething ſticks to it at the bottom of the Sea: This ſerves as a ſpecimen by which they may form a judgment of the nature of the ſoil at the bottom. But in order to ſound the deepeſt parts of the Sea where no Plumb-line can reach †, a ſet of inſtruments are uſed to which a bladder or any light ſub-

* I boiled an egg in the ſhell, in the ſpace of 20 minutes, in a hot ſpring near *Aix la Chapelle*; and the Inhabitants of the village aſſured me that they ſcalded their hogs, waſhed their diſhes, *&c.* in the water pumped out of that hot ſpring, without heating it over the fire.

† Though a line of a proper length were made for this purpoſe, the Lead would never ſink to the bottom when fixt to it; for according to the laws of Hydroſtatics it would float at a certain depth.

or ſwelled by the melting of ice or ſnow, and rain-water, overflow their banks, and lay the adjacent country under water. It is obſervable that Water, eſpecially when its current is rapid, has a great degree of force, ſo as to demoliſh bridges, dams, and the like obſtacles, and carries along with it maſſes of ſurpriſing weight and bulk. The greater the number of mountains there are in a country, the greater alſo will be the number of rivers there. There are ſome rivers whoſe currents ſtop ſuddenly in the middle of their courſe, as has been obſerved of the *Motala* in *Sweden*, which is owing either to a great flux and reflux, or to the wind which repels the ſtream, or to a ſudden keen froſt in winter. Whether there are actually any rivers, which, in their courſe are ſwallowed up by the Earth, and emerge again at other places, I have not yet been able to gain ſufficient information. As for rivers which have gold duſt, we have treated of them above (§. 64). Many entertain a doubt whether there be any rivers that produce ſilver ſands; but iron is found in ſeveral, and copper and lead in ſome rivers.

§. 73. To the claſs of COMMON Water alſo belongs Stagnant or ſtanding Water; this is heavier than the running Water, and is found either in Ponds or Lakes. Some Lakes are ſupplied with water by melted ſnow or rain, and are dried up in ſummer. Several Lakes receive, and diſcharge conſiderable rivers; and, indeed, moſt Lakes are of this kind. There are alſo Lakes which receive rivers, but diſcharge none; and theſe muſt loſe their water by evaporation. Other Lakes receive no river, and yet a ſtream runs out of them; ſo that theſe are to be conſidered as large ſprings, which have this ſuperfluity of Water from huge mountains, near which they are always ſituated. We alſo meet with bubbling lakes that overflow their banks, and others that riſe and fall regularly with the ebbing and flowing of the ſea.

§. 74. MINERAL Water has commonly ſome degree of ſmell, a particular taſte, and generally differs in colour from pure water. It is alſo ſeldom or never congealed into ice. There are Cold, as well as Hot Mineral Waters. The Cold includes three ſorts: 1. A ſpecies which contains ſome light and volatile mineral particles that evaporate only by a gentle heat. To this ſpecies belong *volatile-vitriolic-acid* Waters, which emit either a ſalubrious, or a ſuffocating vapour; and *volatile-alcaline* Waters. 2. There is another ſpecies of mineral cold Water which is more turbid and contains a great quantity of terrene matter, which either incruſts with a rind whatever ſubſtance is laid in it, or lodges its earthy particles in the pores of bodies, and renders them as hard as ſtone; or even petrifies or converts them to ſtone. Another ſort of this ſpecies is *vitriolic*; to this belong thoſe called *Cement*-Waters, that contain the vitriolic copper; and on laying clean iron in them they corrode its particles, and ſubſtitute others of copper in their places. The *vitriolic* iron Water, the *Zink-vitriol*-Water, and Waters im-

pregnated with Alum, which is found in the Alum-pits; or with common Salt, as Sea-Water and Salt-Spring-Water, alcaline-ſalt, a neutral ſalt, *ſal-armoniac*, *Bitumen* (of which ſort are the mineral oily waters, mineral bitumenous, and red or ſanguine waters) *ſulphur*, or laſtly with *Arſenic*. 3. A third ſpecies of cold Mineral Waters is the acid Spring-Water, which is either ferruginous, or impregnated with common, alcaline, or a neutral ſalt.

As to the hot Mineral Waters, which ſpring with a greater or leſs degree of heat out of the Earth, there are 1. Clear Baths, which contain nothing of a groſs mineral; and of this ſort are the pure and the ſubtile bath Waters. 2. Turbid Baths, which by the groſſneſs of the mineral particles immediately diſcover their nature, and are either ferruginous, alcaline, or contain a neutral ſalt. From whence theſe waters derive their warmth, is uncertain; there being various, and ſome improbable conjectures formed about it: However, there can be no doubt that it is owing to a ſubterraneous fire. The waters of ſeveral ſprings are ſo hot as to boil fleſh fit for the table; of which ſort there are ſome in *Iceland* *.

§. 75. Rivers and large ſtreams at laſt diſembogue themſelves into the Sea, which is the general receptacle of Water. The Sea conſtitutes about two thirds of the ſurface of the Terraqueous Globe, and may properly be divided from North to South into two large, but unequal parts. One part comprehends the Sea which flows between *Europe* and *Africa* on the one, and *America* on the other ſide; and in the other part is included the Sea between *America* and *Aſia*. The *Terra firma*, or dry land is quite environed by the Ocean. The bottom of the Sea is of the ſame nature with the *Terra firma*, being only a continuation of it under the Water. For there are in the Sea mountains, rocks, vallies, caverns, plains, ſand-banks, all ſorts of ores and ſtones, ſprings and rivers, vegetables and animals. The Sea is not unfathomable in any part, and its depth is very unequal; for in ſome few places it amounts to a whole geographical mile, but in moſt parts it is not near ſo deep. Mariners ſound the Sea with the Plummet, which is a cylindrical piece of lead, uſually weighing twelve pounds, and ſometimes more. The lower end of the Plummet is greaſed with tallow; and when it is let down at the end of the Plumb-line ſomething ſticks to it at the bottom of the Sea: This ſerves as a ſpecimen by which they may form a judgment of the nature of the ſoil at the bottom. But in order to ſound the deepeſt parts of the Sea where no Plumb-line can reach †, a ſet of inſtruments are uſed to which a bladder or any light ſub-

* I boiled an egg in the ſhell, in the ſpace of 20 minutes, in a hot ſpring near *Aix la Chapelle*; and the Inhabitants of the village aſſured me that they ſcalded their hogs, waſhed their diſhes, &c. in the water pumped out of that hot ſpring, without heating it over the fire.

† Though a line of a proper length were made for this purpoſe, the Lead would never ſink to the bottom when fixt to it; for according to the laws of Hydroſtatics it would float at a certain depth.

ſtance is faſtened. The inſtrument no ſooner touches the bottom but the bladder is diſengaged from it, which, leaving the inſtrument behind comes up again to the ſurface of the water *; and from the ſpace of time in which this happens, the depth of the place may be found †. The iſlands in the Sea may be conſidered as the ſummits of extenſive huge mountains, the roots of which are covered with Water. The tops of other mountains are nearly on a level with the ſurface of the Water; and others again lie concealed under it. The Sea is better ſtocked with animals, and more fertile than the dry land; and the number of the *Genera* and *Species* of Sea-animals and vegetables is aſtoniſhingly great.

§. 76. The Sea-water is ſalt every where; but is ſo in a greater degree towards the Equator than it is towards the Poles: It is alſo ſalter at the bottom than at the ſurface; however, this laſt circumſtance is not hitherto ſufficiently proved by experience, or, at leaſt, appears not to be ſo general. The cauſe of this ſaltneſs of the Sea-water, is ſomething difficult to inveſtigate. The Sea-water is likewiſe found to be bitter as well as ſalt.

§. 77. In calm weather, when no wind blows, the ſurface of the ſea is as ſmooth as glaſs; but no ſooner does a breeze ſpring up than the Sea begins to curl, and as the gale grows ſtronger, Waves ariſe: A ſingle wave never exceeds ſix feet in height: But when a great number of waves claſh together and break, they riſe much higher. The motion of the waves is always up and down, or perpendicular to the Horizon. The Sea is inceſſantly in motion from Eaſt to Weſt; and this motion is moſt obſervable in the Torrid Zone or between the Tropics. This ſeems to be occaſioned by the Eaſterly wind which conſtantly blows there (§. 55). There are many Currents beſides this in the Sea, of which it is difficult to aſſign the cauſe. Another ſtill morere markable motion of the Sea is the ebbing and flowing of it, or the Tides; for it is obſerved on the ſea-coaſt, that the Water riſes and falls twice in 24 hours, and that every day in a regular manner. It generally flows for ſix hours, during which time the Water gradually riſes, which is called the Flood: Then it continues at its greateſt height for about a quarter of an hour, almoſt invariably. After this the Water falls or decreaſes for ſix hours, which is called the Ebb; and after pauſing for a quarter of an hour, at low-water, the Tide begins to flow again. This motion of the Sea is not obſervable in every place, and is more conſiderable between the Tropics than in other parts of the Globe. It has been diſcovered by

* One of theſe Inſtruments muſt be left at the bottom at every trial; but an Inſtrument has been invented in *England* which is not attended with the inconveniencies mentioned by the Author. This is made of cork, or ſome light wood, to which a ſtone or weight is faſtened by a ſpring; and the latter is diſengaged as ſoon as it touches the bottom; but the inſtrument comes up to, and floats on the ſurface.

† This is known by computing how many minutes or ſeconds this inſtrument takes in ſinking and riſing in a known depth, and comparing the depths according to the times.

the

the moderns, that the viciſſiſitudes of Ebb and Flood are exactly regulated by the motion of the moon, and alſo in ſome meaſure by the poſition of the ſun *: Hence we are enabledto ſet down the time of high-water in the calendar with the ſame certainty that we do the celeſtial Phænomena. Laſtly, in certain parts of the Sea, a circular motion or *Vortex* has been obſerved, called a Whirlpool. In deſcribing theſe Whirlpools in the following ſheets, I ſhall ſhew, that they are not occaſioned by the Water's being abſorbed in the bottom of the Sea; but that they are owing to a quite different cauſe, and are far from being ſo dangerous as is commonly imagined.

§. 78. Laſtly, I ſhall only farther remark, that the Sea, indeed, has every where its bounds, within which it lies confined; but that from time to time it often ſhifts thoſe bounds by incroaching on the land in ſome places, and by receding from and conſequently adding to the dry land in others. To treat more fully of the Sea is not conſiſtent with my plan; and therefore I ſhall here conclude the INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY.

* The Tides are chiefly owing to the attraction of the moon; and ſometimes riſe higher, when the attraction of the ſun acts upon the ocean in the ſame direction with the former, as in new moons, when both thoſe luminaries are in conjunction: Theſe we call *Spring Trides*. But when the Attraction of the ſun acts in a different direction from that of the moon, as in the quadratures, the Tides do not riſe ſo high; and theſe are termed *Neap Tides*. Thoſe Tides are generally the greateſt when the moon is neareſt the *Zenith* of a place, which happens with us, when the moon is in the northern Signs, and paſſes our Meridian; but as ſhe is neareſt the *Nadir*, when in the ſouthern Signs, the tides riſe to the greateſt height there, when the moon paſſes the oppoſite Meridian (below our Horizon) in the ſouthern Signs.

A NEW

A

NEW SYSTEM

OF

GEOGRAPHY:

OR, A

DESCRIPTION

OF THE

EARTH.

A NEW SYSTEM OF GEOGRAPHY.

Of EUROPE *in general.*

§. 1. EUROPE is ſituated between the 36th and 71ſt degree of North-Latitude, both the extreme degrees included. To the ſouth it is bounded by the *Mediterranean*; to the weſt by the *Atlantic*, or *Weſtern Ocean*, to the north by the *Northern Ocean* and *Ice-Sea*, or *Mare glaciale*, and to the eaſt by the continent of *Aſia*. Geographers are not agreed in determining the proper limits between EUROPE and *Aſia:* Neither can a political boundary take Place, as the *Ruſſian* empire extends a great way into *Aſia*.

§. 2. *Bochart* is of opinion, that the name of EUROPE is of *Phœnician* original; for the *Phœnicians* called this principal diviſion of the Earth, *Ur-appa*, 'the land of the people with fair faces', in contradiſtinction to the ſallow and black complexion of the *Africans*. This derivation is far more probable than any of the other etymologies uſually aſſigned to the word.

§. 3. Though EUROPE is the ſmalleſt of the principal diviſions of the Earth, yet it deſerves to be preferred to the other three; and *Europeans* may juſtly claim a peculiar pre-eminence over the reſt of the inhabitants of the Globe, if we conſider, 1. That EUROPE for many ages paſt has been the chief ſeat of the Arts and Sciences. 2. That with regard to military power it ſurpaſſes the other three principal parts of the World taken together.

3. That the *Europeans* have made themſelves maſters of the greateſt part of the reſt of the World, and ſent thither numerous colonies. 4. That their commerce and navigation extend over the whole Terraqueous Globe, and ſerve, as it were, to unite together the principal parts of the Earth. 5. That the knowledge of the true GOD, and of the SAVIOUR of the World, is by their means diffuſed over the face of the whole Earth.

§. 4. The firſt inhabitants of EUROPE undoubtedly came out of *Aſia*; but the hiſtory of the peopling of this quarter of the world is very dubious and obſcure. Probably, the deſcendants of *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Japhet*'s eldeſt ſons, ſupplied this principal diviſion of the Earth with its original, and the greateſt part of, its inhabitants. The *Celtæ* are ſuppoſed to be the deſcendants of *Gomer*; and the *Scythians* of *Magog*: The European *Sarmatæ* were a branch of the latter. The *Phœnicians* alſo peopled ſeveral regions and countries of EUROPE by their colonies.

§. 5. The number of inhabitants in *Europe* is by ſome computed at 109 millions only; but by others, with greater probability, at near 150 millions. EUROPE might afford ſubſiſtence to a far greater number, if every part of it was duly cultivated.

§. 6. With reſpect to Religion, the inhabitants of EUROPE are, for the moſt part, Chriſtians. There is alſo a conſiderable part of them who profeſs the Jewiſh, and others who are of the Mahometan religion; and laſtly ſome who ſtill adhere to Heatheniſm.

§. 7. The *European* States, conſidered with reſpect to the greatneſs of their extent of land in ſquare geographical miles, are ranged in the following order.

The *Ruſſian* Empire.
The Kingdom of *Poland*.
The Kingdom of *Sweden*.
Germany.
The Kingdom of *France*.
Turkey in *Europe*.
All the Territories belonging to the Houſe of *Auſtria*.
The *Spaniſh* Monarchy.
Denmark and *Norway*.
Great-Britain and *Ireland*.
All the Dominions of the King of *Pruſſia*.
The Kingdom of *Portugal*.
The Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*.
All the Territories belonging to the King of *Sardinia*.
The Republic of *Switzerland*.
The *Eccleſiaſtical State*.
The Dominions of the Republic of the *United Provinces*.
The Territory of the Republic of *Venice*, in the northern part of *Italy*.
The Great Dutchy of *Florence*.
The Territory of the Republic of *Genoa*.
The Countries of the Infant Don *Philip*.
The *Modeneſe* Territory.

Of the SEAS, *by which the Countries deſcribed in this Volume are encompaſſed, or ſeparated from each other.*

I. The GERMAN OCEAN, *Mare Germanicum*, is that Sea which flows between *Great-Britain*, the *Netherlands*, *Germany*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*. As it lies to the north of *Holland* and *Germany*, it has been from thence called the NORTH-SEA. On account of its ſituation with regard to the *Baltic* or *Eaſt Sea*, it has alſo the name of the *Weſt-Sea*, and on the coaſt of *Jutland* it is called the *Cimbrian Sea*. This Sea is obſerved to ebb and flow: The flux is from Weſt to Eaſt, and the reflux from Eaſt to Weſt. On the coaſt of *Norway* the tide, at high-water, commonly riſes from four to ſix feet, and at ſpring-tides about eight feet: But on the coaſt of *England* and the *Netherlands*, where the Sea is confined in a channel, it riſes much higher. The opinion that the water of this ſea always appears of a bluiſh colour, is without foundation. It is ſalter than that of the *Baltic*; inſomuch that ſalt is found in the fiſſures of the rocks, into which it flows; and in ſome parts of *Norway* ſalt is extracted from the ſea-water. *Wallerius* aſſures us, that, where but few rivers fall into the *North-Sea*, Salt conſtitutes a ſeventh, and ſometimes a tenth part of the ſea-water. The water of this ſea is alſo unctuous, and in the night appears lucid like *Phoſphorus*. I ſhall in the next place take ſome notice of the aquatic plants that grow in the *North-Sea*.

The *Alga*, or ſea-weed is of a green, or a brown colour: It has either a narrow and flat leaf like graſs, and between two and three ells long; or is narrow and round, and often near ten ells in length. Some ſpecies of it have leaves two or three inches broad growing on a ſhort round ſtalk; others again have leaves four or five ells long and one broad. There are alſo other ſorts which for brevity's ſake I here omit. The *Norwegians* that live on the Sea-coaſt uſe the *Alga*, which they call *Tarre*, to manure their lands; and in the northern provinces they dry it for winter provender for their cattle. In *England* and *Scotland* the poor people who inhabit the ſea-coaſt burn it in great quantities to a ſubſtance called *Kelp*, which they ſell to thoſe who make glaſs. From the *Kelp*, or aſhes of the *Alga*, *potaſh* alſo may be extracted, and what remains after the proceſs is a good manure. There are alſo other large marine plants, which we may call ſea-trees; theſe grow at the bottom of this ſea at the depth of 100 or 200 fathoms and upwards, and therefore cannot eaſily be drawn up entire out of the water. However, large branches are ſometimes taken up, from which we may form an idea of the ſize of the entire plant or tree: For ſome are full ſeven inches in diameter, but others only two inches, and ſome ſtill leſs. The *North* or *German Sea* has for ſeveral ages back been remarkable for dreadful deſolating

inundations, which have generally happened either a little before, or during the winter Seaſon, or ſoon after it. At ſuch times when the ſea is agitated by ſtormy winds, it has riſen ſeveral feet above the higheſt dams or dykes, which, in ſome places, were above thirty feet high.

II. The Sea that flows between the north part of *Jutland*, the iſlands *Funen* and *Seeland*, and the coaſts of *Sweden* and *Norway*, being properly a bay or part of the *German Ocean*, is called *Sinus Codanus* or *Gothanus*, and *Sinus Scagenſis*, the CATTEGAT, and SKAGERRAK. The laſt appellation it has from the north point of *Jutland* called *Skagen*, from which a dangerous ſand-bank runs a great way into the Sea. In this bay there is a noble herring-fiſhery. From the *Cattegat* you paſs through either of the three ſtreights, *viz.* the *Oreſund*, or *Sound*, the Great *Belt*, and the Little *Belt* into

III. The BALTIC, *Mare Balticum*, called by the *Germans* and *Hollanders* the *Eaſt Sea*, which is properly a large bay, and lies between *Denmark*, *Germany*, *Pruſſia*, *Courland*, *Ruſſia*, and *Sweeden*. This Sea is not obſerved to ebb or flow: It ſeems, however, to diſcharge itſelf towards the *Sound*; but this current may be obſtructed by a ſtrong continued North-weſt wind, which may alſo force in a great quantity of water from the *German Ocean*, and cauſe the water in the harbours of the *Baltic* to riſe. When the North wind blows, the water of the *Baltic*, which is otherwiſe ſalt, becomes almoſt freſh, ſo as to be in ſome meaſure fit for domeſtic uſes: However, it is not very ſalt at other times; for a great number of rivers run into it. Its greateſt depth does not exceed fifty fathoms. *A. Celſius* in the Tranſactions of the *Sweediſh* Academy of Sciences, T. 5. has demonſtrated, that the water in the *Baltic* decreaſes daily; and, according to his calculation, it has ſunk about 45 geometrical inches in 100 years. The waves are not ſo high and long in the *Baltic* as they are in the *German Ocean*, but fall ſhorter, quicker, and in greater numbers, after each other. The fiſhery in the *Baltic* is conſiderable, eſpecially the herring fiſhery. When this ſea is agitated with ſtorms it throws on the coaſt of *Pruſſia* and *Courland*, particularly on the former, the ſo much celebrated Amber, of which more will be ſaid in the deſcription of *Pruſſia*. On the coaſt of *Sweden* the *Baltic* forms two bays, called in the *Swediſh* language *Hafs-Botnar*. One of theſe runs northwards and is called the *Bothnian* Gulph, in *Latin*, *ſinus Bothnicus*, and is 80 geographical miles long and 30 broad. The other runs to the Eaſt, and is called the Gulph of *Finland*, in *Latin Sinus Finnicus*, and is 60 geographical miles long and 15 broad. In ſeveral places in this gulph the variation of the magnetic needle is very extraordinary. In one place particularly it points between the South-Weſt and Weſt, and in another part it points to the North-Weſt. Laſtly, the *Baltic* forms a bay near *Livonia*, which is called the gulph of *Livonia* or *Riga*.

IV. Farther towards the North lies the NORTHERN OCEAN, *Oceanus ſeptentrionalis*, which abounds with a ſurpriſing quantity of fiſh both of the

large and ſmall ſpecies; and about the beginning of *June* the herrings come in prodigious ſhoals from the *Northern* into the *German* Ocean. A great great quantity of floating wood is alſo found in this Sea. The *White Sea*, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Bieloe More*, is a bay of the *Northern Ocean* near *Archangel*. From *Novaja Semlia*, or *Nova Zembla*, to the point of land called *Tſchuketſchoi Noſs*, the *Northern Ocean* is called the *Ice Sea* or *Frozen Sea*, in which there is ice almoſt all the year round. This ſea is frozen at furtheſt by the beginning of *October*, and generally before that time: It commonly thaws about the middle of *June*. In the *Ice-Sea*, as well as in the rivers that diſembogue themſelves into it, a flux and reflux are perceptible, but not a great way above the mouths of the rivers. There are many traces remaining which ſhew that the *Ice-Sea* formerly extended much farther ſouth than it does at preſent; ſo that hence it is no wonder, we find at a diſtance from the *Ice-Sea* the remains of ſea-animals buried in the earth. No perſon has hitherto ſailed farther in this Sea than to the 80th degree of North Latitude.

After the many fruitleſs attemps made by the *Hollanders*, about the cloſe of the ſixteenth century, to find a paſſage through the *Ice-ſea* into the *Eaſtern Ocean*, and from thence to the *Eaſt Indies*, the Czar *Peter the Great* attempted the paſſage once more. He ſent out two ſhips from *Archangel*, which entered the *Frozen Sea* through the *White Sea* and *Northern Ocean*, one of which, on account of the large flakes of ice it met with, could not proceed a great way to ſea, but ſtuck in the ice; and the other was never after heard of, ſo that probably it ſunk to the bottom among the ice. The Czarina *Anne* cauſed this paſſage to be attempted anew. For this purpoſe ſhe ordered two ſhips to ſail from *Archangel* along the coaſt of the *Frozen-Sea* to the mouth of the river *Ob*, and another ſhip to ſail from *Tobolſk*, out of the *Irtiſch* and *Ob*, along the ſea-coaſt, as far as the *Jeniſei*. Laſtly, two other ſmall veſſels had orders to ſail down the *Lena* into the *Ice-Sea*; one of which was to ſteer weſtward to the mouth of the *Jeniſei*, and the other eaſtward, along the coaſt of the *Ice-ſea*, and to ſail from thence by the mouths of the rivers *Jana*, *Indigirka* and *Kolyma* quite into the Ocean, and ſo to *Kamtſchatka*. Theſe ſeveral voyages were undertaken in the year 1735; but only the laſt mentioned expedition in any meaſure ſucceeded. For Lieutenant *Owzin* advanced with the ſmall veſſels as far as the *Kolyma*, and proceeded from thence, partly by land, and partly by ſea, quite to *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, ſurveyed the whole coaſt ſo far, and ended his voyage in 1740.

In theſe attempts there appears to have been a great overſight committed, *Firſt*, by not ſailing early enough in the Seaſon; and, *ſecondly*, by their keeping too near the ſhore; for there is a greater quantity of ice, and the cold is more ſevere near the coaſt than farther North towards the Pole, where perhaps there is little or no ice, and the cold is leſs piercing than towards the land. *Gerhard de Veer* aſſures us, that he did not perceive the air near ſo

cold

cold in the 80th degreeof North Latitude as it was in 76° near *Novaja Semlia*. He farther adds that in 80° North Latitude he ſaw green trees, fine graſs, and ſeveral animals, as roes, hinds, *&c.* in the month of *June*; whereas he obſerved neither animals nor vegetables in Latitude 76° even in *Auguſt*. This tract of land which he ſaw was probably a part of *Spitzberg*.

In the archives of *Jakutzka* accounts have been found, which inform us that, towards the cloſe of the laſt century, voyages were made almoſt every year from the mouth of the *Lena* to *Kolyma*, in ſmall veſſels, by illiterate people who were quite ignorant of navigation. One in particular proceeded in a ſmall boat, not much bigger than a canoo, along the coaſt of *Kolyma* by the *Tſchuketſchoi Noſs* or point, quite to *Kamtſchatka*. Nay the *Hollanders*, who are employed in the whale-fiſhery, have taken whales in the *Northern Ocean* with *Japaneſe* harpoons ſtuck in their bodies.

Laſtly, it is obſervable, that in the *Ice-Sea*, the coaſt is covered with a great quantity of wood which floats thither from ſome other parts, though no woods are to be ſeen growing for thirty geographical miles up the country. In many places on that coaſt large high piles of ſuch float-wood, conſiſting of larch and firr-trees, are to be met with. Perhaps this wood floated thither from thoſe parts which *de Veer* ſaw, as mentioned above, or, poſſibly, from more diſtant regions near the North Pole.

V. The EASTERN OCEAN, *Mare orientale*, joins the *Ice-Sea*, and divides *Aſia* from *America*: It is called by the *Ruſſians Titſhoe More*.

VI. The ſea of *Kamtſchatka* derives its name from the peninſula of *Kamtſchatka*, for it flows between it and the continent or country called *Ochotſkoi*, and joins with the *Eaſtern Ocean* of which it may be looked upon as a large bay. Towards the north it runs a great way into the land and forms the gulf of *Penſchinſka*, ſo called from the river *Penſchina*, which diſembogues itſelf into it. This Sea is very boiſterous and often agitated with ſtorms. It appears by experiments tried with the Barometer that it ſtands higher, with reſpect to the centre of the Earth, than the *Ocean*, the *Mediterranean*, or *Caſpian ſea*. The ſurface of the water is alſo higher at the fort *Bolſcheretzkoi*, than at the harbour of *Ochotſkoi*.

VII. The CASPIAN SEA, *Mare Caſpium*, or *Mare Hyrcanum*, called by the Perſians *Kolſum*, by the *Turks Bahri Gaſe*, by the *Ruſſians Chwalinſkoi More*; but from the adjoining provinces it is denominated the Sea of *Georgia*, *Tabriſtan*, *Ghilan*, *Dilem* and *Baku*. It is entirely encompaſſed with land, and extends 150 geographical miles in length from North to South, and between 60 and 70 in breadth from Eaſt to Weſt. Some are of opinion, that the *Caſpian Sea* about the middle is almoſt unfathomable; but others affirm that the depth of it does not exceed 70 fathoms in any part. The bottom is not rocky, being rather a kind of quickſand, with ſeveral ſhoals interſperſed in different parts, eſpecially on the North-Weſt ſide of it. Over againſt *Xilan*, a province of *Perſia*, two large whirlpools have been obſerved

obſerved in the *Caſpian-Sea*, which, without ſuppoſing certain caverns at the bottom that abſorb the water, according to the common opinion, may be eaſily explained upon other principles. Though according to Captain *Perry*'s calculation, the *Caſpian Sea* is ſupplied daily with 1,336,566 tons of water from the rivers that run into it, excluſive of the rain; yet it has no viſible or known communication with any other collection of water into which it can empty itſelf. Nor need we ſuppoſe any ſuch evacuation; for according to Dr. *Halley*'s calculation of the quantity of vapours which are exhaled from the ſea, the *Caſpian* muſt daily evaporate ſo much (notwithſtanding the large quantity of river water it receives) as would ſoon dry it up, did not the vapours aſcending from it fall down into it again in dews and rain. The water of the *Caſpian Sea* appears of the ſame colour with other ſea water: It is not ſalt in every part, but only in particular ſpots of it. It is pretty freſh near the ſhore on all ſides, on account of the many rivers which fall into it. It yields a large quantity of palatable fiſh, particularly ſturgeon. Sharks have alſo been ſeen in this Sea in ſtormy weather, to which it is often ſubject. The Czar *Peter* I. cauſed the *Caſpian* Sea to be accurately ſurveyed, and a chart of it to be drawn; by which it appears that it is not of a circular (as was ſuppoſed) but an oblong figure.

DEN-

DENMARK.


British Statute Miles 69 to a Degree
German Miles 15 to a Degree
Danish Miles 10 ½ to a Degree
Gothenburg
Skagen Cape
Hirzholmen I.s
Tolshouse
Wardberg
THE
Lessoe I.
Falkenberg
SEA
SKAGERRAK
Halmstadt
OR
Anholt I.
Belonging to Jutland
Batsad
CATTEGAT
the Sound
Diamsden
Helsinbo
Hasselow I
Samsoe I
Ruen I.
Amack I.
COPENHAGEN
SEELAND
Moen I.
the King's Chair
FALSTER I.
Langeland I.
Bytie I.
Getzers Ode Cape
Rode Sand
FEHERN I.
Femern Sound
Wachtlhuss
Bandelsdorf
Petersdorf
Bury
Stoel
Bulkenhof
Christianpries
Kiell
Eutin
Lubeck
Lauenburg
Ratzeburg
Schwartau
Frederickshoff
Frederickshult
Tonningen
Husum
Schobul
Sleswick
Flensburg
Glucksburg
Alsen
Arroe
Ærøskiøbing
Svendborg
Odense
FUNEN
Assens
Middelfahrt
Striebsøre
Kierteminde
Broluck
Ellenborg
Ramsoe I
Kallundborg
Astrup
Aasnes
Roskild
Tostrup
Kioge
Sorøe
Wallee
Slagelse
Andersknp
Skelskiør
Herlufsholm
Nestved
Ronde
Præstø
Wordingborg
Stubbekiøbing
Nakskow
Lolland
Laaland
Ruddkiobing
Ryssø
Humbleb
Aasenshaven
Broballe
Egholm
Bogø
Fiutborg
Stavnsfiord
Bostrup
Tranekiær
Holmes
Hiow
Augustenburg
Norburg
Barsoe
Broballe
Sønderborg
Apenrade
Hadersleben
Brunsbuttel
Witzer
Hatzk
Tundern
Tetstedt
Wyder R.
Lecham
Lecher
Hayer
Lock
Cast R.
Ockholm
Wamdrup
Ulderup
Andeser
Capel
Hampo
Langholt
Ruttlingen
Ruttlingen
Ruttlingen


A New
and Accurate MAP of
DENMARK
Drawn from the
Best Authorities
BY
T. Kitchin, Geog.r
S W E D E N
D E N M A R K
S C O N E N
B A L T I C
S E A
Falkenberg
Halmstadt
Batstad
Engelholm
The Sound
Helsinborg
Landscrona
Ween I.
Lund
Malmo
Trelleborg
Ystad
Christianstadt
Ahus
Hano I.
Christiansoe
Ertholm
Bornholm I.
Amack I.
Moen I.
the King's Chair
Stralsund
Bergen
Rugen I.
57
56
55
30
31
32
33

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE DESCRIPTION OF DENMARK.

§. 1. *Andrew Buræus de Boo*, principal architect to the King of *Sweden*, was the first who delineated an accurate map of the Northern Kingdoms. His map was, indeed, properly designed for *Sweden* only; but, at the same time, it comprises all the Northern countries, and is the original from which all the maps of *Scandinavia*, which have been since published, are copied. Those by *Herman Moll*, *Homann*, and *Witten* claim the preference among the latter.

§. 2. *Christian* IV. caused a map of *Denmark* to be drawn by *John Meyern*, which is the ground-work of all the new maps of that Kingdom; only the latter have received some few alterations and additions. Those published by *Homann* are the most common and useful maps of *Denmark*. In *Pontoppidan's Theatrum Daniæ* there is also a map; which, for geographical accuracy, claims, indeed, the preference to, but is not so beautiful engraved as some other maps of that country. We could wish, however, that a speedy improvement were made in the maps of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

§. 3. Among the many etymologies assigned to the name of *Denmark* by different historians, there are but two which deserve our notice. Some derive it from that of an ancient king called *Dan*, and alledge, that *Denmark* denotes the *field* or *land* of king *Dan*. But it is uncertain whether ever any such king existed; unless *Dan Mikillati*, *i. e.* 'The haughty,' who is mentioned by the historians of *Iceland*, and placed in the year of Christ 146, be the person they mean. Others pretend, that the river *Eider*, which separates this kingdom from the Empire of *Germany*, was formerly called *Don*, *Dana*, or *Dena*; and that all the country now called *Jutland*, which was inhabited by the ancient *Danes*, was, from that river, called *Dania*, or *Denmark*, which name was also applied to the conquered islands. The conjec-

tures of *Eckhardt* and *Goldaſt* on this head may be ſeen in M. *Von Weſtphalen*'s *Monumenta inedita*, T. 1. p. 878, *& ſeq.*

§. 4. *Denmark* lies exactly to the North of *Germany*, and is ſeparated from it by the *Leven* and the *Eider*. The latter has, from time immemorial, been acknowledged to be the boundary between *Denmark* and *Germany*; which occaſioned the following Pentameter verſe to be cut on the *Holſtein-gate* at *Rendſburg*, which ſtands cloſe by the *Eider*.

Eydora Romani terminus imperij.

To the weſt *Denmark* is waſhed by the *North Sea* or *German* Ocean; to the north it has the *ſinus Codanus*, otherwiſe called the *Cattegat*, or *Schagerrack*; and to the eaſt it is bounded by the *Baltic* or *Eaſt Sea*. Between the continent and the iſlands *Funen* and *Seeland*, are the famous Straits, called the *Little Belt*, the *Great Belt*, and the *Oereſund* or *Sound* which divides *Denmark* from *Sweden*. The *Sound* is about 1331 fathoms, or half a geographical mile, broad at *Helſingoer*, and is the common paſſage out of the *North Sea* into the *Baltic*. This, as well as the other two Straits mentioned above, is reckoned part of the king of *Denmark*'s dominions; and conſequently all ſhips that paſs that way are obliged to pay a toll, according to the value of the cargoes they are laden with, of which we ſhall ſay more in §. 20.

§. 5. *Denmark*, properly ſo called, conſiſts of two large, and ſeveral ſmall iſlands, together with the peninſula of *Jutland*. The kingdom of *Norway*, with the iſlands *Faroe*, *Iceland* and *Greenland*, one half of the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, with the counties of *Oldenburg* and *Dalmenhorſt* in *Germany*, the town of *Tranquebar*, with its territory, and the iſlands of *Nicobar* on the coaſt of *Coromandel* in *Aſia*, the citadel of *Chriſtianſburg* on the coaſt of *Guinea* in *Africa*, and the iſlands of St. *Thomas* and St. *John*, with ſome of the *Caribbe* iſlands, and St. *Croix* are alſo ſubject to the King of *Denmark*.

We are here only to conſider his *Daniſh* majeſty's northern dominions; but as for thoſe in *Germany*, and other parts of the world, they will be deſcribed in their proper places.

§. 6. The extent of the whole kingdom of *Denmark* cannot be exactly determined, becauſe its parts are not contiguous to each other; but that of every part ſingly will be hereafter ſpecified under their proper heads. The air in *North Jutland* is pretty cold and piercing. On the eaſt ſide, in *South Jutland*, and in the iſlands *Funen* and *Seeland* it is milder and more temperate; but in the low marſhy part, and in the iſle of *Laaland*, the air is thick, moiſt, and unhealthy. The ſhifting of the winds, indeed, renders the weather ſomewhat variable, but, at the ſame time, purges the air of fogs and vapours. The weſt wind is the moſt violent, and very frequently blows in

in theſe parts. *Denmark* lies moſtly low and on a level, and, excepting the tract of land about the middle of *Jutland*, is very fertile; ſo that the country maintains its inhabitants in plenty, and yields a rich proviſion of every thing neceſſary for the ſupport of human life. It can better diſpenſe with its horned cattle and horſes than with the corn, for exportation. The ſea-coaſts, lakes, ponds, rivers, and brooks in this country yield abundance of fiſh. *Denmark* produces no wine, metals, or ſalt, the ſmall quantity of ſalt which is made in *Jutland* being very inconſiderable. Moſt of the provinces are ſupplied with a ſufficient quantity of wood to anſwer their neceſſary occaſions; however, the *Danes* burn a great deal of turf.

§. 7. *Denmark* is pretty well peopled: But ſome are of opinion, that the number of inhabitants in this kingdom was formerly more conſiderable than it is at preſent. The *Danes* are divided into *Nobles*, *Burghers*, and *Peaſants*; and the Nobleſſe is diſtinguiſhed by the appellations of the *higher* and *lower* Nobility. There never were any Princes or Dukes, beſides the King's Sons, in *Denmark*, excepting only one nobleman, namely, *Knut Pors*, who was created Duke of *Halland* by *Chriſtopher* II. So that in the rank of *higher* Nobles are included only Counts and Barons, which titles were introduced into *Denmark* by *Chriſtian* V. who firſt created them on *May* 25, 1671. The privileges of Counts are ſpecified in an ordinance of the year 1688. They have the right of primogeniture. Their younger ſons and daughters are ſtiled Barons and Baroneſſes, and enjoy the privileges annexed to that rank. In their Counties they have the right of patronage, and of appointing a judge and ſecretary, from whoſe ſentence there lies no appeal, but only to the Supreme Court of judicature. They pay no contributions or tithes for their eſtates in chief, and are allowed 300 acres of land, over and above, free from all impoſitions. All ſuits carried on againſt them muſt commence in the Supreme Judicatory. They bear a coronet over their coat of arms. The reader may ſee the other privileges belonging to the *Daniſh* Nobility in *Holberg*'s political hiſtory of *Denmark* and *Norway*, p. 272, *&* *ſeq.* The rights and privileges of the Barons in *Denmark* is much the ſame with thoſe of the Counts. The principal difference is, that the Baron's enjoy only 100 acres of land free from tithes and contributions, and are ſomething inferior to Counts in rank and title. No perſon is made a feodal Count or Baron, who is not able to purchaſe ſo much land, as may be erected into a feodal County or Barony: But this qualification is not neceſſary for other Counts and Barons. The privileges of the *lower* Nobility are, that in matters of life and honour, they muſt be cited before the King's ſupreme Court, unleſs they have a poſt in the militia by land or by ſea; and then this exception only extends to the ſuperior officers. Thoſe who have equal priviliges, and rank with the Nobility, alſo enjoy this prerogative. No inferior judge can execute a ſentence paſſed upon any of theſe; for that muſt be done only by the judge of the province, or his commiſ-

ſary: Hence it is that an appeal from the ſentence of the inferior judge may be lodged in the court of the province. A lord of a manor, who, beſides the produce of his manor, together with the mills and tithes, has 200 acres of land in farm eſtate, lying within two miles of his manor, is free from contribution. Lords of a manor have alſo the privilege of hunting and fiſhing; that of appointing a judge and ſecretary; the ſtrand-right, or right of *trover*, if the proprietor of the goods found does not make his claim in one year and ſix weeks; and the right of patronage or preſentation to their own churches. But theſe, as well as other privileges belonging to thoſe who are poſſeſſed of manors, are ſeldom enjoyed by them unleſs they are Gentlemen, or upon a footing with that rank. If a perſon has a manor, which, together with the eſtate ſubject to it, amounts to 400 acres of land, he may ſet up as head of a family, provided he is qualified in every other reſpect. The Nobles that are properly *Daniſh*, that is, ſuch as have been born and enobled in *Denmark*, are, in compariſon to other kingdoms, not very numerous: And therefore we may affirm in general, that the Noblemen in this country are, at preſent, for the moſt part of foreign extraction. Formerly the *Daniſh* Nobility, who were ſuch ſtrictly ſpeaking, enjoyed extraordinary privileges, and in the reign of *Frederic* III. their power roſe to the higheſt pitch: But in the ſame reign, after the monarchy became abſolute, it fell ſo low, that they had nothing left but the privileges mentioned above; and theſe were only granted to them out of royal grace. The Nobility of *Sleſwick* have the ſame rights and privileges as thoſe of *Holſtein*.

I have nothing particular to obſerve with regard to the Burghers. They here enjoy greater or leſs privileges, according to the cities of which they are members, and their own deſerts. However, the *Burghers* of *Copenhagen* enjoy the pre-eminence above the reſt: For on the 10th of *Auguſt*, 1658, they obtained very extraordinary and extenſive privileges, which were confirmed to them, and conſiderably enlarged, in the year 1661. The *Daniſh* Peaſants are of different claſſes. Some of them are poſſeſſed of a ſpot of land as their own property, for which they make the lord of the manor only ſome inconſiderable acknowledgment; otherwiſe they are free from all impoſts and exactions, excepting the general contribution. In the *Daniſh* language, theſe are called *Selveyerbonder*, *i. e.* land-owners. Others have only a farm for which they pay a certain rent, and are termed in *Daniſh*, *Faſtebonder*. Theſe pay yearly to the proprietors of their farm the rent agreed upon in money, cattle, or corn, and do inferior ſervices at the manor of their lord. There are others who are Servants to theſe two claſſes of Peaſants. Slavery, or the ſtate of ſervitude was entirely aboliſhed in *Denmark* in the year 1702, by *Frederic* IV. and is continued only in ſome parts of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*.

§. 8. The

§. 8. The *Daniſh* language is only a dialect of the *Swediſh* and *Norwegian*; and the inhabitants of theſe three northern kingdoms underſtand each other's language, excepting ſome few words and phraſes. The modern *Daniſh* is a mixture of the ancient *Gothic*, *Friſian*, and *German* languages. With regard to the pronunciation, it has a great affinity with the *Engliſh*, with which it has many words in common, and is well adapted for poetry.

§. 9. In the times of Heatheniſm the *Danes* paid religious worſhip chiefly to the Gods *Freyer*, *Thor*, *Thyr*, *Odin*, and *Freya*; and four days in the week ſtill retain the names of the four laſt mentioned, in the *Daniſh* language. *Odin* was the chief of theſe deities. In the middle ages ſeveral attempts were made, at different times, to convert the *Danes* to Chriſtianity. In the year 822, *Ebbo*, biſhop of *Rheims*, preached the Goſpel in *Denmark*. King *Harald Klag*, who fled for refuge to the emperor *Lewis*, conſented to be baptized, and was attended back to his kingdom by ſeveral monks. Theſe monks founded churches in ſeveral places in *Denmark*, particularly at *Haddebye* in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, where the very firſt *Daniſh* church was erected, which was committed to the care of the Biſhop *Anſgarius*. But the ſucceeding kings proved inveterate enemies to the Chriſtians, and perſecuted the new converts among the *Danes* in the moſt cruel manner; however, after various viciſſitudes of fortune they obtained at length a free and uninterrupted toleration, about the year 1000, from King *Sueno*. When *Luther* began to reſtore in *Germany* the doctrine of the Goſpel in its genuine purity, it was favourably received in *Denmark* by *Chriſtian* II. where it ſtill gained more ground under *Frederic* I. In the reign of *Chriſtian* III. it was made the eſtabliſhed religion at the Diet held at *Copenhagen* in 1537; and a new body of eccleſiaſtical laws was drawn up by *John Bugenhagen*, who alſo made ſeveral other good regulations. Hence it appears that the *Evangelical* or *Lutheran* religion is the prevailing doctrine in this kingdom. Other religious ſects, *viz.* the *Calviniſts*, the *Roman*-catholics, and *Jews* enjoy the free exerciſe of their religion in *Copenhagen*, *Fredericia*, and *Frederickſtadt*. *Arminians*, *Mennonites*, and *Quakers* are alſo tolerated at *Frederickſtadt*; and on the iſland of *Nordſtrand* the *Roman*-catholics, enjoy the puplic exerciſe of their religion. By the laudable endeavours of the Kings of *Denmark* the light of the Goſpel has likewiſe been diſplayed with good ſucceſs in *Finmark*, *Greenland*, and among the *Malabarians* on the coaſt of *Coramandel*; and in 1714 a Society was inſtituted for this purpoſe, which is entitled, *Collegium de curſu Evangelii promovendo*.

Thoſe who have the chief eccleſiaſtical juriſdiction in the kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway* are the Biſhops; of which there are ſix in *Denmark*, four in *Norway*, and two in *Iceland*. Two Biſhops, namely, thoſe of *Seeland*, and *Chriſtiania* have the precedency of all the reſt. The former is alſo third Profeſſor of Divinity in the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*, and conſequently

quently is obliged to reſide in that city. The title of Archbiſhop is aboliſhed in *Denmark*; and *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* are under a general *Superintendent*. In former times the power of the Biſhops was very conſiderable in *Denmark*; for with the other principal prelates they formed the third State of the Kingdom: But at this day they enjoy no other power, but what the general *Superintendents* in *Germany* are inveſted with, being only ſtiled *Superintendents* in law. The Biſhops are always appointed by the King. They viſit the churches and ſchools in their reſpective dioceſes or *Superintendencies*, (which they are obliged to do once in three years;) examine, and ordain new preachers; and, together with their Provoſts, at ſtated times, hold provincial ſynods, where they preſide in conjunction with the Governour of the Dioceſe or province. Their revenue ariſes from lands, tithes, and the *Cathedraticum*, as it is called, or a ſmall ſum which they receive from every church in the dioceſe. In every cathedral there is a ſmall college conſiſting of four or five canons, who enjoy certain lands, tithes, *&c.* They meet twice a year in the chapter-houſe, in order to ſit as judges on matrimonial and other cauſes, which were formerly decided by the Canon law. Their court, in which the Governour of the Dioceſe preſides, is called the *Tamperrecht*, and the days of their meeting, *Tampertage*. There was formerly a divinity Lecturer, who read public lectures weekly in every cathedral; but theſe were, in time, laid aſide. Next to the Biſhops are the *Provoſts*; and of theſe there are 160 in the whole Kingdom. They annually viſit the preachers and ſchoolmaſters within their juriſdiction; decide diſputes between the preachers and the veſtries or pariſhes, when they are cognizable by the eccleſiaſtical law; and appear at the provincial ſynod twice a year. The Provoſts have a Rix-dollar * yearly from every church in their juriſdiction, and in their viſitations are entertained *gratis*. Next to theſe are the *Preachers*, whoſe aſſiſtants are called *Chaplains*. The revenues of the *Daniſh* clergy, which ariſe partly from tithes, and partly from the liberality of their reſpective flocks, are more conſiderable, perhaps, than in any other country. Confeſſion-money is, indeed, aboliſhed in *Denmark*; but, in lieu of it, the Preachers enjoy the offerings, which their congregations make at *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Whitſuntide*. A Preacher's widow in *Denmark* receives half the benefit of the firſt year, and the eighth part of the income every year after, from the ſucceſſor of her deceaſed huſband. In the principal town of every dioceſe there is alſo a widow's box, in which every Preacher puts a certain ſum; and his widow, if ſhe ſurvives him, enjoys an annuity, in proportion to what he has contributed.

§. 10. The number of learned men in *Denmark* is as conſiderable as in any other country in *Europe*, of the ſame extent, and where the ſciences are in a flouriſhing ſtate. There is ſcarce any branch of Literature, in which men of genius in this kingdom have not acquitted themſelves with honour.

* 4*s.* 6*d.* Sterling.

Beſides

Beſides the Univerſity at *Copenhagen*, which conſiſts of four colleges, the Academy at *Soroe*, and the *Gymnaſium* or Seminary at *Odenſe*, there are ſeveral ſchools well endowed in country-towns, where the maſters are not only liberally provided for, but alſo the ſcholars are inſtructed, and partly maintained *gratis*. By virtue of an Ordinance made by *Chriſtian* VI. in the year 1739, there were ſix public Grammar-ſchools ordered to be erected in the Dioceſe of *Seeland*, beſides thoſe at *Friederickſburg* and *Herluffholm*; namely, one at *Copenhagen*, another at *Roſchild*, a third at *Slagelſe*, a fourth at *Helſingoer*, a fifth at *Kioge* and *Wordinborg*, and a ſixth at *Ronne*, on the iſland of *Bornholm*. In the Dioceſe of *Funen*, ſchools were founded at *Odenſe* and *Nyborg*, at *Naſkow* on the iſland of *Laaland*, and at *Nykioing* on the iſland of *Falſter*. In *North-Jutland* eight ſchools were erected in the following places, *viz.* in the Dioceſe of *Ripen*, at *Ripen*, *Friedericia*, and *Kolding*; in the Dioceſe of *Aarhuus*, at *Aarhuus*, *Randers*, and *Horſens*; in the Dioceſe of *Wiburg*, at *Wiburg*; in the Dioceſe of *Aalburg*, at *Aalburg*. In *Norway*, only one ſchool is founded in every Dioceſe, namely at *Chriſtiania*, *Chriſtianſand*, *Bergen*, and *Drontheim*. In *Iceland* there are two, and in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* eleven Grammar-ſchools. In 1742, a royal Academy of Sciences was inſtituted at *Copenhagen*, with a Royal Society, for the improvement of the Northern Hiſtory and Languages. Societies for the improvement of the uſeful arts and manufactures, and of the ſeveral branches of Phyſic, and, in 1736, the *Theatrum anatomico-chirurgicum*, and ſeveral libraries were erected. There is alſo an Academy for Painting, Sculpture, and Architecture at *Copenhagen*, and the polite arts are in high eſteem there.

§. 11. In the laſt century there were ſcarce any manufactures carried on in *Denmark*; for they were firſt introduced by *Frederic* IV. and *Chriſtian* VI. and may poſſibly, in time, be farther improved. There are artiſts of extraordinary ſkill at *Copenhagen*; and, at preſent, every branch of the mechanic arts is well executed in *Denmark*. Gold and ſilver lace, ſilk ſtuffs, and velvets, cloths, cotton and woollen ſtuffs, ſtockings, tapeſtry, hats, baſtard and genuine porcelain, and fire-arms are alſo manufactured in this Kingdom. Here are, beſides, paper and copper-mills, different ſorts of iron-wares made, one ſilk and two cotton printing-houſes, with manufactories of ſoap, ſteel, ſtarch, glue, lacker, tobacco, ſugar, *&c.* The lace of *Tondern*, and the gloves of *Randers* and *Odenſe* are well known to be excellent in their kind. No foreign manufactures are allowed to be imported into *Denmark*; and, ſince the year 1736, the wearing of jewels, gold and ſilver ſtuffs, and foreign lace, has been alſo prohibited. In 1738, a general warehouſe or magazine was opened at the Exchange in *Copenhagen*, to which manufacturers bring all the wares which they cannot diſpoſe of in other towns, and are paid ready money for them; and from this warehouſe the goods are delivered out on credit to retailers.

§. 12. *Denmark* enjoys the moſt commodious ſituation for navigation and commerce, and might be made the centre of the important trade of the North, and in particular that carried on in the *Baltic*, if a ſtaple was eſtabliſhed at *Copenhagen*. Formerly all the commerce to *Denmark* was carried on by the *Hanſe-towns*, which were afterwards ſupplanted by the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*; but for the moſt part by the former. In the reign of *Chriſtian* III. the *Danes* began to carry on their own trade, which was encouraged by *Chriſtian* IV. and in the reign of *Chriſtian* V. was carried on in their own bottoms. But *Frederic* IV. may be called the real founder of the *Daniſh* commerce; which *Chriſtian* VI. powerfully ſupported, and *Frederic* V. by his royal munificence and bounty endeavoured to carry to the utmoſt pitch. The ſtrict and conſtant application of the *Danes*, at this day, to navigation and commerce appears, partly by the great number of ſhips, which yearly paſs through the *Sound* (thoſe of the year 1752 amounting to 850 ſail,) and partly from the ſeveral opulent Companies, which have been, from time to time, eſtabliſhed at *Copenhagen*, every one of which has its own preſident, directors, and other officers.

The principal among theſe is the Royal *Aſiatic* Company, firſt erected with his *Daniſh* Majeſty's approbation in 1616, confirmed by a royal charter in 1698, which was renewed, with proper regulations, in 1732 and 1744. This Company trades to *Tranquebar*, on the coaſt of *Coromandel*, where they have a governor, and to *Canton* in *China*; and carry on their commerce almoſt entirely with current ſpecie or bullion. In return they have chints, cottons of all ſorts, muſlins, pepper, ſalt-petre, tea, with other *Bengal* and *China* wares. For theſe commodities they receive conſiderable ſums of money, to refund the ſpecie carried out of *Denmark*, from foreigners; who take them off their hands, particularly great quantities of tea: Beſides, they ſupply their own Country with all theſe merchandiſes. This Company ſends two ſhips every year to *Canton*, which return richly laden, and two or three more to *Tranquebar*. Their *Actions*, or ſtock, being in high credit, is an evident proof of their flouriſhing ſtate. In 1755, an addition of 300,000 Rix-dollars * was made to their fund or capital.

The *Weſt-India* and *Guinea* Company, formerly eſtabliſhed by charter, was diſſolved in 1754, aud the trade to *America* laid open to all adventurers who are natives of *Denmark*, *Norway*, or *Sleſwick*; and the monopoly of ſugar is no longer in being. In the year 1755, the king eſtabliſhed an *African* Company, with a capital of 500 *Actions*, every *Action* conſiſting of 500 Rix-dollars, which are divided between thirteen adventurers.

The *General Trading* Company, eſtabliſhed by a royal charter, was inſtituted with a deſign to carry on ſuch branches of trade, as no private adventurers are able to undertake, and, at the ſame time, to ſerve as a ſort of

* A *Daniſh* Rix-dollar is 4 *s.* 6 *d.* ſterling.

Academy

Academy for young merchants. This company was incorporated in 1747, and enjoys conſiderable privileges. Its *Actions* are 1000, each of which conſiſts of 500 Rix-dollars; but of this ſum only 300 Rix-dollars are paid down; ſo that their fund amounts to 300,000 Rix-dollars. The remaining 200 Rix-dollars of every *Action*, may be demanded on any emergency. This Company trades to *Spain*, *France*, the *Mediterranean*, the *Baltic*, and alſo to *Greenland*, by ſending ſhips to the Whale-fiſhery.

The *Iceland* and *Finmark* Company, eſtabliſhed by a royal charter, have monopolized the trade to *Iceland* and *Finmark*, for a term of years which is to expire in 1771, and obtained their laſt charter in 1746. I ſhall take notice of the commodities ſent to *Iceland*, and imported from thence in return, in my deſcription of that country.

Beſides theſe trading Companies, other *Daniſh* adventurers trade to different ports of *Europe*. The imports always exceed the exports in *Denmark*: But in the kingdom of *Norway* it is quite the reverſe.

The *Aſſignation-Exchange* or *Loan-Bank*, at *Copenhagen*, was erected *October* 29, 1736. The Bank-notes are drawn for 100, 50, or 10 Rix-dollars, and paſs in all the king's dominions, and the public offices belonging to the crown, as current ſpecie. Great, or ſmall ſums, but not under 100 Rix-dollars, are lent out of this Bank, on depoſiting a ſufficient pledge, at four *per cent*. The capital Stock is 500,000 Rix-dollars; and though their circulating notes amount to much more, they are in very good credit, as appears by the high price of the Company's *Actions*.

There is alſo in *Copenhagen* an office of Inſurance for ſhips at ſea, eſtabliſhed by charter. The number of ſhips that come annually into the port of *Copenhagen* is very conſiderable; for it appears that above 3000 ſhips and ſmaller veſſels, laden with all ſorts of merchandiſes, eſpecially proviſions, timber, and materials for building, were entered at the Cuſtom-houſe in the year 1752.

§. 13. The right of coinage has been entirely veſted in the Crown ſince the reign of *Frederick* III. The current coins in *Denmark* are,

A *Fyrk* of copper, two of which make a *ſchilling*; and two of the latter are equal to one *ſchilling lub*, or a *ſtiver*.

A *Dutgen*, which is equal to three *ſtivers*, or ſix *ſchillings Daniſh*.

A *Mark Daniſh*, which is equal to 16 *ſchillings*, or half a *Mark lub*.

A *Half-crown*, which is alſo called one mark-piece, is two marks *Daniſh*, or one *Mark lub*.

A Crown, equal to two half-crowns. There are alſo double crowns in *Denmark*. *Rix-dollars* and *Ducats* paſs at the uſual value, excepting the new current *Ducats*, which ſcarce make two *Rix-dollars*, and commonly do not exceed 11 *Marks*. Five *Daniſh* Rix-dollars * (but according to the

* A Rix-dollar *Daniſh*, according to *Paraire*'s Table, is equal to 4*s*. 6*d*. ſo that they generally amount to more than a pound ſterling.

courſe of Exchange, ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs) are equal to one pound ſterling. As to the intrinſic value of the ſilver coin, from 1 mark, which is 8 ounces of pure Silver, 34 current *marks lub* are coined.

§. 14. The Poſt-office was put on its preſent regular footing in *Denmark* by *Frederick* III. In all towns the couriers for letters go out and come in twice a week. As for the weekly travelling poſt carriages, one takes its route from *Copenhagen* through *Seeland*, *Falſter*, and *Laaland* to the town of *Naſkow*; and the other, from *Copenhagen* through *Seeland*, *Funen*, *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* to *Hamburgh*. A new travelling poſt carriage was ſet up in *Jutland* in the year 1753, which goes from *Haderſleben* to *Aalburg* once in a fortnight. In every town in *Denmark* a perſon may have a carriage for himſelf at a reaſonable fixt rate. The roads are meaſured all over the kingdom, and at every quarter of a *Daniſh* mile the ground is a little raiſed, and a ſtone erected on it.

§. 15. We cannot pretend to aſcertain, who were the firſt inhabitants of theſe northern parts of *Europe*. That the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, in the time of the ancient *Romans*, inhabited the preſent *Jutland* and Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, may be eaſily demonſtrated. As for the other iſlands, and their forms of government, we have none, or but very obſcure and uncertain accounts. However, it is probable that *Denmark* was divided between ſeveral petty ſovereigns; that king *Worm*, and *Godfrey the Great* who in the days of *Charlemagne* conſiderably enlarged his dominions, were only Lords of *Jutland*; and that the tyrannical power of ſuch ambitious princes compelled others to ſeek for new habitations. This gave occaſion to thoſe extraordinary expeditions of the *Normans* into *Neuſtria*, *England*, *Italy*, and *Sicily*. Theſe conqueſts paved the way for *Sueno the Great* to the *Engliſh* throne in the eleventh century, which, together with the kingdom of *Norway*, his ſucceſſors afterwards loſt. The ſucceeding ages were no leſs infeſted with commotions, wars, and aſſaſſinations even of kings and princes; till at length *Margaret* daughter of *Waldemar* III. by her marriage obtained the kingdom of *Norway*, and by her proweſs conquered *Sweden*, about the cloſe of the 14th century; and united the three Northern kingdoms by the Union of *Calmar*, in the year 1397. Her deſcendants, however, enjoyed this happineſs but for a ſhort time. For, notwithſtanding this Union was confirmed by *Erich* of *Pomerania* in the year of Chriſt 1436, yet he was afterwards depoſed; and *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria* died in 1448 without heirs. The latter was ſucceeded by *Chriſtian*, Count of *Oldenburg*, who had the Dutchy of *Holſtein* by hereditary right, and mounted the throne in 1449. *John*, his ſon and ſucceſſor, firſt diſmembered the Dutchies of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein*, and *Chriſtian* II. the ſon of *John*, loſt both his crown and liberty; and *Sweden* entirely ſhook off the *Daniſh* yoke. *Frederick* I. *Chriſtian* the ſecond's uncle by the father's ſide, began the Reformation, which *Chriſtian* III. who obtained the crown by election, completed. The latter united *Norway*

to

to the kingdom of *Denmark*, and diſmembered *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* from the latter a ſecond time. *Frederick* II. in concert with the Duke of *Holſtein*, conquered *Ditmarſch*, rendered his kingdom and family very powerful by the treaties of *Roſchild* and *Stettin*; and obtained of the Emperor *Maximilian* II. the reverſion of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*. This monarch's ſon, the brave *Chriſtian* IV. indeed, extended his dominions in the *Eaſt Indies*; but was unſucceſsful in a thirty years war. *Frederick* III. his ſon and ſucceſſor, on account of the factions and growing power of the nobility, was very unfortunate in his war with the *Swedes*; but, in 1660, beyond the expectation of all, he became an abſolute hereditary Monarch. *Chriſtian* V. after a tedious diſpute, obtained the Counties of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt* by a convention; and he, as well as his ſon *Frederick* IV. contended a long time with the Ducal houſe of *Holſtein*, and waged war with *Sweden*, by which means at length *Sleſwick* was again united to the *Daniſh* crown. After theſe troubles *Denmark* enjoyed a ſeries of peaceable and happy times under *Chriſtian* VI. which are ſtill continued in the reign of *Frederick* V. the auguſt Monarch who now ſits on the throne of this Kingdom.

§. 16. His *Daniſh* majeſty's title at full length is as follows: '*Frederick* 'V. by the grace of God, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, of the *Vandals* 'and *Goths*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, *Holſtein*, *Stormarn*, and *Ditmarſch*, Count 'of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*.'

The royal Arms are parted by the *Danebrog*-croſs into 4 principal quarters. In the 1. *Or*, three lions paſſant gardant *azure*, ſurrounded with nine hearts *gules*, for *Denmark*. In the 2. *Gules*, a lion rampant crowned *or*, holding a *Daniſh* battle-ax *argent*, for *Norway*. In the 3. *Azure*, three crowns *or* 2 and 1, for *Sweden*. In the 4. *Or*, a lion leopardized *azure*, with nine hearts *gules*, for ancient *Gothland*. The ineſcutcheon quarterly, in the 1. *Or*, two lions paſſant *azure*, for the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*. In the 2. *Gules*, three nettle leaves *argent* pierced with three nails of the croſs; theſe leaves are charged with a ſmall eſcutcheon *argent*, for the Dutchy of *Holſtein*. In the 3. *Gules*, a cygnet *argent* gorged with a crown *or*, for *Stormarn*. In the 4. *Gules*, a cavalier armed *argent*, holding a ſword, pommelled *or*, for *Ditmarſch*. Upon all an ineſcutcheon in the centre party per pale *or*, two bars *gules*, for *Delmenhorſt*; and *azure*, a croſs pattee *or*, for *Jutland*. The ſupporters are two ſavages armed with clubs.

§. 17. The principal order of knighthood in *Denmark* is that of the *Elephant*, or the blue ribband, which is ſuppoſed to derive its origin from *Canut* VI. in the 12th century. Its enſign or badge is a white enamelled Elephant appendant to a blue ribband, worn over the left ſhoulder to the right ſide. On the left breaſt theſe knights wear a ſilver ſtar of eight rays, with the *Danebrog*-croſs in the middle of it. The ſecond order of knighthood in this kingdom is the *Danebrog* order, or the white ribband, which was firſt inſtituted by *Waldemar* II. The badge of this order is a croſs of gold, enamelled

courſe of Exchange, ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs) are equal to one pound ſterling. As to the intrinſic value of the ſilver coin, from 1 mark, which is 8 ounces of pure Silver, 34 current *marks lub* are coined.

§. 14. The Poſt-office was put on its preſent regular footing in *Denmark* by *Frederick* III. In all towns the couriers for letters go out and come in twice a week. As for the weekly travelling poſt carriages, one takes its route from *Copenhagen* through *Seeland*, *Falſter*, and *Laaland* to the town of *Naſkow*; and the other, from *Copenhagen* through *Seeland*, *Funen*, *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* to *Hamburgh*. A new travelling poſt carriage was ſet up in *Jutland* in the year 1753, which goes from *Haderſleben* to *Aalburg* once in a fortnight. In every town in *Denmark* a perſon may have a carriage for himſelf at a reaſonable fixt rate. The roads are meaſured all over the kingdom, and at every quarter of a *Daniſh* mile the ground is a little raiſed, and a ſtone erected on it.

§. 15. We cannot pretend to aſcertain, who were the firſt inhabitants of theſe northern parts of *Europe*. That the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, in the time of the ancient *Romans*, inhabited the preſent *Jutland* and Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, may be eaſily demonſtrated. As for the other iſlands, and their forms of government, we have none, or but very obſcure and uncertain accounts. However, it is probable that *Denmark* was divided between ſeveral petty ſovereigns; that king *Worm*, and *Godfrey the Great* who in the days of *Charlemagne* conſiderably enlarged his dominions, were only Lords of *Jutland*; and that the tyrannical power of ſuch ambitious princes compelled others to ſeek for new habitations. This gave occaſion to thoſe extraordinary expeditions of the *Normans* into *Neuſtria*, *England*, *Italy*, and *Sicily*. Theſe conqueſts paved the way for *Sueno the Great* to the *Engliſh* throne in the eleventh century, which, together with the kingdom of *Norway*, his ſucceſſors afterwards loſt. The ſucceeding ages were no leſs infeſted with commotions, wars, and aſſaſſinations even of kings and princes; till at length *Margaret* daughter of *Waldemar* III. by her marriage obtained the kingdom of *Norway*, and by her proweſs conquered *Sweden*, about the cloſe of the 14th century; and united the three Northern kingdoms by the Union of *Calmar*, in the year 1397. Her deſcendants, however, enjoyed this happineſs but for a ſhort time. For, notwithſtanding this Union was confirmed by *Erich* of *Pomerania* in the year of Chriſt 1436, yet he was afterwards depoſed; and *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria* died in 1448 without heirs. The latter was ſucceeded by *Chriſtian*, Count of *Oldenburg*, who had the Dutchy of *Holſtein* by hereditary right, and mounted the throne in 1449. *John*, his ſon and ſucceſſor, firſt diſmembered the Dutchies of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein*, and *Chriſtian* II. the ſon of *John*, loſt both his crown and liberty; and *Sweden* entirely ſhook off the *Daniſh* yoke. *Frederick* I. *Chriſtian* the ſecond's uncle by the father's ſide, began the Reformation, which *Chriſtian* III. who obtained the crown by election, completed. The latter united *Norway*

to

to the kingdom of *Denmark*, and diſmembered *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* from the latter a ſecond time. *Frederick* II. in concert with the Duke of *Holſtein*, conquered *Ditmarſch*, rendered his kingdom and family very powerful by the treaties of *Roſchild* and *Stettin*; and obtained of the Emperor *Maximilian* II. the reverſion of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*. This monarch's ſon, the brave *Chriſtian* IV. indeed, extended his dominions in the *Eaſt Indies*; but was unſucceſsful in a thirty years war. *Frederick* III. his ſon and ſucceſſor, on account of the factions and growing power of the nobility, was very unfortunate in his war with the *Swedes*; but, in 1660, beyond the expectation of all, he became an abſolute hereditary Monarch. *Chriſtian* V. after a tedious diſpute, obtained the Counties of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt* by a convention; and he, as well as his ſon *Frederick* IV. contended a long time with the Ducal houſe of *Holſtein*, and waged war with *Sweden*, by which means at length *Sleſwick* was again united to the *Daniſh* crown. After theſe troubles *Denmark* enjoyed a ſeries of peaceable and happy times under *Chriſtian* VI. which are ſtill continued in the reign of *Frederick* V. the auguſt Monarch who now ſits on the throne of this Kingdom.

§. 16. His *Daniſh* majeſty's title at full length is as follows: 'Frederick 'V. by the grace of God, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, of the *Vandals* 'and *Goths*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, *Holſtein*, *Stormarn*, and *Ditmarſch*, Count 'of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*.'

The royal Arms are parted by the *Danebrog*-croſs into 4 principal quarters. In the 1. *Or*, three lions paſſant gardant *azure*, ſurrounded with nine hearts *gules*, for *Denmark*. In the 2. *Gules*, a lion rampant crowned *or*, holding a *Daniſh* battle-ax *argent*, for *Norway*. In the 3. *Azure*, three crowns *or* 2 and 1, for *Sweden*. In the 4. *Or*, a lion leopardized *azure*, with nine hearts *gules*, for ancient *Gothland*. The ineſcutcheon quarterly, in the 1. *Or*, two lions paſſant *azure*, for the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*. In the 2. *Gules*, three nettle leaves *argent* pierced with three nails of the croſs; theſe leaves are charged with a ſmall eſcutcheon *argent*, for the Dutchy of *Holſtein*. In the 3. *Gules*, a cygnet *argent* gorged with a crown *or*, for *Stormarn*. In the 4. *Gules*, a cavalier armed *argent*, holding a ſword, pommelled *or*, for *Ditmarſch*. Upon all an ineſcutcheon in the centre party per pale *or*, two bars *gules*, for *Delmenhorſt*; and *azure*, a croſs pattee *or*, for *Jutland*. The ſupporters are two ſavages armed with clubs.

§. 17. The principal order of knighthood in *Denmark* is that of the *Elephant*, or the blue ribband, which is ſuppoſed to derive its origin from *Canut* VI. in the 12th century. Its enſign or badge is a white enamelled Elephant appendant to a blue ribband, worn over the left ſhoulder to the right ſide. On the left breaſt theſe knights wear a ſilver ſtar of eight rays, with the *Danebrog*-croſs in the middle of it. The ſecond order of knighthood in this kingdom is the *Danebrog* order, or the white ribband, which was firſt inſtituted by *Waldemar* II. The badge of this order is a croſs of gold, enamelled

melled and ſet with eleven diamonds. This hangs at a watered white ribband with a red border, which is worn over the right ſhoulder to the left ſide. On the right breaſt theſe knights wear a ſilver ſtar of eight rays, in which a croſs is to be ſeen, with the word *Reſtitutor* thus divided, RE-STI-TV-TOR, and the name of *Chriſtian* V. in the middle. Both theſe orders were revived by *Chriſtian* V. and have their particular ſtatutes, collars, and motto's.

§. 18. Whether *Denmark* was anciently an elective or hereditary kingdom, is a diſputable point; ſome hiſtorians maintaining the former, and others affirming the latter. Though we ſhould allow that the *Daniſh* crown was not hereditary, it is, however, certain, that the States did commonly make their choice out of the royal family; and that they alſo ſometimes departed from that cuſtom. The kings of the *Oldenburg* branch were elected by the States, till the reign of *Frederick* III. who made the crown hereditary in the male and female line of the royal family in 1660, and, by the free conſent of the whole nation rendered *Denmark* quite an abſolute monarchy. Upon this, the fundamental laws of the kingdom were aboliſhed; and the Regal Law, ſubſcribed by that monarch on *November* 14, 1665, and publiſhed by *Frederick* IV. on *September* 4, 1709, was eſtabliſhed in their place. This was called *Lex Regia*, becauſe *Frederick* III. preſcribed it as the ſtanding rule for his ſucceſſors on the throne of *Denmark*, which they were inviolably to obſerve. To this, indeed, he had a right, as being the founder of abſolute monarchy in this kingdom. The order of ſucceſſion is ſo clearly pointed out and determined in theſe Inſtitutes, that it is not more exactly regulated in any kingdom in the world. The king of *Denmark* is inveſted with an abſolute power in his kingdoms; acknowledges no ſuperior, either in ſpirituals or temporals, but God; and is not accountable to his ſubjects for his conduct*. The anointing or inauguration, in *Denmark*, is now no more than a religious ceremony.

§. 19. The *Supreme College* was inſtituted in 1676, and is the privy council, or council of ſtate. It conſiſts at preſent of four members; and the king himſelf is Preſident. There is no Great Chancellor at this time. Under the Supreme College there are two Chanceries, namely,

1. The *Daniſh* Chancery, which was inſtituted on its preſent footing in 1660, and conſiſts of a Protonotary, a Maſter of Requeſts, ſeveral other Secretaries one of which is a feudal Secretary, two Chancery Solicitors, Notaries, Regiſters, *&c.* In this Chancery all petitions for places in the Courts of judicature in *Denmark* and *Norway*, as alſo for eccleſiaſtic and civil employments,

* The *Danes* have no great reaſon to revere the memory of *Frederick* III. who acquired abſolute power at the Expence of his ſubjects Liberty, though the Author here ſpeaks of this fatal change in their form of Government, and of the happy times that ſucceeded it, in too favourable terms.

&c.

&c. are preſented. The Protonotary together with the principal Secretaries, and two other perſons, as aſſiſtants, conſtitute a Chancery-College.

2. The *German* Chancery, which was inſtituted in 1688, and conſiſts of a Protonotary, a Chancery Sollicitor, and ſeveral Secretaries. All petitions relating to the affairs of *Sleſwick*, *Holſtein*, and *Oldenburg* are given into this Court. It alſo carries on the correſpondence by diſpatches, with foreign Courts and Ambaſſadors; and all treaties and alliances concluded with foreign powers, are diſpatched by this College. The members of the weekly Chancery-Seſſion are the Protonotary, ſome other Secretaries, and two foreigners, as aſſiſtants.

The other Colleges are as follows:

1. The *Military Chancery for the land ſervice*, which conſiſts of a Protonotary, a keeper of the Archives, or Recorder, a Chancery-Sollicitor, ſeveral Chancery clerks, or Curſitors, notaries, *&c.* This College has the care of the military promotions, regulations in the army, and in general the direction of whatever relates to war. But the peculiar military oeconomy or management is committed to the *General Commiſſion* for the land ſervice, whoſe province it is to provide for the king's military forces by land. Theſe Commiſſioners pay, maintain, and recruit the army, fill the magazines, keep the fortifications in repair, and have the care of the artillery in the two Kingdoms, the Dutchies, and the Counties. To this College are ſubject all General Commiſſaries of war, all officers that have the care of proviſions, arſenals, and building materials; and magiſtrates, and other civil officers are under their juriſdiction, as far as they have any concern in the marching and quartering of the army. The money expended by this College is iſſued out by the Deputies of the Finances; and it is immediately under the king's command. The officers of this College are, a Book-keeper, three Commiſſary-clerks, who belong to three diſtinct offices, namely, the *Daniſh*, *Norwegian*, and *German* office; and a Regiſter.

2. The *military Chancery for the ſea-ſervice*, which conſiſts of a Protonotary and Chancery-Sollicitor, and has the care of the naval promotions, and likewiſe the ordering or directing what concerns the Marine and harbours. But the peculiar management of naval affairs is under the General *Marine Commiſſion*, which has been united with the College of Admiralty ſince the year 1746. The Admiralty-college was inſtituted in 1660, and is to be conſidered partly as a College, as it has the command over the fleet, and every thing relating to it, and partly as a ſuperior court of judicature; ſince all the ſentences paſſed by the inferior court of admiralty, come before this Court. The inferior Court of admiralty has power over all civil and military ſubaltern officers in the Navy. The members of the Admiralty-college, together with the civil Aſſeſſor, ſit in the high court of Admiralty. The *Marine Commiſſion* provides neceſſaries for building ſhips, and every thing that relates to the fleet.

3. The *Rent-Chamber* or Treaſury, and the *College for the Finances.* Theſe were formerly neither ſo important, nor ſo well regulated as they are at preſent. *Frederick* IV. firſt inſtituted the Treaſury; for he aboliſhed the College of Treaſurers, and in their room appointed a ſingle Treaſurer and Vice-Treaſurer. He alſo introduced the *College for the Finances*, which conſiſts of Deputies for the Finances, and Commiſſioners of the College of Finances. The Deputies, indeed, in concert with the Commiſſioners, direct all affairs relating to the Finances; but the former have the ſole management of the public money, make diſburſements according to the ſtate of the ſpecie or ready money in the treaſury, and ſubſcribe all contracts, *&c.* The Commiſſioners are intruſted with the care of every thing elſe that relates to the revenues, and of the impoſts in money and corn. They likewiſe farm the public revenues, and have the inſpection of every thing that may tend to the improvement or augmentation of them. They alſo ſubſcribe all repreſentations, which the Chamber makes to the king, *&c.* The Chamber of Finances has two Chanceries; namely, the *Daniſh* or Northern, which has a Secretary and two Agents; and the *German* Chancery, which conſiſts of a Secretary and an Agent. The *Chamber Court of judicature* is provided with a Juſticiary and an Agent; who are to manage the judicial proceedings of the Chamber. The correſpondence of the *Chamber-college* is carried on, and the accompts of the Collectors are inſpected and adjuſted by 17 *Clerks of the revenues.* Theſe clerks have their reſpective departments and offices, which include all the king's dominions; namely, ſeven offices and as many clerks for *Denmark*, five for *Norway*, and five for the *German* dominions: There is alſo an Agent in every one of theſe offices. This being premiſed, I ſhall treat more particularly of his *Daniſh* Majeſty's revenues in §. 21.

4. The *General College for the improvement of manufactures and commerce* was inſtituted *December* 30, 1735, and conſiſts of Deputies and Commiſſioners for the domeſtic and commercial departments, and of a *Daniſh* and *German* Secretary. This College has the direction of every thing that may promote the encreaſe of domeſtic trade, manufactures, fiſheries, and all new foundations or eſtabliſhments. By virtue of a royal ordinance iſſued in the year 1753, every Deputy has his particular department; but is under the controll or check of the *General College.*

5. The *General Eccleſiaſtical College of Inſpection* was inſtituted by *Chriſtian* VI. in the year 1737. It ordinarily conſiſts of ſix members, namely, three laymen and as many Divines, who are all called *General Eccleſiaſtical Inſpectors.* The third Lay Inſpector is alſo Secretary of the College, and has one or two Secretaries or Curſitors under him. This College has the general direction of all eccleſiaſtical affairs in *Denmark* and *Norway*, and inſpects into the behaviour of the clergy and the ſtate of the Univerſities and Schools, in their juriſdiction; paſs their cenſure on all theological treatiſes and books

books on religious controverſies. This college is alſo under the king's immediate juriſdiction.

6. The ſixth and laſt College is that of the *General Poſt-office*, which has the direction of the poſts in the two kingdoms, the Dutchies, and Counties; audits the accounts of the Poſt-maſters, and in general inſpects into their conduct. This Office has its Directors, Treaſuries, and *Reviſion Chamber*. They make their repreſentations to the king by the Chanceries.

§. 20. Every *Stifts-Amt*, *i. e.* Dioceſe or General Government, has its *Stifts-Amtmann* or General Governor, who always is a perſon of diſtinction, and generally a knight of one of the Orders. His power is very great, and extends to ſpiritual as well as temporal and judicial matters. He has authority likewiſe over the revenues, towns and country within his proper juriſdiction. Under the *Stifts-Amtmann* are the *Amtmanner*, *i. e.* Prefects, who are alſo noblemen and knights of ſome Order, or at leaſt perſons of diſtinction. The Prefects have no power in the towns within their juriſdiction, for it extends only to the open Country: They alſo inſpect into judicial affairs and the revenues. In every *Amt* or Prefecture there is a Collector, who is immediately ſubject to the *Rent Chamber* at *Copenhagen*. Theſe are ſtiled either Sollicitors or Secretaries; but they have no manner of concern with judicial affairs. The civil government in the cities and great towns is lodged in a *Burgomaſter* and council; but in ſmaller towns in the *Byevogt*, or king's Headborough. Many towns have a royal Preſident beſides, and ſeveral of them have the right of holding courts of juſtice; ſo that their ſentence is not confirmed by the common Provincial court, but is referred directly to the *Supreme College* at *Copenhagen*.

The *Codex Chriſtianeus*, or the body of *Daniſh* Laws, which excellent work was publiſhed in 1683 by *Chriſtian* V. is the only law obſerved in *Denmark*, and no foreign laws are of any force there.

Beſides the Town-courts of judicature, and thoſe held by the nobility in their own manors, there are three other Courts; *viz.* the *Ting-Court*, *Land-Court*, and the *Supreme Tribunal*. The *Ting-Court* is commonly the court before which cauſes are firſt brought, as well in towns as in the Country; and every *Herred*, *(Nomarchia*, *Prepoſitura*, *Provincia minor)* or ſmall diſtrict conſiſting of 40 or 50 villages or hamlets, has its Head-borough or Judge, and a Secretary. Eight peaſants, who are called the *Stockemanner*, aſſiſt at theſe courts as witneſſes. Theſe courts are held weekly, and in the trial of criminal cauſes, the Headborough of the *Herred* or diſtrict is aſſiſted by the ſaid *Stockemanner* or *Medomſmanner*. From this inferior Court an appeal lies to the *Land* or *Provincial* Court, or Aſſizes, which commonly conſiſts of two judges called *Landdommere*, and a Secretary. Such a Provincial Court is held once every month in *Seeland* at *Ringſtedt*, in *Funen* at *Odenſe*, in *Jutland* at *Wiborg*, and in *Laaland* at *Marieboe*. The laſt

reſort, and from which lies no appeal, is the *Supreme Tribunal* at *Copenhagen*, which is held almoſt all the year round at the place where the king reſides, and is opened by the king in perſon every year, about the beginning of *March*. As to the judicial proceedings in the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, an account will be given of them in their proper place.

§. 21. The royal Revenues ariſe,

Firſt, from the taxes paid by the *Farming-Peaſants* for *odels* or freeholds, and contributions of proviſions, in *Norway*; from duties on corn, oxen, and bacon in *Denmark*; and from redeemed eſtates, *&c.*

Secondly, from the cuſtoms, particularly thoſe of the *Sound*, *Kolding*, and *Norway*. A toll in paſſing from the *Northern Ocean* into the Eaſt Sea or *Baltic*, and *vice verſâ*, is paid in all theſe *Straits*, *viz.* at *Helſingoer*, *Nyborg*, and *Fridericia*; but the principal cuſtomhouſe is at *Helſingoer*, in the *Oereſund* or *Sound*. For ſeveral years paſt between 4 and 5000 ſhips have ſailed annually through the *Sound*; but in 1752, above 6000 ſhips, a number unheard of before, paſſed through theſe Straits. In general, the toll is on an equal footing with reſpect to all nations, except the *Hamburgers*, who are obliged to pay more than others for paſſing through the *Sound*. The *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *Swediſh*, and *French* ſhips are not ſearched, when they are provided with proper paſſes, according to treaties: They alſo pay down only one *per cent.* for ſuch goods as are not ſpecified in the Tariff. All other nations are obliged to pay one and a quarter *per cent.* and ſubmit to be ſearched; and, if they are unprovided with particular papers, they muſt pay a *Roſenobel*, or two, beſides. With regard to the *Hanſe-towns*, that lie on the *Baltic*, there is a great variety in the toll they pay; for almoſt every one of thoſe towns is treated with in particular. It muſt be obſerved, in general, that the tolls are now either farmed out, or collected by officers appointed for that purpoſe; and that there are controllers appointed, by the king, over the farmers and officers.

Thirdly, from the exciſe and conſumption.

Fourthly, from fines, the poſt-office, diſpenſations and ſtampt paper. The revenues ariſing from the poſt-office are appropriated for penſions, and for carrying on the foreign miſſions.

Fifthly, From the capitation, or Poll-tax, which, however, is never impoſed but upon extraordinary occaſions.

Laſtly, from the portion of tithes which formerly belonged to the biſhops, but after the Reformation were annexed to the Crown; hence they are called the royal tithes. In the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, and his majeſty's *German* dominions, the king's revenues ariſe either from thoſe abovementioned, or from additional Sources: They amount to 6,000,000 of Rix-dollars.

§. 22. The king's military forces in the kingdom of *Denmark*, the Dutchies, and Counties, conſiſt of the horſe life-guards; 1 regiment of Cuiraſſier-

Cuiraſſier-guards, and 1 regiment of Dragoon-guards; 9 other regiments of Cuiraſſiers; 2 regiments of foot life-guards, one of which conſiſts entirely of Grenadiers, and is called the *Grenadier corps*; the King's own regiment, the Queen's regiment, and the Prince-royal's own regiment; beſides 9 regiments of infantry enliſted, 7 national regiments of infantry, and a regiment for garriſons. In *Norway* there are 5 national regiments of Cavalry, 2 enliſted, and 13 national regiments of Infantry, and the *Skielober*, or light troops, conſiſting of 5 or 6 hundred men. An enliſted regiment of cavalry conſiſts of 8, and an enliſted regiment of infantry of 12 companies; but the National regiments are more complete than the enliſted. The Artillery is not included in the above account. The King of *Denmark*'s whole military force amounts to 59,289 men.

§. 23. The *Danes* have from ancient times, and particularly ſince the time of *Chriſtian* IV. been very powerful and ſucceſsful at Sea. *Chriſtian* V. and *Frederick* IV. have performed great exploits with the *Daniſh* fleet. It conſiſts of 34 ſhips of the Line, 16 frigats, and a number of gallies, which uſually amount to 50. Since the year 1755, the ſeamen which are in conſtant pay conſiſt of 4 diviſions: Each diviſion contains 10 companies, with a company of artillery; and they amount all together to 4400 men. The number of regiſtered ſeamen, with which the fleet may be manned upon an emergency, is about 24,000; which in *Denmark* are diſtributed in ſix diſtricts, and in as many in *Norway*, being under the direction of certain officers appointed for that purpoſe. *Prahmen* or floating Blockhouſes are uſed, upon occaſion, with great ſucceſs in the *Baltic*. The fleet is laid up at *Copenhagen*; and the naval ſtores and materials for ſhipbuilding are in great plenty on the old and new *Holm*, and in the Magazine which is kept in very regular order. But of this and other edifices belonging to the Navy, more will be ſaid in the account of *Copenhagen*. There is alſo a company of Sea-Cadets in *Denmark*, which was inſtituted by *Frederick* IV. in the year 1701.

THE

DANISH ISLANDS:

AND FIRST,

The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

SEELAND.

THIS *Stifts-amt* or Dioceſe is the firſt in order, and compriſes, beſides the iſland of *Seeland*, the iſlands *Amack*, *Moen*, *Bornholm*, *Chriſtianſoe*, *Samſoe* in the *Cattegat*, and other ſmaller iſlands.

The Iſland of SEELAND.

Seeland or *Zeeland* (*Seelandia*) in Daniſh *Saland*, or *Sialland*, is encompaſſed by the great *Belt*, the *Baltic* Sea, the *Sound*, and the *Cattegat*. Its name, according to ſome, ſignifies a country abounding with corn, and fit for tillage. Others derive it from *Sio*, the Sea (for, in the old *Iſlandiſh* monuments it is called *Sioland*), and are of opinion that it denotes a maritime country, or an iſland. *Seeland* is the largeſt of all the *Daniſh* iſlands, being 16 or 17 geographical miles * in length, and from 13 to 14 in breadth. The ſoil is very fertile, and produces extraordinary fine barley, of which good malt is made; and a great quantity of the latter is exported from this iſland. It alſo yields plentiful crops of fine oats; but the rye that grows here is ſufficient only for home conſumption. Here are fertile meadows of a beautiful verdure, and woods of oak and beach; eſpecially in the Prefectures of *Frederickſburg*, *Wordingburg*, *Soroe*, and *Anderſkow:* But in the country lying between *Copenhagen* and *Roſchild*, and between the former and *Kioge*, there are no woods to be ſeen: Hence the inhabitants of theſe parts chiefly uſe turf for fuel. The lakes in this iſland are, *Tirſoe*, which lies a few miles ſouth of *Kallundborg*, the *Vinſtruper*-lake, between *Soroe* and *Neſtwed*, the three lakes near *Soroe*, *&c.* Some of theſe lakes are pretty large; and they are all well ſtocked with fiſh. The

* The Author does not ſpecify what miles he reckons by in this and ſeveral other places in this work, I render them geographical or *German* miles, which I preſume he means by miles in general.

rivers,

rivers, which are in every part of *Seeland*, abound alſo in fiſh. The largeſt of theſe riſes above *Ringſtedt*, and falls into a bay of the *Baltic* below *Neſtwed*. The largeſt bay is that of *Iſefiord*, which runs out of the *Cattegat* into the land and divides into two arms, one of which extends to *Holbeck*, the other to *Roſchild*. *Copenhagen* is the beſt harbour in *Seeland*; and next to that, the port of *Kallundborg*. In the Dioceſe or Government of *Seeland*, excluſive of *Copenhagen*, the number of burials amounts annually to about 6000. The whole iſland is divided into ſixteen *Amts*, or Prefectures, which are,

I. The Prefecture of COPENHAGEN, which conſiſts of three *Herreds* or diſtricts, *viz.* 1. The *Herred* of *Sochelund*, in which there are twelve churches. 2. The *Herred* of *Oelſtyke*, containing eight churches. 3. The *Herred* of *Smorum*, containing fourteen churches.

Within this Prefecture are the following places of note.

COPENHAGEN, which is the place where the court reſides, and the Capital of the kingdom of *Denmark*. This city is called in *Daniſh*, *Kiobenhavn*, anciently, *Kiobmandſhavn*, i. e. the *Merchants harbour*, on account of its beautiful harbour and commodious ſituation for trade, and in *Latin* HAFNIA. It lies on the *Baltic* or *Eaſt-Sea*, in 55°, 40′, 59″ North Latitude, about five geographical miles from *Oereſund* or the *Sound*. Its ſituation is marſhy and low; but on the land ſide there are ſeveral beautiful lakes, which furniſh the inhabitants with plenty of freſh water. The adjacent country, or *environs*, is very pleaſant; and directly oppoſite to the city lies the fertile iſland of *Amack*, which forms the harbour: But this iſland ſhall be more fully deſcribed in its proper place. The city makes a magnificent appearance at a diſtance, and extends, from the Weſt-gate to the *Norway*-gate in the citadel, 4140 *Seeland* ells * in length, and from the North-gate to the *Amack*-gate it is 3120 ells in breadth, ſo that its circuit muſt be 12,600 ells, or a geographical mile and 600 ells. The *Gother-ſtreet*, which runs in a ſtrait line acroſs the whole city, and divides the *Old* from the *New Town*, is above 4200 feet long, the breadth of the king's market and the area about the new harbour included. This metropolis contains 4 royal caſtles, 10 pariſh and 9 other churches; a conſiderable number of public and private palaces, above 4000 *Burgher*'s houſes, ſeveral of which are inhabited by 10 or more families; 11 markets and public places, areas, or ſquares, 186 ſtreets, and 100,000 Inhabitants. Since the year 1746, the annual liſt of births has amounted, at leaſt, to 2592, and in ſome years to 2813. During the ſame period the number of bur ials at the loweſt, has amounted annually to 2594, and, at the higheſt, to 3386, without including the ſickly

* It were to be wiſhed the Author had made uſe of ſome meaſure better known than the *Seeland* ell; or had acquainted the reader with the exact length of it, as ells vary in every country.

year

year 1750, when the burials amounted to 4317. *C. Bartholin*, and *R. S. Henrici*, have demonſtrated the ſalubrity of the air at *Copenhagen* in particular diſſertations wrote on that ſubject. This city is divided into three principal parts, *viz. Old-Copenhagen*, *New-Copenhagen*, and *Chriſtianshafen*. The two laſt being more modern than the firſt, are laid out in broad ſtreets running in a ſtrait line. In *Old-Copenhagen*, indeed, moſt of the ſtreets, ſince the laſt great fire, are of a ſufficient breadth; but the old windings could not entirely be avoided. The expence the city is at in keeping the ſtreets clean amounts yearly to 10 or 12,000 Rix-dollars. In the night the city is illuminated with lanthorns. The houſes in the principal ſtreets and areas are almoſt entirely built with brick; but in the lanes moſt of the buildings are of timber: However, they make a fine appearance in general; ſo that *Copenhagen* may be looked upon as one of the moſt beautiful and magnificent cities in *Europe*. In ſome parts of the city there are deep canals, into which large ſhips may enter, and, to the great conveniency of ſea-faring and trading people, may lade and unlade quite cloſe to the houſes and warehouſes. Beſides the above three general diviſions, the city is divided into 12 Quarters, and the Burghers into as many Companies, which have all their particular Colours. It is to be obſerved, that the Weſt and Eaſt Quarter of St. *Anne* make only one Company; and that the Fire-Company conſtitutes the twelfth. Of theſe I come now to ſpeak more particularly.

The *Old Town*, conſiſts of the following Quarters, *viz.*

1. The North Quarter, the places of note in which are,

The *German* church, dedicated to St. *Peter*, which at the time of the Reformation, was the principal pariſh-church. It was afterwards converted into a foundery; but in 1585 it was given to the *Germans*, and made a Pariſh-church again in 1618. The damage this church ſuſtained in the great fire, was ſoon repaired. The ſtructure is very old, and of a middling ſize.

The *Walkendorf* College in *Peter*'s ſtreet, which was formerly a *Carmelite* monaſtery, but was by the Lord Steward *Chriſtopher Walkendorf* converted into a College for 16 ſtudents, in the year 1595. Every one of theſe ſtudents enjoys a yearly penſion of 30 Rix-dollars in money.

2. The Weſt quarter, in which place of note are,

The Hay-market.

The great *Wartow*-hoſpital, one of the nobleſt foundations for the poor in the city. This foundation is very ancient; but the edifice is new, and very ſpacious; and the endowment is ſo conſiderable, that ſome hundreds may be maintained in this hoſpital. It contains at preſent above 300 beds for the ſick and poor; and every one of them, beſides his lodging *gratis*, has weekly half a Rix-dollar allowed him. A ſmall, commodious, neat church,

church, ſtands cloſe to the hoſpital, which is ſo contrived, that the ſick and bed-ridden may hear divine ſervice, and ſermons in their beds.

The *Place* or area near the water-engine, as it is called.

The City-Priſon, called the *Schlieſſerey*, which has its particular church.

The Orphan-houſe, which takes up one entire ſide of the *New-market*, and is a conſiderable ornament to the *Place*, or ſquare. Formerly there ſtood on this area a palace belonging to the family of the *Counts of Friis*, which *Chriſtian* V. purchaſed, and, in 1691, turned into an Academy, which was opened the year following: But, in the year 1712, it was converted into a military ſchool for the Land-Cadets. As theſe Cadets were afterwards removed to the edifice called the *Opera-houſe*, this ſtructure was rebuilt, and appropriated for the education of orphans. After this the late great fire deſtroyed the new edifice before it was quite finiſhed; and the preſent large building was begun in 1731, and finiſhed in 1734. In this Orphan-houſe 100 poor children, namely, 60 boys and 40 girls, have been heretofore maintained, educated, and inſtructed; but at preſent the number is encreaſed to 108. A particular Church, Diſpenſary, bookſeller's ſhop, printing-houſe, and Library belong to this foundation. In this edifice alſo two colleges hold their ordinary meetings, namely, the *General Eccleſiaſtical College of Inſpection*, and the *Collegium de Curſu Evangelii promovendo*.

The Council-houſe, which is a new ſtructure and ſtands quite detached from other buildings. It alſo ſeparates the *Old* from the *New Market*. In the *Old Market* is a fine fountain, which was begun in the year 1634; and in the *New*, there is a walled place for the execution of malefactors.

The Royal Palace, which is ſituated near the citadel of *Chriſtianſburg*. Here formerly ſtood the *Wigand*-Houſe, which was ſo called from the owner, a conſiderable merchant, who likewiſe built the beſt part of the adjoining ſtreet, which is alſo called by his name. When *Frederick* IV. began to rebuild the old palace, he bought this houſe for the Prince Royal, for whoſe reſidence it was fitted up and enlarged; and in 1743 and 1744 it was embelliſhed with a very elegant new front.

The Weſt Gate, which was rebuilt in 1668 by *Frederick* III. This is more frequented than any of the other City Gates.

3. The Clothiers Quarter, in which are the following places of note.

St. *Mary*'s Church. This is the Collegiate Church, and was rebuilt from the foundation after the great fire. Here the Biſhops of both kingdoms are uſually conſecrated. The tower of this church is 380 feet high, and has a fine ring of bells in it. This is reckoned the nobleſt tower in *Copenhagen*, and ſtands on the higheſt ſpot in the whole city.

The Grammar-School, which conſiſts of five claſſes or forms.

The Univerſity. King *Erich* of *Pomerania* firſt obtained of Pope *Martin* V. by a bull, the liberty of erecting an Univerſity in his kingdom. But as

this deſign proved abortive, an Univerſity was afterwards founded by *Chriſtian* I. with the conſent of Pope *Sextus* V. in the year 1478, which was liberally endowed by the ſucceeding kings of *Denmark*. *Chriſtian* III. reſtored the Univerſity from its decaying condition, and his Succeſſors greatly improved it; but it is chiefly indebted to *Chriſtian* VI. for its preſent flouriſhing ſtate. The Univerſity Building includes the *Royal Community*, or the *Cloiſter* in which formerly 100 poor Students had two meals a day provided for them; but, at preſent, they receive a certain penſion in lieu of proviſion. In this Edifice they hold their daily diſputations. It likewiſe compriſes the Rector's houſe and other buildings, with the Conſiſtory, the Auditories or halls, *&c.* To the Univerſity alſo belong four ſpacious colleges, which are well endowed for the maintenance of the young ſtudents *gratis*. The *Walkendorf*-college has been mentioned already in the North Quarter. The other three are,

The *Regency*, or the Royal College, which *Chriſtian* IV. founded, in 1618, and allotted for 120 Students; but at preſent not above 100 ſtudents reſide in it. It is governed by a Provoſt and ſeveral Inſpectors.

The *Collegium Elerſianum*, which was founded by *George Elers* for 16 Students, who endowed it by will with 30,000 Rixdollars.

The *Borrichian College*, otherwiſe called *Collegium Mediceum*, is the moſt elegant and beſt endowed of all the private foundations. The celebrated and learned *Olaus Borrichius* erected this college in 1689 for 16 *Daniſh* and *Norwegian* Students. Every Student has apartments *gratis* for five years, and an annual penſion of 60 Rixdollars. The *Library*, and the Cabinet of Curioſities which joined to this college were burnt down in 1728, but have been ſince, in ſome meaſure, reſtored.

The Coal-market.

The North Gate, which is the moſt elegant of all the gates, and was erected in 1671, and the *Friderichsburg* or *Schieden* market are alſo in this Quarter.

4. The Freemen's Quarters, in which are

The *Gray Friars* Market, or *Uhlefeld's-Place*, where formerly ſtood the palace of Count *Uhlefeld*; and after that palace was razed to the ground a ſtone monument of infamy, in the form of a pyramid, was erected on the ſpot, as appears by the inſcription on the four ſides of it.

The *Amack-market*, where the peaſants of the iſle of *Amack* expoſe their goods to ſale.

The church of the Holy Ghoſt, or rather the church of the *Holy Gueſts*, which derives its name from a large hoſpital or *Gueſt-houſe*, that formerly ſtood near it, and was converted into a Houſe of Correction by *Chriſtian* IV. This Church was rebuilt after the fire of 1728.

5. *Snarren*'s-Quarter.

6. The *Strand*-Quarter, in which the places of note are

The

The magnificent new royal Palace of *Chriſtiansburg*. Several old mean buildings formerly ſtood on the ſpot where this palace is erected. In 1168 the celebrated Biſhop *Abſolon* built a caſtle or palace in this place, which, after his family name, he called *Axel-houſe*. This caſtle was afterwards inhabited and improved by the Kings of *Denmark*. *Chriſtian* III. *Chriſtian* IV. and *Frederick* IV. enlarged and embelliſhed it. However, though it was very irregularly built, *Chriſtian* VI. cauſed the whole building, and the adjoining Burghers houſes which had been purchaſed, to be pulled down in 1731; and the following year laid the foundation of the preſent ſpacious and magnificent palace, which was finiſhed in the year 1740. The firſt floor is called the *Ladies Story*, becauſe moſt of the Ladies and Gentlemen belonging to the court, who are in waiting, have their apartments there. The royal treaſury and private caſh office are alſo kept here; and in other apartments the king's Court of juſtice, and the Burghers-court are held. The office of the General Superintendence of the Buildings has alſo an apartment in this ſtory. In the ſecond or *Royal Story*, the apartments are adorned with all the magnificence and elegance imaginable. The Supreme Court of Judicature is alſo held in this ſtory. The *Prince Royal's Story* is ſo called, becauſe his Highneſs and the princeſſes royal have their apartments in it, which are extremely elegant and well contrived. The royal chapel in the palace is very beautiful and magnificent within. In ſhort, the whole palace makes a noble appearance, and yields a moſt enchanting proſpect every way. The parade is in the area or court of the old palace.

The Chancery joins with the Palace by means of a *Corridor*, or covered gallery, and is a very magnificent ſtructure: It was erected by *Frederick* IV. In the loweſt ſtory, which is vaulted, the archives of the kingdom are kept. In the ſecond ſtory is the apartment where the king's privy Council meet. In this ſtory alſo the Chanceries of both kingdoms, and of the *German* dominions, the military Colleges, and the College of the Finances generally meet. The third ſtory is for the moſt part occupied by the offices and officers belonging to the Rent-Chamber, or Treaſury.

The Edifice, in the firſt ſtory of which is the Arſenal; and in the ſecond, the king's library, which is above 200 feet long, and contains about 60 or 70,000 volumes, is alſo in this Quarter. The arrangement of the books in this library reſembles that of the *Biblioteca della Minerva* at *Rome*. In the third are the royal Cabinet of Curioſities, the picture-gallery, and the cabinet of medals; and in the fourth ſtory is the cabinet of models.

The magazine for Proviſions.

The Poſt Office.

The Exchange, which is a grand edifice in the Gothic taſte. This ſtructure is 406 feet in length, 66½ in breadth, and, for the greateſt part, was built in the year 1624 by *Chriſtian* IV. The loweſt ſtory is laid out

in ware-houſes, which are very commodious for the merchants; for, on both ſides of the Exchange, there are canals, where the ſhips may lie cloſe to the ware-houſes, ſo that the goods may be commodiouſly laded or unladed from them. In the ſecond ſtory, in the north ſide, is the place where the merchants uſually meet. In the middle, and down the whole length, on both ſides, is a range of ſhops; and in one wing of the ſouth ſide is the Royal Bank, and in the other the Royal Magazine, where moſt of the cloths, ſilks, ſtuffs, *&c.* which are made in the City, are depoſited, and from thence are ſold in the groſs to merchants and dealers.

The fiſh-market lies alſo in this quarter.

7. The *Roſenburg*-Quarter, in which the places of note are,

Trinity-Church, which *Chriſtian* IV. cauſed to be built in 1637 for the benefit of the Students only; but, in 1683, it was made a pariſh church. It is commonly called the *Round Church* on account of its round tower. The arched roof of it, which is pretty high, is ſupported by two rows of octangular pillars, which are extremely ſlender, ſo that the church ſeems to be a very light building. This edifice ſuffered leſs than the other churches in the great fire in 1728, and was ſoon repaired. The greateſt loſs hereabouts was the noble collection of books belonging to the Univerſity, which were kept in a large room over the arched roof of this church. This library was remarkable for the great number of books and curious manuſcripts it contained; but it was entirely deſtroyed by the fire. However, a new library has been ſince collected, in which there are ſeveral very valuable manuſcripts relating to the Northern Hiſtory. The tower of this church is a maſter-piece in its kind, and was deſigned by the celebrated aſtronomer *Chriſtian Logomontan*. It is round, 115 feet in height, and 54 feet in thickneſs, being flat on the top and ſurrounded with an iron balluſtrade. The aſcent is ſpiral, and ſo ſpacious and eaſy, that a coach and horſes may go up and come down again with eaſe; which experiment was tried by *Peter the Great*, in 1716. This tower is deſigned for an obſervatory. The curious aſtronomical and mathematical inſtruments, invented by *Tycho Brahe*, *Olaus Romer* and others, which were kept here, were all conſumed by the great fire in 1728. The large, valuable celeſtial globe was the moſt remarkable thing in this obſervatory, being one of the moſt curious inſtruments conſtructed by *Tycho de Brahe*. This globe, after that great aſtronomer was obliged to fly from thence, was brought from the iſland of *Hueen*, was carried to *Denmark*, and from thence to *Prague* in *Bohemia*. From *Prague* it was carried to *Benatica*, from *Benatica* again to *Prague*; from thence it was conveyed to *Neiſſe* in *Sileſia*; and, in 1632, it fell into the hands of Prince *Ulrick* of *Denmark*, at the plundering of that town, and was brought to *Denmark* a ſecond time, and depoſited at firſt in the hall of the Academy. It was afterwards removed to the Round Tower, where it remained till it was conſumed to aſhes. This extraordinary globe coſt 5000 Rixdollars.

After

After the fire *Chriſtian* VI. made a preſent to the library of a great number of valuable books, and was at the expence of procuring the moſt curious and valuable mathematical and aſtronomical inſtruments to ſupply the place of thoſe that were burnt. This collection has been ſince conſiderably increaſed by preſents of books, *&c.* and is ſtill kept over *Trinity* Church: it is open five days in the week for the benefit of the Curious. On the tower there is to be ſeen a ſemi-hieroglyphical inſcription, the meaning of which is as follows:

Doctrinam & juſtitiam dirige, Jehova, in corde coronati Chriſtiani quarti. 1642.

The church of the Reformed, or *Calviniſts*, in which the miniſters preach in *French* and high *Dutch*, is a ſmall neat edifice.

8. The Manufacturers Quarter.

9. The Eaſt Quarter, in which the places of note are,

The Church of St. *Nicholas*, which is the largeſt in the city, next to St. *Mary*'s, and the beſt ornamented both inſide and outſide. It was finiſhed in 1517, and the roof is covered with copper. The tower was blown down, in 1628, by a violent ſtorm; but was rebuilt in three years, namely, from 1663 to 1666: It is the higheſt and moſt elegantly built in *Copenhagen*, excepting that of St. *Mary*'s. There are ſeveral curious monumental inſcriptions in this Church.

The *Bremer Holms-Church*, which is alſo called the Admiralty-Church; for it was at firſt allotted for the uſe of the perſons, belonging to the navy; but afterwards a large congregation of Burghers was added to them. It was firſt built in 1601, and altered into the form of a croſs in 1640.

The General Commiſſion-office, which is a large edifice, and was erected in 1704, by *Frederic* IV. Here the united colleges of the Admiralty and General-Commiſſion meet. Beſides this ſtructure, the following edifices alſo belong to the naval department, *viz.* the *Old* or *Bremer-Holm*, and the *New-Holm*, where the naval ſtores, *&c.* are depoſited, and the ſlaves were formerly confined: But the latter, now, are diſtributed in the citadel, and *Stockhaus* or priſon.

Chriſtanſholm, where the Naval arſenal is, which far exceeds that of *Venice*. Here the royal fleet uſually lies.

The *New Town* conſiſts of two Quarters,

1. St. *Ann*'s *Eaſt*-Quarter, in which are,

Charlottenburg, which is a pretty large regular ſtructure, and commodiouſly built. It was begun in 1672, and completed in the ſucceeding years; it derives its name from queen *Charlotta Amelia*, conſort of *Chriſtian* V. The ſituation of this caſtle or palace is extremely pleaſant, as its principal front faces the area, called the king's *New-market*, which is embelliſhed

with an equeſtrian ſtatue of *Chriſtian* V. of lead, gilt, on an elegant pedeſtal. This ſtatue is bigger than the life, and was erected in 1688: It was caſt by *L'Amoreux*, in 1681. On this beautiful area or ſquare are alſo the great Guard-houſe, the Foundery, and the *Daniſh* Play-houſe.

The Naval-hoſpital, or *Quetſch-haus*.

The *Lord of Zebaoth*, or the Garriſon's Church, which was built in 1704.

The *Frederickſtadt* is the ſpot where the *Amalienburg* palace formerly ſtood, with its gardens and parade, and is adorned with ſeveral elegant new palaces.

Frederick's Church, which now ſtands on the ſpot where the princeſs *Charlotta Amelia*'s gardens were formerly laid out. This church is built in imitation of St. *Peter*'s at *Rome*.

The grand Academy of the Royal Cadets. This ſtructure *Frederic* IV. firſt built for an Opera-houſe, but, in 1720, he aſſigned it for the Land-Cadets; and five or ſix years after, his majeſty removed the company of Sea-Cadets to this edifice. Each company has its ſeparate apartments and exerciſing rooms. Theſe young men are not only ſupplied with lodging, clothing, fire and candles, and a monthly penſion ſufficient to find them diet; but are alſo inſtructed at the king's expence in all the ſciences, by able maſters appointed for that purpoſe. Each company is under the inſpection of its proper officer, who likewiſe lives in the Academy. Theſe two companies are, as it were, the nurſery for the army and navy.

The General-hoſpital, as it is called.

The Toll-booth, or Cuſtom-houſe.

2. St. *Ann*'s *Weſt*-Quarter, in which the moſt remarkable place is,

The Royal Palace called *Roſenburg*. This is a ſmall edifice, and was erected in 1604, by *Chriſtian* IV. It is built in the Semi-Gothic taſte; however, it is a grand ſtructure, and adorned with one large and two ſmall towers. It is ſurrounded with a ditch and a ſort of fortification, and has its own Commanding-officer; but the guard is ſent hither from the garriſon of *Copenhagen*, being daily relieved. The adjoining gardens are very extenſive, and embelliſhed with a great number of ornaments. In ſummer it ſerves the inhabitants for a public walk; and the royal family, at times, continues for ſome days in this palace. The third ſtory of the palace is the moſt remarkable, as it contains a treaſure of ineſtimable value. In the great hall, which is in this ſtory, and takes up the whole extent of the palace, are five pieces of painting by the celebrated *Daniſh* Virtuoſo *Krogk*; twelve valuable pieces of tapeſtry, which repreſent the atchievments of *Chriſtian* V. and three ſilver lions, as big as the life, which are placed round the throne at the king's inauguration. In two cabinets, adjoining to the hall, the old and new *Regalia* and other valuable jewels, and a whole ſervice of gold are kept. Another cabinet contains a collection of all manner

ner of curious and valuable drinking-glaſſes, and other glaſs veſſels. In another apartment the royal throne, which is uſed at the inauguration, ſtands. The Eaſt-gate is alſo in this Quarter.

Chriſtianſhafen conſiſts of one Quarter only. *Chriſtian* IV. founded this town on the iſland of *Amack*, in the year 1618. *Chriſtianſhafen* formerly had its own magiſtrates; but at preſent is under the juriſdiction of thoſe of *Copenhagen*. Remarkable places in this ſuburb are as follows:

St. *Saviour*'s church, which is the moſt magnificent and elegant of all the churches at *Copenhagen*. Its foundation was laid in the year 1682, and the whole edifice was completed in 1694. One may go up to the top of the beautiful ſteeple belonging to this church by a ſpiral aſcent on the outſide of it.

The *German*, or *Frederick*'s Church, the firſt ſtone of which was laid in 1755.

The Orphan-houſe, for the education of 200 poor boys.

The large Houſe of Correction in the market-place, where above 600 looſe perſons of both ſexes, but moſtly women, are confined. It has a neat little church adorned with a tower.

The great *Weſt-India* Sugar-houſe.

The *Eaſt-India* Company's houſe.

The fine Dock-yard, where the ſhips of war are refitted: And laſtly, The *Chriſtianſhafen* gate.

Lutheraniſm is the prevailing religion in *Copenhagen*, and throughout the whole kingdom. The *Calviniſts* have a church to themſelves; the *Papiſts* frequent the chapels of foreign *Roman*-Catholic miniſters, and the *Jews* have their ſynagogues, in this city. The magiſtracy conſiſts of a Preſident, three Burgo-maſters, with Vice-burgo-maſters and common-council-men, and is appointed by the king himſelf. *Frederick* III. in 1658, granted the burghers of *Copenhagen* the honours and privileges of noblemen, which he confirmed in the year 1661; whereupon, with the conſent of the magiſtrates, they choſe two-and-thirty deputies, or repreſentatives, who take care of their intereſts. Beſides the Supreme and other Colleges, Literary Societies, Academies of Painting and Drawing, the *Theatrum Anatomico-chirurgicum*, trading Companies, the Bank, and the Office of Inſurance for ſhips, of which I have treated above in the Introduction to the Deſcription of *Denmark* (§. 18) I ſhall here take notice of the following, *viz.* the Fire and Water-Offices; the Inſurance-Office for Caſh; and the different Manufactories in which ſilk and woolen ſtuffs, cloths, fine linen, gold and ſilver lace, porcelain, *&c.* are made. This City has the ſtaple right or privilege, and is frequented by a great number of ſhips, as appears from what I have obſerved above in §. 12.

Between *Copenhagen* and *Chriſtianſhafen*, there is a high pillar erected in the middle of the water, on which is a ſtatue repreſenting a naked female; and

and on her left ſide ſtands the figure of a ſwan, which extends its long neck behind her back, and bringing its head over the right ſhoulder of the ſtatue, ſticks its bill in the mouth of it. This pillar and ſtatue are looked upon as a ſymbolical repreſentation of the city of *Copenhagen:* They were found during the war in 1611 near *Calmar* in *Sweden*, and from thence conveyed to this city.

That *Copenhagen*, is well fortified by nature and art, the three long and ſevere ſieges which it ſuſtained under *Frederick* I. *Chriſtian* III. and *Frederic* III. are a ſufficient proof: But its fortifications at thoſe periods, compared with its preſent ſtrength, were very inconſiderable. The ſtrong citadel called *Frederickſhafen* was erected between the harbour and the Eaſt-gate in 1663. There is a ſmall church in this citadel for the uſe of the garriſon. The noble harbour of *Copenhagen* is formed by the Straits of *Kalleboe*, between the iſlands *Seeland* and *Amack*.

Laſtly, as to what relates to the hiſtory of this city, it is obſerved, that in the 11th century it was only a mean fiſhing place, and that from a ſmall town it increaſed to a city in 1254. It was only an epiſcopal See till 1443; and in that very year it became the royal ſeat, and from that time the kings of *Denmark* have conſtantly reſided at *Copenhagen*. In the ſame year alſo this city obtained its peculiar charter of privileges, which was renewed in 1581. In 1360 and 1372, it was taken and plundered by the *Vandal* Hanſe-towns; and in the years 1306, 1428, 1523, 1535, 1658 and 1659, it was cloſely beſieged. When the *Swedes* laid ſiege to this city the laſt time, it held out almoſt two years. In 1251, 1425, 1614 and 1619, eccleſiaſtical Synods, and in 1258, 1445, 1533, 1551 and 1660, Diets were held at *Copenhagen*. It has been often viſited with the plague, namely, in the years 1546, 1571, 1583, 1601, 1629, 1637, 1659 and 1711, which ſwept away great numbers of the inhabitants. In 1626, this city was conſiderably enlarged. In the year 1700, it was bombarded by the combined fleets of *Sweden*, *England*, and *Holland*. On the 20th day of *October* 1728, a fire broke out in the evening in a mean houſe not far from the Weſt-gate, which ſpread with ſuch fury and violence, that in eight and forty hours the moſt elegant and greateſt part of the city was conſumed to aſhes. Twenty-four ſtreets, and *Places* or areas, 1650 dwelling-houſes, five churches, the Univerſity Edifice, with the four colleges belonging to it, the Council-houſe, and ſeveral other public buildings were burnt down to the ground. The anniverſary of this fatal accident is obſerved in a religious manner on the 23d of *October:* However, the city has been ſince rebuilt with much greater elegance and beauty.

As *Chriſtianſhafen*, which is a part of *Copenhagen*, lies on the iſland of AMACK, we muſt here alſo take notice of the latter. This iſland is joined to the city, and conſequently to *Seeland*, by means of two bridges. The ſmalleſt of theſe, which, however, is moſt frequented, is called *Knippel-*

bridge;

bridge; but the largeſt has the name of *Long*-bridge. *Amack* is a geographical mile and half in length, and above half a mile in breadth; or according to the common calculation 6000 paces in length, with the breadth in proportion as above. It is quite level, and has no woods, excepting a few thickets. As the ſoil is uncommonly rich and fertile, it is looked upon as the kitchen-garden and ſtore-houſe of the City: For the inhabitants carry twice a week all ſorts of eſculent or garden vegetables, and alſo milk, butter, and cheeſe, in great quantities to the city for ſale. The preſent inhabitants of this iſland were, for the moſt part, invited hither in 1516, from the province of *Water-land* in *North-Holland*, by *Chriſtian* II. at the deſire of *Elizabeth* his queen who was a native of the *Netherlands*. This colony was ſettled in the village of *Maglebye*, to which they gave the name *Hollanderbye*. The whole iſland is peopled by about 800 families; and is divided into two pariſhes.

The firſt, which is the largeſt, includes the weſtern part of the iſland, and is called *Taarnebye*. It contains nine villages, and is inhabited by *Danes*, with a mixture of *Hollanders*.

The ſecond pariſh, which comprehends the eaſt part of the iſland, and was peculiarly allotted for the *Dutch* Colony, is called *Hollanderbye*. To this pariſh belongs the village of *Dragoe*, which has the appearance of a little town, and is inhabited by more than 150 families; which are partly *Danes*, and partly *Hollanders*, and maintain themſelves by navigation, fiſhing, and pilotage.

The dialect of the *Amackers* is a medley of the *Low-Dutch*, *German*, and *Daniſh* languages; on which account their miniſters preach in *Low-Dutch*, as well as *Daniſh*. They have a peculiar mode of dreſs, method of living, manners, *&c.* Their magiſtracy or inferior court conſiſts of one Bailiff or headborough, aſſiſted by four Juſtices. In the ſecond the king's *Amtman* or Prefect, who preſides over the Prefecture of *Copenhagen*, ſits as judge; and laſt of all the Supreme College or Court of Judicature, from which lies no appeal. The inhabitants drive their cattle to paſture for moſt part of the ſummer to a ſmall iſland in the neighbourhood, called *Saltholm*. There are excellent quarries of ſtone for lime and building on this iſland. In *Reſenius*'s *Atlas* there is a map of the iſland of *Amack*.

Frederickſberg is a magnificent royal palace, ſituated on a hill, about half a geographical mile weſt of *Copenhagen*. This ſtructure derives its name from *Frederick* IV. who was the founder of it, and has been ſince greatly enlarged by *Chriſtian* VI. This edifice is very ſpacious and magnificent on every ſide, and has an exceeding fine proſpect. The garden, which lies below the hill is very extenſive, and contains a great number of pleaſant walks, ſeveral groves, a labyrinth, a theatre, a great many ſtatues, fountains, and ſummer-houſes. Here is, in particular, an extraordinary caſcade juſt fronting the palace, but not yet finiſhed. You deſcend from the palace

palace by two flights of broad ſtone ſteps to the garden. The menagery, which is in the garden, is ſtocked with ſeveral uncommon animals, among which are lions, tygers, &c. The orangery, and the yard for pheaſants and falcons are alſo worth ſeeing. From this palace a pleaſant avenue planted with a double row of trees extends about half way to *Copenhagen*.

Sorgenfrey is a ſmall royal palace about a geographical mile and half to the north of *Copenhagen*. This ſeat was built by Count *Charles* of *Alefeld*, at a great expence, and was purchaſed by *Frederick* IV. of the Count of *Holſtein* the Great Chancellor. Afterwards the princeſs royal *Sophia Hedewig* reſided in it; and his preſent majeſty has allotted it for the princeſs dowager of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, who makes it her ſummer reſidence.

Jagersburg is a royal hunting-ſeat, which the preſent king cauſed to be rebuilt and improved. Near this ſeat formerly ſtood the noble palace of *Iſtrup*; but the edifice which now ſtands on the ſpot was built by *Chriſtian* IV. and improved by the ſucceeding kings of *Denmark*. Here the hunting-officers reſide, and this place is the repoſitory for all hunting implements. From hence you come through a ſtraight avenue to

The noble park of *Charlottenlund*, which is ſo called from *Charlottenlund*, the king's pleaſure-houſe, which ſtands in it. At the diſtance of a quarter of a geographical mile from this park lies

The *Jagersburg* park, which is rather a very pleaſant wood or foreſt. It is extenſive, and affords a great deal of game. About the middle of it ſtands a new edifice called the *Hermitage*, which is 30 ells in length, 20 in breadth, and is very elegantly adorned both within and without. In the loweſt ſtory is a curious machine, by means of which the victuals, &c. are conveyed up and down, to and from the king's table in the ſecond ſtory, when his majeſty dines there. From hence, over a ſmall piece of arable land, you come to

Freudenlund, which is a ſmall octagonal edifice, adjoining to which is a pleaſure and kitchen garden. This place formerly belonged to the Count of *Reventlau*, Great Chancellor; but when it fell into the hands of *Frederick* IV. he cauſed all the old buildings to be pulled down, and this pleaſure-houſe to be built on the ſpot.

II. The Prefecture of HIRSCHHOLM, in which the places of note are,

The caſtle of *Hirſchholm*, a royal palace, which lies about a geographical mile from *Freudenlund*. This caſtle was formerly known by the name of *Hiortholm*, and being fortified according to the cuſtom of thoſe times, was a place of conſiderable ſtrength: However, Count *Chriſtopher* of *Oldenburg* beſieged and took it in the year 1535. Nothing remains of the old caſtle at preſent but the name; for it was quite demoliſhed, and the very ſituation of the place has been entirely altered by art. *Chriſtian* VI. took poſſeſſion of it as Prince Royal, and cauſed the foundation of a new edifice to be laid on the ſpot where the old caſtle ſtood; and his queen, after his

acceſſion to the throne, continued the building; the king having made her a preſent of it. In 1737 all the old building was quite pulled down, in order to render the new edifice as regular as it was poſſible; and in 1739 it was finiſhed, though every year ſince new improvements and embelliſhments have been continually made in it. The outſide has a very magnificent appearance; nor is it leſs elegant within. The great hall deſerves particular notice; for it takes up the height of two ſtories, and has a noble fountain in the middle, that throws up a column of water one or two and twenty feet high, which falls down again into a copper baſon. The chapel is elegant and well adorned, and the garden very magnificent, and at the extremity of it, directly oppoſite to the palace, a new beautiful ſummer houſe is erected. On one ſide of the garden is an eminence covered with trees, on which ſtands the *Norway-houſe* as it is called, becauſe it is built in the *Norwegian* taſte. In this caſtle *Chriſtian* VI. died *Auguſt* 6, 1746. The little town of *Hirſcholm*, to which *Chriſtian* VI. in 1739, granted the privileges of a city, lies a little below this caſtle.

Sophienberg is a royal pleaſure houſe ſomething above half a geographical mile from *Hirſcholm*, and ſtands on an eminence near the ſea. It was built a few years ago by the Queen dowager *Sophia Magdalena*, and has a fine proſpect towards the ſea. The houſe is very commodious, and elegantly furniſhed.

III. The Prefecture of FREDERICKSBURG contains,

1. The *Herred* or diſtrict of *Liunge-Fredericksburg*, in which are ſeven country churches, beſides the following towns.

Hillerod is a pleaſant town lying near the caſtle of *Fredericksburg*, with a commodious hoſpital, which was erected in 1726, by the king, for the maintenance of thirty infirm perſons. This hoſpital was burnt down, together with the whole town, in 1733; but was rebuilt in the following year. The ſchool in this town was founded and endowed by *Chriſtian* IV. in the year 1633; and by an ordinance of *Chriſtian* V. every perſon that is created a knight of the order of the Elephant is obliged to contribute ſomething towards this ſchool.

Slangerup is a village ſituated not far from the bay of *Iſefiord*. King *Erick Ejegod* was born here. This made him very fond of the place; and in 1102 he granted it ſome particular privileges, and built a convent and a church in it. In the reign of *Frederick* II. it was in a pretty flouriſhing ſtate, but afterwards fell to decay, (which was principally owing to the town of *Fredericks-ſund*;) and in 1724 it was conſumed by fire. Cloſe to this village is the place where king *Sven Eſtritſon* defeated *Knut* with a great ſlaughter.

Fredericks-ſund is a town which lies about a geographical mile from *Slangerup*. It ſtands cloſe by the ſea, and is better ſituated for navigation than the latter; ſo that it has engroſſed all the trade by which *Slangerup* ſubſiſted, which was chiefly by exporting corn.

2. The *Herred* of *Stroe*, which contains eleven churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the famous caſtle of *Frederickſburg*, which ſtands at the diſtance of four geographical miles from *Copenhagen*, and one from *Friedensburg*. *Chriſtian* IV. cauſed the old building, which ſtood on this ſpot, to be pulled down, and the preſent magnificent caſtle of *Fredericksburg* to be built by the ableſt and moſt celebrated architects in *Europe*. It ſtands in a freſh water lake, and conſiſts of three principal parts, each of which is ſurrounded with water; but they are all joined together by bridges. The firſt diviſion, to which you paſs over a bridge, reſembles a horn-work, the front of which is quite round, and faced with ſtone. On both ſides are ſeveral buildings lying in a ſtrait line, which ſerve either as dwelling houſes for the artificers and other officers of the caſtle, or ſtables for horſes, *&c.* From hence you come over a ſtone-bridge to a grand high tower, which ſtands over the gate that leads into the ſecond court of the caſtle. On each ſide of this court, to the right and left, ſtands a magnificent building, in one of which are the king's kitchen, the Governor's houſe, and ſeveral apartments for the noblemen belonging to the Court; and in the other the *Amtman* or chief magiſtrate of this Prefecture reſides. Out of this ſecond court a fine ſtone bridge built over a deep canal leads to the grand portico of the principal entrance of the caſtle, which is built with free ſtone, and decorated with ſculpture and gilding. The principal building conſiſts of a *corps de logis* and two wings, four ſtories high, which are all covered with copper, and adorned with ſeveral towers, of which the church tower is the higheſt. Both the wings are joined to the front by a low building of one ſtory. Upon the firſt entrance into the inner court of the caſtle, the magnificence of the ſtructure, the beauty of the marble, the elegance of the ſculpture, and the coſtlineſs of the gilding fills the beholder with wonder and aſtoniſhment. But what chiefly ſtrikes the eye, is a noble imitation of the ancient architecture, which are the two grand arcades, one over the other, in the front of the building. They conſiſt of ſeven arches below, and as many above, which are built with free ſtone, and embelliſhed with ſtatues that ſtand either in niches, or detached from the wall, with many other ornaments. Near one of the wings is a beautiful fountain; and which way ſoever you turn your eyes in this inner court, curious ſculpture and a variety of other ornaments preſent themſelves to your view. In the church belonging to this caſtle the eye is almoſt dazzled by the glittering of gold, ſilver, curious marble, and other things of value with which it is embelliſhed. The altar is of black marble, and the front of the table of the pureſt ſilver and ebony; and the pulpit is made of the ſame materials. From the gallery you have a view of the large pictures, with which the pilaſters between the windows are decorated. In the windows and on the walls of this church the eſcutcheons of the knights of the *Danebrog* order, with their arms, names, and motto's are to be ſeen. The gallery

lery leads to a ſpacious place behind the altar, where the royal throne is erected; and on the walls, which are hung with crimſon velvet, are ſeen the arms of all the knights of the order of the Elephant. The grand organ in this apartment is a fine toned inſtrument, and is curiouſly embelliſhed with ſculpture and gilding. Formerly a fine organ of ſilver and ebony likewiſe ſtood here. Both the royal cloſets in the church are very beautiful and magnificent. The kings of *Denmark* are always anointed in this church. In the tower there is a fine ring of bells. All the apartments of the caſtle are very magnificent, eſpecially the knights ball-room, which is over the church in the third ſtory: it is quite as broad, and ſomething longer than the latter. In this grand apartment, which was deſigned for feſtivity and all manner of diverſions, there is alſo a noble organ. The gardens are very elegant, and at the extremity of them, *Chriſtian* VI. cauſed a ſpacious ſummer-houſe to be built in the year 1745.

IV. The Prefecture of *Kronburg* conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* or diſtrict of *Liunge-Kronburg*, which contains 8 churches.

2. Of the *Herred* of *Holboe*, conſiſting of 13 churches. The pariſh of *Soeborg* is remarkable for an iſland in a freſh water lake on which formerly ſtood the town of *Soeborg*, a place of great antiquity, where a great number of ſtate-priſoners were confined. Not far from it the old ruinous caſtle of *Gurre* is to be ſeen. The pariſh of *Tibirke* is famous for a fine ſpring called *Helena*'s Well, which was held in great veneration in times of popery. In this diſtrict is alſo the king's demeſne called *Eſſerum*, which is a very pleaſant woody ſpot, watered by rivers and lakes abounding with fiſh. A ſtud of horſes is kept here at preſent. Before the Reformation, a very rich and famous convent of *Bernardines* ſtood in this place. It was founded in 1150, and was the principal monaſtery of that order in *Denmark*, from which all the Northern kingdoms were ſupplied with monks. Laſtly, not far from this place, near the Village *Thieſvelde*, a triangular pillar with *Latin*, *Daniſh*, and *German* inſcriptions was erected in 1738, in honour of *Frederick* IV. and *Chriſtian* VI. for having put a ſtop to the progreſs of the *Flying Sand*, which, like a rapid ſtream, overwhelmed one tract of land and village after another, and threatened the beſt part of *Seeland* with deſolation. But for a long time no means could be deviſed to put an end to this devaſtation, till at laſt, in the reigns of the two monarchs above mentioned, a remedy was found out for this evil, and executed under the inſpection of the Prefect *Frederick von Gram*, by the addreſs of *John Ulr. Rohl.* At preſent this ſandy waſte is covered with verdure, and looks like a fine meadow.

In this Prefecture are the following towns and caſtles.

Helſingoer or *Elſinore*, *Helſingora*, a town ſituated on the *Oereſund* or *Sound*, directly over againſt *Helſingburg* in *Schonen*, on the declivity of a hill. It derives its name from the *Helſingers*, an ancient *Gothic* colony. This place

was but a ſmall town, till king *Erick* of *Pomerania* beſtowed on it the privileges of a city, in the year 1425. This is the richeſt and moſt elegant town in *Seeland*, except *Copenhagen*. It has two churches, in one of which, *viz.* St. *Peter*'s, the miniſters preach in the *German* language; a grammar ſchool, in which 33 poor ſcholars are educated and maintained *gratis*; and a good hoſpital, which was formerly a convent, but converted to this uſe in 1541. *Helſingoer* is a town of conſiderable trade, and famous, as well on account of its being the place by which the *Swedes* and *Norwegians* uſually paſs into *Denmark*, as for the toll, which is here paid by every ſhip that ſails through the *Sound*. On this account, every nation that trades to the *Baltic* has its Conſul here, who appears for his countrymen at the Toll-booth, and defends their privileges on other occaſions. The king's cuſtom-houſe at *Helſingoer* is a fine new edifice. In the year 1311 this city was laid waſte and plundered by the inhabitants of *Roſtock* and *Wiſmar*, and was ſacked a ſecond time in 1522 by the combined fleet of the *Hanſe-towns*. *Chriſtian* II. would have given this town up to the *Dutch*, but the inhabitants oppoſed it; on which account they incurred that monarch's diſpleaſure, and the toll or cuſtom-houſe was removed to *Copenhagen*: However, it did not continue there long. The king was not concerned, or diſpleaſed, when *Helſingoer* was reduced to aſhes in the year 1522.

On the north ſide of this city ſtands the famous caſtle and important fort called *Kronburg*, *Coronæburgum*, which was erected by *Frederick* II. between the years 1574, and 1585. It is built with large blocks of hewn ſtone in the moſt durable manner, and makes the beſt appearance of any of the old caſtles in *Denmark*, excepting *Fredericksburg*. It is adorned with ſeveral turrets and a variety of ſculpture, and has a church or chapel. The fortifications or works of this caſtle are in excellent condition. Not far from *Kronburg*, near *Helſingoer*, and without the *Red Gate*, lies the royal pleaſure-garden, which is pretty extenſive, and encompaſſed with a wall. A ſummer-houſe was built in it by *Frederick* II. which has been ſince improved by *Chriſtian* V. On this ſpot ſtood formerly a convent of *Carmelite* monks, which was founded in the year 1430. The *Sound* is half a geographical mile or 1331 fathoms broad, oppoſite to this caſtle. There has always been a ſtrong caſtle on this ſpot, to defend the *Sound*, before the town of *Helſingoer* was built. The moſt ancient of theſe, that we have any account of, was called *Flunderburg*; and the laſt of them was called *Kroge* or *Oerekrog*. In 1659 the preſent fort was beſieged by the *Swedes*, and taken by ſtratagem.

Fredensborg, or *Friedensburg*, is a royal palace pleaſantly ſituated about two geographical miles from *Kronburg*. *Frederick* IV. was invited to build this palace by the charming ſituation, on the ſpot where formerly ſtood a farm called *Oeſtrup*, and ſtables for breeding horſes. As the edifice was completed in the year 1720, when the treaty of peace *(Friedens-tractat)* was concluded

concluded with *Sweden*, the king gave it this name. *Frederick* IV. was extremely fond of this place, and often made it his reſidence; eſpecially about the latter part of his reign. In order to render it in every reſpect elegant and agreeable, whatever nature was wanting in, he endeavoured to ſupply by art. The inner court is a regular octagon, which is formed by ſeven wings one ſtory high, and the main building, which is directly oppoſite to the principal entrance, makes the eighth ſide. There is a fountain in the middle of the court which is adorned with a marble ſtatue repreſenting Peace, made at *Florence*, in the centre of it. The *corps de logis*, or main building, is in the form of a parallelogram; it is covered with copper, and has a ſpacious, light and elegant ſquare hall in the middle. The other apartments in both ſtories are furniſhed in the moſt elegant manner. The garden is not very extenſive; but well laid out, and embelliſhed with ſeveral ſtatues, vaſes, and other ornaments. It is ſurrounded with a large wood in which ſeveral viſtas are cut, and affords plenty of game. From the palace there is a charming proſpect, as the eye commands almoſt all the viſtas at once; and at the end of them appears an extenſive lake called the *Eſſeromer*-lake, on which is a beautiful yatcht, that in winter lies under cover in a houſe built for the purpoſe. Near the palace is alſo a fine orangery which is joined to it by a covered paſſage, and an elegant church. In the wood adjoining to the garden is the menagery, which is ſtocked with a variety of beautiful tame and wild fowl.

V. The Prefecture of JAGERSPREIS contains only the ſingle *Herred* or diſtrict of *Horn*, in which are ten Churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from *Jagerſpreis*, a royal hunting ſeat, which is a very ancient ſtructure. It was formerly called *Abrahamſtrup*, under which name mention is made of it in an inſtrument dated as early as the year 1382.

Frederick IV. and *Chriſtian* VI. have enlarged this palace with new and elegant buildings, and alſo much improved and embelliſhed the old. The garden is neat and elegant, and the adjacent country is, in general, extremely pleaſant.

VI. The Prefecture of ROESKILD conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* or diſtrict of *Somme*, including 13 churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Thune*, containing 12 churches.
3. The *Herred* of *Ramſoe*, in which are 13 churches.
4. The *Herred* of *Woldborg*, including 12 churches.

Within this Prefecture are the following towns and caſtles.

Roeſkild or *Roſchild*, in Latin *Roeſkildia*, or *Roefontes*, is an ancient and famous city, ſituated about a quarter of a geographical mile from the extremity of the bay of *Iſefiord*. This city derives its name from *Roe*, the eleventh king of *Denmark*, who was the founder of it, and the word *kilde*, which

was but a ſmall town, till king *Erick* of *Pomerania* beſtowed on it the privileges of a city, in the year 1425. This is the richeſt and moſt elegant town in *Seeland*, except *Copenhagen*. It has two churches, in one of which, *viz.* St. *Peter*'s, the miniſters preach in the *German* language; a grammar ſchool, in which 33 poor ſcholars are educated and maintained *gratis*; and a good hoſpital, which was formerly a convent, but converted to this uſe in 1541. *Helſingoer* is a town of conſiderable trade, and famous, as well on account of its being the place by which the *Swedes* and *Norwegians* uſually paſs into *Denmark*, as for the toll, which is here paid by every ſhip that ſails through the *Sound*. On this account, every nation that trades to the *Baltic* has its Conſul here, who appears for his countrymen at the Toll-booth, and defends their privileges on other occaſions. The king's cuſtom-houſe at *Helſingoer* is a fine new edifice. In the year 1311 this city was laid waſte and plundered by the inhabitants of *Roſtock* and *Wiſmar*, and was ſacked a ſecond time in 1522 by the combined fleet of the *Hanſe-towns*. *Chriſtian* II. would have given this town up to the *Dutch*, but the inhabitants oppoſed it; on which account they incurred that monarch's diſpleaſure, and the toll or cuſtom-houſe was removed to *Copenhagen*: However, it did not continue there long. The king was not concerned, or diſpleaſed, when *Helſingoer* was reduced to aſhes in the year 1522.

On the north ſide of this city ſtands the famous caſtle and important fort called *Kronburg*, *Coronæburgum*, which was erected by *Frederick* II. between the years 1574, and 1585. It is built with large blocks of hewn ſtone in the moſt durable manner, and makes the beſt appearance of any of the old caſtles in *Denmark*, excepting *Fredericksburg*. It is adorned with ſeveral turrets and a variety of ſculpture, and has a church or chapel. The fortifications or works of this caſtle are in excellent condition. Not far from *Kronburg*, near *Helſingoer*, and without the *Red Gate*, lies the royal pleaſure-garden, which is pretty extenſive, and encompaſſed with a wall. A ſummer-houſe was built in it by *Frederick* II. which has been ſince improved by *Chriſtian* V. On this ſpot ſtood formerly a convent of *Carmelite* monks, which was founded in the year 1430. The *Sound* is half a geographical mile or 1331 fathoms broad, oppoſite to this caſtle. There has always been a ſtrong caſtle on this ſpot, to defend the *Sound*, before the town of *Helſingoer* was built. The moſt ancient of theſe, that we have any account of, was called *Flunderburg*; and the laſt of them was called *Kroge* or *Oerekrog*. In 1659 the preſent fort was beſieged by the *Swedes*, and taken by ſtratagem.

Fredensborg, or *Friedensburg*, is a royal palace pleaſantly ſituated about two geographical miles from *Kronburg*. *Frederick* IV. was invited to build this palace by the charming ſituation, on the ſpot where formerly ſtood a farm called *Oeſtrup*, and ſtables for breeding horſes. As the edifice was completed in the year 1720, when the treaty of peace *(Friedens-tractat)* was concluded

concluded with *Sweden*, the king gave it this name. *Frederick* IV. was extremely fond of this place, and often made it his reſidence; eſpecially about the latter part of his reign. In order to render it in every reſpect elegant and agreeable, whatever nature was wanting in, he endeavoured to ſupply by art. The inner court is a regular octagon, which is formed by ſeven wings one ſtory high, and the main building, which is directly oppoſite to the principal entrance, makes the eighth ſide. There is a fountain in the middle of the court which is adorned with a marble ſtatue repreſenting Peace, made at *Florence*, in the centre of it. The *corps de logis*, or main building, is in the form of a parallelogram; it is covered with copper, and has a ſpacious, light and elegant ſquare hall in the middle. The other apartments in both ſtories are furniſhed in the moſt elegant manner. The garden is not very extenſive; but well laid out, and embelliſhed with ſeveral ſtatues, vaſes, and other ornaments. It is ſurrounded with a large wood in which ſeveral viſtas are cut, and affords plenty of game. From the palace there is a charming proſpect, as the eye commands almoſt all the viſtas at once; and at the end of them appears an extenſive lake called the *Eſſeromer*-lake, on which is a beautiful yatcht, that in winter lies under cover in a houſe built for the purpoſe. Near the palace is alſo a fine orangery which is joined to it by a covered paſſage, and an elegant church. In the wood adjoining to the garden is the menagery, which is ſtocked with a variety of beautiful tame and wild fowl.

V. The Prefecture of JAGERSPREIS contains only the ſingle *Herred* or diſtrict of *Horn*, in which are ten Churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from *Jagerſpreis*, a royal hunting ſeat, which is a very ancient ſtructure. It was formerly called *Abrahamſtrup*, under which name mention is made of it in an inſtrument dated as early as the year 1382.

Frederick IV. and *Chriſtian* VI. have enlarged this palace with new and elegant buildings, and alſo much improved and embelliſhed the old. The garden is neat and elegant, and the adjacent country is, in general, extremely pleaſant.

VI. The Prefecture of ROESKILD conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* or diſtrict of *Somme*, including 13 churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Thune*, containing 12 churches.
3. The *Herred* of *Ramſoe*, in which are 13 churches.
4. The *Herred* of *Woldborg*, including 12 churches.

Within this Prefecture are the following towns and caſtles.

Roeſkild or *Roſchild*, in Latin *Roeſkildia*, or *Roefontes*, is an ancient and famous city, ſituated about a quarter of a geographical mile from the extremity of the bay of *Iſefiord*. This city derives its name from *Roe*, the eleventh king of *Denmark*, who was the founder of it, and the word *kilde*, which

which ſignifies a ſpring; for there are ſeveral excellent ſprings on the ſpot where it ſtands. Hence it appears that *Roeſkild* was built between the years of the world 3320, and 3630. But waving this particular, which I ſhall leave undetermined, it is certain, that it was firſt ſurrounded with a rampart and ditch in the year of Chriſt 1150; and that in 1268, or 1278, it obtained the privileges of a city. As the biſhops of this ſee were in poſſeſſion of *Roſchild*, it increaſed to ſuch an extent, as to contain 27 large churches and convents within its walls. Some of the churches of the neighbouring villages were formerly included within its circuit, and the ſtreets extended quite to the ſea ſhore. The kings of *Denmark* were formerly elected and crowned in this city, and alſo made it the place of their reſidence. The great decay into which this city afterwards fell was partly owing to frequent fires, partly to the intolerable tyranny of the biſhops who reſided here, and partly to the flouriſhing ſtate of *Copenhagen*, which is but four geographical miles from it. Laſtly, the Reformation muſt have been, in a great meaſure, the cauſe of it; for in conſequence of the change in Religion, the monks and clergy, who ſpent their large revenues in this place, were obliged to quit the country. *Roeſkild* conſiſts, at preſent, only of an inconſiderable number of houſes, which, for the moſt part, are meanly built; and the inhabitants ſupport themſelves by trade and induſtry; but their chief employment is agriculture and the planting of tobacco. There are two remarkable ſprings at *Roeſkild*, *viz.* the *Roe's-well* at the end of *Olufs-ſtreet*, and the *Holy-croſs-ſpring*, at the extremity of the town, from which water is carried every week to *Copenhagen* for the uſe of the Court; it being reckoned very wholeſome and pleaſant to drink.

The cathedral church, if there were no other, is a ſtanding monument of the ancient grandeur of this town. It is inferred from a monumental inſcription in memory of king *Harald Bloatand* which is to be ſeen in the choir, that this church was built with timber by that monarch about the year 980; but that the foundation of a large ſtone edifice being afterwards laid, it was finiſhed about the year 1084, and was dedicated to St. *Lucius*, and after that to the holy Trinity. This church was thrice conſumed by fire, namely, in 1282, 1443, and 1525; but was not built in ſo magnificent a manner after theſe accidents, as it had been before. However, it is ſtill a very handſome light church, and is partly covered with copper, and partly with lead. In 1635 it was adorned with two high towers by *Chriſtian* IV. Its greateſt ornaments are the burying place and monuments of the kings of *Denmark*. In the church are to be ſeen the ſuperb marble monuments of *Chriſtian* V. and *Frederick* IV. incloſed in a ſquare area; and in a vault under them the remains of the children belonging to the royal family are interred. From hence you come to the monument of the famous Queen *Margaret*, who preſented this church formerly with a fine altar, on which

ſtood

ſtood the images of the twelve Apoſtles, each as big as a child of three years old, of maſſy gold; which king *Erick* of *Pomerania* carried away with him when he left *Denmark*. This monument ſtands behind a rich altar, which repreſents the hiſtory of our Saviour in *Baſſo relievo* finely gilded. It was brought hither in the time of *Chriſtian* IV. from *Fredericksburg*, and is opened only on certain days every year, and in time of divine ſervice; but is ſhewn to ſtrangers at other times. To the right is a vault divided into three parts, in which *Chriſtian* IV. *Frederick* III. their queens, and ſeveral of their children are interred. Over this vault is a chapel, in which the bodies of the kings and queens of *Denmark* are depoſited till they are buried *; and at preſent the bodies of *Chriſtian* VI. and *Louiſa* the late queen, conſort of *Frederick* V. lie in magnificent mauſoleums. Here is to be ſeen a capital piece of painting repreſenting *Frederick* III. lying on a bed of ſtate. Oppoſite to this, on the left ſide of the church, is the chapel of the three *wiſe Men*, or *Magi*, which *Chriſtian* I. cauſed to be built in 1464. Here the ſuperb marble monuments of *Chriſtian* III. and *Frederick* II. are erected; but the remains of theſe two monarchs and their queens, and, as is ſuppoſed, thoſe of *Chriſtian* I. *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria*, *&c.* lie in the vault under the monument. Near this chapel is that of St. *Laurence*, in which a curious font, with ſeveral old pictures, *&c.* are to be ſeen. There are in this church a great number of epitaphs of perſons famous for their dignity, or learning. Of the latter *Saxo Grammaticus*, and *Nic. Hemming* lie buried here. A royal Palace, which is not very large, was built here in 1733, out of the materials of the old palace, which had been pulled down. It has a communication with the church by means of a covered paſſage. On the other ſide of the church ſtands an edifice in which, at preſent, the Provoſts, belonging to the See of *Seeland*, meet twice a year under the Biſhop and general Governor of the Province. Not far from this building is the *Regency*, in which the Con-Rector, and 20 ſtudents are maintained *gratis*. In the Cathedral ſchool ſix maſters and forty ſcholars are maintained and educated: this is the beſt endowed of any ſchool in *Seeland*. Here is alſo an hoſpital for ſix poor widows, with an alms-houſe, which, in 1570, was richly endowed by *Frederick* II. who joined three others to it for that purpoſe. In 1699 *Margaret Uhlefeld*, and *Bridget Scheel* founded a convent in this town for one and twenty ladies of quality and a Prioreſs. Each of theſe ladies has a yearly penſion of 80 Rixdollars, beſides an apartment, board, *&c.* *Chriſtian* V. alſo endowed this convent with 500 Rixdollars, ariſing from a mine in *Norway* and the tithes of two pariſhes. The other church, which ſtands at one end of the town, is dedicated to the virgin *Mary*. Money was formerly coined in this church, and a vaſt num-

* This cuſtom is alſo obſerved in *France*; where *Lewis* XIV. ſtill lies unburied at St. *Denys* till his ſucceſſor dies.

ber of reliques were kept here in popiſh times. About the middle of the 12th century a fraternity was inſtituted here which was partly eccleſiaſtical, and partly a military order. The members of it were called *Milites*, or *Fratres Roſchildenſes*, who, afterwards, ſpread themſelves all over *Seeland*. They defended the ſea-coaſt againſt the inſults of the idolatrous *Vandals*. In 1012 this place was erected into a biſhop's-ſee; in 1291 a great ſynod was held, and in 1658 the famous peace of *Roſchild* was concluded, in this city.

Lethraborg is a conſiderable caſtle belonging to Count *John Lewis Holſtein*, at the diſtance of a geographical mile from *Roſchild*. Here are ſtill to be ſeen ſome remains of the ancient *Lethra* or *Leyre*, which was originally a royal palace; but afterwards *Rolfo Krakus* built a fine city on the ſpot, where the ancient *Daniſh* kings reſided; hence they were called *Reges Lethræ*. Here is alſo a large ſtone, not unlike a chair; and, as the kings uſed to receive homage in this ſeat, it was called *Kongſtolen*, *i. e.* the king's chair. In the dark ages of Heatheniſm 99 men, and as many horſes, dogs, and cocks were ſlain and offered here to the gods once in nine years, in the month *January*; and it was looked upon as the moſt ſacred place in *Seeland*. M. *J. P. Anchersen*, in his learned treatiſe, entitled *Herthedal ved Leyre i Siaeland*, thinks it very probable, that the famous *Herthedal*, where the goddeſs *Hertha* was worſhipped, ſtood on this ſpot.

Kioge, in Latin *Coagia*, is a ſmall town ſituated in a fertile country, at the mouth of the little river *Koogaae*, on the *Baltic*. It is ſtill in a pretty flouriſhing condition, and carries on ſome trade in the *Baltic*; but was formerly a conſiderable trading city. In the market-place, which is a handſome large area, ſtands the council houſe, a well built edifice. Here are alſo an elegant church, a grammar ſchool, and a good hoſpital, or alms-houſe, which, before the year 1531, was a monaſtery of *Gray Friars*. The fine tapeſtry with which the palace of *Fridericksburg* is hung, was made in this town. In 1633 *Kioge* was greatly damaged by a great fire. In 1659 *Charles Guſtavus*, king of *Sweden*, fortified it with ditches and ramparts. In 1677 the *Daniſh* admiral *Niels Juel* defeated the *Swediſh* fleet in the bay of *Kioge*.

In this diſtrict lies alſo the County of *Bregentveck*, which belongs to the Count of *Moltre*.

VII. The Prefecture of HOLBECK conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Tutze*, which includes 13 Churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Mehrloſe*, containing 20 Churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the little town of *Holbeck*, which lies in a fertile ſoil on an arm of the *Iſefiord* gulf, and has a good harbour, from which a great quantity of corn is exported every year. In 1290, this town was plundered and deſtroyed by the *Norwegian* fleet. In 1317, *Birger*, the exiled king of *Sweden*, took refuge here; and *Erick*, his brother-in-law, put him in poſſeſſion of the town of *Holbeck* for life.

VIII.

VIII. The Prefecture of DRAXHOLM conſiſts only of the ſingle *Herred* or diſtrict of *Odd*, including nine churches, and is a fertile peninſula. In this Prefecture lie the following places of note.

Nyekiobing is a middling town; but was formerly a conſiderable city, and ſtill enjoys the privileges of one, with the advantages of navigation and a good harbour.

Draxholm is an old caſtle, to which a conſiderable eſtate belongs. It was formerly a fief of the Crown, and a place of conſiderable ſtrength, in which ſeveral ſtate-priſoners were confined; in particular the wicked Earl of *Bothwell*, huſband of the unfortunate *Mary* Queen of *Scotland*. He did penance for his attrocious crimes from the year 1576 by a long confinement in this caſtle.

IX. The Prefecture of KALLUNDBORG conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Artz* including 9 churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Schipping* containing 11 churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the city of *Kallundborg*, in Latin *Callunda*, one of the moſt flouriſhing towns in *Seeland*. It has the beſt harbour on the iſland except *Copenhagen*. The inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade, and a great quantity of malt is annually exported from hence. St. *Mary*'s Church, which has four high ſpires, makes a good appearance. From this town the paſſage to *Aarhuus* in *Jutland* is uſually performed in 12 hours: for which purpoſe a certain number of *ſmacks* ſail twice a week from one town to the other. In the caſtle, which was formerly very ſtrong but now fallen to decay, *Chriſtian* II. died in his confinement. *Albert*, king of *Sweden*, was alſo confined here; but, in 1658, the *Swedes*, out of revenge, blew up the caſtle. This town was built in the year 1171; and in 1249, and 1314, eccleſiaſtical ſynods were held here.

In the territory belonging to this town lies alſo the caſtle of *Oeſtrup*, which at preſent belongs to Count *Lerch* of *Lerchenfeld*.

The iſland *Samſoe*, or *Sams*, in Latin *Samſoa*, lies about eight geographical miles from *Kallundborg*, and four from *Aarhuus* in *Jutland*, over againſt *Funen*, where the *Great Belt* is ſeparated from the *Little Belt*. This iſland, as to ſpirituals, is ſubject to the Biſhop of *Aarhuus*; but in temporals it is under the Prefect of *Kallundborg*, and therefore muſt be deſcribed here. It is three geographical miles long, and one broad: It has ſeveral hills and eminences, three of which are capes or promontories. The ſoil, for the moſt part, is fertile, and in particular yields plenty of good peaſe: hence moſt of the Inhabitants are in good circumſtances, and carry on a conſiderable trade with their ſmall craft. *Samſoe* conſiſts of five pariſhes, namely, *Bodzer*, *Onsberg*, *Kaalbye*, *Nordbye* and *Frandberg*. In the laſt are ſtill to be ſeen the ruins of the ancient caſtle of

Bratingsborg, which ſtood upon an eminence, and was encompaſſed with a treble rampart and ditch; but in 1288 was razed to the ground. In the pariſh of *Kaalbye* formerly ſtood the caſtle of *Visborg*. On the eaſt ſide of this iſland lie the ſmall iſlands *Hiortholm* (which was formerly fortified with a caſtle) *Kiholm*, *Lindholm*, and *Veyeroe*. Theſe form three harbours, two of which, *viz. Langoe* and *Gammelholm* are fit to receive veſſels of a middling ſize only, but that of *Veyeroe* is a good harbour for large ſhips. On this ſide of the iſland alſo is that dangerous place called the *Bottſack*. On the weſt ſide lies the little iſland *Thunoe*, which is moſtly covered with wood. It conſiſts of one pariſh, and was bequeathed in 1216 to the Cathedral church near *Aarhuus*. Laſtly, near the ſouth end of *Samſoe* lies the Iſland *Endelau* or *Endoe*: Between *Samſoe*, *Endoe* and *Thunoe* there are ſeveral ſandy ſhoals. In *Reſenius*'s Atlas, and likewiſe in his deſcription of *Samſoe*, there is a map of this iſland.

X. The Prefecture of SABYEGAARD conſiſts of the ſingle *Herred* of *Lowe*, which contains 15 churches.

XI. The Prefecture of RINGSTED conſiſts of the *Herred* of the ſame name, which includes 17 churches. At *Harreſted*, in this Prefecture, Duke *Knut*, who was called the *Saint*, was baſely murdered by his uncle king *Magnus*. This Prefecture derives its name from

Ringſted, in Latin *Ringſtadium*, which was built by, and called after the name of *Ring* king of *Denmark*; ſo that next to *Roſchild*, it muſt be the moſt ancient town in *Seeland*. *Ringſted* lies in the middle of *Seeland*, and was anciently a large city; but by ſeveral fires, eſpecially in the years 1692, 1716, and 1747 it has been greatly reduced; ſo that at preſent it is but a ſmall town, built ſince the laſt fire. The great church was erected in 1475, and was famous for ſeveral popiſh reliques. In it lie buried ſeveral kings, queens, *&c.* as *Waldemar* I. *Waldemar* II. *Erick* the *Saint*, Duke *Knut* the *Saint*, and other perſons of diſtinction. This church, like the convent in this town, has been called by different names, *viz.* St. *Mary*'s, or the *Virgin*'s Church, St. *Knut*'s the Martyr, and St. *Benedict*'s. The ſaid convent was built towards the cloſe of the 11th century, and dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. It was inhabited by *Benedictine* monks, and afterwards called St. *Knut*'s convent. The edifice, which is cloſe to the church, being ſtill entire, is ſold to a private perſon, together with the eſtate with which it was endowed. Of St. *John*'s church there is but little remaining beſides the church yard. This town is ſtill famous for the court of judicature, to which an appeal lies from all the courts of *Seeland*, except *Copenhagen* and ſome other towns; whereas from this court there is no appeal but to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*. It is held once every month in one part of the church.

XII. The Prefecture of SOROE contains the *Herred* of *Alſted*, to which belong 16 churches. It derives its name from

Soroe, in Latin *Sora*, which is a noted little town ſituated in a pleaſant country. It is ſurrounded by three freſh-water lakes, called the lakes of *Sor*, *Thule*, and *Petersburg*, and theſe again are almoſt encompaſſed with fine woods. This town is remarkable for the Royal Academy, which lies at the ſouth-end of it, the hiſtory of which is as follows: The ſons of *Skialmo Hvide*, in the 12th century, founded a monaſtery in this place, in which the famous archbiſhop *Abſalon Hvide* placed ſome *Ciſtercian* Monks in 1161. This convent was extremely rich; but in 1580, after the Reformation, it was diſſolved, and the noble endowment annexed to it fell to the Crown, upon which the king placed his Prefects over it. *Frederick* II. in 1586, founded a ſchool in this place, in which 30 children of perſons of Quality, and 30 other children born of reputable parents are educated and maintained *gratis*. After this *Chriſtian* IV. in 1613, converted it into a public Academy, which he nobly endowed from the revenues of the ancient monaſtery and thoſe of a convent at *Marieboe* in *Laaland*, and improved and enlarged with elegant new buildings. The Academy flouriſhed for forty years, and was very much frequented by perſons of diſtinction, both *Danes* and foreigners. *Charles Guſtavus*, afterwards king of *Sweden*, had ſtudied here; on which account he abſtained from committing any hoſtilities againſt this place in 1659. But as the number of the ſtudents greatly decreaſed, and the revenues of it were much exhauſted by the war, the few that remained were, in 1665, removed to other places; and ſome of the profeſſors were invited to *Copenhagen*, whilſt others withdrew elſewhere. However, *Frederick* III. founded a ſchool here for a certain number of noblemen's and burgher's children, which was continued till the year 1734, when *Chriſtian* VI. diſſolved it quite, for ſome time. But as he had formed the deſign of renewing the former Academy for the Nobility, he cauſed the preſent magnificent and elegant building to be erected for that purpoſe. But this monarch dying ſoon after, *Frederick* V. completed the deſign, and founded the Academy a ſecond time. He alſo endowed it with a large revenue, which the famous baron *Holberg* conſiderably encreaſed, by bequeathing his whole eſtate to it. To this Academy belong a Grand-Maſter, an Inſpector, Profeſſors in all the ſciences which relate to civil or political employments, a Maſter of the *French* language, and a Riding-Maſter, with proper Maſters for fencing, dancing, and drawing. There is alſo a printing-preſs ſet up in this Academy. The Academiſts have their apartments in a large and commodious ſtone building. The Grand-Maſter, as Prefect of the Prefecture of *Soroe*, has the ſame authority in the town of *Soroe* as the General-Governors of provinces have in the other towns. The Academy is under the juriſdiction of its own officers; and in all cauſes the Grand-Maſter preſides as judge, aſſiſted by the Inſpector and Profeſſors. This Academy alſo enjoys ſeveral

other privileges, which may be ſeen in its ſtatutes of the year 1747. The great church is at preſent the only remains of the old monaſtery, and in it lie buried ſeveral kings and princes, as *Waldemar* III. *&c.* with ſeveral perſons of diſtinction and learning. It ſerves for the town and Academy-church, and the profeſſor of Divinity is the preacher. In the lake of *Soroe* a large fiſh is often taken, called in Daniſh *Malle*, and in Latin *Silurus*, or *muſtela maxima*. Some of this ſpecies are above four ells in length; but they are found no where elſe in *Denmark*.

The Barony of *Holberg*, which was the property of the famous and learned Baron of that name, who bequeathed it to the academy of *Soroe*, conſiſts of two eſtates; one of which, called *Terſloſe*, lies in the Prefecture of *Holbeck*, and the other called *Brorup*, in the Prefecture of *Anderſkow*.

XIII. The Prefecture of KORSOER, conſiſts of the *Herred* of *Slagelſe*, which includes 13 country churches. In this Prefecture are the following towns.

Korſoer, in Latin *Cruciſora*, a ſmall town ſituated on a point of land in the *Great-Belt*, oppoſite the town of *Nyeborg* in *Funen*. The diſtance between theſe towns is about four geographical miles; and this is the uſual paſſage acroſs the *Great-Belt*. In 1661, this town obtained the ſtaple-privilege, and carries on a conſiderable trade by ſea. Its harbour is one of the beſt in *Seeland*, being very commodious for ſuch veſſels as do not draw above nine feet water; but the buildings are mean and irregular. The pariſh church is a very indifferent ſtructure, and contains nothing remarkable but a good piece of painting, which was a preſent from the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*, and repreſents the women bringing their young children to Chriſt. On the ſea-ſhore, near the town, ſtands an ancient royal palace, ſurrounded with a ditch and rampart; in part of which the Commandant and ſome other perſons have apartments, and the other part ſerves for a granary, and commands the harbour.

Slagelſe, in Latin *Slagloſia*, is a pretty large and populous town; but, for the moſt part, conſiſts of mean houſes. It was built by the ancient hero *Slag* or *Slav*, one of the anceſtors of Biſhop *Abſalon*, about the cloſe of the 10th century, and originally belonged to his family, but afterwards fell to the crown. Here are two pariſh churches, a well endowed hoſpital which has a chapel, and a grammar-ſchool in which twenty ſcholars are maintained and educated. The inhabitants apply themſelves chiefly to planting tobacco, and agriculture, for the territory belonging to the town is very extenſive; as for trade there is but little ſtirring here. *Slagelſe* was greatly damaged by fire in 1652 and 1740. Many ſtrange miracles are related, which the pretended holy monk *Andrew*, who died here in 1203, is ſaid to have wrought.

Andwort-

Andwortſkow, or *Anderſkow*, a large royal palace, ſtands on an eminence at a ſmall diſtance to the eaſt of *Slagelſe*. It was formerly a very grand monaſtery belonging to the monks of the order of St. *John*, and erected by *Waldemar* II. in 1220; but after the Reformation, it was converted into a palace. Here *Frederick* II. who was very fond of this place, out of his extraordinary zeal threw the *Concordat* into the fire, in 1580. He alſo conſiderably enlarged and embelliſhed this palace, where he ended his days; and *Frederick* IV. in 1720, repaired the church belonging to it. At this day, however, it makes no extraordinary appearance. In 1546, a national ſynod was held here by all the Biſhops of *Denmark*.

XIV. The Prefecture of ANDERSKOW contains the *Herreds* of *Weſt* and *Eaſt Flackeberg*; the former including 18, and the latter 13 country churches. Places of note in this Prefecture are,

Skielſkior, or *Skielſiſkor*, which is a ſmall town, but better built than *Korſoer*. It carries on a middling trade by ſea. Near the pariſh-church there was formerly a convent of *Carmelites*, which was founded in 1418. There is a profitable fiſhery hereabouts, particularly of eels.

The County of *Holſteinburg*, with a caſtle of the ſame name, which belongs to the Counts of *Holſtein*.

Herlufsholm, which is a free-ſchool ſituated at the diſtance of a quarter of a geographical mile from *Neſtwed*. The firſt inhabitants of this place were ſome *Benedictine* monks, who, in 1261, deſerted their convent near St. *Peter*'s church at *Neſtwed*, that had been burnt, and removed to a neighbouring wood, which they called *Skov-kloſter*, *i. e.* the convent in the wood. This monaſtery was richly endowed; but at the time of the Reformation, the revenues of it were confiſcated, and an *Amt-man* or Prefect ſet over the place in the king's name. But after the famous admiral *Herluf Trolle* gave *Hillerodſholm* (the place where *Frederickſburg* now ſtands) to *Frederick* II. in exchange for this convent in the wood; he founded the preſent free-ſchool in 1564, and endowed it with the whole eſtate, which brings in yearly about 3000 Rix-dollars. He likewiſe called the place *Herlufsholm*, after his own name, and ordered that a ſuper-inſpector and ſuper-adminiſtrator, for the management of the ſchool and the endowment annexed to it, ſhould be elected alternately from the *Trolles*, his own family, and the *Goeſes*, his wife's family. After his death, which happened in 1665, his widow was no leſs indefatigable in carrying on the building than the admiral had been; but it was not quite completed till after her deceaſe. At preſent, twenty youths are inſtructed and provided with all neceſſaries on this foundation. The old monaſtery is ſtill the principal building belonging to the ſchool. It is ſituated in a charming pleaſant country; and is watered by the river which runs through *Neſtwed*, and ſurrounded with a wood. In the ſmall, but elegant church belonging to this place are ſome valuable monuments of many famous men; among which

which we ſhall only take notice of thoſe of the founder of the ſchool, and the *Daniſh* Hiſtorian *Arild Hvitfeld.*

XV. The Prefecture of WORDINGBORG conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Tyberg* including 14 churches.

2. The *Herred* of *Hammer* containing 11 churches.

3. The *Herred* of *Baarſe*, which has 13 churches. From the village of *Kallehauge*, is the uſual paſſage to the iſland of *Moen*. Within this Prefecture are the following places.

Neſtwed is a pretty large town but meanly built, ſituated on the river *Nes*, in a pleaſant and fertile ſpot. This river divides the town into two unequal parts, which are called *Great* and *Little Neſtwed*, and then runs into the *Baltic*: This gives the inhabitants an opportunity of carrying on ſome little trade. Here are two pariſh churches, namely, St. *Peter*'s and St. *Martin*'s. In the former, among the remains of the popiſh ſuperſtition, an image of the royal Saint *Knut*, curiouſly cut in wood and finely gilded, and a crucifix which is well executed are to be ſeen. There were formerly ſeveral convents in this town; and there is a piece of money ſtill extant, which was coined here. In the year 1259, a bloody and deciſive battle was fought near *Neſtwed*; and in 1271, the town was much damaged by fire.

Wordingborg, in Latin *Orthunga*, is a ſmall town ſituated on the moſt ſouthern point of *Seeland* on a bay called the *Gronſund*. This place is looked upon as the moſt delightful and pleaſant ſpot in the whole iſland. This town has a grammar-ſchool; and the inhabitants live partly by agriculture, and partly by uſing the ſea. As for the ancient caſtle that ſtood near it, which *Waldemar* I. built in 1066, and intended for a place of great ſtrength; nothing but the ruinous remains of it are now to be ſeen. *Waldemar* III. who was exceedingly fond of this place, reſided here for the moſt part, and, in deriſion of the *Hanſe-towns*, built the well known tower, which, from a golden gooſe erected on the top of it, he called *gans*, *i. e.* the Gooſe. In this tower he purpoſed to confine the priſoners of the *Hanſe-towns* that ſhould fall into his hands in the war he intended to carry on againſt them. As the old caſtle gradually fell to decay, Prince *George*, who was brother to *Chriſtian* V. and married to *Anne* Queen of *England*, built here an entire new caſtle, which *Frederick* IV. afterwards enlarged; but that edifice, not long ſince, was pulled down. The uſual paſſage to the iſlands *Falſter* and *Lolland* is from this place. In 1240, at a famous Diet held here, the old *Jutiſche Low-buck*, or *Codex legum Juticarum* was compiled and promulged: This body of laws is ſtill in force in *South-Jutland*. In 1256, another Diet was held, and in 1658 preliminaries for a peace between *Denmark* and *Sweden* were treated of in this town.

Praſtoe, in Latin *Preſbyteroneſus*, is a middling town, and has a commodious harbour, from which a good deal of corn is exported. Formerly a convent of

of the *Fratres Calendarii*, and another monaſtery ſtood here. In 1750 this town was deſtroyed by fire.

Giſſelfeld is a conſiderable eſtate, which Count *Guldenlowe* bequeathed to a convent of nuns, one half of the number to be the daughters of perſons of Quality, and the other half the daughters of citizens.

XVI. The Prefecture of TRYGGEVELDE conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Biefverskow*, which includes 12 churches. In the village of *Herfogle* Queen *Anna Sophia* founded a hoſpital for the maintenance of twenty old men, and the inſtruction of ten children who are here taught by a maſter.

2. The *Herred* of *Faxoe*, which contains 11 churches, excluſive of that at *Wemmeltoſte*.

3. The *Herred* of *Steven*, which is a peninſula, and has 10 churches. Places of note in this Prefecture are the following.

The County of *Walloe*, with a large and royal palace of the ſame name, lies near the little town of *Kioge*. The caſtle was at firſt built by the famous *Peter Oxe* and his conſort *Mette Roſenkranz* in the year 1575: But it was afterwards conſiderably enlarged; and *Frederick* IV. particularly, made great additions to it, when the caſtle together with the County fell to the Crown. *Chriſtian* VI. made a preſent of both to his conſort, queen *Sophia Magdalena*, who inſtituted a religious Foundation here for women of noble families, and endowed it with the whole revenue of the County and the eſtates annexed to it. She alſo provided apartments for them in one of the four ſides of the building. The conſecration of the new convent was performed with great ſolemnity in 1738, and the princeſs *Frederica* of *Wurtenberg-Neuſtadt* was appointed the firſt Abbeſs of it.

Wemmeltoſte is a very ancient ſeat, which formerly belonged to prince *Charles*, brother to *Frederick* IV. and his ſiſter *Sophia Hedewig:* that prince generally reſided, and at laſt ended his days in this ſeat. Both the prince and princeſs laid out vaſt ſums in embelliſhing this palace, which is pleaſantly ſituated, and bequeathed it by will, together with all the eſtate belonging to it, for a convent for ladies of Quality; which was founded in 1735. This Foundation has two *Curators* and two *Preachers*, one of which is a *Dane* and the other a *German*. Every Lady of this community is obliged to maintain and educate one orphan. This convent lies in the *Herred* of *Faxoe*.

Store-Heddinge, *i. e.* Great *Hedding*, or ſimply *Hedding*, is a very ancient but mean town. There are ſeveral good lime-kilns in the territory belonging to this town: It lies in the *Herred* of *Steven*.

Tryggevelde, in Latin *Tuta vallis*, is an ancient famous caſtle, near which, on an eminence, a pyramidal ſtone with a *Runic* inſcription was formerly to be ſeen; but it ſtands now in *Walloe* at one end of the bridge.

The

The high and rocky promontory called *Steven's Klint*, which may be ſeen at a great diſtance, is remarkable, as well as the adjacent parts, for good ſtone-quarries.

XVII. The iſland of MOEN, *Mona*, or *Virginia Danica*, lies directly over againſt the little town of *Praſtoe*; and between the latter and the iſland are the ſtraits called the *Wolffund*. This iſland is four geographical miles in length from eaſt to weſt, and two in breadth. The high chalky cliffs towards the *Baltic* may be ſeen a great way off at ſea. One of them at a diſtance reſembles a throne, and is therefore commonly called the *King's Chair*. Stones of an uncommon figure or ſhape are no where in greater plenty than on this coaſt. The ſoil is fertile in every part of the iſland, and yields great quantities of peaſe. It conſiſts of one *Amt* or Prefecture, and one *Herred*, and contains ſeven rural pariſhes and the little town of *Stege*. The latter lies in the middle of the iſland, and was formerly a place of ſtrength; for, in 1510, it ſucceſsfully maintained a ſiege againſt the *Lubeckers*. It had alſo a fine caſtle called *Elmelund*, which the burghers in their fury demoliſhed in the year 1534. Some years ſince, a free Marine Academy, or ſchool for teaching navigation, was founded here by *Chriſtian* V. but this foundation afterwards fell to decay. In *Reſenius's* Atlas there is a map of this iſland. Between *Moen* and *Falſter* lies the little iſland of *Boog* or *Bogoe*.

XVIII. The iſland of BORNHOLM, *Bornholmia*, or *Boringia*, lies in the *Baltic*, about 16 geographical miles from the extreme point of *Seeland*, and 6 from *Yſtad* in *Schonen*. It extends from North-North-Weſt to South-South-Eaſt, about ſeven geographical miles in length, and is four in breadth. The ſoil is fertile and produces all kinds of grain, particularly oats. Here is alſo good paſturage or meadow-land; and a great quantity of butter is exported from this iſland. It likewiſe affords good lime-ſtone, marble quarries, and pit coals; and cement is alſo made in *Bornholm*. The coaſt, on account of many dangerous rocks or ſhoals, is inacceſſible almoſt on every ſide: But in thoſe places where there might be any danger of an enemy's landing, great guns are planted. Perſons of quality, and other criminals, are uſually baniſhed to this iſland by way of puniſhment; and this was the fate of the infamous *Dippel*. In popiſh times this iſland belonged to the Archbiſhop of *Lund* in *Schonen*; and ſeveral diſputes have from time to time ariſen about it. In 1522 the *Lubeckers* made themſelves maſters of it, in whoſe hands it continued a long time. At the peace of *Roſchild* it was ceded to the *Swedes*: But the inhabitants being treated with great ſeverity by their new maſters, took up arms in the ſame year (1658); and recovering their liberty under the conduct of *Jens Koefod*, they delivered up the iſland to the king of *Denmark*. By this means they greatly ingratiated themſelves with his *Daniſh* Majeſty, who ſent them a letter of thanks; and in a ſecond letter he

he graciouſly promiſed to take them under his immediate protection, which engagement the ſucceeding kings have ever ſince confirmed from time to time. Since that time *Bornholm* has been an hereditary Country belonging to the kings of *Denmark*. In 1678, 5000 of the *Swediſh* troops, in their paſſage from *Pomerania* to *Sweden*, were ſtranded on this iſland; and thoſe that eſcaped the fury of the waves were made priſoners of war tho' they were provided with *Daniſh* paſſes. The inhabitants keep up their own Militia, for the defence of the iſland; ſo that the king of *Denmark* is at no expence on that account. There is a Governor, Deputy Governor, *Amtman* or Prefect, and other officers, in this iſland; it conſiſts of one Prefecture which contains about 100 villages, 16 rural churches, and the following places of note.

Ronne, or *Ronde*, is a little town on the ſouth-weſt ſide of the iſland. Here the king's Governor or Commandant generally reſides; there is alſo a grammar ſchool in this town. The harbour is well fortified and ſheltered from certain winds; but it is not very deep.

Haſle, *Svannike*, and *Nexoe* are little towns on the ſea-coaſt which have harbours for ſmall veſſels.

Aakirke lies in the middle of the iſland, and has the privileges of a city. Here the provincial court and the ſynod are held.

Hammerhuus is an old ruinous caſtle ſituated on the north angle of the iſland, and was formerly a ſtrong fortreſs.

There is a map of this iſland in *Reſenius*'s Atlas.

Two geographical miles to the Eaſt of *Bornholm* ſtands a little fort known by the name of *Chriſtianſoe*. It is built on five rugged rocks called *Ertholmen*, between which ſhips may lie commodiouſly at anchor in the middle of the ſea. There are a few other inhabitants on theſe rocks beſides the garriſon. *Chriſtian* V. erected this fort in the year 1684, and had a medal ſtruck on the occaſion.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

FUNEN.

THIS Dioceſe is the ſecond in order, and includes *Funen*, *Langeland*, *Laaland*, *Falſter*, and other ſmaller iſlands. It has two Governors; and under one of theſe are *Funen* and *Langeland*; and *Laaland* and *Falſter* are ſubject to the other.

The iſland of FUNEN, in Daniſh *Fyen*, in Latin *Fionia*, lies between the *Great* and *Little Belt*. It is ten geographical miles in length from *Bogenſee* to *Swenborg*, and nine in breadth from *Aſſens* to *Nyborg*. Its name denotes a fine country, and indeed the whole iſland is fertile and very pleaſant. On this account moſt of the noble families of the kingdom have for many years reſided here; ſo that it is not eaſy to find in any other country of an equal extent ſo many noblemen's ſeats as there are in this iſland. The ſoil yields ſuch plentiful crops of all ſorts of grain, that the inhabitants may annually export above 100,000 barrels of rye, barley, oats and peaſe to *Norway* and *Sweden*, excluſive of their home conſumption. It alſo produces a vaſt quantity of buck-wheat; and this ſort of grain is chiefly cultivated by the inhabitants. They employ a great deal of time and care in breeding bees, and make a great quantity of fine mead or hydromel, which is exported to all parts of the kingdom. The apples that grow in *Funen* are alſo greatly admired; and it produces plenty of eſculent herbs, and hops. In order to prevent too great a conſumption of wood, the inhabitants uſe turf moſtly for fuel. In the diſtrict of *Aſſens* there are two mountains of a conſiderable height, namely, the *Fauſtenberg* and the *Ochſenberg*; and near *Middelfahrt* there is alſo another hill. Here are ſeveral freſh-water lakes, and rivers abounding with fiſh; but none of them are navigable. In the bays, and all along the coaſt, a great quantity of ſea fiſh, particularly cod, herring, eel, turbot, *&c.* are taken. The whole iſland is divided into five *Amts* or Prefectures, which are as follows:

I. The Prefecture of NYBORG, which conſiſts,

1. Of the *Herred*, or diſtrict, of *Bierg*, in which 12 rural churches are included, with 10 noblemen's ſeats, and the Barony of *Scheelſborg*, formerly called *Eſkieldſborg*, which belongs to Baron *Brockdorf*.

2. The *Herred* of *Winding*, which includes 16 rural churches, 10 noblemen's ſeats, and the Barony of *Holkenhavn*, with a noble caſtle which belongs to Baron *Holk*.

3. The

3. The *Herred* of *Aaſum*, in which are 11 rural churches, and 5 noblemen's ſeats.

4. The *Herred* of *Gudme*, which contains 13 rural churches, and as many noblemen's ſeats.

5. The *Herred* of *Salling*, in which are 24 rural churches, 20 noblemen's ſeats, and the Barony of *Brahe-Trolleborg*, which belongs to the Counts of *Reventlau*. It was formerly a monaſtery belonging to the *Ciſtercian* order, and called *Holmekloſter*, or *Holme* in *Funen*, in Latin *Inſula Dei*; but *Henry Ranzau* purchaſed it of *Frederick* II. for 55,000 Rix-dollars in 1561, and called it *Ranzauholm* after his own name. It was afterwards in the poſſeſſion of the unfortunate *Key Lykkes*, and confiſcated to the crown in 1661, in the reign of *Frederick* III. who granted it to *Manderup Brahe* and *Birgitte Trolle* his wife; hence it derives its preſent name, *Brahe-Trolleborg*.

6. The *Herred* of *Sund*, in which are 18 rural churches and 13 noblemen's ſeats. In the village of St. *Jurgen* there is an hoſpital for 30 poor perſons, which was formerly a rich convent. The pleaſant and fertile iſland of *Taaſing* lies over-againſt the town of *Swenborg*; it is two geographical miles long and one broad, and has three churches and ſeveral good villages. On the ſouth-eaſt end of the iſland, *Chriſtian* IV. in 1629, built the caſtle of *Waldemarsburg* on a delightful ſpot; but, in 1677, *Chriſtian* V. gave the whole iſland to the admiral *Niels Juel*, whoſe deſcendants are ſtill in poſſeſſion of it.

Within this Prefecture are the following towns.

Nyborg, in Latin *Neoburgum*, is a ſtrong town on the *Great-Belt*. It is not, indeed, very large; but has a commodious ſituation, and is well built.

The pariſh-church, and the council-houſe are the beſt in the iſland. There is a grammar-ſchool at *Nyborg*, and a harbour, which, indeed, is large, but neither deep enough, nor ſheltered from ſome winds. The inhabitants ſubſiſt partly by accommodating the paſſengers who daily croſs over from hence to *Korſor* in *Seeland* (which is a paſſage of four geographical miles) or return hither from thence; and partly by commerce. The ſhips, that paſs through the *Great-Belt* are obliged to pay toll here; for which purpoſe a man of war is always ſtationed in the *Belt*. All that remains of the ancient royal palace, where *Chriſtian* II. was born in 1481, and, when an infant, carried up to the top of it by a monkey and brought down again without receiving any hurt, is only a large wing with a flat tower a little higher than the roof. It ſerves, at preſent, for a magazine and arſenal. This city was firſt built in 1175, and in the 13th and 14th centuries moſt of the aſſemblies of the ſtates and courts of judicature, particularly the remarkable Diet in 1256, were held here. In 1659, the *Swedes* were totally defeated almoſt under the guns of its caſtle.

Kierteminde, in Latin *Cartemunda*, *quaſi gratum fluminis oſtium*, is a town ſituated on a large bay at the mouth of a river; which forms a very commodious harbour for the exportation of grain, to the great profit of the inhabitants. Formerly, the traders of *Odenſe* had warehouſes in this town. Off the harbour lies the ſmall iſland of *Ramſoe*, which, a few ſpots excepted, is quite covered with trees.

Faaborg is a town ſituated on the ſouthern coaſt in a low and very fertile country. It has a conſiderable trade in grain and all ſorts of proviſions, though its harbour is but very indifferent, and a well-endowed hoſpital. In 1535, this town was ſacked and burnt; and in 1612, 1715, and 1728, it alſo ſuffered extremely by fire. Not far from hence, namely, in the pariſh of *Horne* in the village of *Beutzen* is the uſual paſſage to the iſland of *Alſen*; and in the bay, near the town, lie ſeveral little iſlands, the two largeſt of which, *viz.* *Avernack* and *Lyoe*, have each a church erected on it.

Svenborg or *Svendborg* ſtands in a woody country, on the moſt ſouthern point of land in *Funen*. It has two churches, and the beſt harbour in the iſland; yet it carries on little or no trade. In the 13th century this town was the reſidence of a branch of the royal family, deſcended from king *Abel*. In 1288, a convent of *Gray Friers* was founded here; and in 1433, a congreſs for a peace between king *Waldemar* IV. and the *Hanſe-towns* was held at *Svenborg*. This town has ſuſtained ſeveral ſieges in which it ſuffered greatly.

Sproe or *Sprogoe*, is a ſmall iſland in the middle of the *Great-Belt* about two geographical miles from *Nyborg*, and the ſame diſtance from *Korſor*. It is about $\frac{1}{3}$ of a geographical mile in length, and a muſket-ſhot in breadth. There is only one farm on this iſland; which, however, contains arable land ſufficient for ſixteen barrels of ſeed-corn, beſides ſome paſture for cattle. This iſland is continually decreaſing by the gradual incroachments of the ſea. In winter, veſſels ſailing through the *Great-Belt* are often obliged to put in here.

II. The Prefecture of ODENSE contains,

1. The *Herred* of *Scham*, which includes nine churches and three manors.

2. The *Herred* of *Lunde*, with nine churches and ſeven manors.

3. The *Herred* of *Odenſe*, with eleven churches and eight manors. Among theſe are the convent and Prefecture of St. *Knut*, and the convent and Prefecture of *Dalum* or *Chriſtanthal*. The convent lies near the town of *Odenſe*, in which, indeed, it was firſt founded in the year 1183; but the Society was ſoon after removed hither. There were in this convent both monks and nuns; and it was one of the beſt Foundations on the iſland.

This

This Prefecture derives its name from

Odenſe, or *Odinſoe*, in Latin *Othinia*, *Ottinium*, or *Othenæ*, which is a city of great antiquity, and the capital of the whole Dioceſe. It is pretty large and populous, and the new part of the town is well built; but moſt of it is old and decayed. *Odenſe* is ſuppoſed to have been built before the Chriſtian *Æra*, and to derive its name from the northern idol *Odin*, and not, as ſome imagine, from the emperor *Otho* I. who never was in this city. It is ſituated in a fine plain, on a river which yields a plentiful variety of fiſh, and, about a quarter of a geographical mile below the town, runs into the gulf of *Stegeſtrand*. The length of the city is about a quarter of a geographical mile, and the breadth is about half as much. It has four churches. The cathedral is the moſt remarkable, the inſide of which has been lately repaired and beautified; but the architecture is very old and mean. In a vault behind the altar the remains of the royal martyr king *Knut*, the founder of this church, who was put to death in 1086, or 1087, is ſaid to be interred in a coffin of copper, gilt. In the *Gray Friers* or *Franciſcan* church are interred king *John* and *Chriſtina* his queen, with their ſon *Francis*; and alſo king *Chriſtian* II. The table of the altar, which was the gift of the above-mentioned queen *Chriſtina*, is extremely beautiful. Near this church a ſtately hoſpital was built in the year 1540, which has a refectory, and a chapel, with a particular Preacher to officiate in it. In the times of popery there were four other churches and convents in this city. The king's palace, which is built on the ſpot where the ancient convent of St. *John* formerly ſtood, is neither large, commodious, nor elegant; for it was built only as a lodging for *Frederick* IV. in his occaſional progreſſes through *Funen*. That excellent *Prince* died in this palace in the year 1730. Anciently there was a caſtle on an eminence without the town. In 1621, king *Chriſtian* IV. erected, and liberally endowed a *Gymnaſium* or college in this place, in which are four profeſſors; and this is the only one remaining of many ſuch *Daniſh* ſeminaries of learning. This edifice is but mean. Here is alſo a large cathedral-ſchool conſiſting of ſix claſſes, where all the ſcholars, beſides their inſtruction, receive a ſmall penſion; and 36 of the poorer ſort are here boarded, and provided with all neceſſaries. This ſchool, which is one of the beſt in the whole kingdom, was founded in the 14th century by queen *Margaret*, and improved and liberally endowed by ſome of her royal ſucceſſors and ſeveral private benefactions. In 1716, a lady of the name of *Brahe* founded a convent for young ladies of noble families, in this place. The Provincial Court is held in this city every month in the great hall; and, among other privileges, it appears from ſeveral ancient coins that *Odenſe* had alſo that of coining money. The bay lies about $\frac{1}{4}$ of a geographical mile from the city; however, it carries on ſo conſiderable a trade as to employ 34 large ſhips, beſides above 100 ſmaller veſſels; and the like number arrive here annually. *Odenſe* ſup-

plies the greateſt part of the army, and eſpecially the cavalry, with all their leather accoutrements; and is particularly famous for gloves. A conſiderable cloth manufactory has been lately erected here, near the river, and likewiſe a ſugar-houſe, and another for ſoap-boiling. It is not only the reſidence of the General-Governour and the Biſhop of *Funen*, but has alſo ſeveral noble and opulent families among its inhabitants. The *Daniſh* language is, by many, thought to be ſpoken here in its greateſt purity. The See of *Odenſe* was erected by king *Harald Blaatand*, before the year 980. And, after it had been aboliſhed during the perſecution of *Sueno*, it was reſtored by *Knut the Great* in 1020. A Synod, or aſſembly of the Clergy, was held here in 1205, and a Diet in 1527. At another Diet held here in 1538, a ſolid foundation was laid for the Reformation of the whole Kingdom, and the hierarchy and diſcipline of the *Daniſh* church was ſettled. In 1580, the grand ceremony of the inveſtiture of the three Princes of *Sleſwick* was performed here by king *Frederick* II. In 1657 another Diet was held in this city, which was the laſt but one of thoſe aſſemblies of the States in *Denmark*. In 1701 a ſubſidy-treaty was concluded here betwixt the king of *Denmark*, *England* and *Holland*. In 1724 a trading Company was eſtabliſhed at *Odenſe* by a very favourable royal charter.

III. The Prefecture of RUGAARD conſiſts of the *Herred* of *Schoubye*, and contains ten pariſh churches, a like number of manors, and the following places of note.

Bovenſe, which is a ſmall town. Its inhabitants carry on ſome trade to *Norway*; and both in the town and the adjacent country, which is called *North Sletting*, blankets and rugs are manufactured, and a great quantity of cummin-ſeed is ſown. The paſſage from hence to *Klackring* in *Jutland* is two geographical miles.

The County of *Guldenſtein*, with a fine ſeat of the ſame name, belongs to the heirs of *Count Knut*. It is alſo known by the name of *Engaard*.

IV. The Prefecture of HINDSGAVEL conſiſts of the *Herred* of *Wend*, and contains 19 rural churches, 9 manors, and the following places of note.

Hindſgavel, which was anciently a royal palace, ſtands not far from *Middleſahrt* on a ſmall promontory in the *Little Belt*. It was granted by king *Frederick* III. together with ſome lands annexed to it, to *Erick Banner*, who cauſed moſt of the buildings to be pulled down. Near it, in the *Little Belt*, lies a little iſland called *Fanoe*, which has good paſture land and woods, and is inhabited by ſeveral ſubſtantial peaſants.

The County of *Wedelsborg*, formerly called *Iverſnas*, and a caſtle of the ſame name, belong to Count *Wedel*.

The Barony of *Putbus*, which conſiſts of the two manors of *Einſiedelsburg* and *Kiorup-Gaard*.

In this diſtrict alſo lies *Middelfahrt*, a ſmall town on the *Little Belt*, which is not above a quarter of a geographical mile in breadth in this place, and

and is called the *Middlefahrt-ſund*. This is the place where they uſually ferry over to *Snoghoy*, which is directly oppoſite to it in *Jutland*. In 1290 *Middlefahrt* was entirely conſumed by fire.

About half a geographical mile from hence, oppoſite to *Fredericia*, is another ferry into *Jutland*, which is called *Striebsfarge*, or *Striebsfahr*, where *Frederick* III. deſigned to build a town which was to be called *Sophienodde*; but that project was never put in execution.

V. The Prefecture of ASSENS conſiſts of the *Herred* of *Boog*, which contains 21 pariſhes and 10 manors. It derives its name from *Aſſens* or *Aſnes* (i. e. *Promontorium ſanctum*, or holy promontory) a town ſituated on the *Little Belt*, and which was formerly a place of great note. In 1535 it was diſmantled and plundered; but in 1628 it was not only rebuilt, but ſurrounded with a wall and moats; of theſe, however, there are no remains at preſent. The buildings in this town, for the moſt part, are but mean. The great church is ſuppoſed to have been built in 1486. Before the Reformation *Aſſens* was famous for a convent of *Franciſcans*. Its harbour is none of the beſt; yet they export a great quantity of corn and other commodities. The uſual paſſage from hence to *Aaroeſundſfarge*, in the Prefecture of *Haderſleben*, over the *Little Belt*, is about two geographical miles. At *Oxenberg*, about half a geographical mile from hence, *Chriſtian* III. defeated Count *Chriſtopher* of *Oldenburg* with his whole faction in 1535.

The Iſland of LANGELAND.

This iſland is ſeven geographical miles in length from north to ſouth, and one in breadth. It is very fertile in every part. In the 13th century it was an appenage to ſome of the princes of the blood and was called a principality: But now it is only a County; the greateſt part of it being annexed to *Tranekiar*, a ſeat belonging to Count *Ahlefeld*. However, it is one of the beſt Counties in the Kingdom. It is under the ſame General Governor as the iſland of *Funen*, and contains only the royal Prefecture of *Tranekiar*, which includes the *North* and *South Herreds*, each conſiſting of ſeven churches or pariſhes.

Rudkiobing is the only town on the iſland, and is of the middle ſize. It carries on a conſiderable trade in corn and proviſions. There is but one church, and one ſchool, in this town: The latter was founded in 1619 by a wealthy lady. On the three ſides towards the land *Rudkiobing* is fortified with a wall and a ditch.

Tranekiar, Count *Ahlefeld*'s caſtle, was formerly one of the ſtrongeſt places in the Kingdom. It is an ancient ſtructure ſurrounded with a very thick wall, and ſtands on a ſteep high mountain.

In the *South-Herred* is a high promontory called *Fackebierg*.

The

The Iſland of LAALAND, *or* LOLLAND.

This iſland is on the eaſt ſide ſeparated from *Falſter* by the ſtraits called *Guldborgſund*, and on every other ſide is ſurrounded by the *Belt* and the *Eaſt Sea* or *Baltic*. It is four geographical miles diſtant from the iſland of *Femern*. *Laaland* is ſeven geographical miles and a half in length, three in breadth, and is the moſt fertile ſpot in the king of *Denmark*'s dominions. This iſland produces plenty of all ſorts of grain; particularly very fine wheat, and excellent peaſe. It is alſo famous for a kind of red fruit called *Manna*, which reſembles ſweet almonds in taſte, and grows on a long ſlender ſtem; and abounds with all ſorts of apples, *&c.*

Laaland is not without woods, which, however, are more frequent on the eaſt than on the weſt ſide of the iſland. The inhabitants make little account of grazing, as they find that agriculture turns out to greater advantage. But notwithſtanding all theſe conveniencies, as the country lies low and the ſoil is damp, the air is very unhealthy. Of all the inhabitants of this iſland the clergy are the beſt provided for according to their rank. The nobility are numerous here; and many of them have very fine ſeats and conſiderable eſtates. This iſland, like *Falſter*, has a particular Governor; but in ſpiritual affairs both are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Funen*. It contains three Prefectures, *viz.*

I. The Prefecture of HALSTED, which comprehends the *North* and *South Herreds*. In the latter are 16 churches, and 11 in the former.

II. The Prefecture of AALHOLM, which conſiſts of the *Herreds* of *Fuglſe* and *Moeſe*. In the former are 19, and in the latter 18 churches. In the village near the church of *Radſted* there is a good hoſpital.

III. The Prefecture of MARIEBOE-KLOSTER, which conſiſts of the eſtates that formerly belonged to the Convent of *Marieboe*. Other places of note on this iſland are the following towns.

Naſkow, in Latin *Naſcovia*, the capital of the iſland, was anciently well fortified; but is now only encompaſſed with a wall. It is a town of the middling ſize, and handſomely built. The inhabitants are wealthy, and trade in the produce of the country which is very fertile. The *Jews* are here allowed the public exerciſe of their religion, and have a ſynagogue for that purpoſe. In this town are an hoſpital and a grammar-ſchool, both well endowed. Here is alſo a pretty good harbour. In 1420, *Naſkow* ſuffered extremely by fire; in 1570, it was plundered by the *Lubeckers*; and in 1659, it ſurrendered to the *Swedes* after a vigorous reſiſtance of thirteen weeks.

Rodbye, in Latin *Erythropolis*, is a market town with a commodious harbour. A great quantity of corn of the growth of *Laaland* is exported from hence.

The

The paſſage from *Rodbye* to the iſland of *Femern*, and from thence to *Heiligenhafen* in *Holſtein*, is about four geographical miles over.

Marieboe, in Latin *Habitaculum Mariæ*, anciently called *Skirminge*, is ſituated by a large lake abounding with fiſh. The inhabitants have a conſiderable home trade. Here the Provincial court is held for *Laaland* and *Falſter*, and the clergy aſſemble every year to hold the eccleſiaſtical court. The *Marieboe* Convent, a very grand ſtructure which lies at the weſt end of the town, was founded in 1416 and 1417 for a religious ſociety of nuns: But, in 1623, its large revenues were ſequeſtered for the uſe of the Crown.

Nyſtad, in Latin *Neoſtadium*, is not large, but a flouriſhing town. It was formerly of a much larger extent; but in 1560, and 1700, it ſuffered greatly by fire. This town carries on a conſiderable trade to the dutchy of *Mecklenburg* and other provinces of *Germany*. Here are ſtill ſome remains of the ſtately monaſtery built at *Nyſtad* in the year 1286.

Saxkiobing is an old ſmall town, ſituated on a large fruitful plain. A good deal of corn is exported from hence in flat-bottomed veſſels.

In this iſland are alſo the following Counties and Baronies:

The County of *Chriſtianſade*, which of late has been called *Chriſtiansburg*, belongs to the Counts of the *Reventlau* family.

The County of *Chriſtianſholm*, formerly called *Aalholm*, belongs to the *Rabee* family. The caſtle, which ſtands near *Nyſtad*, was in ancient times the uſual reſidence of the Princes of *Laaland*, and is well fortified.

The County of *Knuthenburg* belongs to Count *Knuth*.

The Barony of *Juelinge*, formerly called *Halſted-kloſter*, which belongs to Baron *Juelwind*, lies at a ſmall diſtance from *Naſkow*.

The Barony of *Wintersburg* belongs to Baron *Gedde*.

The Barony of *Chriſtianſthal*.

Laſtly, it is alſo to be noted, that the iſlands *Faoe* and *Femoe*, which belong to the *Herred* of *Fuglſe*, lie about a quarter of a geographical mile from each other; and that the former is about the ſame diſtance from the village of *Kragnes* in *Laaland*, and lies between *Laaland*, and the iſland *Vairoe* which belongs to the church on *Faoe*. Theſe iſlands are not properly placed in the maps.

The Iſland of FALSTER, in Latin *Falſtria*.

This iſland reſembles thoſe deſcribed above as to its ſoil, *&c.* and is ſubject to the ſame General Governor; but in eccleſiaſtical matters it is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Funen*. It lies at the diſtance of two leagues from *Seeland*; and the promontory called *Gedſers Odde*, which extends a great way to the ſouth, is ſix geographical miles from *Warnemunde* in *Mecklenburg*. The length of the iſland is ſix geographical miles; but its breadth

towards the north end is not above three, and towards the ſouthern extremity hardly one geographical mile. *Falſter* may be called the Orchard of *Denmark*, for it yields abundance of fruit: all ſorts of game are alſo in great plenty here. This iſland is commonly the dowry of the Queens of *Denmark*. It conſiſts of the ſingle Prefecture of *Nyekiobing*, which contains two *Herreds*. In the *South Herred* there are thirteen rural churches, and fifteen in the *North Herred*. The latter comprehends the iſland of *Bogoe*, which lies between *Seeland* and *Falſter*; and the church and village of *Kipping*, which is famous for a medicinal ſpring. The church of *Kipping* was remarkable for its reliques, *&c.* in popiſh times.

The towns on this iſland are,

Nyekiobing, in Latin *Neapolis Danica* or *Nicopia*, which is one of the moſt ancient towns in the whole Kingdom. It is ſituated on the ſtraits called *Guldborgſund*, and is a pretty large well built town. However, it is not in ſo flouriſhing a condition as it was formerly when the Queens Dowager, and other royal perſonages conſtantly reſided here. On the land ſide it is fortified with a wall and a ditch; and carries on a conſiderable trade. Here is a free grammar ſchool of four claſſes, and an hoſpital which is one of the beſt endowed in the whole kingdom. The royal palace, built in 1589 by Queen *Sophia*, Dowager of *Frederick* II. and which, according to others, is ſtill more ancient, is a great ornament to the town. This old caſtle, next to *Fredericksburg* and *Kronenburg*, is the largeſt and moſt magnificent of all the royal palaces; and its ſituation is likewiſe extremely pleaſant and delightful. Queen *Sophia* reſided in this palace from 1588 till 1631, as did alſo her grandſon Prince *Chriſtian*, his Conſort *Magdalena Sybilla*, and the Dowager of *Chriſtian* V. *Charlotta Amelia*, who died here in 1714. Since that time the caſtle has been neglected, and ſome of the apartments are unfurniſhed and uninhabited. The garden, which lies not far from the palace, is pretty large, and kept in good order. In 1288 *Nyekiobing* was plundered; and in 1507 a remarkable congreſs was held here between king *John* and thoſe *Hanſe-towns* which lie on the *Baltic*.

Stubbekiobing, a pretty ancient but mean little town. The inhabitants carry on ſome trade by ſea through the *Grunenſund*, or Straits which run between *Falſter* and *Moen*.

The PENINSULA *of*

JUTLAND.

THE peninſula of JUTLAND, in Daniſh JYDLAND or JYLLAND, in Latin *Jutia*, was called *Cymbria* or *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica* by the Ancients, to whom it was ſufficiently known, as appears from *Tacitus* aud *Pliny*. We learn from *Homer*, that the ancient *Greeks* conceived a diſmal idea of the ſtate of the inhabitants of this country. For they erroneouſly ſuppoſed that the ſun never gladdened them with its beams. This large peninſula, from time immemorial, has loſt its ancient name, and is no longer called *Cimbria*, but *Jutland*, in common diſcourſe. It lies betwixt the *Baltic* and the *North Sea*, and is ſeparated from *Holſtein* by the *Eider* and the *Lewen*. From the river *Eider* to its northern extremity at *Skaunhorn* or Cape *Skau*, it is computed to be fifty-two geographical miles in length; and from *Bouberg* to *Naſſet* it is twenty-four geographical miles in breadth. As it is divided into *Norre* and *Sonder Jylland*, i. e. *North* and *South Jutland*, the latter of which is commonly called the Dutchy of *Schleſwig* or *Sleſwick*; I ſhall treat of each diviſion ſeparately: And, Firſt, of

NORTH JUTLAND.

This part of the peninſula is commonly called by the general name of JUTLAND, and is bounded by the ſea on three ſides; but on the fourth or ſouth ſide it is divided from *South Jutland* or *Sleſwick* by the rivers *Kolding* and *Skotburg*. It is thirty-eight geographical miles in length, from fifteen to twenty in breadth; and of all the territories belonging to the crown of *Denmark*, it is the largeſt and yields the greateſt revenue. The middle part of it, excepting a few ſpots of arable land, is nothing but heaths and moors, which, however, afford good paſture for oxen, ſheep, and goats. But the other parts (which are of a greater extent) are exceeding fertile, as appears from the large quantity of all ſorts of grain annually exported from hence to *Sweden*, *Norway*, and *Holland*; and from the conſiderable ſums accruing to the inhabitants from the ſale of oxen, horſes and hogs. Hence *Jutland* is commonly ſaid to be 'The land of bacon and rye-bread.' Here is alſo a great plenty of ſea and freſh-water fiſh of all kinds; but the largeſt freſh water lakes, and which yield moſt fiſh, are near the palace of *Skanderburg*. The chief bays and gulfs are on the eaſt ſide of this peninſula; and of theſe

the principal is the gulf of *Lym*, called *Lymfurt* or *Lymfiorden*, in Latin *Sinus Lymicus*, which runs from the *Cattegat* twenty geographical miles into the land, and widening gradually, forms ſeveral iſlands. It is navigable and abounds with fiſh; and, on the weſt ſide of *Jutland*, is ſeparated from the *North-ſea* only by a narrow tract of land. The other gulfs in *North Jutland*, which alſo form good harbours, are thoſe of *Mariager*, *Randers*, *Kalloe*, *Ebeltoft*, *Horſens*, *Weile*, and *Kolding*, on the eaſt ſide; and on the weſt ſide thoſe called *Lyſter* and *Graae-Dib*, *Nyminds-Gab* and *Torſkminde*. Here are a great number of ſmall ſtreams; but *Guden* is the largeſt river, from which *Jutland* is ſaid to derive its name. It runs through the Dioceſe of *Aarhuus*, in which it alſo riſes on the borders of the Dioceſe of *Ripen*. This river receives above forty ſmaller ſtreams; becomes navigable near *Randers*; and, after a courſe of about twenty-five geographical miles, falls into the *Cattegat*. Next to this the moſt noted rivers are the *Skiern* or *Lonburg*, the *Holſterbroe*, *Warde*, and *Nyps*. I have been informed by a very ingenious and learned correſpondent, that large pieces of amber have been found on the northern and weſtern coaſts of this peninſula.

Jutland is every where interſperſed with hills and eminencies, and, on the eaſt ſide, with fine woods of oak, beach, fir, birch, *&c.* but the weſt ſide is not ſo woody; ſo that the inhabitants are obliged to uſe turf and heath for fuel: Here is alſo great plenty of all kind of game. The air is ſomewhat keen and cold, eſpecially towards the *North-ſea*, in the Dioceſe of *Ripen*, and in the *Syſſels* of *Mors*, *Tye*, and *Wend*. The *Jutlanders* are of a robuſt, vigorous conſtitution, and reſolute temper; and ſeem to have raiſed themſelves to a ſtate of freedom ſuperior to that of the other inhabitants of *Denmark*. Many of the *Jutland* peaſants have freeholds, for which they pay only a ſmall acknowledgment to the Lord of the Manor, and the public taxes. The *Daniſh* language is ſpoke with leſs purity and elegance in *Jutland* than in the other provinces; and the *Jutlanders* have alſo a particular accent. *Fredericia* is the only place where the exerciſe of any religion beſides *Lutheraniſm* is tolerated. The *Codex Chriſtianeus*, or the new and complete *Lowbuch*, has ſuperſeded the old *Jutland* law, and now takes place here as well as in the other provinces of *Denmark*.

North Jutland was formerly divided into nine *Syſſels* or large diſtricts, namely, *Wend*, *Himmer*, *Cimmer* or *Cimber*, *Salling*, *Har-Lovet*, *Aabe*, *Ommer*, *Jelling*, and *Almind* or *Baring*: But this ancient diviſion is aboliſhed by the royal Courts of Judicature, and *North Jutland* is now compoſed of four Dioceſes or General Governments. Each of theſe has its Biſhop and General Governor; and they derive their names from the four chief Cities. In deſcribing this country we ſhall follow the modern, and at the ſame time take ſome notice of the ancient diviſion.

The

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

AALBORG.

THIS Dioceſe comprehends the moſt northern part of *Jutland*, and is divided from the other provinces by the Gulf of *Lymfurt*, and would be an iſland were it not for a narrow iſthmus which lies between the *North Sea* * and the Gulf of *Lymfurt*, and joins the diſtricts of *Tye* and *Har-Syſſel* together. The length of this Dioceſe, from *Tyeholm* to the extreme point of the promontory of *Skagen*, is ſomething above eighteen geographical miles, and its greateſt breadth, from the ſmall fort of *Hals* to the village of *Torup*, in the Herred of *Hundborg*, which lies on the *North Sea*, is nearly equal to the length of it. The ſoil in this Dioceſe is of different qualities and goodneſs, as I ſhall ſhew in the ſequel. *Aalborg* was erected into a biſhop's ſee in the year 1065. This province was by the ancients ſometimes called *Wendel*, *Wandal* or *Wanſal Syſſel*, from the diſtrict or *Syſſel* of *Wend*, and ſometimes *Borglum* from the ancient caſtle of *Borglum*. The ancient biſhops reſided at *Aggersborg* on the *Lymfurt*, where at preſent the ferry called *Aggerſunds-fehre* is. The chief manors in this Dioceſe are thirty-ſix in number. Nature has divided it into four parts or diſtricts, which are ſubdivided into a certain number of Prefectures.

I. WENDSYSSEL, in Latin *Vandalia*, *Vinilia*, or *Venulia*, is the largeſt and moſt remarkable diſtrict of the four abovementioned, being ten geographical miles in length, and eight in breadth towards the ſouth; but at the north-eaſt extremity the land ends in a point reſembling a horn †.

The Prefectures in this diſtrict are,

1. AALBORGUUS, which contains the *Herreds* of *Horn*, conſiſting of fourteen pariſhes; *Kiar* of thirteen, and *Hvetboe* of ſeven pariſhes.

2. SEIGLSTRUP. The pariſhes belonging to this Prefecture are ſcattered in ſeveral *Herreds* among other diſtricts.

3. AASTRUP, which comprehends the *Herred* of *Wenneberg* with twelve churches, and that of *Jerlef* with the like number.

4. BORGLUM, which conſiſts of one *Herred* of the ſame name, including fourteen churches or pariſhes.

* The Author calls it the *Weſt Sea* in deſcribing *Jutland*, becauſe it lies weſt of that province; but I have given this Sea the name it is uſually known by to avoid confuſion. The ſame may be obſerved of the *Baltic*, which our Author commonly calls the *Eaſt Sea*; a name little known in *England*.

† This point of land or cape is called a horn in *Daniſh*.

In

In the WEND-SYSSEL or diſtrict are the following towns and remarkable places.

Skavn or *Skagen*, in Latin *Skavenia*, is a ſmall town which, not long ſince, obtained the rights and privileges of a city. It ſtands on the extremity of the land, in the *Herred* of *Horn*. The inhabitants ſubſiſt partly by fiſhing; and partly by carrying on a little trade, and piloting ſhips about theſe dangerous coaſts to and from the *Baltic*. The ſand-bank, called *Skager-Rack*, extends itſelf from *Cape Skagen* a great way into the ſea, on which account a large coal fire is conſtantly kept up there in the winter nights, as a mark for ſhips to avoid it. For this laudable purpoſe, in the year 1751, a new tower ſixty-four feet high was erected oppoſite to this ſand bank, on the ſpot where the former light houſe ſtood, which had been demoliſhed by the violence of the ſea.

Fladſtrand is a mean market town, but of ſome note for the paſſage from hence to *Norway*. Here is a pretty good harbour defended by three forts built on rocks which lie in the ſea; but it is not ſecured from all winds. Moſt of the inhabitants live by fiſhing.

Hiorring, in Latin *Hioringum*, is a ſmall country town, and was formerly a Biſhop's See, before it was removed by *Frederick* II. to the city of *Aalborg*. Here a Synod of all the Provoſts of the Dioceſe of *Aalborg* is held annually in the month of *May*. This was once a large town and had three churches; but in the year 1693 it was almoſt entirely deſtroyed by fire. *Hiorring* and *Fladſtrand* lie in the *Herred* of *Wenneberg*.

Sabye, in Latin *Sæboium*, is a ſmall ancient town, ſituated on a river of the ſame name, which here falls into the ſea and forms a ſmall commodious harbour. It carries on a conſiderable trade. In the year 1160 a convent was erected in this town, and in 1469, *Marieſtad*, another convent belonging to the order of St. *Bridget*, was alſo founded here.

Borglum was the caſtle where the popiſh biſhop formerly reſided, and from which the whole Dioceſe derived its name. In the year 1537 it was diſſolved, and the revenue of it ſequeſtered. It is now a manor, from which the Prefecture of BORGLUM takes its name. The town of *Sabye*, mentioned above, lies in this Prefecture.

Hals-Schanze defends the entrance into the gulf called *Lymfurt*, and with its fort makes a village, or ſmall town.

Aalborg, in Latin *Alburgum*, the capital of this Dioceſe, lies on the ſouth ſide of *Lymfurt*, juſt on the borders of the Dioceſe of *Wiborg*. It is a large, populous, ancient city, and next to *Copenhagen* the moſt opulent and beſt built in the whole Kingdom. Its ſituation is very low, and two rivers run through it, which are called the *Eaſt* and the *Weſt River*. It has two pariſh churches, an hoſpital with a chapel, and two alms houſes. Here is alſo a Cathedral School of ſix claſſes, founded by *Chriſtian* III. in 1553, adjoining to which is the *Convent-haus*, as it is called, where the clergy reſide.

ſide. An epiſcopal palace was built here by *Chriſtian* V. in 1684; and a royal palace ſtands near the water-ſide called *Aalborg-huus*, where the General Governor reſides. *Aalborg* has an Exchange for merchants, and likewiſe a deep and ſafe harbour; but the entrance or mouth of it at *Hals* is ſomething difficult. A great quantity of herrings and grain is exported from hence, as alſo muſkets, piſtols, ſaddles, and gloves, for which this city is famous. King *John* died here in the year 1512. In 1530 *Aalborg* was greatly damaged by fire; and in 1534 it was taken by the famous pirate *Clement*, who committed great violences in it. In 1546 it obtained moſt of its valuable privileges. In 1554 it was diſmembered from the Dioceſe of *Wiborg*, and erected into a biſhop's See. Laſtly, in 1643 and 1658, the *Swedes* made themſelves maſters of this city.

Hirzholmen are three ſmall iſlands lying in the *Cattegat*, at the diſtance of a geographical mile from *Fladſtrand*, and inhabited by fiſhermen. Theſe iſlands make a pariſh, which belongs to the *Herred* of *Horn*. They are very famous for fiſheries: For the whole large fleet of fiſhing-veſſels which arrives annually at *Copenhagen*, and ſupplies both the city and all the adjacent country with dried fiſh, comes from theſe iſlands.

II. HAN-HERRED lies weſt of *Wendſyſſel*, and is about ten geographical miles in length. This Diſtrict is a peninſula, and joins to *Wendſyſſel* by a narrow iſthmus which lies between the *Lymfurt* gulf and the *North-ſea*. On the other ſide it has the diſtrict of *Tye*; and towards the north and weſt of it lie the great ſand-banks called *Klinte*. There is no town of note, nor one good harbour in *Han-herred*; however, the inhabitants get a comfortable ſubſiſtance by fiſhing. This diſtrict is divided into *Eaſt* and *Weſt Han-herred*; the former having ten and the latter twelve churches. St. *Jurgen's* hill, near *Aagard*, is famous for an obſtinate battle fought there in the year 1441, in which 25,000 of the peaſants who had taken arms were killed on the ſpot. *Han-herred* belongs to the Prefecture of *Aalborghuus*.

III. TYE, is a Diſtrict of ſeven geographical miles in length, and two in breadth. It lies between *Han-herred* and *Har-ſyſſel* in the Dioceſe of *Ripen*, to which it is joined by a very narrow iſthmus which runs between the *North-ſea* and the gulf of *Lymfurt*, and is called *Harboe-Oere*. This Diſtrict is deſtitute of wood, but has excellent paſtures, and breeds the fineſt horſes in *Denmark*. It is divided into two Prefectures, namely,

1. *Oerum*, to which belong the *Herreds* of *Hundborg* with 10 churches; *Hillerlef* with 14; *Haſſing* with 15; and *Ref* with 12 churches or pariſhes.

2. The Prefecture of *Weſterwiig*, which has no *Herreds*.

The chief places in this Diſtrict are as follows.

Tyſted is a town of good trade, ſituated on a river which runs into the gulf of *Lymfurt*.

Heſſoer

Heſſoer is a village, to which indeed in 1533 *Chriſtian* III. granted the privileges of a city: But it has not reaped any advantage from them yet.

Near the village of *Siroing* in the *Herred* of *Hundborg* the walls and ditches of the ancient celebrated caſtle of *Sioringburg* are to be ſeen.

Hoxooe is a ſea-port in the pariſh of *Oeſterild* in the *Herred* of *Hillerlef*.

Weſterwiig in the *Herred* of *Ref* was formerly a famous convent, but has been ſince converted into a nobleman's ſeat.

Ottenſund is a little town, where there is a ferry, in the ſame *Herred*.

IV. MORS, a ſmall but fruitful Diſtrict, lies between *Tye* and *Salling*, and is quite environed by the gulf of *Lymfurt*. It is three geographical miles in length and two in breadth. It conſiſts of the *South-Herred*, containing 16 churches, and the *North-Herred* including 15 pariſhes. Both theſe *Herreds* in civil matters are ſubject to the Prefect of *Hald* in the Dioceſe of *Wiborg*; but in religious affairs are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Aalborg*. The Prefecture of *Durholm* has no *Herreds*, but conſiſts of the lands that once belonged to a convent; which were ſequeſtered at the Reformation, and converted into a royal Fief. On this iſland, in the *South-Herred*, lies

Nyekioping, a ſmall but thriving town, which has a good harbour and carries on a conſiderable trade. There are three towns of this name in *Denmark*.

Note. The Prefect of *Aalborg-huus* preſides in civil affairs over the following *Herreds*, though they lie in the Dioceſe of *Wiborg*, and conſtitute the *Syſſel* of *Himmer*.

Fleſkum-Herred, which contains 12 churches. In the pariſh of *Gunnerip* is a remarkable tomb of the Pagan king *Snio* and his queen *Tufu*, who lived about the end of the 4th century; and in whoſe reign the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* ſet out from *Denmark* on their expeditions in ſearch of new ſettlements.

Hornum-Herred, containing 15 pariſhes, and the town of *Nibe* which is ſituated on the *Lymfurt* gulf, and is well known for its great herring-fiſhery. This town is in the Barony of *Lindenwold*, an eſtate belonging to the Count of *Danneſkiold*.

Slet-Herred with 15 churches. The town of *Logſtor* or *Lyxtoer* on the gulf of *Lymfurt* reaps great advantage from its herring-fiſhery. Here the *Lymfurt* or gulf of *Lym* being full of ſhallows is not navigable for ſhips of burden. In this *Herred* alſo lies the fine Manor of *Biornſholm*, where *Waldemar* I. in 1158, founded a rich *Bernardine* convent called *Vita Schola*, *Vitſkyld*, *Vidskiol*, or *Vitskol*, with a church which ſurpaſſed moſt churches in the North in magnificence, but at preſent is all in ruins. When this convent was diſſolved, *Frederick* II. exchanged it in 1573 with its re-

venues for *Stenalt*, with *Biorn Anderſen*, a privy-counſellor, who gave it the name of *Biornſholm*.

Hellum-Herred, which contains fourteen churches or pariſhes.

Aars-Herred, which includes fourteen churches. And, laſtly,

Hinſted-Herred, conſiſting of fourteen churches or pariſhes.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

WIBORG.

THIS Dioceſe is bounded to the North by the Gulf called *Lymfurt*, by the *Cattegat* to the Eaſt, by the Dioceſes of *Aarhuus* and *Ripen* to the South, and by the latter alſo to the Weſt. It is ten geographical miles in length, twelve in breadth, and, on account of its great loſſes, is reckoned the leaſt of the four Dioceſes into which *North Jutland* is divided. It formerly conſiſted of three *Syſſels*, namely,

1. *Himmer-Syſſel*; whoſe ſix *Herreds* have been ſpoken of in the Dioceſe of *Aalborg*.

2. *Ommer-Syſſel*, which contained the *Herreds* of *Stefring*, *Odenſild*, *Hald*, and *Gelo*; and likewiſe thoſe of *Rind*, *Norlyng*, *Middelſom* and *Fiend*, with the towns of *Wiborg*, *Randers*, *Mariager*, and *Hobroe*.

3. *Salling-Syſſel*, which included four *Herreds*, and the town of *Skive*. But at preſent only half of *Ommer-Syſſel* and *Salling-Syſſell* belong to the Dioceſe of *Wiborg*. Its weſtern ſide, for the moſt part, conſiſts of barren waſtes; but the northern parts, eſpecially *Salling-Syſſel* or the Prefecture of *Skivehuus*, are very fertile, and famous for breeding horſes. The *Herred* of *Rind* is remarkable for the fine rye it produces. *Wiborg* was erected into a biſhop's See in 1065, by *Sveno* II. and the name of the firſt biſhop of it was *Heribert*. This Dioceſe is divided into two Prefectures and contains forty-ſeven fine manors.

I. The Prefecture of HALD, ſo called form an ancient caſtle built on a lake, which formerly belonged to the popiſh * biſhops of *Wiborg*, who alſo made it their *Aſylum*. The two *Herreds* of the iſle of *Mors* in the Dioceſe of *Aalborg* belong to this Prefecture, and likewiſe the following *Herreds*, viz. *Norling* with twelve churches; *Middelſom* with ſixteen churches;

* It is ſurpriſing that the author and ſeveral other proteſtant writers uſe the words *Catholic* and *Popiſh* as ſynonimous terms. Though the former is generally uſed by the author, I have rendered it by the latter; or reſtrained the ſenſe by adding *Roman* to it.

Sondezlyng with fourteen churches; *Rind* with eighteen, and the *Herred* of *Fiend* with eighteen churches.

II. The Prefecture of SKIVEHUUS, which is the other part of the District or *Syſſel* of *Salling*, is five geographical miles in length, and three in breadth. It is a peninſula, ſurrounded on three ſides by the Gulf of *Lymfurt*, and contains, 1. The *Herred* of *Harre*, which includes ten churches. 2. The *North-Herred* with nine churches. 3. The *Herred* of *Rodding* with the like number. 4. The *Herred* of *Hinborg* with eight churches.

In this Dioceſe are the following places of note.

Wiburg or *Viborg*, in Latin *Viburgum*, is the capital of this Dioceſe and of all *North Jutland*. It ſtands, almoſt in the centre of the latter, on the lake of *Aſmild*, which abounds with fiſh. It is one of the moſt ancient cities in the whole kingdom, if not prior to all the reſt. It was formerly ſo large and opulent, that before the Reformation it contained twelve churches and ſix convents. Its circuit at preſent is near half a geographical mile, and includes three pariſh-churches, three market-places, ſix gates, and twenty-eight ſtreets and lanes. *Viborg* is ſtill the reſidence of a General-Governor, and a Biſhop's See. The cathedral was founded in 1169, and the *Auguſtine* college contiguous to it was built at the ſame time. It was viſited with great devotion, on account of the body of St. *Kield* or *Kettil* who was formerly Biſhop of this See, and a great number of other reliques. Behind the altar, in a leaden coffin, lies king *Erick Glipping*, who was murdered in the year 1286. This church was burnt down in 1726; but proper meaſures were immediately taken for rebuilding it. Cloſe to the *Gray-Friars* church, which is alſo newly rebuilt, ſtands the hoſpital. The epiſcopal or cathedral ſchool which was founded here a little before the Reformation by *George Friis*, the laſt popiſh biſhop of this See, has ſix maſters with handſome ſalaries, and a royal foundation for poor ſcholars. Here is alſo a ſtately edifice where the provincial Court is held monthly for all *North-Jutland*. As *Viborg* was the place where the States of *Jutland* formerly uſed to hold their Diets and other ſolemn aſſemblies, it was more frequented and richer than it is at preſent: However, the monthly provincial Courts, and the great *Eaſter-Snapſling* or Fair, which begins on the 26th of *April* and laſts a fortnight, are no ſmall advantages to this city. The territory belonging to it is two geographical miles in circumference. Here the ancient kings of *Denmark* received the homage of the States; and in 948, a Diet was convened at *Viborg* by king *Harald Blaatand*. *Popo* laid hold of that opportunity to preach the Goſpel of Chriſt, and his endeavours were crowned with uncommon ſucceſs. In this city the States paid homage to *Chriſtian* II. in the year 1523; and, in 1528, here was begun the Reformation in *Denmark*. In the year 1606, this city was entirely deſtroyed by fire, and in 1726 the beſt and largeſt part of it was burnt

burnt a ſecond time; but the damages it then ſuſtained were ſoon repaired.

Aſmind, or rather *Aſmild*, a celebrated *Auguſtine* convent, ſtands on the other ſide of the lake, directly oppoſite to *Viborg*. It was founded in 1164; but is now converted into a royal Fief. In the neighbourhood of this place are two remarkable vallies known by the names of *Little* and *Great Nordmand-Dal*, the place of rendezvous of the warlike *Normans*, when they emigrated to *Germany* and *France* in the ninth century.

Skive, in Latin *Schiva* or *Schevia*, is a very old, ſmall, and ill built town, in the *Herred* of *Hinborg* and diſtrict of *Salling*. It carries on a pretty good trade in horſes, horned cattle, and corn, by means of the gulf of *Lymfurt*, and the rivers which run into it. The old royal palace of *Skivehuus*, which at preſent belongs to a noble family, ſtands on the river that waters this town. *Skive* ſuffered extremely by fire in 1715 and 1725.

Leſſoe is an iſland in the *Cattegat*. Though it is but three geographical miles from *Sabye* in the Dioceſe of *Aalborg*, yet it belongs to the Dioceſe of *Viborg*, and is a part of *Norlyng Herred* in the Prefecture of *Hald*. It is a pretty fertile ſpot, three geographical miles in length and one in breadth. There are three churches on this iſland; and the greateſt part of its revenues goes to the Chapter of *Viborg*. At a little diſtance from *Leſſoe* lies the dangerous rock called *Niding*, which is much frequented by the fiſhermen.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

AARHUUS.

THIS borders on the Dioceſe of *Viborg* near the gulf of *Mariager*, and extends itſelf along the *Cattegat* about fifteen geographical miles in length, and from eight to nine miles in breadth. This Dioceſe is preferable to any other in *Jutland*, and the extraordinary fertility of its ſoil enables the inhabitants to export very large quantities of grain every year. It is diverſified with a great many woods, commodious bays, and lakes abounding with fiſh. It is alſo watered with ſeveral brooks and rivers, among which the *Guden* is the principal; and the manors of note in this Dioceſe are about ſeventy in number. The See of *Aaarhuus* is not ſo ancient as thoſe of *Sleſwick* and *Ripen*; for it was not founded till the year 948, or 950.

The name of the firſt biſhop was *Rimbrand*, *Rembrand*, or *Regimbrand*; but this See being ſuppreſſed during the perſecution of the Chriſtians in 980, the diſtrict belonging to it was annexed to the Dioceſe of *Ripen* till the year 1065, when the See of *Aarhuus* was reſtored by *Sveno* II. This Dioceſe or General Government conſiſts of the following Prefectures and *Herreds*.

I. The Prefecture of MARIAGER, which contains 1. The *Herred* of *Onſild* with nine churches. 2. The *Herred* of *Giſlum* with twelve churches; but the latter is in the Dioceſe of *Viborg*, to which, indeed, formerly the whole Prefecture belonged.

II. The Prefecture of SILKEBORG takes its name from the famous caſtle of *Silkeburg*, which was formerly a place of great ſtrength. It compriſes the *Herreds* of *Giern* with thirteen churches; *Hid* with eight; and *Lyſgaard* with fourteen churches, among which that at *Karup* was frequented by a great number of pilgrims in the popiſh times; and the *Herred* of *Wrad* including ten churches or pariſhes.

III. The Prefecture of AAKIAR conſiſts only of one *Herred*, viz. *Had*, which contains ſixteen pariſhes, among which are the iſlands of *Alroe* and *Endelave*, in the bay of *Horſens*.

IV. The Prefecture of DRONNINGBORG contains, 1. The *Herred* of *Rougſad*, with five churches. 2. The *Herred* of *Stoffring* containing eight churches, and *Stoffringgaard* a convent for ladies of noble families. 3. The *Herred* of *Houlberg* with twelve churches. 4. The *Herred* of *Galthen* with a like number. 5. The *Herred* of *Gierlev* with ten. And 6. The *Herred* of *North-Hald* with twelve churches, among which that at *Glenſtrup* is the moſt remarkable; becauſe a *Benedictine* convent called *Norre-Kloſter*, which was one of the moſt ancient in *Denmark*, formerly ſtood on the ſame ſpot.

V. The Prefecture of KALLOE, ſo called from an old caſtle now converted into an hoſpital, contains the *Herreds* of *Eaſt-Liſberg* with twelve churches; *Mols* with eight churches; *South-Herred* with fourteen churches; *North-Herred* with ſixteen, and *South-Hald-Herred* with twenty-five churches, among which that at *Eſſenbeck* is the moſt ancient church in the country that we have any certain account of; for it was built, together with a convent adjoining to it, in the year 1040.

VI. The Prefecture of HAUERBALLEGAARD including three *Herreds*, namely, that of *Haſle* with nine churches; *Ning* with twelve; and *Weſt-Liſberg* containing ſix churches.

VII. The Prefecture of SCANDERBORG. The *Herreds* in this Prefecture are, 1. *Thyrſting* or *Torſting Herred*, containing nine churches. 2. *Sabro Herred* with eight churches. 3. The *Herred* of *Woer* with fourteen churches. 4. That of *Wahre*, remarkable for being the burial-place of the unfortunate *Peter Schumacker* Count *Greifenfeld*, who was ſecretary of State,

State. 5. The *Herred* of *Hielmſlef* including eleven churches. 6. The *Herred* of *Framlef* containing twelve churches.

VIII. The Prefecture of STIERNHOLM conſiſts of the *Herreds* of *Bierge* with ſeventeen churches; *Hatting* with nine churches; and that of *Niim* containing five churches and the village of *Hauſtad*, where *Dorothea Tonboe* a charitable lady founded an hoſpital for twenty-four diſabled perſons, about the beginning of the preſent century.

In this Dioceſe are the following towns.

Mariager, in Latin *Ager Mariæ*, is a little town ſituated on a gulf called *Mariagerfiord*. The latter is four geographical miles in length and half a mile in breadth, and is convenient for the inhabitants to carry on a little trade, which moſtly conſiſts in ſtones and lime. The convent of St. *Bridget*, to which the church of *Mariager* formerly belonged, but now converted into a nobleman's ſeat, was founded in the year 1420; but gradually roſe to be the principal in the whole country for largeneſs and opulency. And, indeed, the church is exceeded by very few at preſent. Between the church and the tower there is a low building, which has a communication with both and is called the cathedral. The church and convent ſtand on an eminence without the town.

Hobroe, in Latin *Hobroa* or *Hopontum*, is a ſmall market-town. The inhabitants live chiefly by agriculture; but carry on ſome little trade on the *Mariagerfiord*, or gulf of *Mariager*.

Note, Both theſe towns are in eccleſiaſtical matters under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Aarhuus*, but are properly ſubject to the General-Governor of *Viborg* in civil affairs. They lie in the *Herred* of *Onſild*, in the Prefecture of *Mariager*.

Randers, in Latin *Randruſia* or *Randruſium*, is a well known trading town of a middling bigneſs, ſituated on the river *Guden*. The houſes are high and ſtrongly built, according to the old taſte. This town had formerly four churches and two convents: But at preſent it has only one pariſh-church, a grammar-ſchool, a well endowed hoſpital, and a chapel which ſtands a little way without the town. The caſtle of *Dronningborg*, which ſtood here, is frequently mentioned in hiſtory. The town is now famous for its leather gloves, fine ſalmon, earthen ware, and ſtrong beer. It was formerly extremely well fortified. The firſt time that *Randers* is mentioned in hiſtory, is in the year 1247, when it was burnt by the enemy. In 1587, a full Diet of all the States was held here. *Randers* lies within the Prefecture of *Dronningborg*.

Clauſholm is a fine palace, and ſtands in the *Herred* of *Galthen*. It was the conſtant reſidence of queen *Anna Sophia* as long as ſhe lived.

Grinov, *Grenaa*, or *Grine*, is a mean little town which was formerly called *Mols*, in *North-Herred*.

Ebeltoft,

Ebeltoft, in Latin *Ebeltoftia* or *Pomagrium*, is a little town on the bay of *Ebeltoft*, which forms a very good harbour for ſhips of a middling ſize; ſo that the inhabitants carry on ſome trade by ſea. It lies in the *Herred* of *Mols* and the Prefecture of *Kalloe*. Not far from it is the famous cape of *Hellenes*, or *Helgenas*, *i. e.* of the Saints.

Aarhuus, in Latin *Aarhuſia*, *Aarhuſium*, or *Remorum domus*, the capital of this Dioceſe, lies low in a fine plain between the ſea and a lake. From the latter the water runs in a pretty wide channel through the city, and divides it into two unequal parts. *Aarhuus* is a large populous town, and much frequented. It has ſix gates, two market places, two churches and a chapel of eaſe, an epiſcopal palace, a cathedral-ſchool of ſix claſſes, and a well endowed hoſpital. The cathedral is a large ſtructure, one hundred and fifty paces long, ninety-ſix broad, and near forty-five *Dutch* ells in height. It was begun in 1201, and is adorned with ſeveral ſuperb monuments. Before the Reformation here were two Convents and one Nunnery. The Provoſts of the dioceſe hold an aſſembly twice a year in the chapter-houſe. This city carries on a conſiderable trade; and the harbour, which lies at the mouth of the abovementioned channel that runs through the town, is indeed convenient and ſafe, but none of the largeſt; and ſometimes has not a proper depth of water. The paſſage from hence to *Kallundborg* in *Seeland* is about twelve geographical miles. In the eleventh century this place was but a bare harbour, with only a few mean huts built near it; and the old city of *Aarhuus* ſtood about half a geographical mile up the country, on the ſpot where the village of *Lisberg* now ſtands. But, probably about the cloſe of the eleventh century, the preſent city was built for the conveniency of the harbour; and accordingly it has flouriſhed beyond expectation. It lies partly in the *Herred* of *Haſle*, and partly in that of *Ning*, and in the Prefecture of *Hauerballegaard*.

Skanderborg is a very ancient palace, and magnificent enough according to the taſte of the age in which it was built. It ſtands in a pleaſant country, being ſurrounded on every ſide with woods and water. The kings of *Denmark*, ever ſince the Chriſtian religion was introduced into the kingdom, have reſided here more or leſs. *Frederick* II. has often ſpent the ſummer at this place: *Chriſtian* IV. generally made it the reſidence of the young princes; and in *Frederick* the fourth's time the apartments were made more commodious and embelliſhed with new ornaments, and a garden was laid out near it. On one ſide of this palace lies the little town of the ſame name, which carries on ſome trade in the produce of the country; but the chief employment of the inhabitants is agriculture. As the pariſh church lies at ſome diſtance from the town, the inhabitants attend divine ſervice in the palace-chapel. In the year 1751 ſome works were ſet up here for refining brown, red, and yellow oker, all which *Species* of earth are very common in *Jutland*. *Skanderborg* town lies in the *Herred* of *Hielmſlof*.

Rye, in Latin *Rus Regis*, is an ancient market town in the *Herred* of *Thyrſting*. It was formerly a place of ſome conſequence, but at preſent is reduced to a village. Here the Nobility elected *Chriſtian* III. to the throne of *Denmark* in the year 1534. The church at *Rye*, in the times of popery, was reputed to be a very ſacred place.

Horſens, in Latin *Horſneſia*, or *Hotherſneſium*, *i. e. Hother*'s promontory, is a healthy town of a middling bigneſs. It ſtands on the *Baltic*, and has two churches; in one of which the pulpit is made of ebony and *Braſil* wood, and ſaid not to have its equal in all *Denmark*. Here are alſo a grammar ſchool and an hoſpital, both very well endowed. As the harbour is too ſhallow for veſſels deeply laden, they come to an anchor in the road, about a quarter of a geographical mile from it; and the goods are carried on board and landed in *Prahms* or lighters up the river which runs along the ſouth ſide of the town. The old caſtle of *Stiernholm*, which gives name to the Prefecture, formerly ſtood at the mouth of the harbour. In 1534 *Chriſtian* III. received the homage of his ſubjects, being ſeated in the open air near his palace.

The Counties in this Dioceſe are,

Frieſenburg, which lies between *Randers* and *Aarhuus*, with a caſtle of the ſame name. It belongs to the Counts of *Friis*.

Loenholm, which is in the Prefecture of *Kalloe*.

Scheel, in the ſame Prefecture, which belongs to Count *Scheel*.

The Baronies are,

Hogholm, which lies in the Prefecture of *Kalloe*, and belongs to Count *Daneſkiold* the younger, of *Samſoe*.

Marſillesburg, which lies in the *Herred* of *Ning*, belongs to Vice-admiral *Daneſkiold*, Count of *Samſoe*.

Wilhelmsburg, which lies in the ſame *Herred*, and in the Prefecture of *Hauerballegaard*; it belongs to Baron *Guldencron*.

The Manor of *Roſenholm*, which lies in the pariſh of *Hornſlet*, in the *Herred* of *Eaſt Lisberg*, and Prefecture of *Kalloe*, is celebrated for having been the reſidence of the learned *Holger Roſencranz* and his ſon *Erick*, in whoſe time it was the ſeat of the Muſes. In *Hornſlet* church are ſeveral fine tombs belonging to the *Roſencranz* family, and alſo a library.

The iſland of *Anholt*, which lies in the *Cattegat*, about eight geographical miles from *Jutland*, ten from *Seeland*, and ſeven from *Halland*, belongs to the *North-herred* of the Prefecture of *Kalloe*. There is a lighthouſe on this iſland, on account of the dangerous ſands with which it is ſurrounded. *Anholt* makes a ſmall pariſh, and the inhabitants chiefly ſubſiſt by fiſhing. What they moſtly catch is the *canis marinus*, or dog-fiſh.

Note, The iſland of *Samſoe*, in religious affairs, is under the juriſdiction of the biſhop of *Aarhuus*; but, with regard to civil matters, it is included in the Dioceſe or Government of *Seeland*, where it has been already deſcribed.

The

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

RIPEN.

THIS Dioceſe is bounded by the gulf of *Lymfurt* on the North, by the Dioceſes of *Wiborg* and *Aarhuus*, and the *Little-Belt* on the Eaſt: It joins to the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* (part of which belongs to it) on the South; and to the Weſt it is waſhed by the *North-Sea*. It is thirty geographical miles in length, and from eleven to twelve in breadth; and is the moſt extenſive, but not the moſt fertile or populous of the four Dioceſes in *North-Jutland*. It is interſperſed with large barren waſtes; particularly that called *Aal-Heath* which lies between *Kolding* and *Skive*, being ſeven geographical miles long, and almoſt one continued barren deſert. In ſeveral parts of this Dioceſe, however, the ſoil is very fertile; eſpecially in the Prefecture of *Kolding*. The See of *Ripen* was founded in 946, by the Emperor *Otho* I. who after a ſucceſsful war againſt *Harald* king of *Denmark*, prevailed on him to embrace the Chriſtian religion. The name of the firſt Biſhop of this See was *Liefdagus* or *Leofdagus*. This Dioceſe was at that time very extenſive and conſiderable; and the learned Mr. *Moller* has, in a particular treatiſe, proved the See of *Ripen* to have been for a long time the only one, as well as the moſt ancient of all the Sees in *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Iceland*, *Greenland*, *Sweden*, and *Livonia*. The principal manors in this Dioceſe are fifty-ſix in number; it contains four Prefectures, which are as follows.

I. The Prefecture of BOFLING comprehends the north part of the Dioceſe, and includes the *Herreds* of *Wanfuld* with nine churches; *Schodborg* with ſixteen; *Ulsborg* with four; and *Hind* with twelve churches.

The moſt remarkable places in this Prefecture are the following:

Lemwig, in Latin *Lemovicum* or *Lemviga*, is a very ancient but ſmall market-town. It is meanly built, and ſtands on the gulf of *Lymfurt:* The inhabitants are chiefly ſea-faring people. In 1680, part of this town was conſumed by fire.

Weſterwig is a large ſtructure, which was formerly a very famous convent, and appears to have been founded in the year 1110. In the court the walls of the church are ſtill remaining, with the monument of the Princeſs *Lieden Kirſten*, who was ſo celebrated by the ancient *Daniſh* poets for her beauty.

Boberg is a high promontory, near which the coaſt is very dangerous and has proved fatal to many ſhips.

Torſe-

Torſkminde lies to the ſouth of *Boberg*. Here the *North-Sea* runs into the land and forms a large bay, in which are ſeveral iſlands; but, on account of the ſand-banks and ſhallows, it is of little advantage to navigation.

Holſtebroe, in Latin *Holſtebroa* or *Holzepontum*, is a middle ſized town and ſtands on a river, which yields plenty of fiſh and empties itſelf into the abovementioned bay, but has not a ſufficient depth of water for trading veſſels. The inhabitants chiefly ſubſiſt by dealing in corn, oxen, and horſes. Within this century *Holſtebroe* has ſeveral times ſuffered by fire. It lies in the *Herred* of *Ulfborg*.

Ryſſenſtein is a large Barony belonging to Baron *Juel*: It lies between *Holſtebroe* and *Ringkiobing*.

Ringkiobing is a town of great trade ſituated on a large bay. The inhabitants almoſt entirely employ themſelves in trading to *Holland* and *Norwey*. The voyage to the former with a fair wind may be performed in thirty hours. Several traders who traffick with *Wiborg* and other inland towns have their warehouſes here. The bay affords plenty of good fiſh, particularly oyſters. It is of a good depth and ſecure, except at *Nyminds-Gab* near the entrance, where there is ſome danger on account of the ſand-banks thrown up by the ſea, particularly that called *Gladlep*. Large white hills of ſand are to be ſeen on the ſouth-ſide of *Nyminds-Gab*.

II. The Prefecture of LUNDENAS contains theſe *Herreds*, viz. *Eaſt-Herred* with ſix churches; *North-Herred* with ten churches; *Bolling* with twelve churches; *Ginding* with nine churches; *Hierum* with fifteen, and *Hammerum-Herred* with eighteen churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the famous ancient caſtle of *Lundenas*, which is at preſent a nobleman's ſeat. The conflux of the rivers *Lundenas* and *Lonborg* forms the *Skiern*, which yields plenty of ſalmon. There is a bridge of 180 feet in length over this river.

III. The Prefecture of KOLDINGHUUS comprehends the *Herreds* of *Jerlef* and *Slags* with eight churches; *Tyrild* with nine churches; *Holmand* with ſix churches; *Norwang* with ſeventeen churches; *Eldboe* with four churches; *Bruſch* with nine, and *Andſt* with ten churches.

The moſt remarkable places in this Prefecture are as follows.

Jelling, a large village with a church, in the *Herred* of *Tyrild*. It was formerly a city, and is ſaid to have been the reſidence of ſeveral of the ancient kings. The tombs of the Pagan king *Gormo* and his virtuous conſort queen *Tyra*, to be ſeen here, are worth notice. Theſe are two hillocks or *Tumuli* within the church; and betwixt them is a ſtone with hieroglyphical figures and a *Runic* inſcription, which *Harald*, the firſt Chriſtian king of *Denmark*, erected in memory of his abovementioned anceſtors in the year 960. Near queen *Tyra*'s grave there is a deep well.

Weile, *Wedle*, or *Wedel*, in Latin *Vejella*, *Velleja*, or *Vedelia*, is a ſmall town ſituated in a very pleaſant country betwixt two hills, which are covered with woods. A little river, that runs between the hills, is here divided into three ſtreams, one of which runs through the town, and the other two encompaſs it. Theſe three branches unite again and run into the large gulf, called *Wieleſiord*. In this river, at ſome diſtance from the gulf, there is a good ſalmon-fiſhery. The town-houſe at *Weile* was formerly a *Dominican* convent, which was founded in the year 1227. The ſides of the neighbouring hills are covered with beautiful hop-grounds. In 1256, a great Synod of all the *Daniſh* biſhops and prelates was held in this town, when they paſſed the famous Decree, which begins with theſe words: *Cum Eccleſia Daciana adeo perſecutioni tyrannorum ſubjecta, &c.* This conſtitution was afterwards confirmed by Pope *Alexander* IV. and the *Daniſh* biſhops often made uſe of it as a ſanction for making an unreaſonable oppoſition to their ſovereigns. Another Synod was held here in 1278; and *Chriſtian* II. received the homage of the Nobility in this town.

Engelſholm, a ſeat belonging to the *Lichtenberg* family, lies in this Prefecture.

Fridericia, the only fortified place in all *North Jutland*, is a modern town ſituated in a fertile country, on the *Little-Belt*. The circuit of this town is large; but it is far from being ſufficiently ſtocked with inhabitants and buildings. It was firſt begun, in 1651, by *Frederick* III. but the fortifications were ſcarce completed and the town built and properly inhabited, when the *Swedes*, in the year 1657, took it by ſtorm, and burnt a great part of it. At the concluſion of the war both the fortifications and the town were repaired; and in order to increaſe the number of its inhabitants, king *Chriſtian* V. in 1682, granted a charter which rendered *Fredericia* an *Aſylum* for all bankrupts whether natives or foreigners, and allowed the *Calviniſts*, *Papiſts*, and *Jews* the free exerciſe of their religion there. This town was formerly exempt from the Exciſe, which it now pays; but the king applies the money towards completing the buildings of the town. Its fortifications, though in good condition, are of ſo large compaſs that they would require a numerous garriſon to defend them. *Fredericia* has alſo ſeveral commercial privileges; but as it wants a good harbour it cannot improve them to the beſt advantage. Here are two *Lutheran* churches (in one of which, namely, St. *Michael*'s, the ſervice is alternately performed in the *Daniſh* and *German* languages) a *Calviniſt* church, a popiſh * church, a ſynagogue, a grammar-ſchool, and a good arſenal. A conſiderable quantity of tobacco is planted both within and without the walls. This is the place where all veſſels paſſing through the *Little-Belt*, pay a toll for their

* This, the author is ſo complaiſant as to call a *Catholic* church; but I cannot ſee how it can be called ſo with any propriety; eſpecially in this place.

lading.

lading. This town was at firſt called *Frederickſodde*; and lies in the *Herred* of *Eldboe*.

Kolding, in Latin *Coldinga*, a ſmall town, ſtands on the river *Trueth*, or *Kolding*, which here empties itſelf into a bay that runs about a geographical mile from the *Little-Belt* into the land, as far as this town. It lies low between two hills, and is one of the oldeſt towns in this country; though no mention is made of it in hiſtory till the year 1247. It has one pariſh-church, a rich hoſpital with a particular church belonging to it, and a grammar-ſchool founded and well endowed by *Dorothea*, *Chriſtian* the third's queen. The harbour is choked up, which is a great diſadvantage to the trade of this town. On an eminence to the north-weſt of *Kolding* ſtands the caſtle of *Coldinghuus*, formerly called *Oernsborg*, *i. e.* 'Eagle's-'caſtle,' which was firſt built by duke *Abel* in the year 1248; but great alterations and improvements were made in it by *Chriſtian* III. *Chriſtian* IV. and *Frederick* IV. One of its greateſt curioſities is the *Giant's Tower* built by *Chriſtian* IV. which is flat on the top, with a ſtone baluſtrade, and at each of the four corners ſtands a ſtone image ſeven feet high. This caſtle has its particular church or chapel. The air here is reckoned very mild and healthy; this induced king *Chriſtian* III. to make it his uſual reſidence till his death, which happened in the year 1559. In 1712, when *Copenhagen* was viſited with the peſtilence, *Frederick* IV. retired to this place with the whole royal family. *Kolding* is chiefly remarkable for the royal cuſtom-houſe; which ſtands over the water on the bridge, in order to receive a duty for all foreign commodities which are brought in carriages that way, and likewiſe for oxen and horſes going into the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, *&c.* The number of oxen paſſing this way one year with another is computed at 20,000; and for every head two rix-dollars are paid. At a Diet aſſembled here in 1547, the privileges of the *Hanſe-towns* were confirmed; and in 1614, a Synod of all the biſhops of the kingdom was held in this town.

IV. The Prefecture of RIBERHUUS contains the *Weſt-Herred* including twelve churches; the *Herred* of *Giorring* with eight churches; *Malt-Herred* with eight, and the *Herred* of *Schad* with eighteen churches.

Remarkable places in theſe diſtricts are as follows.

Warde or *Warda*, in Latin *Varinia*, was formerly a conſiderable city; but as the depth of its river (which abounds in fiſh, particularly ſalmon) is ſo much decreaſed, as to be no longer navigable for ſhips of burden, it is fallen to decay. However, it has two churches and a large parcel of land belonging to it, which the inhabitants very induſtriouſly cultivate, and carry on ſome little trade beſides. An aſſembly of all the Provoſts of the Dioceſe of *Ripen* is held here annually in the month of *October*, in which the General-Governor and the Biſhop jointly preſide.

Jetting or *Hierting*, a handſome well-built country town, lies about two geographical miles from *Warde*, where the river *Warde* empties itſelf into the *North-Sea*. Its harbour, which is called *Graae-Dyb* is the beſt in all *North-Jutland*.

Ribe, or *Ripen*, in Latin *Ripæ Cimbricæ* or *Ripæ Phunduſiorum*, the capital of this Dioceſe, is ſaid to derive its name from the *Latin* word *ripa* and the river *Nibs-Aa*, on the banks of which it ſtands. It appears to have been built about the time when Chriſtianity was introduced into this kingdom, and, next to *Wiborg*, is reckoned the moſt ancient town in *North-Jutland*. *Ripen* was formerly one of the moſt celebrated and flouriſhing cities in the North: For it had, four pariſh-churches and five chapels, beſides the cathedral; four convents with their churches, a ſtrong caſtle, and between ſix and ſeven hundred free Burghers. A conſiderable number of ſhips traded to *Norway*, *France*, *England*, *Holland*, *&c.* from this port; and the city had the privilege of coining money. But an end was put to all this grandeur and opulence partly by ſeveral conflagrations, (particularly the dreadful fire in 1580) and partly by inundations and the ravages of war; ſo that this once flouriſhing city gradually fell into decay. The city and ſuburb are ſeparated by the *Nibs-Aa*; and the former is entirely ſurrounded by that river, which ſometimes lays it under water. Here are two churches and the cathedral, which is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and ſtands on an eminence called *Lilienberg*. It is a large ſtructure, and contains the monuments of king *Erick* III. and *Chriſtopher* I. On one ſide of the choir is the chapter-houſe, in which the conſiſtory is held, and the Provoſts meet annually on *Midſummer-day*. Here are alſo the effigies of all the biſhops of *Ripen* ſince the Reformation, the firſt excepted, and two iron cheſts full of inſtruments, as Diploma's, Bulls, Statutes, Wills, *&c.* with bones and other reliques of ſaints, miſſals, veſtments and the like. St. *Catherine*'s church is alſo a large edifice, and is ſaid to have been built in the thirteenth century by the *Dominican* monks whoſe convent was contiguous to it. The grammar-ſchool here is the moſt ancient of any in *Denmark*; for it is ſaid to have been founded in the year 1298. It conſiſts of ſix claſſes, has ſeven maſters, and a library which was built in 1720. The *Dominican* convent is converted into a commodious hoſpital; but the forty-ſix dwellings, which were built here for widows and orphans to live in rent-free, are fallen into decay, ſo as to become untenantable. The merchants old Exchange is now converted into a town-houſe. Here is ſtill ſome little trade carried on in grain, horned-cattle, horſes, *&c.* but the ſhallowneſs of the river will admit of none but ſmall veſſels to come up to the city, and theſe only at high-water. The moſt remarkable hiſtorical particulars concerning this city are as follows. In the year 860, a church was built here which was accounted the ſecond in the kingdom. A provincial Synod was held in this city in the year 1246, and two national Synods, one in

1441,

1441, and the other in 1542. The well-known gold and ſilver *Ripean* pieces were coined here under *Frederick* III. in the year 1533.

Fanoe is an iſland lying in the *North-Sea*, about a geographical mile and half in length. It contains two pariſhes; and the inhabitants are moſtly ſea-faring people and fiſhermen. This iſland belongs to the *Herred* of *Shads*.

Note, In the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* are the following places belonging to *North-Jutland*.

1. The county of *Schackenburg*, which belongs to Count *Schack*, and contains

The pariſh of *Mogel-Tunder*, with a large village of the ſame name. The inhabitants of this diſtrict are chiefly employed in making fine laces, little inferior to thoſe of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, for which they have a conſiderable vent. Near the village of *Mogel-Tunder* lies the ſeat called *Shackenburg* where the Count reſides. Among the villages belonging to this pariſh is alſo that of *Galhus*, where, in the year 1639, a country girl of *Oſterby*, found the famous *golden Horn of Tunder*, which is at preſent kept in the king's *Muſeum* at *Copenhagen*, by ſtumbling on the point of it which ſtuck out of the ground. The horn including the curvature is about a *German* ell and a quarter, but meaſured in a ſtrait line is only an ell in length. Its diameter at the thickeſt end is five inches. It is of the pureſt gold, and weighs near 100 ounces, or, according to the *Deſcriptio Muſei Regii*, ſeven pounds five ounces and ten penny-weights; and is valued at 1200 rix-dollars. The explanation of the emblematical figures, with which this horn is embelliſhed within ſeven circles, is a matter of ſuch difficulty as to have occaſioned ſeveral diſputes among the Learned. *Chriſtian* IV. made a preſent of this horn to his ſon prince *Frederick*.

In the year 1734, a peaſant dug up ſuch another horn in this diſtrict, which was embelliſhed with ſeveral figures, and a *Gothic* or *Runic* inſcription, which *Graver* has rendered thus: *Muhltonners Helligdomſhorn in to pipen*, or *die ſtunden anzuzeigen*, which ſignifies, that it was a ſacred horn to give notice of the time by ſounding it every hour. Concerning the inſcription on the former, I refer the reader to M. A. H. LACKMANN's *Einletung zur Schleſwig-holſteiniſchen Hiſtorie*, *Th.* vi. §. 64—72. And concerning that on the laſt mentioned horn, he may conſult a treatiſe entitled, *Unvorgreifliche Gedanken bey Gelegenheit des* 1734 *den* 21 *April abermals auſgegrabenen guldenen horns*. *Hamburg*, in quarto.

2. The pariſhes of *Dahler* and *Ballum*, with the manor of *Troyburg*, which includes the pariſhes of *Viſbye*, *Randenip*, *Mealden*, and *Joſterup*.

3. The ſouth part of the iſland of *Rom*.

4. The north angle of the iſland of *Sylt*, which is called *Lyſt*.

5. The iſland of *Amrom*, which is a pariſh by itſelf.

6. That half of the iſland of *Fohr* which lies towards the weſt, and conſtitutes a pariſh.

The

The DUTCHY *of*

SLESWICK.

In Latin, *Ducatus Sleſvicenſis.*

IN DANKWERTH'S *Deſcription of the Dutchies of Sleſwick and Holſtein*, beſides a general map of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, are two others exhibiting the north and ſouth parts of it ſeparately, four maps of the ancient *North-Frieſland* which was included in *Sleſwick*, and fifteen topographical maps accurately exhibiting the ſingle Diſtricts of this Dutchy. *Viſcher*, *Homann*, and others have copied the general map, to which they have made ſome additions from thoſe of particular Diſtricts. But, not to mention ſmaller errors, theſe gentlemen have not repreſented *Nord-Strand* as it is at preſent, but according to the ſtate it was in before the year 1634; and have entirely omitted the iſland of *Arroe*, which lies in the *Baltic* or *Eaſt-Sea*.

This Dutchy derives its name from *Schleſwig* or *Sleſwick* its capital; but is frequently termed *South-Jutland* in hiſtory, eſpecially by ancient writers. Some have erroneouſly deſcribed it as a part of *Germany*, and annexed it to *Holſtein*. For though *Sleſwick* has, for ſome centuries, been intimately connected with the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, ſo as to be under the ſame government, and in the department of the *German* Chancery *; and though the inhabitants of the former are in a very extraordinary manner ſo blended with thoſe of the latter in common life, that no mention is ever made of *Sleſwickers*, who generally call themſelves *Holſteiners:* Yet *Sleſwick* in reallity is a part and Fief of *Denmark*, as I ſhall preſently more plainly demonſtrate. It is divided from the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, and conſequently from the *German* empire, by the *Eider* and the *Lewens*, both theſe rivers being its ſouth boundaries. To the Eaſt it has the *Baltic:* the rivers *Kolding* and *Skotburg* ſeparate it from *North* or proper *Jutland*; and to the Weſt it is waſhed by the *North-Sea* †. It extends from *Rendſburg* to *Koldingen* about eighteen geographical miles in length; but its breadth is unequal, being in general eight, nine, or ten, and about fourteen geographical miles in the broadeſt part; in which, however, the two ſmall iſlands of *Arroe* and *Helgeland* are not included. Providence has plentifully ſup-

* See page 79 of this volume. † This is called in *Denmark*, and by the Author, the *Weſt-Sea*, on account of its ſituation with reſpect to that country.

plied

plied this country with corn, cattle, and fiſh. There are no high mountains in *Sleſwick*, but only ſome eminences which hardly deſerve to be called by that name. The higheſt hills are near the towns of *Sleſwick* and *Apenrade*. The chief rivers in this Dutchy, moſt of which direct their courſe from Eaſt to Weſt, are, the *Eider* which divides *Denmark* from *Germany*, and will be taken notice of in my account of *Holſtein*; the *Treen* which falls into the *Eider* near *Frederickſtadt*; and the *Nipſ-Aa* which runs cloſe by *Ripen*. To theſe may be added the ſmaller ſtreams of *Lohbeck*, *Widau*, *Gronau*, *Suderau*, and *Soholmau*. In ſome parts of the weſt-ſide of the Dutchy lying between the iſlands and the continent, which are overflowed by the tides, are a great many oyſter-dredges. Theſe belong to the crown-lands, and are farmed out by the royal *Rent-Chamber*; but the county of *Schackenburg* claims a right of fiſhing for oyſters in ſome of them.

The inhabitants of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* are a mixture of *Danes* or *Juts*, *Lower-Saxons*, and *Frieſians*. Beſides theſe, there are *Hollanders* ſettled in *Frederickſtadt*, and *Flemmings* in *Nordſtrand*; which occaſions a variety of Dialects in this country. In the Prefecture of *Huſum*, the Diſtrict of *Bredſtedt*, in the *Hardes* of *Bocking* and *Widding*, in ſome parts of the *Harde* of *Kar*, and in *Pelworm*, *Fohr*, *Sylt*, *Amrom* and all the other little iſlands the *Frieſian* is the common language; but Divine-ſervice is performed in theſe places in *High-Dutch*, and likewiſe in the pariſh of *Viol*, where they ſpeak the *Daniſh* language. The *German* language is ſpoken in the towns of *Sleſwick*, *Eckernforde*, *Huſum*, *Frederickſtadt*, and *Tonningen*; in the Diſtricts of *Eiderſtedt*, and *Stapelholm*; in thoſe *Hardes* of the Prefecture of *Gottorf*, which lie ſouth of the gulf of *Sley*; in the *Daniſh Foreſts*, and the iſland of *Femarn*. In ſome of the other towns both the *German* and *Daniſh* languages are uſed: In others only *Daniſh* is ſpoken by the inhabitants, excepting ſome people of faſhion, who affect to diſtinguiſh themſelves from the commonalty by ſpeaking *German*. In the Prefecture of *Tunder*, the above-mentioned places excepted where the *Frieſian* language obtains, Divine-ſervice is univerſally performed in *Daniſh*, as it is alſo up the country farther north. At *Flensburg* and other towns in the northern part of *Sleſwick*, ſome *Daniſh* preachers are ſettled, on account of the great number of *Danes* among the ſervants and labourers in theſe parts, to whom a ſermon is preached every *Sunday* in the *Daniſh* language. The *German* alone obtains in great ſchools in the towns; but in thoſe places in the country where the *Daniſh* language only is ſpoken, *Daniſh* ſchool-maſters are appointed.

Lutheraniſm is the prevailing religion in this Dutchy, except at *Frederickſtadt*, where, beſides *Papiſts* and *Jews*, ſeveral particular ſects are tolerated. On the iſland of *Nordſtrand* the Roman-Catholics have a pariſh-church and a chapel to perform their devotions in. The *Calviniſts* are alſo

indulged in the exerciſe of their religion in this Dutchy, by an edict iſſued out in the year 1734; but they are not very numerous here. The Nobility of *Sleſwick* have the ſame privileges with thoſe of *Holſtein*; excepting, that they are not ſubject to the ſame Governor, but acknowledge the King only for their ſovereign, and are under the juriſdiction of the royal Provincial Court at *Gottorf*, which will be ſpoken of in the ſequel.

This country has from time immemorial been united to the kingdom of *Denmark*; and as a part of that monarchy had the ſame ſovereign and conſtitution till the year 1085, when king *Knut the Pious* created his brother *Oluf* duke of *Sleſwick*; a political error in which ſeveral of his ſucceſſors have copied after him to the irreparable damage of the kingdom. King *Niels* inveſted *Knut* the ſon of king *Erick* with this Dutchy as a Fief; and from that time it has been almoſt continually held by a prince of the Blood, under the title of a Dutchy; but not without numberleſs conteſts, in which it has often been warmly diſputed whether the Fief was perſonal or hereditary. At laſt, the Dukes formed a deſign of entirely diſmembering *Sleſwick* from the *Daniſh* dominions. But in the year 1424, the affair was referred to the arbitration of the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, who adjudged the Dutchy to king *Erick* as a part of his kingdom. As Duke *Adolphus* died without iſſue in the year 1459, King *Chriſtian* I. claimed the vacant Dutchy as a Fief of the *Daniſh* crown; but in order to ſtrengthen his claim by the affections of the people, and to gain *Holſtein* alſo, he condeſcended to be elected Duke of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* by the Nobility, and, at the ſame time, granted the ſtates ſeveral important privileges. King *John* was the firſt who unfortunately planned the partition of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein*, in the year 1490. He reſerved to himſelf in both Dutchies the following places, and revenues, namely, *Segeberg*, the cuſtoms or toll at *Oldeſlo*, the port of *Kaden*, together with *Rendsburg*, *Hanrow*, *Haſeldorp*, *Femarn*, *Alſen*, *Sunderburg*, the iſland of *Arroe*, and the territories of *Flensburg* and *Appenrade*. To his brother, Duke *Frederick*, he aſſigned *Gottorf*, the pariſh of *Kampen*, *Little-Tundern*, *Haderſleben*, *Eckernforde*, *Rundhof*, *Steinburg*, *Eiderſtedt*, *Trittow*, *Oldenburg*, *Plon*, the caſtle of *Tylen*, *Itzehoe*, *Oſterhof*, *Hohenfeld*, *Neumunſter*, *Lutkenburg*, *Kohovede*, *Neuſtadt*, *Kiel*, and the iſland of *Nordſtrand*. The convents lying in the two Dutchies were alſo divided; the king reſerving to himſelf thoſe of *Rheinfeld*, *Arensbok*, *Preetz* and *Ruge*; and inveſting the Duke with thoſe of *Bordiſholm*, *Ciſmar*, *Reinbeck*, *Uetersem*, and *Lugum*. Beſides all this, the king inveſted his brother with the title of heir apparent to the kingdom of *Norway*, which the ſucceeding Dukes of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* have carefully kept up. King *Chriſtian* III. made another diviſion of theſe Dutchies between himſelf and his brothers, reſerving for his own ſhare *Flensburg*, *Sonderburg*, *Alſen*, *Arroe*, *Sundewit*, the convent of *Ruge*, *Segeberg*, *Oldeſlo* with half the toll, *Reinfeld*, *Arenſbok*, *Plon*, *Steinburg*, *Itzehoe*, *Krempe*, *Wilſtermarſch*, *Heiligenhafen*, and *Great-*

Great-Brode. To *John* he aſſigned *Haderſleben*, *Dorning*, *Little-Tundern*, with *Oſterharde*, *Rendsburg*, and three villages; the iſland of *Femarn* and the convents of *Bordeſholm* and *Lugum*. But *Adolphus* had for his ſhare *Gottorf*, the ſeat and Prefecture of *Hutten*, *Huſum*, *Apenrade*, *Wittenſee*, *Morkirchen*, *Stapelholm*, *Eiderſtedt*, *Kiel*, *Neumunſter*, *Oldenburg*, *Trittow*, *Reinbeck*, *Ciſmar*, and *Neuſtdt*. *Frederick*, the fourth brother, being provided for as biſhop of *Hildeſheim* and *Sleſwick*, was excluded from having any ſhare in this partition. This ſecond diviſion of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* among the princes of the Blood was attended with more fatal conſequences than the firſt. The King, indeed, acted with prudence, and eſtabliſhed the *Union* and *Communion*, as they are called, in theſe principalities. The former related only to an obligation of reciprocal aſſiſtance; the latter to their common form of government in matters pertaining to the Nobility, Contributions, and ſome other articles. His deſign was by theſe precautions to prevent any diſcord among the princes, or a total disjunction of the Dutchies or any parts of them, which might render them independent of each other. But as theſe inſtruments of *Union* and *Communion* were, according to the ſimplicity of thoſe times, drawn up in very plain artleſs terms; each party afterwards was for wreſting the meaning of the words to favour its private views. Duke *John*, the ſecond brother, dying without heirs in the year 1580, his ſhare was again divided. King *Frederick* II. took the ſeats, Prefectures and towns, with all the prerogatives and revenues thereto belonging of *Haderſleben*, *Dorning*, and *Rendsburg*; and to Duke *Adolph* were aſſigned *Tundern*, *Nordſtrand*, and *Femarn*; alſo the convents of *Lugum* and *Bordeſholm*, with all their dependencies. The third part, namely, the cuſtoms of *Gottorf* were ſhared betwixt the King and the Duke. As for the diviſion of *Dithmarſh*, the crown was inveſted with the hereditary and ſole property of the ſouth part of it; and the north part was ſettled on the Duke. In the year 1609, the Duke obtained of *Chriſtian* IV. as Lord paramount, the right of primogeniture. The ſucceeding Dukes acknowledged, and conformed to the annexation of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* to the crown of *Denmark* as a Fief, which had been ſolemnly ratified in 1579 by the Convention of *Odenſe*, till Duke *Frederick*'s daughter was married to *Charles Guſtavus* king of *Sweden*, in the year 1654. For then the Duke began to aſpire after an independent ſovereignty with regard to his moiety of *Sleſwick* and the iſle of *Femarn*; which *Frederick* III. on account of the bad ſituation of his affairs, was obliged to grant: But the Duke loſt this prerogative, in 1675, by the treaty of *Rendsburg*. And though ſome alteration in the Duke's favour was made in this affair, in the year 1679, by the treaty of *Fontainbleau*; yet the King ſequeſtered to himſelf the Duke's part of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* in 1684; and it was not till the treaty of *Altena*, in 1689, that his *Daniſh* majeſty again gave up the ſovereignty. But, in 1714, king *Frederick* IV. re-aſſumed it; and it was confirmed to him by the treaty of

Stockholm which was concluded in 1720. As the whole Dutchy was then incorporated with the kingdom of *Denmark*, his majeſty ordered the two lions, which are the arms of *Sleſwick*, to be expunged out of the *Holſtein* eſcutcheon, and to be inſerted in that of the kingdom of *Denmark*. The Emperor, and the Kings of *England*, *France*, *Sweden*, and *Spain*, together with the republics of *Holland* and *Poland* were guarantees to his *Daniſh* majeſty for his new acquiſition. As for the ſmall principalities of *Auguſtenburg* and *Glucksburg* we ſhall ſpeak of them in the ſequel. The Dutchies of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* are, at preſent, governed by a *Statthalter*, appointed by the king: And this high Poſt is now filled by the Margrave of *Brandenburg-Culmbach*.

The whole Dutchy is divided into cities, Prefectures, Diſtricts, *Hardes*, *Birkes*, Pariſhes, Manors, and *Koges*. The cities have their particular magiſtrates, who are quite independent of the Prefectures, though they trade with the Diſtricts of the latter. The *Statthalter* for the time being is preſident or chief judge in all the towns of the Dutchy. The *Amts* or Prefectures are governed by Prefects, and over the Diſtricts and *Hardes Landvogte* and *Hardeſvogte* are appointed for the maintenance of order, and adminiſtration of juſtice. The Diſtrict of *Eiderſtedt* is governed by its particular laws called *Viti Dinggericht*, and certain magiſtrates who are diſtinguiſhed by the title of *Oberſtaller* and *Staller*. In ſome Prefectures the *Amtman* or Prefect alone judges at the firſt hearing of a cauſe. But in others the *Hardeſvogt* or chief magiſtrate of the *Harde* is joined with him. From their ſentence, before the execution of it, there lies an appeal to the court called *Ding*. In ſome Prefectures the *Hardeſvogt* pronounces a definitive ſentence alone in his own *Harde*; whereas in others eight collegues called *Sandmannern*, or twelve *Bonden*, ſit on the bench with him, and have an equal vote. In caſe of an appeal from ſuch a ſentence, he muſt juſtify it before the ſupreme court, if required. The Prefect of every Prefecture may ſit as preſident in the courts of judicature called *Dinge* and *Bonden* courts; but has no voice in ſuch courts. The common law of this country is contained in the old *Jutiſche Lowbuck*, or *Codex legum Juticarum*, inſtituted by king *Waldemar* II. in a Diet held at *Wordingborg* in the year 1240. Some towns, however, have their particular municipal laws. The ſupreme court of judicature for this Dutchy is held at *Gottorf*, and has four ſeſſions in a year to determine all cauſes that are brought before it. In *Gottorf* caſtle the provincial court is held annually in *Eaſter*-week, where, as in the former, all verdicts and ſentences are paſſed in the king's name. It conſiſts of the *Statthalter* or Governor, four Noblemen, four Counſellors learned in the law, and a Recorder, with a Notary and Secretary. Next to theſe is the chief Conſiſtory, the members of which are the counſellors of the Dutchy or provincial Court, the general Superintendant, who is the chief conſiſtorial Counſellor, with two other conſiſtorial counſellors, who are eccleſiaſtics.

The

The three laſt have alſo a ſeat in the Supreme Court of Judicature during the ſeſſions of the chief Conſiſtory. The towns, Prefectures, and manors are divided into a certain number of *Pflugen* or *Ploughs* * of land, according to which the taxes are impoſed. The newly encloſed *Koges* are aſſeſſed according to their number of *Demates*, a land-meaſure which in *Eiderſtedt* is equal to 216 ſquare rods, allowing ſixteen feet to the rod; but in the Prefecture of *Tundern* is no more than 180 ſquare rods, at eighteen feet the rod. The taxes in the country are ſometimes levied by the ſtewards or clerks of the Prefectures, and ſomtimes by the magiſtrates of the *Hardes*, and by them paid to the king's receiver at *Rendsburg*, whither the towns and manors remit their aſſeſſments as ſoon as they are collected. In every Prefecture there is alſo a Steward, or Adminiſtrator, who takes care of the royal revenues, the repairs of the roads, the preſervation of the woods, *&c.* King *Chriſtian* VI. eſtabliſhed a *Brandgild* or Fire-office † in every Prefecture and *Harde*; and theſe are under the direction of the General-College for the improvement of manufactures, *&c.* ‡ But the towns have their particular *Brandgilds*.

The Prefectures and Diſtricts in this Dutchy are as follows:

I. The Prefecture of HADERSLEBEN, which is ſeparated from *North-Jutland* by the river *Kolding*, extends in length from the *Baltic* to the *North-Sea* above nine geographical miles, and from four to five in breadth. As to the number of Plough-lands and revenues, it exceeds any Prefecture in this Dutchy. The largeſt rivers in *Haderſleben* are the *Schodtburg*, the *Nipſ-Aa*, and the *Lohbeck*. The ſoil is very fertile, eſpecially in the eaſtern parts of this Prefecture, which are alſo very woody. It takes its name from the town of

Haderſleben, in Latin *Hatterſlebia*; which lies in a low, open plain. It is of a middling bigneſs and carries on ſome commerce; and part of its trade ariſes from its being the uſual thoroughfare to *Funen* and *Jutland*, and part from the ſhipping which belongs to this port. But the latter is not very conſiderable; for the entrance into the harbour is ſo ſhallow, that they are obliged to carry the goods on board the ſhips in *Prahmes* or lighters. The town is divided by a narrow ſtream into two unequal parts, which are called *Old* and *New Haderſleben*. In the former, which is but meanly built, ſtands the pariſh-church of St. *Soren* or *Severin*, which being reckoned a rural church belongs to the Prefecture. In the latter, which can no longer be properly called the New-Town, are ſome

* A Plough of Land is a certain number of acres of arable land. We alſo call it a *Hide* in *England*, which is as much as one plough can cultivate in a year.

† This ſeems to be an Office for receiving the duty on wood, *&c.* for fuel, or perhaps what we call Hearth-money in *England*; or it may be an Inſurance-office; but the Author leaves us in the dark in this particular.

‡ See Introduction to *Denmark*, §. 19. Art. 4.

handſome houſes, which, indeed, ſuffered by the ravages of the Imperialiſts; and the large pariſh-church of St. *Mary*'s. There was formerly a Cathedral at *Haderſleben*. The ſchool and the well endowed alms-houſes were founded in the year 1569, by Duke *John*, brother to *Chriſtian* III. and the former, in 1584, received a conſiderable benefaction from king *Frederick* II. There was anciently a large caſtle or palace on an eminence without the town. *Haderſleben* obtained a charter of privileges in the year 1292. In 1534, king *Frederick* II. was born in this town, as was king *Frederick* III. in 1609.

The Prefecture of HADERSLEBEN conſiſts of ſeven *Hardes*; two of which are fertile in every part; but the other five contain a great many barren ſpots. Theſe *Hardes* are as follows, *viz.*

1. *Haderſleben* conſiſting of eleven pariſhes, among which is included *Aroeſunds-Fehre* in the *Little-Belt*.
2. *Thyſtrup* with fourteen pariſhes.
3. *Gram* with ten pariſhes.
4. *Fros* with ſix pariſhes.
5. *Kalſlund* with five pariſhes.
6. *Hvidding* with twelve pariſhes.
7. *Norder-rangſtrup* with five, and the *Vogtey* of *Bollerſleben*, the Ploughlands of which lie diſperſed in the Prefectures of *Appenrade* and *Tundern*. Twenty-nine of the rural churches are under the juriſdiction of the biſhop of *Ripen*, and the reſt are under the Provoſtſhip of *Haberſleben*. In the *Harde* of *Gram* lies *Torning*, which was formerly a famous ſtrong caſtle, but now only a royal manor. Some who dwell in the Fief of *Torning*, as it is called, are under the juriſdiction of the *Birke* of *Ripen*, which was erected in the year 1735.

II. The Prefectures of APENRADE and LYGUM Convent.

The Prefectures of ABENRADE, properly *Abenraae*, and LYGUM Convent are both under the ſame Prefect.

That of APENRADE is very mountainous, and yields plenty of game and fiſh. It derives its name from

Apenrade, one of the beſt and moſt flouriſhing towns in the country, which, within theſe three centuries, has been greatly enlarged, and ſtill continues to improve both in beauty and extent. It lies at the bottom of a deep open bay which runs from the *Baltic* a good way into the land. It is environed on three ſides with high mountains; and has a ſafe and commodious harbour, but not deep enough for ſhips of burden to come up cloſe to the bridge. Moſt of the inhabitants are in good circumſtances; for they are noted for ſhip-building, and have of late been conſtantly employed. This town has frequently ſuffered by fire; namely, in the years 1148, 1247, 1576, 1616, 1629, and 1707. But the induſtry of its inhabitants has repaired all the loſſes it ſuſtained. The caſtle or *Amt-houſe* of *Brun-*

lund,

lund, a mean ſmall edifice, lies a little way to the eaſt of *Apenrade*. Queen *Margaret*, who built this palace in 1411, intended to have enlarged it, had ſhe not been prevented by death in the following year. It is at preſent the reſidence of the Prefect.

This Prefecture contains,

1. The *Harde* of *Ries* conſiſting of four pariſhes. In one of theſe, namely, the pariſh of *Jordkier*, lies the village of *Tolſtede*, near which is the place called *Urnehovet*, where the ancient *Sleſwick* Nobility uſed to hold their Diets or aſſemblies of the States in the open air.

2. The *Harde* of *Suder-rangſtrup*, containing four pariſhes.

3. The *Birkvogtey* of *Warnitz* which is a large village with a church in it.

The Prefecture of LYGUM or LOHM-KLOSTER, in Latin *Locus Dei*, was formerly a rich *Bernardine* convent, ſaid to be founded in the year 1152, but is now converted into a manſion-houſe for the Prefect. In the convent-church, which is a ſpacious handſom ſtructure, lie five of the biſhops of *Ripen*. The inhabitants of this Diſtrict make a great deal of lace. This Prefecture conſiſts of one *Birkvogtey* which includes three pariſhes.

III. The Prefecture of TUNDERN is above five geographical miles in length; its greateſt breadth is about eight; and the ſoil is rich and fertile in moſt parts of it. The inhabitants chiefly ſpeak the *Jutland* and *Frieſian* dialects, but generally underſtand the *Low-Saxon*. The *Hardes* of *Bocking* and *Widing*, with the iſlands *Sylt* and *Fohr* are under the juriſdiction of the *Dreyharder* Court. This Prefecture conſiſts of theſe *Hardes*, namely,

1. *Bocking*, which conſiſts partly of heaths, and partly of marſhland. The former is called *Rieſmohr* and contains four pariſhes. The marſhland was formerly a cluſter of iſlands, which were gradually joined to, and became a part of the main land. However, *Galmsbul* may, in ſome meaſure, ſtill paſs for an iſland, as in ſpring-tides this little eminence is ſurrounded by the water. The inhabitants of *Galsmbul* ſubſiſt by uſing the ſea, and the profit ariſing from a ſmall ſalt-work. This *Harde* contains three pariſhes.

2. The *Harde* of *Horsbul* or *Widing*, which is all marſhland, and was formerly an iſland, conſiſts of ſix pariſhes.

3. The *Harde* of *Karr*, which is about three geographical miles long and two broad. The ſoil here is moſtly ſandy and barren, with a very little marſhland. It contains ten pariſhes, and the large village of *Leck*, ſaid to have been formerly a conſiderable town.

4. The *Harde* of *Lundtoft*, which contains four pariſhes. The manors belonging to it alſo include two pariſhes.

5. The *Harde* of *Schlaux* or *Schlux*, for the moſt part, conſiſts of ſandy, marſhy, and barren ſoil, and contains ſix pariſhes.

6. The *Harde* of *Tunder*, conſiſts of a fertile ſoil and fine marſhes, and contains two pariſhes.

7. The *Harde* of *Hoyer*, is which pretty fertile, and has ſome rich marſhes: It conſiſts of three pariſhes, and the following places of note.

Hoyer, which is a pretty market-town; *Tondern*, a ſea-port, which is pretty much frequented, and is very famous for its oyſters; *Emerlef*, which indeed, belongs to the County of *Schackenburg*; but as there are ſeveral perſons in it that are ſubject to this *Harde*, I have inſerted it here.

8. The iſland of *Sylt* lies about one geographical mile and a quarter from the *Harde* of *Widing*, and is four geographical miles in length, but very unequal in its breadth. The ſoil cannot be ſaid to be fertile, neither does it produce wood or turf; ſo that the inhabitants are obliged to ſupply themſelves with fuel from the continent. They ſubſiſt chiefly by agriculture, grazing, knitting, and navigation; and are ſuch expert ſeamen, that other trading towns are glad to employ them on board their ſhips. But as they are very ſenſible of their abilities, few of them will ſerve as common ſailors, but expect the pay of maſters or mates. Both ſexes are very tenacious of their ancient dreſs on this iſland, *Sylt* contains four pariſhes, and is governed by a *Land-Vogdt*. The north-angle of this iſland which is called *Lyſt* had formerly a harbour; but at preſent it is quite choked up with ſand. It belongs to the Dioceſe of *Ripen*.

9. The iſland of *Fohr* is a fertile ſpot about three geographical miles in circuit. The eaſt-ſide which conſtitutes two pariſhes, and where a *Land-Vogdt* preſides, belongs to the Prefecture of *Tundern*; but the weſt-ſide which contains but one pariſh is ſubject to the Dioceſe of *Ripen*. The inhabitants in their manners, *&c.* perfectly reſemble thoſe of *Sylt*. On this iſland ſtands the village of *Wyck*, which is built after the *Dutch* manner; and as it has a ſafe rode for ſhips, the inhabitants carry on ſome trade by ſea.

The places worthy of notice in this Prefecture are as follows.

The town of *Tundern*, in Latin *Tundera*, is next to *Sleſwick* one of the moſt ancient in this Dutchy. It was endowed with the privileges of a city ſo early as the year 1243, is well built, but not very large, and carries on a conſiderable trade in corn, cattle, and the fine lace which is made here. This town has the ſame privileges as *Lubeck*. Its church, which was built in 1591 and 1592, makes a grand appearance. A ſchool was founded here in 1612. The old palace which ſtands in this town was never very large; but was formerly well fortified. In the courſe of 500 years it has undergone ſeveral viciſſitudes. For one while, it was enlarged and improved, and ſoon after taken by ſtorm. After this it was mortgaged, and held out a vigorous ſiege; but not long after it was entirely diſmantled, and ſtill continues in ruins.

Several *Koege* and Diſtricts, which have been ſeparated from the main land by the ſea, have had particular privileges granted them by the king, and collectively make a very fine and fruitful tract of marſh-land. Theſe are

the *Dagebuller-Koeg*, thoſe of *Old* and *New Chriſtian*, and *Albert-Koeg*, the *Klegfeer-Frederick* and *Rutebull-Koegs*, the *Bothſchiſt* and *Bluemen-Koeg*.

IV. The Prefectures of SONDERBURG and NORBURG, on the iſlands of ALSEN and ARROE.

The iſland of *Alſen* lies in the *Baltic* near the continent, and is between three and four geographical miles long, and from three fourths to one half in breadth. The ſoil is very fertile in every part of it, and yields great plenty of fruit and all kinds of grain, except wheat. It is a pleaſant iſland, and is ſheltered with ſeveral fine woods abounding in game. Here are alſo ſeveral freſh lakes which are ſtocked with variety of fiſh; eſpecially in the northern parts. It is divided into *South* and *North-Harde* called *Sonderburg* and *Norburg* Prefectures.

The Prefecture of SONDERBURG is in the ſouth part of the iſland and contains the following places of note, *viz.*

The town of *Sonderburg*, in Latin *Sonderburgum*. As for the time when this town and caſtle were built, hiſtory makes no mention of it. However, they are at leaſt of 500 years ſtanding. *Sonderburg* is of a middling bigneſs, and ſtands on the acclivity of a very ruggid hill, which makes the ſtreets very uneven. This town has of late years been much improved as to its buildings. Here is but one church, which ſtands almoſt without the town, on an eminence; and adjoining to it is an alms-houſe built out of the ruins of an old convent. Moſt of the inhabitants are mariners. *Sonderburg* harbour is looked upon as one of the beſt in *Denmark*. The king's palace, which ſtands on the weſt-ſide of the town at the entrance of the harbour, is both ſpacious and ſtrong. It is a quadrangular ſtructure fortified after the old method with round baſtions. On the eaſt-ſide of this caſtle is a round tower, in the lower part of which king *Chriſtian* II. was confined as a priſoner for twelve years. King *Frederick* IV. reſtored this caſtle to its preſent good condition, when it was falling to decay. It is the reſidence of the King's Prefect; and has a beautiful chapel, where ſeveral of the princes of *Sonderburg* are interred.

Auguſtenburg is the place where the Princes of *Sonderburg* reſide. It ſtands at the diſtance of half a geographical mile from *Sonderburg*, in the pariſh of *Ketting*. It was built by Duke *Erneſt Gunther*, grandſon to Duke *John* II. about the middle of the laſt century; and is a handſom ſtructure. Near the caſtle lies a ſmall village, conſiſting of about forty houſes, which is moſtly inhabited by perſons belonging to the Prince's court. The manors of *Auguſtenburg*, *Gammelgaard*, and the village of *Gundſtrup* in the pariſh of *Ketting*, *Evelgunde* in the pariſh of *Nottmark*, the manors of *Rumohrſkof*, *Gravenſtein*, and the fine ſeats of *Kielſtrup* and *Ahrup* alſo belong to the Dukes of *Sonderburg*.

The Prefecture of NORBURG conſiſts,

1. Of the north part of the iſle of *Alſen*, which contains five pariſhes.

The

The ancient caſtle of *Oſterholm* in this Prefecture lies in ruins, ſo that all that is worthy of notice here may be reduced to *Tundoſt* or *Norburg* church with the fine ſeat called *Norburg*, lately built by Duke *Auguſtus*. The caſtle that formerly ſtood on the ſame ſpot, which was one of the moſt ancient in the country and well fortified by art and nature, and had been ſeveral times beſieged and taken, was conſumed by fire in the year 1665. The preſent edifice, though it is neither large nor magnificent, is admired for its elegant ſimplicity, and pleaſant ſituation. The village of the ſame name that lies near it was formerly called *Kopping:* It ſtands in a pleaſant ſituation, and is continually improving.

2. The iſland of *Arroe*, which lies at the diſtance of half a geographical mile from *Funen* and two miles and a half to the North-Eaſt of *Alſen*. It is three geographical miles in length, and from one-half to two-thirds of a mile in breadth. This iſland was formerly very woody; but the ſoil has been almoſt totally cleared, in order to render it fit for tillage. There are no deer in *Arroe*; but it abounds in hares and wild-fowl. Here are two good harbours, namely, that in the large bay, at the entrance of which two caſtles formerly ſtood, one on each ſide; and that of the little town of *Arroes-Kiepping*, which is ſheltered by the little iſland of *Deyeroe* that lies oppoſite to the harbour. The inhabitants are a mixture of peaſants and ſea-faring people. Here is a great plenty of all kinds of vegetables; eſpecially cabbage, onions, and *Daniſh* cummin. Duke *John* II. bequeathed this iſland to his ſon *Chriſtian*; but the latter dying ſoon after without iſſue, it devolved to his brother *Frederick*, who ſold the middle part of the iſland to his brother *Philip* of *Glucksburg*. The reſt of it devolved to the houſe of *Ploen*, and afterwards to the king, who, in 1749, purchaſed the middle part, of the *Glucksburg* family; and thus became ſole proprietor of the whole iſland. It contains the Prefecture of *Grafenſtein* (which conſiſts of the two manors of *Wuderup* and *Grafenſtein*;) the little town of *Arroeſkopping*, which ſtands on a level and has a pariſh-church and a pretty good harbour; and alſo five pariſhes, in one of which the little town of *Marſtal* lies. As to ſpirituals, this iſland is in the Dioceſe of *Funen*; but with regard to civil affairs it is included in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, and is under a particular court of judicature by virtue of an edict publiſhed in the year 1750.

V. The hereditary eſtate of the Duke of GLUKSBURG.

It is well known that king *Frederick* II. aſſigned ſome parcels of land to his brother *John*, from whoſe third ſon Duke *Philip*, the line of *Glucksburg* is deſcended; and the preſent Duke *Frederick* is a great grandſon of the ſaid *Philip*. The Duke has both the higher and lower juriſdiction over his hereditary dominions, with the right of hunting, and pardoning of criminals. However, he cannot alienate his hereditary lands without the king's conſent; it being a patrimonial *Fidei-Commiſſum*. It conſiſts,

1. Of

1. Of the little Prefecture of *Glucksburg*, which lies within the *Harde* of *Huesbeyer* in the Prefecture of *Flensburg*. *Glucksburg*, the Ducal palace, ſtands in a delightful country, and is environed with a moat and a fine wood. In this place ſtood formerly a rich convent of *Bernardines*, which was called *Ruhe-Kloſter*, and at the Reformation was ſequeſtered to the crown. But, in 1581, king *Frederick* II. conferred it as a Fief on his brother Duke *John* II. who ordered the preſent fine palace to be built out of the materials of the convent. Near the palace is a pretty village called by the ſame name, and inhabited by officers and tradeſmen belonging to the Duke's court. Beſides the palace-chapel, which is the burial-place of the Dukes, it contains alſo the churches of *Muncbrarup* and *Nien-kerken*.

2. The *Harde-Vogty*, *Broacker*; and the little territory of *Sundewit* (i. e. *Witharum vel Jutorum auſtralium regio*) which is one *Daniſh* mile * in length, almoſt as much in breadth, and conſiſts of ſix pariſhes, four of which, viz. *Broacker*, *Nubel*, *Satterup*, and *Ulderup* are included in the diſtrict of *Glucksburg*. In the firſt of theſe the *Glucksburg* manors of *Krammark*, *Sheelgaard*, *Freyleben*, and *Schottsbulhoff* or *Nienhoff* lie. In the others the Ducal eſtates of *Lundgaard* and *Phillipsburg*, together with three other manors, are ſituated.

In *Sundewit* lies the county of *Reventlau*, to which beſides the manſion-houſe which was formerly called *Sandberg*, and the pariſh of *Duppel*, ſeveral other detached parcels of land belong. Count *Chriſtian Detlev* is the proprietor of the Baronies of *Brahe-trolleburg* and *Brendegaard* in *Funen*, the eſtates of *Krenkrup*, *Roſenlund* and *Norregaard* in *Laaland*, and *Friſenwold*, *Kalloe*, *Loiſtrup* and *Bruſgaard* in *Jutland*.

VI. The Prefecture of FLENSBURG extends from the *North-ſea* to the *Baltic* ſeven *Daniſh* miles in length; but the breadth is unequal being about three miles and a half in ſome places, and more in others. Its ſoil alſo varies in different parts of the prefecture; the middle of the country being nothing but moors and barren waſtes, and the ſkirts tolerably fertile and pleaſant. Here the river *Saholm* riſes, which, after receiving the *Wyhbeck* and *Leckau*, empties itſelf into the *North-ſea*. The *Treen*, which abounds with fine fiſh, and falls into the *Eider* near *Frederickſtadt*, has its ſource alſo in this Prefecture; which derives its name from the town of *Flensburg*, in Latin *Flenopolis* or *Flensburgum*, which is a pretty large, well built town. Its ſituation is low; and it is ſurrounded on three ſides by mountains: But on the fourth lies the famous gulf called *Flensburgerwieck* which runs twenty miles from the *Baltic* into the land. The hills on both ſides of the bottom of the gulf form a ſecure harbour with a depth of water ſufficient for the largeſt ſhips, which at preſent are unloaded at the key; but formerly this was done cloſe to the warehouſes. The trade of this town was then, indeed, very conſiderable, but is at preſent greatly

* Ten and a half *Daniſh* miles are equal to a degree of the Equator.

decayed. The commerce of the *Flensburghers* to *Norway* has been clogged with great difficulties, and that to *Copenhagen* and other parts of *Denmark* entirely loſt; for they are prohibited from exporting thither any cloths, ſilk, woollen ſtuffs, wines or brandy, of which, with other commodities, they uſed to make very extraordinary profits. A ſevere blow was alſo given to their trade by the laſt peace concluded at *Aix-la-Chapelle* betwixt *France*, *England*, and *Spain*; ſo that this town has further calamities to apprehend. *Flensburg* is a long narrow town, and extends above a mile in length from the North gate to St. *John*'s gate. It has twelve lanes beſides the high ſtreet, and five gates excluſive of the *Mill-Gate*. It is divided into twenty-two quarters; and moſt of the houſes are ſpacious and ſtrongly built. Here are three *German* pariſh-churches, one *Daniſh*, and a good ſchool founded by *Ludolph Naaman*, who was a *Franciſcan* monk of a convent of *Minims* in this town. This ſchool has ſince been enriched by ſeveral benefactions. Here is an alms-houſe, with a chapel, that was formerly a convent of *Grey-Friars*, and in which fifty poor perſons are comfortably maintained; and alſo an orphan-houſe. There is a ſort of an Exchange with warehouſes for merchants, *&c.* by the water-ſide. The South and North Market-places are both ſpacious areas, and the latter is adorned with a fountain of free-ſtone. Without St. *John*'s gate directly facing the harbour is a pleaſant ſuburb, called St. *Jurgen*, the greateſt part of which belongs to the alms-houſe, and but a ſmall part of it to the town. An old ruinous caſtle ſtands on a mountain which lies weſt of the town, and not far from it is a paper-mill. The Prefecture and town of *Flensburg*, and alſo the territory of *Bredſtedt*, in eccleſiaſtical affairs, are ſubject to the conſiſtory of this Diſtrict. With regard to the hiſtorical particulars of this town, it firſt occurs in hiſtory in the year 1232, when, probably, it was only a village, on occaſion of a convent which was then founded here. In 1284, it obtained the privileges of a city from Duke *Waldemar*, and had another more advantageous charter of Police from *Chriſtian* IV. but the principal articles in both charters have been ſince revoked. In 1412, the famous queen *Margaret* died on board a ſhip in this harbour, in her paſſage to *Sceland*. In 1427, it baffled the combined forces of the *Holſteiners*, the *Lubeckers*, and the *Hamburgers*, who warmly preſſed it by land and by ſea; but at preſent it is a place of no ſtrength at all. Several remarkable Diets have been held here; particularly that of 1648, when all the ſtates paid homage to king *Frederick* III. In the ſame year the Chancery or Supreme Court both for *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* was eſtabliſhed here; but in 1649 it was removed to *Gluckſtadt* in *Holſtein*. In 1646, king *Chriſtian* V. was born in the ancient caſtle that ſtood in this town, which is now in ruins. In the year 1655, when the plague raged at *Copenhagen*, the Court and all the public offices removed to this town.

The *Hardes* belonging to the Prefecture of FLENSBURG are,

1. *Wies*, which conſiſts of ſix pariſhes. 2. *Huzby*,

2. *Huesby*, which is two *Daniſh* miles and a half in length, and one in breadth. It contains five pariſhes.

3. *Nie*, which is above two *Daniſh* miles in length, and ſeven in breadth, conſiſts of five pariſhes.

4. *Uggel*, which is three *Daniſh* miles long, but of an unequal breadth. It contains ſix pariſhes.

Note. The famous tract of land called ANGELN, which is five *Daniſh* miles in length and four in breadth, lies between the gulf of *Flensburg* and that called the *Sley*. It includes the *Hardes* of *Huesby*, *Nie*, with a great part of that of *Uggel* in the Prefecture of *Flensburg*; part of the territory of *Glucksburg*, the Provoſtſhip of *Gettingen*, and the *Hardes* of *Struxdorf* and *Schlieſs* in the Prefecture of *Gottorf*. In the fifth century the ancient inhabitants of this country, in company with the *Saxons* and *Jutes*, their neighbours on both ſides, emigrated into GREAT BRITAIN, where having repelled the invaſions of the PICTS, they made themſelves maſters of the country, to which they gave the name of ENGELAND or ENGLAND from that of their former habitation.

VII. The Diſtrict of BREDSTEDT, which was formerly called *Norgos-Harde* (as that of *Huſum* was called *Sudgos-Harde*) is two *Daniſh* miles in length and as many in breadth, and contains a great many acres of marſhland. It had formerly its particular *Landvogt* and Secretary; but is now ſubject to the Prefect of *Flensburg*. Since the year 1741, a college of Regulation, and a particular Police have been eſtabliſhed here. In eccleſiaſtical affairs it is ſubject to the conſiſtory of *Flensburg*. In this Diſtrict are the following places of note.

Bredſtedt, an ancient large market-town, well built and populous. South-weſt of this place the Count *des Mercieres* incloſed a *Koeg* of 1100 *Demates* of land, and gave it the name of *Sophiæ Magdalena-Koeg*.

Eight pariſhes, among which the *Stifts-vogtey* of *Bordelum* is a part of the old Diſtrict of *Schwabſted*. The Secretary is alſo *Stifts-vogt* or Governor of them.

VIII. The Prefectures of HUSUM and SCHWABSTEDT.

The Prefecture of HUSUM alone is not above two *Daniſh* miles in length and as many in breadth; but the ſoil is fertile and well cultivated. It conſiſts of heaths and marſhland; and on the former all the churches and villages are built. It alſo includes part of the Prefecture of *Schwabſtedt*, which, during the minority of the prince, the government diſmembered and parcelled out among the neighbouring Prefectures about the beginning of this century. The territories of *Schwabſtedt* and *Rodemis* were annexed to the Prefecture of *Huſum*; thoſe of *Treya* and *Fuſing* to the Prefecture of *Gottorf*, and thoſe of *Bordlum*, *Bredſtedt*, and *Colſtrup* were incorporated with the Prefecture of *Apenrade*.

The Prefecture of HUSUM is ſo called from

Huſum, in Latin *Huſumum*, a pretty large town, and well built with ſtone. It lies on the *Hever* where the heaths and marſhland are ſeparated from each other. It cannot boaſt of its antiquity, as it was only a large village in the year 1372; but from that time to 1398, it increaſed ſo as to make the two villages of *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Huſum*, which were incorporated with the pariſh of *Milſtedt*. In 1432, the inhabitants built a chapel for their own uſe, and in 1448, detached themſelves from *Milſtedt*, and became an independent pariſh. After this *Huſum* began to flouriſh in a ſurpriſing manner, and was made a market-town. In 1498, a convent of bare-footed *Gray-Friars* was founded here; but at the Reformation it was converted into the alms-houſe and chapel which are ſtill to be ſeen in St. *George's* church-yard. In the year 1500, the pariſh-church of *Huſum*, one of the largeſt and handſomeſt in the country, was built. In 1521, a mint was eſtabliſhed in this town, where a great number of rix-dollars were coined; but it was ſoon after removed to *Sleſwick*. The ſchool, which by the liberalities of private perſons is now endowed with a fund of 14,000 *Lubec* marks, and has five claſſes, was built in 1531; and Duke *Adolphus*, in 1577, began to build a palace on the ſituation of the old convent, which he had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing completed in the year 1582. It is a ſpacious and convenient ſtructure, and has frequently been the reſidence of the Dowager Dutcheſſes. In 1582, this town obtained a charter of Police and juriſdiction within itſelf; and in 1601, a noble town-houſe was built here. In 1603, *Huſum* was conſtituted a city, with ſuitable privileges, by Duke *John Adolphus*, and in 1608, a new charter was granted it. The famous *Antoinette Bourignon* lived in this town in 1673, and had a preſs ſet up in her houſe, where ſhe uſed to print her own works, till the government put a ſtop to her publications. The inundations of *Nordſtrand* have been of great detriment to *Huſum*, by the abſolute ruin of its trade with that iſland; and the terrible flood which happened in 1717, has reduced the people of *Huſum* to a low condition. The ravages and calamities of war have alſo further loaded it with very heavy debts, under which it ſtill groans. Formerly this city was famous for exporting great quantities of malt, which found the inhabitants a profitable employment. They alſo employed above forty large veſſels in commerce; and the oyſter-trade was almoſt entirely in their hands; but they are now deprived of all theſe advantages. The oyſter-dredges ſuffered extremely by the hard froſt in the year 1740; and, at preſent, the chief trade of this place conſiſts in beer, cattle, and horſes; ſome thouſands of oxen being annually fed by the *Huſumers* in the ſouth-marſhes, and in autumn, driven from thence for ſale to *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*. But notwithſtanding the great decay of its navigation, it ſtill employs the indigent, and ſupplies the place with the chief neceſſaries in trade. *Huſum* has a Conſiſtory; but an appeal lies from it to the ſuperior Conſiſtory of *Gottorf*.

To

To the Prefectures of HUSUM and SCHWABSTEDT belong eight pariſhes, in which are the following places of note.

Mildſtede, which is the mother-church of the *Huſum* pariſhes, and three miniſters ſtill belong to it. Near *Mildſtede* on the river *Milda* formerly ſtood the town and caſtle of *Mildesborg*, which were built in 1145, and deſtroyed by an inundation in the year 1300.

Schwabſtedt, which is an old and ill built, but pleaſant and populous town. Its caſtle was formerly the reſidence of the Biſhops of *Schleſwick*, who had alſo a palace in that city.

To the Prefecture of HUSUM belong alſo ſome ſmall iſlands, among which are the iſland of *Pelworm*, and what remains of the iſland of *Nordſtrand*, with the Downs or Sandbank which is ſtill called by the ſame name. *Nordſtrand* lies in the *North-Sea*, and was formerly three *Daniſh* miles long, and, in moſt parts, above one mile broad. It was inhabited by ſavage *Frieſians*, contained twenty-two pariſhes, and by its extraordinary fertility abounded in cattle and corn. For ſome centuries this iſland had ſuffered great damages, from time to time, from the violence of the ſea, particularly in the years 1300, 1483, 1532, and 1615. But the moſt terrible inundation of all began about ten at night on the 11th day of *October*, in the year 1634, when the whole country was entirely overflowed; and the impetuoſity of the waves was ſo great that 6408 perſons, 1332 houſes, thirty windmills, ſix ſteeples, and 50,000 head of cattle were ſwept away by the ſea. In *Eiderſtedt*, beſides 664 houſes, involved in the ſame ruin, 2107 perſons, 6100 head of cattle and 6738 ſheep and hogs, periſhed at the ſame time. Of all *Nordſtrand* nothing is now remaining but the ſmall pariſh of *Pelworm* which owed its ſafety to the height of its ſituation; and the *Brabanderkoeg* or little iſland of *Nordſtrand*, which by the aſſiſtance of ſome *Flemmings* has with inexpreſſible labour and at a vaſt expence been drained and rendered habitable. Since this diſmal cataſtrophe the ſmall iſland of *Nordſtrand*, and the neighbouring *Nordſtrand-Downs* belong to the above-mentioned *Flemmings*, and particularly to the *Fathers of the Oratory* at *Mechlin*. There is a *Lutheran* church and a popiſh chapel in *Nordſtrand*. In *Pelworm* there are two *Lutheran* churches; and one on each of the little iſlands which lie about it, namely, *Groed*, *Hoog*, *Langenes*, *Nordmarſh*, and *Oland*; which are all within the Prefecture of *Huſum*.

IX. The Diſtrict of EIDERSTEDT, which is a very fertile and rich country, lies between the *Hever* and the *Eider*. It extends in length, from Eaſt to Weſt, above four *Daniſh* miles; but the breadth is unequal from three-fourths to one and-a-half *Daniſh* mile, and its circumference is about fourteen. It is for the moſt part a kind of marſhland, and produces plenty of wheat, barley, beans, and excellent peaſe; and but little rye. It is particularly famous for eſculent herbs, and cattle. A great quantity of butter and cheeſe is alſo exported from hence. The ſheep here have

have larger fleeces of wool than in other places; and likewiſe give a greater quantity of milk. The horſes are ſtrong and of a large ſize; but the greateſt part of the horſes they employ here are bought in *North-Jutland* and *Ditmarſh*. *Eiderſtedt* is ſupplied with wood from the higher countries at the diſtance of ſeveral miles. Here is ſome freſh-water fiſh, but theſe are in no great plenty; the country being liable to the irruptions of the ſea, which ſoon proves fatal to thoſe ſpecies of fiſh. Its low and damp ſoil renders the air very unhealthy, eſpecially to ſtrangers. The inhabitants are all plebeians, without one noble family amongſt them; and the wealthieſt of theſe are of *Frieſian* extraction. They have great privileges and particular laws and cuſtoms of their own. The Dykes on the north and ſouth-ſide are kept in repair by incredible labour, and at a great expence. The government of the country is lodged in two officers called *Oberſtaller* and *Staller*, who are appointed by the king; and ſixteen inferior counſellors, and two ſecretaries are joined with theſe in the *Viti Ding Gericht* or court of Judicature. This Diſtrict is divided into *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Eiderſtedt*.

In *Eaſt-Eiderſtedt* the only town of note is

Tonningen, in Latin *Tonninga*, which is the chief town in the country; and obtained the privileges of a city in the year 1590. In 1644, it was fortified by Duke *Frederick* at a vaſt expence *. This town is elegant, but neither large nor populous. In 1613, the harbour was widened and improved by the Duke at the expence of 30,000 rix-dollars; ſo that *Tonningen* had a conſiderable trade by exporting yearly large quantities of the commodities of the country, which every *Monday* were brought hither to market from every part of *Eiderſtedt*. In 1675, during the war with *Sweden*, the Duke, purſuant to the treaty of *Rendſburg*, was obliged to cede this town to the King, who cauſed the fortifications of it to be demoliſhed. But when the Duke recovered the town and the whole country, in 1679, they were repaired, and improved with additional works; ſo that when king *Frederick* IV. beſieged it he was not able to make himſelf maſter of it. In 1713, *Steinbock* the *Swediſh* General having by the Duke's conſent been admitted into the town, the king of *Denmark* with the aſſiſtance of his Allies plied it ſo vigorouſly, that the *Swedes* were obliged to ſurrender themſelves priſoners of war; and in 1714, the king having got poſſeſſion of the town, the fortifications were demoliſhed a ſecond time. *Tonningen* has been in a defenceleſs condition ever ſince that time. It had once a noble caſtle; but that was likewiſe demoliſhed by the King's orders in the year 1734.

Beſides this town there are ſeven pariſhes in *Eaſt-Eiderſtedt*, and the town of *Oldenſwort*.

* The author ſays thirty-ſix Tons of gold; but I cannot pretend to determine what he means by a *Ton of Gold*.

Weſt-Eiderſtedt contains the following Diſtricts.

1. *Everſchop*, or *Heverſchop*, which is ſo called from the river *Hever*. It conſiſts of ſix pariſhes, beſides the little town of

Garding, which obtained the privileges of a city in 1590.

2. *Uhtholm*, which conſiſts of four pariſhes. On the *Weſt-Hever* about the year 1670, ſtood a caſtle called *Wogenſmanneſburg*; which was inhabited by pirates. The inhabitants of *Everſchop* and *Uhtholm* laid ſiege to it, and owed their ſucceſs chiefly to a brave young woman, who poſted herſelf on the Salley-bridge and gave the beſiegers time to force their way into the caſtle, of which, after ſome reſiſtance, they made themſelves maſters.

X. The Prefecture of GOTTORF or GOTTORP is about ſeven *Daniſh* miles in length and ſix in breadth, and conſiſts of the following *Hardes*.

1. The *Harde* of *Hohner*, ſo called from the village and pariſh of *Hohn*, is nearly ſurrounded by the *Eider* and *Sorg*; and is about two *Daniſh* miles in length and as many in breadth.

2. The *Harde* of *Krop* is about two *Daniſh* miles long and one-and a-half broad. It moſtly conſiſts of heaths and moors; and *Loheide* one of the former is famous for many battles which were formerly fought there. The only pariſh in this *Harde* is that of *Krop*, from which it takes its name.

3. The *Harde* of *Arens* is ſomething leſs than two *Daniſh* miles in length, and almoſt as broad; and the ſoil is but little better than that of *Krop*. In this *Harde* lies the greateſt part of the celebrated *Dannewerk*, or great wall which, in the beginning of the ninth century, *Gotric* king of *Denmark* built, to prevent the incurſions of the *Saxons* and *Slavens*. It runs acroſs the whole country, from *Hollinſtedt* to the gulf of *Sley*, about eight or nine *Daniſh* miles in length; and a great part of it is ſtill remaining. In this *Harde* lie the pariſhes of *Hollingſtedt* and *Haddeby*, or *Haddebue*. The church belonging to the latter, which was built in the year 826, is the moſt ancient in the Dutchy, and, I may add, in all *Denmark*: But on the relapſe of the people into Paganiſm, it has been ſeveral times deſtroyed. It lies oppoſite to the city of *Sleſwick* on the ſouth-ſide of the *Sley*, in which the firſt Chriſtians in this country were baptized. The name of this pariſh is written eight different ways; and ſome will have it to ſignify a ſea-port town, others the Capital: For it is conjectured that a city ſtood formerly in this place; which is very probable, as the church ſeems to be the remains of it.

4. The *Harde* of *Struxdorf* is four *Daniſh* miles in length, and contains twelve pariſhes.

5, The *Harde* of *Schlies* lies on the *Sley*. The inhabitants of this *Harde* are chiefly employed in the fiſhery in the bay, where they catch great quantities of herrings, *&c.* It conſiſts of five pariſhes.

6. The

6. The *Vogteys* or little territories of *Fuſing* and *Treya*. The former of theſe once belonged to *Angeln*, and the latter to the Prefecture of *Schwabſtedt*.

7. The ſmall Prefecture of *Mohrkirchen*. This was formerly a convent of monks of the order of St. *Antony*, and erected towards the cloſe of the 14th century. It includes the *Vogteys* or territories of *Langſtedt* and *Carlſwraa*. In the year 1752, this *Amt* was inveſted with a Judicature of its own in commercial differences; from which there lies an appeal to the Superior Court of *Gottorf*. But in cauſes of another nature it is under the Juriſdiction of the Inferior Conſiſtory of *Gottorf*; and the Governor of *Gottorf* alſo preſides over *Mohrkirchen*.

Within the Prefecture of GOTTORF are the following places of note.

The caſtle of *Gottorf*, or *Gottorp*, ſtands in the *Harde* of *Arens* between *Lollfluſs* and *Fredericksberg*, which are two parts of the city of *Sleſwick*, in a moſt delightful country. Some derive the name of this place from *Gotteſdorf*, i. e. 'God's village;' for it originally belonged to the biſhops of *Sleſwick*, and was appropriated to a pious uſe. The moſt ancient biſhops of *Sleſwick* reſided in a caſtle that ſtood about half a *Daniſh* mile to the north-weſt of that city, not far from the place on which an inn called *Rugekrog* now ſtands, where ſome of the ruins of it are ſtill to be ſeen. That old caſtle, however, was demoliſhed in the year 1059. Afterwards Biſhop *Occo* built a new palace on the ſpot where the caſtle of *Gottorf* now ſtands, which continued in the poſſeſſion of the biſhops of *Sleſwick* till the year 1268, when Duke *Erick* procured it for himſelf by an exchange. It was at that time a ſtrong fortreſs; and the Dukes of *Sleſwick* reſided in it till the year 1713, when king *Frederick* IV. got poſſeſſion of it, and united it to the crown of *Denmark* in the year 1721. It had, from time to time, been improved, altered, and rebuilt by the Dukes of *Sleſwick*; and king *Frederick* IV. and *Chriſtian* VI. alſo laid out conſiderable ſums in furniſhing and embelliſhing it with fine pictures, *&c.* In this palace are held both the Superior and Provincial Courts of Judicature, and alſo the Superior and Provincial Conſiſtories. It once had two gardens; but the *Old Garden*, as it is called, which lies ſouth of the palace is entirely gone to decay, and now ſold to a burgher. The *New Garden*, to the north of the palace, is beautifully laid out. It has an elegant ſummer-houſe, in which was formerly kept a large globe of eleven feet diameter, the outſide of which repreſented the Earth, and the inſide the Heavens ſtudded with all the known ſtars of ſilver, gilt. Ten or eleven perſons might ſit conveniently round a table within it. The whole machine revolved round its axis once in twenty-four hours, being put in motion by water; and was ſo contrived that it might be eaſily kept in conſtant rotation from within by means of an *Archimedes*'s ſcrew. In 1713, this noble Globe was preſented to the Czar *Peter* I. who ordered it to be conveyed to *Petersburg*; and therefore

we ſhall give a farther account of it in deſcribing that city. The *Gottorf* library was firſt begun, in the year 1606, by Duke *John Adolphus*; but in 1749, the books were removed from hence to *Copenhagen*. Oppoſite to the caſtle of *Gottorf*, on the ſouth-ſide of it, ſtands a palace of a very elegant ſtructure, which was erected at a great expence by Count *Natt*. When his *Daniſh* majeſty became maſter of the place, he beſtowed this palace on the *Statthalter* or Governor of *Sleſwick-Holſtein*.

Schleſwig or *Sleſwick*, in Latin *Sleſvicum*, is the capital of the Dutchy, and ſaid to derive its name from the *Wiecke* or gulf of *Schley*. It was formerly called *Huddebue*; and the above-mentioned church, which ſtands without the city of *Sleſwick*, ſtill retains that name. From the year 808, when the city of *Mecklenburg* was demoliſhed, and the richeſt merchants were removed hither by king *Gotrick*, *Sleſwick* gradually increaſed and roſe to great proſperity: But in the eleventh century it was pillaged, burnt, and razed to the very ground by *Harald* king of *Norway*, and alſo by the *Holſteiners*, *Vandals*, *&c.* Though it recovered itſelf pretty well after thoſe calamities; yet has it ſeveral times ſince met with the ſame fate; and, in the year 1447, it was entirely deſtroyed by fire. However, it was a flouriſhing town, after all theſe misfortunes, till the year 1713, when the Ducal Court being removed from *Sleſwick* it fell to decay. And though the Governor and the State Officers ſtill reſide here, yet theſe advantages are not an equivalent for the above-mentioned loſs: Neither is it capable of carrying on any great foreign trade, the mouth of the *Sley*, which is about five *Daniſh* miles below the town, being choked up; and at preſent a great number of houſes in this city ſtand empty for want of inhabitants. *Sleſwick* lies in a moſt charming pleaſant country. Its form is very irregular; but ſomething reſembling a creſcent; it being about half a *Daniſh* mile in length. The city is divided into three parts, namely the *Old* or proper *Sleſwick*, *Lollfuſs*, as it is called, which is a long ſtreet leading from the town to the caſtle of *Gottorf*, and *Fredericksberg*, formerly called *Kratzenberg*, which lies at the ſouth extremity of the town towards *Rendsburg*. In the *Old Town* there is but one church, which is the cathedral and dedicated to St. *Peter*. It is a grand ſtructure and makes a good appearance both within and without: However, it has no ſteeple, or tower, though a very ſuperb foundation of hewn ſtone has been laid for one. This church was built in the year 1260; and about 200 years after, was almoſt totally deſtroyed by fire; upon which the Council held at *Baſil*, in 1441, granted Indulgences to all who ſhould contribute towards the rebuilding of it. Of the fine altar in this church I ſhall ſpeak in the account of *Bordeſholm*, from whence it was removed hither. In the choir are the tombs of *Frederick* I. and his two queens, with thoſe of the Dukes of *Sleſwick* of the *Oldenburg* branch, and ſeveral biſhops. Not far from the cathedral is the Orphan-houſe, which was founded in the year 1714; and

on the great market-place ſtand the town-houſe and the *Grey-Friars* convent. On the north-ſide of the town on St. *Michael*'s hill ſtands a church called by the name of that Saint; and in *Fredericksberg* is *Trinity* church, which was built in 1651. There were formerly ſeven pariſh-churches and ſix convents in this city; but now one can ſcarce trace out the places where many of them ſtood. On the eaſt-ſide of the town on the other ſide the *Fiſh-bridge* lies the *Holm*, as it is called, where the famous convent of St. *John*, which was founded for ladies of noble families, ſtands. There are ten nuns now reſident in it, the Abbeſs included. This convent was probably begun in 1194, for nuns of the *Benedictine* order; for it was never inhabited by monks, as ſome affirm: Neither does it ſtand on the *Gull* or *Guldenholm*, being at the diſtance of a *Daniſh* mile from it. In the gulf, oppoſite to the city lies *Mew-iſland*, ſo called from the incredible multitude of Sea-Mews which make it their ſummer abode. In former times a mole or cauſey leading from the weſt-end of the key to *Mewenburg*, and from thence to *Hadebye*, lay on the ſouth-ſide of the town. This was the uſual road into *Holſtein*, and was defended by the ſtrong caſtle of *Jurgensburg*, which ſtood in *Mewenberg* but is now in ruins. At the end of this mole, near the key, the caſtle where king *Abel* reſided when Duke of *Sleſwick* ſtood on the main land. When that monarch came to the crown by the murder of his brother *Erick*, he beſtowed this caſtle on the *Auguſtine* monks, who converted it into a convent, which ſtood on the ſpot where the Orphan-houſe now ſtands. The mole has been ſo ſapped and waſhed away by the ſea, that none of the remains of it are diſcernible at preſent, but at low-water.

XI. The little Diſtrict of STAPELHOLM lies between the *Eider* and the *Treen*, and is computed to be about two *Daniſh* miles in length, and from three-fourths to two miles in breadth. It is governed by a *Landvogt* who is ſubordinate to the Prefect of *Gottorf*, and is a particular provoſtſhip conſiſting of three pariſhes.

In this Diſtrict lies

Frederickſtadt, which is not a large, but regular and well built town, and of a ſquare form after the *Dutch* manner. It is ſituated between the rivers *Eider* and *Treen*: Its ſtreets are kept very clean, and in ſome of them fine rows of lime-trees are planted. Some *Dutch Arminians*, who quitted *Holland* immediately after the ſynod of *Dort*, were the founders of this town, and called their ſettlement by the name of *Frederick* IV. who was then Duke of *Sleſwick*. In 1632, *Frederickſtadt* increaſed conſiderably. Half of the Magiſtracy is of the *Arminian* and the other half of the *Lutheran* perſuaſion: The *Calviniſts* alſo aſſemble in the *Arminian* church. The *Lutheran* church was conſecrated in the year 1650. The moſt ſubſtantial traders and merchants in this town are *Mennonites* *. Here are alſo ſome *Quakers*

* Theſe were a ſort of *Anabaptiſts*, and derive their name from *Menno Simon* of *Friſia*, who lived in the 16th century.

(but

(but this ſect is now almoſt extinct) *Anabaptiſts*, and *Jews*. The laſt have a ſynagogue in this town to perform their devotion in. The inhabitants ſubſiſt by ſilk and woollen manufactures, navigation and commerce. Inſtead of a wall, *Frederickſtadt* is ſurrounded only by a moat with large high trees growing on the banks of it. The river *Treen* is here, at a great expence, joined to the *Eider* by means of a canal and ſluices.

XII. The Prefecture of the CHAPTER of SLESWICK.

This Prefecture is part of the ancient Biſhoprick of *Sleſwick*, which was founded by king *Harald* towards the cloſe of the tenth century. It depended on the Empire and not on the Duke of *Sleſwick*. On the deceaſe of *Gottſchalk Ahlefeldt* the laſt popiſh biſhop, *Tileman Huſſen* was appointed the firſt *Lutheran* biſhop of this See, to whom Duke *Frederick*, youngeſt ſon of Duke *Frederick* I. was nominated coadjutor. *Huſſen* dying in 1551, was alſo ſucceeded by the ſaid *Frederick*, who alſo died in the year 1556. Upon this the Chapter choſe Duke *Adolphus* for Adminiſtrator, who, in 1562, declared D. *Paul Eitzen* for his General-Superintendant over the churches of that part of *Sleſwick*, which belonged to the Duke. After his death, which happened in the year 1586, a diſpute aroſe concerning the biſhoprick, betwixt the King and the Duke's family, during which, it was governed by a *Statthalter* and the Prefect of *Schwabſtedt*; till at laſt, in the year 1602, Prince *Ulrick* the King's ſecond ſon was nominated biſhop of *Sleſwick*. *Ulrick* dying in 1624, the former conteſt between the two families was renewed; but at laſt by the treaty of *Roſchild*, which was concluded in 1658, it was agreed that the biſhoprick ſhould be divided betwixt the King and the Duke into two equal portions. This partition accordingly took place in the year 1660, and the eight prebends or canonries were ſuppreſſed; the King retaining the revenues of four of them, and the other four falling to the Duke's ſhare. In the year 1717, when king *Frederick* IV. got poſſeſſion of the whole Dutchy, the ſeveral revenues both of the Biſhop and Chapter fell to the Crown. At preſent, the Prefecture of the Chapter of *Sleſwick*, conſiſts of three Diſtricts.

The firſt Diſtrict, where the Prefect alone has juriſdiction, though not without appeal, contains the three following *Vogteys*:

1. *Ulſnis*, which lies in the *Harde* of *Schlies*, and contains only the pariſh of *Ulſnis*.

2. *Bernd*, which lies in the *Harde* of *Struxdorf*, conſiſts of the pariſh of *Nubbel*.

3. *Stedeſand*, in the *Harde* of *Kaar*, which belongs to the Prefecture of *Tondern*.

The ſecond Diſtrict conſiſts of ſix *Vogteys*, in which the Inſpector of the Chapter is inveſted with the ſole adminiſtration of juſtice in inferior cauſes, and has a ſeat and vote in the Superior Courts of Judicature. The Prefect alone ſuperintends over commercial affairs, and ſigns all contracts, agreements, and other legal inſtruments between the ſubjects.

The *Vogteys* in this Diſtrict are,

1. *Gammelbuygaard.*
2. *Luyſappel*, which lies in the Prefecture of *Sonderburg*.
3. *Langenhorn*, which lies in the Territory of *Bredſtedt*.
4. The *Vogtey* of *Coxbul.*
5. The *Vogtey* of *Hackſtedt.*
6. *Coſel* or *Coeſlef*, in the Prefecture of *Hutten*, which includes a pariſh of the ſame name.

The third is the Cathedral Diſtrict, in which the eccleſiaſtical Inſpector is alſo the Juſticiary. This Diſtrict contains the following places of note.

1. The Cathedral in *Sleſwick.*
2. The Cathedral-School, with four colleges.
3. The *Dom-Ziegelhof*, as it is called, in the city of *Sleſwick*, conſiſting of forty handſome houſes.
4. The houſes and dwellings which ſtand on the ground belonging to the Cathedral, or the Cloſe.
5. The iſle of *Arnis* in the gulf of *Sley*, on which ſtands a church. This iſland was formerly covered all over with woods; but the proprietor of the eſtate of *Roſt* oppreſſing the inhabitants of the town of *Cappel* with heavy impoſts, a hundred families of them, which conſiſted of about 600 ſouls, quitted the place, and betook themſelves to this iſland. As they received great encouragements from Duke *Chriſtian Albert*, who underſtood his real intereſt, they ſoon cleared and cultivated the land; ſo that there are now about fifty-ſix houſes on the iſland. Moſt of the inhabitants ſubſiſt by navigation.
6. The *Vogtey* of *Grodersbuy*, in which the pariſh of *Rabenkirchen* lies.
7. The *Ulſniſſer-Pluge* or Plough-lands.
8. Some Ploughs of land in the *Vogteys* of *Gammelbuygaard* and *Coxbul.*
9. Nine Vicarial-Ploughs and three quarters, which lie in the above-mentioned *Vogteys*, and among the *Ulſniſſer* Plough-lands.

XIII. The Prefecture of HUTTEN conſiſts of the ancient *Harde* of *Berg* or *Hutten*, and is a diſtinct Provoſtſhip, with three pariſhes belonging to it. The manſion-houſe of the Prefect of *Hutten* lies in the pariſh of the ſame name. In this Prefecture are the pariſh of *Seeſtedt* which belongs to a noble family, and the ſmall town of

Eckelnfohrde or *Eckernfohrde*, a modern well built and flouriſhing place, which is almoſt ſurrounded with water, and has an excellent wide harbour of a good depth. This town formerly carried on a conſiderable trade; but in that particular it is at preſent a little reduced. The ſtreets are broad, well paved, and planted with trees. In the year 1543, king *Chriſtian* III. gave the inhabitants of *Eckelnfohrde* the privilege of applying to the Courts of Judicature at *Sleſwick.*

XIV. Several DISTRICTS belonging to Noble families, which are,

1. The

1. The pariſh of *Geltingen*, which lies between the *Baltic* and the Prefectures of *Flensburg* and *Gottorf*, including four manors and fourteen villages, belonging to Noble families.

2. The large commercial town of *Cappel* ſituated on the *Sley*, which together with the whole pariſh belongs to the manor of *Roſt*. The fineſt herrings in all theſe ſeas are caught hereabouts in the gulf of *Sley*.

3. The pariſh of *Boren*, which, as well as the former, lies in the *Harde* of *Schlies*.

4. The Territory of *Schwanſen*, which lies betwixt the *Baltic*, the *Sley*, and the Prefecture of *Hutten*. It is about three *Daniſh* miles in length, and half as much in breadth, being populous and very fertile. This tract of land is divided into Noblemen's eſtates, and pariſhes. The pariſhes are *Borby*, *Riesby*, *Siſeby*, *Wabs*, and *Schwans*; and the manors or Noblemen's ſeats are ſeventeen in number.

5. The *Daniſh Wald*, or Foreſt. This Diſtrict lies between *Eckernforde* and *Kiel*, borders on the Prefecture of *Hutten*, and is ſeparated from *Holſtein* by the river *Lewen*. It is two *Daniſh* miles and a half in length, and one and a half in breadth. Though it be called the *Daniſh* Foreſt, yet the inhabitants ſpeak only the *German* language, uſing the dialect of *Lower-Saxony*. This tract of land was formerly one continued foreſt; but the ground has in many places been cleared, and fitted for tillage. It conſiſts of the pariſhes of *Chriſtian-hagen* or *Daniſchen-hagen*, *Gettorf*, and *Kruſendorf*, with twelve manors. In this Diſtrict ſtands the ſmall royal fortreſs of

Fredericks-ort, on the gulf of *Kiel*, which was built by king *Chriſtian* IV. in the year 1632. But in 1648, that monarch cauſed it to be demoliſhed, and diſpoſed of the four manors on account of which he had built this fortreſs, for 20,000 rix-dollars. [See *Hojer*'s *Hiſt. of Denmark*, p. 365, and 491.] *Frederic* III. rebuilt this fort in the year 1663, and called it by his own name. However, its name was altered in the ſucceeding reigns; for when the Sovereign's name was *Chriſtian* it was called *Chriſtian-pries*, and its original name of *Fredericks-ort* was revived when a *Frederick* ſat on the throne, which name it will probably retain for the future. This place was for a long time a bone of contention between the royal family of *Denmark* and the Dukes of *Sleſwick-Holſtein*. All the buildings in *Fredericks-ort* are the church, the arſenal, the magazine for proviſions, the Commandant's houſe, the barracks for the garriſon, and ſome ſuttling-houſes. The church is under the Provoſtſhip of *Gottorf*. The *Daniſh* admiral *Gabel* defeated the *Swediſh* fleet in the year 1715, off *Bulkhoft* near this fort.

XV. The Iſland of FEMERN or FEMARN, formerly called *Vemern*, in Latin *Fimbria*, *Imbria*, or *Cimbria-parva*, lies in the *Baltic* near the coaſt of *Wagria*, and is ſeparated from it by the narrow Straits called *Femarſche-ſund*. Its length is generally computed to be two *Daniſh* miles and a half,

the

the breadth ſomething above one, and its circumference about eight. The ſoil of this iſland is very fertile in general, and yields plentiful crops of peaſe, wheat, and barley. The wood called *Staberholz* is but inconſiderable; ſo that it affords no other game beſides hares. The greateſt inconveniency that *Femern* labours under, is the ſcarcity of ſprings and rivulets; for in dry ſummers the inhabitants are extremely diſtreſſed for want of freſh-water. This iſland was anciently inhabited by the *Vandals* and *Slavens*. It has ſuffered extremely by the devaſtations of war; particularly in the year 1419, when it was ravaged with the moſt cruel barbarity by king *Erick* of *Pomerania*, and moſt of the wretched inhabitants were put to the ſword. *Femern* belongs at preſent to the king of *Denmark*; but whether it is to be comprehended in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, or has been always a diſtinct Territory is matter of controverſy. The former is aſſerted in a Treatiſe publiſhed in *High-Dutch* called *An hiſtorical account of the iſland of Femern*, ſhewing, 'that it was formerly incorporated into the Dutchy of 'Sleſwick, and that it is unqueſtionably dependent on, and a part of it;' publiſhed by *J. M. Geſſel*, in the year 1729, which is to be met with in the ninth volume of the *Daniſh Library*, p. 451. But *A. Lackmann* endeavours to prove that the iſland of *Femern* never was incorporated with the Kingdom of *Denmark*, the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* or that of *Holſtein*; but that it always had been a ſeparate and diſtinct country independent of either of them. See the Appendix to the fifth volume of LACKMANN's *Introduction to the hiſtory of Sleſwick-Holſtein.*

John III. Count of *Holſtein* granted the iſland of *Femern* a particular charter of privileges, which contained ſixteen articles, in the year 1326: But Duke *John* II. in 1558, made an alteration in ſome articles of that charter. This iſland is governed by a *Landvogt*, who is alſo Prefect, a Regiſter, who keeps the records, and fifteen aſſiſtants. The only town of note in *Femern* is

Borg or *Burg*, which is a place of ſome antiquity, and, ever ſince the year 1490, has enjoyed the *Lubeck* privileges. Some remains are ſtill to be ſeen of the caſtle of *Glambeck*, which was formerly the only fortification in the iſland, and defended the harbour.

There are alſo about forty villages in the iſland of *Femern*; of which *Lemkendorf* is the beſt peopled, but *Denſchendorf* is of the largeſt extent. Here are only three church-villages, as they are called, namely, *Landkirchen*, *Banddedorf*, and *Peterſdorf*; and to the laſt of theſe the iſland of *Flugge* belongs. The chief Paſtor, or miniſter, at *Burg* is Superintendant of the churches on this iſland.

XVI. The Iſland of HELGOLAND.

This iſland is alſo called *Hylgerland*, *Helgeland*, and *Heiligland*; but it was anciently known by the names of *Farroe*, *Farria*, St. *Urſula*'s iſland, *Terra Sancta*, *Sacra Inſula*, and *Phoſtland* or *Foſteland*, from the worſhip paid here

here to the Goddeſs *Foſta* or *Phoſeta*, the ſame with the *Veſta* of the *Romans*. It lies in the *North-Sea* about ſix *Daniſh* miles from the mouth of the *Elbe*, and at the ſame diſtance from that of the *Eider*. There is an ancient tradition, that this iſland was firſt damaged by the violence of the ſea about the year of Chriſt 800, when by a ſtrong gale at north-weſt the greateſt part of it was over-flowed, and ſwallowed up by the waves. A ſecond inundation is ſaid to have happened about the year 1300. A like calamity befel it a third time in the year 1500: But the laſt inundation, which happened in 1649, left but a ſmall part of the iſland remaining, the baſis of which is a ſolid rock that appears round it; the ſoil having been waſhed away by the ſea. This little ſpot, however, has two diſtricts, and each of them its ſubdiviſions. The Upper or *High-land* is called *Klif*, and the *Low-land* is termed *Duhnen*. The whole circuit of the *High-land* is about 940 rods; and the *Duhnen*, or Downs, are nearly of the ſame circumference. The ſoil in the *High-land* is red and rather claiey than ſandy; and from two and-a-half to four feet in depth. Its fertility is greater than one would at firſt conceive; for it produces barley and oats, though not a ſufficient quantity for the ſubſiſtence of the inhabitants. Here are very few trees, except a few cherry-trees and raſpberry-buſhes, nor eſculent herbs; for, indeed, the inhabitants cannot ſpare time for the culture of them. Beſides, they are very cheaply ſupplied with all kinds of vegetables and fruit from *Hamburgh* and other places, where they have a good market for their fiſh. The Upper-lands have paſture ſufficient for ſixty cows, and as many ſheep. On the north-weſt ſide of the iſland are three pits called *Saps-kuhlen*, which ſerve as general reſervoirs for freſh-water; beſides which, ſeveral of the inhabitants have holes dug in the rocks, in order to ſave the rain-water. But on an exigency they ſometimes dig on the Downs for freſh-water: However, the water of the two ſprings in the *Low-land* is not drinkable; being only fit for the cattle, and other common uſes. On the higheſt part of the *Weſt-Klif* the *Hamburghers* have built a light-houſe or beacon, which at their expence is ſupplied with pit-coal, *&c.* The deſcent is very ſteep from the *High-land*; but is made ſo eaſy by 126, or 180 ſteps including the ſmall ones, that a bullock may be driven up and down them. Of the *Low-land* nothing remains but the ſandy Downs, and the rocky-ground on which ſtands the fourth part of the dwellings of the inhabitants, with their fiſhing-tackle, hay and turf, and the place for keeping their boats; ſo that a houſe or dwelling in this part of the iſland is about four times as dear as in the *High-land*. The *Low-land* is ſecured by a mole, to prevent it from being totally deſtroyed by the violence of the ſea. Since the year 1727, or 1728, the Downs have been ſeparated from the reſt of the iſland by a channel called the *Waal*, which is one-eighth of a *Daniſh* mile in breadth, and of a ſufficient depth for pretty large veſſels. The inhabitants find a ſmall fiſh on the Downs, and no where elſe, called *Sandſpier*, which they

uſe for a bait to catch other fiſh; ſo that for the want of them they are ſometimes obliged to ſtand ſtill. Hence it appears that if theſe ſandy Downs ſhould happen to be waſhed away, ſcarce the ſixth part of the preſent number of inhabitants would be able to ſubſiſt upon the iſland.

The *Helgolanders* are deſcended from the ancient *Frieſians*, and have their particular laws and manners. They never remove to ſettle in another country, and ſtill retain their *Frieſian* names and cuſtoms. They eat but little fleſh, their chief food being fiſh and a kind of gruel thickened with oatmeal; and their conſtant employment at ſea renders them exceeding hardy, and intrepid in all weathers. The number of them may be about two thouſand. The men are employed at ſea, whilſt the women are no leſs diligent and induſtrious on ſhore. As there is neither plough, carriage, nor horſe on the whole iſland, the women dig the land, and harrow it; ſow, reap, and thraſh the corn, and grind it with hand-mills; and beſides theſe laborious employments, they are indefatigable in performing all the other domeſtic buſineſs. The winter provender for the cattle is conveyed hither in the middle of ſummer from *Nordhovet* in *Eiderſtedt*; and all the fuel from the *Eider*, *Stor*, the *Elbe*, and the Prefecture of *Huſum*; but the freight generally comes to more money than the lading. The inhabitants ſubſiſt chiefly by fiſhing and ſerving as mariners. The ſpecies of fiſh which are chiefly caught about this iſland, and diſpoſed of at *Hamburgh*, *Bremen*, *Gluckſtadt*, *Itzehoe*, *&c.* are cod, haddock, and lobſters. They alſo catch ling, ſeveral kinds of flat-fiſh, whitings, mackarel, thornbacks, *&c.* The inhabitants of this iſland are very ſkilful pilots, and are hired to conduct ſhips bound to the *Elbe*, *Weſer*, *Eider*, or *Hever*, for which they are generally well rewarded; but a deduction is made of one tenth of their profit, and ſome other duties which are payable to the King. In their dreſs they obſtinately adhere to the mode of their fore-fathers. The garriſon which is kept for the ſecurity of this iſland, is under the direction of a Commandant and his Lieutenant. All military ſtores, and other particulars for the defence of the iſland, are provided at the King's expence; and the artillery is planted near the ſteps mentioned above. The inhabitants are diſtributed in four Quarters, namely, South and North-Quarters, and two other Quarters which join to, and derive their name from, each of theſe. For the adminiſtration of juſtice, here is a *Vogt* and ſix counſellors, who appoint eight *Quartermen* and ſixteen Elders for the maintenance of peace and order. The Elders hold their office for life, whereas the *Quartermen* are appointed only for eight years. It is remarkable that this iſland never was an hereditary fief, though it be indiſputably a part of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*; but has been always poſſeſſed by the Dukes of *Holſtein Gottorf*, who enjoyed it unmoleſted till the the year 1684, when the King firſt complained of it; and in 1714 it was annexed to the crown of *Denmark*.

NORWAY,

NORWAY,

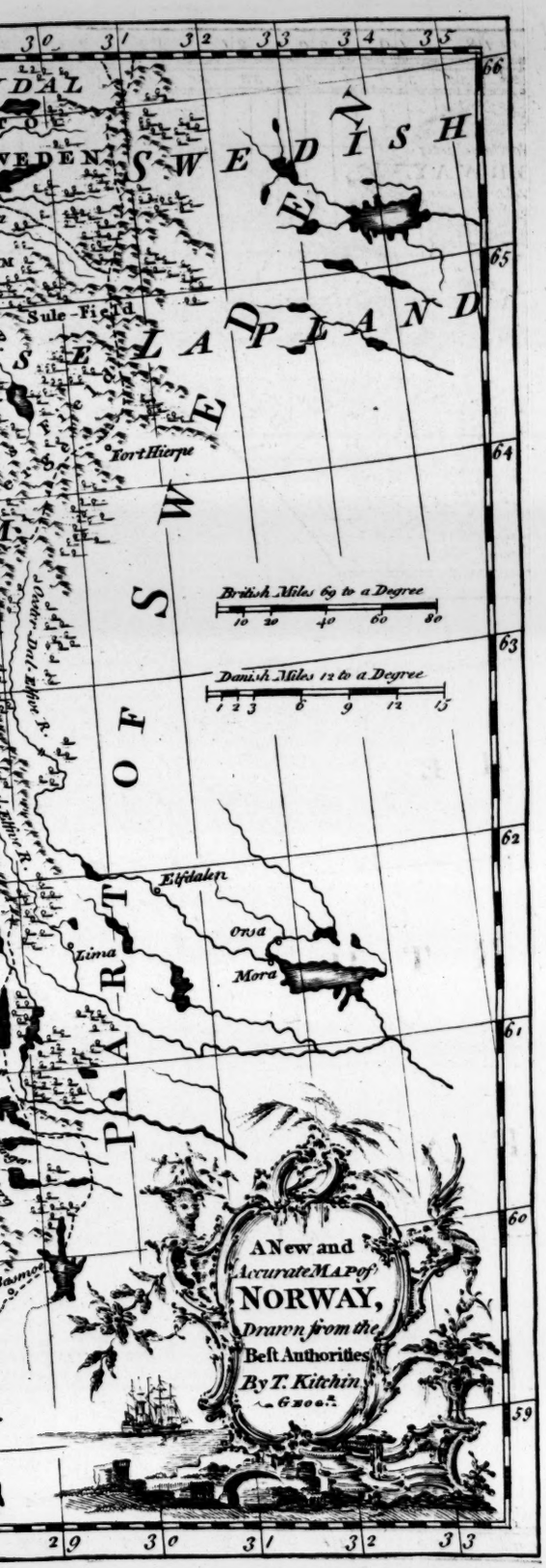
With the ISLANDS of

FAROE, ICELAND,

AND

GREENLAND.


Vol 1. p. 169.
The Northern Part of NORWAY, reduced to a lesser Scale.
HERNDAL
SWEDEN
DRONTHEIM
DIOCESE OF DRONTHEM
DIOCESE OF BERGEN
DIOCESE OF CHRISTIANA
DIOCESE OF CHRISTIANSAND
PART OF SWEDEN
THE NORTH SEA
NORTH SEA
FINMARK
SWEDISH LAPLAND
Cape Statt
Longitude East from Ferro
Selbo Harbour
Lindenas Cape
Christiansand
Flekkerve I.
Tromoe I.
Karmen I.
Hausteen I.
Rot I.
Bygde-field
Norvoe Lake
Lange-field
Neckle-field
Rud-field
Melddale Werck
Sule-field
Selboe
Opdal
Romsdal
Dofre
Toste
Gulbrandsdalen
Mioe Lakes
Hardanger
Kongsberg
Salisberg
Opsloe
Lango
Stromsoe
Skien
Gnas
Frederickshall
Basmoe
Sarpsborg
Tonsberg
Sandefiord
Arendal
Lima
Sogne
Sogne-Dal
Elfda
Fort Hierpe
Gaulen R.
Nid R.
Glommen R.
Hitterve I.
Magarve I.
Nordkyn Cape
Nordoe I.
Wardoe
Vardoe
Forsanger
Tanen
Kiberg
Kiberg Cape
Tanen R.
Kiberg R.
Kiberg Bay
Tanen Bay
Kiberg Harbour
Lindenas Langorn
Mackkiberg
Fingerwara
Sundwara
Wisnes
Swinoe I.
Herndal to Sweden


SWEDISH
LAPLAND
PART OF SWEDEN
Sule-Field
Fort Hierpe
British Miles 69 to a Degree
10 20 40 60 80
Danish Miles 12 to a Degree
1 2 3 6 9 12 15
Elfdalen
Orsa
Lima
Mora
A New and
Accurate MAP of
NORWAY,
Drawn from the
Best Authorities
By T. Kitchin
Geogr.
30 31 32 33 34 35
66
65
64
63
62
61
60
59
29 30 31 32 33

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE DESCRIPTION of NORWAY.

§. 1. WITTE and *Homann* have given us maps of *Norway*, which, however, are far from being correct, and ſtand in need of many amendments. In *Blaeu*'s Atlas there are particular maps of the ſeveral provinces of *Norway*; and *Homann* alſo has publiſhed others of the ſame kind. Laſtly, *Keulen* has favoured the Public with ſome accurate charts of the *Norwegian* coaſt.

§. 2. NORWAY, by the *Danes* and *Norwegians* called *Norge*, was known to the ancients by the names of *Norrike*, *Norrige*, *Nerigon*, *Norwegia* or *Norrigia*. It is bounded to the Weſt and South by the *North-Sea*, to the North by the *Northern Ocean*, and to the Eaſt by *Ruſſian Lapland* and *Sweden*. It is ſeparated from the latter by a chain of mountains, the higheſt parts of which are called *Kolen*, in Latin *Juga montis Suevonis*. The length of the whole curvature formed by the coaſt of *Norway*, from *Svinſund* to the *North-Cape*, is about 350 *Norway* miles *; but in a ſtrait line, or through the air, from *Lindenaas* which lies in 57°, 47′ latitude to the *North-Cape* in 71°, 30′, its length is 202 ½ *Norway* miles. The breadth is very unequal, being about fifty *Norway* miles from the frontiers of *Sweden* to Cape *Statt* near *Sundmoer* on the weſtern coaſt; but in ſome places it is only thirty, and in others not above ſix *Norway* miles.

* The author does not tell us how many *Norwegian* miles are equal to a degree. It were to be wiſhed he had uſed more preciſion in determining the length of miles, ells, &c. which he often mentions in general terms, without ſpecifying what miles, &c. he means. A *Norway* mile is at leaſt equal to five or ſix *Engliſh* miles.

§. 3. The air in moſt parts of *Norway* is pure and ſalubrious, but more ſo in the middle and eaſt-ſide than in the weſtern parts: For in the latter the air is damp, and the weather extremely variable; hence ſcorbutical diſorders are very common among the *Norwegians*. The cold in winter is tolerable enough to the inhabitants, ſo that they feel no manner of inconveniency from it. Providence has alſo, for their ſecurity againſt the cold, beſtowed on them not only plenty of wood, and, in many places, turf for fuel; but likewiſe wool, the ſkins of wild beaſts, and feathers of wild-fowl for beds and clothing: Beſides, thoſe who live in the vallies are ſheltered by the high mountains from the cold piercing winds.

In the eaſtern parts the winter ſets in about the middle of *October* and continues till the middle of *April*. The cold during that ſeaſon is very intenſe; and ſo great a quantity of ſnow falls in the northern parts, that the high mountains and vallies which are expoſed to the North are entirely covered with it year after year. Sometimes enormous maſſes of ſnow roll down from the ſteep mountains and precipices with ſuch impetuoſity, that they demoliſh houſes and trees, and kill the cattle and the peaſants in the vallies underneath. However, the ſnow does not lie long, nor fall in ſuch quantities on the ſea coaſt; and when the winter's cold is very ſevere in the eaſt and north parts of the country, the weather is commonly moderate and open on the weſtern coaſts: So that when the inhabitants of the eaſtern parts have by means of the ice and ſnow the convenience of bringing their commodities in ſledges to the market-towns, thoſe of the weſtern ſide on the ſea-coaſt, at the ſame time, are employed in their profitable fiſheries.

In ſummer the heat is often exceſſive; which is partly owing to the high mountains contracting and ſtrongly reflecting the ſun-beams, and partly to the length of the days. Hence it happens, that in ſome places only nine weeks intervene between ſeed-time and harveſt; but on the middle of the continent it is uſually twelve weeks, and in the ſouthern parts ſixteen or eighteen after ſowing-time before the corn be thoroughly ripened.

§. 4. The weſtern coaſt of *Norway* is ſurrounded with a great number of iſlands and *ſkeers* or rocks. Some of the former are three, ſix, or nine *Norway* miles in length, and pretty fertile; but moſt of them are ſmall, and inhabited only by a few fiſhermen and pilots. The rocks, which riſe ſeveral fathoms above the ſurface of the water, are a kind of rampart and defence to the coaſt, and amount to ſome hundreds of thouſands. There are abundance of good harbours, which are formed by the rocks, on this coaſt; and in many places large iron rings are faſtened to theſe rocks, for mooring ſhips where there is not ſea-room, or a fit bottom to anchor in. As the water is generally calm and ſmooth between theſe ſhelves or rocks and the main land, they are of great ſervice to coaſters; the violence

of

of the waves being broken againſt theſe barriers, whilſt the open places on the coaſt are very dangerous, and every year prove fatal to many ſmall veſſels which are driven aſhore in ſtormy weather. The *Norway* ſhore is in very few places level or gradually aſcending; in ſome places it lies low, but is generally ſteep or perpendicular, and ſmooth; ſo that cloſe to the rocks, on both ſides, the depth of the ſea is from an hundred to two, three, or four hundred fathoms. On the other hand the bottom is higher or more ſloping on the long uneven ſand-banks, which are called by different names; as *Stor-eggen* by ſome, and by others *Hav-broen*, *i. e.* 'Sea-breaks'. Thoſe banks, like the *ſheers* or rocks, extend from North and South along the coaſt. Some of them are between four and ſix *Norway* miles, others from twelve to ſixteen, diſtant from the continent; and in theſe places vaſt quantities of fiſh are uſually caught.

From the ſea ſeveral gulfs and creeks run ſix, eight, or ten *Norway* miles into the land; and in ſome of them which are but from fifty to a hundred fathoms in breadth, runs a narrow channel four hundred fathoms deep; but on the ſides of theſe channels, which are called *Tief-Runnen*, the depth is not above a hundred fathoms. The particular qualities of the *North-Sea* near the coaſt of *Norway*, have been already ſpecified in the general account of the Seas by which the countries deſcribed in this volume are bounded *.

§. 5. Beſides innumerable brooks and rivulets, *Norway* is watered by ſeveral large rivers, or ſtreams, which are called by the general name of *Elven*. Theſe are the *Nied*, *Sule-Elv*, *Gaulen* or *Gulen*, *Otteraa*, *Syre*, *Nid*, *Skeen*, *Tyrefiords-Elv* or *Drammen*, *Loven* or *Laven*, *Glaamen* or *Glommen*, *&c.* The following lakes abound with fiſh and are navigable, namely, *Ryſs-vandet* in *Nordland*, *Schnaaſen*, *Selboeſee*, the greater and leſſer *Mios*, *Slire-waſſer*, *Sperdillen*, *Rand*, *Veſten*, *Saren*, *Modum*, *Lund*, *Norſoe*, *Hvidſoe*, *Fares-waſſer*, *Oeye-waſſer*, and *Femmund-ſee*. On ſome of theſe lakes are ſeen little floating iſlands about thirty or forty ells in length. The rivers of *Norway* are not navigable for veſſels of any burden, on account of the great number of rocks in them by which the navigation is obſtructed, but much more by the cataracts or water-falls where the ſtream precipitates itſelf from a height of ſix, eight, ten, forty, fifty, and even a hundred fathoms.

For ſtopping the timber which is floated down theſe water-falls, and generally without receiving any damage, *Lenzes* or booms, ſtrongly fortified with iron-bars are, at certain places, laid acroſs the rivers. The expence of keeping up ſuch a *Lenz* or boom in many places amounts to no leſs than three or four hundred rix-dollars a year; but, in return, it annually brings in one thouſand or eleven hundred rix-dollars to the proprietor of it. Near theſe water-falls ſome hundreds of ſawing-mills are erected.

* See Page 59.

The

The bridges over the rivers in *Norway* are all of timber.

In the winter when the rivers are frozen to a great depth they form the beſt roads in the country; for in leſs than an hour one may travel a *Norway* mile on theſe icy roads.

The freſh-water in *Norway* is generally palatable and ſalubrious, and is impregnated with a great quantity of ferruginous particles. Here are alſo ſeveral kinds of medicinal ſprings.

§. 6. The *Norway* mountains are either *Juga montium concatenata*, extending themſelves in a long continued chain from *North* to *South*, or ſtand ſingle and detached from each other and ſurrounded with a level country. Among the former the *Kolen* in *Finmark* may be reckoned the principal, of which I ſhall give a further account in deſcribing the Dioceſe of *Drontheim*. It is accounted the longeſt chain in *Norway*, and divides itſelf into two main arms or ridges of hills; one of which is the boundary between *Norway* and *Sweden*, and in its courſe is called by the ſeveral names of *Rud-field*, *Sule-field*, *Skars-field*, or in general *Sevebierge* or the Seven Mountains. The other branch of the *Kolen* chain alſo changes its name, and runs at firſt from Eaſt to Weſt about ſixteen *Norway* miles, as far as *Romſdal*; but from *Romſdal* and *Guldbrandſdal* it extends itſelf towards the South for ſeventy *Norway* miles, and terminates at *Lindenaas*. The former ridge of mountains, from the manor of *Dofre* which lies on the ſouth-ſide of it, is called *Dofrefield*, and is nine *Norway* miles in breadth between *Tofte* on the ſouth-ſide, and *Opdal* on the north. The latter ridge which lies in a ſouthern direction is from twelve to fourteen *Norway* miles in breadth, and is in general called *Langfield*; but in particular parts from the adjacent countries it has the names of *Loms-field*, *Sogne-field*, *File-field*, *Halne-field*, *Hardanger-field*, *Jogle-field*, *Bygle-field*, *Hekle-field*, and *Lang-field*. *Dofrefield* is reckoned the higheſt mountain in all *Norway*. On *Dofrefield* are four, and on *Fiele-field* two *Field-ſtuers*, or *Mountain-ſtoves*. Theſe are reſting-places kept up, and provided with fuel and other neceſſaries at the public expence, for the conveniency of travellers. In the year 1685, king *Chriſtian* V. rode all the way over *Dofre-field* on horſeback, though all his attendants frightened at the rocks and precipices were not aſhamed to alight and walk along this dangerous road. On the ſummit of the mountain his Majeſty was ſaluted by Major General *Weib* with a diſcharge of nine pieces of ordnance, which expedition the King commemorated by cauſing a pyramid to be erected on the ſpot.

Theſe mountains, which ſtand ſingle, lie betwixt Cape *Lindenaas* and Cape *Statt*, and generally in a north and ſouth direction; but thoſe that lie farther north, winding towards the ſea-coaſt, extend, for the moſt part, from North-Eaſt to South-Eaſt, and ſeveral of them from Eaſt to Weſt. The ſummits of theſe mountains yield excellent paſtures; the ſides of them are covered with woods and incloſures; and the vallies between them are finely watered

watered with brooks and rivers. Beſides, their bowels contain inexhauſtible treaſures of ſilver, copper, iron, and other metals. Many of theſe mountains are remarkable for their ſingular form; and in ſeveral of them are cavities of a vaſt length and depth. *Tind* and *Gule* in *Tellemark* are reckoned the higheſt mountains in that part called *Sonden-fields*. *Floyfield* near *Bergen*, which is ſuppoſed to be but half the height of *Hornelen* in *Nordfield*, or *Snee-hornet* on *Sundmoer*, has by a trigonometrical menſuration been found to be above two hundred fathoms or ſix hundred ells high; ſo that *Olrikken*, which lies cloſe by it, cannot be leſs than eight hundred ells in height.

The inconveniences and diſadvantages ariſing from theſe mountains, are as follows: The want of fertility in the ſoil; the demolition of the peaſants houſes, ſome of which are dangerouſly ſituated on ſteep acclivities; the many difficult, perilous, and even dreadful roads occaſioned by them; the ſhelter they afford to great numbers of wild beaſts of prey in their clefts and cavities; the loſs of many lives when the peaſants venture down the ſteep precipices of the rocks after their ſheep or goats; and, laſtly, the danger, and even the actual calamities to which the inhabitants are expoſed by the ſudden diſruptions of the mountains, when huge maſſes of the rocks roll down into the adjacent vallies with great impetuoſity. The advantages that counter-balance theſe inconveniencies are the many excellent ſprings and fine rivers iſſuing from the mountains; which alſo afford good paſture, contain in their bowels inexhauſtible treaſures of minerals and metals, and are a kind of natural fortreſſes to defend the country againſt the irruptions of an enemy. Add to this, that they yield the moſt extenſive and amazing proſpects.

§. 7. As *Norway* is for the moſt part full of ruggid rocks and high mountains, and has alſo many moraſſes, barren waſtes, and ſandy deſerts, there is but a ſmall part of it arable or fit for tillage; ſo that if it were not for the profitable fiſheries carried on by the inhabitants of the ſea coaſts, the timber trade in the highlands, the ſale and carriage of charcoal to the mines, with the employments of grazing and hunting; it would not afford ſubſiſtence to one half of the inhabitants.

The corn ſowed in this country is alſo ſubject to miſcarry by many caſualties, being often nipped by unexpected and ſudden froſts: In dry ſummers it is often deſtroyed by the great heats reverberated from the rocks, and in wet ſeaſons waſhed away by torrents pouring down with ſurpriſing rapidity from the hills. The fertile parts, and which produce moſt corn, are, *Indherred* and *Numedal* in the Dioceſe of *Drontheim*; *Sogne-fiord* and *Vaas* in the Dioceſe of *Bergen*; *Jederen*, *Ryefylke*, *Raabigdelag* and the Fief of *Nidenas* in the Dioceſe of *Chriſtian-ſand*; *Hedemarken*, *Hadeland*, *Toten*, *Romerige*, *Ringerige*, and *Guldbrandſdalen* in the Dioceſe of *Aggerhuus*. All theſe Diſtricts, in moſt years, not only afford a ſufficient quantity of

grain for their reſpective inhabitants, but alſo yield enough to ſupply their neighbours. The other provinces, and, indeed, the greateſt part of the country, ſtand in need of a yearly ſupply of rye, barley, peaſe and the like; and what is worſe, in many places the third or fourth part of the inhabitants are not able to purchaſe a neceſſary quantity of grain: But this deficiency is made up to them in other things. It is remarkable that though the ſoil never lies fallow, but is plowed and ſowed every year; yet it never fails to produce all kinds of grain, eſpecially barley and oats, ſix, eight, or ten fold, and ſometimes with a greater increaſe. The corn alſo grows higher in *Norway*, and the ears are fuller, than what is imported from *Denmark* and *Germany*.

All kinds of grain are ſown in *Norway*; but not every where to equal advantage.

Rye thrives beſt in *Hedemarken*, *Toten*, and *Guldbrandſdalen*. It is ſown where woods have been burnt down, and the aſhes left as manure: But in *Sweden* this cuſtom has been found to be attended with very bad conſequences, and therefore prohibited.

Barley is produced in every part of the country, but chiefly in *Nordland*, the Dioceſe of *Aggerhuus*, the manor of *Nidenas*, the Dioceſe of *Chriſtianſand*, and in *Sognefiorden*: But the beſt malt is made of that kind of barley which is called *Davids-Gerſte* or *Himmels-korn*, i. e. *David*'s barley, or Heaven's corn.

Oats are the grain moſt generally ſown in *Norway*; but in many places the good grain is deſtroyed by a kind of wild or ſpurious oats *.

Grey, white, and green peaſe are ſown not only in the ſouth, but in the north part of *Norway* where the ſoil is claiey, though in no large quantities.

Buckwheat, flax and hemp grow likewiſe here, though not in many places.

When the ſeaſon for ſowing, &c. turns out bad, and, its neceſſary conſequence, a ſcarcity enſues, hunger has taught the inhabitants to pound the bark of trees, and by mixing it with meal, to make bread of it. The ſame neceſſity, it may be preſumed, alſo put them upon baking the *Fladenbrodt* or *Flat-bread*, which is made of barley, oat, or rye-meal, in large, round, and very thin cakes †. Theſe are baked on round iron plates, and

* Theſe are called by the French *Folle avoine*, and are very difficult to be extirpated. Of this miſchievous weed *Virgil* complains in the following verſe:

Infelix lolium, & ſteriles dominantur avenæ. Ecl. v. ver. 37.

'Wild oats and darnel choke the riſing corn.' DRYDEN.

† Such cakes are well known in *Wales*. As they are generally made of oat-meal, they are called *Oat-bread*. They are baked on round plates of caſt-iron, which are called *bake-ſtones*, and then hardened before the fire. The inhabitants in ſome counties in *Wales*, live chiefly on ſuch bread, which will keep a conſiderable time without ſpoiling.

if

if put in a dry place will keep for many years without moulding. The occaſion of their making the bread in cakes, is, that few places produce a ſufficient quantity of rye; and bread made of barley and oat-meal bakes ſooner, is more palatable, and goes the farther when rolled thin, than in loaves baked in the common way.

§. 8. That there are good paſtures in *Norway* appears by the exportation of tallow, butter, *&c.* from thence to foreign parts. The beſt and moſt nutritive paſtures are in *Lofoden*, *Veſteraalen*, *Vaas*, *Walders*, *Hallingdal*, *Tellemark*, and the manor of *Nidenas*. *Norway* alſo affords moſt kinds of eſculent and garden vegetables, though they are not much cultivated by the inhabitants; nor is it without ſalubrious and medicinal plants, as *Gentian*, *Radix Roſea* or Roſe-root, *Naſturtia*, or Creſſes of ſeveral kinds, *Trefoil*, *Cochlearia* or Scurvy-graſs, and that excellent anti-ſcorbutic Angelica which is ſo very ſerviceable to the inhabitants. A great variety of wholeſom berries alſo grow in this country, ſome of which are common to other places, as ſtrawberries, blackberries, raſpberries, and the like; others are peculiar to *Norway* and *Sweden*, as the *Oexel* or *Aſald-bar*, *Tege* or *Teye-bar*, called in Latin *Uvæ Norwegicæ*, *Trane-bar*, in Latin *Myrtillus repens*, *Krykke-bar*, *Aaker* or *Ager-bar*, *Tyte-bar*, *Molte-bar*, in Latin *Chamæmorus Norvegica*, &c.

§. 9. The trees which are natives of *Norway*, are elm, aſh, yew, birch, and pine-trees, which grow here in vaſt quantities; alſo beech and oaks, but theſe are not very common, with alder, juniper, aſpen, and fir-trees which grow in every part of the country. Here are alſo ebony, and lime-trees, of which, in many places, there are great numbers, maple, willows, *&c.*

§. 10. With the wood of theſe trees the inhabitants carry on a vaſt trade, which, with the fiſheries, make them ſome amends for the ſcarcity of grain they labour under. They export annually to ſeveral parts of *Europe* immenſe quantities of maſts, beams, balks, and deal boards, with other timber for houſe and ſhip building. The fir-trees alone bring the country in a million of rix-dollars annually. The timber trade is chiefly carried on in the eaſtern parts of *Norway*; namely, at *Moſs*, *Drammen*, *Larvigen*, *Langeſund*, *&c.* as the largeſt trees are produced in thoſe Diſtricts; and moſt of the inhabitants ſubſiſt by that branch of trade and by ſawing the timber.

In the Dioceſes of *Bergen* and *Drontheim*, the inhabitants are ſupported moſtly by the fiſheries; vaſt quantities of all kinds of fiſh being caught on that coaſt, and either ſalted, or ſent away freſh to the city of *Bergen*; from whence they are exported to foreign countries. The fiſhery is carried to the greateſt perfection in the Dioceſe of *Drontheim*; ſo that the herrings annually exported from the north part of this Dioceſe amount to ſeveral thouſands of laſts. The inhabitants of *Nordland* ſubſiſt entirely by

fiſhing. Here they particularly catch a fiſh called *Dorſch*, and cod, of which ſtock-fiſh is made: This kind of fiſh is not ſalted; but is ſplit and dried in the air, and then ſent away in large veſſels to *Bergen*, which bring back in return, malt, hops, ſalt, meal, cloth, linen, iron, *&c.* The fiſh caught every year at *Karſund* near *Stavanger*, and *Tromſen* in *Nordland*, are ſold, at leaſt, for a million of rix-dollars. From *Nordland* are alſo exported the *Raf* and *Reckling*, ſo well known in *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, where the peaſants in a manner live upon them. Theſe are parts of a fiſh called *Holybutt*, the former being the back fins cut out deep along with the fat; and the latter long ſlices of the ſkin and fat cut longitudinally from the tail to the head. Both are ſprinkled with a little ſalt, and afterwards dried in the air. From thence alſo train-oil, extracted by boiling from the blubber of whales which the inhabitants are very dextrous in driving aſhore, is exported. There are many ſalmon-fiſheries in the large rivers of *Norway*, ſo that they likewiſe export great quantities of pickled and dried ſalmon. The moſt conſiderable ſalmon-fiſhery is near *Mandal*, in the river called *Mandals-Elv*, which is ſaid to abound in that kind of fiſh beyond any river in *Norway*.

§. 11. The *Norwegians* keep a great many cows, which in general are but ſmall, and yield no great quantity of milk. The horſes are ſtrong, well made, and full of mettle. The woods alſo abound in deer and game.

§. 12. Some parts of *Norway* contain ſuch vaſt quarries of marble, which is not inferior to the foreign, that they could ſupply all *Europe* with it; and there are even huge rocks and whole mountains conſiſting entirely of this ſort of ſtone. *Lapis Lydius* or Touch-ſtone, alabaſter, ſeveral ſhining ſtones, which are a kind of Spar, called *Katzenſilber*; chalk, lime-ſtone, and ſtucco-ſtone; ſlate, ſand-ſtone, mill-ſtones, and *Veeg-ſteen*, particularly that fine ſort of the laſt called Talc-ſtone, and another ſpecies called *Kloverſteen* *, which may eaſily be ſplit, ſawed, and cut, and in *Guldbrandſdal*, ſerves for making pots, pans, kettles, *&c.* are dug up in this country; as are alſo the Loadſtone, the *Lapis Suillus* or Swine-ſtone, which emits a fetid ſmell, *Aſbeſtos*, which is found in *Sundmoer*, and ſome ſhining *Quartz* †, but not a ſingle flint. In *Syndfiord*, *Juſtedalen* and other places is found a glittering writing ſand, of which great quantities are exported. Some parts of *Norway* afford cryſtals, which are either found in the rivers and lakes, or ſuſpended in cluſters on the mountains, where they emit a dazzling luſtre when the ſun ſhines upon them. Some pieces of theſe

* In the *Memoires* of the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris* for the year 1752, this ſtone is called *Lapis Ollarius*, and ſaid to be found only in *Switzerland* and *Canada*, but this is a miſtake.

† The *Quartz* or *marcaſſia* is a kind of *Pyrites* or Fire-ſtone, and is of near affinity to the *Norway* cryſtal. It is not reducible to a *calx* in the fire, but becomes fluid, and is therefore uſed in the glaſs-houſes.

cryſtals

cryſtals weigh near five pounds, and are twelve inches long and ſeven in thickneſs. Here are alſo found, *Marienglas*, or *Ruſſian* glaſs; Granite at *Kongſberg*; Amethyſts in *Guldbrandſtal*, *Oſterdal*, and other places; Calcedonies of the bigneſs of a haſel-nut in the iſlands of *Faroe*; Agate of an extraordinary hardneſs; with fine Jaſper and ſeveral ſorts of figured ſtones. In the country about *Drontheim*, and in ſeveral rivers of the Dioceſes of *Bergen* and *Chriſtianſand*, are pearl-fiſheries, the profits of which are appropriated to the Queen; and in the year 1750, the produce of them was as great as it has ever been known to be.

§. 13. Laſtly, what *Norway* is moſt famous for is its vaſt ſubterraneous treaſures of metals and minerals. The *Norway* mines were firſt worked in the reign of king *Chriſtian* III. and were conſiderably improved under *Chriſtian* IV.

Some gold of an extraordinary purity has indeed been found intermixed with the ſilver and copper ores; but the charges of ſeparating and refining it proved too great to gain any thing by the proceſs.

The ſilver mines were formerly more numerous in this country than they are at preſent; being reduced to two, namely, the *Kongsberg* mine, and that in the county of *Jarlsberg*. The copper ore dug up in ſome of the mines alſo contains a mixture of ſilver.

The copper mines lie chiefly in *Nordenfelds*, and are, at preſent, five in number.

The profits ariſing from the iron mines, of which there are fifteen in *Norway*, are ſaid to amount yearly to three or four hundred thouſand rix-dollars.

The *Jarlsberg* lead is accounted harder and inferior in goodneſs to that of *Kongsberg*. There are lead mines at *Eger* not far from *Kongsberg*, and in the *Vogtey* of *Soloers*. Sulphur is alſo found among the *Norway* mines; but the melting and depurating of it is too chargeable to make it anſwer. *Strata* of allum have been found below *Egeberget* near *Chriſtiania* in a ſlate quarry. A boiling-houſe has been built to ſeparate the allum from its ſediment. Several parts of this country yield oker; and *Wardehuus* is famous for a foſſile of a moſt beautiful blue or ſky colour. There is a ſaline ſpring near *Frederickſtadt*; but no ſalt has hitherto been made of it; ſo that it turns to no advantage. Salt is alſo found in the clefts of the rocks in the *North-Sea*. On *Nordmoer* in *Hardanger*, and ſeveral other places, eſpecially in the Dioceſe of *Drontheim*, the inhabitants boil it from the ſea-water; but as this cauſes too great a conſumption of wood, the laws of *Norway* forbid the boiling of any more than what is ſufficient for their own private uſe. Not far from *Tonsberg* is a royal ſalt-work; but this is ſo far from anſwering the neceſſary demand, that every year above ſixty large ſhip-loads of *Spaniſh* and *French* ſalt are imported into *Norway* for the fiſheries and other occaſions.

§. 14. The *Norwegians* were anciently ſo turbulent and rebellious, that their kings were inceſſantly engaged in factions and domeſtic broils; and many of the ancient ſovereigns loſt their lives in civil wars and inteſtine commotions: But within theſe two or three centuries, eſpecially ſince this country has been annexed to the crown of *Denmark*, they have been more civilized; ſo that no tumults or inſurrections are heard of amongſt them. Foreign nations are fond of having *Norwegian* mariners in their ſervice, as they are a hardy, bold, and active people; and it is computed that ſome thouſands of them are thus employed in different parts of *Europe*. Nor are they wanting in ſkill and ingenuity for the mechanic arts and trades, though they never bring them to any high pitch of perfection. There is not a peaſant in *Norway*, who, of his own head, cannot make many utenſils and artificial curioſities, for uſe and ornament. The *Norwegians* in general have a great inclination for commerce; eſpecially the inhabitants of *Bergen*, who traffick conſiderably with all the trading cities in *Europe*. As to their genius for literature, though *Norway* has no univerſities or large libraries, yet is it not without learned men among its natives.

Lutheraniſm is the eſtabliſhed, and almoſt the only religion in *Norway*, except in the province of *Finmark*, where are ſtill no inconſiderable number of Pagans; but no hardſhip, expence, or labour is ſpared for the converſion of thoſe unhappy people. The firſt meaſures for the Reformation of religion in *Norway* were taken in the year 1528, which was in a great meaſure completed in 1537; and, in 1607, a new Hierarchy or Church-government was eſtabliſhed in this Kingdom. In every See there is a Biſhop; and among theſe the Biſhop of *Chriſtiana* is the principal, and takes place of all the reſt. Under the Biſhops are the Provoſts, the Preachers, and the Chaplains or Curates, with the inferior church-officers. A pariſh generally contains more churches than one, ſo that the parochial incumbent has often the care of many of them. King *Olav* is ſaid to have been the firſt legiſlator in *Norway*; for that monarch inſtituted the law called *Graagaas*, to puniſh robbery, fraud, and aſſaults. King *Chriſtian* IV. publiſhed a new Body of laws for *Norway*, which were in force till the reign of *Chriſtian* V. who cauſed a new *Lowbuch* or Digeſt to be drawn up; and theſe are the only laws now obſerved in this kingdom. This *Lowbuch*, as it is called, was printed in quarto at *Copenhagen* in 1687; and the ſubſtance of it is taken from that of *Denmark*, with only a few alterations ſuitable to the difference of circumſtances in the two kingdoms.

We may obſerve farther with regard to the inhabitants of *Norway*, that ſome of the peaſants are ſtiled *Odelsbonder*, who are free both in their perſons, and eſtates, and may diſpoſe of the latter as they pleaſe*. They pay

* The *Odels*-right conſiſts in having, from time immemorial, the *Jus primogenituræ*, and the *Jus reluitionis*, or the right of Primogeniture and power of Redemption. No *Odels-goods*, or freehold can be alienated by ſale, but may be redeemed by the *Odels-mann* or right heir, to the ſecond or third generation.

no

no acknowledgments or tax but to the king only; and a *Norwegian Odelsmann* has the vanity to think himſelf a kind of petty nobleman. It is a reigning, and not altogether groundleſs opinion among the *Norwegian* peaſants that they are deſcended from the ancient Nobility of *Norway:* This renders them in general of a more aſſuming deportment than the peaſants of other countries. As for the claſs of Burghers, I have nothing particular to obſerve concerning thoſe of *Norway.*

Formerly there were many noble families in this kingdom; but moſt of them are now extinct, or degenerated into peaſants; ſo that in the whole kingdom there are but the Barony of *Roſendal* in the Dioceſe of *Bergen*; and the Counties or Earldoms of *Larwigen* and *Jarlsberg.*

§. 15. In ancient times *Norway* was divided into a great number of little Lordſhips; but to theſe the warlike king *Harald Haarfager*, who was deſcended from the royal family of *Sweden*, put a period about the year of Chriſt 875, and united them into one kingdom. And though not long afterwards *Norway* was annexed to *Denmark*, and paid tribute to that crown under Count *Hako*; yet the *Norwegians* ſoon recovered their liberty and independency. In the year 1000, their liberties were again in great danger; but were preſerved by the valour and conduct of *Oluf the Saint:* and though he loſt the kingdom in 1019, being overpowered by the *Daniſh* prince *Sueno*; yet were the *Danes* again expelled in 1034, by his ſon *Magnus*, and the kingdom enjoyed a ſeries of proſperity for ſome centuries. In the year 1319, *Magnus Smek*, ſon of the unfortunate Duke *Erick*, was king of *Sweden* and *Norway*; and his grandſon *Oluf* III. king of *Denmark*, on the demiſe of his father *Hagen*, alſo got poſſeſſion of the kingdom of *Norway* in 1380. At *Oluf*'s death the direct royal line of *Sweden* and *Norway* became extinct; and the male line in *Denmark* being alſo extinct at the ſame time, Queen *Margaret*, daughter of king *Waldemar* III. and mother to the abovementioned *Oluf*, was the next who had any pretentions to the throne. Accordingly ſhe obtained the Crown by the election of the States. In the year 1388, *Hagen Jonſen*, a Nobleman of the blood-royal, made a ſolemn abdication of his right to the crown of *Norway* in favour of Queen *Margaret*, who farther prevailed on the States of that kingdom to declare *Erick*, Duke of *Pomerania*, her ſiſter's daughter's ſon, heir to the kingdom of *Norway*. This great Princeſs, in 1397, alſo united the three Northern Kingdoms by the famous Union of *Calmar*. When the *Oldenburg* branch aſcended the throne of *Denmark*, the *Norwegians* ſhewed ſome inclination to ſhake off the *Daniſh* yoke; however, they afterwards cloſed in with *Denmark:* But king *John* meeting with ill ſucceſs in his expedition againſt *Ditmarſch*, the *Norwegians* revolted. Upon their loſing a battle near *Opſlo* in the year 1502, and the barbarous executions of the greateſt part of their Nobility, they were entirely quelled, and obliged to ſwear allegiance to the king of *Denmark* and his deſcendants. In the year

1537, king *Chriſtian* III. held a general Diet at *Copenhagen*, wherein a famous decree was paſſed, of which this was the moſt remarkable article, namely, 'That *Norway* ſhould for ever be incorporated with *Denmark* as 'a province of that kingdom: for as the States of *Norway* had, both in 'the reign of *Chriſtian* I. and king *Frederick*, engaged to be ſubject to the 'ſame Sovereign with *Denmark*; ſo, conſequently, every perſon who hap-'pened to be choſen king of *Denmark* was of courſe, and without further 'formality, to be king of *Norway*.' From that time *Norway* loſt its own Council of State, came to be conſidered only as a province of *Denmark*, and as ſuch to be governed by a *Daniſh Statthalter*; and as ſome temper to the partiality ſhewn to *Denmark*, king *Chriſtian* IV. conferred on the Nobility of *Norway* the ſame privileges with thoſe of *Denmark* in the year 1646. But when deſpotiſm was introduced, *Norway* and *Denmark* were again governed by the Sovereign himſelf, as two kingdoms united under one head; and the High Court of Judicature was reſtored in *Norway*. In this ſtate it continued till the preſent *Ober-hof-gericht*, or General Supreme Court of Judicature for all *Norway*, was erected.

§. 16. King *Chriſtian* III. appointed a *Statthalter* as Governor of *Norway*; then it was governed by *Vice-Statthalters*; and after that the office of *Statthalter* was executed by a college or commiſſion called *Slotſlov*, or Court-law. This again was ſuperſeded by king *Frederick* IV. who reſtored the office of *Statthalter*. At preſent the chief officer in *Norway* is a *Vice-Statthalter*, who is alſo preſident of the *Ober-hof-gericht* or Supreme Court of Judicature at *Chriſtiana*. This *Ober-hof-gericht* is a general Tribunal for all *Norway*, to which there lies an appeal in all cauſes from the inferior courts of the ſeveral Dioceſes in this kingdom, which, however, may be removed from this Court to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*.

Each of the four *Stiftamts*, *i. e.* Dioceſes or General Governments, into which *Norway* is divided, has its *Stiftamtſman*, or General Governor; and under theſe are the *Amtmanner*, or Prefects. The office of both the Governors and Prefects is the ſame here as in *Denmark*. Next to the Prefects are the *Stiftamts-Schierber*, *i. e.* Receiver or Secretary, and the *Vogte*. The *Vogte*, like the *Amtſverwalter* in *Denmark*, are Collectors who levy the King's taxes, *&c.* on the proprietors of lands and the peaſants; and pay them into the hands of the *Stiftamts-Schreiber* or Receiver. They alſo manage all proſecutions and cauſes relating to the crown in the *Land-fiſcals*, as they are called. Over the nine *Laugſtole*, or Provincial Courts are ſo many *Laugmanner*, which are a kind of provincial judges. Beſides theſe, there are alſo *Soren-Schreiber*, or *Amts-Schreiber*, who may be called inferior judges; each having a power of deciding cauſes within his Diſtrict, in conjunction with eight aſſiſtants. In the four chief cities of *Norway*, *viz. Chriſtiana*, *Chriſtianſand*, *Bergen*, and *Drontheim*, are Preſidents appointed by the King; and under theſe, as in all other towns, are *Statt-*

vogte,

vogte, or Town-Collectors. Laſtly, at the ſilver mine of *Kongsberg* there is a College called the *Oberberg-amts-collegium*, with proper officers; and another ſuch College preſides over the mines at *Nordenfield*. There are alſo Collectors of the toll, Comptrollers over the farmers of the duties, and Commiſſaries of proviſions in *Norway*.

§. 17. The military eſtabliſhment for *Norway* has been already taken notice of in my account of *Denmark*.

§. 18. Nature has divided the main land of *Norway* into two parts by the immenſe chain of mountains called *Dofrefield* and *Langfield*, which are deſcribed in §. 6. This ridge of mountains ſeparates the northern and weſtern parts which lie near the ſea, from the ſouthern and eaſtern, or inland parts. The high-lands which lie to the South and Eaſt of theſe mountains are called *Sondenfields*, *Norwegia Meridionalis*, or *Norwegia Ciſalpina*, i. e. *Norway* ſouth of the mountains: Whereas that lying north of *Dofrefield*, and weſt of *Lang-field* toward the ſea, is called *Nordenfields*, *Norwegia Septentrionalis* or *Norwegia Tranſalpina*, i. e. *Norway* north of the mountains.

According to the political diviſion, *Norway* conſiſts of four Dioceſes or General Governments. Two of theſe, namely, *Chriſtiana* and *Chriſtianſand* lie in the ſouth, and the other two, viz. *Bergen* and *Drontheim*, in the north part of the kingdom. The eccleſiaſtical diviſion into four *Stifts*, or Biſhopricks, is agreeable to the civil; and as the General Governments or *Stifts-amts* are ſubdivided into *Amts*, *Vogteys* or *Lehne*, *i. e.* Prefectures, Diſtricts or Fiefs, ſo the *Stifts* or Biſhopricks are ſubdivided into Provoſtſhips and Pariſhes.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

CHRISTIANA, or *AGGERHUUS.*

THIS is the largeſt Dioceſe in the ſouth part of the kingdom, and, indeed, the principal and richeſt in all *Norway:* It was formerly called *Hammer-ſtift*, and afterwards went by the name of *Opſlo*. In this Government are the Prefectures of *Aggerhuus*, *Frederickſtadt*, *Schmaalbene*, *Bratsberg*, *Ringering*, *Hallingdahlen*, *Eger*, and *Buſcherud*; two feodal Counties, four Provincial Courts, fifteen *Vogteys*, and fourteen Provoſtſhips.

The *Vogteys*, *Lehns* or Fiefs in this Dioceſe are,

I. AGGERS-HERRED, which compriſes three Diſtricts with as many Courts of Judicature, namely, *Aſcher*, *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Barum*, and *Ager*; with the following remarkable places.

Chriſtiana, the capital, and moſt magnificent city of the kingdom. Here the *Vice-Statthalter*, the Governor of the Dioceſe, and the Biſhop of *Chriſtiana* reſide; and the General and Provincial high Courts of Judicature are held. This city is regularly built, of a conſiderable extent, and carries on a great trade. It has a workhouſe, and two ſuburbs called *Waterland* and *Peper-vigen*; *Opſlo* likewiſe belongs to this city. Through the firſt runs a river which riſes in *Maridalen*. After *Opſlo* had been burnt, king *Chriſtian* IV. built this city on the weſt ſide of the bay, and cloſe by the caſtle of *Aggerhuus*; ſo that the guns of the fort command all the ſtreets of the city. The ſame monarch in 1636, raiſed the ſchool of *Chriſtiana* to a *Gymnaſium* or college; and at the ſame time ſettled an endowment upon it for the maintenance of the tutors and twenty ſtudents. But in the year 1653, it ſunk again to a ſchool, and has remained ſo ever ſince.

Opſlo, or *Aſlo*, lies on the eaſt ſide of the bay facing *Aggerhuus* caſtle. It is more ancient than the latter; for it was built in the year 1060, by king *Harald Haardraade*, who reſided here, as did alſo ſeveral of his ſucceſſors. *Opſlo* had formerly four churches. A ſynod was held here in the year 1306; and in 1589, the nuptials of *James* VI. king of *Scotland* and the princeſs *Anne* of *Denmark* were ſolemnized in this town. At the time of the Reformation the See of *Hummer* was removed to *Opſlo:* But, in 1624, this city was totally conſumed by fire, except the Biſhop's palace and a few other houſes, which were afterwards annexed to *Chriſtiana* as a part of it, and

and called the *Old Town*. In the King's *muſeum* at *Copenhagen*, a medal ſtruck by *Nicholas* Biſhop of *Aſlo* in honour of Duke *Philip*, is ſtill to be ſeen.

Aggerhuus is an important fortification on the weſt ſide of the bay, near which, in a lower ſituation, lies the city of *Chriſtiania*. The time when this fort was firſt built is unknown. In 1310, it held out a ſiege againſt the *Swediſh* army commanded by Duke *Erick*; and in 1567 and 1717, it was inveſted by the *Swedes* a ſecond and third time, but with no better ſucceſs. Not far from the fort are a number of houſes or villages called *Hovedtangen*.

Aggers is a very ancient church, which ſtands about a quarter of a *Norway* mile North of *Aggerhuus* caſtle. It is ſaid to have been built above ſeven hundred years ago, and is reckoned the oldeſt church in this Dioceſe. Mention is made of it in hiſtory before the caſtle of *Aggerhuus* was erected.

Barum is a very ancient and flouriſhing iron-mine in this Diſtrict.

II. BRAGNAS-LEHN, including *Hurum*, *Rogen*, *Eger*, *Lier* and *Buſkerud*. There are in this Diſtrict ſeveral iron-works, namely, at *Eger*, *Modum*, and *Lier*; and alſo a glaſs-houſe: This *Lehn* or Fief is watered by the large river *Drammen*, which empties itſelf into the bay of *Chriſtiania*. On the banks of the *Drammen* lie the towns of

Bragnas and *Stromſoe*; the former on the north, and the latter directly oppoſite to it on the ſouth ſide of the river. Each of theſe towns has its reſpective *Statd-vogt*, or Town-Magiſtrate, and church; yet they have but one Toll-place or Cuſtom-houſe, which is called *Drammenſtolplatz*, and brings in to the Crown as much as any Toll-houſe in *Norway*; for a great quantity of planks, beams, and iron, is brought from the adjacent country to this place for exportation.

In the river *Drammen* lies the iſland of *Langoe*, ſo famous for its marble quarries.

To the Provoſtſhip of *Bragnas* belong ſixteen churches.

III. The *Vogteys* of NUMMEDAL and SANDSVARD including twenty churches, which are under the Provoſtſhip of *Kongsberg*. Partly in theſe two *Vogteys* between the rivers *Kobberberg* and *Jorndal* lies

Kongsberg, *i. e.* 'The King's Mine,' a flouriſhing mine-town, containing no leſs than ten or eleven thouſand ſouls, among which are a *Daniſh* and *German* congregation. A mint was ſet up in this town ſo early as the year 1686; and in 1689, the mine-college was erected here. *Kongsberg* is famous for its ſilver-mines, the richeſt in all *Norway*, which were diſcovered in the year 1623; upon which this town was immediately built, and peopled with *German* miners. In the year 1751, one-and-forty ſhafts and twelve loads or veins were wrought in the four *Reviers* of this mine; and 3500 officers, artificers and labourers are uſually employed in it. The clear profits annually ariſing from this mine cannot be exactly determined.

The rich ore in this mine is found only in diſperſed *ſtrata*; for, if it lay in continued veins, it would not have its equal. Even pure ſilver is alſo dug out of it; and in 1647, ſome gold was found among the ſilver, of which king *Chriſtian* IV. had the famous *Brillen-Ducats* coined, with this legend: *Vide mira domini, i. e.* 'See the wonderful works of the Lord.' In the year 1697, a vein of gold was diſcovered here; and ducats were coined with the produce of it, which on one ſide had this inſcription: *Chriſtian. V. D. G. Rex Dan. Norv. V. G.* The legend on the reverſe were the following words from *Job*, ch. xxxvii. ver. 22. *Von mitternacht kommt gold. i. e.* 'Out of the North cometh gold.' *Konigsberg, Decemb.* 1, 1697.

IV. The county of JARLSBERG, formerly called *Tonsberg-Lehn* or Fief, conſiſts of arable land, and affords fine fiſheries, and ſeveral mines; particularly a very profitable ſilver mine diſcovered in the year 1729, not far from *Stromſoe:* This county has its Court of Judicature. In the Provoſtſhip of *Jarlsberg* are twenty-five churches.

Jarlsberg is the moſt remarkable place in the county, and the reſidence of a branch of the family of the Counts of *Wedel.* On this ſpot formerly ſtood *Sam*, which was anciently a nobleman's ſeat. It lies about a quarter of a *Norway* mile from

Tonsberg, which is the moſt ancient town in all *Norway.* It lies on an arm of *Tonsberg* bay; and is ſo called from the old northern word *Ton*, or *Tun*, which ſignifies a parcel of houſes and buildings, and *Berg* a mountain of which there are ſeveral in the neighbourhood of it. It was a populous town ſo early as the time of king *Harald Haarfager*; ſo that it is of eight hundred years ſtanding at leaſt. It was formerly much larger than it is at preſent, and contained nine churches: Whereas now it conſiſts of ſcarce two hundred timber houſes, and has but two churches. It is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate, who preſides in the city and has the ſuperintendency of the wharf and cuſtom-houſe at *Holmeſtrand.* This town carries on a good trade in furs and butter, for which the returns are made in grain, malt, *&c.* There are four keys or wharfs in the Diſtrict of its cuſtom-houſe. In the year 1259, a great part of this town was conſumed by fire. And, in 1536, it was laid in aſhes, together with its convents and churches, by the *Swedes.* From that time it has greatly declined; though it obtained ſeveral new privileges in 1537, from king *Frederick* III. which were enlarged and ratified in 1596, and 1648. In the year 1673, king *Chriſtian* V. conferred on the famous *Peter Greifenfeld* the Diſtrict and town of *Tonſberg* with the title of Count of the kingdom of *Norway.* In 1739, king *Chriſtian* VI. cauſed a brick-kiln to be erected near the town; and, on the peninſula of *Valoe*, about a *Norway* mile and a half from *Tonsberg*, the ſame monarch eſtabliſhed a ſalt-work, from which ſeveral ſhip loads of ſalt are yearly exported.

V. The

V. The county of LAURWIGEN, formerly called the Fief of *Brunſlaven*, belongs to Count *Ferdinand Antony Daneſkiold*. It has its own juriſdiction, and contains fine iron mines.

In the Provoſtſhip of *Laurwig* are fifteen churches.

This Diſtrict contains the following places of note.

Laurwigen, or *Larvigen*, a ſmall town and the chief trading place in this county. It ſtands at the conflux of the *Laven* and the *Laverdal* or *Lardal*, which has its ſource in *Nummedal*, and runs cloſe by *Kongsberg* and *Sandſvar*. The river *Faris* riſes in the lake of *Faris*, and likewiſe directs its courſe to *Larvigen*. The greateſt part of the wood uſed for fuel is brought hither by means of that river. The iron-works carried on in this place are the greateſt and moſt valuable in all *Norway*, and conſiſts properly of two mines, namely, one at *Lauerwig* and another at *Nes*.

Stavern, or *Frederickſwarn*, is a ſmall town, with a fortification which defends the harbour, on that ſide that lies towards *Larvigen*. In the year 1750, king *Frederick* V. ordered a dock-yard for building of gallies to be made here, and at the ſame time called the place by the name of *Frederickſwarn*.

Sandefiord has a good harbour and a commodious *Ladeplatz*, or wharf.

Laurkullen is a cape or Promontory well known to ſea-faring people.

VI. BRADSBERG-LEHN or Fief contains the Diſtrict of *Tillemarken*. The latter is divided into *Upper* and *Lower Tillemarken*, each of which is a *Vogtey:* But in eccleſiaſtical matters *Upper Tillemarken* is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Chriſtianſand*. The inhabitants of theſe parts have, for hardineſs and valour, been always accounted the moſt warlike people in all *Norway*.

The Provoſtſhip of *Lower Tillemarken* and *Bambel* contains twenty-two churches.

The moſt remarkable places in this Diſtrict, are,

Krageroe, which is a little town with one of the moſt frequented *Ladeplatze* or wharfs in this country. It has its own *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate.

Breedvig and *Langeſund*. Theſe are two ſea-ports each of which has a cuſtom-houſe and a good wharf.

Skieen, *Schauna*, is a town ſituated on a river of the ſame name, which flows from the *North-lake* in *Tillemark*. Not far from this town it forms a cataract down an aperture in the rock, through which the water runs as in a long conduit. About half a *Norway* mile above the town is the *Porſgrund*, where there is a commodious wharf for the ſhipping. *Skieen* is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate. In 1576, a great Aſſembly of the clergy and laity was held here for accommodating differences about tithes. This place formerly gave the name of *Skieſyſſel* to *Bradsberg-Lehn*. A Provincial Court of Judicature is held in this town.

Bradsberg is a handſome ſeat, which ſtands on a hill near *Skieen*, and gave its name to *Bradsberg-Lehn*. It was formerly the manſion of the Lord of the Fief.

In this Diſtrict are ſeveral fine iron-works. Theſe are *Foſſumwerk*, near *Skieen*, where the beſt cannon are caſt; *Bolvigſwerk* on the river near *Harreſtad*, about three quarters of a *Norway* mile from *Skieen*; and that called *Ulefos* or *Haldenſwerk*, about a *Norway* mile and a half from *Skieen*.

VII. HALLINGDAL and RINGERIGE.

A river runs through HALLINGDAL which falls into the lake of *Kroden*, and from thence runs into the river *Modum*, which afterwards joins with the *Drammen*. This Diſtrict includes ſeven churches, which, with *Ringerige* and *Hadeland*, make a Provoſtſhip.

RINGERIGE produces rye, peaſe, barley, and oats, and is plentifully ſupplied with fiſh from the freſh-water with which this Diſtrict is almoſt environed. Near *Honefoſſen* is a conflux of two rivers, one of which riſes in *Hadeland*, and the other runs through *Odalen*, and has its ſource in *Walders*. In this Diſtrict are the lakes of *Holtsfiord* and *Tyrrefiord*; and ſix churches.

VIII. HADELAND, TOTEN, and WALDERS.

In HADELAND, which includes thirteen churches, is ſome good arable land. It alſo carries on a conſiderable trade in wood and tar. There are ſeveral freſh-water lakes abounding with fiſh, namely, thoſe of *Rand*, *Veſten*, and *Jaren*, in this Diſtrict. Here are alſo ſeveral *Karauſche* ponds *.

TOTEN has ten churches, and is ſeparated from *Hedemarken* to the Eaſt by the large lake of *Mioſen*, which is twelve *Norway* miles † in length. It has good arable land which yields plenty of corn.

WALDERS produces but little barley or oats; and the inhabitants chiefly ſubſiſt by grazing. The rivers *Beina* and *Urulla*, which run into the lake of *Sperdillen* are very convenient for exporting wood and timber. The lake of *Klein Mioſen* or little *Mioſen* alſo lies in this Diſtrict.

Walders contains eighteen churches, and, with *Toten*, makes a Provoſtſhip.

IX. GULBRANDSDALEN.

This Diſtrict conſiſts of two large vallies; and both of them afford rich paſtures. In the champaign parts of theſe extenſive vallies, which contain twenty-five churches, there is alſo ſome good arable land. But in the deep, uneven and woody parts of them the corn is often greatly damaged by the cold; eſpecially in the pariſh of *Laſſoe*, which, however, has a very profitable iron-work. At *Faudal* there is a rich copper-mine. During the winter ſeaſon the inhabitants of this Diſtrict chiefly ſubſiſt by carrying her-

* The *Karauſche* is a kind of fiſh reſembling a carp, but is ſmaller and ſomething broader: It is called in French *Coraſſin*, and in Latin *Coraceus*.

† Near ſeventy *Engliſh* miles; about ten *Norway* miles and-a-half being equal to a degree.

rings,

rings, dried fiſh and other goods from *Drontheim* and *Romſdal*, to *Chriſtiania*, *Bragnas*, and *Kongsberg*, where they bring back corn and other neceſſaries in return. *Quernberg* affords mill-ſtones and other quarries, for which they have a very good vent. The defile, or narrow paſs, near *Breide*, is famous for the defeat of the *Scotch* army under their General *Sinclair*, who was ſurpriſed and cut to pieces there by the peaſants. A pillar has been erected on the place, with an inſcription to commemorate that victory.

X. HEDEMARKEN.

The ſoil of this Diſtrict is accounted the moſt fertile in the whole kingdom of *Norway*. Beſides the great quantity of grain it produces, it abounds in all kinds of fiſh. Here is alſo ſeveral quarries of ſlate; and on the iſland of *Hovindſholm* is found the *Lapis Suillus* or Swine-ſtone, which emits a fetid ſmell, like the excrements of that creature. Formerly near a bay on the eaſt ſide of the lake *Mioſen* ſtood the ancient epiſcopal See of *Hummer*, a large and ſtately city conſiſting of three main ſtreets of a conſiderable length, and fifteen croſs-ſtreets and lanes. It had alſo a fine cathedral; and in the year 1300 was ſo populous as to contain above eighteen hundred men fit to bear arms. But in 1350, it was reduced very low by an epidemical diſeaſe; and in 1567 was laid in aſhes by the *Swedes*, and never rebuilt. Part of its ſituation is now occupied by a nobleman's ſeat. At the time of the Reformation, this city was made ſubject to the See of *Opſlo*.

Hedemarken together with *Oſterdalen* or Eaſt-Valley make a Provoſtſhip of ſix-and-twenty churches.

XI. SOLLOER and OESTERDALEN.

The inhabitants of OESTERDALEN, which borders on *Sweden*, ſubſiſt chiefly by dealing in cattle; the corn being often deſtroyed there by the ſeverity of the froſt. At *Quickne* in this Diſtrict there is a rich copper-mine, which is called *Gotteſgabe-berg*, Θεωδωρον, or Gods-gift. It was diſcovered in 1635; but was not wrought to any great effect till the year 1707. It affords a mineral-water called *Cement-waſſer* *, which precipitates copper. The frontiers of this Diſtrict towards *Sweden* are well defended by natural fortifications, namely, the mountains of *Chriſtiansfield* which lie in the pariſh of *Elverum*.

In the Diſtrict of SOLLOER, which alſo borders on *Sweden*, the corn is often deſtroyed by the ſeverity of the froſt. But this misfortune is in ſome meaſure alleviated by the trade the inhabitants carry on in timber and maſts. An iron-work has lately been ſet up at *Oudal*. This country alſo affords ſome lead-mines. The frontiers hereabouts are defended by the fortreſs of *Kongs-Winger*, which ſtands in the pariſh of *Winger*.

* This is a vitriolic water which carries with it a copper ſediment, and tranſmutes iron into copper by permenating through the iron, corroding its particles, and leaving thoſe of copper in their places; ſo that at length it becomes entirely copper.

Oeſterdalen and *Hedemarken* conſtitnte a Provoſtſhip; and *Solloer* and *Ober-Romerige* make another.

XII. ROMERIGE, or RAUMORIGE, is a large Diſtrict, probably, ſo called from the river *Raume*. It is divided into *Upper* and *Lower-Romerige*; each diviſion making a *Vogtey*. The former together with *Solloer*, makes a Provoſtſhip of twenty-ſix churches; but the latter is a Provoſtſhip of itſelf, and contains fourteen churches. In *Upper Romerige* are ſome iron-works, at *Eidsvold* and *Hackedal*. *Lower-Romerige* affords ſome good arable land, and produces a great quantity of Daniſh *Cummin*, which is carried to *Chriſtiania* and from thence exported to *Denmark*. Large floats of timber and ſeveral kinds of fiſh are alſo exported from hence. In this diſtrict lies

Blackgierd, a ſtrong fort built at the conflux of two rivers on the borders of *Sweden*, which, on that account, in war time, requires a numerous garriſon.

XIII. BORRESYSESL, formerly called WINGULMARK, derives its preſent name from the ſeat of *Borre*, which, in 1703, ſunk into the ground; for the waters of the cataract of *Sarpen* waſhed away all the earth from the foundation of the houſe; and all that remains of it now is a pit full of ſand and rubbiſh. The ſoil in this Province is pretty fertile; but as it is low and damp, oats thrive better than any other grain in it. Towards the ſea, about *Follo*, the inhabitants are chiefly employed in carrying wood to the wharfs and cuſtom-houſes, at *Krogſtadt*, *Drobach*, *Holen*, *Zoen*, *Hvidſteen*, &c. by which they get a comfortable ſubſiſtence. The rivers in this Diſtrict are *Wanſoe-fiord*, *Rodenas*, *Femefiord*, and *Store-elve*. The laſt falls into the *Sarpen* and forms one of the greateſt waterfalls in *Norway*. The whole Diſtrict is divided into *Upper* and *Lower-Borreſyſſel*; and theſe again are ſubdivided into the following *Vogteys*.

1. *Racheſtad*, *Heggen*, and *Froland*.
2. *Ide* and *Marcher*.
3. *Mooſs*, *Ouſoe*, *Thune*, and *Wemble*.
4. *Folloug*, and *Agger*.

BORRESYSSEL, with regard to its eccleſiaſtical ſtate, is divided into three Provoſtſhips, namely, thoſe of *Upper*, *Middle*, and *Lower Borreſyſſel*; the firſt including eighteen churches, the ſecond thirteen, and the third twenty-three churches. *Upper-Borreſyſſel* has no place worthy of notice. In *Lower-Borreſyſſel* are the following towns, &c. namely,

Moſs, a ſmall town governed by a *Stadtvogt*. It carries on a conſiderable trade; but is moſt remarkable for the two battles fought there in the year 1717, in which the *Swedes* were defeated, and loſt their baggage and a large magazine which they had in this town. Not far from *Moſs* is a new iron-work and foundery, which turn out to good account.

Baſmoe, a little town and a paſs on the frontiers of *Sweden*. It is well fortified both by Art and Nature.

Frede-

Frederickſhald, a famous frontier-town towards *Sweden*. It is ſituated at the mouth of the *Tiſtedal*, where it empties itſelf into the *Spineſund*. This town was formerly called *Halden*, when it was a mean place, under the juriſdiction of the magiſtracy of *Frederickſtadt*. However, it made a very gallant defence againſt the *Swedes* in 1658, and alſo in 1659, by means of a ſmall entrenchment or rampart. After that, it was ſtrengthened with additional fortifications; ſo that in the year 1660, it ſuſtained a third vigorous ſiege from the *Swedes*; and *Charles Guſtavus* is by ſome thought, to have received here the wound of which he died. As a reward of the brave reſiſtance the inhabitants made, a charter with the privileges of a city, *&c.* were granted to this town in 1665. In the year 1686, *Chriſtian* V. annexed the manor of *Ous* to *Frederickſhald* as a compenſation for the loſs of its trade with *Sweden*. In 1716 and 1718, the inhabitants again ſignalized themſelves by making a vigorous defence againſt the attacks of the *Swedes*: And here it was that, on the eleventh of *December*, 1718, the warlike *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* was ſhot in the trenches. King *Frederick* IV. ordered a pyramid twenty feet in height to be erected on the ſpot where that Hero fell. The ſides of it were decorated with military trophies, with the arms of *Sweden* and the King's name; and the top was ſurmounted by a gilt crown. On four marble tables at the baſe were one *Latin*, and two *Daniſh* inſcriptions in golden letters: But king *Chriſtian* VI. in complement to *Sweden*, ordered this pyramid to be taken down. The town itſelf is not a place of any great ſtrength; but on a high rock oppoſite to it ſtands the ſtrong fortreſs of *Frederickſtein*, the foundation of which was laid in the year 1661. Beſides this there are other ſmaller forts near the town, namely,

Storre-Taarn, and *Oever-Bierget*, which have their reſpective Governors who are under the Commandant of *Frederickſtein*. *Guldenlowe*, is ſuch another ſmall fort, of which *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* had made himſelf maſter, when he was ſhot with a muſket-ball from *Oever-Bierget*, in the trenches between the former and *Frederickſtein*. Theſe three ſmall forts were built in the year 1682. *Frederickſhald* now carries on a very conſiderable trade, and is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate. In 1667, 1676, 1703, and 1716, thistown was deſtroyed by fire.

Frederickſtadt, a town built in 1567 by *Frederick* II. who granted it a very favourable charter; and the provincial court was at the ſame time removed hither from *Borre*. It is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate; and its chief trade is in timber, but this is not very conſiderable. *Frederickſtadt* was regularly fortified in the year 1665 by *Frederick* III. and ſince that time new works have been added to it; ſo that for its ſtrength by nature and art, and its convenient ſituation for a ready intercourſe by ſea with *Denmark*, it is the moſt important fortification in *Norway*. Though this town is very ſtrong, it has the following forts for a further defence.

Konigſtein fort, which ſtands on the land ſide.

Iſegram, which ſtands on the iſland of *Krageroe*, about a quarter of a *Norway* mile from the town.

Aggerhoe, which is erected on an iſland, towards the ſea. Theſe forts have their particular Commandants, who are ſubordinate to the Governor of *Frederickſtadt*.

Sarpsburg lies about a *Norway* mile from the ſea, near the river or waterfall of *Sarpen*. It was anciently a city, being built in 1016 by king *Oluf the Pious* or *Haroldſon*, as a defence to the kingdom againſt the incurſions of the *Swedes*; but in 1567, the *Swediſh* army laid it in aſhes.

Not far from this place is the great caſcade or waterfall of *Sarpen*, which king *Harald Gille*, in 1134, firſt uſed for the execution of criminals, by throwing a vaſſal of king *Magnus* down this dreadful cataract. There is an eminence called *Konigſhugel* cloſe by the caſcade, which is ſo called becauſe three kings, who were father, ſon, and grandſon, once ſtood upon it to view this ſurpriſing cataract: It drives ſeventeen mills, and the noiſe of it is plainly heard at the diſtance of four or five *Norway* miles from the place.

Near *Store-Elve*, which falls into the *Sarpen* and cauſes this waterfall, ſtands the famous old caſtle of *Waldiſholm*, now called *Wallanſoi*, which was formerly a very ſtrong fortreſs.

Note. All that tract of land which lies eaſt of the Gulf of *Follo*, *Opſlo*, or *Chriſtiania*, and is about ten *Norway* miles in length, formerly included *Eaſt-Folden* or *Follo*, which has been already deſcribed, and *Wigen* or *Bahuus-Lehn* which belongs to *Sweden*. That part of it that lies weſt of the Gulf, was called *Weſt-Folden*, including *Tonsbergs-Lehn*, of which an account has been given above.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

CHRISTIANSAND.

THE ancient name of this province was *Stavanger*. At preſent it contains four *Amts* or Prefectures, five *Vogteys*, and two Provincial Courts. With regard to eccleſiaſtical affairs, it is divided into ten Provoſtſhips, among which that of *Upper-Tillemark* is one, though in ſecular matters that Diſtrict belongs to the Dioceſe or Government of *Chriſtiania*. I proceed to give a particular account of every Diſtrict in the Dioceſe of *Chriſtianſand*.

I. NIDENAS-LEHN, ſo called from the Manor of *Nidenas* on the banks of the river *Nid*, is the largeſt Diſtrict in *Agdeſiden*. The ſoil is level and fit for agriculture. Here are fine woods of oak, and good fiſheries of mackarel and ſalmon; particularly in the river *Nid*, which, near *Oejeſtadtkirche*, has a high-water fall, acroſs which is a bridge called *Strugebroe*, made of long beams of timber from one rock to another. The river continues its courſe from this caſcade eaſtward about a *Norway* mile as far as

Arndal, a ſmall town, ſituated on a rock in the middle of the river *Nid*, which is remarkable for a good wharf, or lading place, as it is called. Moſt of the houſes ſtand on the acclivity of the rock, and others are built on piles in the water. The ſtreets are nothing but bridges of boats, by means of which the inhabitants go from houſe to houſe. Here is a ſufficient depth of water for the largeſt ſhips to lie along ſide of the bridges. The church ſtands high and almoſt on the ſummit of the rock, to which there is an aſcent from the houſes by a great number of ſteps hewn in the rock. The inhabitants make a good uſe of the commodious ſituation of this town for trade; for they employ many ſhips, and deal largely in timber. *Arndal* is under the ſame *Stadt-vogtey* or Magiſtracy as *Riſoer*; and has not long enjoyed the privileges of a town. At the diſtance of two *Norway* miles from hence is the iron-work of *Bariboe*, or *Baaſeland*, which is one of the moſt ancient in the whole kingdom, and in a pretty good condition. In this Diſtrict are alſo ſeveral iron-mines. About four *Norway* miles from hence, and two miles weſt of *Giernas*, lies

Riiſoer or *Eaſt-Riiſoer*, is a ſmall town, with a commodious wharf or lading-place, and conſequently not without ſome trade. It is under the juriſdiction of the *Vogtey* of *Arndal*.

Tromoe is the moſt remarkable of the iſlands belonging to this Diſtrict, by reaſon of its ſtately church, which is built with ſtone, and ſerves as a landmark at ſea. The ſailors alſo diſtinguiſh this country by three high rocks,

which lie directly over-againſt this iſland at the diſtance of ſix *Norway* miles up the country, and are called *Trimlinger*.

The new iron-works of *Egerland*, in the pariſh of *Gierreſtadt*, are alſo in this Diſtrict.

The Provoſtſhip of *Nidenas* includes eight pariſhes.

II. RAABYGDELAGET is reckoned a fertile country for grain; but it too often happens, that the corn is deſtroyed by the ſeverity of the weather. In this Diſtrict are plenty of wild beaſts, as ſtags, rain-deer, otters, beavers, *&c.* Its rivers abound with ſalmon and perch; and its trees produce a great quantity of tar. The large river *Otterae* on the weſt-ſide of *Byglefield* forms a great lake called *Bygland*, and in the pariſh of *Eſje* precipitates itſelf at the waterfall of *Fennie*.

The Provoſtſhip of *Raabygdelaget* includes four pariſhes.

III. MANDALS and LISTER-LEHN.

MANDALS-LEHN or Fief, which is alſo called *Midſyſſel* or the Middle Diſtrict, is twelve *Norway* miles in length, and is the moſt remarkable *Vogtey* in all *Norway* for ſalmon fiſheries. The largeſt ſalmon are taken in the river *Otterae*; but the melting of the ſnow retards the ſeaſon for fiſhing till the end of *July*; and a great waterfall hinders the ſalmon from coming above one *Norway* mile up the river. There is alſo a ſalmon fiſhery in the river *Torvedal*; but the moſt profitable fiſhery is in the river *Mandal*. The latter iſſues from an inland freſh-water lake called *Oere*, which is one *Norway* mile in length; and ſeveral rivers that run on the weſt ſide of the mountains diſcharge themſelves into it. Near *Bielland* a very uncommon method of fiſhing is practiſed, about half a *Norway* mile north of a bridge laid acroſs the river from one rock to another, thirty-ſix feet above the ſurface of the water; where the fiſhermen go under the cataract, which forms an arch over their heads, to hunt the ſalmon out of a hole in the rock, at the extreme hazard of their lives. In each of the above-mentioned rivers, namely, *Torvedal* and *Mandal* is alſo a rich pearl-fiſhery.

The Provoſtſhip of *Mandal* conſiſts of five pariſhes, to which belong twenty-one churches.

The moſt remarkable places in this Diſtrict are the following.

Fleckeroe, an iſland which lies about two leagues ſouth of *Otternas*, and is a *Norway* mile and a half in circumference. Between this iſland and the main land is a celebrated harbour, into which the ſame wind that carries a veſſel in on one ſide, proves contrary on the other. For the defence of ſuch an excellent harbour a fort was built on *Fleckeroe*, in the year 1556; but this falling to decay King *Chriſtian* IV. built another on the little iſland of *Otteroe* in 1635, and called it *Chriſtianſoe*. Some time after the fortreſs of *Fleckeroer* or *Frederickſholm*, which is the chief defence of the harbour, was erected. Here the largeſt fleet may lie ſecure both from

from ſtorms and the inſults of enemies. About a league from hence, near the fortified iſland of *Otteroe*, on the continent, lies

Chriſtianſand, the capital of this Dioceſe, and the reſidence of the Biſhop and the General-Governor; where there is alſo a Cathedral or Epiſcopal ſchool. This city was built by king *Chriſtian* IV. between the years 1641 and 1643; and is ſo called from the name of its founder and the great *Sande* or Strand on which it is built. The plan of it is ſquare, and the ſtreets are broad, regular, and well built. This city is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate. Its ſituation is very commodious; three ſides of it being ſurrounded either with freſh or ſalt-water, and on the fourth it has a communication with fine meadows and the mountains. Some trade is carried on here in timber. In 1734, the church, with the greateſt part of this city, was deſtroyed by fire.

Mandal, a ſmall place of ſome trade ſtands on the river of the ſame name. It has a cuſtom-houſe and is a pariſh of itſelf, which is called by the ſame name.

The *Ladeplatze* or wharfs of *Ripervig*, *Randoeſund*, *Hardmarkersfiold* which lies weſt of *Chriſtianſand*, and *Trysfiorden* near *Taanaas* are in this Diſtrict.

LISTER-LEHN is the moſt ſouthern Diſtrict in all *Norway*. It is a good corn country, aud very conveniently ſituated for fiſhing. This Diſtrict is ſeparated from *Dalene* by the rapid river *Syre*; which riſes in *Langfield*, runs along *Syredal* into the large lake of *Lunde*, and afterwards precipitates itſelf from a high rock into the ſea with amazing impetuoſity. In the pariſh of *Quineſdal*, ſo called from the river *Quine*, near the cataract of *Rafos* where the water iſſues from the apertures in the rocks as through ſo many pipes, is a profitable ſalmon-fiſhery; but the method of fiſhing there is very dangerous. *Liſterlehn* is about a *Norway* mile and a quarter in length, and about the ſame breadth. The coaſt is extremely dangerous to navigators, as it lies low, has no harbour, or anchoring place, and is ſurrounded with hidden rocks and ſhelves. Betwixt *Liſter* and *Lindenas*, about a quarter of a *Norway* mile from the Cape or *Naze*, is the famous harbour of *Selloe*, where king *Harald Haardraade* aſſembled a fleet of two hundred ſhips in order to go on his expedition to ENGLAND. Cape *Lindenas* joins to the main land of *Liſter-Lehn* by a very narrow iſthmus called *Spanger-Eid*; for the word *Eid* ſignifies an iſthmus. The inhabitants have formerly attempted, for the conveniency of navigation, to cut a channel through this ſmall neck of land, and to build a town there. But this ſcheme was found impracticable by reaſon of the rocks that obſtructed the execution of it. The Cape projects into the ſea about a *Norway* mile towards the South-Weſt, and is about half a mile broad. It is a high, barren, rocky promontory; however, it has twelve peaſants houſes on it. This Cape is commonly called the *Neuſs* or *Naze* in the Charts.

The Provoſtſhip of *Liſter* conſiſts of five pariſhes, to which belong one-and-twenty churches.

IV. JEDEREN and DALENE.

JEDEREN is ſeven *Norway* miles in length, and produces a good deal of corn; but the coaſt is very dangerous to navigators, a ridge of rocks concealed under the water running for a *Norway* mile into the ſea towards the North-Weſt. There are fine fiſheries of oyſters and lobſters in this Diſtrict; and a fine ſalmon fiſhery near *Egerſund*, betwixt *Egeroe* and the main land. The iſlands of *Rot*, *Tior*, and *Haaſteen*, which lie North-North-Weſt from hence, belong to this Diſtrict. In theſe iſlands the bullocks lie in the open air both winter and ſummer.

The Provoſtſhip of *Jederen* comprehends five pariſhes; and that of *Dalene* the ſame number. In *Jederen* alſo lies

Stavanger, an ancient town, ſituated on the little bay of *Buckne*, or *Tungefiord*. It is governed by a *Stadvogt* or Town-Magiſtrate; but was formerly much larger and more populous than it is at preſent. The cathedral, which was built in the year 1013, is the fineſt in all *Norway*, excepting that of *Drontheim*. But the town being burnt in 1686, king *Chriſtian* V. removed the epiſcopal See from hence to *Chriſtianſand*. There are but three churches in the Provoſtſhip of *Stavanger*.

V. RYFYLKET, or FIORDERNE, extends on each ſide of the large bay of *Stavanger*, which runs a great way into the land towards the Eaſt: This bay, at the entrance, is but two *Norway* miles in breadth.

Udſteenkloſter lies about a *Norway* mile and a half to the north-weſt of *Stavanger*, and was at firſt a royal palace, and after that converted into a convent; but is now a Nobleman's ſeat.

The iſlands of *Rendeſoe* and *Hvitingſoe* in this Diſtrict deſerve notice, as they occur in ancient hiſtory.

The large iſland of *Karmen*, and its well known Cape of *Augvaldſnas* are ſtill more remarkable. On the latter ſtands the fine ſeat of the ſame name. About ſix leagues weſt of *Karmen* lies the iſland of *Udſire*.

The Provoſtſhip of *Ryfylket* includes ſeven pariſhes; and the Provoſtſhip of *Karmeſund*, to which a great part of the iſland of *Karmen* belongs, conſiſts only of three pariſhes.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

BERGEN.

THIS Dioceſe is from forty to fifty *Norway* miles in length, and contains only the ſingle Prefecture of BERGENHUUS, including ſeven *Vogteys*, and the ſame number of Provoſtſhips. The Dioceſe of BERGEN is very populous, and is remarkable for having ſeven marble quarries, which are ſtill wrought.

The *Vogteys* in this Government are as follow.

I. HAARDANGER. The ſoil of this Diſtrict is ſterile and poor; and it derives its chief advantage from the mountains, which afford excellent quarries of millſtones, and another kind of ſtone which is uſed inſtead of iron plates, for baking the flat cakes mentioned above. Here is alſo dug up a whitiſh grey marble and *Weich ſtein*, or *Lapis ollarius*, of which pots and chamber-ſtoves are made. To the Eaſt of the gulf of *Haardanger*, in *Quind-herred*, there is a ridge of mountains called *Fuglefang*, *i. e.* 'The Bird-catch', which is one of the higheſt in all *Norway*, and is always covered with ſnow. There are ſeveral deep cavities and clefts in this mountain, which are frequented by birds of ſeveral kinds. In this *Vogtey* are four Courts of Judicature; and its Provoſtſhip includes three pariſhes, to which nine churches belong.

II. SUNDHORD-LEHN. This Diſtrict has eleven Courts of Judicature; and nine pariſhes, with thirty-three churches, are included in its Provoſtſhip. To this Diſtrict alſo belongs the iſland of *Storoe*, *i. e.* 'Great Iſland,' where *Harald Haarfager* the firſt ſovereign of all *Norway* reſided in his old age, in the palace of *Fidje*. Cloſe by *Storoe* lies the iſland of *Monſter*, which is commonly pronounced *Moſter* or *Mogſter*, where king *Oluf Tryggeſon*, in the year 997, built the firſt Chriſtian church in *Norway*. On the iſland of *Halſnoe*, in this Diſtrict, formerly ſtood a convent called *Lyſe-kloſter*, or *Lucida vallis*, founded in the year 1144, for a Fraternity of *Ciſtertian* monks; the eſtates that belonged to it are now converted into a Fief.

III. NORDHORD-LEHN, together with SUNDHORD-LEHN conſtitute a tract of land called *Hordeland*. This Diſtrict produces but little corn; for the weſtern parts of it chiefly conſiſt of iſlands and rocks, where moſt of the inhabitants ſubſiſt by fiſhing, eſpecially the herring fiſhery. It has thirteen Courts of Judicature; and its Provoſtſhip includes eight pariſhes, and twenty-nine churches. But what renders this Diſtrict moſt remarkable, and is at the ſame time ſo advantageous to it, is

BERGEN, in Latin *Berga*, formerly called *Biorginn*, or *Biorgvin*, the largeſt city, and a place of the greateſt trade in all the kingdom of *Norway*. It lies on the continent in the middle of a valley, and is built, in the form of a ſemicircle or horſhoe, on the ſides of a bay which the inhabitants call *Waag*. Nature has ſo well fortified it towards the land by lofty mountains, of which there are ſeven remarkably high, that the paſſes or defiles between them are quite impracticable to an enemy. Towards the ſea the harbour is extremely well defended by ſeveral fortifications, as the *Engliſh* fleet, which attempted in 1665 to carry off ſome *Dutch Eaſt-India* ſhips that had put in there for ſafety, found by experience. The harbour is alſo defended on the north-ſide by the fort of *Chriſtianſholm*, built in 1641 by *Chriſtian* IV. together with *Rothouven*, *Sveresborg*, *Commun*, and the caſtle. On the left ſide ſome batteries are erected on *Nornas*, and *Frederickſberg*; and the latter now paſſes for one of the beſt fortifications belonging to *Bergen*. Beſides theſe works a blockhouſe was built on *Syndnas* in 1646; and in the year 1666, the extraordinary round fort of *Chriſtianſberg* was erected. All the churches, public edifices, and moſt of the houſes along the ſtrand are built with ſtone. *Bergen* formerly contained thirty churches and convents; but at preſent it has only four pariſh churches, three of which are *Daniſh*, and one *German*, with a church in the large hoſpital of St. *Jurgens*, and another ſmall church or chapel in St. *James*'s churchyard. The caſtle of *Bergen* is a grand ſtructure. The large cathedral-ſchool in this city was founded in the year 1554 by Biſhop *Petrus*, who alſo endowed it; and by the liberality of king *Frederick* II. and others, twelve ſcholars are maintained and educated in it. The Navigation-ſchool, founded here, formerly flouriſhed greatly, but is now fallen into decay. The *Seminarium Fredericianum* alſo deſerves notice; which is an excellent foundation, where Natural and Moral Philoſophy, the Mathematics, Hiſtory, together with the *Latin* and *French* languages are taught by Maſters who are properly qualified in thoſe branches of Literature. This city carries on a large trade in all kinds of fiſh, tallow, hides, and timber. All theſe commodities are brought from the northern parts of the kingdom, called the *Nordlands* to *Bergen*, and from thence exported. The returns are moſtly made in corn and foreign commodities. The *Hanſe-towns* in the reign of king *Erick* of *Pomerania* had a Factory in this city, which *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria*, in 1445, ratified by a royal Charter; ſo that the year 1445 may be looked upon as the proper date when the Factory was erected in *Bergen*, in the privileges of which the cities of *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Roſtock*, *Deventer*, *Embden*, and *Bremen* had the greateſt ſhare. But at preſent only *Bremen*, *Lubeck*, and *Hamburg* are concerned in the little buſineſs that is tranſacted here. In the ſeventeen edifices, with warehouſes, *&c.* belonging to the *Hanſe-towns*, there are forty-two warehouſes, appropriated to the citizens of *Bergen*, and but ſeventeen for the uſe of the Factory,

Factory, of which the *Lubeckers* poſſeſs only one, the *Hamburgers* one, and the *Bremeners* fifteen. Theſe towns have eight *Skiotnings-ſtuben* or public halls at *Bergen* where the merchants meet to tranſact buſineſs, and ſometimes have entertainments. *Bergen* had formerly the privilege of coining, and enjoyed it longer than any other town in *Norway*, namely, till the year 1575. In the royal *Muſeum* at *Copenhagen* is to be ſeen a medal ſtruck here in the time of king *Erick*, who was a mortal enemy to the clergy. This city was founded in the year 1069, or 1070. Synods were held here in 1156, 1345, and 1435. It ſuffered extremely by fire in the year 1248, when eleven pariſh churches were entirely conſumed. The like misfortune befel it in 1472, 1623, 1640, and 1702. The number of its inhabitants were computed at 30,000 in the year 1756. *Bergen* is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* and other magiſtrates.

King *Harald Haarfager* ſometimes reſided at *Solkeim*, and ſometimes at *Alrickſtad*, now called *Aarſtad*, in this Diſtrict.

On the iſland of *Guloe* a celebrated Court of Judicature called *Gulatings-laug-ſtoel* was formerly held, which was removed from thence to *Bergen*. However, there is ſtill a Provincial Court or *Tinglaug* held on that iſland.

Between the iſlands and the continent runs a very dangerous *Sund* or Strait called *Kiilſtrommen*, through which all the ſhips that ſail to or from *Nordland* are obliged to paſs. The current in theſe Straits is different from moſt other Straits; for it ebbs here when the tide flows, and flows when it ebbs, which cauſes dangerous whirlpools; ſo that the ſhips bound to *Nordland* generally wait in ſome harbour near theſe Straits till it is high-water, which is looked upon as the ſafeſt time for paſſing through the *Kiilſtrommen*.

IV. SOGN or SYGNA-FILKE is ſixteeen *Norway* miles in length, and is reckoned a plentiful country, abounding with grain, cattle, fiſh, foreſts, ſawing-mills, and other conveniencies of art and nature.

Formerly a town called *Kopanger* ſtood in this Diſtrict; but about the year 1178, it was ſacked and burnt by king *Sverre*'s army.

In the pariſh of *Leyrdal* is a copper-work called *Aar-Dalſwerk* or *Sem-Dalſwerk*, which king *Frederick* IV. purchaſed for 36,000 rix-dollars; but it has not been wrought for ſeveral years.

At *Leerdalſoe* a yearly fair is held on *Michaelmas-day*; the peaſants who live in *Walders* venture to travel over the frightful rocky mountains of *Galdrene* to come to this fair. *Sogn* was formerly divided into two *Vogteys* or Diſtricts, called *Yttre-Sogn*, in which were nine Courts of Judicature, and *Indre-Sogn* with ſeven.

The Provoſtſhip of *Sogn* contains nine pariſhes and thiriy-ſix churches.

V. SUNDFIORD. In this Diſtrict are ſix Courts of Judicature; and its Provoſtſhip includes ſix pariſhes and nineteen churches.

VI. NORDFIORD. This *Vogtey* has ſeven Courts of Judicature; and the Provoſtſhip of *Nordfiord* conſiſts of four pariſhes, and eighteen churches.

On

BERGEN, in Latin *Berga*, formerly called *Biorginn*, or *Biorgvin*, the largeſt city, and a place of the greateſt trade in all the kingdom of *Norway*. It lies on the continent in the middle of a valley, and is built, in the form of a ſemicircle or horſhoe, on the ſides of a bay which the inhabitants call *Waag*. Nature has ſo well fortified it towards the land by lofty mountains, of which there are ſeven remarkably high, that the paſſes or defiles between them are quite impracticable to an enemy. Towards the ſea the harbour is extremely well defended by ſeveral fortifications, as the *Engliſh* fleet, which attempted in 1665 to carry off ſome *Dutch Eaſt-India* ſhips that had put in there for ſafety, found by experience. The harbour is alſo defended on the north-ſide by the fort of *Chriſtianſholm*, built in 1641 by *Chriſtian* IV. together with *Rothouven*, *Svereſborg*, *Commun*, and the caſtle. On the left ſide ſome batteries are erected on *Nornas*, and *Frederickſberg*; and the latter now paſſes for one of the beſt fortifications belonging to *Bergen*. Beſides theſe works a blockhouſe was built on *Syndnas* in 1646; and in the year 1666, the extraordinary round fort of *Chriſtianſberg* was erected. All the churches, public edifices, and moſt of the houſes along the ſtrand are built with ſtone. *Bergen* formerly contained thirty churches and convents; but at preſent it has only four pariſh churches, three of which are *Daniſh*, and one *German*, with a church in the large hoſpital of St. *Jurgens*, and another ſmall church or chapel in St. *James*'s churchyard. The caſtle of *Bergen* is a grand ſtructure. The large cathedral-ſchool in this city was founded in the year 1554 by Biſhop *Petrus*, who alſo endowed it; and by the liberality of king *Frederick* II. and others, twelve ſcholars are maintained and educated in it. The Navigation-ſchool, founded here, formerly flouriſhed greatly, but is now fallen into decay. The *Seminarium Fredericianum* alſo deſerves notice; which is an excellent foundation, where Natural and Moral Philoſophy, the Mathematics, Hiſtory, together with the *Latin* and *French* languages are taught by Maſters who are properly qualified in thoſe branches of Literature. This city carries on a large trade in all kinds of fiſh, tallow, hides, and timber. All theſe commodities are brought from the northern parts of the kingdom, called the *Nordlands* to *Bergen*, and from thence exported. The returns are moſtly made in corn and foreign commodities. The *Hanſe-towns* in the reign of king *Erick* of *Pomerania* had a Factory in this city, which *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria*, in 1445, ratified by a royal Charter; ſo that the year 1445 may be looked upon as the proper date when the Factory was erected in *Bergen*, in the privileges of which the cities of *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Roſtock*, *Deventer*, *Embden*, and *Bremen* had the greateſt ſhare. But at preſent only *Bremen*, *Lubeck*, and *Hamburg* are concerned in the little buſineſs that is tranſacted here. In the ſeventeen edifices, with warehouſes, *&c.* belonging to the *Hanſe-towns*, there are forty-two warehouſes, appropriated to the citizens of *Bergen*, and but ſeventeen for the uſe of the Factory,

Factory, of which the *Lubeckers* poſſeſs only one, the *Hamburgers* one, and the *Bremeners* fifteen. Theſe towns have eight *Skiotnings-ſtuben* or public halls at *Bergen* where the merchants meet to tranſact buſineſs, and ſometimes have entertainments. *Bergen* had formerly the privilege of coining, and enjoyed it longer than any other town in *Norway*, namely, till the year 1575. In the royal *Muſeum* at *Copenhagen* is to be ſeen a medal ſtruck here in the time of king *Erick*, who was a mortal enemy to the clergy. This city was founded in the year 1069, or 1070. Synods were held here in 1156, 1345, and 1435. It ſuffered extremely by fire in the year 1248, when eleven pariſh churches were entirely conſumed. The like misfortune befel it in 1472, 1623, 1640, and 1702. The number of its inhabitants were computed at 30,000 in the year 1756. *Bergen* is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* and other magiſtrates.

King *Harald Haarfager* ſometimes reſided at *Solkeim*, and ſometimes at *Alrickſtad*, now called *Aarſtad*, in this Diſtrict.

On the iſland of *Guloe* a celebrated Court of Judicature called *Gulatings-laug-ſtoel* was formerly held, which was removed from thence to *Bergen*. However, there is ſtill a Provincial Court or *Tinglaug* held on that iſland.

Between the iſlands and the continent runs a very dangerous *Sund* or Strait called *Kiilſtrommen*, through which all the ſhips that ſail to or from *Nordland* are obliged to paſs. The current in theſe Straits is different from moſt other Straits; for it ebbs here when the tide flows, and flows when it ebbs, which cauſes dangerous whirlpools; ſo that the ſhips bound to *Nordland* generally wait in ſome harbour near theſe Straits till it is high-water, which is looked upon as the ſafeſt time for paſſing through the *Kiilſtrommen*.

IV. SOGN or SYGNA-FILKE is ſixteeen *Norway* miles in length, and is reckoned a plentiful country, abounding with grain, cattle, fiſh, foreſts, ſawing-mills, and other conveniencies of art and nature.

Formerly a town called *Kopanger* ſtood in this Diſtrict; but about the year 1178, it was ſacked and burnt by king *Sverre*'s army.

In the pariſh of *Leyrdal* is a copper-work called *Aar-Dalſwerk* or *Sem-Dalſwerk*, which king *Frederick* IV. purchaſed for 36,000 rix-dollars; but it has not been wrought for ſeveral years.

At *Leerdalſee* a yearly fair is held on *Michaelmas-day*; the peaſants who live in *Walders* venture to travel over the frightful rocky mountains of *Galdrene* to come to this fair. *Sogn* was formerly divided into two *Vogteys* or Diſtricts, called *Yttre-Sogn*, in which were nine Courts of Judicature, and *Indre-Sogn* with ſeven.

The Provoſtſhip of *Sogn* contains nine pariſhes and thiriy-ſix churches.

V. SUNDFIORD. In this Diſtrict are ſix Courts of Judicature; and its Provoſtſhip includes ſix pariſhes and nineteen churches.

VI. NORDFIORD. This *Vogtey* has ſeven Courts of Judicature; and the Provoſtſhip of *Nordfiord* conſiſts of four pariſhes, and eighteen churches.

On

On the iſland of *Selloe* in this Diſtrict the remains of *Sunneva* were found by king *Oluf Tryggeſon*, who built a church and convent in honour of that ſaint. It is ſaid ſhe was an *Iriſh* princeſs, and that, towards the cloſe of the fourth century, being driven by ſtreſs of weather on the coaſt of *Norway*, which was then involved in the darkneſs of Paganiſm, ſhe and her attendants laboured by their preaching to convert the *Norwegians* to Chriſtianity. It is added, that the princeſs, who was not inured to hardſhips, ſoon after ended her days in a cavern of a rock. In the year 1170, her pretended remains were carried with great ſolemnity from this iſland to *Bergen*, and depoſited in the cathedral, where, for a long time, they continued to be worſhiped by the ſuperſtitious papiſts.

Note. The *Vogteys* or Diſtricts of *Sund* and *Nord-fiord* are both called *Firdifylke* or *Fiordi-fylke*. They conſiſt of a rocky barren ſoil which produces but little corn, except in a ſpot of land on the eaſt ſide of the bay. In the iſlands belonging to theſe Diſtricts the inhabitants live moſtly by fiſhing. Theſe *Vogteys* are but little known, as they have neither a public road, nor a good harbour for ſhipping. Between *Nordfiord* and *Sundmor*, a peninſula which is called *Statt* runs a good way into the ſea towards the Weſt; and the dangerous ſea by which it is waſhed is well known to mariners by the name of *Stats-Hav*.

VII. SUNDMOR, or SONDRE-MORE, extends as far as *Romſdal*, and formerly belonged to the Biſhoprick of *Drontheim*. The inhabitants of this Diſtrict moſtly ſubſiſt by the fiſheries. It contains twelve courts of Judicature, from which an appeal lies to the Superior Court called *Laugſtuhl* at *Bergen*.

The Provoſtſhip of *Sundmor* includes four pariſhes and twenty-two churches.

It is ſaid that a piece of hazel-wood being ſtuck into the moraſs of *Biorkedal* in this Diſtrict will, in about three years, be tranſmuted into a whetſtone, while that part that is above the ſwampy ground remains unchanged. However, alder-trees are ſaid to grow in this moraſs without undergoing any change. But Biſhop *Pontoppidan* in his excellent Natural Hiſtory of *Norway* aſſerts, that there is no petrefying water in this moraſs; but informs us that on the ſide of it there is a piece of *Amianthus* or *Aſbeſtos* rock, which being diviſible into long pliant threads, like flax, and being more like wood than ſtone, has been given out for petrefied wood; and brought the neighbouring moraſs to an undeſerved reputation.

A town called *Corgund* formerly ſtood in this *Vogtey*, which now lies in ruins.

Vallerhou in *Sundmore* is, in all reſpects, an excellent harbour.

The DIOCESE, *or* GENERAL GOVERNMENT *of*

DRONTHEIM.

THE Dioceſe of DRONTHEIM, in Daniſh *Trondhiem*, is the moſt northern Province in *Norway*, and is above an hundred and fifty *Norway* miles in length. It borders on *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*, and is ſeparated from the former by the long chain of mountains called *Kolen*, and from the latter partly by the *Nord-felſen* or North-rocks. That ridge of hills called *Kolen*, of which mention has already been made in the Introduction to *Norway*, §. 6, begins near *Waranger*, and *Indiager* bay in *Finmark*, and proceeds ſouthward as far as *Roraas* and the lake of *Femmund*, that is, twenty *Norway* miles on this ſide of the city of *Drontheim*; conſequently its whole length is little ſhort of an hundred and fifty *Norway* miles. The Dioceſe of DRONTHEIM contains three large *Amts* or Prefectures, which are as follows.

I. DRONTHEIM. This Prefecture alſo includes thoſe of *Romſdal* and *Nordmor*, each of which has a particular Prefect. I ſhall therefore, in the firſt place, give an account of

The Prefectures of ROMSDAL and NORDMOR, which conſiſt of two *Vogteys* of the ſame names with their reſpective Prefectures.

1. The *Vogtey* of *Romſdal* has eight Courts of Judicature from which an appeal lies to the Superior Court of *Drontheim*. Its Provoſtſhip contains ſix pariſhes, and twenty-one churches. This Diſtrict produces more oats than wheat; and the beſt arable land in it lies near the bays, or in the vallies: But the inhabitants of the ſea-coaſts apply themſelves moſtly to fiſhing. In the fourteenth century there ſtood in this *Vogtey* a conſiderable town called *Wedoe*, of which all that remains at preſent is the church of St. *Peter* in the pariſh of *Wedoe*. On *Ejen*, near *Boe*, a numerous army of *Swedes* was defeated in the year 1612. The only remarkable place in this *Vogtey* is

Molle, which obtained its charter of privileges in 1742, and is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate. Timber and tar are exported from hence, and the return is chiefly made in corn.

2. The *Vogtey* of *Nordmor* is divided into eight juriſdictions, from which an appeal lies to the Superior Court at *Drontheim*. This Provoſtſhip comprizes ſeven pariſhes, to which belong twenty-one churches, and three chapels. In the pariſh of *Sund*, barley and oats ripen in ſo ſhort a ſpace of time, that they are reaped in nine weeks after the grain is ſown; which is owing to the mountains contracting and reverberating the ſun-beams in

the narrow vallies in this Diſtrict. *Lille-Foſen*, *i. e.* 'Little-Foſen,' obtained its charter in the year 1742, with the name of

Chriſtianſund, and has a very commodious harbour and a good *Lade-platz* or wharf; on which account a great quantity of timber from the adjacent country is brought to this town in order to be exported. It is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magiſtrate.

Bremſnas is remakable on account of a cryſtal urn with a gold rim, and full of aſhes, which was found in that place: It is now depoſited in the royal *Muſeum* at *Copenhagen*.

The Prefecture of DRONTHEIM, excluſive of theſe, comprehends the following *Vogteys* or Diſtricts.

1. The *Vogtey* of *Foſen*, ſo called from the iſland of *Store-Foſen*, i. e. 'Great-Foſen,' conſiſts chiefly of iſlands. One of theſe, namely, the iſland of *Hitteroe* is eight *Norway* miles in circumference, and its inhabitants chiefly ſubſiſt by fiſhing. Here is a fine ſalmon-fiſhery near *Oereland*, and at *Biugnen* are caught the *Drontheim* herrings which are ſo much admired. About *Agdenas*, where *Drontheim* bay runs a good way into the land, the ſoil produces plenty of grain. This Diſtrict is divided into eight juriſdictions, and the Provoſtſhip of *Store-Foſen* contains ſix pariſhes and ſixteen churches.

2. The *Vogteys* of *Oerkedalen* and *Guldalen*. The former was anciently called *Oerkedola-fylke*, from the river *Oerkeln* which iſſues from *Oerkelſoe* lake near *Dofre-field*. In this Diſtrict are four Courts of Judicature, and the rich copper-mine called *Lukkens* or *Meldals-werck*. The *Vogtey* of *Guledal*, *Guldalen*, or *Gauldola-fylke*, is ſo called from the river *Gaulen* or *Gulen*, which riſes near *Skars-field*, and, after a courſe of twenty *Norway* miles, falls into the ſea about a *Norway* mile weſt of *Drontheim*. Near the mine-town of *Roraas* is a large and rich copper-mine diſcovered in the year 1644. In this *Vogtey* are alſo four Courts of Judicature.

3. The *Vogtey* of *Strinden* extends from *Drontheim* bay eaſtward as far as *Jemtefield* near *Tidalen*. It contains eight Juriſdictions. There is a copper-mine at *Selboe* in this Diſtrict.

Note. The *Vogteys* of *Oerkedalen*, *Guledalen*, and *Strinden* produce ſome grain; but the corn is frequently deſtroyed by the froſt. They conſtitute the Provoſtſhip of *Dalenes*, to which belong ten pariſhes and twenty-nine churches.

In the *Vogtey* of *Strinden* lies the city of

Drontheim, on the river *Nid*, which riſes in *Tidalen* and runs through *Selboe* lake, from which it directs its courſe northward, and runs near the city, ſo as almoſt to environ it. *Drontheim* was at firſt called *Nideroos*, or the mouth or outlet of the river *Nid*, from which its *Latin* name *Nidroſia* is derived. It owes its preſent name to the neighbouring country which was formerly ſo called; and its inhabitants were termed *Tronder*. King

Oluf

Oluf Tryggeſon was the founder of this city, which for ſome time was the reſidence of the *Norwegian* Kings, and afterwards of the Archbiſhops. It was erected into an archiepiſcopal See in the year 1152, but ſuppreſſed at the Reformation. Formerly there were ten churches and five convents in this city; whereas at preſent it has but two churches, beſides that at the hoſpital. The Cathedral, which is a ſuperb edifice built with marble, was all burnt down in 1530, excepting the choir, which is rather too large for the preſent church, and is ſtill called the Cathedral. This city is the reſidence of the General-Governor and the Biſhop; and is governed by a *Stad-vogt* and other magiſtrates. Here are, a fine cathedral-ſchool, a Seminary of Miſſionaries, an orphan-houſe, a workhouſe, a houſe of correction, and an hoſpital. A conſiderable trade in timber, fiſh, tallow, and copper which is brought from the copper-works of *Meldal* and *Roraas*, is carried on in this city. A ſugar-houſe is alſo lately erected at *Drontheim*. The city is defended by fort *Chriſtianſtein*, erected in 1680, ſome fortifications on the land-ſide, and by *Munkholmen*, of which we ſhall preſently give a particular account. In the years 1522, 1650 and 1681, *Drontheim* was greatly damaged by fire. In the month of *July* 1685, king *Chriſtian* V. ſpent ſome days in this town, and ſupped at midnight without lights; the twilights being ſo luminous as to need no candles. In the *Muſeum* at *Copenhagen* there is an old medal, ſtruck here by order of king *Sverre*, to be ſeen. On the eaſt ſide of the city lies the ſuburb of *Bakkelandet*, with its own church. And not far from *Bakkelandet* is *Ladegaard* which has alſo a particular church.

The caſtle of *Munkholmen* ſtands on a rock in *Drontheim* harbour, and defends both the city and harbour towards the ſea. It formerly was the uſual place of confinement for ſtate priſoners, and particularly of the unfortunate *Peter Schumaker*, Count *Greiffenfeld* and Great Chancellor, who was impriſoned here from 1676 to 1699, and died at *Drontheim* immediately after he had obtained his liberty.

4. The *Vogteys* of *Stordalen* and *Verdalen*, which comprehend the *Filkes* or little territories of *Stiordola*, *Skaugna* or *Skagen*, and *Verdola-fylke*. It has eight Courts of Judicature, from which there lies an appeal to the Superior Court at *Drontheim*. *Froſten* and *Skogen* are accounted the beſt corn-lands in all the north part of the kingdom.

Froſten is remarkable for the court eſtabliſhed there by king *Hagen Adelſteen*, whoſe juriſdiction extended over all the inhabitants of *Drontheim*. Directly oppoſite to *Froſten* ſtood formerly on an iſland the caſtle of

Steenvigſholm built juſt before the Reformation by the laſt Archbiſhop *Oluf-Engelbretſon* for the ſecurity of the jewels belonging to himſelf and the church of *Drontheim*. But after he left the caſtle, it was ſoon maſtered by *Chriſtopher Hvitfeld*. It was ceded to the *Swedes* by king *Frederick* II. in 1564; but was afterwards demoliſhed by the King's order, and in lieu

of it the ſtrong fort of *Skagnas* or *Skognes* was erected in another place, which is always kept in good condition.

5. The *Vogtey* of *Inderoen*, which contains the little Diſtricts of *Sparbygia* and *Augna-fylke*, with ſix juriſdictions. *Jemteſield*, which here ſeparates *Norway* from *Sweden* is one of the higheſt mountains in *Norway*. On a bay in the pariſh of *Stods* formerly ſtood the town of *Stenkier*.

Note. The *Vogteys* of *Stordalen* and *Inderoen* form one Diſtrict called *Indherred*, which is accounted the beſt corn-land in the Prefecture of *Drontheim*. The Provoſtſhip of *Indherred* contains eleven pariſhes, with thirty-four churches and two chapels.

6. The *Vogtey* of *Nummedal* is ſo called from the river *Naums*, which runs into *Naumſdal-bay*. It contains three juriſdictions, and a Provoſtſhip with three pariſhes and fourteen churches.

II. The Prefecture of NORDLAND, extends from *Nummedal* to *Findmark*, and contains the following *Vogteys*.

1. *Helgeland*, formerly called *Halogaland*, *Halogia*, and *Helleland*. *Ramus* labours hard to prove that this is the *Ogygia* of *Homer*, and that *Ulyſſes* was the ſame perſon with *Othin* or *Outin*; ſo that according to that author this country was inhabited immediately after the *Trojan* war, and conſequently before any other part of *Norway*. It is eighteen *Norway* miles in circumference, and is the moſt populous Diſtrict in *Nordland*; the ſoil is fertile, and covered with fine woods and rich paſtures. A great quantity of fiſh, tallow, and fine butter is exported from hence. An appeal lies from the inferior courts of this *Vogtey* to the Provincial Court at *Stege*.

There are five pariſhes, two vicarages, and ſixteen churches in this Provoſtſhip.

Near *Alſtaboug*, in this Diſtrict, is a remarkable range of mountains with ſeven high ſummits or creſts called the ſeven ſiſters, and which are diſcernible ſixteen *Norway* miles off at ſea. In the ſouth part of this *Vogtey* is the mountain of *Torg-hatten*, through which there is an aperture, from one ſide to the other, fifty fathoms in height and a thouſand in length; and on the top of this mountain is a piece of water, or reſervoir, of the dimenſions of a moderate fiſh-pond.

2. The *Vogtey* of *Salten* is ſixteen *Norway* miles in length and ſix in breadth. It produces a good deal of corn, eſpecially barley, and has fine paſtures and profitable fiſheries.

The Provoſtſhip of *Salten* includes four pariſhes and fourteen churches.

At *Stegen* the Court of Judicature for the whole Prefecture is held.

In this Diſtrict is the ſtrait or current of *Saltſtrom*, which, at certain times, has the ſame dangerous and violent agitations as are obſerved in the *Moſkoeſtrom*.

3. The *Vogtey* of *Sennien* is about ten *Norway* miles in length, and eight in breadth. It conſiſts chiefly of the large iſland of *Sennien*, the ſoil of which

which is fertile for corn and paſturage; and on the weſt ſide of it are ſeveral deep bays. The chief employment of the inhabitants is fiſhing.

This Provoſtſhip contains fourteen churches.

4. The *Vogtey* of *Tromſoen* is between ſeven and eight *Norway* miles in length, and contains one Provoſtſhip with eight churches. As the ſummers are very ſhort in this country, it produces but little corn, and no great plenty of graſs; ſo that the inhabitants ſubſiſt by the fiſheries.

5. The *Vogteys* of *Lofoden*, *Veſteraalen*, and *Andenas* conſiſt entirely of iſlands, and make but one Provoſtſhip, in which are nineteen churches: Theſe Diſtricts alſo labour under a ſcarcity of grain; but the iſlands of *Lofoden* produce good graſs which grows very high, and have the beſt fiſheries in all *Nordland*.

A whole range of iſlands extends from North-eaſt to South-weſt along this coaſt, and betwixt them and the continent runs a large bay called *Weſtfiorden*, which widens gradually towards the South-weſt. The iſland of *Roſt* lies fartheſt towards that point of the compaſs, and is four *Norway* miles in circuit: It has a church built on it, and is ſurrounded by a great number of ſmaller iſlands. At the diſtance of ſome miles to the North-eaſt of it lies the iſland of *Werroe*, which has alſo a church and is encompaſſed with ſeveral ſmall iſlands. Between *Werroe* and the neareſt of the *Lafoden*, called *Moskoenas*, at the diſtance of a *Norway* mile from either of them lies the little iſland of *Moſkoe*; which is about a *Norway* mile in circuit, and noted for its rich paſturages and the fine ſheep bred there. *Lofoden* includes three other iſlands beſides *Moſkoenas*, and theſe four iſlands ſtretch to the North-eaſt about nine *Norway* miles, as far as the iſland of *Vaage*; and between them run little ſtraits or channels. Further north lie the iſlands of *Langoen* and *Andenoen*, which are both comprehended in the Diſtrict of *Weſteraalen*, and have their reſpective churches.

Between the aforementioned iſlands of *Moſkoe* and *Moſkoenas* is the famous *Moſkoeſtrom*, which is generally called *Mahlſtrom*, or *Maelſtrom*, by mariners. This current runs ſix hours from North to South, and returns from South to North in the ſucceeding ſix hours, like the ebbing and flowing of the ſea, but in direct oppoſition to the motion of the tides: For during the flood which runs from South to North, the *Moſkoeſtrom* runs from North to South; and during the reflux or ebb when the ſea runs from North to South, this current impetuouſly returns from South to North. It runs with a ſurpriſing rapidity, eſpecially between the iſland of *Moſkoe* and the extremity of *Moſkoenas*, where the tides riſe higheſt; but gradually abates its impetuoſity as it approaches the iſlands of *Werroe* and *Roſt*. The *Moskoeſtrom* never runs in a direct line like other currents; but almoſt circular. When it is half flood in the ſea, the current here runs to the South-South-Eaſt; and as the tide riſes higher; winds ſouthwards and from the South to the South-weſt, and ſo on to due Weſt. When it is high-water

out

out at ſea, the current of the *Moskoeſtrom* alters its courſe to the North-weſt; and ſo gradually on to the North, where its impetuoſity is at a ſtand for about three quarters of an hour. This interval is obſerved twice a day, after which the motion begins again. The appearance and effects of the *Moskoeſtrom* have been deſcribed as very dangerous and dreadful; but, it muſt be owned, not without ſome exaggeration. M. *Bing*, who had ſeen it, informs us that it has no whirlool or *vortex*; but that it is formed by the colliſion of an aſſemblage of foaming waves, riſing as it were pyramidically to a great height, and with a prodigious noiſe. According to *Schelderup*'s account the *Moskoeſtrom* is full of *vortices* or terrible whirlpools in the form of inverted cones, and above two fathoms deep from the baſe to the *apex*, and, as ſome relate, four fathoms in diameter: However, both accounts may, in ſome meaſure, be reconciled. This is certain

Firſt, That the *Moskoeſtrom* is not agitated with equal violence at all times; that about the new and full moon, the Equinoxes, or in ſtormy weather, it rages with the greateſt impetuoſity; and that at other times it is more moderate, and twice a day quite calm.

Secondly, That the navigation in that part of the ſea is not abſolutely impeded by it, as at half flood a veſſel can ſafely go from *Moskoenas* to *Werroe* and *Roſt*, and at half ebb may ſafely return to *Moskoenas*; that the ſtrait betwixt *Moskoenas* and *Werroe* is twice a day quite ſmooth and navigable, for three quarters of an hour; and that the inhabitants of thoſe iſlands, accordingly, row in their boats to *Moskoe*, which lies in the middle of it, to look after the ſheep which feed on that iſland; and the fiſhermen ſound the bottom of it. After theſe intervals, the ſwiftneſs of the current gradually increaſes to its uſual boiſterous rapidity and violence. Sometimes the waves in this current are not larger than thoſe that are ſeen at ſea in a hard gale of wind; but when its agitations are at the height, ſhips that ſail on either ſide of it keep at the diſtance of two or three *Norway* miles; for otherwiſe they would be abſorbed by it, and entirely deſtroyed. It is deſcernible, indeed, at a greater diſtance at ſea and even within a quarter of a *Norway* mile of the continent; but this does not render the ſea unnavigable at ſuch a diſtance; for large veſſels and ſmall barks ſail very ſecurely within half a league of the iſland of *Weroe*.

I ſhall not engage in a particular diſquiſition into the cauſes of this Phenomenon, but it is probable, that it does not proceed from any cavern or abyſs under the water, but from its impetuous oppoſition to the current of the tides and the colliſion of the waves. A particular account of the *Moskoeſtrom* is to be found in CLAUSEN's and RAMUS's *Beſchreibungen von Norwegen*, or Deſcriptions of *Norway*, but the latter has little more than copied the former writer; in *Ramus*'s *Tract. Hiſtor. Geogr. quo* ULYSSEM & OUTINUM *unum eundumque eſſe oſtenditur*, p. 117—128; in JUSTINI BINGI *Diſſ. de gurgite Worvagico*, vulgo *Moeskoeſtrom. Hafniæ* 1741; in

Altonaiſchen Poſtreuter, or the *Altena* Gazette called the *Poſt-boy*, for the year 1751, p. 153, 155, 159, 167; in *Pontoppidan*'s Natural Hiſtory of *Norway*; and in the *Hamburg* Magazine, vol. vii. p. 203, taken from the Memoirs of the *Swediſh* Academy of Sciences. Theſe ſeveral accounts I have compared, and at the ſame time had before me the draught in *Ramus*'s Diſſertation, and another in manuſcript, which is ſtill larger.

III. The Prefecture of FINMARK has its particular Prefect, Regiſter, and inferior Judge, but the ſame Provincial Judge with the Prefecture of *Nordland*. The inhabitants of this Prefecture ſubſiſt chiefly by fiſhing; and the beſt ſalmon of any in *Norway* are caught in the river *Tana* in this Province. In ſummer-time the ſun continues above the Horizon of this country for ſome weeks. There are neither towns nor villages in *Finmark*, though the ſea-coaſt is pretty well inhabited.

The Prefecture is divided into

1. *Weſt-Finmark*, which makes one Provoſtſhip, including twelve churches and chapels, which are ſerved by five Preachers. The extremity of the iſland *Magaroe* in *Weſt-Finmark* is the moſt northern head of land in *Europe*, and is called *Nord-kap* or *North-Cape*.

2. *Eaſt-Finmark*, which makes but one Provoſtſhip, in which are nine churches and chapels, and three Preachers. The extreme point of the continent towards the North is called the Promontory of *Nordkyn*; being ten *Norway* miles diſtant from *Nord-kap*, but not ſo near the Pole as the latter.

The iſland of *Wardoe* lies about half a league to the Eaſt of the continent, and is three *Norway* miles in circumference. It has a ſecure harbour defended by the ſtrong caſtle of *Wardoe-huus*, which may juſtly be reckoned the moſt northern fortreſs in the whole world.

An ACCOUNT *of the* DANISH MISSION *eſtabliſhed in theſe Parts.*

THE ſides of the vaſt chain of mountains called *Kolen* and *Nord-Felſen*, which have been mentioned above, are inhabited by *Laplanders*, who are called by the *Norwegians Finlappen* or *Lapfinnen*; but *Lapland*, commonly ſo called, does not extend ſo far as theſe mountains.

Thoſe who live on the weſt ſide of theſe rocky mountains, belong to *Norway*, and thoſe that inhabit the eaſt ſide of them appertain to *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*. The *Lappers* in *Nordland* appear to be of quite another extraction, or, at leaſt, a different colony from the *Finners* and *Lappers* of *Finmark*. This diſtinction is not only obſervable by the difference of their dialect; but is ſtill more viſible with regard to their marriages. For, it ſeems, the *Finmark-Lappers* abominate all inter-marriages with their relations, even in the fourth degree; whereas the *Nordland-Lappers*, before the *Daniſh* Miſſion taught them better, made no ſcruple of intermixing even in the firſt degree of kindred, both in the aſcending and deſcending lines. The *Finners* and *Lappers* of *Finmark* live at the foot of the rocky mountains, where, like the *Norwegians*, they labour hard for a ſubſiſtence both by ſea and land, and conſequently are more ſettled than the wandering *Laplanders*. The *Nordland-Lappers*, on the contrary, live both winter and ſummer in thick foreſts on the mountains, roaming about from place to place as they can find paſture for their herds of Rein-deer, by which they generally ſubſiſt; ſome of them being poſſeſſed of a thouſand or fourteen hundred of thoſe animals. The Rein-deer not only yield their owners milk, butter, cheeſe, veniſon, and ſkins both for traffick and cloathing, but are alſo uſed to draw their ſledges. Theſe *Laplanders* come down but very ſeldom, and in ſmall numbers into the iſlands among the other *Norwegians*. Laſtly, thoſe *Lappers* who inhabit a part of the Prefecture of *Drontheim* particularly appropriated to them, called *Indberred*, are much more licentious and diſorderly in their manners than thoſe mentioned above; and many of them, eſpecially ſuch as have no Rein-deers, ſtroll about from village to village during the whole year, and ſubſiſt partly by begging, and partly by working with furriers. Others again ſpend the whole ſummer upon the mountains with their families; but, in winter, excepting a few left to take care of the Rein-deer, come down into the vallies, and encamp cloſe by the neareſt creeks, where they ſet up their huts; but, according to an ancient cuſtom, they often ſhift their habitation. Theſe creeks are very frequent in

in *Norway*; ſome of them running ten or fifteen *Norwegian* miles into the land, and in their courſe forming a great number of ſmall bays, the ſides of which are uſually inhabited. But thoſe only which are near the mountains are frequented, at certain times of the year, by the *Finners* and *Lappers* for the conveniency of fiſhing.

Before the eſtabliſhment of the *Daniſh* Miſſion, the religion of the *Lappers* and *Finners* was an abſurd mixture of Paganiſm and Chriſtianity. Before the Chriſtian religion was introduced into *Nordland*, if they were not entirely of the ſame religion with the ancient *Norwegian* pagans, they at leaſt agreed with them for the moſt part; though they had ſome ſuperſtitious peculiarities of their own. When the country came to be governed by Chriſtian Sovereigns, the *Lappers* and *Finners*, in order the better to conceal their idolatry and magic, ſet them off with ſome ceremonies borrowed from Chriſtianity, as it was then diſguiſed by Popery: Hence it comes to paſs that the ſign of the croſs is ſo commonly uſed among them. But when at length the unſullied light of the Goſpel penetrated the gloom in which theſe remote parts were involved, the inhabitants became ſtill more induſtrious to hide their idolatrous and pagan cuſtoms; and in externals, even to the uſe of the ſacraments, affected to conform entirely to Chriſtianity. This is the leſs to be wondered at, as the main ſcope and whole deſign of their religion is to procure temporal eaſe and advantage; for, before the Miſſion, they had but very faint and imperfect notions of the Immortality of the Soul, the Reſurrection, and a Future State.

In the year 1609, king *Chriſtian* IV. publiſhed an Ordinance, by which all *Finners* and *Lappers* convicted of magic or ſorcery, and refuſing to renounce it for the future, were condemned to die *; and others, ſuſpected on good grounds, were adjudged to be baniſhed. *Erick Bredal*, who was biſhop of *Drontheim* from the year 1642 to 1672, laboured with the utmoſt zeal and aſſiduity in converting the *Lappers* and *Finners* to Chriſtianity; and poſſibly it was his laudable example that incited his ſucceſſors to exert themſelves in the ſame pious undertaking: At leaſt from that time the *Drontheim* miniſters, whoſe pariſhes border on the mountains, have been obſerved to intereſt themſelves more in the converſion of the *Finners* and *Lappers* than they did before, though, as to eſſentials, little has been done. *Iſaac Olſon*, a poor perſon, from his ardent zeal for the converſion of the *Finners* and *Lappers*, went among them about the beginning of this century, and ſpent fourteen years in great poverty and diſtreſs; however, he

* This Monarch's zeal in converting theſe ſavages to Chriſtianity is to be commended; but the method he took to effect it was as weak as it was deteſtable. The abſurdities of Popery, which the Author juſtly contemns, and the delirious frenzy of the *Laplanders* in their magical incantations cannot be more contrary to reaſon, than to puniſh theſe poor ſavages with death for their ignorance and ſuperſtition. As for baniſhing theſe pretended criminals, it would be difficult to find a more deſolate region than that in which they at preſent wander.

had made ſome proficiency in his charitable undertaking, when he was met by the Miſſionaries on the mountains, and taken into their ſervice.

This Miſſion was firſt eſtabliſhed by the illuſtrious *Daniſh* Monarch *Frederik* IV. who in the ſpring of the year 1706, ſent *Paul Reſin*, a well qualified perſon, to travel in *Nordland*, *Finmark*, and *Lapland*; who, the year following, tranſmitted a full account of thoſe countries. Hereupon, Biſhop *Krog* received orders to exhort his inferior clergy to be aſſiſting in the propoſed Miſſion, and to ſelect able perſons to carry on ſo important an undertaking.

The *Collegium de curſu Evangelii promovendo* being eſtabliſhed at *Copenhagen* on the tenth of *December*, 1714, the king, in 1715, ſent the Miſſionaries proper inſtructions how to proceed in their expedition for the converſion of the *Finlappers* in *Finmark* and *Lapland*. The Miſſion, was extended alſo to thoſe in *Nordland* and the Prefecture of *Drontheim*, and conſequently in every part of that Dioceſe, in 1720. By virtue of this Ordinance, it was immediately determined to found a Seminary for Miſſionaries both in *Copenhagen* and *Drontheim*. Soon after, namely, in the year 1716, M. *Thomas von Weſten* was ſettled as a preacher in the *Drontheim* dialect, with the titles of *Lector Theologiæ* and *Notarius Capituli*; and this worthy Divine, in order to promote the further converſion of thoſe who were involved in the darkneſs of heatheniſm, chearfully undertook to go to *Wardoehuus* with two of his chaplains, or aſſiſtants, of approved abilities. The firſt ſcene of his labours was *Eaſt-Finmark*, where he was an inſtrument of bringing ſeven hundred and fifty perſons into the light of the Goſpel. In *Weſt-Finmark* his endeavours were crowned with ſtill greater ſucceſs, the number of converts there amounting to ſomething above a thouſand ſouls. And laſtly, he returned to *Drontheim* through the *Nordlands*, ſucceſsfully deſtroying the power of Satan by ſowing the ſeeds of the Goſpel wherever he came.

On the twentieth of *November* a royal edict was publiſhed enjoining that every mother-church in *Norway* ſhould contribute two rix-dollars, and every ſubordinate church one rix-dollar for promoting the Miſſion into *Finmark*. This contribution was to commence on the firſt of *May*, being the feaſt of St. *Philip* and St. *James*, in the year 1717, and to be continued every year on the ſame day. This was a conſtant fund for the ſalaries of the Miſſionaries and other neceſſary diſburſements, and received an augmentation from his Majeſty, who appropriated to that purpoſe ſome eccleſiaſtical tithes belonging to him in the Diſtrict of *Hegeland* in the *Nordlands*, ariſing from the benefices and churches of *Bronoe*, *Alſtaboug*, and *Rodoe*.

In 1717, the Seminary at *Drontheim* was quite ſettled; and in 1718, M. *von Weſten*, accompanied by four new Miſſionaries, undertook a ſecond journey to *Finmark*, where he had the ſatisfaction of finding that moſt of the *Finlappers*, both on the ſea-coaſt and on the mountains, continued firm

to

to thoſe good principles which he had inſtilled into them; and made ſeveral diſpoſitions for their further inſtruction.

In 1718, his Majeſty granted to the Miſſion the perpetuity, &c. of the revenues belonging to all the benefices in *Finmark*, for building and endowing churches, chapels, and ſchools.

In 1720, the Miſſion was alſo extended to *Nordland* and the Prefecture of *Drontheim*, and afterwards over that vaſt chain of rocky mountains called the *Kolen*; and many important meaſures were taken for the further promoting of this laudable undertaking.

In 1722, M. *von Weſten* drew up a complete plan of the *Nordland* Miſſion, which conſiſts of thirteen Diſtricts, and are all provided at preſent with churches, chapels, tabernacles, and ſchools, with a proper number of Miſſionaries and Schoolmaſters. The Miſſionary Diſtricts are as follows:

In FINMARK.

1. That of *Eaſt-Finmark*, with a Miſſionary for *Waranger*, *Tana*, and *Laxefiord*.
2. *Porſanger* in *Weſt-Finmark*.
3. *Alten*, alſo in *Weſt-Finmark*.

In the NORDLANDS.

4. That of *Skiervoe* in *Tromſoen*.
5. *Carlſoe*, likewiſe in *Tromſoen*.
6. *Sennien* and *Weſteraalen*.
7. *Lodingen*.
8. *Stegen* and *Bodoen*.
9. *Gilleskael*.
10. *Rahnen*.
11. *Wefsen*.

In the Prefecture of DRONTHEIM.

12. That of *Overhalden* in *Nummedalen*.
13. *Indberred*.

According to the abovementioned plan, the whole buſineſs and œconomy of this Miſſion has hitherto been conducted with the happieſt conſequences; of which a fuller and more accurate account has been given by *E. J. Jeſſen*, in the ſixth volume of the *Daniſchen Bibliothek*, or *Daniſh* Library, from page 601 to 688, at the cloſe of the year 1744.

THE NORWEGIAN ISLANDS.

BESIDES the continent which has been already deſcribed, ſeveral large and ſmall iſlands belong to the kingdom of *Norway*, which remain to be taken notice of. We ſhall begin with the ſmalleſt iſlands, as they lie neareſt to the main land. The *Orcades*, or *Orkneys*, and the *Hetland* or *Shetland* iſlands formerly belonged to *Norway:* But as they have ſince become a part of *Scotland*, we ſhall give an account of them in deſcribing that kingdom. The firſt in order of the *Norwegian* iſlands are

The Iſlands of FAROE,

In Latin *Faeroæ*, or *Inſulæ Faeroenſes*.

We have a map of theſe iſlands in *Debes*'s Deſcription of them.

They lie in the *North-Sea*, about a hundred and ſeventy leagues South of *Iceland*, but ſomething more to the Weſt of *Norway*; and are twenty-five in number, though but ſeventeen of them are inhabited. They extend about fifteen *Norway* miles in length, and ten in breadth; and lie betweeen 61°, 15′, and 62°, 10′ North latitude. When the day is at the greateſt length in theſe iſlands, the ſun riſes ſeven minutes after two, and ſets fifty-three minutes after nine. In the ſhorteſt day the ſun riſes here fifty-three minutes after nine and ſets ſeven minutes after two. The ſummers and winters are very moderate in this climate; and as the latter are neither long nor ſevere, the cattle feed here in the open air all the year round. However the dampneſs of the air makes the inhabitants ſubject to many diſtempers, as coughs, the ſcurvy, &c. Theſe iſlands are, indeed, ſo many ſolid rocks, but the ſurface of them is covered with earth or mould to the depth of an ell *; and this ſhallow ſoil is ſo fertile that one tun † of ſeed yields above twenty tuns of corn. The paſtures are excellent; eſpecially for ſheep, in the great flocks of which the wealth of the inhabitants conſiſts: But a hard winter is very deſtructive to theſe animals, as in general they run wild about the country. Here is a great plenty both of land

* The Author does not tell us how many feet this ell conſiſts of; probably it is equal to two feet.

† A Tun is eight Buſhels, or a Quarter of corn.

and

and water-fowl; and it is naturally to be ſuppoſed that the inhabitants do not want fiſh. The commodities vended here to foreigners are ſalted mutton, gooſe quills, feathers and *Eider* down; knit woollen waſtecoats, caps, and ſtockings; tallow, *&c.*

The iſlands of *Faroe* were diſcovered and peopled in the time of *Harald Haarfager* King of *Norway*; and one *Griener Camban* was the firſt perſon who built a houſe on one of theſe iſlands. The Chriſtian religion being quite eſtabliſhed in *Denmark* about the year of Chriſt 1000, the Goſpel was alſo propagated in the iſlands of *Faroe*, which were even thought worthy of a particular Biſhop; and the iſland of *Stromoe* was appointed for his place of reſidence. King *Chriſtian* III. having eſtabliſhed the doctrines of the Reformation in his dominions, nominated a Provoſt to ſuperintend the affairs of religion in theſe iſlands; who, to this day, is ſubordinate to the Biſhop of *Seeland*, and has under his juriſdiction ſeven Preachers or miniſters, who have the care of thirty-nine churches. Theſe iſlands together with *Iceland* are under one Governor; but they have their reſpective *Langman* or Provincial Judge, their *Land-vogt*, their inferior Judge, and King's Conſul who ſuperintends the trade carried on between the *Faroe* iſlands and *Copenhagen*.

As to their eccleſiaſtical ſtate, theſe iſlands are divided into ſeven pariſhes.

I. The pariſh of NORDROE; to which belong the following iſlands and churches:

1. *Videroe*, an iſland of a *Norway* mile and a half in length, and three quarters of a mile in breadth. On this iſland ſtands the mother-church, of which the ſix churches erected on the five following iſlands, are members.

2. *Fugloe*, which lies moſt to the North-Eaſt among this cluſter of iſlands. It is three-fourths of a *Norway* mile in length, and half a mile in breadth.

3. *Svino*, which is about a *Norway* mile and a half long, and three quarters of a mile broad.

4. *Bordoe*, which is two *Norway* miles in length, and has a very good harbour called *Klack*, on the North-weſt ſide. Between the firſt, third, and fourth of theſe iſlands is a ſmall *vortex* or whirlpool.

5. *Kunoe*, which is ſomething above one *Norway* mile in length, and half a mile in breadth.

6. *Kalſoe*, which is ſomething longer and broader than thoſe mentioned above, and has two churches.

II. The Pariſh of OESTEROE is an iſland about five *Norway* miles in length, and in ſome places not above half, but at moſt about one *Norway* mile and a half in breadth. Beſides the mother-church of *Nas*, it contains

ſix

ſix other churches which are members of it. This iſland has two harbours, namely, *Fuglefiord* and *Kongſhaven:* The latter is in *Skaal-bay.*

III. STROMOE is the largeſt of all theſe iſlands; being ſix *Norway* miles in length, and its greateſt breadth is about two. It is divided into two parts, or pariſhes.

1. The ſouth part contains

Thorſhaven, in Latin *Thori portus*, a ſmall town with a good harbour defended by a fort. This is the capital and common market of all the *Faroe* iſlands, and the reſidence of the *Land-vogt* and the King's Conſul. Here is a little ſchool founded by king *Chriſtian* III. and improved by *Chriſtian* IV. in the year 1647. On this iſland alſo ſtands the mother-church, of which the three following churches are members; namely, thoſe of

Kirkeboe, *Kalbach*, and *Nolſoe*. *Kirkeboe* was formerly the Biſhop's See.

Nolſoe is an iſland of that name about a *Norway* mile in length, and a mile and a half in breadth.

2. The north part contains the mother-church of *Kolde-fiord*, and four ſubordinate churches. In this part of the iſland are the harbours of *Weſtmanhavn*, and *Halderſvüg*.

IV. WAAGOE is an iſland about two *Norway* miles in length. The mother-church of *Midvaag* ſtands on a harbour of the ſame name; and three other churches dependent on it, near one of which is the harbour *Sorvaag*, ſtand on this iſland. A fourth church, that belongs to that of *Midvaag* or the mother-church ſtands on the iſland of *Myggenas*, which is three quarters of a *Norway* mile in length, and ſomething under half a mile in breadth.

V. SANDOE is an iſland about two *Norway* miles in length and one in breadth, and contains the mother-church of *Sand* and two others which are dependent on it. On the ſouth ſide of this iſland are the rocks of *Dalſnipen* and *Dalsflas*, and a dangerous current or whirlpool, called *Quernen*. Two other churches belong to that of *Sand* or the mother-church, which ſtand on the iſlands of *Skuoe* (which is about three quarters of a *Norway* mile long and a quarter of a mile broad) and *Store-Dimen*, which is almoſt round, and about one *Norway* mile in circumference. The latter is a rock which is ſo ſteep and ſurrounded with ſand-banks and a great depth of water on all ſides, that no place can be better fortified by Nature. The flocks of ſheep on this iſland run about wild, and lie in the open air all the year round. Not far from *Store* or *Great-Dimen* lies *Lille-Dimen*, or *Little-Dimen*. The ſoil of this iſland has a ſingular quality, namely, that white ſheep being brought to feed here, in a ſhort time turn black. The firſt appearances of this metamorphoſis are black ſpots on the legs, then on the back, which continue to ſpread till the whole fleece acquires a blackiſh hue.

VI. SUDEROE

VI. SUDEROE is five *Norway* miles in length and two in its greateſt breadth. It contains five churches, beſides the mother-church of *Qualboe*. The beſt harbour on this iſland is called *Lobroe*, being formed by the bay of *Vaagsfiord*. Near the ſouth extremity of the iſland, not far from *Sumboe*, is a more rapid and dangerous current or whirlpool than the *Muskoe-ſtrom* on the coaſt of *Norway*. In the middle of this *vortex* ſtands a rock called *Sumboe-Monk*. Near the village of *Famoen*, there is a mountain with a ſmall lake on the top of it, which daily ebbs and flows at the ſame time with the flux and reflux of the tides.

The Iſland of ICELAND *,

In Latin *Iſlandia*.

§. 1. NOT to mention the old maps of *Iceland*, a ſmall one is to be found in *Anderſon*'s Deſcription of that iſland; and a larger and better chart, but without the names of moſt places of note, nor even of a ſingle river, may be ſeen in *Horrebow*'s Deſcription of *Iceland*. This was drawn by ſome of the King's Engineers, and completed by Captain *Knopf* in the year 1734; but it was publiſhed by M. *Horrebow*, who reduced it to a ſmaller ſcale. According to *Horrebow*'s map this iſland lies four degrees more to the Eaſt than it was placed in other maps; but it ſeems a little improbable, that other geographers ſhould be ſo far miſtaken.

§. 2. *Iceland* lies in the great *Atlantic* Ocean, about a hundred and twenty *Norway* miles diſtant from *Drontheim*, and ſixty from *Greenland*.

§. 3. The pirate *Nadok*, who about the year 860 was wrecked on this iſland, firſt called it *Snaland*, *i. e.* 'Snow-land;' but, four years afterwards, one *Gardar* a *Swede* landing here, gave it the name of *Gardarſholm*. *Flocko*, a third adventurer, named it in his own language *Iſland*, *i. e.* 'Iceland,' from the great flakes of ice which he ſaw driven hither from the *Ice-Sea*. Some authors ſuppoſe *Iceland* to be the famous *Thule* of the Ancients.

§. 4. This iſland is about a hundred and twenty *Norway* miles in length, and fifty in its greateſt breadth; but it is hardly twelve *Norway* miles broad in the narroweſt parts.

§. 5. *Iceland* properly conſiſts of a prodigious range of mountains running from Eaſt to Weſt; on the declivities of which, and in the vallies

* Some *Engliſh* Geographers write *Iſland* inſtead of *Iceland*; but, I think, erroneouſly, as it confounds the proper name *Iceland* with the apellative Iſland.

lying

lying between them, the inhabitants live. Several of theſe high mountains, which are always covered with ice and ſnow, are called *Jockeler*. Here are alſo ſome mountains that conſiſt only of rocks and ſand, which are conſequently far from being fertile. But on other mountains ſituated near the coaſt there are levels or plains covered with verdure, of ſeveral miles in extent, which produce fine graſs. Though *Iceland* is, for the moſt part, a mountainous country, yet there are roads practicable for a horſe in every part of the iſland. Carriages were formerly uſed here, but are now laid aſide, as the trouble attending them was greater than the conveniency that could ariſe from them. Every year ſome hundreds of pack-horſes come over the mountains from the north, to the trading places in the ſouth parts of the iſland: Theſe are loaded with butter, woollen manufactures, *&c.* which they barter for other commodities.

§. 6. Earthquakes are not unfrequent in *Iceland*, eſpecially in the ſouth parts about *Rangarvalle* and *Arneſs-Syſſler*, ſometimes in *Gulbringe* and the adjacent Diſtricts where they have been attended with very fatal conſequences, and but ſeldom in the weſt and north parts of the iſland; by which it has been often laid waſte, and undergone great alterations. Theſe calamities happened chiefly in the years 1734, 1752, and 1755, and ſeveral ſpots are to be ſeen which were deſolated by fiery eruptions breaking out of the earth at thoſe times. Many of the *Jockeler* or ſnowy mountains have alſo gradually become *Volcano's*; and further alterations of the ſame nature may probably happen again in future times. Of theſe burning mountains *Heckla* is the beſt known to foreigners; and therefore I ſhall give ſome account of its eruptions in the ſequel. The *Jockeler* called *Kotligiau* and *Oeraiſe* (which laſt word in general ſignifies a waſte or deſert) have alſo of late years broke out in *Shafteſield-Syſſel*. The former had a ſecond eruption in the year 1721, and the latter in 1727; when theſe mountains, beſides an inundation of melted ſnow and ice which poured down the ſides of them, ejected a prodigious quantity of earth, ſand, and ſtone as far as the ſea. The huge mountain of *Krabla*, which lies in the *North-Syſſel*, on the ſeventeenth of *May* 1724, began with a terrible exploſion to eject ſmoke, fire, cinders and ſtone, which was followed by an ignited ſtream, like fuſed metal. This *Lava* continued ſlowly to flow on for a *Norway* mile and a half, as far as the lake of *Mynat* where it emptied itſelf; and did not ceaſe till the end of *September* 1729, when the eructations of the mountain ſubſided. This fiery eruption of *Krabla* was ſoon followed by that of the adjacent mountains of *Leirhniukur*, *Biornaflag*, and *Hitzool*. It is a common obſervation among the inhabitants, that when the ice and ſnow are ſo accumulated on one of theſe mountains which formerly ejected fire, as to ſtop the clefts and chaſms which were the ſpiracles or outlets to thoſe dreadful eructations, and prevent the evaporation of ſmoke, flame, *&c.* a new eruption is not far off. In 1756, the *Kotligiau* began to eject fire and ſmoke a third time.

§. 7. Springs which are naturally warm, and even hot ſprings are frequently to be met with in *Iceland*; and likewiſe waters that have a mineral taſte. About mount *Hecla* are ſeveral ſmall baſons of warm water, which ſometimes emit a copious ſteam; but at other times this vapour is not ſo viſible. Theſe hot ſprings in the language of the country are called *Hver*, and are of three ſorts. Some of them are little more than tepid, ſo that a perſon may hold his hand in the water without any inconveniency: Others are ſo hot as to riſe in ſmall bubbles like ſimmering water; but in others the ebullition is ſo ſtrong as to force the water up to a conſiderable height. The laſt ſort are obſerved to be either periodical or variable in their ebullitions. Of theſe I ſhall give a more particular account in the ſequel. If a large ſtone be thrown into one of theſe ſprings it is always ejected by the return of the ebullition. The inhabitants who live near them boil their victuals only by hanging a pot, in which the fleſh is put in cold water, in theſe hot ſprings: They alſo bathe in the rivulets that run from them, which by degrees become lukewarm, or are cooled by rivulets of cold water. If the cows drink the water of theſe ſprings, they are ſaid to yield more milk than ordinary; and it is likewiſe accounted very wholſome for the human ſpecies to drink. The *Hver* or hot ſpring near *Kryſevig* emits a very ſtrong and fetid ſulphureous vapour; and ſome of theſe ſprings are ſo intenſely hot as to calcine bones.

§. 8. In the rocks of *Iceland* cryſtals are ſometimes found, and many of them repreſent an object viewed through them double; but, properly ſpeaking, theſe are only a ſpecies of *Talc*. There are alſo evident ſigns that the mountains of *Iceland* contain iron, copper, and even ſilver ore. Near theſe are found two kinds of agate, which, when lighted, burns like a candle; a ſpecies of Bitumen which is black, ſhining, and pretty hard; and another ſort of black earth which is harder, and breaks into thin diaphanous *laminæ*; this is not inflamable, but vitrifies in the fire.

In *Norder-Syſſel*, which lies in the Government of *Huuſevig*, and in *Gulbringe-Syſſel* near *Kryſevig*, ſulphur is dug out of the ground, and in no other part of the iſland. The ſoil there is very warm and internally hot, and, in ſome places, yields ſulphur in great quantities; but the ſulphur trade is now diſcontinued.

Salt ſprings are not known here; however, ſalt has been found at the root of the *Volcano's* or burning mountains. That ſalt might be made here by art is unqueſtionable, from the ſucceſs of former trials.

Woods are not frequent on this iſland, though here and there a coppice, or ſmall wood, is to be ſeen: But it is remarkable, that great numbers of ſmall and large trees are driven hither by the ſea, eſpecially on the north coaſt, where, for the moſt part, they lie and rot; the inhabitants having no ſhipping by which they can export, or convey this wood for ſale among their countrymen. A great quantity of ſhrubs on which grow all

lying between them, the inhabitants live. Several of theſe high mountains, which are always covered with ice and ſnow, are called *Jockeler*. Here are alſo ſome mountains that conſiſt only of rocks and ſand, which are conſequently far from being fertile. But on other mountains ſituated near the coaſt there are levels or plains covered with verdure, of ſeveral miles in extent, which produce fine graſs. Though *Iceland* is, for the moſt part, a mountainous country, yet there are roads practicable for a horſe in every part of the iſland. Carriages were formerly uſed here, but are now laid aſide, as the trouble attending them was greater than the conveniency that could ariſe from them. Every year ſome hundreds of pack-horſes come over the mountains from the north, to the trading places in the ſouth parts of the iſland: Theſe are loaded with butter, woollen manufactures, *&c.* which they barter for other commodities.

§. 6. Earthquakes are not unfrequent in *Iceland*, eſpecially in the ſouth parts about *Rangarvalle* and *Arneſs-Syſſler*, ſometimes in *Gulbringe* and the adjacent Diſtricts where they have been attended with very fatal conſequences, and but ſeldom in the weſt and north parts of the iſland; by which it has been often laid waſte, and undergone great alterations. Theſe calamities happened chiefly in the years 1734, 1752, and 1755, and ſeveral ſpots are to be ſeen which were deſolated by fiery eruptions breaking out of the earth at thoſe times. Many of the *Jockeler* or ſnowy mountains have alſo gradually become *Volcano's*; and further alterations of the ſame nature may probably happen again in future times. Of theſe burning mountains *Heckla* is the beſt known to foreigners; and therefore I ſhall give ſome account of its eruptions in the ſequel. The *Jockeler* called *Kotligiau* and *Oeraife* (which laſt word in general ſignifies a waſte or deſert) have alſo of late years broke out in *Shafteſield-Syſſel*. The former had a ſecond eruption in the year 1721, and the latter in 1727; when theſe mountains, beſides an inundation of melted ſnow and ice which poured down the ſides of them, ejected a prodigious quantity of earth, ſand, and ſtone as far as the ſea. The huge mountain of *Krabla*, which lies in the *North-Syſſel*, on the ſeventeenth of *May* 1724, began with a terrible exploſion to eject ſmoke, fire, cinders and ſtone, which was followed by an ignited ſtream, like fuſed metal. This *Lava* continued ſlowly to flow on for a *Norway* mile and a half, as far as the lake of *Mynat* where it emptied itſelf; and did not ceaſe till the end of *September* 1729, when the eructations of the mountain ſubſided. This fiery eruption of *Krabla* was ſoon followed by that of the adjacent mountains of *Leirhniukur*, *Biornaflag*, and *Hitzool*. It is a common obſervation among the inhabitants, that when the ice and ſnow are ſo accumulated on one of theſe mountains which formerly ejected fire, as to ſtop the clefts and chaſms which were the ſpiracles or outlets to thoſe dreadful eructations, and prevent the evaporation of ſmoke, flame, *&c.* a new eruption is not far off. In 1756, the *Kotligiau* began to eject fire and ſmoke a third time.

§. 7. Springs which are naturally warm, and even hot ſprings are frequently to be met with in *Iceland*; and likewiſe waters that have a mineral taſte. About mount *Hecla* are ſeveral ſmall baſons of warm water, which ſometimes emit a copious ſteam; but at other times this vapour is not ſo viſible. Theſe hot ſprings in the language of the country are called *Hver*, and are of three ſorts. Some of them are little more than tepid, ſo that a perſon may hold his hand in the water without any inconveniency: Others are ſo hot as to riſe in ſmall bubbles like ſimmering water; but in others the ebullition is ſo ſtrong as to force the water up to a conſiderable height. The laſt ſort are obſerved to be either periodical or variable in their ebullitions. Of theſe I ſhall give a more particular account in the ſequel. If a large ſtone be thrown into one of theſe ſprings it is always ejected by the return of the ebullition. The inhabitants who live near them boil their victuals only by hanging a pot, in which the fleſh is put in cold water, in theſe hot ſprings: They alſo bathe in the rivulets that run from them, which by degrees become lukewarm, or are cooled by rivulets of cold water. If the cows drink the water of theſe ſprings, they are ſaid to yield more milk than ordinary; and it is likewiſe accounted very wholſome for the human ſpecies to drink. The *Hver* or hot ſpring near *Kryſevig* emits a very ſtrong and fetid ſulphureous vapour; and ſome of theſe ſprings are ſo intenſely hot as to calcine bones.

§. 8. In the rocks of *Iceland* cryſtals are ſometimes found, and many of them repreſent an object viewed through them double; but, properly ſpeaking, theſe are only a ſpecies of *Talc*. There are alſo evident ſigns that the mountains of *Iceland* contain iron, copper, and even ſilver ore. Near theſe are found two kinds of agate, which, when lighted, burns like a candle; a ſpecies of Bitumen which is black, ſhining, and pretty hard; and another ſort of black earth which is harder, and breaks into thin diaphanous *laminæ*; this is not inflamable, but vitrifies in the fire.

In *Norder-Syſſel*, which lies in the Government of *Huuſevig*, and in *Gulbringe-Syſſel* near *Kryſevig*, ſulphur is dug out of the ground, and in no other part of the iſland. The ſoil there is very warm and internally hot, and, in ſome places, yields ſulphur in great quantities; but the ſulphur trade is now diſcontinued.

Salt ſprings are not known here; however, ſalt has been found at the root of the *Volcano's* or burning mountains. That ſalt might be made here by art is unqueſtionable, from the ſucceſs of former trials.

Woods are not frequent on this iſland, though here and there a coppice, or ſmall wood, is to be ſeen: But it is remarkable, that great numbers of ſmall and large trees are driven hither by the ſea, eſpecially on the north coaſt, where, for the moſt part, they lie and rot; the inhabitants having no ſhipping by which they can export, or convey this wood for ſale among their countrymen. A great quantity of ſhrubs on which grow all

ſorts of berries, as juniper-berries, black-berries, &c. are burnt every year for charcoal, which the natives uſe in their forges. The common fuel of the country is turf, ſome of which has a very ſtrong ſulphureous ſmell; and even fiſh-bones are burnt in ſome parts of this iſland.

Very good graſs not only grows in the vallies which border on the lakes and rivers, but alſo in the hollows betwixt the mountains, and ſometimes even on the ſummits of the latter. The fineſt paſtures are in the northern parts of the iſland, where the graſs ſprings up very faſt, and to a great height. The cattle are generally driven amongſt the mountains to graze, where they find good paſture; but the graſs that grows near the habitations of the *Icelanders* is reſerved for winter-fodder.

Here is alſo a plentiful variety of ſalubrious and medicinal herbs, as ſcurvy-graſs, ſampire, angelica, which is much uſed by the inhabitants, and *Berg-graſs*, in Latin *Muſcus catharticus Iſlandiæ*. The laſt is a kind of odoriferous moſs and is very nouriſhing; and great quantities of it are laid up by the inhabitants for occaſional uſe. Hitherto very few eſculent vegetables have been cultivated in *Iceland*; but as all kind of culinary herbs thrive in the gardens at *Beſſeſtader* and thoſe of the epiſcopal palaces, it is probable, that with proper culture, they would alſo grow in moſt parts of the iſland.

The *Icelanders* are entirely diſcouraged from purſuing agriculture, as they have not yet been able to bring any corn to maturity in this ſoil; and yet ſome parts of the iſland is known by ſeveral evident traces to have been cultivated in former times.

Bread is but little known here among the commonalty, who make ſhift to live on dried fiſh and fleſh, without it. For though a large quantity of meal and bread is imported every year into the harbours of *Iceland*, the lower claſs of people can purchaſe but little or none of it; the price being adapted only to the more wealthy ſort. The *Icelanders*, however, make a kind of meal and bread of a ſort of wild barley, which grows chiefly in *Skaftefield-Syſſel*; and in times of ſcarcity they have recourſe to a certain ſea-vegetable, called in the *Iceland* language *Saul* or *Sol*, and in Latin *Alga marina Saccarifera*, which is dried before the fire, and ſold at half the price of dried fiſh. The cattle are obſerved to feed on this ſea-weed at low-water, and to prefer it to any other marine vegetables.

§. 9. Bears are frequently driven on this iſland along with the large flakes of ice from *Greenland*. But the inhabitants are ſo vigilant and dextrous in deſtroying them, that the only ſpecies of wild beaſts to be ſeen in *Iceland* are foxes, which are either brown or white.

The horſes here, as in all other northern Countries, are ſmall, but ſtrong and full of mettle, and, excepting thoſe that are broke for the ſaddle, lie in the open air all the year round. In winter they ſubſiſt only on what fodder they can ſcrape from under the ice and ſnow. Such horſes as the owners

owners have no immediate occaſion for are turned out among the mountains, where they go in queſt of them when they are wanted; and every one knows his own horſes by certain marks.

Great numbers of ſheep are to be ſeen in *Iceland*; and in thoſe parts where graziery is the chief occupation of the inhabitants, it is not uncommon for a man to be maſter of a flock of three, four, or five hundred ſheep. In the winter ſeaſon they drive their flocks to ſhelter at night; and, in very ſevere weather, they keep them in the cotes alſo in the day-time. The grazing countries lie moſtly in the northern and eaſtern parts of the iſland. The inhabitants of the ſouthern are moſtly employed in fiſhing, aud leave their flocks abroad both ſummer and winter. Nature ſeems to have provided a ſhelter for the ſheep in thoſe parts; there being large caves in the earth, into which theſe animals are ſure to retire in ſevere weather. In winter, when the ſnow is not very deep, and the weather inclinable to be fair and mild, the ſheep are turned out to pick out what they can find under the ſnow. If theſe animals happen to be ſurpriſed at ſuch times by a great ſnow, they immediately form themſelves into a cloſe, compact body, by laying their heads together in the centre. In this poſture they are quite covered with the ſnow, and ſometimes are ſo benummed with cold, as not to be able to help themſelves, till their owner happens to find them, and clears their way out. This is often a work of ſome days; and many times the weight of the incumbent ſnow is ſo great, that the ſheep are cruſhed to pieces by it before they can be relieved. In the extremity of hunger, when they paſs ſome days in ſuch a wretched ſituation, theſe animals have been known to eat one another's wool; but this is apt to diſorder them very much. On theſe accounts, upon any apprehenſions of bad weather, the inhabitants carefully keep their flocks at home. The wool on the ſurface of the fleeces is very coarſe, but that which grows near the bodies of the *Iceland* ſheep is ſomething finer. Thoſe writers are miſtaken who tell us that all the ſheep in this iſland have horns: Some few of them, indeed, have been ſeen with five, and ſome with four horns; but they commonly have but two as in other countries. As for goats, here is no great number of them. Even ſome of the *Iceland* oxen and cows have no horns; and, in the ſouthern parts, they are fed with fiſh-bones and the water in which the fiſh was boiled. Here are no hogs. As for domeſtic animals, a ſufficient number of dogs, and but very few cats are to be ſeen on this iſland.

§. 10. The keeping of poultry and other tame fowl is ſo expenſive, that very few of them are ſeen here: But plenty of ſwans, wild geeſe and ducks, among which may alſo be reckoned the *Eider* (the eggs and feathers of which are ſo much valued) ſnipes, woodcocks, *&c.* are to be met with in *Iceland*. At certain times an incredible number of eggs of ſea-fowl, which the inhabitants are very fond of, are found along the ſea-coaſt. The birds

of prey on this iſland are the eagle, hawk, raven, and falcon. Some of the laſt are entirely white; others are partly of that colour; and others are brown. Theſe are accounted the beſt falcons in *Europe*. In every Diſtrict there are certain falconers, who alone are impowered to catch falcons. Theſe they carry to the King's falconry at *Beſſeſtader*, where the King's falconer, who viſits that place every year, picks out the beſt. Then the Governor of *Iceland* pays the falconers fifteen rix-dollars for every white falcon, ten for one that it is partly white, and ſeven for a brown falcon. Beſides this, the falconers receive a gratuity of five or ſix rix-dollars when they firſt bring them in.

§. 11. The rivers, lakes, and bays, with the other parts of the ſea, ſupply the *Icelanders* with prodigious quantities of various kinds of fiſh.

§. 12. They have always a ſhort ſpring and autumn in *Iceland* before and after the ſummer ſeaſon. The cold is ſevere in winter, and the heat is very intenſe in ſummer; but neither of them is inſupportable. During the ſhorteſt days in winter, the ſun in the north part of the iſland is ſcarce viſible for an hour above the Horizon; but in the ſouth part, it is ſeen for above three hours. In the middle of ſummer the ſun is not much above three hours below the Horizon; ſo that the nights, if I may call them ſo, are very bright and luminous. The air in this climate is ſalubrious, and agrees very well with foreigners as well as the natives.

§. 13. The *Icelanders* are naturally of a robuſt and vigorous conſtitution; but are debilitated by the continual fatigues and hardſhips they undergo at ſea in their fiſheries; ſo that about the fiftieth year of their age they are generally afflicted with various diſtempers, eſpecially thoſe of the breaſt and lungs: Hence very few of them reach to an advanced age. The *Iceland* women are not inferior to the men either in hardineſs or ſtrength *. In caſe of ſickneſs the *Icelanders* entirely reſign themſelves to Nature and Providence; for there is not one phyſician or ſurgeon on the whole iſland. There are, indeed, ſome few perſons who keep medicines by them, with which they are ſupplied from *Denmark*; but they are not very well acquainted with the virtues of thoſe medicines, or the method of adminiſtering them.

The uſual food of the inhabitants of this iſland is freſh and dried fiſh, milk, oatmeal, and fleſh; but they chiefly live on dried fiſh dreſſed with butter. It is remarkable that they eat all their proviſions without any ſalt. Their common drink is milk, which they drink by itſelf when ſweet; but mix water with it when it turns ſour. They are very fond of beer and ſpiri-

* The author ſays that the women are not ſo robuſt and ſtrong as the men; but this is no more than what is obſerved in every part of the world, ſo that the obſervation is very trifling and impertinent. I therefore look upon it as an error of the preſs, and have rendered the ſentence in a different ſenſe.

tuous

tuous liquors; and the moſt wealthy among the inhabitants ſometimes purchaſe red and white *French* wines.

The *Icelanders* wiſely content themſelves with what apparel their own country furniſhes. The cloth which they wear is called *Wadmal*; beſides which, they alſo uſe a garment of coarſe linen. Some of the gentry affect to appear in cloths and ſtuffs made in *Denmark*, though a ſtuff-manufactory has been lately ſet up at *Beſſeſtader*. Their fiſhing dreſs is made with untanned leather, which is kept pliable by being rubbed with fiſhes livers.

As they are obliged to buy their timber of the Company eſtabliſhed here *, they build their houſes as cheap as poſſible; ſo that they are neither very commodious nor hanſome.

The occupations of the *Icelanders* are chiefly fiſhing and grazing; and when they are not engaged in either of theſe, eſpecially in winter, the men, women, and children are employed in knitting woollen waiſtcoats, ſtockings, gloves, *&c.* and in weaving *Wad-mal*, or *Iceland* cloth. Their looms, indeed, are but very indifferent, but thoſe made in *Denmark* now begin to be introduced among them.

§. 14. As to the commerce of *Iceland*, the following particulars are to be obſerved. In former times the *Hamburgers*, *Bremeners*, and the *Dutch* uſed to come hither to traffick. King *Chriſtian* IV. deprived foreigners of this advantage in the year 1602, and erected at *Copenhagen* a Company for the *Iceland* trade, on which he conferred many advantageous privileges; but in 1662, this Company was diſſolved. Some time after a ſociety divided the iſland into four parts and farmed it; and ſince the year 1684, the *Iceland* trade has continued on that footing. In 1733, the Company that farms it was eſtabliſhed by a royal charter and ſtiled the *Iceland* Company of *Copenhagen*. This Company every year ſends twenty-three ſhips with their factors and ſub-factors to all the ports on the iſland. The ports or harbours are divided into Fiſh and Fleſh-Ports: The former are fourteen in number and lie on the ſouth-weſt ſide, and the latter are but eight and lie on the north and eaſt parts of the iſland. Here are alſo ſome ports, from which both fiſh and fleſh are exported. The *Icelanders* either barter their commodities for thoſe of *Denmark*, or receive ready money for them in *Daniſh* crowns and dollars in proportion to the *Land-tax*, or rate ſettled by the King's Ordinance. The cattle are delivered to the factors at the Fleſh-Ports about the latter end of *Auguſt*; and in the Fiſh-Ports the factors purchaſe all the ſound dried cod and ling, and train-oil, according to the fixt rate.

Accompts are kept here, and all calculations made by *Fiſhes*: A *Fiſh* (which is properly two pounds of fiſh) being a *Lub-Schelling*; and conſequently forty-eight *Fiſhes* are equal to a Specie-Dollar †, and thirty to a

* See Introduction to *Denmark*, p. 75.

† A Specie-Dollar is about four ſhillings and ſix-pence ſterling.

Daniſh

Daniſh Crown. *Daniſh* marks at eight *Lub-Schellings* are ſometimes current here, and alſo, though ſeldom, four *Lub-Schelling* pieces. A quarter of a Specie-Dollar, which is equal to twelve *Fiſhes*, is the ſmalleſt piece of money current in *Iceland*; ſo that any balance under this not being payable in money, is made up in fiſh or tobacco, the latter being ſold at the rate of an ell for a *Fiſh*.

The exports from hence are chiefly dried fiſh, ſalted mutton; a good deal of beef, butter, and train-oil; a great quantity of tallow; coarſe and fine jackets of *Wadmal*, woollen ſtockings and gloves, red wool, ſheep-ſkins and lamb-ſkins, fox-tails of ſeveral colours, feathers, and quills. The imports to *Iceland* are chiefly iron, horſeſhoes, timber, meal, bread, brandy, wine, tobacco, coarſe linen, a few ſilk ſtuffs, and domeſtic utenſils. In the year 1751, in order to enable the *Icelanders* to improve their manufactures and to promote trade and commerce, king *Frederick* V. beſtowed on them a bounty of 10,000 rix-dollars, beſides a loan of 5000 more.

§. 15. That the *Icelanders* are not wanting in mental endowments, evidently appears from the ſeveral learned men and ingenious artiſts that this iſland has produced. Several of their authors have written very elegant and accurate diſſertations relating to the Northern Hiſtory, which contribute much towards the clearing up the hiſtory of *Denmark* and *Norway*. Among theſe, the celebrated hiſtorian *Thormodus Torfaus*, a native of *Iceland*, has by means of ſome ancient *Iceland* chronicles, thrown a great light upon the Northern Hiſtory. The *Icelanders* began to cultivate the ſtudy of Letters ſo early as the year 1130, which was about two hundred and forty years after that iſland was firſt inhabited by a colony from *Nordland*. The moſt ancient among them, whoſe works are extant, are the celebrated *Samund Frode* and *Are Frode*. *John Mathiaſon*, a native of *Sweden*, was the firſt who ſet up a printing-preſs in this iſland in the year 1530, or 1531. In every epiſcopal See there is a public *Latin* ſchool erected as a ſeminary for the clergy; and ſome of the ſcholars, after having gone through all the claſſes, are ſent to the Univerſity at *Copenhagen*.

Th *Iceland* dialect is the ſame with the old *Norwegian* language, though at preſent it is not quite pure and uncorrupted; however, what they ſtill retain of the ancient *Norwegian* language is of great uſe to inveſtigate the etymologies, *&c.* of the ſeveral Northern dialects.

16. *Lutherenism* is the only religion tolerated in *Iceland*. The churches of the Eaſt, South, and Weſt-Quarters are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Skaalkolt*; and thoſe of the North-Quarter are ſubject to the Biſhop of *Hoolum*. The *Iceland* Biſhops cultivate the eſtates annexed to their reſpective Sees; and the annual produce of them is about two thouſand rix-dollars. Out of theſe revenues a ſtated ſum is appropriated to the Rectors and aſſiſtants of the ſchool, and the Preachers or Miniſters of the cathedral. A certain number of ſcholars are lodged and cloathed, and the Biſhop's

ſhop's palace, &c. muſt alſo be kept in good repair out of the ſame revenues. After theſe ſeveral deductions the remainder is the Biſhop's income. Some of the Preachers or Miniſters are liberally provided for, others but indifferently, and many of them very ſcantily. Among the latter the certain income of not a few is but four rix-dollars a year *.

§. 17. As to the hiſtorical particulars relating to this iſland; it owes its being firſt peopled to the tyranny of *Harald Pulchricomus* King of *Norway*, which occaſioned ſeveral perſons of note to quit *Norway* and ſeek for a new habitation. Among theſe were particularly two *Nordland* Gentlemen, called *Ingulf* and *Hiorleif*, who firſt landed on this iſland in the year 870; and about four years after returned and ſettled here, together with their families and dependants: And the places where theſe two families fixed their habitations ſtill retain the names of their firſt proprietors. *Ingulf* found the country quite a deſolate waſte, and full of thick woods and foreſts, but not without ſome marks of its having been frequented by men before that time.

About the middle of the tenth century, or very ſoon after that period, the light of the Goſpel began to dawn on this iſland; but it was not till half a century after, namely, the year 1000, that proper meaſures were taken here for the public eſtabliſhment of the Chriſtian Religion. In the year 1057, the cathedral church at *Skaalholt* was built by *Iſlef*, the firſt Biſhop of that See, together with a public ſchool. In the year 1106, *Hoolum* was erected into an epiſcopal See, where a cathedral and a ſchool were alſo built. The *Icelanders* had been under an Ariſtocratical government for about three hundred and eighty-ſeven years; but in the year 1261, they voluntarily made an offer of their iſland to *Haquin* king of *Norway*, and continued loyal ſubjects to the kings of *Norway* his ſucceſſors, till, in 1387, *Iceland*, as a part of *Norway*, devolved to the Crown of *Denmark*, to which they have remained in ſubjection to this day. The Reformation occaſioned many tumults and inſurrections from the year 1539 to the year 1551, when it was happily eſtabliſhed in *Iceland*. In the year 1627, ſome *Algerine* pirates ſurpriſed the iſland, and, after having committed the moſt ſhocking cruelties and barbarities, carried off two hundred and forty-two men as ſlaves. In 1687, other *Turkiſh* pirates alſo landed here, and committed great ravages and devaſtations.

§. 18. The ſecular government of this iſland is lodged in the *Stiftamtman* or General-Governor of *Iceland* and *Faroe*, who uſually reſides at *Copenhagen*, and deputes under him an *Amtman* or Prefect who lives in the King's palace at *Beſſeſtader*. Here is alſo a *Land-vogt* or Collector on this iſland who levies all the King's revenues, for which he paſſes his accounts with the *Rent-Chamber* or Treaſury. The *Landvogt* formerly uſed to live

* About eighteen ſhillings ſterling.

in

in apartments at *Beſſeſtader*; but he now reſides in *Widoe-kloſter*. The revenues of *Iceland* ariſe,

1. From the farms of the ports or harbours, which amount yearly to ſomething above 16,000 rix-dollars.

2. From the taxes and tithes, which according to the cuſtom of the country are accounted for in *Fiſhes*, and farmed to private perſons.

3. From the farmers of the ſequeſtered convents and crown-lands.

4. From the King's boats.

5. The hundred and thirty-eight ells and a half of *Wadmal* or *Iceland* cloth, and eight hundred and ninety-two pairs of ſtockings to be delivered in annually by every *Syſſel*; and likewiſe a hundred and ſeventy-two pounds of fiſh payable by ſome *Syſſels*.

Here are two *Laug-manner* or Superior Judges, one of whom preſides over the South and Eaſt-Quarters, and the other over the North and Weſt-Quarters of this iſland. Each of theſe has uſually under him a deputy *Laugmann* or inferior judge. Laſtly, here are one-and-twenty *Syſſelmanner*, who are a kind of inferior officers like the *Hardes-vogtey* in *Denmark*, and alſo levy the King's revenues as they are farmed in their reſpective *Syſſels*, or Diſtricts. There are eighteen *Syſſels* or Diſtricts in *Iceland*; and as the *Syſſels* of *Mule* and *Skaftefield* in the eaſtern part of the iſland are larger than the reſt, each of them has two *Syſſelmanner:* There is alſo another *Syſſelmann* on the *Weſtman* iſlands. Every *Syſſelmann* holds ſeveral Courts of Judicature, to which belong certain Dictricts. An appeal lies from theſe to the *Laugericht* or Provincial Court, which is held yearly at *Oexeraae*, and begins on the eighth day of *July*. Every *Laugman* or Superior Judge determines the cauſes belonging to his Diſtrict, and has eight *Laugerichtmanner* for his aſſiſtants. The Supreme Court on this iſland is alſo held at the ſame time and place, in which the *Amtmann* or Prefect aſſiſted by twelve *Laugemanner* ſits as preſident. If the cauſe amount to a certain ſum ſpecified by the laws of *Norway*, an appeal lies from this Court to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*.

§. 19. For the regulation of eccleſiaſtical affairs, here is, firſt, the Provoſt-Court, conſiſting of the Provoſt and two aſſiſtants. The next is the Conſiſtory, which is alſo held at *Oexeraae* for the Dioceſe of *Skaalholt* at the ſame time with the Civil Courts. In this Conſiſtory the *Amtmann* or Prefect as the repreſentative of the *Stift-amtmann* or Governor, ſits as preſident; the Provoſts and Miniſters, and even the Biſhop himſelf, being only aſſiſtants. In the Dioceſe of *Hoolum* the Conſiſtory is held in autumn at a ſeat called *Flige Myre*, where the *Amtmann* or Prefect deputes another to repreſent him as Preſident. From the Conſiſtory an appeal lies to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*.

§. 20. The capital puniſhments inflicted on male criminals in *Iceland* are, beheading with an ax, and hanging to a wooden beam fixt in the cleft of

of a rock; but females who have forfeited their life to juſtice are firſt put in a ſack and then drowned.

§. 21. Before I proceed to give a particular account of the four Quarters and remarkable places of this iſland, I ſhall add the following general obſervations concerning the nature of the ſoil, and the inhabitants. The middle of the iſland is not inhabited; the people living in the vallies, which lead to the lakes and extend themſelves on each ſide of them. Theſe vallies near the mountains are four or five *Norway* miles broad; and are properly the *Syſſels*, to which other ſmall vallies among the mountains where good paſtures are found, alſo belong. From the mountains ſeveral brooks and rivers, in which are excellent fiſh, run into the vallies.

Of theſe rivers the moſt remarkable in the North-Quarter are

The *Hruuta-fiardar-aa*, which runs into the ſea in the North-Quarter, and ſeparates it from the Weſt-Quarter.

The *Blandaa* in *Hunavatns-Syſſel*, which is one of the milky rivers, as they are called from the chalky particles with which they are impregnated.

Hierads-Votn in *Skagafiardar-Syſſel:* This is the largeſt river in this Quarter, and petrefies wood when ſteeped in it for ſome time.

The *Jokulſaa i Axarfirdi.*

The *Laxaa.*

The *Skiaalfandafliot*, and

The *Hinooſt-aa.*

In the Eaſt-Quarter are the following rivers.

The *Lagarfliort*, a large river which empties itſelf into the ſea in this Quarter. This river is much talked of for a prodigious ſea-ſerpent, of which, according to many fabulous ſtories, it was formerly the haunt.

The *Jokulſaa a Breydamerkur-ſande*, over which there is a bridge of a prodigious height, built from one rock to another.

The *Jokulſaa* in *Loone.*

The *Hornafiardarfliot*, which at the mouth of it is a *Norway* mile and a half in breadth, and *Jokulſaa a Soolheimaſande*, which divides the Eaſt from the South-Quarter. Theſe rivers emit fetid ſulphureous vapours, which may be ſmelled at the diſtance of a *Norway* mile.

In the South-Quarter the following rivers empty themſelves into the ſea.

The *Markfliot.*

The *Thioorſaa.*

Two rivers called *Huitaa*, which are both milky rivers, as they are called.

In the Weſt-Quarter the only river of note is the *Kalldaloon.*

The number of inhabitants in *Iceland* is, according to an authentic computation, about fifty thouſand. There are no towns, properly ſo called, on

this iſland: However, the houſes of the *Iceland* Company at the two-and-twenty ports or harbours, and of which there are three or four at each harbour, are dignified with the appellation of towns; though they are only *Trading Places*, by which name we ſhall call them in the ſequel. There are even no villages in *Iceland*; all the houſes being built ſeparate from each other. But, as many of theſe are compoſed of twenty, thirty, or ſometimes fifty ſmall dwellings, they have ſomething of the appearance of villages. The whole iſland is, in every Part or Quarter, ſubdivided into pariſhes.

§. 22. *Iceland*, according to the general diviſion, conſiſts of four Quarters, which derive their names from the four Cardinal points towards which they lie: This diviſion is cauſed by ſo many ridges of mountains that ſepapate the Quarters from each other. The North-Quarter conſtitutes the Dioceſe of *Hoolum*, which contains a hundred and forty churches. The other three Quarters are included in the Dioceſe of *Skaalholt*, to which belong a hundred and ſixty-three churches.

I. NORDLENDINGA-FIORDUNG *, [*Nordre-Fierding*,] or the NORTH-QUARTER, conſiſts of four *Syſſels*, or Diſtricts, which are,

1. *Hunavatns-Syſſel*, containing

Skageſtrand, a Trading Place, and Fleſh-Port; and

Thijng-eyar [*Thing-eyre*] a ſecularized convent.

2. *Hegranes* or *Skagafiardar-Syſſel*, in which are the following places of note.

Skaginn, [*Skaagen*,] a noted cape, or promontory.

Skagafiordur or *Hofs-os*, a Trading Place, and Fleſh-Port.

Holum or *Hoolum*, [*Hoolar*] an epiſcopal See, with a cathedral. A ſchool is opened here during the winter ſeaſon, which was founded by *Jonas Augmundſon*, the firſt Biſhop of this See, about the year 1106, and ſince improved by king *Chriſtian* III. Here is alſo a printing-houſe, in which ſeveral good books have been printed.

Reineneſzſtadir, [*Reineſtad*] a ſequeſtered Convent, which was built about the year 1298.

Hofs-Jokul, a *Jockeler*, or mountain covered with ice and ſnow, ſituated in the middle of the iſland; and *Tindaſtool* near *Skagafiord* bay, where agates and cryſtals have been found.

3. *Vadla-Syſſel*, [*Vodle* or *Oefiords-Syſſel.*] Remarkable places in this Diſtrict are

Flotkorn, a head of land, or promontory.

Wodru-Vellur, [*Modre-Velle*,] and *Munka Tweraa*, which are ſecularized convents.

* The names firſt mentioned are the *Iceland* names of places, and thoſe included in crotchets are the *Daniſh* names.

Eyafiordur, a Trading Place, and fine Fleſh-Port.

4. *Thijng-Eyar* [*Thingoe* or *Nordre Syſſel.*] Places of note in this Diſtrict are

Raudignupur, or *Rode-neſs*, a cape or promontory.

The iſland of *Flat-Ey*.

Huuſa-Vijks, [*Huſevigs*,] a Trading Place and Fleſh-Port.

Krabla, a *Volcano* or burning-mountain, of which an account has been given above in §. 6.

Three other mountains, which have begun to eject fire ſince *Krabla*, viz. 1. *Leirhniukur*, which lies about half a *Norway* mile to the North-weſt of *Krabla*, and had its firſt eruption on the eleventh of *January* 1725. 2. *Biarnaflag*, which became a *Volcano* on the nineteenth of *April* *. 3. *Hitzool*, which ſtands near *Leirhniukur*.

The lake of *My-vatn*, in Latin *Lacus tabanorum*, ſo called from the immenſe multitudes of gnats which ſwarm over it, lies about a *Norway* mile and a half from *Krabla*, whoſe *Lava* or fiery ſtream at the time of the eruption of that mountain ran into this lake. Its circumference is about ſix *Norway* miles, and extends through two pariſhes which are ſituated on its banks. In this lake is found a ſmooth, beautiful black ſtone of an uncommon hardneſs.

Near *Reyker-harbour* in this Diſtrict are three hot ſprings, about thirty fathoms diſtant from each other. They bubble up alternately; and this ebullition generally happens in each of them about three times in a quarter of an hour. Though theſe wells lie in a plain, they ſpring from a hard ſtony bottom. Two of them eject the water from the interſtices between the ſtones about an ell high; but in the bottom of the third there is a round aperture, through which, in its turn, it throws the water five or ſix ells in height. After this it ſubſides about two ells; and one may go down and take a ſurvey of this wonderful ſpring during that interval. Its ebullition has three gradations. During the firſt, the water riſes half way up the cavity; afterwards it fills to the top; and, in the laſt place, it ſhoots up to the abovementioned height. When the water is ſubſiding, it abſorbs any light ſubſtance or a piece of wood; but at the return of the ebullition, it ejects even heavy ſtones that are thrown into it.

II. AUSTFIRDINGA-FIORDUNG, [*Oeſtre-Fierding*,] or the EAST-QUARTER conſiſts of two *Syſſels* or Diſtricts each of which has its *Syſſelman*.

1. *Mula-Syſſel*, which on account of its large extent is divided into the North, Middle, and South-Parts, contains the following places of note.

Cape *Laanganes*, *i. e.* 'The Long Cape,' near which is a very dangerous current or *vortex* in the ſea.

* I ſuppoſe in the year 1725, as above.

Auſturhorn and *Ingolſhofdi*, two places ſo called from the firſt inhabitants of the iſland *.

Vopnafiordur, [*Wapnefiord*,] *Reydarfiordur*, [*Rodefiord*,] and *Bereſiordur*, [*Bereſiord*,] are Trading Places and Fleſh-Ports.

The ſequeſtered convent of *Skrida* [*Skreide*.]

The hot Baths in the valley of *Raſnkelſ-dalur*.

The iſland of *Pap-Ey*, which is inhabited.

2. *Skaptafells* [*Skafte* or *Skafteſields*] *Syſſel* is divided into Eaſt and Weſt *Skaptafell-Syſſel*, and contains the following places of note:

A cape or promontory called *Weſtre-horn*.

The *Jockeler* or ſnowy mountains of *Knava Felle*, *Breida Merkul*, *Saptaa*, *Skeideraa*, *Oeraiſe*, and *Kotligiaa* (the two laſt of which made fiery eruptions in 1721 and 1728, as was taken notice of above) and *Torva*.

The ſeculariſed convent of *Kyrkiubae*, [*Kirkebay*,] and *Tkykvabae*, [*Tyckebay*.]

III. SUNNLENDINGA-FIORDUNG, [*Syd-Fierding*,] or the SOUTH-QUARTER contains ſix *Syſſels*, which are

1. *Raangaarvalla-Syſſel*, [*Rangervalle-Syſſel*,] in which are the *Jockeler* or ice-mountain of *Eya-fialla*, [*Eye-fielle*,] and the burning ice-mountain *Hekla*, which is the moſt famous of all the *Iceland* Volcano's. It takes up four hours to aſcend from the foot of this mountain to the ſummit of it. On the North-weſt ſide is a vaſt chaſm reaching from the top almoſt to the root of the mountain. Its eruptions happened in the following years, namely, 1104, 1157, 1222, 1300, 1341, 1362, 1389, 1558, 1636 and 1693. But the laſt dreadful eruption was attended with terrible devaſtations; the aſhes flying all round this *Volcano* to the diſtance of thirty *Norway* miles † at leaſt. But ſince that time mount *Hekla* has been free from eruptions. It was remarkable that whilſt flames and ignited matter iſſued from one ſide of the mountain, the huge maſſes of ice and ſnow with which it was covered on the other were not melted, though the heat was ſo intenſe as to calcine large ſtones and other ſubſtances. Near mount *Hekla*, and not far from the manſion-houſe of *Fellſmula* is a deep lake, the bed of which is an excavated rock, wherein ſome aquatic animals of a very uncommon form are to be ſeen in clear weather.

2. *Arne-Syſſel*, [*Arnne-Syſſel*,] in which are,

Skaalholt, an epiſcopal See with a cathedral and ſchool. The latter was founded by *Iſlief* the firſt Biſhop of this Dioceſe in 1057; and king *Chriſtian* III. beſtowed conſiderable benefactions on it.

Eyrarbacke, [*Orebacke*,] a Fiſh and Fleſh-Port.

Thing-valla-Vatn, the largeſt lake in *Iceland*, being eight or nine *Norway* miles in circumference.

* See Section 17. † About a hundred and eighty *Engliſh* miles, *Credat Judæus*, &c.

Oexeraa,

Oexeraa, which is ſituated on the bank of the above lake. Here the General or Provincial Court called *Al-Thing* is held. This Court was inſtituted ſo early as the year 930, and uſed to ſit in the open air, till *Chriſtian* VI. ordered a commodious timber building to be erected for that purpoſe.

In this Diſtrict are alſo ſeveral hot Baths, among which the moſt famous is *Reykia-Laug* in *Laugar-dalar*, or 'The Bath-Valley.' The inhabitants of the ſouth, eaſt, and north parts of this iſland were baptized in this bath in the tenth century.

Geyſer, a wonderful ſpring in the valley of *Haukadal*, but few miles from *Skaalholt*. This ſpring riſes in a hollow rock at the foot of a mountain. According to M. *Olav*'s Deſcription of this ſpring, who ſaw it in the year 1746, it is a cavity in a rock about twenty fathoms in circumference, and three in depth. There is a ſmall aperture at the bottom, through which the water gradually riſes till it runs over the baſon; then follows a terrible noiſe, like the diſcharge of ſmall arms, which ſhakes the very rock. After this noiſe has been repeated four or five times the water, which is hot, emits a thick ſteam like ſmoke, is violently agitated, and ſprings up to the height of ſixty fathoms, in ſuch quantities as to form ſeveral hot rivulets on every ſide of the rock. The riſing and violent agitation of the water ceaſes in ſix or ſeven minutes, and the cavity or baſon becomes empty. This ſurpriſing phenomenon happens once a day, and is periodical, returning at a certain hour: But whether the agitations of this ſpring correſpond with the tides in the neighbouring ſea, has not yet been determined.

Ingolfs-Fell, a hill or eminence, on the top of which *Ingolf* the firſt inhabitant of this iſland, was buried.

The *Jockeler* or ice-mountain of *Geitland* or *Erick*.

3. *Gullbringu-Syſſel*, [*Gulbringe-Syſſel*,] in which the remarkable places are,

The Trading Places and Fiſh-Ports of *Grindavijk* [*Grindevig*,] *Baatsendar* [*Botſand*,] *Keſla-vijk* [*Kieble-vig*,] *Hafnar-fiordur* [*Hafneſiord*,] and *Hoolmurinn* [*Holmen*.]

The large promontory of *Reykanes*, *i. e.* 'The Reeking-Promontory,' ſo called from its hot Baths, *Reyk-hola-Laug* and *Reyk-hola-Hver*. In the latter all ſorts of fleſh are boiled in a very ſhort ſpace of time.

Kruſevig, a mountain abounding in ſulphur.

Beſſa-ſtader, [*Baſſe-ſted*,] the reſidence of the king's *Amtman* or Prefect. The Latitude of this place is ſixty-four degrees ſix minutes. Here is a woollen manufactory with a fulling-mill belonging to it.

Videy, or *Vidoe*, an iſland on which ſtands a ſequeſtered convent. The revenues of it is chiefly applied to the ſupport of twelve poor men who are paſt labour. The *Landvogt*, at preſent, reſides in this place.

4. *Kjooſar-*

4. *Kjoosar-Syssel* [*Kiose-Syssel*] is the smalleſt of all the Diſtricts in this Quarter.

5. *Borgar-fiardar-Syssel*, [*Borge-fiords-Syssel.*] In this Diſtrict are

The celebrated warm Baths of *Reykollts-Laugar*, in the valley of *North-Reykiadal*, built in the thirteenth century by the famous *Iceland* Hiſtorian *Snorro Sturlaſon*. Theſe Baths are well contrived, and ſo ſpacious that a hundred perſons may commodiouſly bathe there at the ſame time. Near this ſtructure lies *Sydre-Reykia-dalur*, in which is the hot Bath called *Kross-Laug*, where, in the year of Chriſt 1000, the inhabitants of the weſtern parts of *Iceland* were baptized; and from hence it had the name of *Kross-Laug*, or the Croſs-Bath.

Weſtmanna-Eyar, [*Weſtman-Oerne*,] a cluſter of iſlands which conſtitute one *Syſſel*. In the year 1627, ſome *Turkiſh* Corſairs landed here; and in 1687, they made another attempt.

IV. WESTFIRDINGA-FIORDUNG, [*Weſtre-Fierding*,] or the WEST-QUARTER, conſiſts of ſeven *Syſſels* or Diſtricts.

1. *Myra-Syssel.* [*Myre-Syssel.*] In this Diſtrict there is a vitriolic ſpring; and as the taſte of it is ſomething like that of beer, the inhabitants call it *Oel-keldurnar*, *i. e.* 'Beer-cellar.' This ſpring is not far from *Hytardal.*

2. *Hnappa-dals-Syssel*, [*Hnappedals-Syssel.*]

3. *Snafels-nes-Syssel*, [*Sneefields-nes-Syssel.*] In this Diſtrict lie

The Trading Places and Fiſh-Ports of *Buuder* [*Budenſtade*,] *Anarſtapinn*, *Olafsvijk* [*Olufsvig*,] *Grund-Arfiordur* [*Grundefiord*,] and *Stykiſholmur* [*Stikkeſholm*,] which is a Fleſh-Port.

The promontory or cape called *Snafelſnes*, which is twelve *Norway* miles long, and two or three, and in ſome places four, miles broad. On this promontory are the mountains of *Snafells*, which are covered with ice and ſnow, and are the higheſt of all the mountains in *Iceland.* In this Diſtrict alſo ſtands *Helgafell*, *i. e.* 'The Sacred Mountain,' on which the ancient *Icelanders* imagined that they ſhould enjoy all the pleaſure and happineſs imaginable after death. The monks who lived in the convent of *Helgafell*, which formerly ſtood here, were afterwards removed to the iſland of *Flatey*.

There is a vitriolic ſpring, of a beeriſh taſte, not far from the Trading Place of *Buuder*, in this Diſtrict.

4. *Dala-Syssel*, [*Dale-Syssel*,] commonly called *Breyda-fiardar-daler* from the bay of *Breydafiordur*, is the moſt delightful, and, indeed, the only pleaſant ſpot in *Iceland.* The mountains here run in two parallel lines, and the vallies between them are watered by a number of little brooks and rivulets, which cauſe a beautiful verdure, and give them a charming appearance. There are alſo ſeveral iſlands in the bay of *Breydafiordur.*

5. *Barda-ſtrandar-Syssel*, [*Bardeſtrands-Syssel.*] Remarkable places in this Diſtrict are,

The

The Trading Places of *Patrixfiordur* or *Vatneyre*, [*Patrixfiord* or *Vatnſeyre*,] and *Byldudalſeyre*.

The *Jockeler* or ice-mountain of *Glaama*, which is the higheſt on the iſland, except *Snafelsjoklu*.

The iſland of *Flatey*, with the ſecularized convent of *Helgafell* which formerly ſtood on a mountain of the ſame name. The *Flatey Codex*, which contains the greateſt part of the Northern antiquities, derives its name from this iſland.

6. *Iſafiardar-Syſſel*, [*Iſefiords-Syſſel.*] Places of note in this Diſtrict are

The Trading Place of *Dyrafiordur* or *Thijngeyre*, [*Dyrefiord*,] which is both a Fiſh and Fleſh-Port; and *Skutuls-fiordur*, [*Skutulsfiord*,] a Port for fiſh, and train-oil.

Draanga, a *Jockeler*, or mountain covered with ice and ſnow.

7. *Stranda-Syſſel*, [*Strande-Syſſel*,] in which lies the Trading Place and train-oil Port of *Reykar-fiordur*, [*Reykefiord.*]

GREENLAND.

GREENLAND.

§. 1. IT is not yet determined to which of the four principal parts of the world *Greenland* properly belongs: But from its connexion with *Norway* from time immemorial, which will be plainly demonſtrated in §. 7, and as it belongs to the king of *Denmark*, this ſeems the moſt proper place to introduce it. All the maps of this country, which are extant, are very imperfect. The beſt indeed is that in M. EGEDE's *Des alten Gronlands neuen Perluſtration*, or 'A New Survey of Ancient *Greenland*.' Some light may alſo be received from the large chart of *Greenland* delineated by *Laurens Fyekes Haan*, and publiſhed by *Gerard von Keulen*; from thoſe in *Torſaus*'s *Gronlandia antiqua*; and *Anderſon*'s Account of *Iceland*, *Greenland*, and *Davis*'s Straits.

§. 2. *Greenland* lies about forty *Norway* miles from *Iceland*; and has by ſome been taken for a large iſland. Others, with greater probability, ſuppoſe it to be an extenſive *Peninſula*, beginning in Latitude 59 degrees, 50 minutes, and extending itſelf on the weſt ſide beyond the 78th degree of North-Latitude. The eaſt ſide of it ſtretches itſelf due North beyond the 82d degree of Latitude. The weſt ſide was firſt diſcovered in the year 1585, by *John Davis*, an *Engliſhman*, from whom the Straits that run between the continent of *North-America* and *Greenland* are called *Davis*'s *Straits*. On the eaſtern and ſouthern coaſt of *Greenland* vaſt flakes or iſlands of ice are ſeen, which are driven from *Spitzberg* towards the South by a very ſtrong current. This current, according to ſome, is cauſed by two large Straits, that are ſaid to run between the ſouthern extremity of the main land and two iſlands. The moſt northern, or *Forbiſher* Straits and iſland *, lie in Latitude 63 degrees; and the moſt ſouthern, or *Barnſund* in 62 degrees, or, as others place it, between 60 and 61 degrees of Latitude. But M. *Egede*, who ſet out on an expedition to make new diſcoveries in the year 1723, and ſailed as far as the 60th degree of North-Latitude could not find out, nor get any intelligence of theſe Straits and iſlands; ſo that at leaſt the ſituation of them is very uncertain. The old Deſcription of *Greenland* makes no mention of theſe Straits; but only in-

* This is called *Stats Iſland* in our maps, and that lying to the ſouth of it is termed *Deſolation Iſland*.

forms

forms us, that the original *Nordland* colony firſt ſettled on the eaſt ſide of *Greenland*, directly oppoſite to *Iceland*, and afterwards extended themſelves towards the weſt ſide. Hence it is probable that they ſtopped in their progreſs at *Baals-Revier*, where ruins of ſeveral huts built in the northern manner, and land that was once cultivated, have been diſcovered; and likewiſe ſome remains even of walled houſes towards the South. If ever there was ſuch a place as *Forbiſher*'s † *Straits*, they muſt at preſent be ſo choked up with ice and ſnow that ſhips cannot poſſibly ſail through them, as they are no longer diſcernible. The Straits of *Barnſund* are ſo far from being paſſable through, as they are repreſented in ſome charts, that they do not run near ſo deep into the land as they ſeem to do in others: On the contrary, they are but ſhallow, and almoſt over-run with ſea-weeds.

§. 3. The eaſt ſide of *Greenland*, which is oppoſite to *Iceland*, is at preſent inacceſſible, on account of the mountains and iſlands of ice of an aſtoniſhing height, with which the ſea is covered; and conſequently this part is unknown. But by ſailing between theſe and *Iceland* ſeveral adventurers have ſafely arrived there; and this courſe the *Hollanders* have actually ſteered.

The weſt ſide of *Greenland* towards *Davis*'s *Straits* is better known. The coaſts on that ſide are defended by *Sheers*, rocks, and ſeveral large and ſmall iſlands. It has alſo wide and deep bays which run a great way into the land, ſome of which are the mouths of large rivers, and others form good roads and harbours. The main land is little more than confuſed heaps of rocks, the ſummits of which are always covered with ice and ſnow, as are alſo the vallies in ſome places.

The climate, as far as the *Daniſh* colonies have penetrated, is not inſupportable; but the weather is very changeable and unſettled. During the ſummer ſeaſon, which laſts from the end of *May* to the middle of *September*, the ſun ſhines here bright and warm; and on the main land, where there is not a cloud to be ſeen, the weather is very pleaſant and always clear. But a cold damp fog, which intercepts the ſun-beams, continually hovers over the iſlands, except in the month of *Auguſt*, which is the only time in the whole year when the vapours are diſſipated. The rain that falls here is neither frequent nor heavy. It ſeldom thunders in this climate; and ſtorms are alſo very rare, and of no long continuance; but the moſt violent guſts of wind come from the South. The winters, as far as the 64th degree of Latitude, are generally reckoned by the *Danes* and *Norwegians* pretty temperate, to which the calm and clear weather may greatly contribute. But when a north-eaſt wind blows, which comes from the mountains that are covered with ſnow and ice, the cold is ex-

† The brave Admiral *Forbiſher* ought to be treated with more reſpect by the author, and deſerves at leaſt to be credited as much as M. *Egede*, whom he ſo implicitly relies upon.

tremely ſevere; the air being thick, and filled with clouds of icy particles which cauſe a moſt piercing froſt. The ſnow falls in leſs quantities in *Greenland* than it does in *Norway*; for in the former, eſpecially near the rivers in the inland parts, the ſnow is not above half an ell deep. As the weather is very calm in this climate, the ice in the bays betwixt the iſlands is not diſturbed, but blocks them up till the end of *Auguſt*; and even in the creeks it does not begin to thaw till the cloſe of *May*, when it is gradually waſhed away by the agitation of the waves. From *June* to *Auguſt* the ſun is continually above the horizon; and conſequently during that term they have no night here; but in winter the ſun is hardly viſible to the *Greenlanders*; and their day is nothing but the morning and evening twilights, which do not laſt above two hours. During this gloomy and diſconſolate ſeaſon the inhabitants of this country keep moſtly in their huts, contriving beforehand to have little or nothing to do abroad. The tides generally ebb and flow here regularly, and are very ſtrong.

§. 4. From the ancient Deſcriptions of *Greenland* one would conclude that the ſoil was once very fertile; for they inform us that it not only afforded paſturage for the cattle which were kept here, but alſo in ſome places produced excellent wheat; that very large acorns were found in the vallies; that the foreſts were well ſtocked with Rein-deer, and the lakes with fiſh, beſides ſeals and whales with which the adjacent ſea abounded. But all theſe conveniencies are now no more *.

The ſoil in the vallies and plains conſiſts of moor and turf land; and in ſome few ſpots, particularly in the ſouth parts, in about 61 degrees of Latitude, fine graſs and ſome good eſculent herbs are obſerved to grow. But that part of *Greenland* that lies between the 60th and 64th degree of Latitude has the beſt ſoil; ſo that even cabbage and turnips thrive very well there, and the latter are remarkably ſweet. There is not a tree of any kind to be ſeen in this country, except on the ſides of a bay ſixty *Norway* miles ſouth of *Hoffnungſcolonie* or *Hope Colony*; where a little coppice of birch trees grows, which are from ſix to nine ells high, with trunks no thicker than a man's leg †, One alſo meets with ſome ſhrubs diſperſed here and there, as ſmall juniper, gooſeberry, and billberry-buſhes, brambles, *&c.*

What minerals the *Greenland* mountains contain in their bowels is unknown; no trial having been hitherto made. *Amianthus*-rocks, from which conſiderable quantities of *Aſbeſtos* have been hewn away, are not uncommon here. Some mountains alſo conſiſt of *Weich-ſtein* or *Lapis*

* The laſt article is ſtill true; but whether *Greenland* ever enjoyed the other advantages here enumerated, may with great reaſon be queſtioned. I am apt to think this ancient Account, which the author quotes more than once, is no more than a fabulous deſcription of a *Greenland* Golden-age, or perhaps ſome faint remembrance of the climate from which the firſt colony, that was driven by neceſſity or tyranny to this comfortleſs region, came.

† The meaſures are here a little inaccurate, as uſual.

ollarius

ollarius which is an imperfect kind of variegated marble, and ſerves the inhabitants to make kettles and other utenſils of.

The freſh-water in *Greenland* has been highly recommended both for its ſalubrity and palatableneſs. In the country where *Forbiſher*'s *Straits* were commonly placed in the maps is a mineral ſpring, which the *Greenlanders* affirm to be ſo hot in winter, that upon throwing in a large lump of ice it is immediately diſſolved. The taſte of this water is ſaid to be very pungent, and it ſmells very ſtrong.

On the main land are found ſome hares; but theſe animals are very ſmall, and are gray in ſummer, and milk white in winter. Here is alſo a ſmall ſpecies of deer, which the *Norwegians* call *Reens-dyr*; but theſe are quite different from the *Lapland* Rein-deer. The foxes are white, brown, or gray; but are ſmall and without any hair. White bears are ſometimes found here; but the *Greenlanders* are very daring and active in deſtroying them. Theſe alſo differ from the bears of either countries, their heads being longiſh like that of a wolf; and, indeed, they reſemble that animal very much in their outward make and ſhape. The only domeſtic creatures found here are dogs, who never bark, but ſnarl and howl: They are alſo timorous, and quite unfit for the chace; however, if not tamed when young, they become wild, and very miſchievous. The *Greenlanders* kill theſe dogs, and eat them; and often uſe them to draw their ſledges, inſtead of horſes. Snakes or any venomous creatures cannot live in this climate.

The land-fowl in this country are the *Ryper*, which builds its neſt very high in the clefts of the rocks, ſparrows, ravens, eagles, and falcons. All kinds of ſhore and ſea-fowl known in *Norway* are ſeen here in amazing numbers. The flies or gnats which ſwarm in *Greenland* are extremely troubleſome.

The rivers afford plenty of trout, cray-fiſh, and ſalmon. The ſea yields an inexhauſtible variety of all kinds of fiſh, except oyſters; but it abounds with exquiſite muſcles and very large prawns or ſhrimps. The ſmaller ſpecies of fiſh are dried here for the winter ſtore, eſpecially the *Lodden*, a ſort of ſmall herring; but it does not ſtink like the Norway *Lodde*. Here is alſo great plenty of cod, haddock, thornbacks and the *Holybutt* *, which is ſo large a fiſh that it fills a large caſk.

§. 5. The *Greenland* ſea, and other parts of the *Northern Ocean* which lie under the North-Pole are full of the large or cetaceous ſpecies of fiſh, where incredible numbers of them ſwim in vaſt ſhoals. Here the great Creator, out of his exuberant goodneſs and bounty, has dealt out their food with a liberal hand; and of all climates this is the beſt adapted to their hot conſtitutions, and enormous bodies which are, as it were incloſed in fat.

* This fiſh is by ſome called the Turbot of the North.

The cetaceous ſpecies differ extremely from other kinds of fiſh, having nothing in common with them but the outward form; for in every particular they reſemble land-animals as to their internal parts. They breathe with lungs, and conſequently cannot remain long under water. They alſo copulate like quadrupeds, bring forth their young alive, and ſuckle them with their milk. As the fins of other fiſh conſiſt of bones or cartilages faſtened together by thin membranes running between them; ſo the whale has articular bones like the fingers of a human hand with their proper ligaments, which are covered with a thick ſkin like that of the other part of its body, and are diſtinguiſhed by the name of fins. By means of this mechaniſm the whale can move and turn about their huge unweildy bodies with greater eaſe than they could with fins of the common make, and ſecure themſelves from falling precipitately upon the rocks when they dive to the bottom of the ſea; for which end they lay their thick tail horizontally on the ſurface of the water, which is of great ſervice to them in this motion. There are ſeveral kinds of whales. In the firſt place, they may be divided into ſuch as have apertures in the head, and ſuch as have noſtrils, for reſpiration. Some of the former have two holes or apertures; as the Whale properly ſo called, the Fin-fiſh, *&c.* Others have only one; as the *Cachellotte*. But thoſe that reſpire through the noſtrils are ſeldom to be met with. The Whale ſpecies may alſo very naturally, and from obſervation, be divided into thoſe which have plain, and thoſe with gibbous or prominent backs. The Whale, properly ſo called, and the *Nordcaper* are of the former kind. Among thoſe with protuberant backs are,

1. Such as have a fin, as the Fin-fiſh, and the *Jupiter*.

2. Such as have one or more *gibbi* or protuberances on the back; as the ſword-fiſh, the *American* Plug-fiſh, *&c.*

Some Whales have *ſpicula* in their jaws, as thoſe of *Greenland*, the *Nordcaper*, the Fin-fiſh, *&c.* Others have teeth; and of theſe ſome have only one tooth, as the *Unicornu marinum* or Unicorn-fiſh, and others have ſeveral teeth.

Of the ſpiculated kind with a flat back, the chief is the real *Greenland* Whale, which is thick and unweildy; and its head takes up one third part of its bulk. This kind are from ſixty to ſeventy feet in length; the fins on their ſides from five to eight feet; and the tail, which is in an horizontal poſition, or bent a little upwards on both ſides, is from three to four fathoms broad. When the Whale is in danger, he turns himſelf upon his ſide and brandiſhes his tail, which it is very dangerous to approach. The ſkin on the back of the Whale is black and ſmooth, but variegated or marbled in ſome places; and that on its belly is white. The tail ſerves him for an oar with which he rows himſelf forward with ſurpriſing ſwiftneſs. Next to the ſkin, which is not thicker than ſtrong writing-paper or thin parchment, is the ſward or rind, which is near an inch thick; and between this

this and the fleſh lies the fat to the thickneſs of nine, and ſometimes twelve, inches. Under the fat is the fleſh, which is dry and very red. In its upper jaw on both ſides are the *ſpicula*, or the whale-bone, as it is called, which ſerve him for teeth; and the largeſt of theſe, which are placed in the middle, are ſeven or eight feet in length, and ſometimes more. On each ſide are generally two hundred and fifty of theſe *ſpicula*; ſo that they amount to five hundred in all. The tongue is very fat, and ſo large that it fills ſeveral caſks. The eyes of the Whale, which are not larger than thoſe of an ox, are in the hind part of the head, where it is broadeſt; and are defended by eye-lids and eye-brows. This fiſh is very quick of hearing, though it has no external ears; only there is a black ſpot under the upper ſkin behind the eye, and under that ſpot a narrow duct, which ſeems to convey the ſound to the *tympanum* or drum. The *penis* of the male is ſix feet in length, and ſeven or eight inches in diameter in the thickeſt part, but not above one inch near the body, into which it is generally drawn up. The *pudenda* of the female reſemble thoſe of quadrupeds, but are generally contracted together; and near the aperture on each ſide hangs a dug or teat. They generally bring forth but one at a birth; and ſometimes, though but ſeldom, they have two young ones. Their milk is like that of a cow. Their uſual food is a ſmall, black, round inſect, about the bigneſs of a pea, or horſe-bean; of theſe inſects the Whale ſucks prodigious ſwarms with his vaſt mouth, and afterwards grinds them with his *ſpicula*.

The *Nordcaper*, a kind of Whale ſo called from the vaſt numbers of them ſeen about the *Nordcap* or North-Cape in *Norway*, is much ſlenderer and ſmaller then the Whale properly ſo called.

The *Cachellotte* is famous on account of the *Sperma Ceti* and Ambergris it yields. The head makes near half the bulk of the fiſh, and, in ſhape, is not unlike the butt end of a muſket. As to the inward texture of the head, it has ſeveral cavities wherein is lodged the brain-oil, of which *Sperma Ceti* is made. The Ambergris is found in ſpherical balls from three to twelve inches in diameter, in an oval purſe or bladder, which is three or four feet in length and two or three in breadth, and lies directly over the teſticles of the fiſh.

The *See-hunde*, *Canis marinus*, or Dog-fiſh is the moſt ſerviceable of all animals to the *Greenlanders*. For its fleſh ſerves them for food, and its ſkin for cloathing, to make boats with, *&c.* Of its entrails and membranes they alſo make windows and ſails; its ligaments ſerve for thread and cords; and of the bones are made all kinds of domeſtic utenſils and implements of hunting.

§. 6. The *Greenlanders* of both ſexes are generally ſhort, or under the common ſize, but well proportioned, fat, and plump. Their faces are ſomething flat; their hair black and lank; and their complexion, from their

their ſordid manner of living, is of a browniſh red. It is very ſeldom that they are afflicted with epidemical diſeaſes; being ſtrangers to the ſmall-pox, &c. But the ſcurvy is the reigning diſtemper in this country; and their common remedy on this occaſion, beſides ſome other ſimples, is ſcurvy-graſs. They have neither ſurgeon nor phyſician among them; but are apt to rely on certain impoſters called *Angekoken*, who pretend to foretell future events, and to be ſkilled in Magic and Phyſic. Extraordinary inſtances of longevity are not wanting among the *Greenlanders*; and poſſibly they would be more frequent, did not their manner of life daily expoſe them to numberleſs dangers and fatigues.

Their language has ſomething very ſingular in it, and is difficult to be learned; but at the ſame time it is ſaid to have many elegant phraſes and expreſſions, and not to be ſo harſh and uncouth as one would imagine. Concerning this particular the reader may conſult WOLDIKEN's *Melitema de linguæ Grænlandicæ origine, ejuſque à cæteris linguis differentia*, in the ſecond volume of the *Scripta Societatis Hafnienſis*, or 'Tranſactions of the 'Royal Society, or Academy of Sciences, at *Copenhagen*'. M. *Paul Egede* has publiſhed a Dictionary of the *Greenland* Language, entitled *Dictionarum Gronlandico-Danico-Latinum*; and for the inſtruction of the *Greenlanders*, the Goſpels of the four Evangeliſts, and ſeveral ſmall tracts have been tranſlated into their language, and printed at *Copenhagen*. The *Greenland* dialect is moſtly the ſame throughout the whole country, excepting ſome little difference in the pronunciation. The women have alſo a particular manner of pronouncing their words, which generally terminate in an *n*. The *Greenlanders* in their own language call themſelves *Innuk*.

Their cloathing is made of the ſkins of Rein-deer, the dog-fiſh, and of certain birds, ſewed together with the ſmall guts of the *Canis marinus*. There is very little difference in the dreſs of the two ſexes; and both of them live in a very ſordid filthy manner.

They have two ſorts of habitations, one of which ſerves for the winter, and the other for the ſummer ſeaſon. The winter dwellings are the largeſt; and it is generally the womens taſk to build them up againſt winter, or when they intend to make a long ſtay in any particular place. Theſe are of a ſquare form, and built with pebbles, or ſmall fragments of the rocks, and their interſtices are filled up with moſs, or peat. Theſe huts are very ſeldom more than two ells above the ſurface of the ground; the reſt of them being, for greater ſtability and defence from the wind and cold, ſunk into the earth. The roof is covered with turf; and the entrance into them is dug narrow, and winding under ground. One of theſe dwellings ſeldom exceeds twenty feet ſquare; and yet is often occupied by ſeven or eight families. Theſe habitations are ſo warm that both men and women are generally ſtript to the waiſt whilſt they remain in them; but the ſtench occaſioned by the cloſe confinement of ſo many perſons together is intolerable.

The *Greenlanders* betake themſelves to theſe winter manſions in the month of *October*, and continue in them till the beginning of *May*. Their ſummer habitations are light tents made of the ſmooth ſkins of the dog-fiſh.

In their marriages, the chief qualifications required in the bride are ſkill in domeſtic affairs, and eſpecially in cutting out and ſewing their garments: And nothing recommends a ſuitor more than boldneſs, activity, and ſucceſs in fiſhing and hunting. At the marriage feſtivities the bride is ſure always to put on a ſhew of gravity, and an air of ſullen melancholy. Relations never inter-marry amongſt them; and they carry this humour ſo far as to abſtain from it even to the third or fourth degree of conſanguinity. In general every *Greenlander* has but one wife. They have a reſpectful idea of marriage; yet is it not held ſo ſacred among them, but that ſometimes a man puts away his wife very abruptly. They are fond of their children even to a culpable exceſs; ſo that inſtead of moderate correction, or checking them for their faults, they let them do whatever they pleaſe. They uſually eat when they are hungry; but their chief meal is at night. Their common food is the fleſh of rein-deer and hares; all kinds of land and water-fowl; the dog-fiſh, and other ſorts of freſh-water and ſea-fiſh, and even ſome parts of the whale; and particularly the *Lodder*, a ſmall kind of herring *. Their manner of dreſſing and eating their victuals is extremely diſguſtful. They prefer the blood of the dog-fiſh to any other beverage; but their uſual drink is water: However, they can drink a great deal of brandy without being intoxicated.

The occupation of the men is chiefly fiſhing and hunting, for which they have very curious tackle. The boats, in which the men only row out to ſea, are about three fathoms long, and but three quarters of an ell broad† about the middle: they alſo end in a very ſharp point at both extremities. They are made of very thin, narrow boards faſtened together with whale-bone and covered with ſeal-ſkins. Only one man goes out in one of theſe boats, who is half covered, and ſo ſecurely laced in, that the water cannot penetrate into the boat; and thus equipped he will row ten or twelve *Norway* miles ‡ in a day, though he has but one oar, which is ſix or ſeven feet long and flat at both ends. Theſe boats are eaſily overſet, which they look upon as no great detriment if the owner comes off with his life; and many of them are extremely dextrous in recovering the boat again when ſuch an accident happens. The larger ſort of boats are commonly called *Weiberbote*, *i. e.* 'the womens boats,' as none but females row in them. They have alſo open *Prahmen*, or barges, which are pointed at both ends but not

* Probably the Pilchard.

† The dimenſions are ſomething inaccurate, and would have been more intelligible had the author given them in feet and inches, which are more generally known.

‡ About ſixty or ſeventy *Engliſh* miles, at leaſt.

deep:

deep: they are covered with dog-fiſh ſkins and high at the extremities. Theſe they make uſe of to convey their effects in their emigrations, or when they embark for the whale-fiſhery, and likewiſe in coaſting from one port to another.

The *Greenlanders* are ſtrangers to trades, arts, and ſciences. They have no traffick among one another, and their commerce with foreigners is very inconſiderable. Their chief commodities are blubber and whalebone; the ſea-unicorn's horn; the ſkins of deer, foxes, and the dog-fiſh; which they exchange for neceſſaries in cloathing and all kinds of ordinary domeſtic utenſils. They neither uſe nor have any knowledge of money; but they fix a certain value on iron.

When they meet together they expreſs their mirth by drumming, ſinging and dancing. They are accuſtomed from their very childhood to an unbounded liberty; for they live according to their own inclinations, without any controul, or the check of parents or magiſtrates; all of them being on a level. They have little regard to outward ceremony, politeneſs, or decency. They are free, open, and cheerful in converſation; and nothing pleaſes them better than merry jeſts and rallery, by which that melancholy to which they are naturally inclined is diverted. They live very ſociably, and repoſe great confidence in each other. Amorous intrigues are ſeldom or never heard of among them; and as they abſtain from theft, rapine, and violence among themſelves, they are never known, upon any pretence, to make war on their neighbours. They think themſelves greatly ſuperior to the *Danes*, and make no ſcruple to pilfer any thing from them when it can be done with ſafety. But the great foible with which the *Greelanders*, and eſpecially the women, are taxed with, is an invincible obſtinacy and inflexibility. They are ſo unhappily ignorant in matters of religion, that they are ſaid to have no idea of a God *; inſomuch that their language has not an expreſſion to denote a Supreme Being. They imagine that as ſoon as a perſon dies, his ſoul goes to Heaven, and there enjoys the diverſion of hunting from age to age, while the body remains behind and moulders away in the earth.

§. 7. The hiſtory of *Greenland* is not unworthy of notice. The *Aborigines* or original inhabitants, who on the arrival of the *Norwegians* in this country were ſavages, ſeem, by the little knowledge the latter had of them, to be of *American* extraction. The firſt that gave occaſion to the diſcovery of this land was one *Gumbiorn*, a ſea-faring perſon, who, after *Iceland* had been diſcovered, ſailed further; and came to an iſland, to which he gave

* As the *Greenlanders* have a notion of the ſeparate exiſtence of the ſoul, after death, in a ſtate of ſupreme felicity, which they term 'hunting in Heaven;' it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe that the *Danes* miſrepreſent them with regard to their idea of a God, &c. This is the more probable, as the *Greenlanders* have ſuch a contempt for the *Danes*; and no doubt but the latter return it with averſion.

the

the name of *Gunbiorn*'s rock or *Gunbiarnarſker*. He alſo diſcovered other land lying to the north of it; but did not attempt to ſail thither. As ſoon as this diſcovery was known, *Erick*, a *Norwegian*, ſurnamed *Rothkopf*, or 'Red-head,' whoſe father, *Torwald*, had been obliged to fly to *Iceland* on account of a murder he had committed in *Norway*, took it into his head to go in ſearch of that unknown land. The motives that induced him to undertake this expedition, were the ill treatment he met with in *Iceland*, and the three years exile to which he had been condemned. In the year of Chriſt, 981, or 982, he ſet ſail from *Snafelſnes* on the weſt ſide of *Iceland*; and ſteering a direct courſe, he diſcovered one of the *Greenland* mountains, which, at preſent, is called *Blaſerk*. From thence he ſailed towards the South, and landing on an iſland, he ſpent the firſt winter there, and called it by his own name. In the two following years he gave names to ſeveral places; and in the third ſummer, the time of his baniſhment according to the ſentence being expired, this adventurer returned to *Iceland*. Some years after, he made another voyage to this country; and, from its fine verdant paſtures and trees, gave it the name of *Groenland* or *Greenland*, and founded the village *Brattalid* on *Ericksfiord* bay, where he ſettled. At *Erick*'s perſuaſion ſeveral *Icelanders*, from time to time, emigrated thither from their native country. Fourteen or fifteen years after *Erick* had ſettled in *Greenland*, *Leif*, his ſon, ſailed from thence to *Norway* and acquainted king *Olaf Truggeſen* with his father's diſcovery and ſettlement. The King having cauſed him to be inſtructed in the Chriſtian Religion, ordered him to be baptized, and ſent him back with a prieſt and ſeveral Eccleſiaſtics. *Leif* arrived in *Greenland* in the year 1000, and made his father a convert to Chriſtianity, whoſe example was followed by all the other *Greenlanders* *. In the year 1023, the *Greenlanders* became tributary to *Olaf* king of *Norway*; and in 1024, *Arnald* the firſt Biſhop of *Greenland* was conſecrated at *Lund* in *Sweden*. After this, the inhabitants of *Greenland* increaſing in number, the colony was divided into the *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Greenland*. *Erick* built the town of *Garde* in *Eaſt-Greenland*, whither the *Norwegians* reſorted once a year to traffick with the colonies. Some time after, the town of *Albe* and the convent of St. *Thomas* were alſo founded. *Garde* was the epiſcopal See, and had a cathedral dedicated to St. *Nicholas*; beſides which, there were two convents, twelve churches, and an hundred and ninety farm-houſes in this eaſtern Diviſion. On the weſtern ſide, called *Weſt-Greenland*, were four churches and an hundred and ten farm-houſes. The kings of *Norway* alſo uſed from time to time to ſend *Stadthalters* or Governors to *Greenland*. In the year 1256, the *Greenlanders* revolted againſt *Magnus* king of *Norway*; but in 1261, by the aſſiſtance of *Erick* king of *Denmark*,

* I ſuppoſe the author means the *Norwegian* colony ſettled in *Greenland*.

deep: they are covered with dog-fiſh ſkins and high at the extremities. Theſe they make uſe of to convey their effects in their emigrations, or when they embark for the whale-fiſhery, and likewiſe in coaſting from one port to another.

The *Greenlanders* are ſtrangers to trades, arts, and ſciences. They have no traffick among one another, and their commerce with foreigners is very inconſiderable. Their chief commodities are blubber and whalebone; the ſea-unicorn's horn; the ſkins of deer, foxes, and the dog-fiſh; which they exchange for neceſſaries in cloathing and all kinds of ordinary domeſtic utenſils. They neither uſe nor have any knowledge of money; but they fix a certain value on iron.

When they meet together they expreſs their mirth by drumming, ſinging and dancing. They are accuſtomed from their very childhood to an unbounded liberty; for they live according to their own inclinations, without any controul, or the check of parents or magiſtrates; all of them being on a level. They have little regard to outward ceremony, politeneſs, or decency. They are free, open, and cheerful in converſation; and nothing pleaſes them better than merry jeſts and rallery, by which that melancholy to which they are naturally inclined is diverted. They live very ſociably, and repoſe great confidence in each other. Amorous intrigues are ſeldom or never heard of among them; and as they abſtain from theft, rapine, and violence among themſelves, they are never known, upon any pretence, to make war on their neighbours. They think themſelves greatly ſuperior to the *Danes*, and make no ſcruple to pilfer any thing from them when it can be done with ſafety. But the great foible with which the *Greelanders*, and eſpecially the women, are taxed with, is an invincible obſtinacy and inflexibility. They are ſo unhappily ignorant in matters of religion, that they are ſaid to have no idea of a God *; inſomuch that their language has not an expreſſion to denote a Supreme Being. They imagine that as ſoon as a perſon dies, his ſoul goes to Heaven, and there enjoys the diverſion of hunting from age to age, while the body remains behind and moulders away in the earth.

§. 7. The hiſtory of *Greenland* is not unworthy of notice. The *Aborigines* or original inhabitants, who on the arrival of the *Norwegians* in this country were ſavages, ſeem, by the little knowledge the latter had of them, to be of *American* extraction. The firſt that gave occaſion to the diſcovery of this land was one *Gumbiorn*, a ſea-faring perſon, who, after *Iceland* had been diſcovered, ſailed further; and came to an iſland, to which he gave

* As the *Greenlanders* have a notion of the ſeparate exiſtence of the ſoul, after death, in a ſtate of ſupreme felicity, which they term 'hunting in Heaven;' it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe that the *Danes* miſrepreſent them with regard to their idea of a God, *&c.* This is the more probable, as the *Greenlanders* have ſuch a contempt for the *Danes*; and no doubt but the latter return it with averſion.

the

the name of *Gunbiorn*'s rock or *Gunbiarnarſker*. He alſo diſcovered other land lying to the north of it; but did not attempt to ſail thither. As ſoon as this diſcovery was known, *Erick*, a *Norwegian*, ſurnamed *Rothkopf*, or 'Red-head,' whoſe father, *Torwald*, had been obliged to fly to *Iceland* on account of a murder he had committed in *Norway*, took it into his head to go in ſearch of that unknown land. The motives that induced him to undertake this expedition, were the ill treatment he met with in *Iceland*, and the three years exile to which he had been condemned. In the year of Chriſt, 981, or 982, he ſet ſail from *Snafelſnes* on the weſt ſide of *Iceland*; and ſteering a direct courſe, he diſcovered one of the *Greenland* mountains, which, at preſent, is called *Blaſerk*. From thence he ſailed towards the South, and landing on an iſland, he ſpent the firſt winter there, and called it by his own name. In the two following years he gave names to ſeveral places; and in the third ſummer, the time of his baniſhment according to the ſentence being expired, this adventurer returned to *Iceland*. Some years after, he made another voyage to this country; and, from its fine verdant paſtures and trees, gave it the name of *Groenland* or *Greenland*, and founded the village *Brattalid* on *Ericksfiord* bay, where he ſettled. At *Erick*'s perſuaſion ſeveral *Icelanders*, from time to time, emigrated thither from their native country. Fourteen or fifteen years after *Erick* had ſettled in *Greenland*, *Leif*, his ſon, ſailed from thence to *Norway* and acquainted king *Olaf Truggeſen* with his father's diſcovery and ſettlement. The King having cauſed him to be inſtructed in the Chriſtian Religion, ordered him to be baptized, and ſent him back with a prieſt and ſeveral Eccleſiaſtics. *Leif* arrived in *Greenland* in the year 1000, and made his father a convert to Chriſtianity, whoſe example was followed by all the other *Greenlanders* *. In the year 1023, the *Greenlanders* became tributary to *Olaf* king of *Norway*; and in 1024, *Arnald* the firſt Biſhop of *Greenland* was conſecrated at *Lund* in *Sweden*. After this, the inhabitants of *Greenland* increaſing in number, the colony was divided into the *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Greenland*. *Erick* built the town of *Garde* in *Eaſt-Greenland*, whither the *Norwegians* reſorted once a year to traffick with the colonies. Some time after, the town of *Albe* and the convent of St. *Thomas* were alſo founded. *Garde* was the epiſcopal See, and had a cathedral dedicated to St. *Nicholas*; beſides which, there were two convents, twelve churches, and an hundred and ninety farm-houſes in this eaſtern Diviſion. On the weſtern ſide, called *Weſt-Greenland*, were four churches and an hundred and ten farm-houſes. The kings of *Norway* alſo uſed from time to time to ſend *Stadthalters* or Governors to *Greenland*. In the year 1256, the *Greenlanders* revolted againſt *Magnus* king of *Norway*; but in 1261, by the aſſiſtance of *Erick* king of *Denmark*,

* I ſuppoſe the author means the *Norwegian* colony ſettled in *Greenland*.

they were reduced to his obedience. In 1348, the black plague having ſwept away the greateſt part of the *Norwegians*, the intercourſe between *Norway* and *Greenland* was ſuſpended. The laſt Biſhop ſent thither from *Norway* was one *Andreas* who ſailed for *Greenland* in the year 1406. But no account was received of him till about 1540, when the colony there was found to be ſtill exiſting. In the ſubſequent time *Greenland* was in a manner quite forgotten.

In the reign of king *Chriſtian* II. *Walkendorf*, Archbiſhop of *Drontheim*, exerted himſelf in attempting to reſtore the communication between the two countries; but met with too many obſtacles, to carry his point. *Chriſtian* III. ſent a party of men to *Greenland*; but theſe returned with the trifling excuſe, that they had not been able to find it.

Frederick II. in 1578, diſpatched one *Magus Henningſen* in queſt of *Greenland*; who, indeed, got ſight of the land at a diſtance; but the ice prevented his nearer approach.

In the year 1576, *Martin Forbiſher* ſailed from *England* to *Greenland*; but as the ſeaſon was far advanced, he was alſo prevented from landing by the ice. However, by Queen *Elizabeth*'s command, he made a ſecond voyage the following year, when he landed in *Greenland*.

King *Chriſtian* IV. ſent out three ſhips in the year 1605, under the command of *Godſche Lindenow* who trafficked with the *Greenlanders*, and brought five of them to *Denmark*. In 1606, the ſame monarch ſent five ſhips thither; and ſoon after, diſpatched two veſſels more of a conſiderable burden on a third expedition. That great Prince in the year 1616, ſent Captain *Munk* with two ſhips to *Hudſon*'s *Straits*, in order to diſcover the North-weſt Paſſage; and it was that officer that gave the name of *Cape-Farewel* to the moſt ſouthern point of *Greenland*, becauſe he took his leave, as it were, of the old world at that Cape.

The King having relinquiſhed this undertaking, ſeveral merchants of *Copenhagen* ſet up a *Greenland* Company; and, in the year 1636, ſent out two ſhips, which came to an anchor in *Davis*'s *Straits* and traded with the *Greenlanders*. One of theſe veſſels returned with a cargo of gold-ſand: But as all the ſkill of the *Copenhagen* goldſmiths could not extract any gold from it, the Lord High Steward, who was preſident of the *Greenland* Company, ordered the whole cargo to be thrown overboard. This haſty procedure is ſuppoſed to have given him ſome uneaſineſs, when a kind of ſand reſembling that which had been brought from *Greenland* and thrown into the ſea, was found in *Norway*, which yielded very fine gold.

In the year 1654, a ſhip again ſailed for *Greenland*, and another was diſpatched in 1670. From that time the *Danes* gave themſelves no farther concern about *Greenland*. The old paſſage from *Iceland* to *Eaſt-Greenland* was ſuppoſed to be ſtopped up by the floats of ice; and to this day

day there has been no farther account of the eaſtern part of *Greenland*, which is a hundred and fifty *Norway* miles diſtant from the *Daniſh* colony ſettled there. However, it does not appear that it is quite uninhabited at preſent. There is an old tradition handed about in this country, ſignifying that the inhabitants of the weſtern coaſt of *Greenland*, being ſurpriſed by a clan of ſavages called *Skrellingers*, and their whole country laid waſte, the inhabitants of *Eaſt-Greenland* marched to their aſſiſtance, when they found the country quite deſtitute of inhabitants, only the cattle and flocks of ſheep being left behind; and that having killed a ſufficient number of oxen, *&c.* they carried the carcaſes away in their ſhips. It appears by this account that the inhabitants of the eaſtern part of *Greenland* were in Being ſince the extirpation of thoſe on the weſtern coaſt. After this, the weſt ſide of the country, to which one ſails through *Davis's Straits*, was called *New Greenland*, in order to diſtinguiſh it from *Old Greenland*, inhabited formerly by a *Norwegian* colony; and theſe Straits are ſtill frequented by the *Hollanders*, who have in a manner engroſſed the Whale-fiſhery, and likewiſe the traffick with the ſavages on this ſide, entirely to themſelves.

§. 8. Thus ſtood the affairs of *Greenland*, till *Hans Egede* Miniſter of *Vogen* in *Norway*, prompted by a laudable zeal to promote the knowledge of Chriſt among the ſavage *Greenlanders*, made ſome propoſals for renewing the intercourſe between *Denmark* and *Norway*, and *Greenland*, which had been diſcontinued for ſome centuries. Moſt of the friends and acquaintance of this worthy Divine, when they heard of his project, looked upon it as a chimerical undertaking. However, in the year 1718, he reſigned his benefice in the ſouth part of *Norway*, and removed with his wife and children to *Bergen*. His propoſals did not meet with a favourable reception either from the merchants or clergy of that city. He therefore went to *Copenhagen* in 1719, and laid his plan before the King; who ſent an order to the Magiſtracy of *Bergen* to propoſe to the citizens the erecting of a *Greenland* Company. This, after many difficulties, was at laſt effected in the year 1721; and a capital of ten thouſand rix-dollars was raiſed for that purpoſe. The new eſtabliſhed Company fitted out three ſhips for *Greenland*; and the indefatigable *Egede* was ſent thither as miſſionary, and furniſhed with three hundred guilders by the Society for propagating the Goſpel, at *Copenhagen*. It was not without great danger and difficulty that the ſingle ſhip which had the Miſſionary on board at length arrived off a place called *Baals-Revier* on the weſt ſide of *Greenland*, in Latitude 64 degrees, and wintered on an iſland there. M. *Egede* and forty men who remained with him, immediately ſet about building a houſe, in which the ſavages themſelves readily lent them a helping hand. This new colony was, from year to year, carefully ſupplied with neceſſaries by the Company; but the trade carried on with *Greenland* brought in no great profit. In the

mean while the Miſſionary employed his time in learning the *Greenland* language; and by his liberality and ſweetneſs of manners ſo endeared himſelf to the inhabitants, that the reſpect they ſhewed him in ſome particulars far exceeded his wiſhes. For they entertained ſuch an exalted idea of his piety and virtue, that all the ſick flocked about him, imploring him to heal them, being perſuaded that his breathing on them would reſtore them to health. In the year 1723, another Miſſionary was appointed as an aſſiſtant to M. *Egede*. Notwithſtanding the King beſtowed ſeveral privileges on the Company, by allowing them a lottery, and by impoſing a new tax on both kingdoms, which was called the *Greenland-Tax*; yet the proprietors deſpairing of reaping any great advantage from this trade, were averſe from making any new contribution to increaſe the capital. Upon this, the King took the affair into his own hands; and in 1728, ſent ſeveral ſhips and men with all neceſſaries, beſides cattle, horſes, *&c.* in order to eſtabliſh a regular and laſting colony, and to build a fort for its defence. His Majeſty likewiſe ſent two preachers on board one of theſe ſhips. This new colony ſettled on the continent about two *Norway* miles to the eaſt of the old colony; and ſome time after, *Nepiſene*, another inhabited ſettlement, was erected farther towards the North.

In 1731 a royal edict was publiſhed, enjoining all the king's ſubjects in *Greenland* to return home, and the colonies were thereby diſſolved. But M. *Egede*, being zealous for the ſalvation of the inhabitants, ſtaid behind, together with his family and ſome others who choſe to follow his fortunes.

In 1733, the *Greenland* trade was reaſſumed with great vigour; and the King granted a penſion of two thouſand rix-dollars a year to the Miſſionaries.

In 1736, M. *Egede* took his leave of the *Greenlanders*, among whom he had ſpent fifteen years with the moſt indefatigable zeal and laborious application, but not without making a great number of converts, and arrived at *Copenhagen*; where he was appointed Superintendant of *Greenland*. To his ſolicitation the Seminary in that city for educating able Miſſionaries and Catechiſts to be ſent to *Greenland* owes its inſtitution. The *Miſſion-College* alſo ſends young lads to *Greenland* to learn the language, and to be further inſtructed by the Miſſionaries there, in order to qualify them for that ſtation. The *Greenland* trade is, at preſent, carried on by the *Copenhagen* Company, who ſend thither three or four ſhips every year; and the *Dutch* are prohibited from coming within ſeveral miles of the colonies.

§. 9. The weſtern coaſt of *Greenland*, as far as it is known is about three hundred *Norway* miles in length, and was called by *Forbiſher*, or rather by his Miſtreſs *Elizabeth*, Queen of *England*, *Meta Incognita*. The moſt remarkable places on this coaſt, or within *Davis*'s *Straits*, are,

1. The

1. The *Staaten Hoeck*, which is the moſt ſouthern point of the main land.

2. *Cape Farewel*, which is the extreme point of an iſland, between which and the continent there is a Strait ſeveral miles broad.

3. *Deſolation Iſland.*

4. The bay called *Baals-Revier.*

5. The *Daniſh* ſettlement of *Fredericks-Haab*, or *Frederick's-Hope*, ſituated in Latitude 62 degrees, where there is a Miſſionary and a congregation of *Greenlanders.*

6. The colony of *Got-Haab*, or *Good-Hope*, is now eſtabliſhed on the main land in Latitude 64 degrees; but upon Mr. *Egede*'s firſt coming over it was ſettled on an iſland. Here is the oldeſt Chriſtian congregation in *Greenland*, and a Miſſionary. About half a *Norway* mile from hence lies

7. *Neu Herrenhuth*, a *Moravian* colony and congregation. This colony was firſt begun in 1733, by a handful of *Herenhuters* or *Moravians*; but is now grown ſo conſiderable as to equal the four *Daniſh* congregations. In the year 1749, a convenient place for the celebration of Divine worſhip was erected here.

8. The colony of *Chriſtians-Haab*, or *Chriſtian's-Hope*, in Latitude 69 degrees. But the Miſſion was ſettled in 1752 at *Clauſhavn*, four *Norway* miles to the Weſt of *Chriſtian-Haab*, where a Miſſionary reſides.

9. *Jacobs-Havn* is the fourth *Daniſh* colony, and lies two *Norway* miles north of *Clauſhavn.*

10. The fiſhery and the whale-iſlands, ſituated in Latitude 68 and 69 degrees. Here the proper whale-fiſhery is eſtabliſhed.

11. The large iſland of *Diſco.*

12. BAFFINS-BAY, diſcovered in the year 1622, by *Baffin*, an *Engliſhman.* At the end of this Bay, a little beyond the 78th degree of Latitude, is Sir THOMAS SMITH's *Sound*, which is the utmoſt verge hitherto frequented by the fiſhing veſſels, and where the largeſt whales are taken.

THE KINGDOM OF SWEDEN.


NORTH SEA
SWEDEN
NORWAY
FINMARK
LAPLAND
RUSSIAN
Arctic Circle
Hitteroe I.
Dronthem
Meldal
Warek
Opdal
Romsdal
Skula
Fort Hierpe
Hammardal
Herndal
Sweden
Pitea R.
Lark
Simonjaur
Sarjok
Kalix R.
Torneå
Kengis
Sirkas
Jockmock
Kitkaby
Enaraby
Tingenaes
Sandhamnum
Enontekis
Sippainara
Pihtigoki
Carlebyfors
Oulonsaro
Lakiet
Gamla Carleby
Nya Carleby
Lappajock R.
Wasa
Vilmar
Christinestadt
Tammisalmi Lake
Randesalmi
St. Michel
Nyslot
Biernebory
Raumo
Tammerfors or Grenebory
Cataract
Wiborg
Aland I.
Hekingfors
Bergo
Sibo
Nystadt
Abo
Upsal
Old Upsal
Sigtuna
Stockholm
Gulf of Bothnia
Rocky Islands
Scheeren
Beldven I.
Horsian Sudd
Agon I.
Stor Jungfrun I.
Gefle or Gearle
Dal-Elbe R.
Hedemora
Elfkarleby
Oerby Elfs
Elfsdalen
Christiania
Frederickstadt
Stromstadt
Wenersborg
Lake Wener
Gothenburg
Bahus Cast.
Kongsbacka
Wardberg
Jonkioping
Falkenberg
Ax-Kloster
Skagen C.
Skagerrak
or Cattegat
Mer. of Denmark
Gothland
Calmar
Kalmar
Ekwoio
Tuna
Wisingsoe
Hestnes
Carlsham
Carlscrona
Ronnebye
Christianstad
Helsingborg
Landscrona
Malmoe
Lund
Ystad
Trelleborg
Hoganas
Falsterbo
Oeland I.
Gottland I.
Klittehamn
Wisby
Baltic Sea
G. of Finnland
Reval
Narva
Hapsal
Dagho I.
Pernau
Ofel I.
Runce I.
Gulf of Riga
Riga
St. Petersburg
Ladoga
Kexholm
Wiborg
British Statute Miles 69 to a Degree
German Miles 15 to a Degree
Swedish Miles 10 ⅔ to a Degree
Longitude East from Ferro


A New and
Accurate MAP of
SWEDEN
Drawn from the
Best Authorities
By T. Kitchin Geog.
RUSSIA IN EUROPE
LAKE
Kexholm
OF
LADOGA
Wiborg
Schlus
ST. PETERSBURG
Narva
48
50
52
68
66
64
62
60
58
56
46
48
50
52

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE DESCRIPTION of SWEDEN.

§. 1. *SWEDEN* is ſometimes included in the general map of the northern Kingdoms, and is alſo repreſented in particular maps; among which that of *Andrew Buræus* is the ground-work of the later maps publiſhed by *De Wit*, and *Homann*. There are likewiſe maps of the ſeveral parts of *Sweden*, by the ſame hands, inſerted in *Bleau*'s Atlas. The lateſt, and indiſputably the beſt maps of *Sweden*, are thoſe publiſhed in the year 1742 by the Land-Survey-Office at *Stockholm*. To the ſame ſociety we are obliged for a general map of *Sweden*, including *Finland* and *Nordland*, which was publiſhed in 1747. In this map the ſmaller diſtricts of the kingdom are ſpecified; but the greater diviſions are omitted. A map of *Upland* and *Sodertorn*, of *Sudermannland*, *Nerike*, *Weſtmannland* and *Fierdhundra*, *Schonen*, *Malerſee*, or the *Maler*-lake, with a plan of the city of *Stockholm*, and of the countries bordering on the gulf of *Finland*, were alſo publiſhed by the ſame *Landmeſſing-Contoir*, or Land-Survey-Office. A fine map was alſo publiſhed by M. *Tobias Mayer*, in the year 1751, in two ſheets, for *Homann*'s heirs. Hitherto the abovementioned Office has not favoured the public with particular maps of the other provinces of *Sweden*.

§. 2. Under the name of *Sweden* we include that extenſive country which lies between *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Ruſſia*, in a ſort of a curve, and is bounded, for the moſt part, by the *Baltic* or *Eaſt-ſea*. It extends

about two hundred, or two hundred and fifty *Swediſh*, miles * in length, and one hundred and thirty in breadth; and the area of it, according to a geometrical calculation, is about ten thouſand ſquare *Swediſh* miles.

§. 3. The true etymology of the name *Svenge*, or *Sweden*, is not known with any certainty. It was anciently called *Swithiod* in the language of the country, which is ſaid to be derived from one of the names of the idol *Odin*. The inhabitants of this country were called, *Swiar*, which was, I preſume, a contraction of the word *Swithiar*. *Svecia* in all probability is derived from *Swethia*; the *th* being formerly pronounced with a ſibilation; ſo that the ſame word was ſometimes ſpelt with *th*, and ſometimes with a *c* only. The ancient *Sveonen* or *Suenones* alſo called themſelves *Swenſkar*; but the true etymology of the word *Swenſk* is alſo unknown. Some imagine the word *Swen*, which ſignifies a young active man, or a ſoldier, to be derived from *Swear* or *Swiar*; and that from *Swen* the inhabitants were called *Swenſkeman*, i. e. 'young and active men.'

§. 4. The climate of this country is very healthful. The winters are indeed extremely cold in *Sweden*; but the air is clear and ſalubrious; and the inhabitants arm themſelves againſt it with furs, ſheep-ſkins, *&c.* which they wear according to every one's ability. In the long nights the moon, the reflection from the ſnow, and the clearneſs of the ſky make it ſo light, that one may travel here as conveniently as in the day. In ſummer the days are very long and the heat intenſe; and the nights are luminous and exceeding pleaſant. Violent ſtorms and rains are ſeldom known here; and the ſharp and keen northwind ſerves to purify and refreſh the air.

§. 5. The *Swediſh* coaſts are encompaſſed with innumerable capes, iſlands and rocks, which they call *ſkiaren* or *ſheers*; ſo that the approach to the continent is ſomething dangerous. Theſe derive their names from the provinces oppoſite to which they lie; as the *Upland-ſheers*, the *Sudermannland*, the *Eaſt-Gothland*, *Bohus*, *Nordland*, and *Finland ſheers*. Theſe iſlands or rocks lie very near each other, and are of different dimenſions. Several thouſands of them are inhabited, and the people live moſtly by fiſhing.

The lakes in *Sweden* alſo contain ſome thouſands of iſlands, of which the leaſt are called *Holme*. The lakes are very numerous in this country and the largeſt are the following, namely, *Malar*, *Hielmar*, *Famund*, *Siljan*, *Wetter*, *Wener*, *Frygen* or *Fryken*, *Ringſion*, *Stora Led*, *Storſion*, *Stora Avan*, *Stora Luleo-Traſk*, *Tornea-Traſk*, *Knara-Traſk*, *Ulea-Traſk*, *Pejende* or *Pajanaſee*, and *Saima*, of which an account ſhall be given in their proper places.

The number of rivers in *Sweden* is alſo very conſiderable; and the largeſt rivers or ſtreams are in the *Swediſh* language called *Elbe*. The principal of theſe are

* Ten *Swediſh* miles and a half are equal to a degree of the Equator; [See Table, p. 25] ſo that one *Swediſh* is at leaſt ſix *Engliſh* miles.

1. The

1. The *Motalaſtrom*, which iſſues from the *Wetter*-lake, and being increaſed by ſeventeen ſmaller rivers, forms a waterfall or caſcade from a height of ſixteen feet, near *Nordkioping*, and empties itſelf into the *Baltic*.
2. The *Stang*, which divides *Oſtgothland* or eaſt *Gothland* into two parts.
3. The *Gothiſche-Elbe*, or *Gothic* river, which riſes in the *Wener*-lake, falls into the North-ſea near *Gottenburg*, and, about ſeven *Swediſh* miles and a half before it reaches that city, forms a cataract or water-fall by precipitating itſelf from a great height.
4. The *Gullſpang*, which divides *Weſtgothland* from *Wermeland*.
5. The *Dal-Elbe* in *Thal-Land* or the vale country, which is the largeſt river in *Sweden*.

In the deſcription of the ſeveral provinces theſe and the other lakes and rivers, with every thing that is remarkable ſhall be taken notice of. Both the lakes and rivers abound in fiſh of ſeveral kinds, among which the principal are ſalmon and trout of various ſorts. The beſt ſalmon are taken in *Halland*; but in the *Nordland* rivers the ſalmon fiſheries are in a declining condition.

Sweden affords medicinal ſprings of experienced virtue, among which that of *Medewi* in *Eaſt-Gothland* is the moſt famous. Here alſo are a kind of ſprings called *Hunger-quellen* or dearth-ſprings, ſome of which indicate a ſcarcity when they run over, or at leaſt when they do not overflow before the ground is entirely ſpoiled by heavy rains and melted ſnow; and when other *Hunger-quellen* are dried up they portend a bad crop, as the neceſſary conſequence of a long drought or want of rain.

§. 6. *Sweden*, though it be a very mountainous country, affords a great many tracts of even ground which are fit for agriculture. The ſoil is in general ſandy, ſwampy, or ferruginous; but at the ſame time is not void of fertility. Of all the diviſions in this Kingdom *Gothland* produces the greateſt quantity of grain, as wheat, rye, barley, oats, peaſe, *&c.* but every part of *Gothland* is not equally fertile in corn. *Sweden* alſo affords good paſtures, and ſome orchards which yield very fine fruit; but is more famous for mines in general, than for the fertility or produce of the ſoil. There is leſs arable land in the provinces of *Thal-Lande* than in the other provinces of the Kingdom, ſome of which, beſides tracts of fertile ſoil fit for tillage, have alſo good meadow grounds and paſturage. The *Nordlands* being full of rocks and mountains produce but little corn: However thoſe provinces contain ſome fertile ſpots for grazing. *Lapland* yields ſtill leſs grain than *Nordland*; but *Finland* is in moſt places very fertile, though it is hitherto far from being properly cultivated. The corn, in the ſhort but hot ſummers of this climate, ripens very ſoon; but is ſo far from being ſufficient for the ſubſiſtence of the inhabitants, that ſeveral hundred thouſand tuns, or quarters, of corn are annually imported from abroad; particularly

near four hundred and fifty thouſand tuns from *Livonia*, *Pomerania*, and *Wiſmar*.

Thoſe among the *Swedes* who have the welfare of their country at heart, are at preſent ſtrenuouſly promoting ſeveral good ſchemes for the encouragement of agriculture and manufactures. And if the ſucceſs be anſwerable to the preſent favourable appearances, the produce of the country will commodiouſly ſupport ſome millions of inhabitants more than it does at preſent and that in greater plenty and affluence.

The King, in the year 1752, granted to the new ſociety for the improvement of Agriculture a great deal of waſte land for forty or fifty years, rent-free and exempted them from taxes and impoſts. Hitherto conſiderable advantages have been made of the *Swedje-Land*, as it is called, which name denotes ſuch ſpots of land as are cleared in a foreſt, by cutting down the trees, and then burning them, and ſtrewing the aſhes on the ground before it is ſown. This ſort of ground yields a great crop of corn, for three years after it is dreſſed with the above manure. However, this method of burning the ſoil with hot aſhes is accounted very detrimental, as no graſs nor wood will grow afterwards on the ſpot; eſpecially if the ground be hilly and poor.

The inhabitants of the north parts of *Sweden* eat a ſort of bread made of the bark of birch and pine-trees, ſtraw, and roots. The *Hacke-brod* or *Stampe-brod* is very common in the north, and is ſometimes uſed in the ſouth parts in time of ſcarcity: It is made of the ears of corn cut from the ſtems and minced ſmall, and afterwards dried and ground. On this ſort of meal they pour boiling water and mix it with leven and corn-meal, where it is to be had. In ſpring they alſo take the bark of firs, as then it comes eaſieſt off the trees; but not the thick bark next to the wood. Having pared off the outward coarſe knots, *&c.* it is dried in an oven, or held over a wood-fire, till both ſides become brown, ſwell, and undergo a kind of fermentation, ſo that the reſin be conſumed. Theſe pieces of bark, being thus thoroughly dried, are ground, and then bread is made of the meal. But the dough is not to be kneaded ſo much as that intended for *Miſſe-brod*. The plant *Miſſne*, called in Latin *Calla foleis cordatis*, and by the *Finns*, *Wekka* is gathered in the ſpring in the moraſſes. After it is dried in the ſun, it is baked in an oven, or half dried in a warm bathing room, while it is ſprinkled with bath-water. After this it is put into the oven a ſecond time, and dried till the leaves fall off, and the outward tegument detaches it ſelf at the knots from the ſtem: Then the ſtems are chopped ſmall in a trough, and ground, and the meal is ſifted. When dough is to be made of it, they pour hot water on the meal, and, to give the bread a more agreeable flavour, add ſome brandy-lees to it. Afterwards the dough is kneaded with great labour, till it comes to be very tough, and as it were ſtringy; and then a third part of corn-meal is mixed along with it.

§. 7. The

§. 7. The ſouth parts of *Sweden* produce tolerable good fruit and eſculent vegetables: but towards the north theſe gradually become more ſcarce, and degenerate in flavour and goodneſs; ſo that no ſuch herbs are to be found in the moſt northern parts of the Kingdom. *Finland*, however, produces excellent turnips. Flax, hemp, and tobacco are alſo cultivated here to great advantage. The extenſive woods and foreſts in *Sweden* become thinner, and daily decline; which is no more than the natural conſequence of the immenſe conſumption of wood in making charcoal, pot-aſh, tar, pitch, manuring the land, *&c.* Oaks, in particular, are very ſcarce here.

The inhabitants in ſeveral parts of *Sweden* ſubſiſt by grazing; but here, as I have obſerved in all the northern countries, the cattle are ſmall, and the wool of the ſheep is very coarſe; ſo that in order to mend the breed of the latter, rams are imported from *Spain*, and *England*. The horſes are hardy, ſtrong, and vigorous. Of the various advantages they reap from their rein-deer, I ſhall give a particular account in my deſcription of *Lapland*. This Kingdom affords plenty of deer of all kinds, hares, elks, and all ſorts of tame and wild fowl; and ſome parts of *Sweden* are too much infeſted with bears, wolves, foxes, linxes, otters, martens, and weaſles.

§. 8. *Sweden* abounds in every ſpecies of the three Natural Kingdoms; eſpecially thoſe of the foſſile or mineral kind; as cryſtals, amethyſts, topazes, porphyry, *lapis lazuli*, agate, cornelian, a reddiſh ſtone called *Violſtein*, a greeniſh *ſemi*-pellucid ſtone, *Asbeſtos*, coral, load-ſtone, touch-ſtone, ſandy or free-ſtone, mill-ſtones, ſtucco-ſtones, ſlate, lime-ſtones, beautiful petrefactions, with coarſe and white marble. Two *Swediſh* miles and a half from *Nordkioping*, in the foreſt of *Koolmole*, or as others call it, *Kalmalden*, are large and deep quarries of excellent white marble, of an extraordinary hardneſs, with beautiful green veins, which are ſometimes of a dark, and ſometimes of a bright vivid green, finely interwoven together. Of this marble Mr. *J. H. Sivers* in his 'Short account of *Swediſh* marble,' printed in two ſheets in quarto at *Nurenberg*, has given a particular deſcription. *Marienglas*, called *Muſcovy* glaſs or iſing-glaſs, a rhomboidal ſpar, *Spathum viride montanum*, leſs properly called gold-ſolder, and *Spathum cæruleum montanum*, red, green, and blue foſſile colours, vitriol, *Lac montanum* or an argentine white earth, mercury, *Amianthus*, lead-ore, ceruſe, cobalt, alum, fullers-earth, *petroleum*, ſulphur, mother of pearl, *&c.* are alſo dug up in *Sweden*. Many pearls of great value have been found in the pearl-fiſheries of *Finland*. In *Smoland* and the *Lehn* or fief of *Bohus* ſalt is boiled from the ſea-water, but not in ſufficient quantities to ſupply the country.

§. 9. The great wealth of *Sweden* ariſes from its mines and metals.

Some Gold-ore has been diſcovered in *Smoland*.

The largeſt Silver-mine is near *Sala*. There are others at *Helleſors*, *St orhaar* and *Skiſkytte* in *Thal-Lande*; *Norreſors* in *Eaſt-Gothland*; *Brattſors* in *Warmeland*, where pure ſilver is dug up; at *Giſleby* in *Schonen*, and in ſeveral

ſeveral parts of *Lapland*. Theſe mines are not equally rich; and in ſome of them the expectation of future profits is greater than what they yield at preſent.

The number of the copper-mines, hammering-mills, and ſmelting-houſes is very conſiderable; and the richeſt mines of this ſort are at *Falun*, in which pure copper has been formerly found; but ſuch veins are no longer to be met with.

Iron-ore is here in ſuch plenty, that it generally ſhews itſelf on the ſurface of the earth: It is alſo remarkable for its richneſs; eſpecially the *Oeregrund* iron-ore. The produce of the iron-mines conſtitutes two thirds of the national revenues. The number of forges, hammering-mills, and ſmelting-houſes in *Sweden* is about four hundred and fifty. The beſt iron-mines are in *Upland:* But *Weſtmannland* carries on the greateſt trade in iron.

Lead is alſo dug up in *Sweden* in vaſt quantities; and moſt of the hammering-mills and mines are in the province of *Sweden*, properly ſo called.

The flouriſhing ſtate of the *Swediſh* mines will beſt appear from an account of their produce for a certain number of years.

1. The gold-mine, from the year 1741 to 1747 *, produced two thouſand three hundred and ninety-eight gold-ducats †.

2. The produce of the ſilver-mine at *Sala*, from the year 1743 to 1747, was eight thouſand ſeven hundred *Lothige* marks ‡, two ounces and a half; and that of *Adolphus Frederick*'s mine, from the year 174? to 1747, was about one hundred and eighty-ſix marks five ounces. That of the *North*-mine, in ſome years, amounts to forty-five marks. *Loſah*'s mine, from the year 1744 to 1747, produced about twenty-two or twenty-three marks. Near *Helleſors* ſeveral *Lothige* marks of ſilver are annually refined. The north *Chriſtilirns*, *Mellem*, *Tirapen*, and *Silberhytta* mines are two veins of ore called *Malmen*, and contain generally from ſixty to ſeventy pounds of lead in every hundred weight of oar; and the hundred weight of lead yields commonly from one to two, frequently from three to four, and ſometimes from ſix to eight ounces of ſilver.

3. The produce of the copper-mines at *Talun*, from the year 1743 to 1747, was about twenty-two thouſand eight hundred and ſeventy-nine pounds. The *New Work*, or *Liuſners* mine, *Garpenbergs*, or the *Old Work*, and the copper-mines of *Ritterhutte*, *Rocker*, and *Betninge*, *Anes* or *Inſio* and *Loſedh*, *Hakauboda*, *Liuſnedal*, *Liungedal*, *Handohl*, *Gladhammar*

* The author expreſſes himſelf very obſcurely here; for it is uncertain whether he means the annual produce, or that of five years taken together. Nor does he acquaint us whether it is incluſive, or excluſive of the years mentioned above.

† A gold ducat is about nine ſhillings and four-pence ſterling.

‡ A *Lothige* mark is equal to nine ounces twelve penny-weights *Troy* weight.

and

and *Mortefer*, from the year 1744 to 1747, altogether produced four thouſand and ſixty-eight pounds of copper.

4. The iron-works yearly produce about two hundred and ninety-nine thouſand five hundred and thirteen pounds of iron which are ſent to the forges; and the whole quantity of iron exported in bars from *Sweden*, from the year 1738 to 1744, amounted to two millions one hundred fifty-four thouſand ſix hundred and forty-one pounds.

§. 10. *Sweden*, in proportion to its extent, is not ſufficiently peopled. Of this there is a remarkable inſtance in one place, which, however, is not the moſt northern part of the kingdom, where hardly four thouſand ſeven hundred ſouls are to be found in the compaſs of two hundred and twenty-five *German* or geographical ſquare miles.

Some learned *Swedes* compute the number of the inhabitants of *Sweden* and *Finland* at about three millions; reckoning eighty thouſand farms, on which are one million ſix hundred thouſand ſouls, (the women, children, and ſervants included,) to make up above half of the number of the inhabitants in the whole kingdom. Others will have the number of inhabitants to be but two millions; reckoning the continent of *Sweden* and *Finland* to be about nine or ten thouſand ſquare *Swediſh* miles; of which at leaſt four thouſand are level and fertile, and of theſe one thouſand might be annually ſown. Hence they juſtly infer that the country might be made to produce ſome millions of quarters of corn more than it does at preſent, and conſequently might afford ſubſiſtence to a far greater number of inhabitants: Whereas, at preſent, ſome pariſhes are ſo extenſive, and at the ſame time ſo thinly inhabited, that a peaſant muſt travel ſeveral *Swediſh* miles to viſit his next neighbour; and others contain but ſeventy and ſometimes not ſo many farms, which take up a tract of land equal to the whole province of *Holland*; though perhaps ſuch a pariſh has not ſo many wretched cottages as there are towns in that flouriſhing province. This conſideration gave occaſion to a propoſal made in the laſt Diet, that the peaſants ſhould divide their farms, and be permitted to take a greater number of ſervants; that proper meaſures ſhould be taken for preventing or putting a ſtop to the moſt frequent epidemical diſtempers; and that all parts of the kingdom ſhould be provided with ſkilful midwives; theſe being looked upon as the moſt probable means for increaſing the number of inhabitants in the country.

The *Swedes* are robuſt, hardy, and vigorous, and are enured to all kinds of fatigues and hardſhips, which they undergo with chearfulneſs.

The common people here ſubſiſt by agriculture, working in the mines, grazing, hunting, fiſhing, and commerce both domeſtic and foreign. They traffick in the following commodities: *viz.* maſts, beams, timber for building, deal boards, the bark of birch-trees, tar, pitch, pot-aſh, wooden

wooden utenſils, *baſt-ſtricken**, horſes, oxen, ſheep, bacon, butter, cheeſe, ſalt, hides, flax, hemp, linen, fowls, furs or the ſkins of black, blue, white and croſs foxes, ermines, bears, martens, hyenas, otters, beavers, rein-deers, &c. which are produced in the ſeveral provinces.

The nobility of this Kingdom are ſo numerous, that the noble manors and ſeats in *Sweden* and *Finland* amount to eight hundred, to which ſeveral rights, &c. are annexed. The Counts and Barons, who have very conſiderable privileges and immunities, were firſt created by King *Erick* XIV. in the year 1561; and, at preſent, the former conſiſt of fifty-eight families, whoſe names are as follow.

Brahe, the principal in the kingdom.
Leuenhaupt.
De la Gardie.
Waſaborg.
Oxenſtierna von Kroneborg.
Stenbock.
Duglas.
Schlippenbach.
Wachtmeiſter von Johanſhuſs.
Sperling.
Bielke.
Gullenſtelpe.
Bonde von Biorno.
Gyllenborg.
Mellin.
Polus.
Gullenſtierna von Biorkoſund.
Piper.
Frolich.
Stromberg.
Poſſe.
Nieroth.
Horn von Ekebyholm.
Spens.
Cronhielm von Floſta.
Von Ferſen.
Reenſtierna.
Teſſin.
Meierfeld.
Morner.
Ducker.
Taube.
Sparre von Sandby.
Bonde von Safſtaholm.
Dohna.
Sparre von Sofdeborg.
Von Lieven.
Creutz.
Cronhielm von Hakunge.
Horn von Ranzien.
Ekeblad.
Lilienſteds.
Lagerberg.
Torneflykt.
Hord.
Putbus.
Von Duben.
Bark.
Von Heſſentein.
Loeven.
Von Roſen.
Wrangel.
Elirenpreuſs.
Cedercreutz.
Von During.
Hamilton.

* This is a kind of cordage made of the inner bark of a tree.

Not only the nobility and clergy, but alſo the citizens and peaſants (the vaſſals of the nobility excepted) conſtitute a part of the States of the kingdom, as I ſhall ſhew in the ſequel.

The *Swediſh* language has ſuch an affinity with the *Daniſh* and *Norwegian* dialects, that the inhabitants of the three kingdoms readily underſtand each other: But *Finland* and *Lapland* have their reſpective dialects. In the Pagan times the *Swedes* made uſe of a particular Alphabet termed *Runor*, or *Runic* characters; as appears from the *Runenſteine* or *Runic* ſtones ſet up near the ſepulchres of the dead, which are ſtill to be ſeen in moſt of the provinces; as alſo by the *Runenſtabe* or *Runic* ſtaves, on which a perpetual Almanack or calendar, with the uſual computation of time, was engraven in *Runic* letters. The *Runenſtabe* is ſtill uſed in ſome parts of *Sweden*.

§. 11. This country was formerly involved in the groſſeſt darkneſs of Pagan idolatry; and *Upſal* was the ſeat of their ſuperſtitious worſhip. The Emperor *Charles the Great*, at the requeſt of King *Biorn*, ſent hither an eminent eccleſiaſtic called *Herbert*, who made known the glad tidings of the Goſpel in *Oſt-Gothland*; and for the ſame laudable end, the Emperor *Lewis* ſent into *Sweden* the famous *Anſcharius*, who was ſucceeded by ſeveral others. It appears that, in the middle ages, the clergy had got ſeveral large eſtates and other endowments into their hands; and that the Pope aſſumed a great power over the temporal concerns of the kingdom. Theſe abuſes procured *M. Olaus Petri* the more favourable reception in *Sweden*, who was a diſciple of *Luther*, and promulgated the pure and uncorrupt doctrines of the Goſpel in this country. King *Guſtavus Vaſa*, by his perſeverance, happily introduced the Reformation in *Sweden*, notwithſtanding the innumerable difficulties he encountered with. And though the reformed religion met with great oppoſition, and underwent many trials in the reigns of *John* and *Sigiſmund*; yet it was eſtabliſhed at laſt by the Diet and Synod held at *Upſal* in the year 1593, when the States of the kingdom in a ſolemn manner engaged to adhere to the pure evangelical doctrine, as preached by *Luther*; and this, ſince the Decree of Uniformity of Religion which paſſed in 1613, is both by the ſovereign and his ſubjects to be accounted the only eſtabliſhed church in the kingdom. In 1741, indeed, his Majeſty was pleaſed to permit, by a royal edict, the free exerciſe of religion to the *Calviniſts*, and the members of the church of *England*, in all ſea-ports, except that of *Carlſcron*.

As to the hierarchy in *Sweden*, it is as follows:

One Archbiſhop, namely, that of *Upſal*, who performs the coronation ceremony.

Ten Biſhops, *viz.* thoſe of *Linkioping*, *Skara*, *Strengnas*, *Weſteras*, *Wexio*, *Abo*, *Lund*, *Borgo*, *Gothenburg*, and *Calmar*.

Three Superintendants, one of which reſides at *Carlſtadt*, another at *Hernoſand*, and the third in *Gottland*. The other eccleſiaſtics in town and country are ſubordinate to theſe, as the provoſts, deacons, chaplains or curates, and the miniſters or incumbents in villages.

§. 12. The *Swedes* are of late greatly improved in Arts and Sciences; but thoſe branches of literature which they chiefly ſtudy are the Oeconomics, Natural Philoſophy, together with the Antiquities, Hiſtory, and Geography of their own and other countries.

Upſal is the moſt antient and conſiderable Univerſity in *Sweden*, and is very liberally endowed. In the year 1728, a Royal Academy of Sciences was alſo founded in the ſame city.

The Univerſity at *Lund* in *Schonen* is ſtiled *Academia Carolina Gothorum*.

There is a third Univerſity at *Abo* in *Finland*.

A Royal Academy of Sciences was alſo inſtituted at *Stockholm* in the year 1739; and the Memoirs of that ſociety have been well received in foreign parts. In the ſame city are the following inſtitutions; namely, Archives for antiquities, a *Collegium Medicum*, or Phyſic-College, a royal Academy for that part of the Mathematics relating to the military art. Another for Surveying of land. A Chymical and Mechanical elaboratory, and an Academy of Painting and Sculpture.

Queen *Louiſa Ulrica* inſtituted an Academy for the polite arts at *Drotningholm* in the year 1753.

Ghymnaſia, or Seminaries for the education of youth, are inſtituted at the following places; namely, at *Linkioping*, *Calmar*, *Wexio*, *Gothenburg*, *Skara*, *Carlſtadt*, *Strengnas*, *Weſterohs*, *Gefla*, and *Hernoſand*. Cathedral or epiſcopal ſchools are founded at *Upſal* and *Abo*; and inferior ſchools at *Wiſby*, *Froſo*, *Oſele*, *Lyckſele*, and *Jockmock*. There is alſo a *Latin* or Grammar ſchool at *Stockholm* for the benefit of the *Germans* ſettled in that city. An ordinance for the improvement and regulation of the art of printing was publiſhed by his *Swediſh* Majeſty in 1752; by which a new ſociety was inſtituted for that purpoſe, regulated by proper rules for the managing of that art and the perſons to be employed in it.

Here it may not be improper to take notice of what M. *A. Birch*, in a diſſertation delivered in the year 1749, obſerves concerning the proportion that the ſtudents in *Sweden* bear to the number of *Aemts*, i. e. Poſts or Benefices. He tells us that in this Kingdom, excluſive of the *German* provinces, there are in all three thouſand eccleſiaſtical *Aemets* or Benefices; one thouſand three hundred civil poſts which are filled with perſons learned in the laws; one thouſand thee hundred military poſts which are occupied by men of literature; ſix hundred offices relating to the ſeveral departments which belong to the government, and two thouſand ſix hundred phyſicians and ſurgeons.

§. 13.

§. 13. A few centuries ago there were no manufactures eſtabliſhed in *Sweden*. The *Hanſe*-towns not only exported unwrought iron and copper from this Kingdom, but likewiſe the ore of thoſe metals, which they ſold again to the *Swedes* when they had wrought them into various tools and utenſils. The inhabitants of the coaſts of *Sweden* were all fiſhermen, and the towns had no artificers. In the reign of *Guſtavus Vaſa* the *Swedes* firſt began to work their metals and even their wood at home; and towards the middle of the ſeventeenth century they begun to ſet up all ſorts of manufactures in *Sweden*; but moſt of the hands they employed were foreigners, particularly *Hollanders* and *Flemmings*. In the year 1641, a glaſs-manufactory was erected here. The following manufactures and trades were alſo eſtabliſhed in the ſucceeding years, namely the Starch manufactory in 1643; that of Tin in 1646; Bookſellers ſhops in 1647; Needle and Silk manufactures in 1649; Leather-dreſſing and Soap-boiling in 1651; Sawing-mills in 1653; Iron and Steel manufactures in 1654; Sugar-baking in 1661; and the woollen and ſilk manufactures flouriſhed above all the reſt: But in the wars under *Charles* XII. manufactures in general fell to decay. In the reign of *Frederick* I. all ſorts of mechanic trades and manufactures revived once more. The breeding of ſheep was alſo regulated and encouraged; tobacco was planted; foreign artiſts and manufacturers were allowed the free exerciſe of their religion; and other uſeful regulations were made in *Sweden*. It was reſolved by the States at the laſt Diet, which was held in 1752, to give all poſſible encouragement to new manufactures that ſhould be ſet up in this Kingdom. There are at preſent in *Sweden* manufactories of ſilk, cloth, cotton, fuſtian and other ſtuffs, linen, ſail-cloth, *Morocco*-leather, cotton-printing, dying; and alſo for boiling or refining of alum, ſugar, ſoap, and ſalt; for ſpinning, of tobacco; making glaſs, porcelain, and brimſtone; here are alſo paper-mills, gunpowder-mills, fulling-mills, boring-mills, ſtamping-mills, *&c.* Vaſt quantities of copper, ſteel, braſs and iron, are likewiſe wrought in *Sweden*. Here are alſo foundaries for great guns, pots, *&c.* forges for fire-arms, armours, anchors, *&c.* wire and flatting-mills, and the like. However the *Swedes* are not completely ſkilled in the working of metals. Great numbers of ſhips are alſo built, and wooden veſſels and utenſils made in this Kingdom

According to the computation laid before the States of the Kingdom, at the Diet held in 1752, the produce of the manufactures in *Sweden* from the firſt of *October* 1739, when the Board for Trades and Manufactures was firſt erected, to the cloſe of the year 1750, amounted to twenty-three millions ſix hundred forty-five thouſand four hundred and fort-nine ſilver dollars*, excluſive of the profits ariſing from ſugar and tobacco; which

* A ſilver dollar is equal to 1*s.* 6*d.* $\frac{3}{5}$ ſterling.

ſum, the fourth part being deducted for the purchaſe of materials, makes a ſaving to the country of ſeventeen millions ſeven hundred thirty-four thouſand and fifty-ſeven ſilver dollars. The increaſe of the ſilk, woollen, cotton and thread manufactures appears from hence, that in four years, namely, from 1741 to 1744, twenty-five *Tons of gold* † (ſilver money) and a quarter were expended for the unwrought materials. But in the four enſuing years the ſum roſe to thirty-ſix *Tons of gold*; and conſequently the increaſe was no leſs than ten and a quarter *Tons of gold*. The goods made of theſe materials being reckoned at three times the value of the latter, the produce of the manufactures for four years, namely, from 1744 to 1748, muſt have increaſed to thirty-two and a quarter *Tons of gold*; not to mention the greater quantity of woollen goods imported on *Swediſh* bottoms. The white cotton imported into *Sweden* has not been of late ſo conſiderable as it was formerly; the cottons flannels, and printed linens made at home being come into greater vogue. In the year 1754, it was computed that about one thouſand ſix hundred and four perſons were employed in the ſilk manufacture, eight thouſand five hundred and ſixty-ſeven in the woollen, two thouſand and thirty-four in the linen and cotton manufactures, and two hundred and nine in the hard-ware; but few of the home manufactures are bought in *Sweden*, which is owing to the extravagant demands of the manufacturers, who rate them at fifty, ſeventy-five, or even a hundred *per cent.* beyond the price of foreign goods. The planting of tobacco has increaſed much; eſpecially near *Carliſhamn* and *Lund*; ſo that the quantity of foreign tobacco imported into the Kingdom is decreaſed by one half. It is of the higheſt concern to *Sweden* to diverſify and improve their iron manufactures, that they may be able to ſend a variety of iron-ware abroad; as the iron-bar trade is conſiderably decreaſed ſince the iron-works of *Ruſſia* and *America* have been wrought.

§. 14. *Sweden* is very conveniently ſituated for commerce, as it lies between the *Baltic* and the *North-Sea*. Beſides, it has ſeveral large lakes and rivers; and ſome of the latter empty themſelves into theſe lakes, and others into the ſea. A ſcheme has been a long time on foot to avoid the paſſage through the *Sound*, by carrying on the trade from *Stockholm* another way. The ſhips bound to that port were to ſail through the lake of *Malar*, and by the river and canal of *Arboga* into the *Hielmar*-lake, on which the town of *Oerebro* is ſituated, as far as the lake of *Wener*; and from thence through *Gothiſch Elbe* or *Gothland* river to *Gothenburg*, and ſo into the *North-Sea*. But the execution of this important plan will be attended with great difficulties, by reaſon of the vaſt cataract in the *Gothic-Elbe*, called *Trollhatta*. However on the *Carlsgraben* near *Trollhatta*, a ſluice or canal, called *Count Teſſin*,

† A *Ton of gold*, is one hundred thouſand *Swediſh* dollars at 1*s.* 6*d.* $\frac{2}{3}$ which is nearly equal to 7775*l.* ſterling.

has

has been completed; and towards the close of the year 1752, it was opened with great solemnity, and found navigable for vessels of burden; so that it promises great advantages to the country by the increase of trade.

Sweden, for a long time, was without any trade or commerce; and formerly used to be supplied with foreign commodities by the *Hanse*-towns, which, so early as the year 1344, were endowed with several privileges, and exempt from paying any custom or duty in *Sweden*. At last King *Erick*, a *Pomeranian*, persuaded his subjects to carry on some trade in their own bottoms, and to employ five or six ships for that purpose. After this the trade of the *Hanse*-towns very much declined, though *Lubeck* still retained several privileges; which, however, were considerably restrained in the year 1529, and entirely annulled in 1599 and 1600; from which time the *English* and *Dutch* engrossed the trade to *Sweden* into their hands. Several commercial companies were also erected in *Sweden*, from time to time, as the South-Company in 1626; which, however, was dissolved in 1661. A College or board of trade was instituted in the year 1637; and a treaty was concluded with *Portugal* in 1641, by virtue of which an *African* Company was erected, who built fort *Corso* on the coast of *Guinea*. In 1648, a Tar-Company, who were to buy up and export the tar produced in the northern provinces of *Sweden*, was erected. But all these Companies in a short time came to nothing.

In the year 1648, the town of *Helmstadt* began to fit out fishing vessels; and even the Nobility joined with the Burghers in fitting out ships; though foreign vessels were employed for some time after. In 1667, a herring-fishery was set up at *Gothenburg*. In 1666, some *Englishmen* were encouraged to settle at *Helsinburg*, where several privileges were conferred on them; and in 1667, a *Swedish* man of war first sailed to the *Mediterranean*. The long wars in the reign of *Charles* XII. proved extemely detrimental to the trade and manufactures of *Sweden*: But under *Frederick* I. they both revived; and in the last Diet it was resolved vigorously to promote the improvement of trade and navigation.

Certain towns which were allowed to import and export goods in their own ships, and to trade both with natives and foreigners, are called Staple-towns, and are four and twenty in number. But those towns which lie near the sea, and yet have no foreign commerce; and are permitted only to carry on domestic trade, to have shares in freight of goods, and to purhase, by wholesale the goods imported by the Staple-towns, are called *Land-towns*. Some of these are inland, and others sea-port towns; others again are *Mine-towns*, or belong to some Mine-District. The chief Staple-towns in *Sweden* are *Stockholm* and *Gothenburg*. At the former are held the College of Commerce, the national Bank (which has often advanced con-

conſiderable ſums of money for the ſervice of the government, and has a fund of about ſix million, of ſilver dollars, beſides current bills to the amount of ſeventy millions, and an Inſurance-office. In the latter, *viz.* *Gothenburg*, are the *Eaſt-India* Company which was erected in the year 1731, and pays for every ſhip that returns from *India* fifty thouſand ſilver dollars to the government; and a *Levant* Company. The *Swedes* even trade to *China*. But as this traffick runs away with a great deal of bullion out of the Kingdom, Baron *Harlemann* calls it 'a neceſſary evil.' They likewiſe trade along the coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, and to other *European* ports.

The exports from *Sweden* are, iron in bars and wrought, other wrought metals, timber, pitch, tar, pot-aſh, ſalt-petre, gun-powder, cobalt, cordage, furs, *Morocco*-leather, as it is called, and dried fiſh. On the other hand the imports are grain, fleſh, bacon, cheeſe, butter, tallow, ſalt, wine, brandy, drugs, hides, hemp, flax, wool, ſilk and ſeveral foreign manufactures.

The preſent ſtate of the commerce of *Sweden* was laid before the States in the Diet of the year 1752, by the deputation of trade and manufactures; by which it manifeſtly appears that the trade of this country has increaſed remarkably for ſome years paſt. The manufactures have been alſo greatly improved; which has leſſened the importation of foreign commodities, employed a greater number of the natives, and ſaved the nation great ſums of money which uſed to be expended for foreign manufactures. The exportation of ſome commodities has alſo lately increaſed; particularly iron; which, not long ſince, was ſold at a low rate, when it was depoſited in warehouſes belonging to foreigners; but now ſells at a good price. However, proper meaſures have been taken to prevent dealers from raiſing the price of this commodity too high, and thereby giving an advantage to foreign iron-works.

The courſe of exchange has alſo, from time to time, been gradually lowered, and brought nearer to a par with that of other nations; and leſs ſpecie now goes out of the Kingdom for unwrought materials and other neceſſary goods than heretofore. From the year 1741 to 1744, incluſively, the imports of *Sweden* exceeded the exports by fifty-eight *Tons of gold* ſilver money: But in the four ſucceeding years, the former exceeded the latter only by three and twenty *Tons of gold*; and of late years the balance has been leſs conſiderable. Proviſions, raw materials for manufactures, and other neceſſaries are now purchaſed at the firſt hand, and imported into the Kingdom in *Swediſh* bottoms; in which the home products are alſo exported.

Laſtly, the duty or exciſe on what is conſumed at home is a reſtraint upon luxury and exceſs; at leaſt, in thoſe who affect it, it is made an inſtrument of augmenting the national revenue. But all theſe advantageous inſti-

inſtitutions, and laudable endeavours, cannot yet bring the exports and imports of *Sweden* to an equality; the latter exceeding the former at leaſt to the value of ſix *Tons of gold* every year. *Sweden* exports annually to the amount of ſix or ſeven millions, in metals, minerals, wooden ware, tar, pot-aſh, *&c.* On the other hand colours for dying, *&c.* drugs, ſpices, ſugar, ſalt, foreign liquors, ſilk, and cotton drain the country every year of near twenty-ſix *Tons of gold* and two thouſand three hundred ſeventy-five ſilver dollars; for as *Sweden* is entirely without ſome of theſe commodities, and has not a ſufficient quantity of others, it muſt be ſupplied with them from foreign countries. Beſides thoſe ſpecified above, the following commodities have, in the ſpace of four years, coſt the nation two hundred and thirty-two *Tons of gold* and a half; *viz*,

	Tons of gold. Silver Dollars.
For grain of all ſorts	113,,35,320.
For proviſions	18,,25,668.
For Flax, hemp, wool, linen and woollen yarn, and leather	67,,24,044.
For fiſh	33,,67,816.
Total	232,,52,848.

According to this calculation, theſe articles amount annually to fifty-eight *Tons of gold* and thirteen thouſand two hundred and eighteen Dollars, ſilver money. Luxury, vanity, and exceſs in proviſions, dreſs, buildings, *&c.* rather increaſe; though woollen cloths and ſtuffs, the materials of which are produced in the country, and manufactured by the natives, ſeem much better adapted to the climate of *Sweden*, as well as to the intereſt of the nation, than thoſe expenſive ſilks, which the *Swedes* are too fond of.

It muſt however be obſerved, that theſe calculations are not altogether accurate and unexceptionable; for the cuſtom of ſtating the balance of trade from the imports and exports, as they ſtand in the cuſtom-houſe books, is far from being exact. According to the cuſtom-houſe entries, *Sweden* muſt be much poorer now than it was at the death of *Charles* XII. than which nothing is more improbable. The great diſparity of the courſe of exchange is ſtill an extreme detriment to the kingdom.

The exportation of copper and copper plates has been prohibited ſince the year 1744, that commodity being, at preſent, wanted at home: Neither is the exportation of iron bars ſo conſiderable as it was formerly; and the like may be obſerved of the iron and ſteel-ware. A due equality of trade among the ſeveral provinces of the kingdom is alſo wanting; ſo that one gradually drains the other.

Another great impediment to the increaſe of commerce is the ſmuggling of prohibited and counterband goods, to the yearly amount of five or ſix *Tons of gold*; and this illicit trade is chiefly carried on by the *Lubeckers*. In order to put a ſtop to this illegal practice, it was enacted in 1754, That all foreign merchandiſe thus clandeſtinely imported ſhall, upon ſeizure, be not only confiſcated, but packed up, ſealed, and delivered in at the Manufacture-Office erected by the government at *Stockholm*, in order to be ſent to a *Swediſh* conſul, agent, or commiſſary abroad; who is publicly to expoſe the commodities to ſale, and to remit the produce of them to the abovementioned Office.

In the mean time, no endeavours have been wanting to bring the exports and imports to an equality, and by degrees even to turn the ſcale in favour of the former. The means employed for this purpoſe were,

1. The improvement and increaſe of agriculture; grain and proviſions being the capital article of the imports.

2. The encouragement of fiſheries; for which end, in the year 1745, a charter was granted to a Fiſhing-Company; and in 1752, ſeveral privileges were granted to all fiſhermen that ſhould ſettle on the ſea-coaſts to follow that occupation.

3. The improvement of manufactures. And

4. The conſtant employment of *Swediſh* bottoms for carrying on the trade of the Kingdom.

§. 15. The Coins in *Sweden* are

1. Gold ducats *.

2. Silver pieces; as the ſilver *Oer* †, one of which is equal to four *Pfennings*, twenty of them to a *Caroline* ‡, and thirty-two to a ſilver Dollar ‖. There are double and half *Carolines*, and alſo double ſingle and half ſilver *Oer* current here.

3. Copper pieces; which are

An *Oer*, which, like a *Rundſtuck* **, is equal to two *Pfennings*.

An half; a quarter; and a ſixth part of *Kupfer-Oer*.

A copper dollar †† is about four *Groſchen*.

4. Imaginary money; which are the Silver-Mark ‡‡, and Copper-Mark ‖‖. The former is three times the value of the latter; and ſix ſilver, or eighteen copper marks is equal to a Specie Dollar or thirty-two *Groſchen* ¶.

§. 16. All travellers agree in commending the roads for their goodneſs and ſecurity, the reaſonable rates of carriages, and the courteous civility of the people in *Sweden*.

* A Ducat is about 9 *s.* 4 *d.* ſterling. † An *Oer* is equal to $\frac{7}{12}$ of a penny ſterling. ‡ A Caroline is about 1 *s.* 2 *d.* ſterling. ‖ A ſilver Dollar is equal to 1 *s.* 6 *d.* $\frac{2}{3}$ *Engliſh* money. ** Eight Rundſtics make a penny *Engliſh*. †† A copper Dollar is equal to 6 *d.* $\frac{2}{9}$ ſterling. ‡‡ A ſilver mark is equal to 4 *d.* $\frac{2}{3}$ ſterling. ‖‖ A copper Mark 1 *d.* $\frac{5}{9}$. ¶ About 1 *s.* 3 *d.* ſterling.

§. 17. *Sweden*

§. 17. *Sweden* is indiſputably one of the moſt ancient kingdoms in *Europe*; but it is difficult to determine who were the firſt inhabitants or ſovereigns of this country. It was anciently called by various names, as *Jotunland*, *Gotunhem*, *Jattahem*, *Mannahem*, *Skytiod*, *Attland*, *Nordurland*, *Scants Ey*, *Scanzia*, *Scandia* or *Scandinavia*, *Balthia*, *Gethia*, and *Gothia*.

Sweden is particularly famous for being the native country of the fierce and warlike *Goths*, whoſe emigrations make ſuch a figure in hiſtory. The kingdom of the *Swedes* was ſeparate from that of the *Goths* until the twelfth century: But in the year 1132, both nations, with their ſeveral dependencies, were united under *Svercher* King of the *Oſtrogoths*, who was proclaimed Sovereign of the *Swedes* and *Goths*. It was afterwards agreed by the two nations, that the *Swediſh* and *Gothic* Princes ſhould hold the ſovereignty alternately; but this occaſioned many bloody inteſtine wars and commotions.

Magnus Smeek added *Schonen* and the adjacent territories to the kingdom; but that Prince alienated them again from the crown, and by his male-adminiſtration deprived both himſelf and his family of the throne. For after *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, his ſiſter's ſon, had been elected King, *Margaret*, who was heireſs to the crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, compelled him to give up the kingdom of *Sweden* to her; and that Princeſs, by the union of *Calmar*, united the three Northern Kingdoms under one head in the year 1397. This union the *Swedes* were obliged to receive, but with the greateſt indignation; and, after ſeveral unſucceſsful attempts, they at length ſhook off the *Daniſh* yoke. What moſt irritated them to this revolt, was the perfidious maſſacre perpetrated at *Stockholm*, by order of King *Chriſtian* II. in the year 1520.

Guſtavus Erickſon von Waſa was firſt choſen *Statthalter*, and, in 1523, had the ſovereignty conferred on him. This founder of a new royal line eſtabliſhed the reformed religion in *Sweden*; and the crown was ſettled on his heirs in the male line. But the diviſion of the kingdom among his children, the male-adminiſtration of his ſon *John*, together with the propenſity of *Erick* (*John*'s brother) and his ſon *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* to Popery, threw the kingdom into terrible diſtractions. Theſe commotions, however, were at laſt compoſed by *Charles* IX. and his ſon *Guſtavus Adolphus*. This heroic Prince conquered the greateſt part of *Livonia* and *Poliſh Pruſſia*; and penetrated ſo far into *Germany* as to become formidable to the Emperor. But in 1632, this Monarch loſt his life in the battle of *Lutzen*; and by his death the male line of *Waſa* became extinct. His daughter *Chriſtina* took away from *Norway* and *Denmark* the territories of *Jamtland*, and *Harjedalen*, with the iſlands of *Gottland* and *Oeland*; and in 1648 ſhe diſmembered upper *Pomerania*, *Bremen*, *Verden*, and *Wiſmar* from the *German* Empire, and added them to the *Swediſh* dominions. But in the year 1654, that Princeſs ſolemnly reſigned

the crown of *Sweden*, and was very inſtrumental in advancing to the throne her couſin *Charles Guſtavus*, Prince *Palatine* of *Deux-Ponts*, who in 1658 added *Schomen*, *Halland*, *Blekingen*, and the *Lehn* of *Bohus* to the *Swediſh* dominions. His ſon *Charles* XI. reaſſumed all the alienated crown lands, and rendered himſelf an abſolute Monarch. *Charles* XII. by an exceſſive fondneſs for war, brought the kingdom to very great diſtreſs, and was the laſt male heir of his family. After *Charles*'s death *Ulrica Eleanora*, his ſiſter, aſcended the throne by the free election of the States; gave up all pretenſions to arbitrary power; and in 1720, by conſent of the Diet, transferred the government to her huſband *Frederick*, hereditary Prince of *Heſſe-Caſſel*. King *Frederick* having no iſſue, the States, in the year 1743, nominated *Adolphus Frederick*, Duke of *Holſtein* and Biſhop of *Eutin*, his ſucceſſor to the Crown of *Sweden*: who, accordingly on the demiſe of *Frederick*, who died on the fifth day of *April* 1751, aſſumed the reins of government.

§. 18. The title of the Kings of *Sweden* has been often varied. His preſent Majeſty is ſtiled *Adolphus Frederick*, by the Grace of God, King of *Sweden*, and of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; great Prince of *Finland*; hereditary Sovereign of *Norway*; Duke of *Sleſwick*, *Holſtein*, *Stormarn*, and *Ditmarſh*; Count of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*.

The Arms are quarterly. In the firſt and fourth *Azure*, three crowns *Or*, for the kingdom of *Sweden*; in the ſecond and third *barré*, *ondé Argent* and *Azure*, a lion rampant *Or*, crowned *Gules*, for *Gothland*; with the Arms of *Holſtein* in the inescutcheon.

§. 19. In the year 1748, *Frederick* I. revived two ancient Orders of Knighthood, and founded another in *Sweden*. The principal of theſe is the Blue Ribbon, or the Order of *Seraphim*, inſtituted in 1334 by *Magnus Smeck*; the Knights of this Order are alſo *Commandeurs* of the other Orders. The next is the Yellow Ribbon, or the Order of the *Sword*, which was founded by *Guſtavus Waſa* in the year 1523. The Order of the Black Ribbon, or the *North Star*, is of very late inſtitution. All three have their proper badges and motto's.

§. 20. Anciently the crown of *Sweden* was hereditary; but the ſucceſſion was interrupted under the *Daniſh* Kings. The hereditary ſucceſſion was afterwards ſettled on *Guſtavus von Waſa*; and on *Charles* IX. and his heirs, even in the female line. Arbitrary power was unknown in this kingdom till the reign of *Charles* XI. which *Charles* XII. carried on with a high hand. However at that Monarch's death it was abrogated; the elective right was reſtored; and a council, of ſeventeen of the principal men in the kingdom, appointed for the King. The form of government was ſettled in *Sweden* in the year 1720, by which the King's male iſſue are declared his heirs and ſucceſſors to the throne: But before the new Sovereign enters on the adminiſtration of the government, he renounces, by a

ſolemn

ſolemn oath, all claim to Arbitrary Power which he deteſts and abhors; and engages to puniſh, with the utmoſt rigour, all who ſhall endeavour to promote it, as traitors and enemies to the King and Kingdom. The king cannot appropriate to himſelf, or alienate any of the national revenues. He cannot ſettle any of the royal demeſnes on his children; but muſt ſupply the neceſſary ſums for their education and portions in ready money. He muſt be of the *Lutheran* religion. He is to govern in concert with the Council of State, according to the general laws of *Sweden*, and the preſent form of government. He is not to engage in any war, to enact any laws, to impoſe any new taxes, nor to alter the value of the current coin; nor to detain the ſalaries or penſions accruing to the officers and ſoldiers from the crown-lands; nor laſtly, to contravene or annul any ordinances made, or to be made, for the improvement of navigation, trade, manufactures, *&c.* without the privity and conſent of his Council and the States of the Kingdom. In 1755 and 1756, the Diet added further limitations to the royal prerogative.

§. 21. The States who have a ſeat and voice in the Diet, are compoſed of the

1. Nobility, conſiſting of Counts, Barons, and others who are diſtinguiſhed by their rank or titles.
2. The Clergy who, till the time of *Guſtavus Waſa*, took place of the Nobility.
3. The Burghers or citizens.
4. The Peaſants.

The King is obliged to convene a Diet once in three years: But in the Sovereign's abſence or on any other impediment, or his deceaſe, the Council of State iſſues a proclamation for that purpoſe; and in default of male heirs to the crown, the States meet of themſelves. The *Swediſh* Diet generally ſits three months, or longer, according to the exigency of affairs. Extraordinary Diets are ſummoned by the King, with the conſent of the States of the kingdom. Every claſs has its Chairman or Prolocutor: The Marſhal of the Diet is generally the Chairman of the Nobles; the Archbiſhop of *Upſal* that of the Clergy; and the Burghers uſually make choice of one of the Burgo-maſters of *Stockholm*. The Peaſants have alſo their *Talemann*, or Speaker. The Counſellors of State have no vote in the Diet; but every Nobleman, Biſhop, Superintendent, and every two or three Provoſtſhips jointly, and every Diſtrict of Peaſants have a vote in the aſſembly of the States. Moſt of the towns have but one vote; ſome, however, have two, and *Stockholm* has four voices. Each of the four claſſes has its reſpective houſe: But at the general Diet all the States aſſemble in the Diet-chamber, which is a large apartment in the King's palace. Whatever has happened in the Kingdom ſince the preceding Diet, and has been diſcuſſed in the Council of State, or otherwiſe relates to the good of the Public,

comes under deliberation in this Aſſembly; but the King can propoſe nothing in the Diet without the previous advice of the Council of State.

§. 22. The great Colleges or Councils of the Kingdom are

1. The Council of State, which is the ſupreme Council. The King himſelf preſides, and has two votes in this College; where all national affairs, which admit of no delay, are determined by the majority of voices.

2. The Royal Courts of Juſtice, of which the *Swediſh*, properly ſo called, is held at *Stockholm*, the *Gothic* at *Jonkoping*, and that of *Finland* at *Abo*.

3, The Royal War-College, which has the direction of all military affairs.

4. The College of Admiralty, which is held at *Carlſcron*.

5. The State-Office, in which the Prime Miniſter preſides: The Secretary of State is alſo a member of this College, that has the care of the records of the Kingdom.

6. The Royal Chamber of Finances.

7. The Royal Demeſne Chamber.

8. The Royal Chamber of Reviſion.

9. The Royal College of the Mines.

10. The Royal College of Commerce.

11. The Royal Chancery.

12. The Office of the States.

13. The Manufacture-Office.

Foreigners are excluded from all poſts in the government of *Sweden*.

§. 23. The new *Swediſh* Digeſt, or Book of Laws, after mature examination in the Diets held in 1731 and 1734, was allowed of by all the States, confirmed by the King, and promulged in the year 1736. It contains the new courſe of proceedings at law, whereby all law-ſuits are brought to a ſhort iſſue, and eaſily determined. The towns and Diſtricts of the Peaſants have their inferior courts, from which an appeal lies to the ſuperior or provincial courts; and from theſe again to the royal courts of juſtice mentioned in §. 22, N° 2. In the village-courts of judicature twelve Peaſants always ſit, as aſſiſtants, to try cauſes.

§. 24. King *Guſtavus Waſa* conſiderably increaſed the revenues of the Kingdom by ſequeſtering the church-lands; and *Charles* XI. made farther additions to them by the re-aſſumption of the alienated crown-lands. By the New Inſtrument of Government the ordinary revenues and out-goings of the Kingdom are placed upon the ſame footing as they were in 1696. The ordinary and extraordinary national expences for the Kingdom of *Sweden* and the great Dutchy of *Finland*, for the year 1753, amounted to ten millions two hundred forty thouſand four hundred and thirty-four ſilver

ſilver Dollars*. But this ſum could not be cleared by the ordinary national revenue, which does not exceed eight millions ſeven hundred forty-five thouſand ſeven hundred and eleven, including the ſum allowed to the King for his civil liſt, which was little leſs than a million of ſilver Dollars. The uſual grant to the King for his privy purſe is about two hundred thouſand ſilver Dollars, to the Queen one hundred thouſand, to the Princeſs and Princeſſes, the children of the reigning Monarch, thirty thouſand. The King has alſo twenty thouſand ſilver Dollars allowed him for travelling charges. The ſubſidies from *France* to the Crown of *Sweden* amount to three hundred ſeventy-two thouſand two hundred and twenty-two ſilver Dollars. The crown-debts are ſo great, that ſince the year 1753, the annual intereſt of them has amounted to one million twenty-eight thouſand two hundred and eighty-ſix ſilver Dollars. The far greateſt part of this ſum has been borrowed from the Bank, which, from the year 1741 to 1753†, has advanced ſeven millions four hundred and forty-ſeven thouſand ſilver Dollars to the crown.

§ 25. The Military Forces of *Sweden* conſiſt partly of raiſed, and partly of diſtributed regiments. The latter form the greateſt part, and are the national militia, which are maintained by the country according to an ordinance publiſhed by *Charles* XI. That Prince obliged the Nobility and Gentry, as well as the Peaſants, to provide and maintain both horſe and foot; of which every province furniſhes its contingency.

As for the infantry, every three *Hinman* provide a foot ſoldier, pay him his ſtipend, and furniſh him with a dwelling and a piece of land; but he has his accoutrements, arms, and ammunition, from the Crown; however certain provinces, in proportion to a contract made, alſo contribute ſomething towards theſe. The Crown alſo pays the principal and ſubaltern officers, and ſupplies the troops with proviſions when they are on their march or in the field, unleſs at the rendezvous of the regiments and companies when they meet in order to be muſtered.

As to the Cavalry, the muſter-maſter is obliged both in time of peace and war to pay the troopers, provide them with quarters, and their horſes with forage: He alſo keeps their arms and accoutrements in complete order. The field and ſubaltern officers have alſo their ſeveral ſtipends or rents allotted to them, as the common troopers. On a march and in the field the Crown provides ſubſiſtence and ammunition for the troopers, and forage for their horſes; however every muſter-maſter is obliged to furniſh his troopers with twelve charges for their muſket.

Jemteland maintains Dragoons, whom the Crown finds in arms and cloathing. The Peaſants contribute little or nothing in that province. But the *Jemtlanders* were formerly allowed twenty ſilver Dollars a man for theſe Dragoons.

* A ſilver Dollar is equal to 1*s*. 6*d*. $\frac{2}{3}$ ſterling, as mentioned above.

† The Author does not tell us whether inclusive or excluſive of theſe years.

The

The Peaſants may hire ſoldiers as labourers to do their work; and when ſuch a ſoldier finds himſelf maſter of a ſufficient parcel of arable and meadow-land, he generally marries; and, by that means, helps to people the country. As to the particular ſtate of the forces, they conſiſt,

I. Of INFANTRY: And theſe are,

1. Raiſed regiments, moſt of which ſerve as garriſons in the fortified places; and two of them are cantoned in *Pomerania*. Among theſe are alſo the King's Life-guards, which conſiſt of eighteen companies each of 100 men, and are quartered in *Stockholm*; and ſeven other regiments ſome of which conſiſt of 1000 men each, others of 1200, 1400, 1800, &c.

	Men.
Making in all —— — — — —	13,800
A regiment of artillery conſiſting of — — — This is the only corps of that kind in the whole kingdom, and is divided into twenty-ſix companies of gunners, four companies for fire-works, and four of pioneers. Theſe are upon the ſame duty as the infantry, and alſo have the ſame pay.	3000
2. The diſtributed regiments, which are one-and-twenty in number, excluſive of *Kymmengard*'s batallion of 128 men. Each of theſe regiments conſiſts of eight companies, excepting the regiments of *Nerike* and *Weremeland*, which have ten companies each. The complement of the leaſt of them is 1025 men, and of the largeſt regiment 1200, excluſive of the above named two regiments, which have 1674 men each. Altogether making — —	24,238
Conſequently the Infantry amount in all to — —	41,038.

II. Of CAVALRY, which conſiſts

1. Of ſeven regiments and one company. The King's regiment of Life-guards conſiſts of twelve troops, or 1505 men; the Standard of the Nobility, as it is called, of ſix troops, or 421 men; and the other regiments of eight troops, or 1000 men each. Conſequently the whole body of the Cavalry makes — —	7026
2. Of Dragoons, which conſiſt of three regiments and one ſquadron of 250 men, and altogether amount to -- -- - -	3154
Hence it appears that the total of the whole army is - - -	51,218.

In war time ſeveral extraordinary regiments are raiſed, which amount at leaſt to a number equal to this. The King's body-guard conſiſts of a troop of Halbardiers, and amount to 136 men, who all rank as Cornets.

The War-Office or College has the direction of the Military Forces, &c. and under it are the Commiſſary of war, the ordnance and pay-maſter's Offices;

Offices; thoſe of the militia, the fortifications, ſtores, camp, cloathing, quarters, &c. &c.

An Academy has been erected in *Sweden*, for inſtructing young Gentlemen in fortification, or military architecture, &c.

The Arſenals of the Kingdom are at *Stockholm*, *Oerebro*, and *Jonkioping*: But the arms are chiefly forged at *Jonkioping*, *Oerebro*, *Soderhamn*, *Nordtelge*, and *Nordkioping*; and are provided at the expence of the Crown by agents appointed for that purpoſe. The foundery for braſs cannon is at *Stockholm*; but the largeſt iron guns are caſt at *Stafio* and *Akers*; the ſmaller ſort at the foundery of *Jerendals*; the bombs and bullets at *Froſwidal* and *Elfſhutte*. A great quantity of ſalt-petre is alſo made in *Sweden*, where there are five powder-mills. All the neceſſary arms and implements of the army and artillery are made in the kingdom.

A College of invalids is founded at *Wadſtena* for twenty-eight field officers, nineteen ſubaltern officers, and twenty-two private men, who are there provided with lodging, firing, proviſion, and cloathing. Beſides theſe, above five hundred field officers, five hundred and fifty ſubalterns, and four thouſand private men have penſions and ſome other ſmall gratuities or perquiſites.

The Government is now repairing the fortifications on the frontiers; particularly thoſe in *Finland*, which are improved with the addition of new works. The laſt Diet aſſigned, for the interval between it and the next, which will be held in 1755, twelve *tons of gold* in ſilver money for the beforementioned uſes; eleven *tons of gold*, and forty thouſand ſilver dollars being appropriated to *Finland*, *Schonen*, and *Gothland*, and the remaining ſixty thouſand ſilver Dollars are reſerved for the other fortifications.

§. 26. The *Swediſh* Navy is diſtributed in three ports. The main fleet lies at *Carlſcron*; the ſecond Squadron at *Gothenburg*, and the third at *Stockholm*. The whole fleet conſiſts of

Twenty-four ſhips of war from the firſt to the ſixth rate, carrying from one hundred to forty-two guns.

Twelve Frigates carrying from thirty-ſix to twelve guns.

Four Brigantines carry from eight to ſix guns, with ſeveral Bomb-ketches, and forty gallies.

Sweden abounds in all kinds of naval ſtores, and only wants a ſufficient number of ſeamen. Thoſe that belong to the royal navy have habitations provided for them in *Oeland*, *Gottland*, *Halland*, *Blekingen*, *Medelpad*, *Angermannland*, and *Aland*. In the laſt Diet it was reſolved, to form a body of Sea-Cadets, who are to be under the direction of the college of Admiralty.

§. 27. In the preſent century *Sweden* loſt the following foreign dominions that once belonged to it, viz. *Livonia*, *Ingermannland*, and a conſiderable part of *Finland*; the Dutchy of *Bremen*, and principality of *Verden*; the city

of

of *Stettin* in *Pomerania*, and the Diſtricts lying betwixt the *Oder* and *Pene*, together with the iſlands of *Wollin* and *Uſedom*, and the Dutchy of *Deux Ponts*. Of its former conqueſts it ſtill retains *Bohus-Lehn*, a tract of land in *Norway*, part of Upper *Pomerania*, the iſland of *Rugen*, and the town of *Wiſmar*.

§. 28. I ſhall take no notice of the ancient diviſions of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, eſpecially as opinions are divided about them. It conſiſts at preſent of five diviſions or General Provinces, namely, the Kingdom of *Gothland*, *Sweden* properly ſo called, *Nordland*, *Lappland*, and *Finnland*. Theſe again with regard to the civil government are divided into twenty-four Particular Provinces; namely, *Upland*, *Stockholm*, *Skaraborg*, *Abo* and *Biorneborg*, *Cronoberg*, *Jonkioping*, *Weſtmannland*, *Nyſlott* and *Kymenegards-Lehn*, *Oſt-Gothland*, *Sudermannland*, *Nyland* and *Tawaſtehus*, *Elfsburg*, *Calmar* and *Oeland*, *Kopparberg*, *Nerike* and *Warmeland*, *Weſt-Nordland*, *Weſt-Bothnia*, *Gottland*, *Malmo*, *Chriſtianſtadt*, *Blekingen*, *Hallan*, *Gothenburg*, and *Bohus*. Theſe provinces are ſubdivided into *Harraden*, or Diſtricts, and the latter into pariſhes.

THE

THE KINGDOM OF GOTHLAND,

In Latin *Gothia*, and in Swediſh, *Gothaland*.

GOTHLAND to the eaſt and ſouth is bounded by the *Baltic*, or *Eaſt-ſea*; to the weſt by *Norway*, the *Sound*, and the *German Ocean*; and to the north by *Sweden* properly ſo called.

Its Arms are *Azure*, a lion rampant going over three ſtreams; by which the *Goths*, probably, intended to denote their warlike proweſs, and the ſucceſs of their arms in three of the principal parts of the world. Thoſe fierce and warlike *Goths* who emigrated from hence, and ſubdued ſo many countries, are ſaid to derive their name from *Goth*, a ſon of the god *Odin*, or from the *Gothic* word *Gieta*, *i. e.* 'to engender or breed,' on account of the ſurpriſing fecundity and increaſe of them in theſe northern climates.

Gothland had anciently its own Sovereigns; but *Suercher*, King of the *Oſtrogoths*, being proclaimed King of the *Swedes* and *Goths* in the year 1132, both theſe kingdoms were united under one Sovereign.

It is a very pleaſant and fertile country, conſiſting of fine plains and incloſures; and the greateſt part of the corn of the growth of *Sweden* is produced here. It alſo abounds in lakes and rivers which yield great quantities of fiſh, extenſive foreſts, and rich mines. The number of towns in *Gothland* amounts to forty-eight. It is divided into *Oſt* or *Eaſt-Gothland*, *Weſt-Gothland*, and *South-Gothland*, of which I ſhall give a particular account in their order.

EAST-GOTHLAND,

In Latin *Gothia Orienalis*,

THIS name, beſides *Oſt-Gothland*, or *Eaſt-Gothland*, properly ſo called, includes *Smaland*, with the iſlands of *Oeland* and *Gothland*. To begin, then, with

I. EAST-GOTHLAND, properly ſo called,

In Latin *Oſtro-Gothia*.

This country, which in former times was governed by particular Kings, and its own laws, is ſixteen *Swediſh* miles in length, and fifteen in breadth. It produces wheat, rye, barley, oats, peaſe, *&c.* in ſuch plenty as to ſupply the neighbouring provinces with theſe ſeveral ſorts of grain. It has alſo many fine orchards, rich meadows and paſtures, lakes and rivers abounding with variety of fiſh, extenſive foreſts, ſome of which are of oak and birch, profitable iron-mines, and foundaries; two braſs flatting mills, and other machines for the improvement of manufactures.

The occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fiſhing; and in ſome places they are employed in the mines.

The mountain called *Amberg* which lies about two *Swediſh* miles from *Wadſtena*, is of ſuch a vaſt height, that a perſon may have a view of fifty churches from the ſummit of it. Upon this mountain is a flat ſtone, under which one of the ancient Kings is ſaid to be interred. Among other remarkable mountains that of *Thors-klint*, in the pariſh of *Qwillinge*, on which formerly ſtood a fort, deſerves notice.

In the foreſt of *Kalmarden* is dug up fine marble, which has been mentioned above in the Introduction (§. 8.) And the reddiſh *violſtein* or violet-ſtone, which emits a very fragrant ſmell. Along the banks of the *Wetter*-lake is found agate, cornelians, touch-ſtone and *Klapperſtein* or rattle-ſtones. In the iron-mines at *Helleſtad* ſtucco-ſtones are dug up; antimony is found in mount *Amberg* near the *Wetter*-lake, white lead at *Stegeborg*, and beautiful petrifications in ſeveral parts of this country.

Among the twenty-three lakes, with which *Eaſt-Gothland* is watered and ſupplied with plenty of fiſh, the *Wetter* which lies between *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Gothland* is the moſt remarkable. For it extends fifteen *Swediſh* miles in length and two and a half in breadth, and contains the iſlands of *Wiſingſe* and *Stora Rocknen*. It has but one outlet by the river *Motala*, though above forty little ſtreams diſcharge themſelves into it. This lake alſo lies ſeventy ells * higher than either the *Baltic* or the *North-Sea*; and is deep and clear,

* About one hundred and forty feet probably, but the Author never informs us what ells he computes by.

but

but very boiſterous in winter. It is alſo ſuppoſed certainly to prognoſticate the approach of ſtormy weather.

The rivers that water *Eaſt-Gothland* are

1. The *Motala*, which receives ſeventeen rivulets: It iſſues from the *Wetter*-lake, and paſſing through the whole country empties itſelf into the *Baltic*. Near *Norrkioping* it precipitates its waters from a rock ſixteen fathoms high; and in ſome places its current ſeems to ſtand quite ſtill. Here, and likewiſe where it iſſues out of the *Wetter*-lake, is a fine ſalmon and eel-fiſhery.

2. The *Stang*, which diſcharges itſelf into the lake of *Roxen* below *Linkioping*, and divides the country into the eaſt and weſt parts.

3. The *Molby*, or *Nibro*, in which there is a pearl-fiſhery.

4. The *Kareſbo*. And

5. The *Skena*.

Eaſt-Gothland, with regard to its eccleſiaſtical ſtate, conſiſts of one dioceſe, which is that of *Linkioping*, and the ſecond in *Sweden* as to precedence: It includes two and twenty provoſtſhips.

Eaſt-Gothland is divided into one and twenty Diſtricts which belong to the *Hauptmannſchaft*, *i. e.* Government or Prefecture of *Linkioping*. Seventeen of theſe Diſtricts lie in the eaſt and north parts, and are included under the name of *Linkiopings-Lehn* or fief: And four lie in the weſtern part and conſtitute the *Lehn* or fief of *Wadſtena*.

LINKIOPING-LEHN is ſubdivided into three parts; namely,

1. *Oeſtan-Stang*, which lies on the eaſt ſide of the river *Stang* and the town of *Linkioping*, and contains nine *Harade* or Diſtricts, in which are the following places of note.

Norrkioping, in Latin *Norcopia*, is a Staple-town ſituated on the river *Motala*, which here falls into the gulf of *Bravicken*. It is next to *Stockholm* in extent, is reckoned one of the beſt cities in the Kingdom, and was formerly well fortified. In a Diet held here in the year 1604, Duke *Charles* was proclaimed King, and the famous hereditary union was enacted. In 1719, this city was deſtroyed by the *Ruſſians*; but has at preſent recovered itſelf after that calamity, and is in a good condition. It contains five churches; carries on a conſiderable trade; and has a new and commodious key. Here are alſo two copper-mills, a fine hammer-mill for braſs, a printing-houſe, ſeveral paper-mills, woollen manufactories, *&c.* *Norrkioping* is the third city that votes in the Diet. A view of it is to be ſeen in *Dalhberg*'s *Suecia*. A little way out of this city lies the palace of *Johannisburg*, which, in 1614, was built by Duke *John* of *Eaſt-Gothland*; but is now in a ruinous condition: And about a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile from the city the remains of a caſtle called *Ringſtaholm*, are to be ſeen, on an iſland in the river *Motala*.

Radga lies about two *Swediſh* miles and one fourth from *Norrkioping*. Here is the oldeſt manufactory in the whole Kingdom.

Soderkioping, in Latin *Sudercopia*, is a ſtaple town ſituated on a navigable river, and one of the moſt ancient cities in *Gothland*. It had formerly its own municipal laws, and was in a much more flouriſhing condition than it is at preſent. Two kings were crowned, and, in 1595, a Diet was held in this town. It has at preſent but two churches. Without the town near the eaſt toll-houſe is the ſpring called *Ragnild*'s well, ornamented with a little tower. This ſpring both in winter and ſummer continually runs through two pipes, and forms a rivulet. *Soderkioping* is the thirty-fifth, in order, of the towns, which vote at the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a proſpect of this city in his *Suecia*. Among the *Oſtro-Gothland ſheers* or rocks are the following places of note.

The noble quarries of marble, which is poliſhed at a place about two *Swediſh* miles from *Norrkioping*.

The royal palace of *Stegeborg*, whither the Kings and great men uſed to withdraw for ſafety in troubleſome times.

Bareſund, a ſtrait through which ſhips have a ſafe paſſage from the main ſea up to the two cities above-mentioned. Here is a cuſtom-houſe, where all ſhips that paſs this way are ſearched.

The crown lands of *Braborg*, the old palace belonging to which the *Ruſſians* deſtroyed in 1719.

Skenas, another royal eſtate, whoſe fine manſion-houſe was likewiſe burnt by the *Ruſſians*.

Guſum, a curious braſs flatting-mill.

The large and famous plain of *Brawalla*, in the Diſtrict of *Wikebo*, where, in the year of Chriſt three hundred and ſeventy-five, a moſt bloody battle was fought between the *Swedes* and *Danes*, in which the latter were defeated.

2. *Weſtan-Stang* lies on the weſt ſide of the river *Stang* and the city of *Linkioping*; and is divided into ſeven Diſtricts, containing the following remarkable places.

Linkioping, in Latin *Lincopia*, a very ancient town ſituated on the banks of the river *Stang*, not far from the *Roxen*-lake. The caſtle of *Linkioping* was built about the cloſe of the fifteenth century; and was once burnt down, but has been ſince well repaired. The cathedral was four times conſumed by fire from the year 1416 to 1567. This city is a biſhop's ſee, and has three churches; a *gymnaſium* or ſeminary with ſeven maſters, which was erected in 1628; a library near the cathedral, and a printing-houſe. There, are, however, but few mechanics and not one phyſician at *Linkioping*. The governor of *Eaſt-Gothland* reſides in this town. In the popiſh

popiſh times * this city had ſeveral convents and chapels. One of the Kings was crowned, and, in the year 1600, a remarkable Diet held at *Linkioping*. This is the twenty-ninth in order of the towns which have a vote at the Diet: A view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Wardsberg-church, which is one of the moſt ancient in *Eaſt-Gothland*, and is remarkable for the tower at the weſt end of it, which was formerly a fortreſs.

Wreta, a place where formerly ſtood a celebrated convent, which was one of the moſt ancient monaſteries in the Kingdom, It was alſo the burial-place of ſeveral Kings; but all that remains of it now are only ſome ruinous walls, and the church, which is in a good condition. A perſpective view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*. The monuments of King *Ingo*, Queen *Helena*, King *Magnus*, King *Suercher*, and King *Ragwald* are to be ſeen here.

3. The Mine-Diſtricts and *Finſpanga-Lehn*, on the north ſide of the lakes *Roxen* and *Glan*. Here ſtands the elegant palace of *Finſpang*, with the elevation of which *Dalhberg* has embelliſhed his *Suecia*.

The WADSTENA-LEHN is divided into four Diſtricts, in which the places of note are,

Skeninge, in Latin *Skeningia*, an ancient town ſituated in a fertile country on the river *Skena*. It was formerly a large and opulent city embelliſhed with ſeveral churches and convents; but is now very much declined from its former flouriſhing condition. The annual fair held here on the twenty-ninth of *July* is, however, one of the greateſt in the whole Kingdom. In the year 1248, a general council was held here purſuant to a bull of Pope *Innocent* IV. In that council the marriage of the clergy was prohibited as unlawful. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet, this is the forty-ninth in order. *Dahlberg* has given us a perſpective view of *Skeninge* in his *Suecia*.

Wadſtena, in Latin *Wadſtenum*, is very pleaſantly ſituated on the *Wetter*-lake. In ancient times here ſtood the caſtle of *Suſenborg*. The celebrated ancient convent of St. *Brita* which ſtands in this town, and was inhabited by Monks and Nuns, was in Queen *Chriſtina*'s time converted to an hoſpital of invalids for the ſoldiery. But a nunnery has ſince been erected here. In the convent church which is large and elegant, ſeveral royal perſonages are interred. The caſtle of *Wadſtena* is an ancient ſtructure; and makes a grand figure with its moats, redoubts, and drawbridges. It was built in the year 1545. A muſlin manufacture has been lately ſet up in this town. In the year 1567, this place was burnt by the *Danes*. Three remarkable Diets have been held at *Wadſtena*, which is the forty-eighth in order, of

* The author is ſo complaiſant as to call the times of popiſh idolatory and ſuperſtition *Catholic* times. If any thing could make thoſe dark ages deſerve the name of *Catholic* it was the ignorance which univerſally prevailed in moſt parts of the world.

the

the towns that have a voice at the Diet. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a perſpective view of this town in his *Suecia*.

The royal palaces of *Starby*, *Hafgarden*, and *Stoſtorp*.

The ruins of the ancient grand convent of *Alwaſtra*, in which four Kings of the *Suercherian* line, and other eminent perſons lie interred. Theſe ruins are alſo to be ſeen in *Dalhberg*'s *Suecia*.

Medewi, the moſt famous medicinal ſpring in the whole Kingdom, lies in a very pleaſant ſpot about three *Swediſh* miles from *Wadſtena*.

Hunger-quelle, another remarkable ſpring, lies in the pariſh of *Nykirke*, the water of which riſes and falls in the ſame proportion with the *Wetter*-lake. Its riſing is ſuppoſed to portend a dearth; hence it derives its name.

The Royal ſeat of *Motala*, where ſome remains of an old caſtle which ſtood near it, are to be ſeen.

Note. In the third volume of *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* are perſpective views of the following places:

The noble ſeat of *Breborg*, which is ſituated near *Brawiken*-bay.
Stegeborg, a palace, which ſtands near a gulf of the *Baltic*.
Allono, ſituated on the ſea coaſt.
Charlottenburg, which lies on the bank of the *Motala*.
Skenas, which ſtands near the *Brawiken*-bay.
Kongs Norby.
Idingſtä.
Lofſtad.
Mauritzberg, ſituated near the gulf of *Brawiken*.
Norſholm.
Rono, a fine caſtle.
Tuna, which ſtands between the lakes of *Roxen* and *Gardſion*.
Stiernorp, ſituated on the bank of the *Roxen*-lake.
Sturefors which lies near the *Erlangen*-lake.

II. *SMALAND* OR *SMOLAND*,

In Latin *Smolandia*.

THIS country is twenty *Swediſh* miles in length, and twelve in breadth; and was formerly governed by its own Kings. It was alſo for a conſiderable time included in *Eaſt-Gothland*, and had the ſame laws with that province. It was probably called *Smaland*, i. e. 'Small parcels of land,' becauſe in ancient times the country was ſo over-run with woods and waſtes, that

that the inhabitants could only cultivate a few ſpots here and there between them: And even to this day one meets with large heaps of ſtones in the woods, which were thrown together by the firſt inhabitants of this country, in order to clear the ground. Though *Smaland* is mountainous, thoſe parts which are cultivated and improved by induſtry are very fruitful; and it is particularly remarkable for fine paſtures, which bring in great profits to the graziers. Here are large foreſts of beech and other trees; and alſo ſilver, copper, and iron mines, *&c.* a great quantity of iron ore being found at the bottom of the lakes. A vein of gold ore has been likewiſe diſcovered in this province. The high mountain of *Hunsberg* reſembles a cone, and may be ſeen at the diſtance of eight *Swediſh* miles. The inhabitants get a comfortable ſubſiſtence by agriculture, the mines, and eſpecially by graziery. They alſo deal in planks, beams, maſts, tar, pot-aſh, iron, grain, cattle, butter, cheeſe, fleſh, bacon, tallow, hops, and fiſh. There are one and twenty lakes in this province; but they afford nothing remarkable. It is alſo watered by ten rivers, among which are

The *Emma*, in which are caught great numbers of ſalmon and ſhad.
The *Niſſa*.
The *Laga*. And
The *Helge-a*.

The *Swedes* have a rhyming phraſe concerning the three rivers laſt mentioned, ſignifying that *Niſſa*, and *Laga* have proved fatal to many, but *Helge-a* to a far greater number.

Smaland, with regard to its eccleſiaſtical State, conſiſts of two dioceſes, namely.

1. That of *Wexio*, whoſe biſhop is the ſixth in rank in the Kingdom. This dioceſe includes the Governments or Prefectures of *Cronoberg* and *Jonkioping* (excepting *Sodra* and *Norra Wedbo* which belong to the dioceſe of *Linkioping*, and *Moharad* in that of *Skara)* and contains twelve Provoſtſhips.

2. The dioceſe of *Calmar*, which is the eleventh of the *Swediſh* biſhoprics in order, and conſiſts of all the Prefecture or Government of *Calmar*, excepting ſome Diſtricts which belong to the dioceſe of *Linkioping*. The dioceſe of *Calmar* contains eight Provoſtſhips.

As to the political diviſion of *Smaland*, it contains three Prefectures, which include four and twenty Diſtricts. The Prefectures are as follow.

1. The Prefecture of CALMAR lies towards the *Sund* or Sound of *Calmar* and the *Baltic* or *Eaſt-Sea*, it contains nine Diſtricts, the iſland of *Oeland*, and the following places of note.

Calmar, in Latin *Calmaria*, a fine ſtaple city, and one of the oldeſt in *Gothland*, lies on the main ſea, oppoſite to the iſle of *Oeland*. The form of it is nearly round; it has fine regular ſtreets, and about four hundred and ninety houſes. *Calmar* formerly ſtood on another ſpot and had ſeveral churches

churches and convents; but being deſtroyed by fire in 1647, it was afterwards built on the iſland of *Qwarnholm*. It is ſurrounded on the land ſide with four walls, and moats; but has only one wall towards the ſea. At the diſtance of a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile from the town ſtands the ſtrong fort of *Grimſkiar*; and towards the North, on the iſland of *Karinglaret*, is alſo another fort. *Calmar* caſtle ſtands near the Sound or Strait, oppoſite to the city, and has two ditches. It is ſo well fortified, that it was formerly not only the ſtrongeſt fort in the whole kingdom; but when *Schonen* and *Blekingen* were diſmembered from *Sweden*, it was looked upon as a key of the kingdom of *Gothland*, and the moſt important fortreſs on the frontiers. Hence, in all the wars with *Sweden*, the *Danes* have never failed to direct their forces againſt it, and ſometimes have carried it. In this city the famous union of *Calmar* was concluded between the three Northern Kingdoms; and King *Erick* of *Pomerania* was crowned King of all the three. Several articles of the Convention of *Calmar*, concluded in 1474 and 1483, alſo received the ſanction of laws. In the year 1495, a Diet, or aſſembly of the States, was held here. The Prefect or Governor reſides in the royal palace of *Hoſmo* near this city. Here are alſo a Biſhop's palace, a *Gymnaſium* or ſeminary, a fine cathedral, and a commodious key for ſhipping; and the town is ſurrounded with a royal chace. A great quantity of deal boards, tar, and alum, is annually exported from this town; which has alſo good manufactories of cloths and woollen ſtuffs. The Sound, which runs between the caſtle and the iſland of *Oeland*, is called *Calmar* Sound, and is about a *Swediſh* mile over. A freſh ſpring in the midſt of the ſea near this town deſerves notice. In the Diet this is the ſeventh city in the order of voting. A perſpective view of it is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Bromſebro lies on the borders of *Blekingen*, and, as its name denotes, has a great bridge over a river which here diſcharges itſelf into the main ſea. A ſmall iſland lies in the middle of the river, on which two ſtones are erected for boundaries. In the years 1541 and 1572, a congreſs was held here to ſettle ſome diſputes concerning the arms of the three Northern Crowns; and in 1645, a peace was concluded between *Sweden* and *Denmark* in this town.

Wemmerby, in Latin *Wemmaria*, a ſmall, but very ancient town, ſtands very high, and not far from the river *Stang*. *Charles* IX. raiſed it from its declining condition; ſo that it is now the eighty-ſecond of the towns that vote in the Diet. In eccleſiaſtical affairs it is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Linkioping*. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a perſpective view of it in his *Suecia*.

Hollaweden is a large foreſt, in which the *Danes* were defeated by the *Swedes* in the fifteenth century.

Weſterwick,

Weſterwick, in Latin *Weſterwickia*, is a ſtaple town ſituated near a bay, at the entrance of which ſtands *Spareberg* hill, which ſerves as a land-mark to ſhips. The bay is called *Spareſund*; and near it is a cuſtom-houſe, where all homeward and outward bound ſhips are ſearched. *Weſterwick* formerly ſtood two *Swediſh* miles higher up in the country, on the ſpot where the market-town of *Gammelly* now ſtands. It has a good harbour, a commodious key, and a cloth-manufacture; and carries a briſk trade in ſhip-timber and all ſorts of naval ſtores. As to eccleſiaſtical affairs, it is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Linkioping*. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet this is the twelfth in order. *Dahlberg* has given a perſpective view of it in his *Suecia*.

Stegeholm, or *Stakeholm*, is a ruinous palace. The eſtate belonging to it was twice granted as a County; but ſince the year 1681, it reverted to the crown.

Ofwrum, a foundery for great guns.

2. The Government or Prefecture of CRONOBERG, which contains ſix Diſtricts, in which are the following towns, and places of note.

Wexio, in Latin *Wexionia*, a town ſituated almoſt in the centre of the province. It is the reſidence of the Prefect or Governor, and alſo a Biſhop's ſee. It is ſaid to have been built in the reign of King *Olaf Skotkonung*, who, according to ſome writers, founded this biſhopric in the year 989; though others affirm that it was firſt founded in 1030. In the year 1570, this town was reduced to aſhes by the *Danes*. In the times of Popery here was a convent. A *Gymnaſium* or Seminary was founded here in 1648; but the library, and the cathedral which was above nine hundred years old, and was the burying place of St. *Siegfried* its founder, were deſtroyed by fire in 1740. Here is alſo ſhewn the ſpring in which St. *Siegfried* is ſaid to have baptized a great number of converts. This city has the thirty-third vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a perſpective view of it in his *Suecia*.

Trojenborg is ſaid, in former times, to have been a caſtle, and *Troja* a town near it; its remains being ſtill to be ſeen in the pariſh of *Nykirke*, where the old fortification of *Trolleborg*, which was burnt in 1434, alſo ſtood. *Dahlberg* has given a good draught of this part of the country.

Cronoberg, which ſtands on a ſmall iſland in the *Helge*-lake, was formerly a fine caſtle. It was built, in 1002, by St. *Siegfried*, the firſt preacher of the Goſpel in theſe parts, and was by him ſettled on the popiſh Biſhops of this See. But in the year 1545, it was enlarged and walled in by King *Guſtavus* I. and its former name of *Biſkopſberg* was changed into that of *Cronoberg*. In the reign of King *Erick* XIV. it was conſumed by fire; ſo that only the ruins of it are now remaining, which *Dahlberg* has inſerted in his *Suecia*. However, it ſtill gives name to the fief or *Lehn* of *Cronoberg*.

Fallerne is a famous medicinial ſpring, about half a *Swediſh* mile from *Wexio*.

Ingelſtad is a noted inn and poſt-houſe, about a *Swediſh* mile and a half from *Wexio*, and was formerly a royal palace, with a caſtle.

Browalla-Heide, or *Browalla*-heath, lies about two *Swediſh* miles from *Wexio*, and is famous for being the place where the *Danes* were totally routed by the heroine *Blenda*, who commanded the *Smaland* women in the abſence of their huſbands that were engaged in another expedition. As a recompenſe of their bravery the women of *Smaland* were honoured with extraordinary privileges, and wore a kind of martial head-dreſs: And they have ſtill an equal ſhare of inheritance with the men. *Dahlberg* has added to his map of this country ſome draughts of its antiquities.

3. The Prefecture of JONKIOPING is divided into nine Diſtricts, and contains the following towns and places of note.

Jonkioping, in Latin *Junecopia*, a very ancient ſtaple town, ſituated on a peninſula between the lakes of *Wetter*, *Munk*, and *Rock*. *Jonkioping* formerly ſtood in another place, but the inhabitants were removed hither in the reign of *Guſtavus Adolphus*. The ſuburbs, on both ſides, are ſeparated from the town by a canal, which conveys water out of the *Lill*-lake into that of *Rock*. In this town are three churches, an armory, an elaboratory, and an arſenal which belongs to the crown; fire arms are alſo made here. The ſupreme court of Juſtice for *Gothland*, which was inſtituted in the year 1634, is held in this town; and ten provincial with forty-eight inferior courts, are under its juriſdiction. The Prefect or Governor of this *Lehn* or Fief reſides at *Jonkioping*. Here was formerly a mint, and a convent of regulars. The caſtle, which is of great antiquity, after having been ſeveral times deſtroyed, was rebuilt and fortified; but at laſt, in the year 1737, it was conſumed by fire, together with the arſenal. In the year 1599, a Diet was held here. Near the town is a royal chaſe, or foreſt, planted with oaks This town has the twenty-ſeventh vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of *Jonkioping*.

Ridaholm is a pariſh, in which formerly ſtood a royal palace.

Rumlaborg, or *Romlaborg*, is a ruinous royal palace and fortification, of which *Dahlberg* has given a perſpective view in his *Suecia*.

Huſquarn lies near a cataract or water-fall, and has a fine powder-mill. Fire arms are alſo made in this place. All theſe are repreſented in *Dalhberg*'s *Suecia*.

Hwetlanda is a market-town, where ſeveral ruinous remains of an ancient populous town called *Witala* are to be ſeen.

The pariſh of *Alſheda*, where, in 1738, the gold mine of *Aedelfors* was diſcovered, which was wrought with great ſucceſs.

Ekeſio, in Latin *Ekeſioea*, is an inland town of great trade in oxen, tapeſtry, bedſteds, chairs, and other furniture. The *Ekeſio* tobacco is alſo in great requeſt.

requeſt. This town lies within the dioceſe of *Linkioping*, and has the fifty-eighth vote in the Diet. A view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Grenna, or *Brahe Grenna*, is a ſmall town lying between the *Wetter*-lake and a high mountain. It is oppoſite to *Wiſingſo*, and derives its name from Count *Peter Brahe*, by whom it was built. *Grenna* trades largely in oxen, and has a tobacco plantation. This is the ninety-eighth in order of the towns that vote in the Diet; and has a place in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Wiſingſo, in Latin *Wiſingia*, is a fertile and pleaſant iſland in the *Wetter*-lake. It is a *Swediſh* mile long, and half a mile broad; and was formerly fortified with a ſuperb caſtle, built by the *Brahe* family, from which they had the title of Counts. In the reign of *Charles* XI. this iſland devolved to the crown; and in 1718, the caſtle was burnt by the *Ruſſian* priſoners. Here are a *gymnaſium*, a ſchool, a park, and a remarkable grotto called *Gilberts-loch*. This iſland in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries was frequently the reſidence of the *Gothic* Kings.

Note. In the third volume of *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* are perſpective views of the following Noblemens ſeats.

Wiſenborg.
Waſtana, ſituate on the *Wetter*-lake.
Berqwara.
Brokin.
Braehaella.
Ekeſio town-houſe.
Brahehuus, which ſtands on the *Wetter*-lake.
Griepenberg.

III. *OELAND*.

In Latin *Oelandia*.

THIS pleaſant iſland lies in the *Baltic*, directly oppoſite to the *Calmar* Sound. It is fourteen *Swediſh* miles in length, and but a mile and a half over in the broadeſt place; and is divided into the *North* and *South Parts*. In the former are ſeveral fine foreſts, and a great many ſtone quarries; but in the latter the ground is more level, and fit both for tillage and paſture. The iſland in general yields plenty of butter, honey, wax, and nuts. The *Oeland* horſes, or *kleppers*, as they are called, are ſmall, but ſtrong and full of mettle. The King's foreſt extends over the whole iſland. Here are alſo numbers of deer of ſeveral kinds, with

hares, and wild boars. Both parts of the iſland abound in alum-mines. The *Oeland Sandſtein*, or free-ſtone, comes from this iſland, which is much harder than that of *Gottland*; and alſo black marble, or touch-ſtone. The *Alga*, or ſea-weed, is uſed here, with pretty good effect, inſtead of other manure. The inhabitants, who are ſaid to exceed ſeven thouſand ſouls, have various occupations; being employed in agriculture, working in the quarries, cutting ſtones, burning lime, fiſhing, and navigation. The ſailors belonging to the crown are generally quartered in this iſland. The four Provoſtſhips, into which *Oeland* is divided, are in the Dioceſe of *Calmar*.

In the *North Part*, which conſiſts of three Diſtricts, are the following places of note.

Borgholm, which is a ſtately royal ſeat and well fortified. It has been ſeveral times taken by the *Danes*; but the *Swedes* have always inſiſted on its being given up to them again by treaties. When *Charles* X. was only preſumptive heir to the crown he reſided here; the revenues of the iſland being appropriated to that Prince; and by his order, the old palace being pulled down, the preſent edifice was built. Near it is the commodious harbour of *Borga*; and a royal farm lies at a ſmall diſtance from it. *Dalhberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given us three views of this caſtle.

The royal palaces of *Horn* and *Haltorp*.

Jungfrun is a high and dangerous rocky iſland in the ſea, and has proved fatal to many ſhips. It is about a *Swediſh* mile in circumference, and lies at the diſtance of three *Swediſh* miles from the north point of *Oeland*. On the ſummit of it is a ſmall lake.

In the *South Part*, which conſiſts of four Diſtricts, is the large royal farm of *Ottenby*, noted for its fine breed of ſheep.

IV. *GOTTLAND.*

In Latin *Gottlandia*.

THIS is an iſland in the *Baltic* about eighteen *Swediſh* miles in length, and from five to ſix in breadth. From its convenient ſituation it has juſtly acquired the name of the *Eye of the Baltic*. It was formerly governed by its own Kings, and had its peculiar laws and privileges; but is now ſubject to the Supreme Court of Juſtice at *Stockholm*. It is ſaid to have been called *Gottland* from having been the winter quarters of the *Goths*, when they put to ſea on naval expeditions and piracies.

The ſoil is fertile; and there are fine woods of oaks and pines, good paſtures, and profitable fiſheries on this iſland. In *Burſwick* are large

quarries of ſtone, particularly the famous *Gottland*-ſtone, and a ſoft grey ſandy-ſtone, which are exported to *Stockholm* and other places. Here are alſo found ſome curious ſpecies of ſtones, as ſtone corals, and branches of coral ſtones of ſeveral kinds, cornelians, agates, and beautiful petrefactions. In former times here were alſo fine marble quarries. Very good lime-ſtones, tar, deal-boards, beams, turneps, and an excellent breed of ſheep are exported from this iſland. *Gottland* is not infeſted with bears or wolves; but is ſufficiently ſtocked with deer, foxes, and hares.

The inhabitants ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, fiſhing, working in the quarries, burning lime; and by ſeveral ſorts of mechanic trades, and navigation. The *Gottland* peaſants ſell none of their commodities to the inhabitants of the towns; but when a peaſant comes to a market-town, the burgher to whom he applies finds him in all neceſſaries, gives him money to enable him to pay his taxes, and provides him with all neceſſary commodities. On the other hand, the peaſant delivers up to the burgher all the produce of his induſtry, without ſaying a word about the price; and thus both parties act according to the dictates of natural juſtice and equity.

In the year 1361, *Waldemar*, King of *Denmark*, ravaged this iſland, and laid it waſte; but it ſtill remained ſubject to the crown of *Sweden*. *Albert* King of *Sweden*, after an expenſive war, was obliged to mortgage it to the Knights of the Croſs in *Pruſſia*, who, in conſideration of a ſum of money delivered it up, in 1403, to Queen *Margaret*, though with ſome reluctancy. King *Erick*, of *Pomerania*, after he was dethroned, withdrew to this iſland, where he remained for three years: And when *Charles* VIII. was preparing to drive him from *Gottland*, and make a conqueſt of it in the year 1449, *Erick* made an offer of it to *Chriſtian* I. King of *Denmark*. It remained in the poſſeſſion of the *Danes* till the year 1645, when, by the treaty of *Bromſebro*, it was reſtored to *Sweden*. Round *Gottland* lie twenty iſlands large and ſmall. The Superintendent is the fourteenth in rank; and the dioceſe is compoſed of the city of *Wisby* and three Provoſtſhips. The whole iſland forms but one Prefecture or Government, which conſiſts of two juriſdictions and two *Vogteys*.

Gottland is divided into three parts, namely, the North, Middle, and South Part; the firſt of which contains ſeven; the ſecond ſix; and the third ſeven Diſtricts. The only places worth notice are the following.

Wisby, in Latin *Wisbia*, a very ancient ſtaple city; ſituated in another place till the year 800, when the inhabitants were removed to the preſent town. In former times it was one of the *Hanſe-towns*, and made a conſiderable figure in the kingdom. When *Wineta*, a place of great trade in the iſland of *Uſedom* near the coaſt of *Pomerania*, was deſtroyed by an inundation, ſeveral of its wealthieſt inhabitants removed to *Wisby*. It was likewiſe frequented by *Swedes*, *Goths*, *Danes*, *Normans*, *French*, *Engliſh*, *Saxons*, *Livonians*, *Spaniards*, *Ruſſians*, *Greeks*, and other nations. In the times

times of popery there were three churches and five convents within the city, beſides two without the walls. The maritime laws of *Wisby* were famous in all parts, and adopted along the coaſt of the *Baltic*. The wall of *Wisby*, and the towers with which it is flanked, were built in the year 1289. This city continued in a flouriſhing condition till the year 1361, when the *Danes*, making themſelves maſters of the town, almoſt totally deſtroyed it. *Erick*, the *Pomeranian*, built the caſtle called *Wisberg* in 1411, which was diſmantled by the *Danes* in 1649. Here was formerly a good library, which contained ſeveral curious manuſcripts. *Wisby* is the reſidence of the Superintendent and Prefect, and has a church and a ſchool: It is at preſent in a pretty flouriſhing condition. The harbour is ſafe and commodious, but not very large. Of the towns that have a vote in the Diet this is the fourteenth in order. *Dahlberg* has given us both a plan and perſpective view of this city in his *Suecia*.

The royal manor of *Roma* or *Ruma*-convent, where there is a ſtately convent; and *Slotts-Ladugarden*.

Carlſwerd is a fort, built by King *Charles* X. on *Ekeholm*, near *Slitehamn*, which is the beſt and largeſt of all the harbours in this Diſtrict.

Far-o, a pleaſant iſland lies about a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile from the continent. It is about two *Swediſh* miles in length and conſiſts of two pariſhes.

Sand-o is an iſland famous for a ſeal-fiſhery.

The *Great* and *Little Carls-Inſel*, or *Charles*'s *Iſlands*, lie about a *Swediſh* mile from the coaſt. Here formerly was a quarry out of which marble for building the churches in *Gottland* was dug up.

WEST-GOTHLAND,

In Latin *Gothia occidentalis*,

CONTAINS four Provinces, *Weſt-Gothland*, properly ſo called, *Warmeland*, *Daland*, and *Bohns-Lehn*.

I. *WEST-GOTHLAND*,

In Latin *Weſtro-Gothia*.

This Province lies below the *Wener*-lake, and is twenty *Swediſh* miles in length, and ſixteen in breadth. It was formerly governed by its own Kings. and had its particular laws and privileges, The ſoil produces fruit-trees, corn, and vegetables; and the paſtures are ſo rich that grazing turns

turns to very good account here; ſo that the inhabitants can ſupply other parts with cheeſe, butter, &c. the former being much admired. Here are iron and alum works, and paper-mills; and near *Gothenburg* are ſeveral fine fiſheries. The occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture, grazing, fiſhing, and traffick.

On a mountain called *Kina Kulle*, between the lakes of *Wener* and *Skare*, (which moſtly conſiſts of ſlate, ſand-ſtone, and lime-ſtone, and at the diſtance of eight or nine *Swediſh* miles off reſembles a hat,) are five pariſhes, and ſeveral Noblemens ſeats, with gardens and orchards. On the high mountains of *Warkullen* are thirty-eight churches; and on *Hunneberg*, where the *Huns* were defeated with a terrible ſlaughter, are three-and-twenty lakes, and ſeveral rivulets which ſet ſix mills in motion. Some of the rocks on this mountain look like *Ionic* and *Corinthian* pillars. *Hakla* another hill, which ſtands in a fine valley betwixt *Hall* and *Hunneberg*, like *Moſſeberg*, is remarkable for a high precipice; from which, in the dark ages of Paganiſm, many devotees uſed to throw themſelves headlong, from a falſe principle of religion. The bodies of thoſe wretched victims were firſt waſhed, and then buried under the hill. *Dahlberg* has given us a fine view of this mountain in his *Suecia*.

The *Wener*-lake is fourteen *Swediſh* miles long, and ſeven broad, and ebbs and flows in an extraordinary manner. This lake is ſtored with great plenty of fiſh. Four-and-twenty rivers empty themſelves into the *Wener*-lake, yet none flows out of it but the large river called *Gotha-Elbe*, by which outlet it diſcharges itſelf into the ſea. There are ſeveral iſlands in this lake. In the year 1744, the Diet reſolved to make the paſſage from the *Wener*-lake and the *Gotha-Elbe* to *Gothenburg*, and from thence to *Oerebro*, navigable. The chief rivers in this province are,

1. The *Halle*. There is a view of the cataract formed by this river, in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

2. The *Gotha-Elbe*, or *Gothic* river, which iſſues from the *Wener*-lake, and empties itſelf into the *North-Sea* near *Gothenburg*. About ſeven *Swediſh* miles and a half from its mouth is the ſtupenduous cataract or water-fall of *Trollhatta*. The water is here precipitated between two rocks, and conſiſts of three caſcades, each of which is about five fathoms high; but they are about three hundred fathoms from one another. Half a *Swediſh* mile from the water-fall, near the village of *Rownam*, is a bridge, built from one rock to another, over another high cataract formed by this river, at the bottom of which great numbers of fine ſalmon are caught; and two *Swediſh* miles lower down is another water-fall, where the boats and other veſſels paſs through three ſluices. The two cataracts firſt mentioned make a fine appearance in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*. The timber is floated to *Gothenburg* down this river; and ſince the time of *Charles* XII. a project has been formed to make it every where navigable.

3. The

3. The *Gullſpang*, which divides *Eaſt-Gothland* from *Warmeland*. There are ſeveral other lakes in the province, beſides the *Wener* and the *Wetter*.

Weſt-Gothland, as to its eccleſiaſtical State, is divided into two dioceſes; namely, that of *Skara*, which is the third in rank, and includes fifteen Provoſtſhips; and that of *Gothenburg*, which is the tenth in rank, and, excluſive of the city of *Gothenburg*, contains nine Provoſtſhips. With regard to its political eſtabliſhment, this province conſiſts of the following Prefectures or Governments.

1. The Government of GOTHENBURG, which contains four Diſtricts, and the following towns and places of note.

Gotheborg, or *Gothenburg*, in Latin *Gothoburgum*, a Staple town, firſt built by *Charles* IX. in 1607, on the iſland of *Hiſingen*, about half a *Swediſh* mile from the fortreſs of *Ufsborg*. But being deſtroyed in the year 1611 by *Chriſtian* IV. the inhabitants about ſeven years after, in the reign of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, were removed to the place where the town now ſtands, and were favoured with ſeveral eminent privileges. *Gothenburg* is the principal and moſt opulent town, and carries on the moſt conſiderable trade of any city in *Sweden*, excepting *Stockholm*. It lies on the borders of *Weſt-Gothland*, at the mouth of the river *Moludal*; which runs cloſe by the north ſide of the city, and by means of ſeveral canals is conveyed through the town. Since the year 1746, the greateſt part of *Gothenburg* has been rebuilt with ſtone; and the ſtreets are broad, and kept very clean. It is alſo regularly fortified; and on the land ſide is defended by the two citadels called the *Lion* and the *Crown*; and towards the ſea by the citadel of *New-Elfsburg*. The ſuburb is called *Haga*. The Governor of the Prefectures of *Gothenburg* and *Bohus*, who is alſo the commandant of the forts and fortifications, reſides in this city. *Gothenburg* is alſo a Biſhop's See. Here are two Printing-houſes; a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary, erected in 1648; an Orphan-houſe; a City-church; an edifice called the *Kronhaus*, or Crown-houſe, where the garriſon attend divine ſervice; a *German*-church; and ſeveral keys and docks. The number of the inhabitants in this city is computed at 13,000. In the year 1635, a Mint was ſet up in this town; but it was deſtroyed by a terrible fire which reduced this place to aſhes in 1669. *Gothenburg* was alſo very much damaged by fire in 1721 and 1746. In 1658 and 1660, Diets or aſſemblies of the States were held here. In the year 1731, an *Eaſt-India* Company was eſtabliſhed in this city, which has, ſince that time, ſent a conſiderable number of ſhips to thoſe parts. In the ſame year a Sugar-houſe was erected in the *Old town*, as it is called, about half a *Swediſh* mile from *Gothenburg*, which turns out to a good account. It may be ſuppoſed that a great number of ſhips frequent *Gothenburg*, as the veſſels ſailing from all foreign ſea-ports without the *Cattegat*, may enter this port without being obliged to paſs through the *Sound*, or the *Baltic*. The harbour is at preſent

preſent an excellent one; but the depth of water is ſaid gradually to decreaſe in it. Here is held a College of Admiralty; and a ſquadron of men of war lies in this port. A brigade of Engineers, and a conſtant garriſon are alſo kept in this city. In the year 1740, a General Court-martial, a *Leuterations Gericht* or Court of Appeal, *&c.* were eſtabliſhed in this town. In the ſame year, an iron weighing-houſe, two docks for ſhip-building, and two woollen-manufactories were ſet up here. Without *Carlsport* a ſpring of medicinal water was diſcovered in the year 1711. *Dahlberg* in his *Suecia*, has given a perſpective view of this city, and likewiſe of the King's, and the Queen's Gate. *Gothenburg* is the fourth in order among the towns which have a vote in the Diet.

Gulberg, *Gulbrandſhus*, or *Gulbergſhed*, is a fortreſs built in the year 1304 by King *Birger*, and put in a defenſible ſtate by *Charles* XI.

Kronan, i. e. 'the Crown,' is a fort built on a hill cloſe by *Gothenburg:* It was erected in the year 1639.

Neu-Elfsborg, an excellent fortification, built in the year 1646. It ſtands about a *Swediſh* mile from *Gothenburg*, and defends it towards the ſea. *Dahlberg* has given views of theſe forts in his *Suecia*.

Hiſingen, is a triangular iſland, and lies between *Bohus* and *Gothenburg*. It is three *Swediſh* miles long and one broad, and conſiſts of three *Paſtorates* and ſeven pariſhes: it is divided into *Eaſt* and *Weſt Hiſingen*.

Nylodeſe, in Latin *Ludoſia Nova*, but now called *Gamla-ſtadt*, or the *Old Town*, lies directly oppoſite to the iſland of *Hiſingen*. It was formerly a very flouriſhing town, being ſituated on the *North-Sea*, and was governed by its own laws. This town was built in the year 1545. The burghers of *Gamla*, or *Old Lodeſe*, obtained leave to remove hither, and live in *New Lodeſe* for the conveniency of trade as it ſtands nearer the ſea. But the town being entirely burnt by the *Danes* in 1611, the inhabitants withdrew to *Alingſahs*.

Gamla-Elfsborg, or *Old Efsborg*, was formerly a town with a ſtrong caſtle built on the ſea-coaſt. It has, from time to time, ſuſtained ſeveral ſieges and undergone many ſevere calamities; particularly during the turbulent times in the fifteenth century. In the year 1563, this town was burnt, and the caſtle ſurrendered to the *Danes*; but was again reſtored to the crown of *Sweden*. In 1611, the *Danes* became maſters of it again, and, about two years after, it was reſtored a ſecond time to the *Swedes*. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Gamla-Lodeſe, or *Old Lodeſe*, was formerly a conſiderable and well fortified town, and lies about four *Swediſh* miles from *Neu Lodeſe* mentioned above. In 1296 and 1304, it was reduced to aſhes; and, at laſt, in the reign of *Guſtavus* I. the inhabitants removed to *Altſtat* or the *Old Town* near *Neu Lodeſe*. However, it retained its ancient privileges till the year 1646, when Queen *Chriſtina* reduced it to a manor or farm. Several re-

mains of this town are ſtill viſible, as the ruins of churches, convents, walls, &c.

Note. To this Prefecture or Government alſo belongs *Bohus-Lehn*.

2. The Prefecture or Government of ELFSBORG is divided into thirteen Diſtricts, containing, among others, the following towns and places of note.

Wenersborg, in Latin *Wenersburgum*, a *Landſtadt* * or inland town, lies between the lakes of *Wener* and *Washohn*, at the efflux of the *Gotho-Elbe* out of the former. It was built in the year 1642, by the burghers of *Bretta*, a town ſituated about half a *Swediſh* mile from *Wenersborg*. All the iron conſigned from *Warmeland* to *Gothenburg* paſſes through this place. The Prefect, or Governor, of the *Lehn* or fief reſides in this town, which was formerly well fortified. Among thoſe cities which have a vote in the Diet this is the forty-fourth in order.

Edsborg, or *Edsholm*, was formerly a round fortreſs environed with water, and the reſidence of the ancient Kings of the *Viſigoths*.

Alingſahs, is an inland town ſituated on the banks of the river *Sewelanga*; and was built by the inhabitants of *Ny-Lodeſe*, after the deſtruction of their town by the enemy. A fine ſilk and woollen manufacture is eſtabliſhed here. Tobacco is alſo ſpun; and tobacco pipes are made in this town. *Alingſahs* has no magiſtrates, but is ſubject to the Juſticiary of the ſaid manufactures, to whom are joined four counſellors, as aſſiſtants. This is the eighty-firſt voting town in the Diet. A view of it is to be ſeen in *Dalhberg*'s *Suecia*.

Borahs, in Latin *Boeroſia*, is an inland town ſituated in a mild and mountainous country, on the river *Wiska*. It was founded by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*, and in the year 1622, endowed with ſeveral privileges. The inhabitants of this town travel the whole Kingdom as pedlars, and deal in linen, &c. for which end they alſo have ſeveral privileges beyond what other towns enjoy. Theſe itinerant dealers are ſo accuſtomed to travel about with their goods, that they look upon it as ſomething irreputable to ſtay at home even for one half of the year. In 1727, this town was deſtroyed by fire; but has ſince been rebuilt and continues in a good condition. Here is a ſpring of medicinal water. *Borahs* has the forty-third vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Quarſebo, where there is a Poſt-Office.

Kialeby and *Alfwom*, which are Crown demeſnes.

Ulricahamn is a very old inland town ſituated on the banks of the *Aſunda*-lake. It was formerly called *Bogeſund*; but its preſent name was given it in the Diet of 1741, in memory of Queen *Ulrica Eleanora*.

* *Landſtadt*, which I have rendered an inland town, is a place where there is a magazine for goods. See Introduction to *Sweden*.

It

It carries on a good trade in cattle, proviſions, tobacco, *&c.* In the year 1520, a battle was fought in theſe parts between the *Swedes* and the *Danes*. *Ulricahamn* has the ſixty-firſt vote in the Diet, and has a place in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Rinnaholm, or *Rinnahus*, is a ruinous frontier fortification.

Oereſten is an ancient manor belonging to the Crown. A palace ſtood here formerly, near which King *Chriſtian* I. loſt a battle. The Lordſhip about it is called *Oereſte-Lehn*.

Note. This Diſtrict belongs to *Eaſt-Gothic Thal-land*.

3. The Prefecture of SKARABORG conſiſts of fifteen Diſtricts, and contains the following towns and places of note.

Skara, formerly called *Skaurum*, in Latin *Scarum*, is the moſt ancient city in the country; and was formerly the capital of the Kingdom of *Gothland*, and the reſidence of many of its Kings. It had alſo ſeveral churches and convents, the ruins of which are ſtill to be ſeen. This town was totally deſtroyed by fire in 1719, ſo that, at preſent, the number of its inhabitants does not exceed four hundred. Here is a *gymnaſium* or ſeminary which was erected in the year 1640; and the cathedral is one of the largeſt ſtructures of that kind in the whole Kingdom. The Royal palace which ſtood near this city, and was built in 1545, was laid in aſhes by the *Danes*, together with the whole town, in the year 1611. A little without the town is a park; and at a ſmall diſtance from it ſtands *Brunsbo* an epiſcopal See. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet this is the thirty-ſecond in order. A view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Scaraborg, formerly a fortified royal caſtle, lies about half a *Swediſh* mile north of the town of *Skara:* Some ruins of it are ſtill exiſting. *Scaraborg Lehn* or fief derives its name from this ruinous caſtle.

Gellaquiſt, *Gothala*, and *Axewal*, were formerly fine caſtles but now lie in ruins. *Dahlberg* has, however, beſtowed a plate on the firſt and laſt of them.

Hogentorp is an ancient crown manor which lies in a moſt delightful country. The manſion-houſe affords a view of two-and-thirty lakes. Here is a breed of *Engliſh* ſheep for the uſe of the woollen manufactory at *Alingſahs*; and likewiſe a plantation of tobacco, and a fine park.

Warnhem was formerly a convent, built in the year 1150, by King *Suercher*. Several kings lie buried in this monaſtery. The church was repaired by Count *Magnus Gabriel de la Gardie*; and a proſpect of it, with draughts of the tombs of King *Knut* and *Erick* X. and King *Erick* XI. and alſo *Jugo* and the above-mentioned Count, is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Huſaby, formerly a celebrated royal palace, was by King *Olof Skotkonung* converted into a Chriſtian church, where together with his conſort, he lies interred. This church was the firſt cathedral erected in *Sweden*; and

Huſaby was the moſt ancient Biſhop's See, and had the firſt Chriſtian ſchool in the Kingdom. Near the Biſhop's palace, which now lies in ruins, is the famous ſpring called *Siegfried*'s well, where King *Olof* was baptized in the year 1012. *Dahlberg* has inſerted perſpective views of theſe places in his *Suecia*.

Aranas, and *Ingatorp*, were formerly royal caſtles; but only the ruins of them are now to be ſeen. *Gudhern* was alſo a ſtately convent; and a view of its ruins is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*.

Lidkoping, in Latin *Lidcopia*, is a ſmall inland town, well ſituated at the influx of the *Lida* into the *Wener*-lake. The river divides it into the *Old* and *New Town*, which are both handſomly built; and the ſtreets are well laid out. *Lidkoping* is one of the largeſt and pleaſanteſt market towns in the whole Kingdom. A very famous fair is held here annually on the twenty-ninth of *September*. The inhabitants of the town are computed to be betwixt four and five hundred ſouls. It is the fifty-firſt voting town in the Diet; and the view of it makes a pretty appearance in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Lecko is an ancient royal palace ſituated on a delightful iſland in the *Wener*-lake. A view of it is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Gothſlunda, a royal manor or farm, was in the time of paganiſm a royal palace, where ſeveral Kings reſided.

Marie-ſtad, in Latin *Mariæſtadium*, is an inland town, near which the river *Tida* empties itſelf into the *Wener*-lake. It was built by Duke *Charles*, who gave it the name of *Marieſtad* in honour of his Dutcheſs, and, in 1583, endowed it with ſeveral privileges. Before it a very ſpacious priſon has been erected. *Dahlberg* has given a view of this place in his *Suecia*.

Marieholm is an eſtate belonging to the Crown on an iſland in the river *Tida*, and the place where the Governor of the *Lehn* or fief reſides.

Hoffwa, which was formerly a town, but is now little better than a village, has both a Poſt-office and Cuſtom-houſe; and the produce of the latter is pretty conſiderable. In the year 1276 King *Waldemar* was here taken priſoner by his brother; and a battle was fought in this place in ancient times between the brothers of *Hading* the *Gothic* King and *Olof* King of *Denmark*.

Skiofde, in Latin *Scedvia*, is a ſmall but ancient and well ſituated inland town. Formerly the bones and other reliques of St. *Helena*, who is ſaid to have been buried in the town church, which was founded by that ſaint in the twelfth century, were worſhipped here with great devotion. This is the ſixty-third town that has a vote in the Diet.

Kungſlena, is an eſtate belonging to the Crown, on which ſtands a large village laid out in regular ſtreets. This place is noted for a ſignal defeat the *Danes* ſuffered here in the year 1208.

Hio, in Latin *Hiovia*, a very old inland town ſituated on the bank of the *Wetter*-lake. Here is a good ſalmon fiſhery which is of conſiderable advantage to the inhabitants, who carry on ſome trade beſides. It is the ſixty-ſecond voting town in the Diet.

Falkioping, in Latin *Falcopia*, is an inland town ſituated on a fruitful ſpot betwixt two mountains, almoſt in the centre of the Diſtrict; but no wood grows in this neighbourhood. A view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*. Near this town an obſtinate and bloody engagement was fought in 1388 between King *Albert* and Queen *Margaret*, in which the former was taken priſoner together with his ſon. The country about this town is called *Falbygden*.

Carleby-Langa is one of the largeſt villages in *Sweden*. Here *Ragwald Knaphofde*, King of the *Viſigoths*, was defeated and buried in 1132. Accordingly ſeveral *tumuli*, which were the graves of that monarch and other perſons of diſtinction, are ſtill to be ſeen here.

Note. In the third volume, of *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* are to be ſeen perſpective views of the following ſeats:

Granas, which is ſituated on the *Anten*-lake.

Nas, *Hojentorp*, and *Hallekis* on the *Wener*-lake.

Hanſater, which is alſo ſituated near the *Wener*-lake.

Lindholm, built on an iſland in the ſame lake. *Mariedal*, and *Sundholm*, in the *Okern*-lake.

II. *WARMELAND*,

In Latin *Vermelandia*,

FORMS a ſemicircle round the north part of the *Wener*-lake; and is ſaid to be about five-and-thirty *Swediſh* miles in length from *Naſudden* on the *Wener*-lake to *Elfwedal*, and twenty-four *Swediſh* miles in breadth from *Nerike* to the frontiers of *Norway*. It derives the name of *Warmeland*, or *Wariemannaland*, from the *Gothic* word *Wara*, *Warja*, or *Waraſt*, which ſignifies to defend; the inhabitants of this country, which borders on *Norway*, having bravely defended it from the incurſions of their enemies. In the pagan times this province had its own Sovereign.

This country is almoſt every where mountainous; but the eaſt and ſouth parts are more level and fertile than the weſt and north parts. However, the woods, and mines of ſilver, lead, copper, and iron, with forges, founderies, *&c.* belonging to them, furniſh the inhabitants of the latter with a greater variety of employments. In the year 1726, ſome pure ſilver was found in an iron-

iron-mine not far from *Philipſtadt*; and the memory of this extraordinary circumſtance has been preſerved in ſome medals ſtruck on the occaſion. In this country are ſeen ſeveral *tumuli* or eminencies, which formerly ſerved for juridical and ſepulchral purpoſes.

The chief occupation of the inhabitants is mining, ſmelting, *&c.* together with fiſhing, and a little agriculture. Their trade conſiſts moſtly in maſts, planks, timber, the bark of birch trees, *&c.*

The chief river in this province is the *Clara* or *Stor-Elbe*, in which there is a very profitable ſalmon-fiſhery. The principal lake, beſides the *Wener* above deſcribed, is the *Fryken*, which is eight *Swediſh* miles in length, but narrow: It has a communication with the *Wener*-lake by means of the river *Noor* or *Fryks-elbe*.

As to the eccleſiaſtical government, this province is a Superintendency called the Dioceſe of *Carlſtadt*, which is the twelfth in rank, and conſiſts of *Warmeland*, and *Thal-land* in *Weſt-Gothland*. It is divided into nine Provoſtſhips.

The whole province of *Warmeland* belongs to the government of *Nerike*, and is divided into eleven *Land* and two *Mine-Diſtricts*.

1. MELLAN-SYSSLET contains four Diſtricts, and lies in the middle of the province. Places of note in *Mellan-ſyſſel* are

Carlſtadt, in Latin *Caroloſtadium*, an inland-town, built by Duke *Charles* on the iſland of *Tingwalla*, where the river *Clara* runs into *Wener*-lake. It ſtands in a very commodious ſituation, has above eight hundred inhabitants, a Superintendent, a ſchool founded by King *Charles* XI. a woollen manufacture, a good metal weigh-houſe, from which every year great quantites of iron and copper are exported; and is a place of a conſiderable trade. *Charles* the Ninth's palace, called *Carlborg*, formerly ſtood on the ſpot where the church is built. There is a good medicinial ſpring not far from this town; which, in the order of the Diet, has the thirty-eighth voice. In the year 1752, *Carlſtadt* was quite deſtroyed by fire. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of it.

Warpnas is a village, where a market is held, and belongs to the pariſh of *Noor*.

2. OESTRASYSSLET conſiſts of two *Land* and two *Mine-Diſtricts*. Remarkable places in this *Syſſlet* are

Chriſtinaham, in Latin *Chriſtinæ portus*, a town, in which a good market was formerly held. It was made a town in the reign of *Charles* IX. and had its charter of privileges, in the year 1642, from Queen *Chriſtina*. It is built on the royal manor of *Bro* near the *Wener*-lake, and contains about ſix hundred inhabitants. A great quantity of iron is annually exported from the Metal-Weigh-houſe in this town. Not far from *Chriſtinaham* is an excellent medicinial ſpring. This is the ſixty-ſeventh, in order, of the towns

towns which have a vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* exhibits a view of this town.

Philipſtadt, in Latin *Philipoſtadium*, is a town ſurrounded with lakes and mountains. It was built by, and had its charter of privileges from *Charles* IX. who called it after the name of his ſon *Charles Philip*. When this town was conſumed by fire in 1694, its privileges were revoked; and the inhabitants were included under the juriſdiction of the Provincial Court. But in 1720 it obtained the privileges of a Trading Place; and a Juſticiary, with an aſſiſtant, was alſo appointed to preſide in the court of Judicature that was erected here. *Philipſtadt* is the ſeventy-ninth town that has a vote in the Diet. In *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* there is a view of it.

Nya-Elfbytta, a conſiderable iron-foundery, ſtands on the bank of the river *Swart* in the pariſh of *Carlſkoga*. In this place are caſt excellent iron-ſtoves, ſmall field-pieces, cannon-balls, and grape-ſhot.

3. WESTRA-SYSSLET is divided into four Diſtricts, and formerly had two forts, namely, *Eda* and *Moraſt*; but the former is now demoliſhed.

III. *THAL-LAND* or *DALAND*,

i. e. The Vale-country of *Weſt-Gothland.*

THIS province is called in Latin *Dalia*, in Swediſh *Dal*, and derives its name from the great number of vallies it contains. It lies between the *Wener*-lake and *Bohus-Lehn*, and is ten *Swediſh* miles in length, and five and a half in breadth. Mountains and rocks conſtitute the greateſt part of this province; and mount *Borekne* is the higheſt among the former. Here are alſo ſeveral foreſts and woods. The plains and vallies that lie between the hills are ſo fruitful as to ſupply the country with plenty of grain. The inhabitants ſubſiſt chiefly by agriculture, grazing, breeding of ſheep, fiſhing, weaving, working in the mines, *&c.* They alſo traffick in maſts, deal-planks, tar, horſes, oxen, ſheep, bacon, butter, cheeſe, *&c.* The principal lake in this province is that of *Stora-Led*, which is about ſeven *Swediſh* miles in length, but not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; and part of it lies in the province of *Warmeland.*

The Clergy of this province, which is divided into two Provoſtſhips, are under the juriſdiction of the Superintendent of *Carlſtadt*, of which mention has been made above. *Daland* is divided into the *North* and *South Part.*

1. In the *North Part* of this province, which is rocky and mountainous, and conſiſts of two Diſtricts, are the following places of note.

iron-mine not far from *Philipſtadt*; and the memory of this extraordinary circumſtance has been preſerved in ſome medals ſtruck on the occaſion. In this country are ſeen ſeveral *tumuli* or eminencies, which formerly ſerved for juridical and ſepulchral purpoſes.

The chief occupation of the inhabitants is mining, ſmelting, *&c.* together with fiſhing, and a little agriculture. Their trade conſiſts moſtly in maſts, planks, timber, the bark of birch trees, *&c.*

The chief river in this province is the *Clara* or *Stor-Elbe*, in which there is a very profitable ſalmon-fiſhery. The principal lake, beſides the *Wener* above deſcribed, is the *Fryken*, which is eight *Swediſh* miles in length, but narrow: It has a communication with the *Wener*-lake by means of the river *Noor* or *Fryks-elbe*.

As to the eccleſiaſtical government, this province is a Superintendency called the Dioceſe of *Carlſtadt*, which is the twelfth in rank, and conſiſts of *Warmeland*, and *Thal-land* in *Weſt-Gothland*. It is divided into nine Provoſtſhips.

The whole province of *Warmeland* belongs to the government of *Nerike*, and is divided into eleven *Land* and two *Mine-Diſtricts*.

1. MELLAN-SYSSLET contains four Diſtricts, and lies in the middle of the province. Places of note in *Mellan-ſyſſel* are

Carlſtadt, in Latin *Caroloſtadium*, an inland-town, built by Duke *Charles* on the iſland of *Tingwalla*, where the river *Clara* runs into *Wener*-lake. It ſtands in a very commodious ſituation, has above eight hundred inhabitants, a Superintendent, a ſchool founded by King *Charles* XI. a woollen manufacture, a good metal weigh-houſe, from which every year great quantites of iron and copper are exported; and is a place of a conſiderable trade. *Charles* the Ninth's palace, called *Carlborg*, formerly ſtood on the ſpot where the church is built. There is a good medicinial ſpring not far from this town; which, in the order of the Diet, has the thirty-eighth voice. In the year 1752, *Carlſtadt* was quite deſtroyed by fire. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of it.

Warpnas is a village, where a market is held, and belongs to the pariſh of *Noor*.

2. OESTRASYSSLET conſiſts of two *Land* and two *Mine-Diſtricts*. Remarkable places in this *Syſſlet* are

Chriſtinaham, in Latin *Chriſtinæ portus*, a town, in which a good market was formerly held. It was made a town in the reign of *Charles* IX. and had its charter of privileges, in the year 1642, from Queen *Chriſtina*. It is built on the royal manor of *Bro* near the *Wener*-lake, and contains about ſix hundred inhabitants. A great quantity of iron is annually exported from the Metal-Weigh-houſe in this town. Not far from *Chriſtinaham* is an excellent medicinial ſpring. This is the ſixty-ſeventh, in order, of the towns

towns which have a vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* exhibits a view of this town.

Philipſtadt, in Latin *Philipoſtadium*, is a town ſurrounded with lakes and mountains. It was built by, and had its charter of privileges from *Charles* IX. who called it after the name of his ſon *Charles Philip*. When this town was conſumed by fire in 1694, its privileges were revoked; and the inhabitants were included under the juriſdiction of the Provincial Court. But in 1720 it obtained the privileges of a Trading Place; and a Juſticiary, with an aſſiſtant, was alſo appointed to preſide in the court of Judicature that was erected here. *Philipſtadt* is the ſeventy-ninth town that has a vote in the Diet. In *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* there is a view of it.

Nya-Elfhytta, a conſiderable iron-foundery, ſtands on the bank of the river *Swart* in the pariſh of *Carlſkoga*. In this place are caſt excellent iron-ſtoves, ſmall field-pieces, cannon-balls, and grape-ſhot.

3. WESTRA-SYSSLET is divided into four Diſtricts, and formerly had two forts, namely, *Eda* and *Moraſt*; but the former is now demoliſhed.

III. *THAL-LAND* or *DALAND*,

i. e. The Vale-country of *Weſt-Gothland*.

THIS province is called in Latin *Dalia*, in Swediſh *Dal*, and derives its name from the great number of vallies it contains. It lies between the *Wener*-lake and *Bohus-Lehn*, and is ten *Swediſh* miles in length, and five and a half in breadth. Mountains and rocks conſtitute the greateſt part of this province; and mount *Borekne* is the higheſt among the former. Here are alſo ſeveral foreſts and woods. The plains and vallies that lie between the hills are ſo fruitful as to ſupply the country with plenty of grain. The inhabitants ſubſiſt chiefly by agriculture, grazing, breeding of ſheep, fiſhing, weaving, working in the mines, *&c.* They alſo traffick in maſts, deal-planks, tar, horſes, oxen, ſheep, bacon, butter, cheeſe, *&c.* The principal lake in this province is that of *Stora-Led*, which is about ſeven *Swediſh* miles in length, but not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; and part of it lies in the province of *Warmeland*.

The Clergy of this province, which is divided into two Provoſtſhips, are under the juriſdiction of the Superintendent of *Carlſtadt*, of which mention has been made above. *Daland* is divided into the *North* and *South Part*.

1. In the *North Part* of this province, which is rocky and mountainous, and conſiſts of two Diſtricts, are the following places of note.

Amal, in Latin *Amalia*, a town ſituate on the *Wener*-lake, which divides the town and the market-place into two parts. *Amal* was founded in the year 1640. Here is a Metal-Weigh-houſe and a harbour on the *Wener*; and this town drives a conſiderable trade, particularly in timber, deals, and tar. It has long ſince recovered itſelf after the fires which happened in 1645 and 1676. It is the eighty-ninth town of thoſe that vote in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Billingfors, and *Kollero*, two noted forges, lie in this part of the province.

2. In the *South Part* of *Daland* which is a champaign country, and conſequently is more fertile than the *North Part*, are three Diſtricts, in which are the following places of note.

Dalaborg, in Latin *Dalaburgum*, formerly a palace and fortreſs. It was built in the year 1304; but taken and diſmantled in 1434.

Brette was formerly a town, ſituated on the *Wener*, but is now deſolate; its inhabitants, by the King's order, having removed to *Wenersborg*, which lies about half a *Swediſh* mile from *Brette*.

IV. *BOHUS-LEHN*,

In Latin *Præfectura Bahuſiæ*.

THIS Prefecture or Government is ſaid to take its name from the caſtle of *Bohus* or *Bahus*, ſo called from the *Norwegian* word *Bay*, 'great and ſplendid,' and *Hus* which ſignifies a houſe. It is alſo called WIKE. It is bounded on one ſide by the *North-Sea*, and on the other by the *Weſt-Gothiſche Thal-land*, or Vale-country of *Weſt-Gothland*. This province extends from *Swineſund* as far as the river called *Gotha-Elbe*; being one-and-twenty *Swediſh* miles in length, and between three and four in breadth. The country is in general level, and the ſoil fertile, conſiſting of fine arable and meadow-land, diverſified with woods, lakes, and rivers. In the *Sheers* or rocks on the coaſt ſalt-works have been ſet up, where ſalt is boiled from the ſea-water.

Near *Uddewalla* is a high mountain, which chiefly conſiſts of a kind of ſhells that are dug up and calcined for lime. In many places in this *Lehn* are large cavities in the mountains, which reſemble ſpacious apartments, and are called *Rieſen-hohlen*, or 'Giants-holes.'

There are ſeveral lakes and rivers in this province; particularly the river called *Gotha-Elbe*, which divides itſelf into two arms or branches, (that which directs its courſe to the Weſt belonging to this *Lehn*;) and another

another river called *Quiſtrom*. There are good ſalmon-fiſheries in both theſe rivers.

The chief occupations of the inhabitants are fiſhing, grazing, and agriculture. They alſo carry on a trade in planks, maſts, deals, tar, lime, tallow, hides, cattle, and all kinds of fiſh.

This country had anciently belonged to the crown of *Sweden*; and in 1658 was again ceded to the *Swedes*, by *Denmark*, at the treaty of *Roſchild*. Hence it is that we treat of it here, though it is generally looked upon as a part of *Norway*. *Bohus-Lehn*, as to its eccleſiaſtical ſtate, is in the Dioceſe of *Gothenburg*, and, with regard to its political government, is divided into the *South* and *North Part*.

1. The *South Part*, which is alſo called the *Binnen-Land*, contains four Diſtricts, the places of note in which, are

Konghell, or *Kongſhall*, in Latin *Konghella*, a very ancient town, environed on all ſides by the rivers *Norre-Elf* and *Giothe-Elf*. It is ſo called from its having been the *Hall* or Court of the ancient Kings. In the reign of King *Sigurd Jorſalafars*, who lived in the twelfth century, it was the principal city in *Norway*. He not only made it his place of reſidence, but alſo granted it a very honourable and advantageous charter. That Prince likewiſe embelliſhed it with ſeveral noble ſtructures; and among the reſt built a palace here, which, after his death, was converted into a monaſtery, and provided for its defence by a caſtle and other works. But in the time of King *Harold Gylles* it was ſacked by the *Vandals*; and is ſo far from recovering its former proſperity, that it was deprived of ſeveral of its ancient privileges by King *Charles Guſtavus*. *Konghell* was originally built on the ſpot where the royal palace of *Caſtelle-Ladugarden*, or the reſidence of the Commandant, now ſtands; but in the time of King *Chriſtian* IV. it was built on another foundation. From the year 1680 to 1700, it was the reſidence of a Governor, who in the laſt mentioned year removed to *Gothenburg*. This is the eighty-third town that votes in the Diet; and a view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

The caſtle of *Bohus*, from which the whole Province or Prefecture derives its name, lies oppoſite to the town; and is a very ſtrong fortification, built on a rock, and ſurrounded by the river called *Gotha-Elbe*. There is a ſpring of very good water in this fort. King *Chriſtian* I. built both the walls and houſes with ſtone in the year 1448; whereas the latter were before only of wood. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a view of this caſtle in his *Suecia*.

Marſtrand, in Latin *Mariſtrandia*, is a very ancient ſtaple-town, ſituated on the ſea-coaſt, with a ſpacious, deep, and ſecure harbour, into which there is an entrance on the north and ſouth ſide; and it is defended by the ſtrong citadel of *Carlſtein*. According to ſome, this town was built in the year 1132, whilſt others fix the time of its foundation in 1262.

It has, indeed, many conſiderable privileges; but, partly by the calamities of war during the years 1676 and 1719, and partly by the fires which broke out in 1683 and 1699, it is in ſo declining a condition, that in the year 1747, it had but twenty poor burghers; and the poll-tax regiſter contained only ſixty-five perſons: However, it conſiſts of two hundred ruinous, and almoſt uninhabited houſes. This is the twenty-ſecond in order of the voting towns in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given it a place in his *Suecia*.

Carlſtein is a famous fort, ſituated on a high mountain near the town, with a handſom church. It was built between the years 1682 and 1687. The brave *Daniſh* Admiral *Tordenſkiold*, after making himſelf maſter of the town and the forts of *Helvigſholm* and *Malapart*, which lie near it, by the briſkneſs and continuance of his fire, alſo obliged the Governor of this citadel to ſurrender. But, the next year, it was reſtored to the *Swedes*. Formerly all condemned criminals were ſentenced to work at theſe fortifications, as ſome are to this day, whilſt others are employed elſewhere. The dangerous rock called *Pater-Noſter* lies in the ſea off *Marſtrand*. *Dahlberg* has a view both of the town and citadel in his *Suecia*.

2. The *North Part*, which is properly called the *Wike*, is ſubdivided into *Sunnar-Wiken*, and *Nor-Wiken*, and conſiſts of nine Diſtricts, in which are the following remarkable places.

Uddewalla, a very old ſtaple-town, with a ſtrong fort and convenient harbour. It carries on a conſiderable trade, particularly in timber; but was very much damaged by fire in the year 1738. This is the fifty-ninth, in order, of the towns that vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it.

Stromſtadt, in Latin *Stroemſtadium*, is a ſmall ſtaple-town, ſituated on the frontiers near the *Swineſund*; and the north part of it, which ſtands on *Blomeſholm*, was built in the reign of *Charles* XI. This town is noted for lobſters and fine oyſters. In the year 1717, it was hard preſſed by the *Danes*; but was defended with equal bravery and vigour. It is the hundredth voting town; and a view of it is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

At the noble manor of *Blomeſholm*, about three *Swediſh* miles from *Stromſtadt*, is a monument of great antiquity, conſiſting of large ſtones ſet up perpendicularly, and arranged in the form of a ſhip.

3. The large iſlands of *Orouſt* and *Tiorn* alſo belong to *Bohus-Lehn*. The former conſiſts of nineteen, and the latter of three pariſhes. The paſtures, in both theſe iſlands are ſo rich that they are famous for excellent butter, and cheeſe, and a fine breed of cattle.

SOUTH-

SOUTH-GOTHLAND,

In Latin *Gothia Auſtralis.*

THIS country conſiſts of three provinces, namely, *Schonen*, *Halland*, and *Blekingen*, which, from time immemorial, have undergone many viciſſitudes and changes, that are particularly related in the hiſtories of *Sweden* and *Denmark*. Sometimes they were ſubject to the Crown of *Denmark*: At other times they were recovered by the *Swedes*; but at length King *Charles Guſtavus* annexed them for ever to the *Swediſh* Dominions, by the treaty of *Roſchild*, in the year 1658.

I. SCHONEN,

In Latin in *Scania.*

THIS province lies ſo near *Denmark*, that it is only ſeparated from *Sealand* by the *Oreſund* or *Sound*, which betwixt *Helſenborg* and *Croneburg*, is but a league in breadth. *Schonen* in ancient times was governed by its own Kings, and had its particular laws. This province if meaſured according to the roads is fourteen *Swediſh* miles in length from *Falſterbo* to the long ſand bank of *Halland*, and about eleven *Swediſh* miles in breadth. This is the moſt level, pleaſant, and fertile ſpot in all *Sweden*; and produces plenty of rye, barley, oats, peaſe, buckwheat, honey, cummin-ſeed; likewiſe pit-coal, chalk, tiles, and pot-aſhes, of which, though to the great detriment of the foreſts, 10,000 tons are exported annually from hence. The inhabitants alſo carry on a conſiderable trade in oak, timber, mill-ſtones, cordage, fiſh of ſeveral kinds, fine horſes, ſheep, and horned cattle. All ſorts of animals are larger in *Schonen* than in the northern parts of *Sweden*; but are not ſo vigorous, and accordingly become more ſtrong and hardy, when they are removed northwards. Alum, ſulphur, and amber are alſo found here. In that part of *Schonen* which lies near the *Sound* and the *Baltic*, not a wood is to be ſeen for ſeveral miles; but that part which borders on *Blekingen*, *Smaland*, and *Halland*, is well wooded. In the former part which lies near the *Baltic*, turf and ſtraw are generally burnt for fuel. This country, with regard to its many advantages, may be called

the ſtore-houſe and granary of *Sweden*. No province in the Kingdom is to be compared to it for fine ſeats and noblemens eſtates; and it contains more well built towns than any other province of *Sweden*.

The number of inhabitants in *Schonen* alone are computed at 600,000 ſouls, and above.

It has eight rivers, and ſeveral lakes; all well ſtored with fiſh. The only biſhopric in *Schonen* is that of *Lund*; which is the eighth in order, comprehends the Prefectures of *Malmo*, *Chriſtianſtadt*, and *Blekingen*, and is divided into four-and-twenty Provoſtſhips.

SCHONEN conſiſts

1. Of the Prefecture of MALMO, which contains three Diſtricts, and the following towns and places of note.

Malmo, in Latin *Malmogia*, is a conſiderable ſtaple-town, which is called by the *Dutch Ellenbogen i. e.* an elbow, becauſe the land on which it lies forms a kind of *Elbow* in the ſea. In the year 1319, the inhabitants were removed from the former ſituation higher up in the country to the place where the town now ſtands. It is ſurrounded with walls, moats, and baſtions towards the land; and is defended by ſeveral fortifications and a caſtle towards the ſea. The caſtle was built in 1434, razed in 1534, and re-built in the year 1538. In this town are two Burgomaſters, a good ſchool, one *Swediſh* and one *German* church, an orphan-houſe, a large market-place, fine ſtreets, and ſeveral woollen manufactories. Here the Governor or Prefect of the Diſtrict reſides. A Philological Society was inſtituted in this town in the eleventh century, in memory of King *Knut* IV. who was ſur-named the Pious, and called *Knuts-gilde*. This Society has many peculiar cuſtoms and privileges; and its members are of both ſexes. Kings, Princes, and other perſons of the higheſt diſtinction have not diſdained to add that of *Knutsbruder* to their other auguſt titles. In the order of voting at the Diet, this is the fifth town.

Skano, is at preſent reduced from a town to a place for loading and unloading goods. It is, however, noted for its yearly ſwan-hunting.

Falſterbo, a fiſhing-place, eſpecially for herrings. Here is a light-houſe, on account of the ſhoal called *Falſtarbo-Ref*, which lies off this place.

Trelleborg is but little better than a village, though formerly a handſome town, with fortifications, a convent, *&c.* A great quantity of amber is found in the neighbourhood of this place. King *Charles* XII. in his voyage from *Stralſund*, landed at *Stafſten*, a little to the weſt of this place, on the thirteenth of *December* 1715, after his long abſence from *Sweden*.

Yſtad or *Oieſtad*, in Latin *Yſtadium*, is a ſmall but well built ſtaple-town ſituated on the ſea-coaſt, from whence a packet-boat goes to *Stralſund*. It was formerly well fortified, and had two churches. The preſent Convent-church is ſo called becauſe it was built for the uſe of two convents which

were

were founded here in the times of popery. This town has the twenty-firſt vote in the Diet.

Lindholm, a fine eſtate belonging to the Crown with a caſtle, where King *Albert* of *Mecklenburg* was confined as a Priſoner for ſeven years.

Lund, in Latin *Lunda Gothorum*, is a very ancient city, and formerly the reſidence of the Kings of this country. It was erected into a Biſhop's See in 1065, which, in 1103, was made an Archbiſhop's See for the three Northern Kingdoms. The name of the firſt Archbiſhop of *Lund* was *Adzer*. It is ſaid that this city in the times of popery contained two-and-twenty churches, and at leaſt as many convents, with a proportionate number of inhabitants; and was well fortified. Its cathedral is an ancient ſtately building; and has a fine well, with which all the other wells in the city have a communication, a ſuperb altar, and a pulpit of alabaſter and black marble.

King *Charles Guſtavus* intended to have founded an Univerſity at *Lund*; but this ſcheme was not put in execution till the nineteenth of *December* 1666, in the reign of *Charles* XI. The conſecration of it was ſolemnly performed on the twenty-eighth of *January* 1668, it being the ſaints day whoſe name the King bore; and the Univerſity was accordingly ſtiled *Academia Carolina Gothorum*. In the year 1736, it received the addition of a very elegant anatomical theatre. Here is alſo a phyſic garden. The Biſhop of the See is Vice-Chancellor of the Univerſity. The inhabitants of this town are moſtly employed in agriculture. In the neighbourhood are ſeveral good tobacco plantations, which produce nearly to the amount of 160,000 pounds weight of tobacco annually. Above 20,000 mulberry trees have alſo been planted lately in the *environs* of this town. In 1676, King *Charles* XI. entirely defeated the *Danes* near this city; and in 1679, a peace was concluded here betwixt the two Kingdoms. On a hill, not far from the town, which is called St. *Laborius*'s hill or *Slipare-hog*, the Daniſh Kings were elected by the States in ancient times. In the Diet this town has the thirty-fourth vote. Its Latitude is 55°, 41′, 6″.

Weſum, an eſtate belonging to the Crown.

Dalby, which is now one of the King's ſtables, in the eleventh century was for a ſhort time a Biſhop's See, which was afterwards tranſlated to *Lund*. At the ſame time, namely, in the year 1065, *Suen* King of *Denmark* built here a very fine convent, in which two Kings lie interred. In 1512, it undervent the common fate of all the convents in *Denmark*; being ſequeſtered to the Crown by *Chriſtian* III.

Flyinge, a rich royal demeſne.

Landskrona, in Latin *Coronia*, is a fortified ſtaple-town ſituated near the *Sound*. It was built by King *Erick* the *Pomeranian* near a convent which ſtood here. It has two churches, a ſecure harbour, and a ſtrong caſtle built in 1549, by *Chriſtian* III. King of *Denmark*, on the ſpot where the old ruinous

ruinous convent ſtood. The number of inhabitants in this town is ſuppoſed to be between ſeven and eight hundred. Great encouragements are offered for any foreign *Calviniſt* or *Lutheran* manufacturers, to induce them to ſettle here. In the year 1676 the *Danes* made themſelves maſters both of the town and caſtle. There are tobacco plantations near this town; which carries on a good trade, and has the ſixth vote in the Diet.

Hwen or *Ween*, in Latin *Hevena*, is a fertile iſland lying in the *Sound*. It is about 8160 paces in circumference, and has the appearance of a high mountain at a diſtance. By the treaty of *Roſchild*, it was annexed to the Crown of *Sweden* in 1658. Though it anciently depended on *Seeland*, *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark* ſubjected it to the juriſdiction of the Provincial court of *Schonen*; but with a proviſional clauſe, that all its proceſſes ſhould be determined according to the laws of *Seeland*.

This iſland was rendered famous by the celebrated aſtronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom it was granted, together with a fief in *Norway* and ſome other lands, by *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, who alſo cauſed an elegant ſeat to be built for him at a very conſiderable expence. This caſtle, which is called *Uranienburg*, is ſixty feet ſquare, and ſeventy-five in height: It is embelliſhed with two towers, which were deſigned for obſervatories, and two other ſmaller obſervatories, which yield an extenſive proſpect; and has a delightful garden. But the practices of his malicious enemies deprived *Tycho* of all theſe enjoyments; and being obliged to leave *Uranienburg* in 1597, he died in *Germany* in the year 1601. His celeſtial globe which was ſix feet in diameter, and ſaid to have coſt him 5000 dollars *, was firſt carried from hence to *Benadky* in *Bohemia*, and ſoon after was removed to *Prague*; from whence it was conveyed to *Neiſſe* in *Sileſia*. That town being taken in 1632 by Prince *Ulrick*, this curious machine was removed to *Copenhagen*, and depoſited in the round tower; where it was entirely conſumed in the calamitous fire, which happened in the year 1728, and laid a great part of that flouriſhing city in aſhes. All that celebrated Aſtronomer's other valuable mathematical inſtruments, and curious machines have likewiſe been gradually loſt; and his favourite *Uranienburg* now lies in ruins. The whole iſland makes but one pariſh, or village, conſiſting of fifty or ſixty houſes; and near it ſtands the pariſh church.

Helſinborg, in Latin *Helſingoburgum*, a very ancient ſtaple-town, is ſaid to derive its name from the *Helſingers* by whom it was built. It lies on a declivity at the foot of a high mountain, on which *Helſingborg* originally ſtood. It had anciently a very ſtrong caſtle, being then a large conſiderable city; but ſuffered extremely in the wars of the laſt century, particularly ſince the year 1673; ſo that now it is only a defenſeleſs place, containing about two hundred houſes and a battery of a few guns: And of all its fortifications the only remains is a tower which ſtands by itſelf on the hill. The

* A Dollar is 1*s.* 9*d.* ⅗

5 ſhallow-

ſhallowneſs of its harbour obliges all ſhips that paſs through the *Sound* to keep cloſe to the *Daniſh* mole at *Helſingoer* or *Elſinore*; and this circumſtance muſt be a great diſadvantage to it in point of trade, which is very inconſiderable here. This is the uſual ferry for paſſengers acroſs the *Sound* into *Denmark*. A flouriſhing manufacture of coarſe hats, and boots, is carried on, but the other manufactures eſtabliſhed in this town, as that of ribbons, *&c.* in which young girls are employed, ſcarce anſwer the charges. In the year 1447 King *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria* died at *Helſingborg*. This town has been more than once taken by the *Danes*; but always has been ſoon after retaken by the *Swedes*. This is the eighteenth town that has a vote in the Diet.

In the mountain near which this town ſtands, the famous *Helſingborg* ſpring has its ſource. This ſpring ſupplies the town every minute with about twenty gallons * of clear palatable water of an extraordinary coldneſs, and of which a great quantity is bottled up and exported. *Helſingborg* lies in 56°, 2′, North latitude.

Ramloſa, which is not far from *Helſingborg*, is a famous medicinal ſpring iſſuing from a ſolid rock.

Kulla-Fyr, is a lighthouſe built on a mountain, at the diſtance of two *Swediſh* miles from *Helſingborg*.

2. The Prefecture or Government of CHRISTIANSTADT is divided into ten Diſtricts, and contains the following places of note.

Chriſtianſtadt, a town ſituated on the river *Helge-a*, by which it is encompaſſed on three ſides. This town was originally built in the year 1614, by *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, from whom it received its name. It has a handſome church, a good ſchool, a ſtrong bridge with ſeveral warehouſes built on it, woollen and linen cloth, and ſilk manufactures, *&c.* and carries on a conſiderable trade. It is fortified with walls and horn works; but the caſtle which ſtands near the church, has nothing worthy of notice. In the year 1676, the *Danes* made themſelves maſters of this town; but the very next year, *Charles* XI. retook it ſword in hand. The Prefect or Governor reſides in this city, which is the ſeventeenth of the towns that have a vote in the Diet. The Latitude of *Chriſtianſtadt* is 56°, 1′, 20″.

Hammar is a royal demeſne not far from *Chriſtianſtadt*.

Wahe, or *Wa*, which lies about three quarters of a *Swediſh* mile north of *Chriſtianſtadt*, and *Ahus* which ſtands at the diſtance of two miles ſouth of it, were formerly conſiderable towns. *Ahus* is, as it were, the warehouſe, where the goods deſigned for *Chriſtianſtadt* are depoſited.

Andrarum, which lies near four *Swediſh* miles ſouth of *Chriſtianſtadt*, is the moſt conſiderable alum-work in the whole Kingdom, and belongs to Count *Piper*. This foſſile reſembles ſlate, which being laid in heaps and calcined, and afterwards boiled in water, yields both alum and vitriol.

* The Author ſays forty-three *canns*.

Kiwick

Kiwick is a fiſhing place remarkable for its fine herrings.

Cimbriſhamn, in Latin *Portus Cimbrorum*, is a ſmall ſea-port on the *Baltic*, from which the ancient *Cimbri* are ſaid to have ſet ſail for their foreign expeditions. This is the ninety-ninth voting town in the Diet.

Tomarup, or *Tomarp*, is a manor ſaid to have been formerly a town, in which was a convent in the times of popery.

Engelholm, in Latin *Engelholmia*, is a town ſituated not far from the ſea, which is ſaid to derive its name from the *Angles*, who either firſt came from hence, or built this town for the conveniency of trade. It is under the juriſdiction of the magiſtracy of *Helſingborg*, from which it is but two *Swediſh* miles diſtant. The clouds of ſand which are here raiſed by the wind are very troubleſom; but theſe ſands now begun to be gradually ſown with *Sandhafer* or wild oats, which will in time remedy that inconveniency. *Engelholm* is the twentieth town in the order of voting in the Diet.

Thorekou is a conſiderable fiſhing-town with a kind of votive church, to which the ſea-faring people ſend conſiderable pecuniary offerings from all the neighbouring ports.

Batſtad, a conſiderable fiſhing-place where a market is kept, has the appearance of a ſmall city and formerly had the privileges of one. It lies on a bay of the *North-ſea*.

II. *HALLAND*,

In Latin *Hallandia*.

THE name of this province denotes a high land; and it is ſo called becauſe it lies higher up the country than *Schonen*; or according to others derives its name from the high mountains with which it is over-run. *Halland* is ſixteen *Swediſh* miles in length, and, at its ſouthern angle, is about four *Swediſh* miles broad. The produce of the arable land in this province is far from being ſufficient for the ſupport of the inhabitants: But this defect is in ſome meaſure compenſated by a great plenty of fiſh, eſpecially the ſalmon, it affords, which are reckoned the beſt in all *Sweden*. This province alſo has a very advantageous trade in cattle, and is not without ſome pearl fiſheries. Here are woods of tall oak and birch-trees; but pine-trees, *&c.* are not very common in theſe parts.

In the ſandy tract of *Halland* ſtands a mountain, in which there is a cavity large enough conveniently to hold twenty perſons. In this province there are five rivers; and all of them afford good ſalmon fiſheries. There are alſo two conſiderable lakes.

The

The inhabitants who are but few, chiefly ſubſiſt by grazing and fiſhing. They likewiſe ſpin and weave, and make a kind of knit garments. Thoſe who live near the ſea-coaſts in the north of *Halland* employ themſelves in trade and navigation. This country is partly aſſigned for the equipment of dragoons, and the ſupport of ſailors for the royal navy. The clergy of this province are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Gothenburg*.

As to its political ſtate it is divided into *South* and *North-Halland*.

1. SOUTH HALLAND extends from the long ſandy tract of land mentioned above to the river called *Falkenbergs-a*, and is much more level and fertile than *North Halland*. It conſiſts of four Diſtricts, and contains the following places of note.

Laholm, or *Lageholm*, in Latin *Laholmia*, lies at the mouth of the river *Laga* near the main ſea, and has a fine ſalmon-fiſhery. The ruinous caſtle, which ſtands near it on a ſmall iſland in the river, was demoliſhed in the reign of *Charles* XI. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet, this is the eighty-fifth in order. Near it lies a royal demeſne.

Knared, a village with a church, which has a yearly fair. In the year 1613, a treaty of peace was concluded here betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark*.

Halmſtadt is a pleaſant well built ſtaple-town, ſituated at the mouth of the river *Niſſa*. In 1327, this town was made the capital of the province, and endowed with ſuitable privileges. The fortifications erected here by *Chriſtian* VI. King of *Denmark* have been razed. The caſtle is the place of reſidence of the Governor of the province. The cloth and woollen manufactures eſtabliſhed here are in a flouriſhing condition; and the ſalmon fiſhery near this town is very famous. In the times of popery, there were three convents at *Halmſtadt*; and in 1619, it was the ſcene of an interview between King *Guſtavus Adolphus* and *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark*. King *Charles* XI. defeated the *Danes* on a ſpot about half a *Swediſh* mile from this town. In the neighbourhood of it there is a large tobacco plantation. *Halmſtadt* is the ſixteenth of the towns that have a vote in the Diet; and the proſpect of it makes a good appearance in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Biſkopſtorb, which lies in the pariſh of *Quibille*, is an eſtate belonging to the Crown.

Skottorp, a noble manor ſituated in the ſandy part of *Halland*. Here King *Charles* XI. celebrated his nuptials with *Ulrica Eleanora*, princeſs of *Denmark*, in the year 1680. A proſpect both of the building and garden may ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Falkenberg, in Latin *Falkenberga*, a ſmall ancient ſea-port, near which the river *Falkenberg* runs, which is likewiſe called *Aethra*. This river iſſues from the *Alſungen*-lake, and by it the latter has a communication with the ſea. This town ſtands in a ſandy ſituation; and has a good fiſhery, where great quantities of ſalmon and ſome herrings are caught. *Falkenberg* has a tolerable harbour, and is the ninety-ſeventh of the towns that vote in the Diet. In

the year 1565, the battle of *Falkenberg*, in which the *Danes* forced their way through the *Swediſh* army, was fought at a village called *Axtorn* near this town.

2. NORTH HALLAND is a mountainous and woody country, and extends from *Falkenberg* river to *Elſsborg-Lehn*. It conſiſts of four Diſtricts; and in it are the following towns, *&c.*

Wardberg, in Latin *Warburgum*, is a ſmall ſtaple town, but one of the beſt in the province. It has a harbour on the *North ſea*, which, at preſent, has only depth enough for ſmall veſſels. *Wardberg* carries on a conſiderable trade; and had ſtood on three different ſituations before the year 1666, when it was built, a fourth time, on the ſpot where it now ſtands. A very ancient fortified caſtle ſtands at the harbour's mouth on a rock ſurrounded with water; but, at preſent, it is of little ſervice. Near it is a royal manor-houſe on a ſpot where the city formerly ſtood. This town has the twenty-third vote in the Diet, and is exhibited in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Aſ-kloſter was formely a convent, built in the year 1165; but at preſent is a conſiderable royal demeſne.

Hunehals is a fort built on a rock in the pariſh of *Huneſtad*, and in popiſh times belonged to the Biſhops of *Lund*.

Kongsbacka, is a ſmall town ſituated between three rivers, which empty themſelves into the ſea hard by it. The inhabitants ſubſiſt by agriculture, trade, and navigation. It is the ninety-eighth of the towns that vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Roſared is a royal demeſne.

Note. Both *South* and *North Halland* are under one Government.

III. *BLEKINGEN*,

In Latin *Blekingia*.

THE *Swedes* call this province *Blekingh*, the *Danes Blegind*, and the inhabitants term it *Blegen*. It lies to the Eaſt of *Schonen*, and extends itſelf about fifteen *Swediſh* miles in length, and four in breadth. *Blekingen* is a mountainous country, and for pleaſantneſs, eſpecially in that part that lies between *Carlſkron* and *Carlſhamn*, exceeds moſt of the provinces in *Sweden*. Here are ſeveral woods of oak, beech, pine, and birch trees: But as the ſoil, in moſt places, is too ſhallow for tillage, the inhabitants are obliged to make up that deficiency by ſupplies from their neighbours.

This province is computed to contain about 1089 families; and the inhabitants drive a conſiderable trade in pot-aſh, tar, tallow, hides, leather, beams, deal-boards, and maſts. They alſo employ themſelves in fiſhing and hunting, to a great advantage. The paſtures in this province are ſo nutritive, that the beſt cheeſe in *Sweden* is made here; and grazing turn

to

to very good account: However, the cattle are ſomewhat ſmaller here than in *Schonen*.

Inſtead of its quota of ſoldiers, this province maintains 1554 ſailors to ſerve on board the royal navy; and theſe are divided into three companies.

There are ſeveral lakes, and ſix rivers of note, all which afford good ſalmon, in this province. *Blekingen* and *Smaland* are ſeparated from each other by theſe rivers. The principal iſlands belonging to this juriſdiction amount to about one hundred and thirty. The whole province contains, with regard to the eccleſiaſtical diviſion, nine-and-twenty pariſhes. The clergy of it are ſubject to the See of *Lund*. As to its political diviſion it conſiſts of four *Harads* or Diſtricts, which are,

1. OESTRA-HARAD, or the *Eaſt-Diſtrict*, in which are the following towns.

Carlſkrona, or *Calſcron*, in Latin *Caroli Corona*, a handſome ſtaple-town, lies on the *Baltic*; and was firſt built by King *Charles* XI. who called it after his name, and endowed it with the privileges, and the freedom of a Staple. This town, next to *Stockholm*, is reckoned the beſt in the kingdom. A part of it ſtands on the little iſland of *Biorkholm*, where the marine hoſpital is, part on that of *Stubholm* on which the arſenal is built, and part on the mole, where the fleet is uſually laid up. The large and ſmall iſlands that lie near this town, together with the woods of oak, beech, and birch trees on all ſides, render the ſituation of it extremely pleaſant. Here are three churches, namely one *Swediſh*, which is called the town-church, one *German* church, and the third belongs to the Admiralty. The inhabitants of *Carlſkrona* are ſuppoſed to be about 5000 ſouls. This city is famous for the Admiralty-college which was removed hither from *Stockholm* in 1680; a dock-yard which is ſeparated from the town by a high ſtone-wall; and a ſquadron of ſhips of war which is laid up here. It has two burgomaſters, and the Governor of the province makes it his place of reſidence. The harbour, which lies betwen *Aſp-oe* and *Stork-oe*, is ſo commodious that the whole royal navy may ſecurely ride in it; and the mouth or entrance into it is defended by the citadels of *Kongſholm* and *Drotningſkiar*. There is a new handſom pariſh-church in theſe forts, and alſo a *German* church. The dock-yard is particularly remarkable; it being dug out of a mountain to the depth of eighty feet. The length of it is from three hundred to three hundred and fifty feet at the place where the King's fleet lies; and this excellent dock, though proſecuted with all poſſible vigour, employed the engineers from the year 1715 to the year 1724, before it was compleated. Its entrance towards the ſea has a ſufficient depth of water to ſet the largeſt men of war on float. This entrance is cloſed by two flood-gates, and the baſon may be emptied in four-and-twenty hours, ſo that the dock becomes quite dry in order to repair and clean the ſhips; after which the water is re-admitted, by means of two ſluices which are further defended from the violence of the waves by a certain machine, in order to ſet the ſhips afloat and carry them out of the baſon. *Carlſkron* is the

tenth, in order, of the towns that vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given us two views, one of the city, and another of the caſtle of *Drotningſkiar*.

Chriſtianopel, commonly called *Nopeln*, is a fortified market-town, which is almoſt ſurrounded by the *Baltic* in the manner of a peninſula. In 1603, *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark* gave it a charter of privileges, and called it by his name. But it loſt thoſe privileges in the year 1610, when it was taken by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, who was at that time heriditary Prince, or heir apparent to the crown.

2. MEDELSTA-HARAD, in which the places of note are,

Ronneby, or *Rotneby*, a pariſh, with a market-place, which lies in the midway between *Calſkron* and *Carlſham*. Near it the river *Ronneby*, which has a good ſalmon-fiſhery, empties itſelf into the *Baltic*. This place was formerly fortified; and till the time of *Charles* XI. was a little town, having been built by one of the Kings of *Denmark*. It ſtill carries on ſome trade; and has an harbour, ſome medicinial ſprings, and ſeveral manufactories. The inhabitants of *Ronneby* are free of *Carlſkrona*.

Gio, or *Giſo*, is a peninſula lying about three quarters of a *Swediſh* mile from *Ronneby*. Here is a fine fiſhery which is very advantageous to the place, and the cauſe of a conſiderable trade to it.

3. BRAKNE-HARAD, in which lies

Carlſhamn, in Latin *Caroli portus*, a ſtaple-town which derives its name from *Charles* X. by whom it was built in the year 1658. Before that time it was called *Chriſtianſhamn* from *Chriſtian* IV. its firſt founder; but *Charles* XI. improved and fortified it with a caſtle, which ſtood on a rock at the mouth of the river and defended the town and harbour, but is now fallen to decay. Here are two churches, a woollen manufacture, and a good key; and without the town ſtands a copper-mill. The number of inhabitants in *Carlſhamn* is ſaid to exceed 1200. In the Diet this town has the ninteenth vote.

4. LISTERS-HARAD, in which are the following places of note.

Elleholm, a village, with a church, ſtanding on a ſmall iſland in the river that runs by *Morum*. It lies at the diſtance of half a *Swediſh* mile from *Carlſhamn*, and was formerly a town, and had a caſtle. Its municipal privileges have been conferred on

Solfwitzborg, a ſea-port, which for a long time remained diſfranchiſed, but at laſt had a charter of privileges conferred on it. This town is almoſt environed by the *Baltic* ſea, and was formerly in a more flouriſhing condition than it is at preſent. It has a harbour with a ruinous caſtle. *Solfwitzborg* is ſaid to have been the place where the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* aſſembled, when they left this country in order to go in ſearch of new habitations. This is the eighty-fourth voting town in the Diet. A fiſhing place called *Hallawic* belongs to this town.

SWEDEN,

SWEDEN, properly ſo called,

In Latin *Suecia ſtrictè ſic dicta.*

THIS country is bounded on the North by *Nordland*, on the Weſt by *Warmeland* and *Norway*, on the Eaſt by the ſea, and on the South by the kingdom of *Gothland*. Of all the *Swediſh* dominions this country has the greateſt number of mines, forges and hammer-mills. *Sweden*, in ancient times, was ſometimes a diſtinct kingdom, and ſometimes united with that of *Gothland*, as it has been ever ſince the year 1132. It is divided into five provinces, namely, *Upland*, *Sudermanland*, *Nerike* or *Nericia*, *Weſtmanland*, and *Dahl*, or the Vale-country; which had alſo their reſpective Kings, and were governed by their own laws, except *Nerike* which had no particular laws of its own. *Sweden*, properly ſo called, contains five-and-twenty cities and towns.

I. *UPLAND*,

In Latin *Uplandia.*

THIS province is ſo called from the ſuperiority the ancient Kings, that reſided at *Upſal*, had over the Vaſſal-kings and Governors who were tributary to the former. This province extends in length about eighteen *Swediſh* miles, and fifteen in breadth, and is a champain, fertile country; producing wheat, barley, rye, and oats in ſuch plenty, as to ſupply its neighbours with conſiderable quantities of grain. But in ſome parts of *Upland* there are neither paſtures nor woods.

Among the mountains of this province ſome are remarkable for ſpacious caverns which reſemble large regular apartments.

Here are twelve rivers, and a ſtill greater number of lakes. The *Maler*-lake is the principal among the latter, and lies between *Upland*, *Sudermanland*, and *Weſtmanland*. It is twelve miles in length, yields an extraordinary plenty of fiſh, and is ſaid to contain 1290 iſlands. Its banks are beautifully diverſified with towns, caſtles, churches, noblemens ſeats, and other edifices. It has a communication with the ſea, through the outlets of the north and ſouth rivers, or channels, near *Stockholm*. In this country are ſeveral very wealthy perſons, who are owners of mine-works and hammer-mills; and the latter are not only profitable, but alſo curiouſly contrived. In this province are likewiſe the beſt iron mines in the kingdom.

The

The chief occupation of the inhabitants of *Upland* is agriculture; but in ſome places they work in the mines, and in others they are employed in the fiſheries. Thoſe who live on the ſea-coaſt, among the *ſheers* or rocks, entirely ſubſiſt by the latter. This country is divided into three parts, namely,

UPLAND, properly ſo called, which is the middle part of the country.

ROSLAGEN, or the maritime part. And

FIERDHUNDRA, or the part which borders or the rivers *Dal-Ebe*, and *Sag*.

The *Archbiſhoprick* of *Upſal* conſiſts of twenty-five Provoſtſhips, one hundred and ſixty-ſix *Paſtorates*, or two hundred and forty-two town and country-pariſhes, and four chapels; and this Dioceſe includes,

1. The Government of *Upſal*.

2. That part of the *Stockholm* Government which lies in *Upland*.

3. *Gaſtrickland* and *Halſingeland*, which are the weſtern parts of the Government of *Nordland*.

4. Part of *Salberg* and *Waſby-Lehn*, which belong to the Government of *Weſtmanland*. As to its political ſtate this province is divided into the three following Prefects or Governments.

1. The Government of STOCKHOLM, which includes

The *Sechs-ſee-Diſtricte*, or the ſix maritime Diſtricts, and the *Zehn-land* Diſtrict, or ten inland Diſtricts. In the former are the following remarkable places.

STOCKHOLM, in Latin *Holmia*, a ſtaple city, the capital of the whole kingdom, and the reſidence of the King, lies at the junction of the *Baltic* and the *Maler*-lake; ſo that it has the conveniency both of ſalt and freſh-water. Its circuit, computed from the one gate to the other, is two *Swediſh* miles; and it ſtands partly on iſlands and partly on peninſula's. Moſt of the ſtreets of this city are broad, and kept very clean; and the market-places are ſpacious. In the city, properly ſo called, are above 5000 houſes, moſt of which ſtand on piles, though entirely built with ſtone, and are four or five ſtories high; and ſome of them are covered with iron or copper-plates, and others with tiles. Beſides theſe, there are a great number of timber houſes in the ſuburbs, and twenty churches in all. The ſeven *Holme* or iſlands on which this city ſtands, are

1. The City, properly ſo called, which contains, 1. The new palace, a very grand ſtructure. 2. The Nobles-houſe, which is alſo a very ſuperb edifice, and gives the name of *Ritter-haus* market to the adjoining market. 3. The town-houſe. 4. St. *Nicholas*, or the great church. 5. St. *Gertrude*'s, or the *German* church, near which ſtands a grammar-ſchool. 6. The great market. 7. The bank. 8. The corn-quay. 9. The marine fraternity.

2. The

2. The *Ritterholm*, which lies on the weſt ſide of the city, and has a communication with it by means of a bridge. On this iſland ſtands the old royal palace which was burnt in the year 1697, and the *Ritterholm* church which is dedicated to St. *Francis*. In this church are interred the following Kings; viz. *Magnus Ladulas*, *Charles* VIII. *Guſtavus Adolphus*, *Charles* X. *Charles* XII. and *Frederick* I. with the Queens, *Maria Eleanora*, *Hedwig-Eleanora*, the two *Ulrica Eleanora's*, beſides ſeveral Princes and Princeſſes.

3. *Helgandſholm*, or the iſland of the Holy Ghoſt, which lies in the *Norder-ſtrom* or North channel, between the city and the *Norder-malm* or North ſuburb. In this part are the King's ſtables which were built in the year 1696.

4. *Schiffsholm*, which lies to the eaſt of the city. In this part are the dock-yard and the Admiralty. Near this iſland lie thoſe of *Caſtleholm* and *Pecholm*; and cloſe by *Blaſieholm*, the church belonging to *Schiffsholm* ſtands on a ſmall iſland, towards the North.

5. *Blaſieholm*, which was formerly called *Kapplingſholm*.

6. *Konigſholm*, on which ſtands the *Ulrica-Eleanora*-church.

7. *Ladugards-Land*, which is now joined to the *Nordermalm*, and looked upon as a ſuburb. In it are *Hedwick's* church, a market-place, an orch-yard belonging to the King, and an orphan-houſe founded in the year 1750 by the *Free-Maſons*. Alſo two large ſuburbs called *Norder* and *Suder-Malm* belong to the city of *Stockholm*.

The *Norder-Malm*, or North Suburb, which is ſeparated from the city by the *Norder-Strom*, lies in *Upland*, and contains the churches of St. *James*, St. *Clara*, St. *Olaus*, and St. *John*; the orphan-houſe, together with a church; the arſenal, and three market-places. Here is alſo a high ſandy hill called *Brunkberg*, from *John Brunk*, high-conſtable of the kingdom, who was beheaded there in the time of King *Birger*; and another hill called *Sabbatsberg* near which are a medicinal ſpring and an obſervatory.

Suder-Malm, or the South Suburb, is ſeparated from the city by the canal called *Suderſtrom*, which was dug by order of King *Oluf the Pious* in the year 1008, and lies in *Sudermanland*. In this Suburb are *Mary Magdalen's* church, St *Cathrine's* church, the *Sudermalm*-market, with the town-houſe on it; and likewiſe the *Ruſſian* chapel, the *Dutch Calviniſts* church, a large hoſpital, a fine iron Weigh-houſe, the New Market, *&c.*

All theſe parts of *Stockholm* are joined together by twelve bridges.

The number of the inhabitants who pay taxes in this metropolis is computed at 60,000.

The Police of the city is lodged jointly in the magiſtracy, and the *Oberſtatthalter*, i. e. High *Statholder* or Governor, who preſides in the Royal Chancery of the Supreme Court and the city Council-Chamber. This city has, beſides, four Burgomaſters; and the magiſtracy is divided

into four particular Colleges, namely, thoſe of Juſtice, the Police, Trade, and Manufactures; and likewiſe into three courts of Judicature. Here alſo are held the Colleges and Offices mentioned in §. 22. of the Introduction to *Sweden*; among which the principal is that called the Royal High-Court of *Sweden*; which was eſtabliſhed in 1614 for *Sweden* properly ſo called. Subordinate to this are eight ſuperior and twenty-four inferior Courts, together with the juriſdictions of ſeveral Juſticiaries.

The *Collegium Medicum*, or College of Phyſicians, was founded at *Stockholm* in the year 1688. Here are alſo a Royal Academy of Sciences, which was inſtituted in 1739; a Royal Academy for Military Architecture, and another for Land-ſurveying; a Chymical and Mechanical Elaboratory; an Academy of Painting and Sculpture; a Royal Library, an account of which has been written by *Magnus Celſius*; and ſeveral well-regulated Printing-houſes.

There are beſides in this capital the following offices and inſtitutions, *viz.* a Board of Admiralty, a Navy-office, a Cuſtom-houſe, an office of the Revenues, an edifice where goods manufactured in the kingdom are examined, and diſputes betwixt manufacturers decided; a national Bank, the credit of which appears from the price of its actions; a large Iron Weigh-houſe; an Inſurance-office inſtituted in 1739; three ſugar-houſes; with manufactories of glaſs, porcelain, ſilk, woollen-cloth, cotton, parchment, and canvas. Here are alſo commodious docks in which many ſhips are built for foreigners.

The foreign and domeſtic trade of this city may be ſuppoſed to be very conſiderable; for it has an excellent harbour almoſt ſurrounded with hills: But the many *ſheers* or rocks at the mouth of it render the entrance ſomething difficult. In the year 1696, a ſociety of Pilots was eſtabliſhed in this city for the improvement of navigation.

Here are very good regulations in caſes of fire; proviſion for the loſſes by ſuch accidents being made by means of an Inſurance-Office. The Governor of the *Stockholm* Prefecture or Government reſides here; and the King's guards conſiſting of eighteen companies, together with the Officers, *&c.* belonging to the Ordnance, are always quartered in this city.

As to hiſtorical particulars relating to this city; it is ſaid to have been built in 1252, or 1260, by *Birger Jarl*, Regent of the kingdom; but others date its foundation about an hundred years earlier. Its charter of privileges has been renewed and augmented, from time to time. *Stockholm*, in ancient times, ſuſtained ſeveral ſieges; and in the year 1520, a ſhocking maſſacre was perpetrated here by order of the perfidious King *Chriſtian* II. Ninety-ſix Diets have been held in this city ſince the thirteenth century. In the year 1751, a fire happened at *Stockholm* which deſtroyed three hundred and ten houſes, beſides St. *Clare*'s church. This is the firſt city that votes in the Diet; and its Latitude is 59°, 20′.

The

The *Swediſh* Atlas exhibits the ichnography of this city; and there is alſo a good plan of it in OUTHIER's *voyage au Nord*, or 'Travels to the North.

Fredericks-hof is a royal palace built in 1732 by *Frederick* I. It ſtands on the eaſt ſide of *Ladugardsland*; and near it is a park, and an orangery which is much admired.

The King's Park extends itſelf from north to ſouth on the eaſt ſide of the *Nordermalm*, or the north ſuburb, and is almoſt ſurrounded with water. Nothing can be more delightful than the beautiful diſpoſition of the fine groves, lawns, and walks with which it is diverſified: There is alſo a medicinal ſpring in this park.

Carlberg is a fine royal pleaſure-houſe with a garden laid out in the moſt elegant taſte, and decorated with ſome beautiful ſtatues, *&c.* It lies about a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile weſt of *Nordermalm*, or the north ſuburb, on a creek of the *Maler*-lake. This ſeat was formerly called *Magnusberg* from Count *Magnus Gabriel de la Gardie*. At the entrance of this palace ſtands a marble ſtatue of King *Frederick*. *Dahlberg* has inſerted ſeveral views of this charming place in his *Suecia*.

Ulrichſdal, a ſtately royal ſeat, is ſituated at the diſtance of half a *Swediſh* mile to the north of *Stockholm*, on the weſt ſide of the *Edſwike*. It was built in the year 1644 by Count *James Pontuſſon de la Gardie*; and forfeited to the crown in the reign of King *Charles* XI. who altered its former name of *Jacobsdal* to *Ulrichſdal*, in honour of his third ſon *Ulrick* who was born in this palace. The garden is particularly remarkable for the elegant contrivance of its curious grotto. Here is alſo a fine park. *Dahlberg* has given a perſpective view of this palace in his *Suecia*.

Drotningholm, the fineſt of all the King of *Sweden*'s palaces, ſtands on the iſland of *Loſon* which lies about a *Swediſh* mile to the weſt of *Stockholm*. *Hedwig Eleanora*, conſort of Prince *Charles Guſtavus*, to whom it devolved in the year 1652, was the foundreſs of the preſent ſtructure; the former palace having been burnt by careleſſneſs. Facing the ſouth front of it is a pleaſant garden adorned with a variety of fountains; and the eaſt and north ſide exhibit a delightful view of the ſhips at ſea, all which are well repreſented in *Dahlberg*'s views of this place.

The *Upland ſcheeren*. This is a name given to thoſe ſmall iſlands, and rocks ſurrounded with water, which lie along the *Upland* coaſt, and among which it is dangerous to ſail. The inhabitants of theſe *ſheers*, or ſmall rocky iſlands, generally employ themſelves in fiſhing.

Waxholm which lies about two *Swediſh* miles from *Stockholm* juſt at the entrance of the channel into the lake, is a ſtrong citadel built on a ſmall iſland in the year 1649. It has ſince been greatly improved and enlarged, ſo that it has the appearance of a little town. Here all homeward bound ſhips are ſearched. On this iſland, which is called *Waxon*, beſides this fort are a church, a ſchool, and a Cuſtom-houſe. The chief occupation of the inha-

inhabitants is fiſhing. *Dahlberg* has given a view of theſe places in his *Suecia*.

Palſunde, lies alſo on a channel that runs up to *Stockholm*. Here is a battery erected juſt at the water's edge. In 1723 a rampart of earth was thrown up in this place.

Oxdiupet is a third channel leading to *Stockholm*; it is defended by a fort called *Fredericksburg*.

Sandhamn is a harbour in the pariſh of *Wermdo*, where all veſſels homeward or outward bound to or from *Stockholm* are ſearched.

Nortelge, in Latin *Telga Borealis*, is a ſea-port built by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*, which in the year 1622, was endowed with the ſtaple and other privileges: however, the inhabitants enjoyed theſe advantages but for a ſhort time, namely, till the year 1637. They now ſubſiſt by navigation and fiſhing. This town has in ſome meaſure recovered itſelf after the ravages committed here by the *Ruſſians* in the year 1719. Near the water-fall is a fine forge for making fire-arms. *Nortelge* is the fifty-fourth of the towns that vote in the Diet. There is a perſpective view of it in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Radmanſo is a royal demeſne, on an iſland among the *Scheers* or coaſt-rocks, about a *Swediſh* mile and a half from *Nortelge*.

Lindholm, a fine manor, lies about two *Swediſh* miles from *Nortelge*, where King *Guſtavus* I. was born in the year 1490.

Wira is a place where very good blades are made, and lies in the pariſh of *Riala*.

Griſlehaman. Here is a Poſt-houſe, from which the packet paſſes over to the iſland of *Aland*.

ZEHN-LAND DISTRICTE, or the ten inland Diſtricts, lie higher up the country, and contain the following towns and places of note.

Oeſthammar, in Latin *Oeſthammeria*, is an old ſea-port, and formerly a ſtaple-town. In the year 1491 the inhabitants of this place with all its privileges were removed to *Oeregrund*. But, ſome time after, *Oeſthammer* was built on the *Gold ſheer*, or golden rock, as it is called, which projects a little farther into the ſea than its former ſituation. In the year 1719, this town was burnt by the *Ruſſians*: But it has recovered itſelf ſince that calamity; and its inhabitants ſubſiſt comfortably by navigation and fiſhing. *Oeſthammar* has the eighty-ſeventh vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has alſo given it a place in his *Suecia*.

Oeregrund, in Latin *Oeregrunda*, is a ſea-port, built in the year 1491, on the ſea-coaſt, by ſome of the inhabitants of *Oeſthammar*; who left that town becauſe of the great decreaſe of the water in the harbour which entirely ruined its trade. *Oeregrund* was a ſtaple-town till the year 1630, and has been three times burnt, and quite demoliſhed by the *Ruſſians*. And though the laſt time it was laid waſte was no longer ago than the year 1719; yet it has roſe again ſince to ſome degree of proſperity. The harbour is defended from

from the violence of the ſea by a mole. A convent of Monks formerly ſtood in this town, which has the fifty-ſecond vote in the Diet. A proſpect of it is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Swartſio, is a royal manor on an iſland in the *Maler*-lake in the pariſh of *Sanga*. This iſland is the beſt peopled of any in that lake. It has been a royal manor from time immemorial, and the preſent manſion-houſe was lately built; the former having been burnt in the year 1687. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of it.

Wantholmen is a royal farm aſſigned for the expences of the Court.

Biorko, in Latin *Birca*, is an iſland in the *Maler*-lake, and lies about three *Swediſh* miles from *Stockholm*. On this iſland ſtood formerly a market-town with a royal ſeat called *Birka* or *Biorko*, which was commonly but improperly termed a city. A draught of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* Tom. I.

Sigtuna, a ſmall town ſituated on a creek of the *Maler*-lake, formerly made a great figure among the chief cities of this Kingdom. It derives its name from the *Aſiatic* hero *Odin*, whoſe ſurname was *Sigge*. He came into the North before the Chriſtian *Æra*, and had his reſidence, his Temple, and Court of Judicature in this place; on which account it was called *Siggeſtuna*, i. e. *Sigge*'s Court. Others will have it, that the town was firſt built by *Odin*, and aſſign its name another etymology, namely, *Stadt des Siegers*, or the 'Conqueror's town;' being ſo called on account of the coſtly ſacrifices formerly brought hither, which were termed *Sigurblott*, i. e. Victims, offered after a victory. *Sigtuna* went through many viciſſitudes during the Pagan times; and was plundered and burnt in the year of *Chriſt* 1008 by *Olof the Pious*, King of *Norway*. However, after this caſtrophe it roſe again by degrees to its former flouriſhing condition, and continued ſo till it was deſtroyed a ſecond time, in 1188, by the *Carelians*, *Eſtonians*, and *Ruſſians*. It even recovered itſelf once more after this ſecond calamity, and continued for ſome time in a proſperous ſtate. But the vaſt increaſe of *Stockholm* gave an irretrievable blow to *Sigtuna*; for as the former flouriſhed the latter declined in proportion. Several churches and other buildings, which however are an ornament to *Dahlberg*'s draught of this town, are to be ſeen here in a ruinous condition. This is the forty-ſeventh town that votes in the Diet.

Noor, is a very fine manor in the pariſh of *Knitſtadt*.

2. The Prefecture or Government of *Upſal* conſiſts of four Diſtricts, and contains the following towns and remarkable places.

Upſala, or *Upſal*, in Latin *Upſalia*, a very ancient and pretty large city, is ſituated on the river *Fyris*, which divides it into two parts; that part which lies on the eaſt ſide of the river being properly the city, and that on the weſt being called *Fierding*. *Upſal* was anciently the chief ſeat of the ſovereigns of *Sweden*, where they held their ſupreme tribunal. The greateſt ſacrifices offered in all the northern provinces were brought hither in the

time of paganiſm; and the moſt eminent heathen prieſts, had their reſidence in this city. *Upſal* was alſo the moſt ancient town in the *Swediſh Hochlander* or Highlands, and the chief ornament of the whole country.

All the buildings of this city are of wood, the cathedral and a few ſtone-houſes excepted; and the roofs of them are nothing but the bark of birch-trees covered with turf. Here are three churches; among which the cathedral is the principal, and indeed makes the beſt appearance of any in the Kingdom. It was built in the thirteenth century, but not completed and conſecrated till the year 1435. The Architect being a native of *Paris* took the church of *Notre Dame* in that city for his model. This cathedral has been deſtroyed by fire no leſs than five times ſince its firſt foundation; the laſt time it was burnt was in the year 1702: However, it has ſince been rebuilt in an elegant manner. Several royal perſonages lie buried in this church; and the remains of King *Erick* IX. are ſhewn here in a ſilver ſhrine. There was formerly an epiſcopal palace on the ſpot where the King's ſtables now ſtand. The royal palace in this city was conſumed by fire in the year 1702; but preparations are making for rebuilding it. The Kings of *Sweden* are generally crowned here.

A ſchool was firſt inſtituted at *Upſal* in 1246, which was raiſed to an Univerſity in the year 1476; but in 1582 it was removed to *Stockholm*. However, the Univerſity was eſtabliſhed a ſecond time at *Upſal* in the year 1592. *Guſtavus* I. and *Guſtavus Adolphus* endowed this Univerſity with ſome lands. It has been alſo enriched by conſiderable legacies of ſeveral private perſons, beſides the royal ſalaries. The edifice called *Academia Guſtaviana*, which is three ſtories high, was built by *Guſtavus Adolphus* in the year 1622. It has a round tower, or rather cupola, at the top, in which is a curious Anatomy-theatre, founded in the ſame year by Profeſſor *Rudbeck*. It has alſo a very valuable library containing near 1000 manuſcripts, among which the moſt remarkable is the *Codex Argenteus*, ſuppoſed to be *Uphila's Gothic* tranſlation of the four Evangeliſts; but it ſeems rather to be written in the language of the ancient *Francs*. The *Muſeum* or Cabinet of curioſities is ſaid to be worth a *Ton of Gold* *. The aſtronomical Obſervatory was planned by the celebrated *Celſius*; and the Phyſic-garden was laid out chiefly by the famous *Linnæus*. The Royal Academy of Sciences was inſtituted in the year 1728. The Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, who is the only one in the Kingdom, is the *Procancellarius Academiæ*, or Vice Chancellor of the Univerſity. There is alſo a cathedral ſchool in this city; and the Governor of *Upland* reſides here.

The *Swediſh* Geographers place their firſt meridian, from which they compute the Longitude, at *Upſal*.

About the cloſe of the eleventh, or the beginning of the twelfth century, a Biſhop's See was eſtabliſhed here, which, at the deſire of *Charles* VII. was made an Archiepiſcopal See by Pope *Alexander* III. *Stephanus*, who was conſecrated in the year 1162, was the firſt Archbiſhop of *Upſal*.

* 100,000 *Swediſh* dollars at 1 *s.* 9 *d.*

The

The moſt remarkable Diets held in this city were thoſe of 1593 and 1654. *Upſal* has the ſecond vote in the Diet, and is ranked accordingly.

Near this city is a royal chace, and *Ultuna*, a royal demeſne, on which ſtands a manſion-houſe. In the year 1160, a battle was fought in the royal incloſure near this city between *Erick* IX. and *Henry Skateler* King of *Denmark*, in which the former was totally defeated and loſt his head. *Dahlberg* has beſtowed ſeveral plates on this city in his *Suecia*.

Gamla Upſala, i. e. *Old Upſal*, is a pariſh that lies about half a *Swediſh* mile from the city; and is by ſome ſuppoſed to have been the chief place whither in ancient times all the Northern People reſorted to offer ſacrifices to the Heathen Gods. In the year 1138, a Chriſtian church, which is ſtill to be ſeen here, was built out of the ruins of an ancient Pagan temple: near this church are ſeveral *tumuli* or ſepulchral monuments. Of theſe buildings and antiquities *Dahlberg* has inſerted draughts in his *Suecia*.

Mora-ſteine is a parcel of ſtones lying on a level meadow about a *Swediſh* mile from *Upſal*. Near theſe ſtones the Kings of *Sweden* were formerly elected and inaugurated, purſuant to a cuſtom firſt introduced in the year 1059; but this ceremony was diſcontinued in 1457. On theſe ſtones, which are now extremely mutilated, the arms of *Sweden* with ſeveral inſcriptions are cut. They ſtand under cover; and the little edifice in which they are incloſed is kept locked, and the key is committed to the care of the keeper of the meadow.

Skog-kloſter, a fine eſtate near the *Maler*-lake, was formerly the property of the *Folkunga*-family, and after having been in the poſſeſſion of ſeveral other proprietors, it devolved to Count *Brahe*, who is the preſent owner of it. The ancient *Dominican* convent which ſtood here, and was afterwards turned into a nunnery, is now converted into a fine palace; in which are two armories, a large cabinet for mathematical and aſtronomical inſtruments, and a valuable library. A view of this place is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Eckholmſund is a royal demeſne. A view of it is exhibited in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Enkioping, in Latin *Encopia*, is a very ancient city ſituated in a fertile country. This town in the times of paganiſm was the reſidence of the Vaſſal-kings of *Fierdhundra*; and of late the ſuperior judges have held their courts and muſters here. The number of inhabitants at *Enkioping* is about ſix hundred; and it has ſtill ſome remains of two churches and as many convents. In the year 1308, it was ſacked by the *Germans*; and was conſumed by fire in 1572 and 1609. Its deputies rank in the Diet as the fifty-fifth voting town. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Suinnegarns, or St. *Siegfried*'s well, lies about half a *Swediſh* mile from the city. This was anciently the ſcene of ſeveral ſuperſtitious cuſtoms and ceremonies.

Oerby-

Oerby-Hus, a conſiderable eſtate above four *Swediſh* miles from *Upſal*, now belongs to the *De Geer* family. Here King *Erick* XIV. was detained priſoner till the year 1579, when he was taken off by poiſon.

Dannemora is an iron mine about four *Swediſh* miles from *Upſal*: It is one of the moſt ancient and conſiderable mines in the Kingdom, yielding every year forty or fifty thouſand cart-loads of red iron ore.

Loſſta hammer-mill lies about two *Swediſh* miles from the former, and conſiſts of four hammers, eight forges, and a ſmelting furnace. Though the *Ruſſians* entirely deſtroyed this ſtructure by fire in the year 1719, it was rebuilt ſince, and conſiſts of ſo many buildings as to conſtitute a little town; ſo that it has not its equal of the kind in the whole Kingdom. Theſe works alſo belong to the abovementioned *De Geer* family.

Tobo is the largeſt and moſt noted ſmelting-houſe in all *Sweden*.

Elfkarleby is a royal manor, on which ſtands a village where a yearly fair is kept. Here is a fiſhery, in which ſalmon and lampreys are caught in great abundance.

3. The Prefecture or Government of WESTMANNLAND conſiſts of three Diſtricts and two pariſhes. The only remarkable places in *Weſtmannland* are the village of *Ullaraker*, where a town formely ſtood, of which ſome ruins are ſtill to be ſeen, and the borough of *Borgberg* which lies in ruins.

Note. In DAHLBERG's *Suecia antiqua & hodierna*, Vol. I. are to be ſeen views of the following ſeats.

Akehof.
Ado, ſituated on the *Maler*-lake.
Almarſtak.
Arnoo.
Angſoo.
Aſpenas.
Bogeſund.
Brunſholm, ſituated on the *Maler*-lake.
Diurſholm, ſituated on the *Wortan*-lake.
Ekebyholm, which ſtands on the bank of the *Synningen*-lake.
Ekholm.
Finſtad, where St. *Bridget* was born, and ſeveral antiquities are to be ſeen.
Gorvalen.
Gronſoo.
Haaga.
Hatunaholm.
Hammerſkog, which lies in *Dahlbywyk*.
Hornſberg.
Haſleby.
Rierſoo.
Malmwyk, lying near the *Maler*-lake.
Lindholm.
Lidoon, on the *Alandſhaf*.
Moorby, which ſtands near the *Schedwyk*-lake.
Margretelund.
Naſby.
Noor, which ſtands on the lake of the ſame name.
Oerby, near the *Mandel*-lake.
Oeſtana.
Penningeby.
Roſersberg, an elegant caſtle with a very pleaſant garden.
Roſtrand.
Ridboholm.

Runſa.
Skanilaholm.
Saalſtad.
Satuna.
Saby.
Sio, a ſtately palace.
Schellnora.
Stafsund.
Steeninge.
Tuna.
Ulſunda.
Wanſgarn.
Wennegarn, and
Wyk.

II. *SUDERMANNLAND*,

In Latin *Sudermannia.*

THIS name preſerves the memory of the ancient *Mannahem*, i. e. *Manſio Virorum*; and as it lies to the ſouth of *Upſal* and *Upland*, it was called *Suder-manna-land*, or *Suder-manna-hem*, i. e. *Meridionalis virorum Manſio.* It is five-and-twenty *Swediſh* miles in length, and twelve in breadth; and this Province appears to be one of the firſt that was inhabited and cultivated in this Kingdom. The ſoil is fertile, and, accordingly, no labour is ſpared for the improvement of it. *Sudermannland* abounds in fine arable land, paſtures, woods, iron-mines, and forges; and its lakes are well ſtocked with fiſh. Its advantageous ſituation between the main-ſea and the *Maler*-lake is alſo the cauſe of its carrying on a conſiderable trade.

There are eleven rivers, ſome of which ſhall be mentioned in the ſequel, in this province; and ſeveral freſh-water lakes, among which the moſt remarkable are

The *Maler*, of which an account has been given above.

The *Hielmar*, which is ſeven *Swediſh* miles long, and has a communication with the *Maler*-lake by means of a canal, ſome ſluices, and the *Arboga* river.

The *Bawen*-lake, in which are a hundred iſlands.

The inhabitants of this country chiefly ſubſiſt by agriculture, hunting, fiſhing, and working in the mines; and carry on a conſiderable trade in corn, iron, and wooden ware. On account of the pleaſantneſs and fertility of the country, the dowager Queens uſe to have their dowery, and the Dukes their dutchies in this province.

Sudermannland is divided into SUDERMANNLAND properly ſo called; SUDERTORN, in Latin *Toernea Meridionalis*, which lies between *Stockholm* and *Sudertelge*, and is environed by the main-ſea and the *Maler*-lake; and REKARNA which lies between *Hielmarſund* and *Strengnas.* But the inhabitants of this laſt diviſion differ from the others both in their language and dreſs.

The Dioceſe of *Sudermannland* is the fourth in order, and contains fourteen Provoſtſhips.

Suder-

Sudermannland, properly ſo called, conſiſts of two Governments, namely, *Nikioping* and *Suder-Torn*.

The Government of NIKIOPING contains three Diſtricts.

1. *Nikioping-Lehn*; in which the places of note are,

Nikioping, i. e. 'a new mart,' in Latin *Nicopia*, is a well-built ſtaple-town, and the capital of this province. It is one of the moſt ancient cities in the kingdom of *Sweden*, and was formerly the reſidence of the Kings and Princes of *Sudermannland*. The air is ſo temperate and ſalubrious that in times of a contagion, the royal family and the ſeveral Boards and Offices have frequently removed from *Stockholm* to this place. Its inhabitants are above 1200 ſouls; and the city is divided into two (nearly equal) parts by a large river, which riſes in *Langhalſen*. In the year 1728, a ſtone-bridge, which is ſcarcely to be equalled in the whole kingdom, was built over this river. *Nikioping* was almoſt conſumed by fire in 1661, and ſuffered extremely by the ravages of the *Ruſſians* in 1719. Here was formerly a very ancient caſtle, which is famous in hiſtory; but it was demoliſhed in the year 1665: The Kings of *Sudermannland* reſided in it, and it was ſo ſtrongly fortified that it was accounted little inferior to thoſe of *Stockholm* and *Calmar*. The ſtreets are all well laid out, and the high-ſtreet is planted with *Dutch* limes. It has two handſom churches, a commodious harbour, ſeveral manufactories of cloth and *Morocco*-leather, a braſs hammer-mill, and drives a conſiderable trade by ſea. Its chief magiſtrates are two Burgomaſters. The Governor of *Sudermannland* alſo reſides in a palace in this city. In the times of popery here was a famous convent; and ſeveral Diets have been held in this town. The *Swediſh* language is ſuppoſed to be ſpoken in its greateſt purity at *Nikioping* and its environs. Without the town is a royal incloſure; and the adjacent country is extremely fertile. This is the eleventh voting town in the Diet. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of this place.

Haſſelo-Schantz is a fort which ſtood on an iſland, but now lies in ruins. Here is a cuſtom-houſe for ſearching all ſhips that are bound to or from *Nikioping*.

Nafuequarn and *Staffio* are two founderies for great guns: the latter is extremely well contrived.

Eriksberg is a large eſtate in the pariſh of *Malm*, about four *Swediſh* miles from *Nikioping*, on which ſtands one of the fineſt palaces in the kingdom, with a moſt delightful garden. This place affords a quarry of beautiful ſpeckled marble.

Juleta is a fine demeſne near the *Oeljarn*-lake. A convent formerly ſtood on the ſame ſpot.

Troſa is an ancient ſea-port lying in a mountainous country, with a good harbour. It is the eighty-ſixth town that votes in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a plate of it in his *Suecia*.

2. *Gripſholms-Lehn*, which contains the following remarkable places.

Mariefred,

Mariefred, in Latin *Pax Mariæ*, is a town ſituated on a bay of the *Maler*-lake, ſo called from a convent built there in 1490, and dedicated to the Virgin *Mary* in the year 1504. A good ſtocking and woollen manufacture is carried on in this town; which has the ſeventy-ſixth vote in the Diet.

Gripſholm, which lies near *Mariefred*, is a royal caſtle with a park. A proſpect of this together with the town of *Mariefred* is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Raſsnas and *Tynnelſo* are royal demeſnes with caſtles of the ſame names.

Strengnas, in Latin *Strengneſia*, is a very ancient inland town, ſituated on the *Maler*-lake. In the choir of the cathedral in this town King *Charles* IX. with his two Queens, Duke *Charles Philip*, and, in a private chapel, *Charles Gyldenhielm* are buried. *Strengnas* is a Biſhop's See, and has a celebrated *gymnaſium* or ſeminary founded in 1626 by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, who at the ſame time endowed it with penſions for thirty ſtudents. Here is alſo a ſchool, in which King *Guſtavus* I. received his firſt inſtructions in the rudiments of learning. In the times of popery here was a convent with a chapel belonging to it. Several Diets have, from time to time, been held in this city. *Strengnas* is the thirty-firſt town that votes in the Diet, and is exhibited in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Kongsberg is a fine royal farm, that lies about a *Swediſh* mile from *Strengnas*, which from the time of King *Erick Laſpes* to the reign of *Guſtavus* I. was a convent of nuns.

3. *Eſchilſtuna-Lehn*, which contains the following towns, *&c.*

Eſchilſtuna, or *Carl-Guſtavſtadt*, in Latin *Eſchilſtuna*, lies at the extremity of the *Hielmar*-lake, where it runs into the *Maler* with great rapidity. This town derives its name from St. *Eſchil*, who came over from *England* in the year 1082 to preach the Goſpel in *Sudermannland*, and was the firſt Biſhop of this See. *Eſchilſtuna* was incorporated with *Carl-Guſtav-ſtadt*, which lies in its neighbourhood, in the reign of *Charles* X. and the municipal privileges were jointly conferred on them in the year 1659. This is the forty-ſecond of the towns that have a vote in the Diet. The view of its caſtle makes a good figure in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Sunbyholm and *Ribbingelund*. Theſe are two royal demeſnes.

Torſhella, in Latin *Torſilia*, is an inland town, about a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile from the *Maler*; and a rapid ſtream runs cloſe by the town and empties itſelf into the lake. It is under the juriſdiction of the ſame Burgomaſter as *Eſchilſtuna*. *Torſhella* is the forty-firſt town that votes in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has given it a place in his *Suecia*.

Biby, a royal demeſne, lies in this neighbourhood.

SUDERTORN conſiſts of three Diſtricts, which belong to the Government of *Stockholm*, and is a kind of iſland, being ſurrounded with water. The remarkable places in *Sudertorn* are,

Sodertelge, in Latin *Telga Auſtralis*, an inland-town lying betwixt the ſea and the *Maler*-lake. About half a *Swediſh* mile diſtant from this town, at a place called *Aegelſtawyk*, is a good harbour. *Sodertelge* was formerly a ſtaple-town and in a flouriſhing condition; and there is ſtill a thriving manufacture of worſted and ſilk-ſtockings in this town. The inhabitants have alſo begun to plant tobacco in the adjacent grounds. In the year 1719, *Sodertelge* was burnt by the *Ruſſian* army; but has been ſince rebuilt. In the fourteenth century a great Provincial aſſembly, and in 1494 a Diet was held here. This is the fifty-third voting town in the Diet; and a view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Carlholm, which lies near a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile from *Sodertelge*, was formerly a royal demeſne, with a caſtle on it.

Dadero, alſo a royal demeſne.

Brankyrka is a pariſh, where a bloody battle was fought in the year 1518.

Among the *Scheeren*, or rocky iſlands on the coaſt of *Sudermannland* are the following remarkable places.

Landſort, a point of land that projects a great way into the ſea, on which ſtands a light-houſe.

Elſnabben, or *Hielmſnabben*, is a ſafe harbour, and often mentioned in hiſtory.

Note. In the ſecond volume of *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* are proſpects of the following ſeats:

Akero, which is ſituate on the *Yngarn*-lake.
Ado.
Arſta, near which is a harbour in the *Baltic*; and two medicinal ſprings that run into a cavity below them, and, by a canal, are carried one hundred paces farther to a lower place, where the water in winter and ſummer ſpouts up like a perennial fountain.
Haringe, ſituated on *Langſiohln*-lake.
Ericksberg.
Fiohlm.
Hanſtawick.
Gieddeholm.
Heſleybyholm.
Horningſholm.
Ludgonas.
Nykas.
Malma.
Malſaker, which ſtands near the *Maler*-lake.
Rinſta.
Rafsnas.
Sandmare, which ſtands on a bay in the *Baltic*.
Safweſtaholm.
Sioſa, ſituated near a bay in the *Baltic*.
Siohlm, which ſtands on the bank of a lake.
Sunby, near the *Hielmar*-lake.
Sunbyholm, near the *Maler*-lake.
Steenhammer.
Tullgarn.
Tarna.
Tynelſo, on the *Maler*-lake.
Torſo.
Wybyholm.

III. *NERIKE*,

III. NERIKE,

In Latin *Nericia.*

THIS province is ten *Swediſh* miles in length, and eight in breadth. In moſt parts of it the ſoil is fertile, and produces corn and paſturage. This country alſo yields iron and ſulphur mines, quarries of load-ſtone, alum, lime-ſtone, *&c.* Conſequently it has iron foundaries, with ſulphur and lead-works. Here are large woods, ſeveral high mountains, ſeven conſiderable rivers and three-and-twenty lakes, which abound in fiſh. *Nericia* is famous for ſeveral flouriſhing manufactures of all kinds of hard ware; and it has always been remarkable for forging arms, *&c.* The chief occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture, working in the mines and forges, hunting, and fiſhing; and they trade in grain and all kind of iron-wares. *Nericia*, in eccleſiaſtical affairs, is divided into four Provoſtſhips, and is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Strengnas*, excepting the *Paſtorat* of *Nyſund*, which is annexed to the Superintendency of *Carlſtadt*. As to its political ſtate, this province is divided into *

1. *Oſt-Nerike*, or *Eaſt-Nericia*, which contains four Diſtricts, and the following places of note.

Oerebro, in Latin *Oerebroa*, a famous ancient town, ſituated on the *Hielmar*-lake, where the river *Schwart* runs out of it. It is a long narrow town, with a caſtle quite ſurrounded by water; and as it had been often beſieged, King *Guſtavus* I. cauſed it to be well fortified; and farther improvements have been made in the fortifications ſince that time. In the times of popery here was a *Carmelite* convent. *Oerebro* has at preſent two churches, a grammar-ſchool, and a manufacture of fire-arms. It has alſo a harbour on the *Hielmar*-lake, which has a communication with the *Maler* by means of the river and canal of *Arboga*; and conſequently there is a paſſage by water from hence to *Stockholm*. The inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade; and this town is in high reputation for the exactneſs of its weights and meaſures. The Governor of the province reſides here. Among the Diets held at *Oerebro* thoſe of 1347, 1531, and 1540 were the moſt remarkable. This is the twenty-ſeventh town that votes in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Axberg-ſulphur-work lies about a *Swediſh* mile and a quarter from *Oerebro*: Of the ore dug up here is, firſt, made ſulphur, afterwards vitriol, and laſtly a red colour for painting.

Sellewalla and *Sioſtad* are two decayed towns, of which nothing is to be ſeen but the ruins.

* I ſuppoſe the Author means *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Nerike*; but he has entirely omitted the latter.

Riſeberga is a fine eſtate, where formerly ſtood a nunnery, the walls of which are ſtill remaining.

At *Ramunda* or *Romla-Boda* are a church, a poſt-office, and an inn. Here formerly ſtood the only *Eremitical* convent in the whole kingdom.

Aſkerſund, an inland town, ſtands at the extremity of the *Wetter*-lake. It has an harbour on the lake, and carries on a good trade in grain, nails, and tobacco. *Askerſund* is the ſixtieth voting town in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Oxoga, a good medicinal ſpring impregnated with ſulphur, lies about two *Swediſh* miles and a half from *Oerebro*.

IV. *WESTMANNLAND*,

In Latin *Weſtmannia*.

THIS province is ſeventeen *Swediſh* miles in length, and fourteen in breadth: The ſoil is fertile and conſiſts moſtly of arable land, with meadows, paſtures, and very fine woods in proportion. It alſo contains rich ſilver, copper, and iron-mines, and very curious copper, ſteel, and braſs hammer-mills, and is reckoned the moſt famous province in the kingdom for mines. The iron trade carried on by the inhabitants of *Weſtmannland* is the moſt conſiderable in all *Sweden*; the quantity of iron exported annually from *Weſterahs*, *Arboga*, and *Kioping*, amounting to 120,000 *lb*. The ſouth part of the province chiefly conſiſts of arable and meadow land, and ſupplies the inhabitants of the mine-diſtricts with corn; and the northern parts abound in mine-works and fine woods. *Weſtmannland* is well watered both with rivers and lakes, which yield a vaſt plenty of fiſh; and the *Maler*-lake is of great advantage to its commerce, as it opens a paſſage from this province to *Stockholm*. The chief ſubſiſtence of the inhabitants is derived from agriculture and the mines, breeding of cattle and fiſhing: The woods, hammer-mills, *&c.* alſo employ a great many hands.

The Biſhoprick of *Weſtmannland*, or *Weſterahs*, is the fifth in rank, and is divided into fourteen Provoſtſhips. It includes the greateſt part of the Prefecture or Government of *Weſterahs*, a conſiderable part of that of *Nerike* or *Oerebro*, and the whole Diſtrict of *Copparberg*.

This province is divided into the *Land* and *Mine*-Diſtricts.

1. The WESTMANNLAND Government, properly ſo called, includes nine *Land* and two *Mine*-Diſtricts; in which the places of note are,

Weſterahs, in Latin *Aroſia*, a very ancient inland town, where the river *Schwart*, after it runs through the town, empties itſelf into the *Maler*. Its name is a contraction of *Weſtraaros*. It is an epiſcopal ſee, and has a *gymnaſium* or ſeminary; a caſtle, part of which is made uſe of as a granary; a weigh-

a weigh-houſe for metals, from whence a vaſt quantity of iron, copper, and braſs is exported every year to *Stockholm*; and is the reſidence of the Governor of the province. The cathedral is a ſpacious and magnificent ſtructure; but is particularly remarkable for the architecture of its tower, and for being the burial place of King *Erick* XIV. The trade carried on at *Weſterahs* is very conſiderable. This city has often ſuffered very much by fire, particularly in the year 1714. Among the Diets held at *Weſterahs*, thoſe of 1527 and 1544 were the moſt remarkable. This is the twenty-fifth town that votes in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has given a proſpect of it in his *Suecia*.

Johannisberg is a royal farm, not far from this city.

Badelundſahs is a long, narrow, ſandy tract of land about half a *Swediſh* mile from *Weſterahs*, where the *Danes* were totally defeated in the year 1521.

Kila, or *Satra*, is a famous medicinal ſpring on a delightful ſpot of land.

Sala or *Salberg*, in Latin *Sala*, is a fair large mine-town and *Mine*-Diſtrict, ſituated on the river *Sag*. It was built and endowed with ſeveral privileges, by King *Guſtavus Adolphus* in the year 1624. The ſtreets are ſtraight and well paved; and the market-place ſpacious and regular. Here is held a mine-court, a court of works, a town-council, and an inferior court of judicature. To this town belong ſeveral conſiderable eſtates; and the neighbouring villages ſupply the inhabitants of *Sala* with all kinds of commodities at a very cheap rate; no cuſtom or duty being paid here. Here is alſo a medicinal ſpring. In the year 1736, this town was deſtroyed by fire. In 1710, the royal family choſe *Sala* for their retreat during a raging peſtilence. Not far from the town is a very large ancient ſilver-mine, which uſed annually to produce 24,000 *Lothige* marks* of ſilver: But it is now greatly declined. This is the forty-ſixth voting town in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Gulboburg and *Baibyburg* lie directly oppoſite to each other on the rivers *Sewa* and *Kila*. They are both large boroughs and incloſed with walls.

Engſon is a good eſtate with a fine ſeat, on an iſland in the *Maler*, and belongs to Count *Piper*.

Tidon, which is alſo a fine eſtate belonging to the *Oxenſtiern* family.

Stromſholms is a well ſituated and very rich demeſne, with a mangnificent ſeat and a church. *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* exhibits two views of it.

Suraburg, formerly called *Thuraburg*, one of the largeſt boroughs in the whole kingdom, is ſtill in a pretty good condition, and incloſed within two walls. On the ſpot where the church now ſtands was formerly a Pagan temple famous for the offerings made there. Superſtitious travellers, in

* A *Lothige* mark is equal to nine ounces twelve penny-weights, *Troy* weight.

paſſing by, ſtill preſent money at the old offering-church, and ſome congregations have prayers ſaid here for the recovery of the ſick.

Davo, or *Davidſo*, is an iſland ſo called from St. *David*, the firſt preacher of the Goſpel in *Weſtmannland*, who came from *England* about the year 1060, and founded a convent in this place. It is now a manor belonging to a noble family.

Norberg is a pariſh, in which are the beſt iron-mines in this province.

Kioping, in Latin *Kopingia*, a handſome old town, ſituated at the extremity of a creek or bay of the *Maler*-lake called *Galten*. *Kioping* carries on a good trade, and has a fine iron weigh-houſe. The King's Halbardiers or Life-guards are quartered in this town, which has the thirtieth vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a proſpect of *Kioping*. Near this town lies the *Kioping Gerichts-hugel*, or Juridical hill, where cauſes were formerly tried in the open air. Below the town formerly ſtood a royal farm and a caſtle, near the river.

Kungſohr is a royal demeſne.

Arboga, in Latin *Arbogia*, is a handſome ancient town, but formerly in a more flouriſhing condition than it is at preſent. The *Stor-a*, i. e. 'large 'river,' runs through this town, which contains between eight and nine hundred inhabitants, who carry on a good trade. Here are a large iron weigh-houſe, a manufacture of arms, and a mint; and a part of the King's Halbardiers or Life-guards are quartered in this town. In the year 1710, the Senate withdrew to this place on occaſion of a peſtilence that raged at *Stockholm*. *Arboga* was formerly well fortified; and embelliſhed with a palace, ſeveral convents, chapels, and market-places, of which ſome remains are ſtill to be ſeen: But at preſent here are only two churches ſtanding. Several Diets and Provincial aſſemblies have, from time to time, been held here. Near the town is a remarkable grove where ſacrifices were offered in Pagan times, with other monuments of antiquity. *Arboga* is the twenty-ſixth voting town in the Diet, and has a place in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*. At the diſtance of a quarter of a *Swediſh* mile from the town is the *Arboga* canal by which there is a communication between the lakes of *Hielmar* and *Maler*. There are nine ſluices in this canal.

Note. In the ſecond volume of *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* are views of the ſeats of *Malhammar*, *Mira* on the *Helmar*-lake, and *Tydon* on the *Maler*.

2. Part of the Diſtrict of FALLINSBRO and four Mine-Diſtricts in *Weſtmannland* belong to the Government of *Nerike:* In theſe are the following towns, *&c.*

Lindesberg or *Linde*, in Latin *Lindesberga*, is a *Mine-town* and *Mine-Diſtrict*. It lies on a narrow tract of ſand between two lakes. Queen *Chriſtina* built this town in the years 1643 and 1644; and in the following year it received its charter of privileges. Here is a good medicinal ſpring. *Lindesberg* is the fifty-ſixth voting town in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Wedwag

Wedwag and *Quarnbacka*, are conſiderable forges for ſteel, iron, and braſs, erected in the laſt century. Here all kinds of tools, *&c.* are made in a very curious manner.

Nora, a *Mine-town* and *Mine-Diſtrict*, is ſituated on a lake, which has its name from this town. It was built in 1643, and drives the beſt trade of any of the *Mine-Diſtricts* in the kingdom in unwrought iron, which is the beſt in *Sweden*. In the year 1731, *Nora* was burnt down; but has been ſince rebuilt, and is at preſent in a flouriſhing condition. This is the fifty-ſeventh town that has a vote in the Diet; and a view of it is inſerted in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Loca is a famous medicinal ſpring, whoſe water is impregnated with ſulphur and nitre.

Note. In the ſecond volume of *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* are views of the manſion-houſes of *Eſpelunda*, *Ekeberg*, *Giokſholm*, and *Kagleholm*.

V. *SWEDISH THAL-LAND*,

In Latin *Dalecarlia*, or *Dalia*.

THIS province is ſo called from its many vallies [*Thalern*], and is forty *Swediſh* miles in length, and ſix-and-twenty in breadth. It is very mountainous, and has but little arable land, eſpecially beyond *Falun*: But where the ſoil between the mountains allows of tillage, it yields plenty of oats and peaſe, of which the inhabitants make bread. In the pariſh of *Ratwicks*, indeed, ſome fine barley grows. This country is almoſt every where diverſified with mountains, vallies, woods, heaths, lakes and rivers; and abounds in mines of ſilver, copper, and iron, and with fine quarries of ſlate and mill-ſtones. The paſtures are ſo good that grazing turns out here to very good account.

The river called *Dal-Elbe*, the ſource of which is among the *Norway* mountains, conſiſts of two ſtreams; which, after watering the whole country, unite in the pariſh of *Gagneſs*. That branch of the river which waters the eaſtern part of this province is called the *Oeſter-Dal-Elfwe*, and the adjacent country has the name of *Oeſt-Thal-Land*; and that which runs through the weſtern part of the country is called *Weſter-Dal-Elfwe*, and the neighbouring parts are termed *Weſt-Thal-Land*. At length this river diſcharges itſelf into the *Baltic* ſea at *Elfkarleby*.

The inhabitants of this province, who are called *Dalecarlians*, are famous in Hiſtory for their integrity and firm attachment to their King and Country; but more particularly celebrated for their courage and bravery; and indeed it is probable that they are deſcended from the ancient *Scythians*. They are proof againſt toil, hardſhips, and want; and have thoroughly learned the advantage of induſtry and œconomy, ſince they are able to ſubſiſt on their daily

daily acquiſitions in ſuch a barren mountainous country. In many pariſhes there is ſcarce a man who is not ſkilled in all neceſſary handicraft trades; and in other parts of the Kingdom they hire themſelves out as labourers, carpenters, maſons, &c. They trade in wooden-ware, the bark of birch-trees, hops, ſlate, lime, ſcythes, hatchets, and other iron utenſils.

In the north part of this province, and even in the pariſhes of *Elfdalen*, *Mora*, and *Orſa*, they ſpeak a particular language which has a great affinity with the old *Gothic* and *Iſlandic* dialects. They uſe three different dialects; and a *German* underſtands their language much better than a *Swede*. They ſtill retain the manner of living, dreſs, and cuſtoms of the ancient *Swedes*, without affecting new faſhions, or modern inventions. The *Runſtab* or *Runic* Calendar is ſtill in uſe among them; and they carry it about them as a perpetual Almanac.

Dalecarlia and *Weſtmannland* make but one dioceſe: But in the times of Popery there was a cathedral, with a Dean and Chapter at *Tuna*. This province belongs to the Prefecture or Government of KOPPARBERG, and conſiſts of ſix Diviſions, four of which lie in the eaſtern part of *Dalecarlia*, and theſe are

1. NASGARDS-LEHN. In this Diviſion are the following places of note.

Stiernſund, a forge or hammer-mill which is curiouſly conſtructed. It was erected in 1701, and is put in motion by water.

Naſgard, an ancient royal manor formerly known by the names of *Naſholm* or *Nasboholm*.

Hedemora, a very ancient town, but in latter times handſomely rebuilt, ſtands on the *Hafran*-lake. It carries on a good trade, and has an annual fair on the feſtival of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*. *Hedemora* is the only town in the province of *Dalecarlia*, and one of the principal cities in the whole Kingdom. It is famous for the gun-powder which is made here. A mint was formerly ſet up in this town, by *Guſtavus Erickſon*; and ſome of the pieces coined here are ſtill to be ſeen in the cabinets of the curious. The gardens about this town, in which fruit trees are cultivated, are unqueſtionably the moſt pleaſant in all *Dalecarlia*. *Dahlberg* has beſtowed a plate on this town and *Afweſtad* in his *Suecia*. *Hedemora* has the fifty-fifth vote in the Diet. In the year 1754, this town was deſtroyed by fire.

Afweſtad is a copper-work belonging to the Crown ſituated on the *Dal-Elbe*. It is ſo large a ſtructure that it reſembles a town, and has its own church and congregation. Copper-plates are made, and the ſmall copper money is coined here. There is a royal poſt-houſe in this place.

Wykhyttan or *Trollbo*, and *David's-hyttan*, are two ſteel-manufactories.

2. SATERS-LEHN, in which are

The pariſh of *Tuna*, where there is the largeſt congregation in the whole Kingdom, conſiſting of between eighteen and nineteen hundred families. In this pariſh lies *Huſhaga* with a royal manor and a palace, where the Governor of the province reſides.

Sater,

Sater, an inland town ſituated on the *Liuſtern*-lake, was built in the reign of King *Guſtavus Adolphus*, who often ſpent ſome weeks here; but this town had not its charter of privileges till the year 1642. The mint for copper-money was removed from this place to *Afweſtad*. It is the eighty-eighth town that votes in the Diet.

Satershof, which lies near the town of *Sater*, was formerly a royal manor, and the reſidence of the Governor of *Dalecarlia*; but is now taken up by the colonel of the *Dalecarlian* regiment.

3. COPPARBERG-LEHN, in which are

Falun, in Latin *Faluna*, or *Gamla Copparberger*, i. e. 'old copper-mines,' a *Mine-Town* and *Mine-Diſtrict*, lies between two lakes called *Warpan* and *Runn*, and two mountains. It is large and very populous, and its ſtreets are regular; but the houſes are all built with timber. One of its two market-places is very ſpacious, and handſomly built. On the north ſide of it ſtands a large ſtone edifice, which is a Court of Juſtice; and on the ſame market place a public-cellar, granary, and diſpenſary are erected. On the eaſt ſide of it is a handſom ſtone church, the roof of which is covered with copper: the doors are of braſs, and the tower is remarkably high. Without the town towards the Eaſt ſtands another church built with ſtone, and covered with copper. *Falun* has a good ſchool, a fine copper weigh-houſe, a Mine-Court, and other inferior courts. The place where the Governor reſides is a little without the town. This is the fifteenth of the towns that vote in the Diet.

A little to the Weſt of *Falun* is the famous copper-mine which uſed to produce every year 10,000 tons, and in 1650, 10,000 tons 321 pounds of copper: But of late its produce is conſiderably decreaſed. The depth of this mine is three hundred and fifty *Swediſh* ells *. A great variety of curious engines belong to this work.

A proſpect of *Falun* may be ſeen both in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia* and *Outhier*'s *Voyage au Nord*. The former has alſo given a draught of the mine-works.

Noor, a royal manor near *Falun*, is the place where the Governor now reſides.

4. OESTLICHE THALER, or the Eaſt vallies, in which are

Silianfors, a fine iron-forge.

The great ſlate quarry in the pariſh of *Orſa*, *&c.*

Two of the above-mentioned ſix Diviſions lie in the weſtern part of *Dalecarlia*; and theſe are,

1. The weſt MINE-DISTRICT, in which lie

Grangarder, or *Grange*, a pariſh with inexhauſtible iron-mines; and

Skys-Hytta, a ſilver-mine.

2. The WESTERN VALLIES, containing,

The iron-works of *Grawendal* and *Stromsdal*; and

The ruinous fort of *Lima*.

* A *Swediſh* ell is about half an *Engliſh* ell.

NORDLAND,

In Latin *Nordlandia.*

NORDLAND is bounded to the East by the gulf of *Bothnia*, to the South by *Upland* and *Dalecarlia*; to the West it joins to *Dalecarlia*, *Norway*, and *Lapland*; and to the North it borders on *Lapland* only. Its name is derived either from *Nore Jatteo*, i. e. 'the Giant *Nore*,' who was the first inhabitant of this country; or from its situation, which is north of *Sweden* properly so called. *Nordland* in the times of Paganism was a distinct Monarchy, to which several Vassal-kings were tributary.

This country has the advantage of all the other parts of the Kingdom, in the plenty of timber and venison it affords; but its rocks and mountains leave but a small extent of land fit for tillage. Here are, however, some fertile spots and verdant pastures, which are agreeably interspersed with lakes, rivers, and woods.

This province, besides the timber it yields has several rich mines, forges or hammer-mills, and other works for metals. Its lakes and rivers abound in fish; and great numbers of cattle are bred in the country. Here are greater flights of wild-geese than in any part of the Kingdom; but *Nordland*, like *Lapland*, affords no crabs or lobsters. Birch-trees and oak do not grow wild beyond *Upland*, so that those trees are very scarce here. Some scattered tracts of land in this country are inhabited by the *Finlanders*.

Nordland has nine towns, and comprehends seven provinces. Six of the latter constitute the Government of *West-Nordland*; but the seventh, together with *Lapland*, belongs to the Government of *West-Bothnia*. These provinces are as follows.

I. GASTRICKLAND,

In Latin *Gastricia.*

THIS province derives its name from *Gastrick*, which signifies 'hospitable,' and contains very little arable land, but consists of mines, woods, rivers, and lakes, abounding with fish; and by an industrious use of these conveniences the inhabitants procure themselves a tolerable subsistance. *Gastrickland* consists of one *Land-District-Jurisdiction*, and a *Vogtey* or inferior Government. The clergy of this province are subject to the Archbishop of *Upsal*.

Remarkable towns, *&c.* in *Gastrickland* are the following.

Gefle

Geſle or *Geawle*, in Latin *Gevalia*, is a ſtaple-town and the largeſt in all *Nordland*. It is well ſituated on a creek of the gulf of *Bothnia*. The river *Geſle* runs through the town, and ſupplies it with plenty of ſalmon; it afterwards divides itſelf into three branches, forms the two pleaſant iſlands of *Alderholm* and *Iſlandſholm*, and, about the diſtance of half a *Swediſh* mile from the town, empties itſelf into the main-ſea. *Geſle* has the conveniency of readily forwarding, in boats, all goods deſigned for the lading-place; and is a ſtaple-town of ſuch antiquity, that it boaſts of being founded three hundred years before *Stockholm*. Some buildings in this town are of ſtone, others of wood, and ſome houſes are partly built with ſtone and partly with wood. The ſtreets are very irregular, and the market-place is badly laid out; ſo that a ſtranger would never be able to find it out without a guide. It is a populous town, and has a good *Gymnaſium* or Seminary, which was removed hither from *Stockholm* in 1669; a ſchool; a fine town-houſe built with ſtone; a very ancient hoſpital, rebuilt with ſtone in the year 1731; and carries on a very advantageous trade with a great number of ſhips. The Company of Fiſhermen conſtitutes two thirds of the burghers. The principal inhabitants are traders and manufacturers; and by that means employ the poorer ſort. The caſtle, which is ornamented with towers, was entirely deſtroyed by fire in 1727, but it has been ſince rebuilt; and the Governor reſides in it. This town has the thirteenth vote in the Diet.

On the iſland of *Alderholm* are a handſom iron weigh-houſe, a dock, and a landing place for deals, *&c.* two warehouſes, a large cuſtom-houſe, an arſenal, and a magazine.

On *Iſlandſholm* ſeveral magazines and warehouſes are erected. A view of all theſe may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Friderichſchantze is a fort, which lies about a league from the town on a ſmall iſland in the ſea.

Hillebrun, a medicinal ſpring, lies about three leagues from *Geſle*.

Eka, a copper-mine with ſeveral veins of a certain rich ore, lies in this neighbourhood.

II. *HALSINGLAND*,

In Latin *Helſingia*.

THIS province is twenty *Swediſh* miles in length, and ſixteen in breadth. What little arable land it contains yields good crops; and the paſtures feed great numbers of fine cattle. In *Halſingland* are very good iron-works, and large foreſts; and its rivers and lakes abound in fiſh. Lin-ſeed are alſo cultivated here with great induſtry.

The inhabitants are chiefly employed in agriculture and working in the mine-works, grazing, all kinds of handicraft trades, hunting, and fiſhing. They alſo traffick in iron, flax, linen, tallow, butter, tar, deal boards, timber; and wild fowl, as partridges, woodcocks, and moor-hens, of which ſome thouſands are every winter carried in ſledges to *Stockholm*. The *Helſingians* are celebrated for their courage; having made themſelves maſters of ſeveral countries, where they have ſettled and called them by their name. This country maintains both ſoldiers and ſailors. Beſides the *Gothic* or *Runic* calendar, which is every where known, the *Halſingland Runic*, as it is called, which differs from the former, is uſed here.

Halſingland, with regard to its eccleſiaſtical ſtate, is divided into three Provoſtſhips, which are comprehended in the Archbiſhoprick of *Upſal*. As to its political diviſion it conſiſts of a *Land-Diſtrict-Juriſdiction*, and two *Vogteys*; and is divided into the *North* and *South Part*.

1. The NORTH PART contains the following towns, *&c.*

Hudickſwall, in Latin *Hudickſwallia*, a ſmall ſea-port town, which formerly ſtood in another ſituation; but in 1640 it was built on the extremity of a narrow tract of land. The old town was founded in the year 1582, by order of King *John* III. and was endowed with the ſtaple privileges by the ſame Prince in 1590, which were revoked in 1636. It has a commodious deep harbour, and on three ſides is ſurrounded with water. Beſides an advantageous trade in deal boards, beams, wooden-chairs, flax, linen, butter, fiſh, *&c.* the inhabitants employ themſelves in agriculture and mechanic trades. Here is a church, and a ſchool. In the year 1670, *Hudickſwall* was conſumed by fire; and in 1714, it ſuffered greatly by a like misfortune. In the year 1721, it was totally laid in aſhes by the *Ruſſians*; but is at preſent in a flouriſhing condition. This is the thirty-ſixth voting town in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Agon is an iſland, remarkable for a good harbour, and ſkilful mariners.

The iſland of *Boldſon*, and *Horſlanſudd*, a peninſula, which have both good harbours, are in this diviſion.

2. The SOUTH PART, in which are the following places of note.

Soderhamn, in Latin *Suderhamnia*, is a ſmall ſea-port ſituated on the river *Liuſnan* between two mountains. It was firſt built by gun-ſmiths and copper-ſmiths; and obtained its privileges in the year 1620. Its buildings, for the moſt part, are not more commodious or elegant than the peaſants houſes in the country: However, the church, which was conſecrated in 1693, is the beſt ſtructure in all *Nordland*. Here is an old manufacture of fire-arms (but thoſe made here are inferior to ſome others,) and another of linen. The inhabitants carry on a briſk trade in flax, butter, *&c.* This is the ſixty-ninth voting town in the Diet; and a view of it may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Stor-

Stor-jungfrun, an iſland, is a noted land-mark.

Flors is a linen-manufactory, ſo called from the village *Flor* in which it ſtands. Coarſe and fine linen, thread-ſtockings and night-caps; likewiſe plain and flowered ſtuffs, a coarſe kind of muſlin for aprons, damaſks for table-cloths, and buckram, are made here; but theſe are ſaid to be none of the beſt, nor are they durable. Several curious remains of antiquity are to be ſeen in this country.

III. *MEDELPAD*,

In Latin *Medelpadia*.

THIS province is fourteen *Swediſh* miles long and ſeven broad; and is ſaid to derive its name from the old *Scandinavian* word *Medal*, 'the middle,' and *a*, 'a river,' becauſe it lies between the rivers *Niurunda* and *Indal*. Though this province is very mountainous and woody; yet it has ſeveral delightful vallies of arable and meadow land. The ſeed is not ſown here till about *Whitſuntide*; but the corn ripens in ten weeks.

Among the foreſts, the largeſt and moſt pleaſant is *Aſtrog*; and next to that *Gimdalen*, which is about ſix *Swediſh* miles long, and abounds in veniſon and game of all ſorts, as elks, rein-deers, beavers, martens, weaſels, linxes, foxes, and wild-fowl.

This country alſo is agreeably interſperſed with lakes and rivers, which ſupply it with plenty of fiſh. The grain which grows in this province is ſufficient for the ſupport of its inhabitants. They have alſo plenty of cattle, and deal in timber, hops, flax, hemp, butter, fowls, and dried fiſh. Salmon, ſeals, *&c.* are alſo caught here. *Medelpad* maintains its quota of ſailors. In eccleſiaſtical affairs it is within the dioceſe of *Hernoſand*; and conſiſts of a *Land-Diſtrict-Juriſdiction* and a *Vogtey*.

This province is divided into the *North* and *South Part*.

1. In the NORTH PART, the places of note are

Sundſwall, in Latin *Sundwallia*, a well built ſmall ſea-port, and the only one in the country. It was built in the reign of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, on the ſpot which is now called the *Old town*, but formerly the *Trading-place*. In the year 1624, it obtained ſeveral privileges as a manufactory of ſmall fire-arms; but in 1647, it was rebuilt on its preſent ſituation, which is a barren ſandy plain betwixt high mountains, by Queen *Chriſtina*; and the manufacture of fire-arms was removed to *Suderhamn*. In the middle of the town is a ſmall pond well ſtocked with a fiſh called *Karauſch**. A woollen manufacture was lately ſet up in this town. Here is a dock where ſeveral large veſſels have been built. The harbour, which is about

* A kind of ſmall carp. See note p. 188, of this Volume.

a league in breadth, is very commodious; and the inhabitants drive a good trade in tar, the bark of birch-trees, deals, wooden-chairs, linen, fleſh, cheeſe, and butter. *Sundſwall* is the ſixty-eighth voting town in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

In *Selanger* pariſh, which is not far from *Sundſwall*, formerly ſtood a royal palace; and ſome remains of an oblong Juridical Eminence and an old caſtle are ſtill to be ſeen there.

Skian church is the moſt remarkable in this country; for it was formerly a caſtle, and is every where full of loop-holes for ſmall arms.

2. The SOUTH PART, in which lies

The pariſh of *Tuna*, where, in the foot way cloſe by the river is to be ſeen a tomb about ten ells in length, ſaid to be that of the giant *Skarkoter*, who was famous for his heroic atchivements, and equally celebrated for his clemency and moderation. In the ſame pariſh are the harbours of *Kalfſundet* and *Skepſhamn*, and the ruins of ſeveral fortreſſes.

IV. *JAMTLAND*,

In Latin *Jemtia*.

THIS province borders on the kingdom of *Norway*, and is nearly of a circular form, being twenty *Swediſh* miles in breadth, and four-and-twenty in length. *Jamtland*, after undergoing many revolutions, was annexed to the crown of *Sweden*, by the treaty of *Roſchild*, in 1658. It is, in general, a mountainous country; but the hills differ extremely from each other in appearance.

The weſtern part of this province is over-run with vaſt craggy rocks and high mountains, which lie on the frontiers of *Norway*; and between theſe are deep vallies and rapid torrents: However in ſome ſpots among the mountains, which are frequently covered with ſnow, one meets with fine verdure, and plenty of nutritive paſtures. In theſe parts the inhabitants houſe their cattle even in ſummer-time; and thus never fail of breeding fine cows, whoſe milk yields excellent butter; and yet they purchaſe beef and tallow from *Norway*.

The eaſtern part of *Jamtland* is a champaign country, watered with ſeveral lakes and rivers which abound with fiſh. And ſuch is the fertility of ſome ſpots of land in theſe parts, that in a good year when the corn has not been nipt by the froſt, the neighbouring provinces are ſupplied with grain from hence. Barley is the grain that is moſtly ſown here: They alſo ſow a conſiderable quantity of rye, and ſome wheat. This country produces oats of an extraordinary goodneſs, and abounds in excellent turnips. Sometimes, indeed, the ſeverity of the froſt cauſes a ſcarcity of corn; and then the

the *Jamtlanders* are obliged to make bread of the pounded bark of trees; the rye bread being reſerved for feſtivals.

In this province many hands are employed in extracting iron from a kind of iron-ore reſembling ſmall ſtones, which are collected in fenny places. Here are alſo alum-quarries, a white and porous *calx* or chalky earth, ſand-ſtone, ſlate, the *Lapis ollarius* *, fine rock-cryſtals, lead-ore, two new-built copper-works, and a place where ſalt-petre is refined.

Here are great numbers of elks which the *Jamptlanders* caſtrate, in order to make them grow fatter; and a miſchievous ſpecies of vermin called *Lemlar*, or *Lemeller*, are very common in this country.

The river *Ragunda-Elfwe*, which is called *Indals-Elfwe* by the inhabitants of *Medelpad*, forms a ſtupendous water-fall near the pariſh of *Ragunda*. The ſalmon, that frequent this river, go no higher than this cataract; ſo that none are caught above it.

That this country is very thinly inhabited, is evident from hence, that there are only ſix places where Divine Service is performed every *Sunday*; that in ſome churches it is celebrated every other *Sunday*, and in others only every third *Sunday*; and that in all the reſt the congregations aſſemble but three or four times in a year. There is not ſo much as one town in *Jamtland*, and only eleven pariſhes, in which forty-ſix churches are erected. In all theſe pariſhes there are but ſeven hundred and ſeventeen chimneys, though they make an area of four hundred ſquare geographical miles at leaſt. Hypochondriac diſorders, and ſuicide are very frequent in this ſolitary, deſart country.

The inhabitants, for the moſt part, ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fiſhing. They alſo carry on a conſiderable trade with the *Norwegians*, whom they ſupply with ſalt-pans, ſteel and iron-ware, and a kind of leather dreſſed in a particular manner ſo as entirely to keep out the water, with which they make ſhoes, boots, and even jackets that are proof againſt wet. Every peaſant is obliged to contribute towards the ſubſiſtance of the Soldiery; ſo that this country maintains a regiment of foot, or according to others, of dragoons, at the expence of 31,609 dollars †; and a troop of horſe, the charge of which is 6,210 dollars.

The *Jemtland-Lappers* conſiſt of ſomething above one hundred families; and ſince the year 1746 a church and a ſchool have been erected for their uſe at *Folinge*.

This country and *Harjedal* are ſubject to the ſame provincial juriſdiction; but it conſtitutes a particular *Vogtey*.

The clergy of this province are ſubject to the Biſhop of *Hernoſand*, and with regard to its eccleſiaſtical eſtate, it conſiſts of the *North* and *South* Provoſtſhips.

* See an account of this ſtone in note p. 178 of this Volume.

† A *Swediſh* ſilver dollar, which, I ſuppoſe, the Author means, is equal to 1*s.* 6*d.* ⅔ ſterling.

Jamptland

Jamtland, according to its political diviſion, conſiſt of the *South* and *North Part*.

1. The SOUTH PART, in which lies

Froſan, a kind of market-village, which has ſomething of the appearance of a town. It lies on an iſland in the *Stor-ſio-lake*, from whence it has a proſpect of the whole country; for it ſtands nearly in the centre of it. Here is a ſchool, a poſt-houſe, and a fort called *Kronſtadt*, which was erected in the year 1710.

2. The NORTH PART, in which the places of note are

Carlſtrom, a decayed fortification, which ſtands on the frontiers of *Norway*.

Fort-Hierpe, which is alſo on the frontiers of *Norway*, and is embelliſhed with a tower. But all that remains at preſent of this fortification is only a large block-houſe.

Fort-Dufwe, which lies farther up the country, is in a ruinous condition. Near this fort is a *Bureau* or frontier cuſtom-houſe.

V. *HARJEDALEN.*

In Latin *Herdalia.*

THIS province was incorporated with the *Swediſh* dominions by the treaty of *Bremſebro*, in the year 1645. It is eighteen *Swediſh* miles in length, and from ſeven to eight in breadth. It abounds in mines and woods; and conſequently agriculture is not much practiſed here. Its paſtures, however, are ſo excellent, that the inhabitants carry on a very advantageous trade in horned cattle. Its rivers and lakes, like all the reſt in the country, abound with fiſh. The inhabitants ſubſiſt by grazing, hunting and fiſhing; and ſell a great quantity of cheeſe, which is much eſteemed. They maintain no ſoldiers in this province; and ſeveral places among the mountains are inhabited by *Lappers*. *Harjedalen* is under the ſame provincial juriſdiction with *Jamtland*; but makes a particular *Vogtey*. The clergy of this province belong to the *South* Provoſtſhip of *Jamtland*.

1. In the NORTH PART are the following remarkable places.

Liuſnedal, a fine copper-work.

Langaſchantze, a fort, which was demoliſhed in 1734.

Funneſdals-By, where there is a frontier cuſtom-houſe.

San-Fialet, a very high mountain, which is always covered with ſnow.

2. The SOUTH PART, in which lie

Storbin and *Liungdalen*, two villages inhabited by ſome wealthy *Lappers*.

VI. *ANGER-*

VI. ANGERMANNLAND,

In Latin *Angermannia.*

THIS province lies farther north than *Harjedalen*, and is twenty-four *Swediſh* miles in length, and ſixteen in breadth. This country is extremely mountainous and woody; and the remarkably high mountain called *Skula*, with the vaſt and uninhabited foreſt of *Skula-ſkog*, in this province are well known. However, the ſoil is fruitful, and in ſome parts produces excellent corn; eſpecially on the ſouth ſide of the *Angermannland* river, from *Hernoſand* to the pariſh of *Botea*, and a noble ſeat or manor called *Holm*, *&c.* In thoſe parts rye, peaſe, lin-ſeed, flax, and good barley, grow; and the meadow-lands afford good paſtures for the cattle. Here are alſo ſeveral fine iron-works; and the lakes and rivers yield plenty of fiſh. In the bottom of ſome of the ſtagnant lakes in this province is found a fine red colour or *lake.*

The *Angermannland* river is one of the largeſt in the whole kingdom, being about a league over at the mouth of it, and navigable for ſmall veſſels ſeveral *Swediſh* miles up the continent. The ſalmon-fiſhery, in this river, alſo brings in extraordinary profits to this country.

This province maintains ſailors for the royal navy; and conſiſts of a *Land-Diſtrict-Juriſdiction* and two *Vogteys.* It is the reſidence of the Superintendent of this dioceſe, which is the thirteenth in rank, and is divided into two Provoſtſhips. This Superintendency or biſhoprick conſiſts of the provinces of *Angermannland*, *Medelpad*, *Jamtland*, *Harjedalen*, and the whole government of *Weſt Bothnia*, *Kremi-lapmark* excepted which belongs to the dioceſe of *Abo.* *Angermannland* is divided into,

1. The SOUTH PART, in which are the following remarkable places.

Hernoſand, in Latin *Herneſandia*, is a ſea-port, and the only town in this country; and ſtands on the iſland of *Hernon* near the mouth of the *Angermann* river, where it empties into the gulf of *Bothnia.* It was built by King *John* III. in the year 1584, and has a communication with the continent by a bridge of about one hundred ells in length. The timber houſes are built of a great thickneſs, and ſtand on the ſouth ſide of the town on the declivity of a hill towards the ſea. On the north ſide of the harbour there is a ſufficient depth of water for the largeſt ſhips to come up and unload at the warehouſes; but on the ſouth ſide, it is only practicable to flat bottomed veſſels and lighters. *Hernoſand* was formerly a ſtaple-town, and ſtill carries on a conſiderable trade, particularly in linen; and the annual fair held here on the fourteenth of *September* is the moſt frequented of any in *Nordland.* A *Gymnaſium* or Seminary erected in 1648, and a ſchool are an

ornament to this town; which is alſo the reſidence of the Superintendent of the See of *Hernoſand*. In 1710, 1714 and 1721, this place was burnt by the *Ruſſians*; but has pretty well recovered itſelf ſince. Near it are ſeveral *tumuli* or ſepulchral eminences. In the years 1746 and 1748, ſome ſhocks of an earthquake were felt in this neighbourhood. This is the thirty-ninth town that votes in the Diet; and a view of it is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Hammar, an inn and poſt-houſe, lies about five *Swediſh* miles from *Hernoſand*. Here the iron and wooden-ware exported from this province are ſhipped; for the *Angermann*-river is not navigable for veſſels of burden.

Saleftea, a pariſh and bartering place. An annual fair is held here on the feſtival of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*.

Gieroders-Gard, in Latin *Geiraudagardia*, was formerly a conſiderable Royal Manſion-houſe, and the reſidence of the Sovereigns of *Nordland*. Hence it derives its name from King *Gierauder*.

Holm is the only Nobleman's ſeat in all *Nordland*, and lies about four *Swediſh* miles from the town of *Hernoſand*.

2. The NORTH PART, in which are

Ulſon, a good harbour and fine iron-work, which lies about ſix *Swediſh* miles from *Hernoſand*.

Skialewad, a pariſh and bartering place, which is about ten *Swediſh* miles from *Hernoſand*. An annual fair is held here on St. *James*'s day.

VII. *WEST-BOTTN.*

In Latin *Weſt-Bothnia*.

BOTTN, or *Bothnia*, is that large country which extends itſelf northwards on both ſides of the *Gulf of Bothnia*. That part which lies on the weſt ſide of the Gulf is called *Weſt-Bothnia*; and that on the oppoſite ſide is termed *Eaſt-Bothnia*. Of the former we ſhall give an account here, reſerving the latter to our deſcription of *Finland*.

The inhabited part of WEST-BOTHNIA, which extends from the frontiers of *Angermannland* to the church of *Upper Tornea*, is computed to be about fifty-eight *Swediſh* miles in length, and its breadth is from ſixteen to eighteen miles. A great number of pleaſant iſlands lie off the coaſt of this province. It has alſo ſeveral foreſts, the largeſt of which borders on *Lapmark*, with many lakes and rivers. There are excellent paſtures in *Weſt-Bothnia*; though on the ſummit of the high mountains it moſtly conſiſts of moſs, on which the rein-deer generally feed. The country is for the moſt part level and the ſoil tolerably fertile; and though they ſow the corn here very late, it ripens in ſix, ſeven, or eight weeks, according as the place lies more or leſs expoſed

expoſed to the North. However, ſudden froſts often prove extremely detrimental to the corn; particularly the froſty nights that often happen in the month of *July*. There are alſo ſeveral good copper and iron-mines in this province.

The inhabitants of *Weſt-Bothnia* are famed for their courage and bravery. They ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fiſhing. They endure hunger and want beyond any other people, being inured to it from their youth; and even in fruitful years they mix their corn with chaff and pulverized pine-bark, to make what they call their *Stampe Brot*, or pounded bread. They traffick in beams, deal boards, timber, and ſhingles, tar, ſalted and ſmoke-dried ſalmon and other fiſh, wild fowl, cummin, train-oil, veniſon, tallow, butter, cheeſe; alſo in ſables, and ſkins of blue and white foxes, ermines, bears, wolves, martens, hyenas, beavers, and rein-deer; alſo in caſtor, linen, *&c.* Theſe commodities are not only carried to other parts of *Sweden*, but alſo over the mountains to *Norway*, or through vaſt deſerts to *Ruſſia*. This country maintains its quota of ſoldiers.

Weſt-Bothnia is divided into four *Vogteys* or inferior Governments: Theſe are ſubject to the general Government inſtituted in the year 1638, which alſo includes *Lapmark*. It contains two Provincial Juriſdictions; and as to its eccleſiaſtical State, belongs to the See of *Hernoſand*.

1. The firſt VOGTEY or Diviſion contains the following places of note.

Umea, in Latin *Uma*, a conſiderable ſea-port, lies at the mouth of the river *Umea*, and was built by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*. It has four ſtreets lying in a ſtraight line from Eaſt to Weſt, with ſeveral others interſecting them at right angles from North to South. At the eaſt angle of this town is a large area on which the church ſtands. *Umea* has a commodious harbour and carries on a conſiderable trade. It is the ſeventy-third voting town in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Umea-Kongs-Gard which ſtands near the town, was formerly the reſidence of the Governor of the province; but the Governor now reſides at a place called *Gran* near the pariſh church of *Umea*.

Bydeas-Kirche, which lies not far from *Umea*.

The pariſhes of *Nyſatra* and *Loſanger* are alſo in this neighbourhood.

Note. *Lykſele* and *Umea Lapmark* belong to this *Vogtey*.

2. The ſecond VOGTEY contains the following remarkable places.

Pitea, in Latin *Pitovia*, is a ſea-port ſituated on a ſmall iſland at the mouth of a river of the ſame name. It is joined to the continent by a wooden-bridge, at the end of which a gate is erected. The ſtreets run in parallel lines; but the church ſtands a good way without the town, ſo that the bridge muſt be croſſed to go to it. This town has a commodious harbour and a good ſchool. *Pitea* was firſt built, in the year 1621, by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, about half a *Swediſh* mile higher up in the country: But the town being totally deſtroyed by fire in 1666, it was rebuilt on its

ornament to this town; which is alſo the reſidence of the Superintendent of the See of *Hernoſand*. In 1710, 1714 and 1721, this place was burnt by the *Ruſſians*; but has pretty well recovered itſelf ſince. Near it are ſeveral *tumuli* or ſepulchral eminences. In the years 1746 and 1748, ſome ſhocks of an earthquake were felt in this neighbourhood. This is the thirty-ninth town that votes in the Diet; and a view of it is to be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*.

Hammar, an inn and poſt-houſe, lies about five *Swediſh* miles from *Hernoſand*. Here the iron and wooden-ware exported from this province are ſhipped; for the *Angermann*-river is not navigable for veſſels of burden.

Saleftea, a pariſh and bartering place. An annual fair is held here on the feſtival of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*.

Gieroders-Gard, in Latin *Geiraudagardia*, was formerly a conſiderable Royal Manſion-houſe, and the reſidence of the Sovereigns of *Nordland*. Hence it derives its name from King *Gierauder*.

Holm is the only Nobleman's ſeat in all *Nordland*, and lies about four *Swediſh* miles from the town of *Hernoſand*.

2. The NORTH PART, in which are

Ulſon, a good harbour and fine iron-work, which lies about ſix *Swediſh* miles from *Hernoſand*.

Skialewad, a pariſh and bartering place, which is about ten *Swediſh* miles from *Hernoſand*. An annual fair is held here on St. *James*'s day.

VII. *WEST-BOTTN.*

In Latin *Weſt-Bothnia*.

BOTTN, or *Bothnia*, is that large country which extends itſelf northwards on both ſides of the *Gulf of Bothnia*. That part which lies on the weſt ſide of the Gulf is called *Weſt-Bothnia*; and that on the oppoſite ſide is termed *Eaſt-Bothnia*. Of the former we ſhall give an account here, reſerving the latter to our deſcription of *Finland*.

The inhabited part of WEST-BOTHNIA, which extends from the frontiers of *Angermannland* to the church of *Upper Tornea*, is computed to be about fifty-eight *Swediſh* miles in length, and its breadth is from ſixteen to eighteen miles. A great number of pleaſant iſlands lie off the coaſt of this province. It has alſo ſeveral foreſts, the largeſt of which borders on *Lapmark*, with many lakes and rivers. There are excellent paſtures in *Weſt-Bothnia*; though on the ſummit of the high mountains it moſtly conſiſts of moſs, on which the rein-deer generally feed. The country is for the moſt part level and the ſoil tolerably fertile; and though they ſow the corn here very late, it ripens in ſix, ſeven, or eight weeks, according as the place lies more or leſs

expoſed

expoſed to the North. However, ſudden froſts often prove extremely detrimental to the corn; particularly the froſty nights that often happen in the month of *July*. There are alſo ſeveral good copper and iron-mines in this province.

The inhabitants of *Weſt-Bothnia* are famed for their courage and bravery. They ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fiſhing. They endure hunger and want beyond any other people, being inured to it from their youth; and even in fruitful years they mix their corn with chaff and pulverized pine-bark, to make what they call their *Stampe Brot*, or pounded bread. They traffick in beams, deal boards, timber, and ſhingles, tar, ſalted and ſmoke-dried ſalmon and other fiſh, wild fowl, cummin, train-oil, veniſon, tallow, butter, cheeſe; alſo in ſables, and ſkins of blue and white foxes, ermines, bears, wolves, martens, hyenas, beavers, and rein-deer; alſo in caſtor, linen, *&c.* Theſe commodities are not only carried to other parts of *Sweden*, but alſo over the mountains to *Norway*, or through vaſt deſerts to *Ruſſia*. This country maintains its quota of ſoldiers.

Weſt-Bothnia is divided into four *Vogteys* or inferior Governments: Theſe are ſubject to the general Government inſtituted in the year 1638, which alſo includes *Lapmark*. It contains two Provincial Juriſdictions; and as to its eccleſiaſtical State, belongs to the See of *Hernoſand*.

1. The firſt VOGTEY or Diviſion contains the following places of note.

Umea, in Latin *Uma*, a conſiderable ſea-port, lies at the mouth of the river *Umea*, and was built by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*. It has four ſtreets lying in a ſtraight line from Eaſt to Weſt, with ſeveral others interſecting them at right angles from North to South. At the eaſt angle of this town is a large area on which the church ſtands. *Umea* has a commodious harbour and carries on a conſiderable trade. It is the ſeventy-third voting town in the Diet; and *Dahlberg* has a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Umea-Kongs-Gard which ſtands near the town, was formerly the reſidence of the Governor of the province; but the Governor now reſides at a place called *Gran* near the pariſh church of *Umea*.

Bydeas-Kirche, which lies not far from *Umea*.

The pariſhes of *Nyſatra* and *Loſanger* are alſo in this neighbourhood.

Note. *Lykſele* and *Umea Lapmark* belong to this *Vogtey*.

2. The ſecond VOGTEY contains the following remarkable places.

Pitea, in Latin *Pitovia*, is a ſea-port ſituated on a ſmall iſland at the mouth of a river of the ſame name. It is joined to the continent by a wooden-bridge, at the end of which a gate is erected. The ſtreets run in parallel lines; but the church ſtands a good way without the town, ſo that the bridge muſt be croſſed to go to it. This town has a commodious harbour and a good ſchool. *Pitea* was firſt built, in the year 1621, by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, about half a *Swediſh* mile higher up in the country: But the town being totally deſtroyed by fire in 1666, it was rebuilt on its

preſent ſituation. *Old Pitea* is now a large village, conſiſting of a great number of houſes ſcattered irregularly on a fine common. This is the ſeventy-fourth voting town in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of *Pitea* in his *Suecia*.

Skelleftea and *Buretras* are pariſhes in this neighbourhood.

Note. Pitea-Lapmark belongs to this *Vogtey*.

3. In the third VOGTEY lies

Lulea, in Latin *Lula*, a ſea-port, which was firſt built by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*. *Lulea* originally ſtood near the pariſh church of *Lulea*; but was afterwards rebuilt in the year 1649 on a peninſula, about a *Swediſh* mile from *Old Lulea*, which lies cloſe by the mouth of the river of the ſame name, and has a good harbour. *Old Lulea* has ſtill ſome ſtreets remaining, and reſembles a town, but is not ſurrounded with palliſadoes.

This town has the ſeventy-fifth vote in the Diet, and ranks accordingly. *Dahlberg* has inſerted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

Note. This *Vogtey* includes three other pariſhes; and alſo *Lulea* and *Calix Lapmark*.

4. In the fourth VOGTEY, or Diviſion, lies

Tornea or *Torne*, in Latin *Torna*, a little ſea-port town conſiſting of about ſeventy wooden-houſes. It ſtands on a peninſula called *Schwentzar*, which is formed by the river *Tornea* where it falls into the gulf of *Bothnia*. *Tornea* lies in 65°, 50′, 50″, North Latitude; and is ſaid to be the moſt ancient town in *Weſt-Bothnia*, and the fartheſt towards the North of any in *Europe*. It has three ſtreets running in parallel lines from North to South, which are interſected at right angles by fourteen croſs ſtreets or lanes. The church is built with timber, and ſtands at a little diſtance from the other buildings, but within the palliſadoes which incloſe the town and a pretty large piece of arable land. Divine Service is performed here in the *Swediſh* language, which is uſed by the Burghers. There is another church built with ſtone on an iſland called *Biorkhon* which lies near the town, in which the Service is performed in the *Finnean* language for the benefit of the Burgher ſervants, and the inhabitants of the adjacent country. All the dwellings in this town, like thoſe in the neighbouring country, have a large court, two ſides of which at leaſt are taken up with apartments, and in the other two are the ſtables and barns, and other out-houſes. Theſe courts, in the country habitations, are exactly ſquare; but in the town are of an oblong form. A very conſiderable trade is carried on here not only by the *Swedes* and *Laplanders*, but the *Ruſſians* and *Norwegians*; who alſo reſort to the trading and bartering places of *Tornea*, in order to traffick.

In the year 1694, this town was honoured with the preſence of King *Charles* XI. who, being accompanied by ſeveral perſons of diſtinction and learning, took a view of the Sun at midnight, if it may be called ſo, from the church tower at *Tornea*: For, at that time of the year, the Sun may be

ſeen

ſeen above the horizon when in the oppoſite part of the meridian of *Tornea* by a ſpectator placed at a certain height above the ſurface of the earth*.

This town and the adjacent country from hence to *Kittis* have lately been rendered famous by the obſervations made in theſe parts by Monſ. *Maupertius*, and ſome other members of the Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, in order to determine the figure of the earth. This is the ſeventy-ſixth voting town in the Diet.

There is a proſpect of *Tornea* in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*, and a plan of it in *Outhier*'s *Voyage au Nord*, 'or Travels to the North.'

LAPLAND,

In Latin *Laponia* or *Lappia*.

WE ſhall here only treat of *Swediſh Lapland*, or, as the inhabitants call it, *Sameland* or *Samenolmai*; which, towards the Eaſt, is bounded by *Eaſt Bothnia* and *Ruſſian Lapland*, to the South by *Jamtland*, and borders on *Norwegian Lapland* to the North and Weſt. This country, according to ſome computations, is ſixty *Swediſh* miles in breadth, and ſeventy in length; whilſt others extend the breadth of it to one hundred and twenty *Swediſh* miles, and make the length ſtill greater in ſome places.

Lapland is very thinly peopled in proportion to its extent, which muſt be imputed to the many inconveniences ariſing from the climate, ſoil, *&c.* But theſe diſadvantages, in many particulars, are exaggerated beyond the truth. This country, indeed, at firſt ſight makes but an uncouth and diſagreeable appearance. For in moſt places it abounds with rocks and mountains, whoſe lofty ſummits ſeem to penetrate the clouds, and are covered with eternal ſnow. In other parts of it nothing is to be ſeen, for many leagues, but fens, and moraſſes, with few ſcattered birch-trees, ſhrubs, and buſhes, ſtinted in their growth by the inclemency of the ſky. Other parts of *Lapland* conſiſt of barren heaths and ſandy deſarts, over-run with moſs, fern, and other unprofitable weeds; one barren wild beyond another with little or no paſture growing on the intermediate ſpots. Beſides theſe inconveniences, the long and ſevere winters, the cold, dark, and tedious winter-nights, together with the vaſt depth of ſnow that covers this deſolate region, might ſeem ſufficient to deter every living creature from fixing his abode

* *Seeing the ſun at midnight* is an inaccurate way of ſpeaking, which the Author makes uſe of ſeveral times in this work; but I have endeavoured to render the paſſage more intelligible here, and in p. 207, *&c.*

in

in this inhoſpitable country. And when, at laſt, the heats in the middle of ſummer begin to warm the air, *Lapland* is infeſted with ſuch ſwarms of gnats and flies, that, like clouds, darken the ſky, and obſcure the light of the ſun.

But notwithſtanding all theſe diſadvantages, Nature has beſtowed on this dreary region ſeveral conveniences, which, if duly weighed, examined, and properly uſed, might in ſome meaſure reconcile the inhabitants to their native country. It is found by experience, that corn will grow in *Lapland*; and there are more dry, than ſwampy ſpots amidſts its rocks and ſandy plains; nor is it without looſe and clayey ſoils. When the ſummer heats are ſet in, the earth is here ſooner purified, and the moiſture exhaled, than in other places; ſo that one often ſees with aſtoniſhment graſs and vegetables ſpring up, and the land tilled, where, a few weeks before, winter appeared with all its horrors. Graſs will grow almoſt in every part of the country if it was duly cultivated; ſo that grazing and feeding of cattle might be turned here to a good account.

Lapland abounds in all kinds of beaſts, birds, and fiſhes. The furs and ſkins of bears, wolves, beavers, otters, martens, elks, wild and tame rein-deers, hyenas, ermines, hares, ſquirrels; black, red, and white foxes, *&c.* bring a great deal of money into the country. Here are alſo wood-cocks, ſnow-birds, as they are called; a ſpecies of partridges, moor-hens, falcons, and other large and ſmall birds.

The fiſheries in this country not only afford a plentiful ſubſiſtence to great numbers of the inhabitants, but enable them to ſell a conſiderable quantity of fiſh to their neighbours. The pearls found in the *Lapland* rivers are remarkably valuable; and ſwans, geeſe, all kinds of wild ducks, and other ſea-fowl, unknown in other countries, abound here; eſpecially in the ſouthern parts of *Lapland*.

In the vallies and along the banks of lakes and rivers, pine, fir, birch, juniper, willow, aſp, elder, and other trees are obſerved to thrive; and a moderate plenty of wholſome vegetables, berries, flowers, graſs and other herbs are produced in this country. The woods of pine-trees, which grow here, are more ſerviceable than orchards; that beneficial tree, beſides ſeveral other uſes to which it is applied, being an eſſential part of the food of the inhabitants: for a labouring man, who feeds on bread made of the pounded bark of the pine-tree, preſerves himſelf in health and vigour, without feeling his ſtrength in the leaſt impaired by it.

It is true there are mountains of a prodigious height and extent in this country: but theſe ſeem to be intended as fences to ſhelter the plains from violent winds; and even the wildneſs and irregularity of them has ſomething very entertaining to the eye, both in winter and ſummer. Nor are they any obſtruction to travellers; on the contrary, the alternate ſucceſſion of hills and vallies exhibits a delightful variety of proſpects. Inſomuch

ſomuch that there are ſome places in this country which, if they were not included in *Lapland*, might be reckoned among the moſt enchanting ſpots in the world. It alſo appears from trials which have been made, that theſe mountains, upon a proper ſearch, would be found inferior to none in richneſs of ores and foſſils: at leaſt the largeſt and cleareſt rock-cryſtals, purple amethiſts, topazes, loadſtones, quickſilver, native cinnabar, with other minerals and foſſils have been found in the bowels of them.

The gnats and flies that infeſt this climate are, indeed, extremely troubleſom; but this is an inconvenience common to many other countries. Beſides, they ſwarm chiefly in the woods; and there are methods for ſecuring one's ſelf, in ſome meaſure, againſt theſe inſects.

If, at certain times of the year, the days are very ſhort and the long nights tedious and irkſom; this is compenſated by the pleaſant luminous ſummers, when the ſun is viſible, for ſeveral weeks, above the horizon; a phenomenon to which the inhabitants of more ſouthern climates are entire ſtrangers. Even in winter, the radiancy of the ſnow, the brightneſs of the moon-light, the twinkling of the ſtars, and the effulgent corruſcations of the *Aurora Borealis*, afford a light ſufficient for moſt of the neceſſary occaſions of life. Not to mention the twilight, which begins four or five hours before ſun-riſe, and laſts as long after that luminary is ſet. Beſides, the inhabitants, conformably to the calls of Nature, ſleep away moſt of the dark ſeaſon, and employ the luminous part of the year in their reſpective occupations; ſo that they do not ſuffer either in their health or circumſtances by this ſeeming inconveniency.

The all-wiſe and bountiful Creator has made a proviſion for them againſt the ſeverity of winter, by the multitudes of animals with which this country is ſtocked; whoſe ſoft and warm furs and ſkins defend the inhabitants againſt the moſt piercing cold, and preſerves them in a comfortable warmth. In great and deep ſnows the *Laplanders* generally keep at home, and if it happens that they are obliged to pitch their tent in the open air on a journey, even this hardſhip is no more than what is ſupportable; at leaſt it ſeldom endangers their lives, as there can be no want of furs for clothing, or a *Lapland* fire, which is procured by laying two billets of pine-tree one over the other, and then kindling them by rubbing them together*. The ſnow by its glare not only alleviates the darkneſs in winter, but alſo whilſt that ſeaſon laſts, renders travelling ſafe and eaſy; ſo that they need not be under apprehenſions of any ſudden impediment in their journeys. They have lately invented a kind of ſkates in the uſe of which they are ſo dexterous and agile, that many a *Laplander* has purſued a wolf which had a deſign upon his herd, over the deepeſt ſnow, and ſoon overtaken and killed it. And though ſeveral moraſſes and paſture grounds remain frozen,

* This paſſage is obſcure; and I am not certain whether I have rendered it according to the Author's meaning.

in ſome years, almoſt during the whole ſummer: Yet in other years, when the ſpring ſets in early, the earth in moſt places, excepting the mountains, is thawed and cheriſhed by the ſun-beams as in other climates; and by the long continuance of the ſun above the horizon, the air glows with ſuch heat as accelerates the maturity of the fruits of the earth, and inſpires the inhabitants with a genial warmth.

The time when *Lapland* was firſt peopled cannot be eaſily determined, any more than the nation from which its firſt inhabitants deſcended. That the *Lapps* were originally one people with the *Finns* ſeems inconteſtable; and, probably, their ſeparation may be dated from the time, when the latter began to leave off their former rude manner of life, to build regular habitations, and to apply themſelves to agriculture. Some writers, from the remarkable affinity which the language of the *Lapps* bears to the *Hebrew*, their peculiar dreſs, their religious obſervance of *Saturday* as a Sabbath, and ſeveral other particulars, endeavour to prove that they are originally deſcended from the ten tribes of *Iſrael*.

The word *Lappen* can hardly be thought to be derived from their language: for theſe people do not ſo much as know that this is the name given them by the *Swedes* and other nations; *Sabme*, or *Same*, being the name by which they call themſelves in their own language. But whether the word *Lapp* be derived from the *Finnean* word *Lappu*; or from the *Swediſh* word *Lapp* which ſignifies a patch or botch; or from *Lappa* which in the *Nordland* language denotes a bat; or laſtly, from *Lopa* 'to run' muſt remain a doubtful point. It is, however, pretty clear that this appellation was not given them till between the years 1077 and 1190.

They have their own peculiar language, which, though in reality no more than a dialect of the *Finnean* tongue, has ſome mixture of other languages, eſpecially the *Swediſh* and *Norwegian*. Grammars, Dictionaries and other books are now publiſhed in the *Lapland* language. They alſo have different dialects; and as the *Swedes*, *Lapps*, *Finns*, *Danes*, and *Ruſſians* converſe and trade promiſcuouſly in *Lapland*; there is in each of the *Lapmarks* a certain dialect which is generally uſed and underſtood in all of them as the national language. In *Lule-Lapmark*, the *Lappean* tongue obtains; and in *Tornea* and *Kimmi Lapmark*, the *Finnean* dialect is uſed. In the South *Lapmarks* many of the *Laplanders* underſtand *Swediſh*, and many of the *Swedes* ſpeak the *Lappean* language; and in ſome parts the former can converſe in what is called the town dialect, which was introduced by the burghers of ſome towns who trade with the *Laplanders*.

The *Laplanders* are a ſurprizing inſtance that a whole people can ſubſiſt contentedly without plowing; ſowing, or planting; without ſpinning or weaving, brewing or baking; and without houſes or farms. They employ themſelves in feeding of herds, which is the moſt innocent, and moſt ancient occupation in the world; and as their lot is caſt in a country, where winter

engroſſes

engroſſes the greateſt part of the year, and conſequently renders it impoſſible for them to provide a ſufficient quantity of hay and fodder for great herds of cattle, to laſt the whole year; the bountiful Creator has beſtowed on them a ſpecies of animals that require little or no trouble to provide for. This is the Rein-deer*, which of all tame animals requires the leaſt attendance, and procures the greateſt profit and advantage to its owners. Theſe creatures provide for themſelves, feeding in ſummer on leaves, moſs, and graſs, of which they meet with as much as ſuffices even among the mountains; and in winter they live only on a ſort of moſs which grows in every part of *Lapland*. They come at this moſs by ſcraping away the ſnow with their feet; theſe animals eaſily find the ſpots where it is to be found by unerring inſtinct. During a journey of ſeveral days with the rein-deer, the only trouble a traveller is at, is either to turn them looſe, or tie them to a tree, where the quantity of food they eat at a time does not exceed a handful. The ſole care of the *Laplanders* is to keep their herds of Rein-deer from going aſtray, and to protect them from wild beaſts; and this, eſpecially in ſummer time, they look upon as no inconſiderable taſk. They have no occaſion to houſe the Rein-deer, as they always lie out in the open air without any inconveniency; and when after a ſtrict ſearch there is no danger from beaſts of prey, againſt which the *Laplanders* keep a good look out, they turn them looſe into the woods; but when they are under any apprehenſion of danger from that quarter, the Rein-deer are watched by the *Lapland* herdſmen.

This animal very much reſembles a ſtag, except that it hangs the head down a little, and the horns project directly forward. On the fore part of the head, near the root of the large horns, are two ſmaller branches; ſo that they ſeem to have four horns. There are two different ſpecies of Rein-deer, namely, the wild and tame. The latter is a well-made, ſwift animal; and ſo uſeful to the *Laplanders* as to ſupply the place of corn-fields and meadows, horſes and cows. In winter the *Laplander* makes uſe of the Rein-deer in travelling, as we ſhall mention in the ſequel. Its fleſh, either freſh or dried, is his chief food; and all his cloathing from head to foot conſiſts of this animal's ſkin. He alſo exchanges ſome of his Rein-deer for ſummer clothes, and a tent, which ſerves inſtead of a houſe. The Rein-deer alſo ſupplies his owner with a bed; and, both winter and ſummer, with good milk and excellent cheeſe. Of the inteſtines and tendons he makes thread and cordage; and the bones and horns the ſuperſtitious *Laplander* offers to his idols. In a word, the Rein-deer is every thing to a *Laplander*, ſo that by the loſs of theſe uſeful animals he is entirely ruined. Whilſt he has Rein-deer, he gives himſelf little or no concern about fiſheries, mechanic trades, or any other occupation: For very few of theſe people practiſe either fiſhing or ſhooting, except it be thoſe who are not poſſeſſed of any Rein-deer.

* *Rennthier*, which is uſually rendered *Rain-deer* or rather *Rein-deer*, ſignifies a ſwift animal, or a creature formed for running, from the *Teutonic* word *Rennen* 'to run.'

Some of them are maſters of above a thouſand, and know every particular animal by dividing them into claſſes, and giving every one of them a name. *Ren* is not a *Lappean* word; theſe creatures all over *Lapland* being called *Palſo*; and the herds are by the *Lapps* termed *Aelo*. Every one diſtinguiſhes his own herd by a particular mark on the ears.

The *Laplanders*, with regard to their manner of living and habitation, conſiſt of two different tribes, namely, the *Foreſt* and the *Mountain Laplanders*. The former ſpend the greateſt part of the ſummer in the woods, and have no property; but the latter live among the mountains. The food of the former is moſtly fiſh and fowl; whereas the latter chiefly depend on their herds of Rein-deer. The *Laplanders* in general and eſpecially the Foreſters, are reckoned exceeding good markſmen. They have a great averſion to mining, though ſome of them have found their account in working in ſuch mines as were contrived by others, or in carrying away the ore with their Rein-deer. In moſt of the *Lapmarks* the *Lapps* make it their employment to carry the burghers to the yearly fairs; and ſome of the former, for a reaſonable reward, uſually look after the Rein-deer belonging to any of the townſmen, in ſummer time. Moſt of the *Laplanders* chooſe rather to ſleep away the whole day in their tents, than to put their hands to any work; eſpecially if they can live without it: Others, however, whom pinching want has prompted to induſtry, give evident proofs that this people do not want a capacity for mechanic trades, nor even for exquiſite pieces of workmanſhip. Their boats and many other utenſils which they make for uſe and ornament, are plain indications of their ſkill; and their ſledges are very curiouſly inlaid with horn of all kinds of figures. Their horn ſpoons, their *Runen-Stabe* or *Runic* Kalenders, with their moulds for caſting pewter utenſils, their bows and arrows, their packs of cards, and the like, are all of their own making.

The *Lapland* women have a kind of horn perforated with large and ſmall holes, through which they draw the tin or pewter into wires of different thickneſs, with which they very elegantly embroider their girdles, clothes, and ſledge-furniture. They alſo prepare all kinds of ſkins by various methods; and cut out and ſew the ſeveral ſorts of dreſſes uſed among them. The *Lapland* tobacco-boxes and ſnuff-boxes, of which there is an infinite variety, are too well known to be deſcribed here.

From what I have obſerved above it appears that the chief wealth of the *Laplanders* conſiſts in Rein-deer, on which they depend for their ſubſiſtance and welfare. To them the Rein-deer is all in all. Some of the wealthieſt among this people are poſſeſſed of two or three thouſands of thoſe animals; ſo that the territory or diſtrict belong to many villages in this country contains no leſs than 30,000 Rein-deer great and ſmall. But theſe poſſeſſions are very precarious, not only on account of the depredations made among them by the beaſts of prey; but alſo by the various diſtempers

to

to which theſe creatures are ſubject, and other accidents. Several *Laplanders* are alſo maſters of a conſiderable quantity of ſilver, in rings, buckles, large and ſmall ſpoons, and cups, *&c.* which often weigh ſeveral pounds; and money grows daily more and more in uſe among them. But they prefer the *Holland* Rix-dollar to all other coins, by reaſon that the *Norwegians*, with whom they traffick in ſummer, will not take any other money in exchange for their goods. There have been inſtances of ſome wealthy *Laplanders* who, at their death, beſides 3000 heads of Rein-deer, have left as much money and plate behind them as two ſtrong men could hardly drag along. Many of theſe people have a way of burying their treaſure, which ſeldom comes to light afterwards. The reſt of their ſubſtance conſiſts of domeſtic utenſils, and other furniture; as tents, iron pots, copper and braſs-kettles, furrs and other clothes, bed-furniture, fine ſledges with harneſſes, hatchets, boats and fiſhing-tackle, the value of all which, taken together, amounts to a conſiderable ſum when they are firſt bought by young houſekeepers. As to the poorer ſort they are obliged to put up with fewer conveniences.

As grazing or feeding their herds of Rein-deer is the chief occupation of the *Laplanders*, they are obliged to ſhift their habitation very often in a year. For in winter time, when the mountain *Lapps* come down into the woods, they are hardly ever obſerved to continue a fortnight together in one place. At the approach of ſpring, moſt of them with all their families take a journey of twenty or thirty *Swediſh* miles among the mountains of *Norway*, as far as the *North-Sea*, where they fix their abode till autumn; and then they quit the mountains, for otherwiſe they would be frozen to death for want of fuel, and their Rein-deer would be ſtarved; there being no moſs for them to feed upon. They ſpend the ſummer upon the mountains, as the lands for which they pay taxes to the crown lie there; for in the winter whilſt they live among the woods, they take up tracts of land which belong to other people, for which they alſo make them ſome acknowledgment. Beſides, the Rein-deer thrives beſt on the mountains in the ſummer ſeaſon. Their manner of living, indeed will not admit of dwelling conſtantly in one place, as is manifeſt from the *Lapps* that dwell in the village diſtricts, or live by fiſhing, over all the *Lapmarks*; who though they make no excurſions to the mountains, yet never ſettle in one place; but while they fiſh or look after their Rein-deer rove from place to place, and from one lake to another. This the Rein-deer, in ſome meaſure, oblige them to do; for at a certain time they ſhew a diſpoſition to remove, whether their owners will or no, either for want of fodder, or becauſe they are ſenſible of the approach of ſpring.

This unſettled way of life lays the *Lapps* under a neceſſity of providing themſelves with portable dwellings; and ſuch are their tents, the conſtruction of which is as follows. They firſt ſet up ſeveral poles or ſtakes in a circular poſition, gradually cloſing together towards the top almoſt in the form of an imperfect cone, or a ſugar-loaf with the top of it broken off.

Over theſe poles they lay a kind of coarſe cloth, which the *Swedes* cal *Walmar*, or pine boughs. One of theſe booths generally has room for twenty perſons. The hearth is in the middle of the tent, with ſtones laid round it to prevent the fire from ſpreading. An aperture is left at the top, where the poles almoſt join, which ſerves both for chimney and window. From this hole hang two iron-chains with hooks at the ends of them to hang the pots on, in order to boil their victuals, or melt the ice or ſnow into water to drink. Round the inſide of the tent they lay their clothes to keep out the cold wind, and ſpread branches of birch or fir round the tent by way of ſeats to ſit upon; for they have neither chairs, ſtools, nor benches. About the tent ſtand the cupboards or pantries, where they keep their proviſions, on poſts or blocks of woods, ſo that they look ſomething like the pigeon-houſes, which are erected on pillars. This is done as a ſecurity againſt vermine. When they can poſſibly do it, the *Laplanders* pitch their tents near dried pines for the conveniency of fuel; but in ſpring and autumn they are forced to be contented with bruſh-wood. It muſt, however, be obſerved that in ſome of the *Lapmarks* the *Lapps* erect boarded cottages, or wooden-houſes reſembling thoſe of the *Swedes*.

Their carriages are a kind of ſledges, which are ſhaped like ſmall boats with a broad keel, and of ſuch a thickneſs that no water can penetrate through them. They have alſo a back board for the traveller to lean againſt, who ſits faſt laced in the ſledge, and well ſecured from the cold. This vehicle is drawn by the Rein-deer, and generally thoſe of the wild ſpecies, and carried with incredible ſwiftneſs though foreſts and valleys, and over mountains. The Rein-deer is harnaſſed with a large cloth girt, embroidered with pewter-wire and faſtened on his back. The bit is a piece of thick leather tacked to the reins of the bridle which goes over the head and neck of the deer; and from the breaſt a leather ſtrap paſſes under the creature's belly, and is faſtened to the fore part of the ſledge, ſo that it ſerves inſtead of ſhafts to the carriage. In ſummer time the Rein-deer in a great meaſure loſe their vigour and celerity: However they do very well for carrying the *Laplanders* effects from one place to another, if they are loaded in a proper manner. Beſides theſe ſledges the *Laplanders* uſe a kind of *Skidders* or ſkates like thoſe uſed by the *Finns* and *Nordlanders*. Theſe conſiſt of a board three or four ells long and ſix inches broad, ending in a point which turns up before. With theſe boards faſtened to their feet, and a pole with a round piece of wood at the end of it to prevent its ſinking too deep into the ſnow, the *Laplanders* ſlide with ſuch ſwiftneſs as to overtake bears and wolves.

In ſummer-time the *Laplanders*, eſpecially thoſe who practice fiſhing, and live in *South Lapmark*, make uſe of a kind of boat or little barque, for croſſing rivers, *&c.* Theſe are made of very ſlight boards curiouſly joined together with filaments of the roots of trees, or hempen ſtrings; and

are

are ſo light, that a *Laplander* carries his boat on his ſhoulders with the oars and every thing that belongs to it, beſides his proviſion-bag, where-ever he pleaſes. They ſteer them with prodigious dexterity even among rocks, and down the moſt rapid water-falls; and though the cataract be never ſo frightful, and the *Laplander* ever ſo great a ſtranger to it; yet he undauntedly ventures down the precipice in his little boat. When he goes againſt the ſtream and comes to a water-fall he puts aſhore, takes his boat upon his back, and travels on till he comes to ſmooth water. In the northern *Lapmarks* they uſe larger boats, which are four or five fathoms or more in length. Thoſe are either haled up the great water-falls with ropes, or in the leſs rapid caſcades are ſhoved up with poles by two men, one of whom ſits at the head and the other at the ſtern. As for going down the water-falls with the ſtream, they look upon it as attended with no difficulty.

The fleſh of the Rein-deer is the uſual food of the *Laplanders*, who have neither wheat, rye, barley, nor any other grain, except what little they buy in the villages, and of the burghers. The fleſh is not the only food which theſe animals afford them; for they yield them milk of which they make cheeſe, *&c.* There is, indeed, a difference between their ſummer and their winter diet. The mountain *Lapps* in ſummer live chiefly upon milk; and of this, and likewiſe the cheeſe made of it, they lay up a ſtore for winter, ſteeping ſeveral kinds of berries and herbs in it. In the month of *September*, before the cold weather and piercing froſt ſet in, they kill what numbers of their Rein-deer they think will ſuffice till *Chriſtmas*. After this they kill as many as will ſerve them for the reſt of the year, when they are fatteſt; and ſometimes they kill one or two occaſionally. The more wealthy ſort among the *Laplanders* ſometimes in ſummer buy *Norway* cows and ſheep, which they milk, and afterwards kill for their winter proviſion. They alſo eat the fleſh of bears and beavers, ſea and wild-fowls, *&c.* The poorer ſort among the *Laplanders*, who live in the villages, even content themſelves with the fleſh of dogs, wolves, foxes, horſes, *&c.* to ſatisfy their craving appetite. The fiſhing *Laplanders* live on the fiſh they catch, and to gratify their palate have various ways of dreſſing them. Thoſe who have Rein-deer, on high days and feſtivals dreſs fleſh and fiſh together. In ſummer they buy their ſalt from the *Norwegians*; and in the winter-time they purchaſe it of the burghers. Tobacco is not very rare among them; but is ſold at a high price. None of the women have a hand in dreſſing victuals; that being the office of the maſter of the houſe, aſſiſted by his ſervant. They never omit ſaying Grace before and after meat, nor to ſhake one another by the hand before they riſe from table. Their drink is chiefly water. As for brandy, it is prohibited among them; but if they can come at it, they pay but little regard to this pro-hibition.

Marriages

Marriages among the *Lapps* depend wholly on the pleaſure of the parents, who pay no manner of regard to the diſpoſition of their children: and as intereſt is their chief view in theſe alliances, it is ſeldom known in *Lapland* that one of the parties that come together is rich and the other poor. A widow that is decrepit with age, and deaf and blind to boot, will never want ſuitors here, if ſhe be rich. They ſeem to diſapprove of marriages among relations, and even intimate friends; and polygamy has never obtained among them either in antient or modern times. When the parents have determined to chooſe for themſelves a daughter-in-law at any certain place, they take their ſon, however unwilling he may be, along with them; and, accompanied by ſome of their near relations, go to the dwelling of the ſon's future father-in-law, always carrying ſome brandy with them. This liquor is the firſt and moſt powerful pleader in behalf of the match; and the acceptance of it is reckoned a good preſage of ſucceſs: But if the treaty comes to nothing, the young woman's parents are obliged to pay for all the brandy uſed during the courtſhip*. If the marriage takes place, an agreement is made about the money and goods which the bridegroom's parents are to give to thoſe of the bride, and the preſents which they are to make to the bride's neareſt relations. On the other hand, the bride's parents are obliged to give the new married pair ſo much furniture and Rein-deer, as a kind of an equivalent for the preſents they have received; and the bride's relations are alſo to make ſome returns for their preſents. The poorer ſort marry without any of theſe previous ceremonies; every one providing according to his ability at ſuch times. The marriages are ſolemnized in the churches; and at this ceremony the bride puts on ſuch a feigned timidity and obſtinate reluctance, that ſometimes force muſt be uſed to get her to the church. After the ceremony, the company return to their tents, where they have a feaſt; every one bringing his portion of proviſions which, in the dreſſing and ſerving up, are all jumbled together, and every perſon who is preſent eats in what manner he pleaſes. The *Laplanders* are accuſed of making ſo little account of the marriage-bed, as even to be panders to their own wives; but this heinous charge has never been made good.

Their children are inured to hardſhips from their birth; in their infancy they are ſecurely laced up in their little cradles, which are ſuſpended in the ſmoke at the top of their tent, and rocked by pulling two cords that hang down from each ſide of it. The *Lapps* are very careful in teaching their children to earn a comfortable ſubſiſtence, by accuſtoming them, as they grow up, to all kinds of work practiſed among them; but have a great averſion to ſchools.

* It appears by this cuſtom that the prohibition mentioned above by the Author amounts to nothing at all, or that there is no other prohibition but the dearneſs of that liquor, and their inability to purchaſe it.

The *Laplanders* are generally of a brown and ſwarthy complexion, which ſeems the neceſſary conſequence of their ſordid way of living, and being ſo much in the ſmoke, and expoſing themſelves to the air in all weathers. The hair of both ſexes is black; and their faces are broad, with peaked chins and hollow cheeks. They are generally of a middling ſtature. The change of modes and faſhions in dreſs is unknown among them; their conſtant habit being furs, and a coarſe kind of cloth called *Walmar*.

In their converſation and behaviour the *Lapps* adhere ſtrictly to their national cuſtoms and uſages, one of which is to kiſs each other by way of ſalutation. In ſome of the *Lapmarks* or provinces of *Lapland*, thefts are ſeldom or never heard of: But in others, this crime is no leſs common than among other nations. Self-intereſt is a predominant principle in all their tranſactions, and prevails even in the preſents they make. They ſeem to be naturally very low ſpirited and timorous* ſo that every little accident alarms them. They have an averſion to war, and dread ſerving in the army; in conſequence of which very few of them are employed that way. But they are not ſo dull of apprehenſion, and void of natural parts, as is generally imagined.

Though the inhabitants of all the *Swediſh Lapmarks* profeſs the Chriſtian Religion; yet in many parts ſuch groſs ignorance and errors prevail, as have but very little tincture of Chriſtianity; the only ſigns of it conſiſting in their being baptized, and calling themſelves by the name of Chriſtians. What renders them extremely tenacious of their Pagan rites and cuſtoms, is the high idea they entertain of their anceſtors, looking upon whatever they did as reaſonable, juſt, and commendable.

As to their Mythology, they term the Supreme God and Sovereign of all things, and of good Spirits, *Jubmel*; and the Prince or chief of the evil Spirits they call *Perkmel*. But as they attribute to the evil Spirit an equality of power with God, it is no wonder that, like other Pagans, they ſhould endeavour to obtain the favour of this evil Being, and render him propitious, that he may not hurt or annoy them. *Thor* or *Ajike* they look upon as a kind of God that is both a good, and an evil Being at the ſame time. Beſides theſe and ſome other Deities, they likewiſe have a great many Demi-gods.

As for images, they make them both of wood and ſtone; but they pay the greateſt reverence to the latter ſort. They generally bring the horns and bones of their Rein-deer to the altar of Offerings. When the *Laplanders* come within ſight of the place where the idol ſtands, they uncover themſelves, make low bows, and creep on their hands and feet to the ſtones where they make their offerings.

* This character can hardly be reconciled with what the Author obſerves above, concerning their intrepidity in rowing down the water-falls, purſuing wild-beaſts, &c.

A great

A great deal has been ſaid of the ſorcery practiſed by theſe people; but fame has very much exaggerated the truth, and magnified their ſkill beyond what it is in reality. Very few of the *Laplanders* pretend to be ſkilled in magic; and when any thing ſingular ſeems to be brought about by their magicians, it is as extraordinary and as much a matter of wonder as among other nations. The notion they have of their ſorcerers is, that by a form of words, or ſome other means, they reſtore health to the ſick, and give tidings of ſtolen goods; and that they alſo have it in their power to do miſchief, and hurt their neighbours. But they can produce no authentic inſtances of the exertion of ſuch power as they attribute to theſe magicians.

Every body has heard of their magic Drums; but the *Laplanders* are ſo cautious in the uſe of theſe implements, that their own countrymen ſcarce know any thing of them*. Indeed, if a perſon is detected in practiſing with

* As the Author has not given a deſcription of the magic drum, and the ceremonies practiſed by the *Laplanders* at their incantations, *&c.* the following account, by a perſon who was eye-witneſs of the operation, may not be unentertaining to the reader.

M. *Motraye*, who travelled through *Lapland* in the year 1718, relates, that he hired a guide to direct him to the tent of one of theſe magicians, in the moſt remote parts of *Lapland*. *Motraye*, having given the guide all imaginable aſſurances that he would not betray him to the government, found the wizard in a poor hut, and in as wretched circumſtances as thoſe people are uſually repreſented to be in this part of the world: upon which he made the common obſervation, that if theſe wretches had any intereſt with the devil, he would ſurely reward them better. The magician gave M. *Motraye* his hand, and ordered him to follow him to the top of a high mountain, which lay to the eaſt of his hut; where he deſired him to ſtand while he fetched his drum, and other utenſils which were neceſſary for his purpoſe. Soon after, the *Laplander* returned with his magic drum, which he had hid among the ſhrubs, for fear of a diſcovery. It was of an oval form, and had but one head, which was covered with a tranſparent kind of parchment and wretchedly painted with the celeſtial ſigns; and there was faſtened to it a chain, with ſeveral braſs rings. Before the operation began, the wizard demanded if they had any brandy; and half a pint of that liquor being preſented to him, he immediately drank two thirds of it. He then put the chain and rings into the inſide of his drum; and turning the bottom upwards, he beat upon it with a forked piece of a Rein-deer's horn, for few minutes; the rings all the while jumping about, and making a jingling noiſe. After this, he laid himſelf down flat on his back, ſetting the head of his drum upon his bare breaſt; and having ſhut his eyes, pretended to be in a trance, for he did not ſeem to breathe for ſome time. Having fetched a deep ſigh, he gently raiſed the drum above his head, and looked upon the rings, which he could eaſily diſcern through the tranſparent parchment. When he had obſerved their poſition, and diſtance from the figures of the celeſtial ſigns, he fixed his eyes upon M. *Motraye*, and declared that he would run a great hazard of his life by water as he returned in his ſledge, and would alſo be in great danger in going down the cataracts or waterfalls in a boat; that he would have another narrow eſcape from fire; that his life would be long and healthful after he had overcome two fits of illneſs, both which would ſeize him within the ſpace of two years. And for the *Lapland* interpreter, who led *Motraye* to his cell, he directed him to go out to fiſh on the twentieth, twenty-ſecond, twenty-fourth, twenty-ſixth, and twenty-eighth days of that month, and the third, ſixth, ninth, twelfth, ſixteenth, twentieth, twenty-fourth and twenty-eighth days of the next, and he ſhould return home loaden with fiſh; and that the ſame days of the months of *September*, *October*, and *November*, would be equally fortunate to him in hunting. *Motraye* demanded if he could tell whether he

with theſe drums, it coſts him his life*. They are ſuppoſed to uſe theſe drums as oracles; for they imagine that by means of various figures painted on the head of the drum, they can know what paſſes in diſtant places; whether they ſhall meet with ſucceſs in hunting; what offerings will be moſt agreeable to their Gods; with the cauſes and cures of certain diſtempers, *&c.* Bear-hunting, in particular, is preceded by many rites and ceremonies. It is not uncommon among them ſometimes to mingle God's Word and ſeveral Chriſtian rites with their magical ſuperſtitious practices.

Since the acceſſion of King *Magnus Ladulas* to the crown of *Sweden*, endeavours have not been wanting to propagate the Chriſtian religion among the *Laplanders*. But in the times of Popery their converſion was carried no farther, than that the *Lapps*, in ſome of the *Lapmarks* or Provinces, were prevailed upon to have their children baptized, and their marriages performed in the preſence of a Chriſtian Prieſt; and to receive the benediction: And to theſe injunctions they were probably, at firſt, compelled to conform by the civil power. But *Guſtavus* I. King of *Sweden* ſhewed a moſt laudable zeal for bringing the *Lapps* to the knowledge of the eſſential part of Chriſtianity, and ſent preachers among them. The firſt *Lapp*-ſchool was alſo founded in the town of *Pitea* in that Monarch's reign. After that they were viſited at leaſt once a year, at the time of the annual fairs, by the neighbouring *Swediſh* preachers, who inſtructed them in the principles of the Chriſtian religion. For the advancement of this charitable undertaking, King *Charles* IX. about the year 1600, ordered churches to be erected for the uſe of the *Lapps*, which were to be dependent, as members, on the neighbouring *Swediſh* churches; till Queen *Chriſtina* provided them with regular Prieſts, who were conſtantly to reſide in their pariſhes. Since that time, a farther progreſs has been made, and the number of congregations is greatly increaſed, by erecting new churches and chapels, and ordaining more paſtors. Endeavours have been alſo uſed of late for ſending miſſionaries there, and erecting ſchools in moſt of the *Lapmarks* or Provinces; and to maintain the former congregations in good order by proper regulations and ſuitable encouragements. The direction of eccleſiaſtical affairs in *Lapland* is, at preſent, veſted in the Counſellors of State, the Chancellors of the Univerſities, the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, with the Recorder and juſticiary Burgo-maſter of *Stockholm*. Though in ſome of the *Lap-*

he was a bachelor or a married man; into what countries he had travelled? *&c.* but the conjurer was too wiſe to gueſs at things that were paſt, in which he knew his ignorance might be too eaſily diſcovered.

Hence it appears that the magic aſcribed to the *Laplanders* is nothing more than a feigned enthuſiaſtic fit, accompanied with a few ſtrokes on their drum and other trifling ceremonies, to which brandy does not ſeem to contribute a little, according to what is related above.

* This, I preſume, is the reaſon why theſe practices are ſo little known at preſent, or at leaſt are done with the greateſt privacy; ſo that it is a difficult matter to come to a proper knowledge of theſe ſuperſtitious ceremonies.

marks the groſs ignorance of the inhabitants muſt be a matter of concern to every ſincere Chriſtian; yet it may be obſerved of other provinces that Chriſtian knowledge has made a tolerable progreſs in them.

Before this nation became ſubject to the crown of *Sweden*, it may be reaſonably ſuppoſed, that *Lapland*, like other northern countries, had its own Sovereigns, Princes, or other Governors: But theſe were little more than chiefs or heads of families. It is certain that King *Magnus Ladulas*, who reigned about the year of Chriſt 1276, iſſued a proclamation, ſignifying, 'That whoever ſhould reduce the *Lapps* under the dominion of 'Sweden ſhould have a grant of an hereditary Government over them.' This was undertaken by the *Birkaleans*, a ſet of people who lived in ſome of the pariſhes of *Weſt-Bothnia*, before any town was built in that country; And they accompliſhed their deſign partly by ſtratagem, and partly by open force and bravery. Accordingly, the Government of *Lapland* with all its revenues was conferred on them as their property, only paying to the crown of *Sweden* an yearly acknowledgment of muſk, *&c.* But this Government after ſeveral reſtraints had been laid on the Governors, was at laſt totally aboliſhed. King *Guſtavus* I. laid the foundation of a better form of Government in this country; which in ſubſequent times, particularly in the reign of *Charles* IX. was confirmed and improved; and at laſt it was brought to the eſtabliſhment which at preſent prevails in moſt of the *Lapmarks*.

The *Lapps* in general acknowledge the King of *Sweden* for their rightful Sovereign; though ſome of them alſo pay tribute to *Denmark* and *Ruſſia*, as, at certain times of the year, they pitch their tents, *&c.* within the dominions of thoſe two Crowns. However, they conform to the *Swediſh* laws, attend the celebration of Divine Service in *Swediſh* churches, and apply to the *Swediſh* courts of judicature all over *Lapland*. The uſual tribute paid by the *Lapps* to the crown of *Sweden* is the very ſame as was appointed by King *Charles* IX.

In the Juridical and Trading Places, courts and houſes for the chief officers are erected. The Judges Aſſiſtants are here choſen from among the *Lapps*; and the taxes or contributions are uſually paid at the time of holding the courts. At the places appointed for theſe courts, and for levying the taxes, there are ſeveral houſes and tents erected by the *Lapps* for their own conveniency, and likewiſe other houſes and ſhops which they let to the Burghers who frequent the annual fairs in the *Lapmarks*.

The moſt conſiderable fairs are held at the ſame time with the courts of juſtice, and in ſome provinces laſt near a fortnight, but in others only a few days. Ready money is now become much more in uſe among the *Lapps* than formerly, when moſt bargains were made by bartering one commodity for another: However, a great deal of buſineſs is ſtill tranſacted this way. The goods which the *Laplanders* buy from the Burghers or inhabitants of the towns are chiefly ſalt, tobacco, meal, cloth, hemp, ox-hides, and *Walmar*, a kind

a kind of coarſe cloth; alſo kettles, pots, ſilver-ſpoons, buckles, girdles, rings, cups, hatchets, knives, ſciſſars, lead, powder, fire-arms, needles, and laces; together with tin or pewter, ſulphur, wine, malt-liquor, figs, &c. The *Lapps* in return ſell to the Burghers the following commodities, namely, furrs of all kinds, the fleſh and ſkins of Rein-deer, furr-gowns, boots, ſhoes, fiſh, cheeſe, &c. The *Mountain-Lapps*, when they come down to the coaſt of the *North-ſea* in ſummer-time, make uſe of the opportunity to carry on ſome little trade with the *Norwegians*. There are neither towns, nor any fixed or meaſured miles in any of the *Lapmarks*.

Beſides the native inhabitants of *Lapland*, ſeveral *Swediſh* and *Finnean* peaſants have, from time to time, ſettled there; being invited to it by the *Swediſh* government, in order to improve the ſoil by agriculture. But the *Lapps* * look with a very evil eye on theſe foreigners. Hitherto theſe coloniſts have not much improved their fortunes; which is partly owing to the difficulty of finding out proper places for a colony to ſettle, and partly to the wrong meaſures they purſue: Their indigence alſo contributes not a little to their ill ſucceſs.

Lapland is divided into ſeven Provinces or *Lapmarks*, which derive their names from the places of note in *Nordland*, in whoſe neighbourhood they lie. They all belong to the Government of *Weſt-Bothnia*, *Jamtland Lapmark* excepted, which is included in the Government of *Weſt-Nordland*. *Aſele-Lapmark* and *Angermannland* have a Governor, who, at the beginning of every year, takes a journey into *Lapland*. *Umea-Lapmark*, *Pitea-Lapmark*, and *Lulea-Lapmark* belong to the ſouth juriſdiction of *Weſt-Bothnia*; but *Tornea-Lapmark* and *Kiemi-Lapmark* are included in the north juriſdiction.

As for the eccleſiaſtical ſtate of this country, *Kiemi-Lapmark* belongs to the dioceſe of *Abo*, and all the reſt to that of *Hernoſand*. To begin with

I. *JAMTLANDS-LAPMARK.*

THIS lies fartheſt ſouth of all the *Lapmarks*, and forms a curve between the province of *Jamtland*, deſcribed above, and a chain of mountains. It extends about thirty *Swediſh* miles in length, and is divided into ſmaller *Lapmarks* or Diſtricts, called *Owikens-Fial*, *Oſterdals-Fial*, and *Hammardals-Fial*. Theſe *Fials* or *Mountain-Diſtricts* are inhabited only by *Lapps*; but the laſt mentioned is the moſt populous of the three. On the twenty-fifth day of *November* a very conſiderable fair is annually held in the pariſh of *Hammardal* in *Jamtland*.

* The natives may be properly called *Lapps* to diſtinguiſh them from the colonies ſettled among them, who are alſo called *Laplanders*. This is the reaſon why I have generally made uſe of the former name in the tranſlation.

Hitherto no certain places have been fixed upon for erecting churches in this province: For as theſe *Lapps* have a ſmattering of the *Swediſh* language, they join for the moſt part with the congregations of the neighbouring villages. However a preacher was ſettled here in the year 1746.

II. *ASELE-LAPMARK*, or *ANGERMANNLAND-LAPMARK.*

THIS province lies near the *Angermannland*-river; and borders on *Angermannland* towards the Eaſt, on *Umea-Lapmark*, towards the North; joins to the mountains on the Weſt, and to *Jamtland* on the South. It is above thirty *Swediſh* miles in length. In the reign of *Charles* XI. namely, in the year 1673, proper meaſures were taken for the better peopling of this country. In this *Lapmark* lies

The pariſh of *Aſele* which is about eight or nine *Swediſh* miles in length; and the ſouth part is inhabited by *Swediſh* peaſants, who ſettled in this deſert country, to the number of five-and-twenty colonies, of which the moſt ancient are *Gafsele* and *Hellan*. There is but a little part of this country capable of improvement; and of this but few ſpots have been cultivated. The greateſt tax levied on one of theſe peaſants is twenty-one copper-dollars*: But the generality pay only three copper-dollars, for which every peaſant may appropriate to himſelf a parcel of land of a *Swediſh* mile or two in circumference, or indeed of what extent he pleaſes. Barley is the only grain ſown in this pariſh; and as this frequently miſcarries, corn bears a great price here; ſo that the inhabitants are obliged to mix the bark of fir-trees dried and pulverized, or chaff, with their barley-meal; and of this mixture to make their bread. They chiefly ſubſiſt by breeding of cattle and fiſhing; which laſt is a reſource which ſeldom or never fails. It is remarkable that the corn ſown in the colony of *Hellan*, which lies in the neighbourhood of a great many moraſſes, is never nipped by the froſt. On the contrary the corn is frequently deſtroyed by the froſt at *Gafsele*, and ſtill oftener at *Norcn*; though both theſe colonies, and eſpecially *Gafsele*, are environed by water as well as *Hellan*. Among other inconveniencies to which this country is ſubject in the ſummer, it is infeſted with a ſpecies of fetid gnats, againſt which, in clear and calm weather when they are moſt troubleſom, the inhabitants have no other expedient than to beſmear their faces with a kind of ointment made of tar and greaſe; but theſe inſects are driven from the houſes by ſmoke. The church of *Aſele*, though erected by order of Queen *Chriſtina* in the year 1648, is built with

* A copper-dollar is 6*d.* $\frac{3}{5}$ *Engliſh* money.

wood,

wood, and makes no better appearance than a barn. Divine Service is performed here but once on every other *Sunday*, on account of the great extent of the pariſh, and conſequently of the diſtances of ſome parts of it from the church. The congregation meets once a fortnight on *Friday* evening, and the *Lapps* continue till *Sunday* evening in their huts erected near the church, and the peaſants in the houſes built by them for the ſame purpoſe. The *Mountain-Lapps* ſcarce appear at church even on the high feſtivals. A ſchool was erected near this church in the year 1750, where a ſchoolmaſter and ſix *Laplanders* children are maintained at the King's expence. At the fair, which is held every year at *Chriſtmas* near *Aſele* church, the *Lapps* ſell the fleſh and ſkins of Rein-deer, furrs, whitings, fowls, *&c.* and the *Lapland* peaſants carry butter, cheeſe, dried fiſh, fowls, and ſome ſorts of furrs to the ſame market.

III. *UMEA-LAPMARK.*

THIS province borders on *Aſele-Lapmark* and the pariſh of *Nordmaling* in *Angermannland* to the South, and on the fartheſt villages of *Umea* pariſh to the Eaſt; it joins to *Pitea-Lapmark* on the North, and to *Norway* on the Weſt. In *Umea-Lapmark* lies

Lykſele, a conſiderable pariſh, ſituated on the river *Uma*, about twelve *Swediſh* miles from the town of the ſame name. The church belonging to this pariſh was built in the time of *Charles* IX. but that ſtructure falling to decay, it was rebuilt in the year 1735. Ten *Laplanders* children are annually inſtructed and maintained in the ſchool erected in this place. *Sorſele* is one of the churches dependant on *Lykſele* as the mother Church, and lies on the river *Windel*, about twelve *Swediſh* miles nearer to the mountains than *Lykſele*. Near the mother church of *Lykſele* is an edifice in which the court of judicature is held, a Market-Place, and a houſe where the Governor reſides. Excluſive of the *Swediſh* congregation at *Lykſele*, which conſiſts of coloniſts; there is a *Lappean* community, which is divided into four Village-Juriſdictions or *Vogteys*. Theſe are

1. *Wapſtebyn*, which lies among the mountains, and conſiſts of twenty-five *Lapp*-Diviſions. Theſe *Lapps* pay contributions both to *Sweden* and *Norway*.

2. *Ran*, which lies alſo among the mountains.

3. *Granbyn*, which conſiſts of forty-two *Lapps*-dwellings, ſix of which pay taxes to *Sweden* and *Norway*, but the reſt are tributary to *Sweden* only.

4. *Umea-byn*, which conſiſts of ſixteen *Lapps*-habitations, is tributary to *Sweden* alone. This Village-Diſtrict is twenty *Swediſh* miles in length.

IV. *PITEA-*

IV. *PITEA-LAPMARK.*

THIS province joins to *Weſt-Bothnia* on the Eaſt, to *Umea-Lapmark* on the South; it borders on the mountains to the Weſt, and on *Lulea-Lapmark* to the North. The ſilver-mine of *Naſſa-Fial* is not wrought at preſent. Veins of ſilver-ore have been alſo diſcovered in other parts of this *Lapmark* or Province; which conſiſts of two *Paſtorates*, namely,

1. *Arwidsjaur*, or *Arfwidsjerf*, where there is an edifice for a court of juſtice, a Governor's houſe and a Market-Place; to which the Burghers of the town of *Pitea*, which lies about twelve *Swediſh* miles from this place, reſort to traffick at the fair. *Arwidsjaur*, the only *Lapp*-village in this *Paſtorate*, conſiſts of thirty-eight *Lappean*-families who pay taxes only to the crown of *Sweden*.

2. *Arjeplog* lies ten *Swediſh* miles from *Arfwidsjaur*, near the mountains, and on the banks of the large lake of *Hornawam*. In the year 1743, a ſchool was founded here for ſix young *Laplanders*, and a church at *Silbojock* which depends on the mother church at *Arjeplog*. The whole community conſiſts of five *Lapp*-villages, which are

Lurkt, or *Loctea*, which conſiſts of twenty *Lappean*-dwellings.

Mahas, or *Nordweſt-Dorf*, conſiſting of thirty-one dwellings.

Simesjaur, or *Simesjerf*, which has twenty-ſix dwellings.

Niarg, or *Sudweſt-Dorf*, which is inhabited by twenty-ſix *Lapps*, who have only one *Wood-Diſtrict*, and paſs the ſummer in *Norway*.

Arjeplogs-Dorf, a village conſiſting of thirty-two dwellings.

All theſe villages are tributary to *Sweden* only. There is but one new built village, properly ſo called, in *Pitea-Lapmark*, which lies about a *Swediſh* mile and a half from *Arjeplog* church.

V. *LULEA-LAPMARK.*

THIS province lies ſtill farther north than *Pitea-Lapmark*, on the river *Lulea*. It joins to *Weſt-Bothnia* on the Eaſt, to *Pitea-Lapmark* on the South, to *Norway* on the Weſt, and to *Tornea-Lapmark* on the North; and is for the moſt part over-run with woods and mountains, though not without ſome level ground. The corn is obſerved to ripen here ſooner than in the ſouthern provinces of *Sweden*. For inſtance, barley ripens in fifty-eight days, namely from the thirty-firſt of *May* to the twenty-eighth of *July*; and rye in ſixty-ſix days, namely, from the thirty-firſt of *May* to the fifth of *Auguſt*. *Lulea-Lapmark* conſiſts of two *Paſtorates*, viz.

1. *Jockmock.*

1. *Jockmock*. Near this church a ſchool was erected in the year 1730 for ſix young *Lapps*. Here are alſo a manor-houſe, an edifice where a Court of Juſtice is held, and a Market-Place frequented by the burghers of *Lulea*, which lies about eighteen *Swediſh* miles from hence, of whom the *Lapps* buy brandy, tobacco, cloth, and iron utenſils, which they procure for ſkins, cheeſe, and tongues of the Rein-deer, and ſometimes for thoſe animals alive. To this, as the mother church, belongs that of *Quickjock*, which ſtands near the ſilver-mine of the ſame name, about fifteen *Swediſh* miles nearer the mountains than *Jockmock*; and this is the ſtated reſidence of the Paſtor. The whole community, excluſive of the coloniſts, conſiſts of four Village-Diſtricts, namely, *Sirkas*, *Turpen*, *Jockmock*, and part of *Sockjock*.

2. *Gelliware*. This Paſtorate was ſeparated from *Jockmock* in the year 1742, and is ſo called from the iron-mine of *Gelliware*; where a Community is ſettled, which, beſides a great number of coloniſts, inhabits two vallies, namely, *Keitom-wom-a* and *Teuſo-woma*, together with *Nederby* which makes a part of *Sockjock*. *Gelliware* lies directly under the arctic Polar Circle, about ſixteen or eighteen *Swediſh* miles North-north-weſt from the town of *Lulea*. Theſe *Lapps* pay their contributions to *Sweden* only. In this *Lapmark* are fourteen new-built villages, and ſeveral veins of ſilver, lead, and iron-ore.

VI. *TORNEA-LAPMARK.*

TORNEA Lapmark lies along the river *Tornea*, and to the Eaſt is bounded by *Kiemi Lapmark*, to the South by *Weſt-Bothnia* and *Lulea-Lapmark*, to the Weſt by *Lulea-Lapmark*, and to the North by the Kingdom of *Norway*. In ſome parts of this province one meets with level grounds; and it alſo affords good ſalmon-fiſheries, copper and iron-ore. *Tornea-Lapmark* conſiſts of two mother churches and two others dependent on the former, which are,

1. JUCKAS JERFWI, a Paſtorate lying on the river *Tornea*, about thirty-four *Swediſh* miles from the town of *Tornea*, has a manor-houſe, an edifice where a Court of Judicature is held, and a Market-Place, to which the burghers of *Tornea* reſort to traffick. This pariſh from North to South is twenty-two *Swediſh* miles in length, and about eighteen in breadth from North-eaſt to South-weſt. The diſtance from the Market-Place to the neareſt mountains is computed to be fifteen *Swediſh* miles; and it is about two *Swediſh* miles farther over the mountains to the *North-Sea*. Here are two villages; namely, *Tingewara*, which lies next to *Norway* and conſiſts of three *Lapps*-dwellings: and *Siggewara* conſiſting of eighty-eight dwellings: both pay tribute to *Sweden*. Here eight new peaſants villages were alſo built by the colonies that ſettled in this country.

2. *Enontekis*

2. *Enontekis* is a church and congregation dependent on the Paſtorate of *Juckasjerfwi*, and lies about fourteen *Swediſh* miles to the north of it. In the year 1744, a ſchool was erected in this place. Here are likewiſe a manor-houſe, a Court of Judicature, and a Market-Place, whither the Burghers of *Tornea* come to trade, though it lies at the diſtance of forty *Swediſh* miles from that town: This pariſh conſiſts of three villages; namely, *Raunula*, conſiſting of forty-five, *Peldo-Jerf* of eleven, and *Sundawara* of thirteen *Lapp*-dwellings. It pays taxes only to *Sweden*, and contains eleven new-built villages.

3. The Paſtorate of *Kautokeio*, which lies forty-five or fifty *Swediſh* miles from *Tornea*, conſiſts of three Village-Diſtricts; namely, *Kauto-keimo*, which lies among the mountains and conſiſts of thirty-eight *Lapp*-dwellings, tributary to *Sweden*; *Wio-wara*, which lies alſo among the mountains and conſiſts of twenty-two *Lapp*-dwellings, tributary to *Sweden*, with a manor-houſe, a Court of Juſtice and a Market-Place; and *Teno*, which conſiſts of four *Lapp*-dwellings, and contributes to *Sweden* like the two former. At both the laſt places alſo ſome new villages have been built.

4. *Utsjocki* is a church dependent on the preceding, though it is thirty *Swediſh* miles diſtant from it, and has a manor-houſe, and a Market-Place. The *Lapp*-villages here conſiſt of forty-one dwellings, which pay their contingencies to the Crown of *Sweden*.

VII. *KIEMI-LAPMARK.*

THIS province is bounded to the Eaſt by *Ruſſian Lapland*, to the South by *Eaſt-Bothnia*; to the Weſt it borders on *Tornea-Lapmark*, and to the North on the *Daniſh* and *Ruſſian Lapland*. The country for the moſt part conſiſts of plains and moraſſes; and the inhabitants chiefly ſubſiſt by catching beavers and wild Rein-deer. Places of note in *Kiemi-Lapmark* are,

1. KUSAMO, the royal mother church, in which are the following villages.

Enara-by, where there is a chapel, with a manor-houſe, a Court of Judicature, and a Market-Place for an annual fair. It lies ſeventy *Swediſh* miles from the town of *Tornea*, (the inhabitants of which frequent this place to traffick,) and contains fifty *Lapp*-families.

Sombio-by, which has a manor-houſe, an edifice where a Court of Juſtice is held, and a Market-Place. The induſtrious Burghers of *Tornea* trade alſo to this village, which conſiſts of twenty-three *Lapp*-families. New farm-houſes have been built here in eight ſeveral places.

Remi-kyla-by, like the foregoing, lies on this ſide the mountains, and conſiſts of eight *Lapp*-families.

Kualojerfwi-by, which conſiſts of thirty *Lapp*-families.

Kitka-by, and *Kuſano-by*, conſiſt each of fourteen *Lapp*-families and forty new ſettlements. All theſe villages are tributary to *Sweden*.

2. SADANKYLA is a church dependent on the Paſtorate of *Kuſamo*, and lies about twenty-ſeven *Swediſh* miles from *Tornea*. It conſiſts of the two following villages.

Sadankyla-by, inhabited by thirty-three *Lapp*-families and ſix farming peaſants.

Kittala-by, which conſiſts of twenty-three *Lapp*-families and nine new built farm-houſes; and has a manor-houſe, an edifice in which a Court of Juſtice is held, and a Market-Place. Both theſe villages pay an annual acknowledgment to the Crown of *Sweden*.

FINNLAND,

In Latin *Finlandia*, *Fenningia*, *Fennonia*, or *Venedia*.

THE etymology and ſignification of this name are very uncertain. Some derive it from that of the *Wenden* or *Vandals*, who inhabited the countries lying on both ſides of the gulf of *Finnland*. Others will have it derived from the *Gothic* word *Fin* or *Fen*, which ſignifies a fen or moraſs; for they are very common in *Finnland*. Many other conjectures concerning the origin of this name, I omit for brevity's ſake. In the *Finnland* language this country is called *Suomi*, *Suomenma*, *Suomima*, and *Suomen-ſaari*. It lies to the Eaſt of *Sweden* properly ſo called, making that angle or tract of land on each ſide of which the *Baltic* is divided into two gulfs, namely, thoſe of *Bothnia*, and *Finnland*.

This country was formerly governed by its particular Sovereigns; but at preſent it has the title of a *Great Dutchy*. In the twelfth century great pains were taken for the converſion of the *Finns* to Chriſtianity; and *Henry*, who was Biſhop of *Upſal* in 1157, fell a martyr to his zeal in carrying on that pious undertaking. That Prelate founded the firſt cathedral in *Finnland*, at *Randamaki*; but the See was afterwards removed to *Abo*, which lies in the neighbourhood of the former. *Martin Skytte* and *Peter Serkilar* were the firſt preachers of *Luther*'s doctrine in this country.

Finnland contains about 3000 ſquare *Swediſh* miles; and is naturally fertile, but not properly cultivated nor ſufficiently peopled in proportion to its extent. This could not be completely done by leſs than three millions of labouring hands, who might here ſubſiſt in a plentiful manner. But even before the late wars, all the inhabitants of *Finnland*, including thoſe in the towns and in the country, ſcarce amounted to a million of ſouls.

The *Finns* have, from time immemorial, been accuſtomed to ſow on *Swediſh-land*, as it is called, and to dry their corn. They divide the *Swedje-land* or *Brenn-land*, i. e. 'burnt land,' into three kinds. Theſe are

1. *Huckta* or *Halme*, which is a large tract of land covered with wood, and cleared when the leaves of the trees are full grown. For this ſort of land a great quantity of old thick wood, and all kinds of white fir-trees are uſed; and this wood, after it is felled, lies two years before it is burnt. Such land ſerves only for rye.

2. *Kaſki*, which is a ſort of land where the wood which grows on it is ſomething ſmaller, and may be burnt within a year after it is felled. This may ſerve both for corn and turnips; but it is generally ſown with rye.

3. *Kieſkammaa* is covered with a ſmall low wood, growing on eminences, which is felled in the ſpring; and the boughs and tops of the trees are lopped off. When the wood is dry, it is burnt; and then the field is ſown with wheat or other corn, as ſoon as the burning is over: Buck-wheat, indeed, is ſown ſomething later, and lin-ſeed when the buſhes begin to bud the following ſpring. The trees are ſet on fire in this kind of land about the middle of ſummer, when the weather is very dry; and the fire is ſpread along the graſs which had not been burnt before. As ſoon as the fire is extinguiſhed, the corn is ſown that very ſame evening, that the aſhes may not in the night-time be blown away by the wind, but adhere to the ſeed by means of the dew. After this they plow the ground with a forked plough called *Kaſki-Sara*, and harrow it with a wooden harrow, as the uſual plough and iron harrows would be of little ſervice among ſtones and ſtumps of trees. The ſeed is but very thinly ſown in theſe aſhes. This proceſs of burning, ſowing, ploughing and harrowing is ſometimes continued for a whole year on the ſame piece of land; and if every thing ſucceeds, it yields thirty or forty fold: Nay there are ſome inſtances of its producing one hundred, and even one hundred and fifty fold.

Here is alſo a kind of land called *Kytoland*, which muſt not be omitted. This conſiſts of moraſſes and moſſy grounds, where, by way of trial, a clod is burnt; and if the aſhes prove red, it is a ſign that the ground will produce corn, on proper culture, for a conſiderable time; but if the aſhes be white it ſhews the ſoil to be barren. In order to improve ſuch places, the water is drained off, and what wood grows on the ſpot is felled. After ſome years the ground is drained by means of a ditch cut all round it, then cleared of the ſtumps and roots of trees, and afterwards plowed ſeveral times. When it has lain fallow ſome time to dry, the turf is ſet on fire; and immediately after this burning, the land is plowed and harrowed again, that the wind may not blow away the aſhes. The ground being thus prepared it is ſown with rye at the uſual ſeaſon of ſowing that grain. They have ſeveral other methods of trying land that is covered with moſs or ſlime.

In *Wilborg-Lehn*, the country about *Wilmanſtrand*, in ſome parts of *Carelia* and *Tavaſtland*, and likewiſe all over *Sawolax*, buck-wheat is chiefly

ſown; as it turns to better account in thoſe places than any other corn, and is uſed for bread, *&c.* But the poorer ſort, for want of better food, dry even ſtraw; then bruiſe and mix it up with ſome meal, and make bread of it.

The paſtures here are ſo rich, that great profits accrue to the inhabitants from grazing; but the breed of cattle in this country is very ſmall. Here are conſiderable woods of pine trees; ſo that vaſt quantities of wood and charcoal, timber and boards are ſent from hence to *Stockholm* for exportation. This country alſo abounds with all ſorts of game; and ſeveral ſorts of fruit, as apples, pears, plumbs, and cherries. *Finnland* is every where watered with lakes, rivers, and brooks, which yield plenty of fiſh; and very fine pearls are found in the pearl-fiſheries, and ſold to foreigners at a great price. In the lakes and moraſſes is dug up a ferruginous earth, from which iron is extracted. Lead-ore is alſo found in ſeveral parts of this province. Along the *Finnland* coaſts lie great numbers of *Scheeren*, or ſmall rocky iſlands. Though *Finnland* is a fertile country, and naturally enjoys a greater plenty of all the neceſſaries of life than any other part of the *Swediſh* dominions; yet the terrible calamities it underwent in the laſt war have brought it ſo low, that it makes but a melancholy appearance; and its inhabitants, who are famed for their courage and bravery, are reduced to great diſtreſs.

The language of the *Finnlanders* is quite different from moſt of the other northern dialects; but, like that of the *Lapps*, with which its idiom perfectly agrees, it has a great affinity with the *Hebrew*.

FINNLAND is divided into five provinces; which I ſhall deſcribe in their order.

I. *FINNLAND*, properly ſo called.

In Latin *Finlandia ſtrictè ſic dicta*, with the *Lehn* or fief of BIORNEBORG, which belongs to it.

THIS province lies at the angle where the gulfs of *Bothnia* and *Finnland* join, and directly oppoſite to *Upland* and *Geſtrickland*. It is about twenty-nine *Swediſh* miles in length, and eighteen in breadth. The ſoil is very fertile; and the country yields pleaſant proſpects eſpecially in the ſouthern parts, where it is diverſified with fine lakes, rivers, corn-lands, meadows, paſtures, hop-gardens, woods, and ſome iron-works; but the north part of *Finnland* is not ſo well cultivated. The *Lehn* or fief of *Biorneborg* is one of the moſt fertile parts in all *Finnland*, and the moſt commodiouſly ſituated. In the pariſh of *Saſtmola*, which lies in this *Lehn*, is a rich pearl-fiſhery, where pearls of an extraordinary ſize are found, for the moſt part, ſingle; but ſometimes a cluſter of two or three pearls are found in the ſame ſhell.

The inhabitants of this country ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, fiſhing, and making wooden-ware; and traffick in grain, meal, cattle, butter, talc, linen, yarn-ſtockings, &c. The biſhoprick of *Abo* is the ſeventh in the Kingdom as to precedence, and conſiſts of eighteen Provoſtſhips.

FINNLAND, properly ſo called, is divided into ABO-LEHN and BIORNEBORGS-LEHN.

ABO-LEHN, which comprehends the South part of *Finnland*, is ſubdivided into *South* and *North-Finnland*.

South-Finnland conſiſts of three Diſtricts, namely,

1. *Pykie-Diſtrict*, in which are the following places of note.

Abo, in Latin *Aboa*, lies at the point of the angle formed by the gulfs of *Bothnia* and *Finnland*, and on the river *Aurojocki* which runs through this city. It is the moſt conſiderable town in the whole country, and dates its origin from the year 1155. It is ſurrounded on all ſides with hills; and is a ſtaple-town, with a very commodious harbour. *Abo* was erected into a Biſhop's See about the year 1226. King *Guſtavus Adolphus* founded a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary here in 1628, which Queen *Chriſtina* converted into an Academy in the year 1640: here is alſo a Cathedral ſchool. The cathedral, which was built in the year 1300, is a handſome ſtructure. A Royal High Court of Judicature, which is the only one in *Finnland*, is held at *Abo*; where the Governor of the province alſo reſides. The chief magiſtrates of this city are two Burgo-maſters. It carries on a briſk trade in linen, corn, proviſions, planks, &c. The *Ruſſians*, who were in poſſeſſion of this town from 1713 to 1720, committed great outrages in it. It has alſo frequently ſuſtained great damages by fire. In the year 1743, a peace was concluded here between *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*. *Abo* is the eighth voting town in the Diet.

Abo-Slot, or *Abo*-caſtle, is one of the moſt ancient fortifications in *Finnland*. It ſtands on a peninſula at the mouth of the river *Aura*. In the ſixteenth century, King *Erick* XIV. was confined as a priſoner in this caſtle. It has been ſeveral times deſtroyed by the enemy and conſumed by fire ſince it was firſt erected.

Cuppis, a fine medicinal ſpring, lies at a ſmall diſtance from the city of *Abo*.

Rauſala is a pleaſant iſland, on which ſtands a royal manſion-houſe.

Rone, a royal demeſne, lies in the pariſh of *Sagu*.

2. *Masko-Diſtrict*, which contains the following remarkable places.

Nadendahl, in Latin *Vallis Gratiæ*, is a ſmall town at the diſtance of a *Swediſh* mile and a half from *Abo*. The *Nadendahl* Convent which gave occaſion to the building of this town, was ſequeſtered at the Reformation. However, nuns continued there till the year 1595, and ſet up a manufactory of knit-ſtockings, which continues to flouriſh to this day; ſo that ſeveral hundred pairs of thread-ſtockings are ſold at a very low rate, and ſent from hence to *Stockholm* and other places. This town has the ninety-firſt vote in the Diet. Not far from *Nadendahl* is a fine medicinal ſpring.

Nouſis

Nouſis, a pariſh-church, lies about three miles from *Abo*. In this church is to be ſeen the tomb of Biſhop *Henry*, who firſt preached the Goſpel in *Finnland*, and ſuffered martyrdom in the year 1157.

3. *Halliko-Diſtrict*, in which lies

Kimito, an iſland which conſtitutes a pariſh, about ſix *Swediſh* miles from *Abo*. On this iſland are ſeveral noblemens ſeats, an iron-mill, and quarries of good ſtone.

North-Finnland contains two Diſtricts: Theſe are,

1. *Wirmo-Diſtrict*, in which are the following places of note.

Saris, an ancient royal demeſne.

Pyha, a royal farm or manor.

Monois and *Nitu*, two royal demeſnes with manſion-houſes.

Fagerholm, a toll or cuſtom-houſe, where all ſhips paſſing to or from *Abo* are ſearched.

2. *Wemo-Diſtrict*, in which lies

Nyſtadt, in Latin *Neoſtadium*, a ſea-port town, built in the year 1616, and pleaſantly ſituated. It has a commodious harbour and a conſiderable trade in all kinds of wooden-veſſels. In the year 1721, a treaty of peace was concluded in this town between *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*. *Nyſtadt* is the ſeventy-ſeventh town that votes in the Diet.

BIORNEBORG-LEHN includes the North part of *Finnland* and is ſubdivided into *Upper* and *Lower-Satagunda*.

1. *Upper Satagunda* conſiſts of a Diſtrict of the ſame name; in which are the following towns.

Biorneborg, in Latin *Bioerneburgum*, or *Artopolis*, is a ſea-port town, ſituated on a narrow ſandy tract of land on the bank of the river *Kumo*, which divides itſelf into ſeveral branches juſt below this town, and forms a great many ſmall iſlands within the diſtance of half a *Swediſh* mile. *Biorneborg* at firſt ſtood in *Kumo* pariſh; but was afterwards rebuilt at *Ulfsby* or *Wanhakila*; and laſtly in the year 1558, the inhabitants were removed, and the town was built on the ſpot where it now ſtands. Great quantities of wooden-ware and fiſh, particularly ſalmon and large whitings are exported from hence to *Stockholm* and other places. The key or lading-place belonging to this town is at *Sandud*, about a *Swediſh* mile from the town. In the year 1602, a Diet was held at *Biorneborg*, which has the ſixty-fourth voice in the aſſembly of the States. Near this town lies a royal manor.

Raumo or *Ramea*, in Latin *Rauma*, is a very ancient ſea-port with a good harbour, which carries on a trade equal to that of *Nyſtadt*. It is the ſixty-fifth town that votes in the Diet.

2. *Lower Satagunda* comprehends the Diſtricts of

Oefredel and *Nedredel*, which include ſeveral pariſhes.

II. The

II. The *ISLAND* of *ALAND*,

In Latin *Alandia.*

THIS iſland lies between *Upland* and *Finnland*, but rather nearer to the latter. Between *Aland* and *Finnland* are ſeveral ſmall iſlands, ſhelves, and rocks, which render that part of the ſea very dangerous to mariners. *Aland* is about ſix *Swediſh* miles in length, and almoſt as many in breadth. The ſoil is ſo fertile, that the inhabitants ſeldom experience any ſcarcity of corn. It alſo produces rich paſtures for grazing. The woods, which are ſufficient for the uſe of the inhabitants, belong to the King, and are every where incloſed. There are alſo good lime-ſtone quarries in different parts of the iſland. Lynxes, foxes, and hares abound here; but bears are not very common.

The inhabitants ſpeak the *Swediſh* dialect, and chiefly ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, fiſhing, hunting, catching of ſea-fowl, and working in the woods; ſome of them are alſo good mariners. They traffick in butter, wooden-ware, coals, and lime.

Aland is ſaid to have been formerly governed by its own Kings; at leaſt, it did not belong to *Finnland* in ancient times. After this iſland became a province of the *Swediſh* dominions, it had its *Statthalter* or Governor for ſome centuries: But ſince the year 1634, when it was included in the Government of *Abo* and *Biorneborg*, it was modelled into a Diſtrict-Juriſdiction and a *Vogtey*, including eight pariſhes or *Paſtorates*, with the chapels appertaining to them. The clergy of this iſland are under the juriſdiction of the biſhop of *Abo*. The remarkable places here, are

Caſtelholm, *Grelſby* and *Haga* three royal demeſnes, in the firſt of which a poſt-houſe is erected.

Hamno, a ſmall iſland, lying about three *Swediſh* miles South-eaſt of *Aland*, where in the times of popery a convent ſtood.

Eckero, an iſland on the weſt ſide of *Aland*, on which ſtands a poſt-office.

III. *EAST-BOTHNIA*,

In Latin *Oſtro-Bothnia.*

THIS province lies farther North on the ſea-coaſt, and derives its name from its ſituation, which is on the eaſt-ſide of the gulf of *Bothnia*. The length of this country computed according to the roads, is near ninety *Swediſh* miles, and the breadth about forty. Others compute the length of it

it at ſixty-ſix *Swediſh* miles, and the breadth at twelve. Nature has ſeparated it from the adjacent countries by a chain of hills, which runs all along the eaſt ſide of it. From theſe mountains iſſue ſeveral rivers; ſome of which empty themſelves into the *White-ſea*, and others into the gulphs of *Bothnia* and *Finnland*.

The country, eſpecially on the ſea-coaſt towards the ſouth, and in ſome other places, is for the moſt part level, but full of moraſſes. The induſtry of the inhabitants in agriculture is attended with good ſucceſs; ſo that they ſupply other places with corn: but their hopes of a good crop are ſometimes fruſtrated by a ſudden and unexpected froſt. The inhabitants alſo frequently ſow their corn in *Swediſh-land*, as it is called: However, ſeveral large tracts of land in this country lie waſte. *Eaſt-Bothnia* abounds in woods, and with lakes and rivers which yield plenty of fiſh. In ſome of the rivers are found pearls of an extraordinary ſize. There are alſo ſome forges in this country.

Near the ſea-coaſt lie ſeveral large *Scheeren* or rocky iſlands, and the inhabitants of thoſe parts ſpeak the *Swediſh* language; but thoſe of the inland parts uſe the *Finnean* tongue.

The commodities which are exported from hence are beams, planks, tar, train-oil, cattle, fiſh, and other proviſions.

The inhabitants of this province ſubſiſt chiefly by agriculture, grazing, burning lime and tiles, and making tar. Of the laſt they extract to the amount of 50,000 barrels, from 3,200,000 pine-trees. They alſo employ themſelves in hunting and fiſhing, ſhip-building, and making wooden ware. The pariſhes which are moſt noted for ſhip-building are *Carleby* and *Kronoby*.

All the pariſhes in this province amount to no more than nineteen inhabited by *Finns*, and nine by *Swedes*. The number of the inhabitants in the whole is computed at 80,000. This country maintains an entire regiment of foot as its quota; but ſome pariſhes, in lieu of ſoldiers, furniſh ſhip-wrights to work in the dock-yard at *Carlſcron*. The Clergy of this province are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Abo*.

Eaſt-Bothnia is divided into three Parts or *Lehns*, which are all under one Governor. Theſe are as follow.

1. CAJANA-LEHN, which lies in the north part of the province. In this *Lehn* are

Cajana or *Cajaneborg*, in Latin *Cajania* or *Cajaneburgum*, a ſmall town, granted as a Barony, together with ſeveral other pariſhes, to *Peter Brahe*, great Conſtable of the Kingdom, in 1650, under the title of the fief of *Cajana*. The ruinous caſtle, which alone is properly called *Cajaneburg*, was built in the year 1607, and lies near the town: It ſurrendered by capitulation, and was demoliſhed, in the year 1716. It is almoſt ſurrounded by the river *Pyha*, which forms a dreadful cataract in this neighbourhood. *Cajana* is the hundred and ſecond town that votes in the Diet.

Paldama,

Paldama, the pariſh in which the town of *Cajana* lies, is the largeſt in the whole kingdom; but ſo thinly inhabitted, that ſome farm-houſes are ſeven *Swediſh* miles diſtant from any other dwelling.

Hyſis-Schloſs, in the pariſh of *Paldama*, was formerly a caſtle of a ſtupendous height. It was entirely hewn out of a hard rock, and had two gates and a very wide ſtair-caſe; but this ſtructure is totally decayed.

2. ULEABORG-LEHN, which is divided into the *North* and *South Parts*: In the *North Part* of this *Lehn* are the following towns.

Ulea or *Ulaborg*, in Latin *Uloa* or *Ulaburgum*, a ſea-port town ſituated on a peninſula, at the mouth of the river called *Ulea-Elf*. It was built in the year 1610, and is the largeſt town in all *Eaſt-Bothnia*. It has very ſtraight and long ſtreets, a good ſchool, a commodious harbour, and a fine ſalmon-fiſhery. In the year 1714, this town was demoliſhed by the *Ruſſians*. It is the fortieth town that votes in the Diet. The caſtle, which ſtands near it on a ſmall iſland, and is properly called *Ulaborg*, was built and fortified in the year 1590; but now lies in a ruinous condition.

Braheſtad, in Latin *Braheſtadium*, a town commodiouſly ſituated on the ſea-ſide. It derives its name from Count *Pehr Brahe*, the Great Conſtable of the kingdom, who built it for mechanics, in the year 1652, and procured it the privileges of a town. It has the ninety-ninth vote in the Diet. Here is a commodious harbour.

In the *South Part* are the following remarkable places.

The pariſh of *Laktea*, noted for ſalt-works.

Gamla-Carleby, in Latin *Carolina antiqua*, was built in the reign of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, in a fertile and pleaſant plain, and obtained its privileges in 1620. It has a commodious harbour, and the inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade in tar, and make great advantages of ſhip-building. In the Diet this town is the ſeventy-ſecond in order. The country about *Gamla-Carleby* is noted for a particular kind of ſalt, which the peaſants boil from the ſea-water in ſpring and autumn. At firſt it is of a dirty gray colour, but upon pouring ſome ſour milk into the clarifying veſſel, it becomes as white as ſnow. The particulars of this proceſs may be ſeen in the Tranſactions of the *Swediſh* Academy of Sciences, Vol. IV. p. 310.

3. RORSHOLMS-LEHN, which is divided into the *North* and *South Parts*.

In the *North Part* of this *Lehn* are the following towns,

Ny-Carleby, in Latin *Neo-Carolina*, a ſea-port ſituated on the river *Lappojock*, which empties itſelf into the ſea about a *Swediſh* mile from this town, where there is alſo a commodious harbour. It was firſt built by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*, and endowed with ſeveral privileges in 1620. In the order of the Diet *Ny-Carleby* is the ſeventy-firſt town; and carries on an advantageous trade.

Jacobſtadt, in Latin *Jacobſtadium*, is a ſea-port with a commodious harbour. The north part of this town ſtands on the continent, and the

ſouth

ſouth part on the iſland of *Bockholm*. It was built in the year 1653, by the Counteſs *Ebba Brahe*, who gave it the name of her deceaſed huſband *Jacob de la Gardie*, Captain-General of the *Swediſh* forces. This town obtained its privileges in 1660; and is the ninety-fourth voting town in the Diet. It was entirely deſtroyed in the late wars; but has been ſince pretty well rebuilt.

The *South Part* contains the following places of note.

Waſa, in Latin *Vaſa*, a privileged ſea-port, was built by *Charles* IX. in the year 1611, and by that Monarch named from the royal line of *Waſa*, or *Vaſa*. This town has a good ſchool, and trafficks in all kinds of fiſh. The entrance into the harbour is ſomething dangerous. This is the fiftieth town that votes in the Diet.

Rorſholm, a royal demeſne, lies near *Waſa*. Here the Governor of *Eaſt-Bothnia* now reſides; and a ſtrong caſtle formerly ſtood in this place.

Chriſtineſtadt, in Latin *Chriſtinæſtadium*, is a ſea-port town built in 1649, by Count *Pehr Brahe*, on the peninſula of *Koppo*, and called after the name of his firſt wife. It is the ninetieth town in the order of voting in the Diet.

IV. *TAWASTLAND*,

In Latin *Tavaſtia*.

THIS province lies in the middle of *Finnland*, and is thirty *Swediſh* miles in length, and twenty in breadth. The country is very fertile, and conſiſts of fine plains, watered by a great number of rivers and lakes which abound with fiſh. It is diverſified with arable and meadow lands; ſo that with reſpect to theſe natural advantages, it may not only be looked upon as the beſt part of *Finnland*, but is ſcarce ſurpaſſed in thoſe particulars by any province in *Sweden*. It is likewiſe ſtored with cattle, fiſh, and all ſorts of game. But notwithſtanding this country is ſo fertile, it is far from being well cultivated; and conſequently the peaſants are generally very poor. Sometimes, indeed, the corn is much damaged by keen and unexpected froſty nights. The northern part of *Tawaſtland* is more mountainous and woody than the ſouthern. In the moraſſes and uncultivated ſandy wilds a ferruginous earth is dug up, from which the *Eiſenſand-ertz*, or iron ſandy-ore, as it is called, is prepared. Among all the lakes in this country the *Pejende* or *Pajana*-lake is the moſt extenſive, being twenty *Swediſh* miles in length.

The inhabitants ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, and breeding of cattle, and ſome of them are employed in the fiſheries. They alſo traffick in corn, peaſe, beans, flax, hemp, dried fiſh, cattle, leather, tallow, butter, lime, the

bark of trees, &c. In eccleſiaſtical matters, this province is partly ſubject to the Biſhop of *Abo*, but moſt of it is included in the dioceſe of *Borgo*.

TAWASTLAND is divided into the *South* and *North Part*.

The SOUTH PART conſiſts of two Diſtricts, in which are the following remarkable places.

Tawaſtehus, or *Kroneborg*, in Latin *Croneburgum*, is a ſmall town, built in the year 1650, on a pleaſant ſpot by Count *Pehr Brahe*, and endowed with conſiderable privileges. In 1713 this town was taken by the *Ruſſians*; and in the laſt war between them and the *Swedes* it was laid in aſhes. The caſtle, which, excluſive of the town, is properly called *Tawaſtehus*, or *Tawaſteborg*, is well fortified, and ſerves for an arſenal and royal magazine. A view of *Tawaſtehus* may be ſeen in *Dahlberg*'s *Suecia*. It has the hundredth vote in the Diet.

Sairiala, a royal demeſne, lies in the pariſh of *Haubo* in this neighbourhood.

The NORTH PART alſo contains two Diſtricts, in which are the following places of note.

Waſunda and *Muſtela*, two royal manſion-houſes.

Tamela, a pariſh or village in which copper and iron-mines have been diſcovered.

Jamſio, another pariſh or village with a market-place, where a conſiderable trade in corn is carried on.

V. *NYLAND*,

In Latin *Nylandia*.

THIS province lies in a bay of the *Finnland* gulf, and was formerly peopled by the *Finns*; but is now inhabited by ſome of the natives of *Sweden* properly ſo called, and *Halſingland*, by whom it was called *Nyland*. It is near twenty-three *Swediſh* miles in length, and, except in few places, only five in breadth. This is a level, fertile, pleaſant country, and is better peopled and cultivated than the neighbouring provinces. It conſiſts of good arable land and meadows, excellent paſtures, fine woods, rivers and lakes abounding with fiſh, and is well ſtored with game of all ſorts. Here are alſo ſome ſawing-mills and iron-foundaries, which are ſupplied with iron-ore from *Sudermannland*. The inhabitants ſubſiſt by agriculture, grazing, and fiſhing; and they trade in corn, planks, linen, and dried fiſh. The See of *Borgo*, which is the ninth biſhoprick in rank, and conſiſts of ſeven Provoſtſhips, is in this province.

Nyland is divided into three Diſtricts, which are comprehended in the Government of *Tawaſtland*, namely, *Borgo-Diſtrict*, *Eaſt-Roſeborg-Diſtrict*, and *Weſt-Roſeborg-Diſtrict*.

1. BORGO-DISTRICT contains the following towns, *&c.*

Helſingfors, in Latin *Helſingoforſa*, a ſtaple-town, and the beſt in the province. It ſtands on a peninſula, and has an harbour equal to any in *Sweden*. It was built by King *Guſtavus* I. but in the late wars was laid in aſhes, and has not recovered its former flouriſhing ſtate ſince that calamity. The inhabitants deal in corn, timber, and fiſh. The Governor of *Nyland* and *Tawaſtland* reſides in this town. Within theſe few years the forts of *Ulricaburg*, *Guſtavſwerth*, *Sweaborg* and *Langorn* have been erected in the neighbourhood of *Helſingfors*. Here is a good ſchool; and an Academy for cadets who are natives of *Finnland*, is founded at *Sweaborg*. This is the twenty-fourth town in the order of voting in the Diet. Not far from *Helſingfors* lies the royal manor of *Wick*.

Borgo, in Latin *Borga*, a very ancient ſea-port, with an indifferent harbour. This town was almoſt entirely demoliſhed in the late war; but is now in a very flouriſhing condition. It is a Biſhop's See, and has a good *Gymnaſium* or Seminary. The inhabitants trade in all kinds of linen. *Borgo* has the ſixtieth vote in the Diet.

Stromſberg, a royal demeſne.

Degerby or *Louiſa*, a well built ſtaple-town, lies in the pariſh of *Perno*, on a creek of the gulf of *Finnland*, and has a commodious harbour. It was built in 1745, as a frontier town towards the *Ruſſian* territories, according to the limits ſettled by the laſt treaty of peace; and was called *Degerby* from the Nobleman's eſtate on which it ſtands. But in the year 1752, King *Adolphus Frederick* gave it the name of *Louiſa*. A poſt-office is eſtabliſhed in this town.

Perno and *Sibbo* are two pariſhes and market-towns, or villages.

2. EAST-RASEBORG-DISTRICT, in which lies *Lojo*, a pariſh and market-town.

3. WEST-RASEBORG-DISTRICT contains the following places of note.

Raſeborg, formerly a conſiderable demeſne with a ſtrong caſtle, but at preſent inhabited by an officer in the army.

Ekenas, in Latin *Quercuum Peninſula*, a little ſea-port with an indifferent harbour. This town is pleaſantly ſituated, and probably takes its name from the wood of oaks that lies near it. This is the ſeventy-eighth town in the order of voting in the Diet. The royal manor of *Ekenas* is not far from this town.

Hango, or *Hango-Udd*, a point of land near *Ekenas*, has a poſt-office and a very convenient harbour well fenced by Nature. In 1714 an engagement happened off this place betwixt the fleets of *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*.

VI. SAWOLAX*,

In Latin *Savolaxia*.

THIS country is thirty-four *Swediſh* miles in length, and twenty-one in breadth, and produces very little corn or paſture, as it moſtly conſiſts of woods, lakes, rivers, and moraſſes. The greateſt part of its rivers empty themſelves into the lake of *Saima*, which extends from North to South about forty *Swediſh* miles in length. It is full of mountainous iſlands; and with a roaring noiſe runs along the large ſtream of *Waxen* into the *Ladoga*-lake. The land is ſo unequally divided, and withal ſo thinly inhabited, that the grounds belonging to ſome farms lie ten, fifteen or twenty *Swediſh* miles from the houſe. The inhabitants, however, get a tolerable ſubſiſtence by ſowing buck-wheat, grazing and breeding cattle, hunting, fiſhing, and making wooden ware. They alſo trade in tallow, butter, dried fiſh, hides, and furrs. Their houſes are, for the moſt part, very ſmall. This country abounds in elks and rein-deers. As to its eccleſiaſtical ſtate, it is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Borgo*, and is divided into three Provoſtſhips.

Sawolax is divided into three Diſtricts, excluſive of the town of *Nyſlott*, of which we ſhall give an account in deſcribing *Ruſſia*, and contains the following places of note.

Hanulangpaldo, *Tawiſalmi*, *Randaſalmi*, and *Sairala*, which are royal manors.

St. *Michel*, a pariſh, where there is a poſt-houſe. The church is one of the moſt ancient ſtructures that were built in the times of Popery.

Brahelinna, which is alſo a royal demeſne.

VII. KYMMENEGARDS-LEHN.

THIS country derives its name from the river *Kymmene* and the royal demeſne of *Kymmenegard*. By *Kymmenegards-Lehn* is commonly underſtood that part of *Carelia* and *Kexholm-Lehn*, which, according to the treaty of *Nyſtadt*, belongs to *Sweden*.

Carelen or *Carelia*, was formerly of great extent; for it was bounded to the Eaſt by the lake of *Onega*, the river *Pinasjoki* which runs into the *White-Sea*, and the river *Powents* which diſcharges itſelf into the forementioned lake; to the South by the gulf of *Finnland*, the lake of *Ladoga*, and the rivers *Sweri* and *Niewa*; the river *Kymmene* and the *Pejende*-lake

* Theſe are numbered according to the original; but I ſuppoſe the Author does not include them in *Finnland*, as it conſiſts of five provinces only. [See p. 36.]

were

were its Weſtern, and the river *Kiemi* its Northern limits. This country has often been a bone of contention between *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*, and occaſioned frequent diſputes between thoſe two powers. But, by the treaty of *Nyſtadt*, *Sweden* was obliged to cede the greateſt part of it to *Ruſſia*; and all that now belongs to the former is the moſt weſtern part of *Carelia*, conſiſting of a ſmall number of Diſtricts.

KEXHOLM-LEHN lies to the north-eaſt of the *Swediſh Carelia*, and extends as far as the lake of *Ladoga*. It derives its name from the old caſtle of *Kexholm*. By the treaty of *Nyſtadt*, the caſtle of *Kexholm*, together with the ſouthern and beſt part of this *Lehn* or fief, were given up to *Ruſſia*; and this ceſſion was confirmed in 1743 by the treaty of *Abo*.

Kymmenegards-Lehn is naturally a fertile country; but, for want of inhabitants and proper culture, but little arable or meadow land is ſeen in this *Lehn*, which has extenſive woods, and ſeveral rivers and lakes abounding with fiſh, and ſome good paſtures. In this part of *Carelia* a ſort of bread is made of ſorrel-ſeed, which is well taſted.

The river *Kymmene* has its ſource in the *Pejende*-lake, and empties itſelf into the gulf of *Finnland* through ſix mouths or outlets.

The large ſtream called *Woxen* iſſues from the lake of *Saima* and runs into that of *Ladoga*. About a *Swediſh* mile from the former lake it has a cataract from a very high and ſteep precipice. The clergy of this *Lehn* or fief are ſubject to the Biſhop of *Borgo*.

This country is divided into four parts or Diſtricts, two of which lie towards the South and the other two towards the North. The places of note in this *Lehn* are

Kymenegard, an ancient and conſiderable royal demeſne. Here the river *Kymene* iſſues out of the *Prejende*-lake, and

Karnas, a royal farm.

Note. An account of the following towns will be given in our deſcription of *Ruſſia*, *viz.*

Wilmanſtrand.
Frederickſhamn.
Wiborg.
Kexholm.
Lexa.
Taipol.

THE

THE

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.


A New and Accurate MAP of RUSSIA in EUROPE
Drawn from the Best Authorities
By T. Kitchin Geog.r
NORTH OCEAN
FROZEN SEA
British Miles 69 to a Degree
Russian Wersts 105 to a Degree
RUSSIAN LAPLAND
WHITE SEA
PART OF SWEDEN
FINLAND
CARELIA
Gulf of Finnland
LIVONIA
GOVERNMENT OF ARCHANGEL
GOVERNMENT OF NOWOGROD
GOVERNMENT OF MOSKWA
GOVERNMENT OF KASAN
SIBERIA
KINGD: OF POLAND
Arctic Circle
Archangel
Moscow
Petersburg
Gulf of Bothnia
Lake of Ladoga
Onega L.
Kola
Kola R.
Kola Lake
Kandalax
Kemi
Solowetskoi I.
Ustiug Weliki
Solikamskaia
Tcherdyn
Kaigorodok
Klynow
Orkm
Kungur
Yaransk
Saraput
Ufa R.
Ufsa
Kasan
Simbirsk
Wolga R.
Nishney Novogrod
Vologda
Galitsh
Vnsha
Kostroma
Yaroslaw
Rostow
Susdal
Uglitsh
Romanow
Tver
Torjock
Twer
Smolensk
Polock
Witepsk
Mohilow
Orsza
Oczyce
Riask
Temikow
Shatsk
Radom
Alatyr
Penzal
Pensa
Tula
Kaluga
Mcalow
Prousk
Wiatka
Kama R.
Petchora R.
Mezen R.
Dwina R.
Onega R.
Swiatoi Noss
Kanin Noss
Pustozerskoi Ostrog
Pustozero Lake
Wardehuus
Wardoe I.
Kemi
Kemi R.
Kuya
Kuya R.
Varensk
Shenkursk
Posad Werowashskoi
Tosma
Belozero
Wytegra R.
Swir R.
Ladoga
Schlusselburg
Petersburg
Narva
Reval
Pernau
Abo
Borgo
Biorneborg
Kymenegord
Wiborg
Nowogrod Weliki
Ilmen Lake
Pskow
Pskow Lake
Wolchow R.
Waldai
Twer
Torjock
Wolga R.
Oka R.
Moskwa R.
Duna R.
Dnieper R.
Dniester R.
Bug R.
Wisla R.
Niemen R.
Pripet R.
Susza
Ula
Lubau
Wendau
Memel
Libau
Mitau
Riga
Riga G.
Gulf of Riga
Aaland Is.
Dagerort I.
Oesel I.
Dago I.
Moon I.
Gothland
Swinemund
Stettin
Dantzic
Konigsberg
Memel
Pillau
Elbing
Marienburg
Thorn
Plock
Warsaw
Brzesc
Grodno
Bialystock
Lemberg
Zamosc
Lublin
Kiow
Kiow R.
Dnieper R.
Pripet R.
Desna R.
Sewerian Mountains
Uralian Mountains
Petchora R.
Kama R.
Ufa R.
Wolga R.
Oka R.
Moskwa R.
Duna R.
Dniester R.
Bug R.
Wisla R.
Niemen R.
Pripet R.
Desna R.
Dwina R.
Onega R.
Mezen R.
Kuya R.
Swir R.
Wytegra R.


KINGD: OF POLAND
RUSSIA
GOVER OF KIEW
GOVERNMENT OF BELGOROD
GOV OF WORONESH
GOV OF SMOLENSK
GOV OF MOSKWA
GOV OF NOVOGROD
GOV OF KASAN
Torgut Kalmuks
Don Cosaks
The Steppe or Desert
Astracan
Sea of Asow
BLACK SEA
CASPIAN SEA
Dnieper R.
Don R.
Volga R.
Yaik R.
Ural R.
Yaik or Yaitzkoi Gorod
Petrikow
Kiew
Bialagrodka
Polock
Smolensk
Woronesh
Bielgorod
Tzaritzin
Astracan
Longit. East from Ferro
50
55
60
65
70
45

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

§. 1. THOUGH the maps of the vaſt Empire of *Ruſſia* and all *Tartary*, which have been publiſhed within theſe ſixty or ſeventy years, are more accurate than thoſe that were extant before; yet they differ from each other both in correctneſs and beauty. The large map of the northern and eaſtern parts of *Aſia* and *Europe*, which was firſt publiſhed in 1687 by the celebrated M. *Nicholas Witſen*, Burgomaſter of *Amſterdam*, (who, in order to illuſtrate his maps, publiſhed his valuable and very ſcarce work, entitled *Noord und Ooſt Tartarye*, or 'A deſcription of *North* and *Eaſt-Tartary*,' firſt in the year 1692, and afterwards in 1705) notwithſtanding the author's great trouble and application is ſo faulty that he would willingly have ſuppreſſed that hiſtorico-geographical work. From *Witſen*'s map *Frederick de Witt* delineated ſeveral ſmaller maps, which were publiſhed by *Mortier* and others. It is to the learned *Witſen* that the world is alſo indebted for the publication of *Ysbrant Ides*'s travels into *China* *. In that valuable book may be ſeen a map of *Ruſſia*, which *Homann* made the ground-work of his map, but with ſeveral improvements. The maps of *Ruſſia* publiſhed by *Herman Moll*, *De l'Iſle* and *Stralenberg* have alſo their uſe. The general map of *Ruſſia* by M. *Kirillow*, privy counſellor to the *Czarina*, was the beſt extant till J. M. *Haſe*'s *Tabula imperii Ruſſici & Tartariæ univerſæ*, together with a ſhort explication of it, was publiſhed in 1739 at the expence of *Homann*'s heirs; which may be looked upon as a perfect model for projecting geographical Tables. The beſt maps of the *Ruſſian* Empire, yet extant, are thoſe in the *Atlas* publiſhed by the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Peterſburg* in

* A tranſlation of this curious work was publiſhed in *England* in 1706, entitled 'Three years 'Travels from *Moſcow* to *China*, *&c.* by land, written by *Ysbrant Ides*, Embaſſador from the *Czar* 'of *Muſcovy* to the Emperor of *China*'. This book is at preſent very ſcarce; and was of great ſervice to the author.

the year 1745; but theſe are far from being perfect. They conſiſt of one general, and nineteen particular maps, repreſenting the whole *Ruſſian* Empire and the countries bordering on it, according to the rules of geography and the lateſt diſcoveries. The price of this *Atlas* at *Peterſburg* is four *Rubels* * and eighty *Copeiks* coloured, and four *Rubels* plain.

§. 2. *Ruſſia* is by ſome called *Moſcovy*; but this way of ſpeaking is very improper. For to give this Empire the name of *Moſcovy* from *Moſcow* its capital, is as abſurd as if we ſhould term it the *Peturburgian* Empire; or call *France* the *Pariſſian* monarchy, from *Paris* the capital of that Kingdom. The etymology of the word *Ruſſia* is uncertain; for it is neither derived from ראש *Roſch*, mentioned in *Exekiel*, c. xxxviii. v. 2, 3, and c. xxxix. v. 1. as ſome imagine, nor from an imaginary Prince of the name of *Ruſs*, the brother of *Zech* and *Lech*, *&c.* as others pretend. Nor are the *Ruſſians* ſo called from *Ruſs* an ancient city; for the latter rather derived its name from the former, by whom it was inhabited. Thoſe who deduce the origin of the *Ruſſians* from the ancient *Scythæ* and *Sarmatæ* give no further proof of it than that they poſſeſs the country formerly inhabited by thoſe nations; which no body will diſpute with them. This, however, is certain, that before the ninth century the name of *Ruſſians* was entirely unknown; not the leaſt mention of it being made in the preceding ages. We ſhall ſhew in the ſequel, that the people called *Ruſſians* emigrated from other parts into the countries they now poſſeſs. The name itſelf, according to the account given of it in the *Ruſſian* annals, was firſt uſed by the northern *Waregers*, who croſſed the *Baltic* from *Scandinavia*, and ſettled in this country: For the *Slavians* or *Sclavonians* who poſſeſſed the other part of this country, were by the former called *Ruſſen* or *Ruſſians*. The *Finns* to this day, though they can aſſign no reaſon for it, give the *Swedes* the name of *Ruſſes*, or rather *Roſſa-Laine*. They alſo call the Ruſſians *Venne-Laine*, and ſtile themſelves *Suoma-Laine*, i. e. people living among fens or moraſſes. This name of *Ruſſes* the *Novogrod Sclavonians* ſeem to have borrowed from the neighbouring *Finns*; and they term all foreigners that come into their country from the North, *Ruſſes*. Thus the *Sclavonians* give the *Waregers* the name of *Ruſſians*: And when the former became tributaries to the latter, they were alſo included under the name of *Ruſſians*; as the *Gauls* when conquered were called *Franks*, and the ancient *Britons* changed their name into that of *Angles* or *Engliſhmen*.

§. 3. The *Ruſſian* Empire extends itſelf much farther than *Ruſſia* properly ſo called. Towards the North and the Eaſt it is bounded only by the main Ocean; but towards the Weſt and South the limits of this vaſt Empire are ſettled by treaties concluded with ſeveral Powers; namely, with *Sweden* by the treaty of *Nyſtadt* in the year 1721, and that of *Abo* in 1743; with the *Poles* by certain conventions agreed on in 1667, 1672,

* A Rubel or Ruble is one hundred Copeiks, and is equal to 4 *s.* 2 *d.* ſterling.

and

and 1717, but theſe were not ratified as to every article. With the *Turks* the limits were ſettled by the treaty of *Carlowitz*, concluded in the year 1701; but ſome alterations were ſubſequently made at the treaty of the *Pruth*, and ratified in the year 1714. Farther changes alſo took place with regard to the limits between *Ruſſia* and *Turky* at the treaty of *Belgrade* in the year 1739. Purſuant to the laſt treaty of peace concluded with *Perſia* in 1732, the river *Kur*, which runs into the *Caſpian-Sea*, is made the boundary between the *Ruſſian* and *Perſian* dominions. But the *Ruſſians*, having ſoon after relinquiſhed the provinces which they had taken from the *Perſians*, the river *Terk* is looked upon as the preſent limits. The other wandering tribes who live farther ſouth, *viz.* the *Caracalpackians*, *Kaſatſhia-Horda*, the *Calmucks* and *Baſhkirians*, are confined by lines thrown up on the frontiers. The laſt treaty of peace and friendſhip with *China* and the *Mungalians* was concluded, in the year 1727, on the banks of the river *Bura*; and in 1728, the ſeveral ratifications of it were exchanged at the river *Kiakta*. By virtue of that treaty barriers have been ſet up on the ſouth ſide of the mountain of *Sayan*, and farther towards the Eaſt as far as the river *Argun*. By caſting an eye on theſe limits in the map we may conclude, that the *Ruſſian* Empire, for extent of territories, may diſpute the preeminence with any power on the globe; or rather that there is not a monarch in the whole world poſſeſſed of ſuch extenſive dominions as the Empreſs of *Ruſſia*. From Weſt to Eaſt it extends from the 40th degree of Longitude to the 204th degree in length; and from North to South it is 15, 20, and in ſome places 25 degrees in breadth: ſo that it is above 1200 geographical or *German* miles* in length, and from 2 to 400 miles in breadth.

§. 4. As this Empire conſiſts of a great number of provinces, many of which are very extenſive, the ſoil and temperature of the air muſt vary conſiderably in different parts of it; and conſequently one province may ſupply what is wanting in an other.

In thoſe parts which lie beyond the 60th degree of Latitude there are but few places where corn will grow to maturity; and in the northern parts of the Empire no garden friuts are produced, except in the country about *Archangel*; where horned cattle are alſo bred, and a great many buſhes and ſhrubs grow ſpontaneouſly, which yield ſeveral ſorts of berries. There is alſo plenty of wild beaſts and fowls, and ſeveral ſorts of fiſh in the neighbourhood of that city.

In thoſe provinces which lie in the middle of the Empire the air is mild and temperate, and the ſoil produces all kinds of trees and garden fruits, corn, honey, *&c.* They are alſo well ſtocked with horned cattle; the woods abound in game; and the rivers are navigable, and full of the beſt ſorts of fiſh.

* The author does not ſpecify what miles he reckons by in the deſcription of *Ruſſia*; but where he uſes the general term, I preſume he means *German* miles.

In the ſouthern provinces the climate is hot: and though many barren waſtes are to be met with in ſome parts of them; yet in other places they are covered with verdure and flowers. Tobacco, wine, and ſilk might be produced in them, as the two firſt are at *Aſtracan* and the *Ukraine*; and they are well watered with rivers which afford plenty of fiſh: nor are they deſtitute of game in proportion to the extent and number of the woods.

Proviſions are very cheap in *Ruſſia*; eſpecially fleſh-meat of all kinds. The fiſh peculiar to this country are the *Beluga*, *Sterled*, *Oſſetrina*, *Citrine*, *&c.* and the two laſt are of a delicate flavour. The only difference between the *Sturgeon*, the *Sterled*, and the *Koſteri* is, that the *Sterled* is ſomething ſmaller than the *Koſteri*, and the *Koſteri* has rougher ſcales than the *Sturgeon* or the *Sterled*.

Medicinal and ſaline ſprings are not uncommon in *Ruſſia*. Fine ſilver, which alſo yields ſome gold, is dug out of the mines in this country, and likewiſe exceeding fine copper, iron, and many other minerals; as the famous *Marienglaſs*, called by ſome *Muſcovy* glaſs, or iſing-glaſs, *&c.* with ſeveral precious ſtones. Of theſe valuable productions found in the *Ruſſian* Empire more will be ſaid in §. 11, and in the deſcription of *Siberia*.

In the middle and northern parts of the Empire the cold is very ſevere, and the days extremely ſhort in winter: But the ſummers are warm and delightful; and even in the ſhorteſt nights the twilight is very luminous. At the winter ſolſtice, when the day is at the ſhorteſt, the ſun riſes and ſets on the horizon of the principal cities in the *Ruſſian* Empire according to the following Table.

Sun riſes	Hours	Min.	Sun ſets	Hours	Min.
At *Aſtracan*	7	48		4	12
At *Kiow*	8	7		3	53
At *Moſcow*	8	37		3	23
At *Riga*	8	47		3	13
At *Tobolſk*	8	56		3	4
At *Peterſburg*	9	15		2	45
At *Archangel*	10	24		1	36

At the ſummer ſolſtice when the day is at the greateſt length this order is reverſed. For example, the ſun riſes at *Aſtracan* about twelve minutes after four, and ſets about forty-eight after ſeven, and ſo for the reſt. The common obſervation that eaſtern countries are much colder than the weſtern that lie in the ſame Latitude, is greatly confirmed in *Ruſſia*. For ſince the year 1718, the river *Neva* at *Petersburg* has, in ſome years, been covered with ice ſo early as the twenty-fourth of *October*, and in other years when lateſt, about the twenty-ſecond of *March*; but it generally thaws by the twenty-ſixth of *April* old ſtile, which it has never been known to exceed.

exceed. When it begins to freeze in *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*, the flakes of ice float on the rivers till at laſt they join together, and form a hard ſurface. Sometimes, though ſeldom, a ſudden froſt congeals the water to the conſiſtency of a jelly; and then the rivers are ſoon incruſted with ice *, and their current is ſtopped.

§. 5. A perſon may travel cheap and with great expedition in *Ruſſia*, both in ſummer and winter; eſpecially in the ſledges, during the latter ſeaſon. The draught-horſes are extremely ſwift, and the roads very good, particularly in the winter-time, between the principal cities of this country. It is nothing extraordinary to go with poſt-horſes from *Peterſburg* to *Moſcow*, which is about one hundred and ten geographical or *German* miles †, in ſeventy-two hours; and a commodious ſledge drawn by a pair of poſt-horſes for this diſtance may be hired for fourteen or fifteen *Rubels*. Between *Riga* and *Petersburg* the hire of a poſt-horſe for every *Werſt* is two *Copeiks* and a half ‡; between *Novogrod* and *Petersburg* one *Copeik*; and betwixt *Novogrod* and *Moſcow* but half a *Copeik*. The poſt-roads leading to the chief towns, *&c.* are very exactly meaſured, with the *Werſts* marked; and the poſt-ſtages are fixed at proper diſtances. Throughout the whole Empire, and even in *Siberia*, a pillar inſcribed with the number of the *Werſts*, &c. is erected at the end of every *Werſt*. According to theſe pillars the diſtances between the principal cities are as follows.

	Werſts.
From PETERSBURG to *Riga* through *Narva*, *Dorpat*, and *Wolmar*,	545
——— To *Wyburg*	139
——— And from *Wyburg* to the frontier town of *Lille-Aborfors*	189
——— To *Kronſtadt* by land	47
——— To *Moſcow* by way of *Novogrod*, *Forzk*, *Twer*, and *Klin*	734
This road for about 110 *Werſts* runs in a direct line.	
——— To *Smolenſk* through *Narva*, *Gdow*, and *Pſkow*	838
——— To *Archangel* ſomething more than	1300
From Moscow to *Kaſan*	735
And from *Kaſan* to *Orenburg*	508
——— To *Tobolſk*	2384
——— To *Aſtrachan*	1412
——— To *Archangel*	1004
——— To *Kiew*	890
——— To *Aſow*, or *Aſof*	1268
——— To *Bielgorod*	604
——— To *Smolenſk*	350

* There is nothing particular in the account the Author gives here of the rivers freezing in *Ruſſia*, the ſame gradual progreſſion being obſerved in all northern countries. The latter phenomenon was alſo ſeen in *England* in 1739.

† About four hundred and forty *Engliſh* miles. ‡ About 1 *d.* ¾ ſterling.

Engliſh

Seven *Ruſſian Werſts* are equal to a long *German* mile, or twenty *Werſts* are equal to three geographical miles; or, to ſpeak with greater preciſion, 3500 *Engliſh* feet conſtitute a new *Werſt*; and 104 ½ of the latter are equal to a degree of the Equator *.

§. 6. Not one third of the *Ruſſian* Empire is ſufficiently peopled, or properly cultivated. The number of inhabitants who pay the poll-tax and furniſh recruits is computed at 5,100,000; and, females included, amounts to about 10,000,000, excluſive of the inhabitants of the conquered provinces.

Before the time of *Peter* I. the *Ruſſians* were, and in ſome reſpects not undeſervedly, looked upon as mere ſavages. But that wiſe and great Prince, by incredible application, and a proper temperature of ſeverity and mildneſs, brought about ſuch a happy change in their manners, as in a great meaſure ſets them on a level with the other civilized nations of *Europe*. The *Ruſſians* are remarkable for their comelineſs of perſon, ſtrength of body, fidelity, firmneſs, ingenuity, wit, and obedience to the laws of their ſuperiors.

The inſatiable eagerneſs of the common people after ſpirituous and other ſtrong liquors, eſpecially in the carnival time, is in a great meaſure owing to the rigorous faſts they obſerve, and the ſlender diet they live upon throughout the year. Their food chiefly conſiſts of turneps, cabbage, peaſe, large cucumbers, onions, and coarſe ill-taſted fiſh. Their drink is *Quas*, which is a kind of ſmall-beer; and even among the gentry brandy always makes a part of every repaſt. Among the lower ſort, it is generally the men who give themſelves up to theſe exceſſes; though, indeed, it is no uncommon ſight at *Petersburg* to ſee a drunken woman ſtaggering along the ſtreets.

The *Ruſſian* women are extremely fond of paint, and look upon a ruddy complexion as the very eſſence of beauty; ſo that in the *Ruſſian* language red and beautiful are ſynonymous terms. Even the poorer ſort among the women, in order to mend their complexion, will beg money to buy ſome red paint.

Perſons of diſtinction dreſs after the *German* and *French* manner †, and are very fond of ſtate and ſplendor. The dreſs of the common people in *Ruſſia* is mean; but they are neat and cleanly in their apparel. Perſons of both ſexes wear a croſs on their breaſts, which is put on when they are baptized, and never lay it aſide as long as they live. The peaſants croſſes are of lead; but thoſe wore by the better ſort are of gold or ſilver. The peaſants let their beards grow to their full length. The *Ruſſians* ſeldom fail of bathing twice a week; for which purpoſe almoſt every houſe-keeper is provided with a bath; and he that has none of his own goes to the

* See the Table of miles in page 25 of this Volume.

† The *German* and *French* dreſſes, which the Author couples together, are very different; but moſt nations affect to imitate the latter in their fantaſtic levity, though ſometimes with a very ill grace.

public

public baths. They often ſally out naked from the warm bath, run about in the cold, and roll themſelves in the ſnow; and then they plunge again into the bath: This viciſſitude of heat and cold they look upon as beneficial to the conſtitution by rendering them hardy and robuſt.

Even the common people among the *Ruſſians* ſalute each other with great civility; but before a *Ruſſian* bids his gueſts welcome to his houſe, they are obliged to make the ſign of the croſs; and at the ſame to bow to the picture of ſome Saint, which is ſo placed in every room, as to be ſeen immediately at coming in. In viſits of ceremony it is uſual for the men and women to welcome each other with a kiſs. Thoſe of the loweſt claſs proſtrate themſelves on the ground before perſons of high rank, in order to ſhew their profound reſpect.

The moſt uſual method of building both in the towns and country is to lay one beam or log of wood upon another; then they faſten them at the four corners, and fill up the crevices between the beams with moſs. The houſe is afterwards covered with ſhingles; and holes are made in the timber for doors and windows. There is commonly a brick ſtove or large oven in every room in the houſe of a peaſant, which takes up the fourth part of the area, and is flat at the top and boarded; on which, and a kind of ſhelves round the room, the whole family ſleep without beds. Their furniture conſiſts of three benches, an oblong table, and a picture of a Saint or two. Inſtead of candles or lamps, the *Ruſſian* peaſants uſually burn long ſplinters of deal. The apartments look like ſo many chimneys; the fire-hearth, which is in the ſtove mentioned above, having no other vent for the ſmoke but into the room. It is no ſooner dark but the houſes ſwarm with inſects called *Tarakans*, which are a ſpecies of goat-chaffers. The beſt expedient to keep them out, is to burn a light in the room till break of day. The houſes in the villages are contiguous, or built cloſe together, in the ſame manner as they are in the towns.

The peaſants are but vaſſals to the great, and groan under many oppreſſions; but they are ſo far from being dull and ſtupid, that they are remarkably acute and witty, and do not want for natural parts.

The *Ruſſian* Nobility formerly conſiſted ſolely of *Kneſes* or Princes, and Gentlemen. *Bojar* is not a title of Nobility, but anciently denoted a poſt or office, as a privy-councellor, *&c.* *Peter the Great* added the titles of Counts and Barons to the former; and in 1714, ordered that the eſtates of the Nobility ſhould not be divided; and alſo inveſted the proprietors with full power to leave their eſtates to that child or heir whom they ſhould think moſt worthy of the inheritance: However, this law was repealed in the year 1731. The Nobility with regard to unlimited ſubjection to their Sovereign are on a level with the reſt of the people; neither does their rank entitle them to high poſts in the ſtate; but they are promoted only according to their merit.

§. 7. The *Ruſſian* language, it is true, derives its origin from the *Sclavonian*; but it differs greatly from the latter at preſent, and with regard to religious ſubjects, is enriched with a great number of *Greek* words. The Alphabet conſiſts of forty-two letters; and moſt of them are *Greek* characters, as they were written in the ninth century. But as the latter did not expreſs every particular ſound in the *Sclavonian* language, recourſe was had to ſeveral *Hebrew* letters, and ſome arbitrary ſigns. There are various dialects uſed in the different parts of the *Ruſſian* Empire, namely, the *Moſcovite*, the *Novogrodian*, the *Ukrainian*, and that of *Archangel*. The *Siberian* dialect is much the ſame with the laſt.

§. 8. The *Ruſſians* profeſs the religion of the *Greek* church, which was firſt embraced by the Great Dutcheſs *Olga* in the year of Chriſt 955, and afterwards by her grandſon the Great Duke * *Wladimir* in 988, whoſe example was followed by his ſubjects. That the Goſpel was firſt preached to the *Ruſſians* by St. *Andrew* is, but an uncertain conjecture. Inſtead of entering into a detail of the doctrine of the *Ruſſian* church, I ſhall only give an account of the ceremonies, or external part of their religion. Their private devotion conſiſts in faſting and prayer; and in the number and ſeverity of their Faſts they far exceed the Papiſts. Their uſual weekly Faſts are *Wedneſdays* and *Fridays*. In Lent they neither eat fleſh, milk, eggs, nor butter; but confine themſelves to vegetables, bread, and fiſh fried in oil. The *Butter-week*, as it is called, when eating of fleſh is forbidden and butter is allowed, is the week immediately preceding the great Faſt of Lent; and the latter is regulated by the moveable feaſt of *Eaſter*, and laſts till that feſtival.

St. *Peter*'s Faſt, as it is called, always begins the firſt *Monday* after *Whitſunday*, and laſts ſometimes ſix weeks, and ſometimes but eight days, as *Eaſter* happens to fall out early or late.

The Faſt of the bleſſed Virgin begins annually on the firſt day of *Auguſt*, and continues to the fifteenth of the ſame month.

St. *Philip*'s Faſt is likewiſe immoveable; for it begins on the fifteenth of *November*, and laſts till the twenty-fifth of *December*.

The eighth week before *Eaſter*, which, as I obſerved above, is called the *Butter-week*, may be looked upon as the *Ruſſian* Carnival, and is ſpent in all kinds of entertainments and licentiouſneſs. Among the diverſions exhibited during the carnival, one of the moſt ſingular is that of riding in ſledges down a ſteep declivity of twenty ells in height, which is made with boards, and covered with ice by throwing water to freeze on it. At this time of public diverſions their ſlender diet is made up with the liberal uſe of ſpirits or brandy; and on *Eaſter*-day moſt of them eat to ſuch exceſs, as to throw themſelves into a fit of ſickneſs by overcharging their ſtomachs. On that joyful feſtival the *Ruſſians* kiſs one another in the moſt friendly manner, preſenting an egg coloured over, or ſometimes curiouſly painted,

* The *Ruſſian* Sovereigns were formerly ſtiled Great Dukes, and even ſo late as the ſixteenth century; as appears by public inſtruments &c.

with

with the following ſalutation, 'Chriſt is riſen,' to which the anſwer is 'He is riſen indeed *.'

The *Ruſſians* in their private devotions kneel before a picture of our Saviour, the Virgin *Mary*, St. *Nicholas* or ſome other ſaint; which is an indiſpenſible piece of furniture in their cloſet. To this they bow ſeveral times, making the ſign of the croſs with their thumb, fore-finger, and third finger on the breaſt, fore-head, and ſhoulders; at the ſame time repeating, in a low voice, the Lord's Prayer, and ſome other ſhort ejaculations, particularly the words *Ghoſpodi Pomilui*, i. e. 'Lord be merciful to me.' They ſeldom paſs by a church but they utter theſe words, bowing and croſſing themſelves, without paying regard to any perſon who may happen to be preſent. They alſo look towards a church when they are at a diſtance from it, and practiſe the ſame bowings and croſſings as above. Many, and even ſome perſons of diſtinction, by way of penance, or from other motives of humiliation, proſtrate themſelves on their faces at the entrance of the churches; and thoſe who are conſcious of having contracted any impurity, forbear going into the church, but ſtand at the door. The church bells are often rung; and as ringing is accounted a branch of devotion, the towns are provided with a vaſt number of bells, which make, as it were, a continual chiming.

Their Divine Service, which is all performed in the *Sclavonian* language, conſiſts of abundance of trifling ceremonies, long maſſes, ſinging, and prayers; all which are performed by the prieſts, the congregation in the mean time ſaying *Ghoſpodi Pomilui*. A lecture from one of the ancient Fathers is ſometimes added. Sermons are delivered but in few churches; and there they preach but very ſeldom. There are neither ſeats nor forms in the *Ruſſian* churches; but the whole congregation perform their devotions ſtanding. On feſtival days the Clergy appear in very rich veſtments, not unlike thoſe of the Levitical prieſts deſcribed in the Old Teſtament. But the common people can reap little benefit from the public worſhip; as the ſervice is performed in the *Sclavonian* Tongue †. The Word of God is but little known among them; for it is not yet tranſlated into their language; and even a *Sclavonian* Bible coſts at leaſt between twenty-five and thirty *Rubels* (*a*). The *Ruſſians* never ſing hymns, nor keep any hymn-books in their houſes; and none but the choriſters ſing pſalms in the churches; that office

* This is agreeable to the cuſtom of the primitive Chriſtians, whoſe ſalutation, when they met each other on *Eaſter-day* was Ἀνέστ ὁ Χριστος, and the reply was Ἀληθως ἀνέστ.

† The *Sclavonian* differs much from the modern *Ruſſian* language; ſee §. 7. of this Introduction. Service is performed in *Greek* at the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador's chapel in *London*, where they uſe the liturgy of St. *Chriſoſtom*.

(*a*) Since I wrote the above, I am informed by Mr. *Muller* that a new edition of the *Sclavonic* Bible was publiſhed by the Holy Synod in 1751 from the *Moſcow* edition of 1663, with annotations, which is ſold for five *Rubels*; but that as yet there is no talk of a Bible in the *Ruſſian* language. He adds that the New Teſtament and Pſalter in the *Sclavonic* language, in quarto, is ſold at a moderate price in *Ruſſia*. [The Authors note.]

being looked upon as their peculiar province, for which they are held in ſome eſteem. As for inſtrumental muſic, it is not allowed in the *Ruſſian* churches. No proper meaſures have as yet been taken here, for the inſtruction of young people among the vulgar in the principles of religion.

The *Ruſſian* ſeparatiſts are, by way of contempt, termed *Roſkolniki* or *Roſkolſhtſhicken*, i. e. ſchiſmatics; but they call themſelves *Starowierzi*, or 'ancient believers.' Their chief peculiarities conſiſt in having their own books, on which they ground their doctrines. From the authority of theſe books they make the uſual ſign of the croſs only with the fore and middle finger, like the clergy of the orthodox *Ruſſians* when they give the benediction; and conſequently they differ in this point from the *Ruſſians* of the national church, who make it with the thumb and the fore and middle fingers. They alſo let their beards grow to their full length, though this is a privilege which they procure at an extravagant rate. They totally abſtain from ſpirituous liquors; never go into a *Ruſſian* church; and will neither eat nor drink out of any veſſel which has been uſed by an orthodox *Ruſſian*. This ſect is not very numerous in *Ruſſia* properly ſo called; but it has ſpread over all *Siberia*, and prevails very much among the inhabitants of *Tomſk* and *Tara*.

The inhabitants of the provinces conquered from *Sweden* profeſs *Lutheraniſm*; and the Proteſtants of whom there are great numbers among the *Ruſſians*, as alſo the Papiſts, enjoy a full liberty of conſcience, and the public exerciſe of their religion; ſo that they have churches and prieſts or miniſters at *Peterſburg*, *Cronſtadt*, *Moſcow*, *Archangel*, and *Aſtracan*: but the Papiſts have no longer the privilege of hanging up bells in their churches. The *Armenians* have their public places of worſhip only at *Aſtracan*. The *Jeſuits* and *Jews* have been baniſhed from this country; but it is thought there are a great many ſtill remaining, who ſecretly adhere to *Judaiſm*.

A conſiderable number of the *Ruſſian* ſubjects profeſs the *Mahometan* religion; and greater numbers are ſtill Pagans. In order to promote their converſion, the Synod has inſtituted a peculiar ſociety for propagating Chriſtian knowledge, called *Collegium de propaganda fide*; and we are informed by the public papers, that many thouſands of them have been converted to Chriſtianity. But it too plainly appears from M. *Gmelen*'s journey through *Siberia* [Vol. I. p. 257, 334, 335, *&c.*] that great conſtraint and violence have been uſed to bring them over; and that the people, moſt of whom are baptized againſt their will, have but a very imperfect and contemptible idea of the Chriſtian religion. But as this was alſo the caſe in the firſt converſion of the *Saxons* and other nations; which yet in time contributed to the introduction of greater improvements in knowledge and morality; we may hope for the like happy conſequences from the converſion of the *Ruſſians*.

Beſides the great feſtivals ordained by the *Ruſſian* church, there are alſo, every year, ſome holy-days appointed by the civil power, when all public buſineſs and trades are ſuſpended with greater ſtrictneſs than even during the former. Such are the anniverſary of the Birth, Inauguration, and Coronation of the preſent Empreſs *Elizabeth*, and of the ſaint's day whoſe name ſhe bears, and likewiſe the feſtival of the birth and name day of the Great Duke and his conſort the Great Dutcheſs; that of St. *Alexander Neuſki*, which is kept on the thirtieth of *Auguſt*; and the anniverſary of the battle of *Pultawa*, which is commemorated on the twenty-ſeventh day of *June*.

There are great numbers of convents for the religious of both ſexes in the *Ruſſian* Empire. But *Peter* I. very prudently ordered, that no man ſhould be permittted to enter on a monaſtic life before he is thirty years of age; and that no woman ſhould take the veil under fifty, and then not without the expreſs approbation and licence of the Holy Synod. The Abbot or head of an abbey is here called *Archimandrite*, and the prior of a convent *Igumen*. An Abbeſs or head of a nunnery is entitled *Igumenia*. Deacons, Popes * or prieſts, and Protopopes † are exceeding numerous in *Ruſſia*. Every large village in this country has a church and a prieſt to officiate in it; and in the towns almoſt every ſtreet has its church, *&c.* It is remarkable that all the old churches in *Ruſſia* have a creſcent, or half moon, under the croſs erected on the tops of the towers, *&c.* The *Ruſſian* Biſhops and Archbiſhops are called *Archiierèi*. The *Metropolitans*, who are only two, *viz.* one at *Kiow* and the other at *Tobolſk*, differ from the Biſhops only as to the title. In ancient times the Primate or ſupreme Biſhop of the *Ruſſian* church was a ſuffragan to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; but the Czaar *Feodor Iwanowitz* appointed a *Ruſſian* Patriarch to preſide over the church. As theſe Patriarchs gradually aſſumed an exorbitant power, which was dangerous even to the Czaars themſelves, *Peter* I. on the death of the laſt Patriarch in 1701, ſuppreſſed that dignity, and declared himſelf Head of the church of *Ruſſia*; but it is not true that he ever officiated in that character. In the year 1719, the ſame Prince inſtituted a Council, which has the direction of eccleſiaſtical affairs, and is ſtiled *The moſt Holy Synod:* ſince the year 1750, the Archbiſhop of *Moſcow* has been preſident of the Synod. Subordinate to this council are: 1. The *Oeconomie*, as it is called, which has the management of all the eccleſiaſtical lands and revenues. 2. The *Roskolniki-Pricaſe*, which has power to execute the regulations made concerning the above-mentioned Separatiſts, called *Roſkolniki*; and levies the money or tax impoſed on them for being permitted to let their beards grow. Under the preſent government, the Holy Synod is held in great veneration. All the eccleſiaſtics are permitted to wear their beards and their own lank hair.

* They are called Papa's by other authors.

† *Protopopes* are ſuch prieſts as belong to the cathedrals and principal churches.

Their dreſs is a ſort of long cloke; and on their head they wear a high ſtiffened black cap from which a piece of the ſame ſtuff hangs down on their backs, or a large flapped hat. Secular prieſts when they are out of the church generally wear a blue or brown long coat. The clergy are permitted to marry, but it muſt be to a virgin; and on the death of his wife a prieſt is not allowed to marry again, nor to hold his benefice: but has only this alternative, either to betake himſelf into a convent, or be degraded; and if he chooſes the latter, he is at full liberty to marry a ſecond time. Hence it is obſerved that in *Ruſſia*, no wives are better treated than thoſe of the eccleſiaſtics.

In the thirteenth century ſeveral Popes laboured hard to put the Great Dukes of *Ruſſia* out of conceit with their old *Greek* religion, by recommending to them that of *Rome* as preferable to it; but without ſucceſs. The doctors of the *Sorbonne* at *Paris* made the ſame attempt of late years: for at the ſuppreſſion of the Patriarchate by *Peter* I. they endeavoured to perſuade him to bring about an union of the *Ruſſian* church with that of *Rome*; but they were not able to carrry their point.

§. 9. Before the reign of *Peter* I. the ſeveral branches of learning were but little known in *Ruſſia*; but that illuſtrious monarch ſpared neither expence nor trouble, to diſpel the clouds of ignorance in which his ſubjects were involved, and to inſpire them with a taſte for Arts and Sciences. That great Prince founded an Academy of Sciences, an Univerſity, and a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary at *Peterſburg*, beſides other ſchools in the different parts of his Empire; invited ſeveral perſons of diſtinguiſhed learning from *Germany*, *France* and *Holland* to ſettle at *Petersburg*; collected a great number of books; and encouraged his ſubjects to travel into thoſe countries where Arts and Sciences were known to flouriſh. Theſe wiſe and laudable meaſures are ſtill continued; and have cultivated many geniuſes among the *Ruſſians*, who have made a conſiderable figure in the republic of letters. Since the time of *Peter the Great*, the Empreſs *Elizabeth* has alſo erected an Univerſity and two Seminaries at *Moſcow*. However, the number of *Ruſſian Literati* is as yet but ſmall: And as there are but three Univerſities in this vaſt Empire, namely, thoſe of *Petersburg*, *Kiow*, and *Moſcow*, learning may be ſaid as yet to be only in its infancy in *Ruſſia*. Hence it may be eaſily conceived why the Arts and Sciences have not made ſo great a progreſs in this country as in many other *European* States and Monarchies. We muſt not judge of the ſtate of learning in the whole Empire from the preſent appearances at *Petersburg*, any more than from that of the foreign geniuſes invited thither from all parts of *Europe*. The *Ruſſians* are far from wanting talents and a diſpoſition for learning. The ſtudies to which they chiefly apply themſelves are Hiſtory, Genealogies, and the Mathematics; but they make a great myſtery of the deſcription and hiſtory of their own country.

The

The members of the Academy of Sciences at *Petersburg* not only publiſh collections of their own memoirs; but compoſe a variety of books for inſtruction of youth in the Sciences, beſides tranſlations of the moſt uſeful books publiſhed in foreign countries. All mechanic arts and trades are continually improving in *Ruſſia*; and thoſe improvements are not entirely owing to foreigners who reſide there; but even the natives are ſpurred on by emulation to equal, and ſometimes exceed their maſters.

§. 10. Formerly the *Ruſſians* were wholly employed in agriculture, feeding of cattle, hunting, and fiſhing. What they moſtly excelled in was making *Yuchte*, or *Ruſſia*-leather, which had been a ſecret of a long ſtanding among them; but they were entirely unacquainted with the more ingenious mechanic trades. Great numbers of excellent artificers having been invited to *Petersburg* by *Peter the Great*, the *Ruſſians* ſhewed that, with proper inſtructions, they did not want a capacity for all kind of handicraft trades; for they have now flouriſhing manufactures of velvet, ſilk, woollen ſtuffs, and linen; alſo copper, braſs, iron, ſteel, and tin are wrought; and great guns, fire-arms, wire, cordage and ſail-cloth, paper, parchment, glaſs, gun-powder, *&c.* are made in *Ruſſia*. Theſe manufactures, however, are not brought to ſuch perfection as to be carried on without foreign hands, and additional ſupplies of thoſe commodities from abroad. What is wrought by *Ruſſian* workmen is ſold for one half, or a third part leſs than what is made by foreigners at *Petersburg* and *Moſcow*; but the former does but half or a third part of the ſervice of the latter. Ship-building, in particular, is carried to great perfection in *Ruſſia*. As for the *Ruſſian* peaſants they are their own artiſts, and make every utenſil, *&c.* that they have occaſion for.

§. 11. *Ruſſia* affords a variety of commodities which are of great uſe to foreigners; and as the exports of this country greatly exceed its imports, there is a conſiderable annual balance of trade in its favour. The *Ruſſian* home commodities are ſables, and black furrs, the ſkins of blue and white foxes, ermines, hyenas, linxes, ſquirrels, bears, panthers, wolves, martens, wild cats, white hares, *&c.* Likewiſe *Ruſſia*-leather, copper, iron, a tranſparent foſſile called *Marienglas* or *Muſcovy*-glaſs, tallow, vax, honey, pot-aſh, tar, linſeed-oil, roſin, pitch, train-oil, caviar, ſalt-fiſh, caſtor, iſing-glaſs, hemp, flax, thread, *Ruſſia*-linen, ſail-cloth, callimanco, matting, *Siberian* muſk, *mamonts* teeth and bones, as they are called, ſoap, feathers, hogs briſtles, timber, *&c.* To theſe commodities may be added the *Chineſe* goods as rhubarb and other drugs, ſilks, *&c.* with which the *Ruſſians* partly furniſh the other countries of *Europe*. Furrs are ſo far from being cheap at *Petersburg*, that they may be bought for the ſame price at *Dantzic*, *Hamburg*, and *Leipſic*, and ſometimes even cheaper; for, to omit other cauſes, incredible quantities are clandeſtinely carried out of the country without paying any duty, which occaſions the difference in the price. A farther account of furrs will be given in the deſcription of *Siberia*.

The

The red and black *Iuchte* or *Ruſſia*-leather for colour, ſmell, and ſoftneſs cannot be equalled in any other part of the world; and the beſt ſort is dreſſed at *Iaroſlaw*, *Caſtrom*, and *Pleskow*. One may judge of the genuineneſs of the *Ruſſia*-leather not only by the colour, and ſoftneſs, but alſo its fuming and ſmelling like burnt leather when rubbed hard. The word *Iuchte* ſignifies a pair, two ſkins being always put together.

The quantity of bar and other unwrought iron annually exported from *Ruſſia* amounts, one year with another, to 300,000 *Puds* *; and the *Ruſſian* iron is little inferior, if at all, to that of *Sweden*.

No greater quantity of Rhubarb is exported from hence than what is allowed by the Empreſs, who alſo fixes the price of it.

Caviar or *Caweer* is made of the roes of the fiſh called *Beluga* and the ſturgeon. The beſt is made of the *Beluga* roes, and is of two ſorts; namely, the granulated and preſſed *Caviar*. The former, which is moſt valued, is prepared in autumn and winter, but the latter is made in ſummer; and both ſorts are exported to the ſouthern parts of *Europe*. The granulated ſort is firſt ſalted, and then put in kegs for exportation. *Caviar* is moſt palatable when freſh, and ſpread on bread, with ſalt, leeks, and pepper; but as it ſoon becomes tainted by warmth, it cannot well be exported freſh: The *Ruſſians* in their language call it *Ikra*.

In order to give the reader ſome idea of the yearly exports of *Ruſſia*, I ſhall ſet down the particulars from authentic accounts; according to to which the following commodities are annually exported from *Petersburg* in the quantities ſpecified below.

	Arſhines †.
Callimanco	1,214,000
Linen	4,000,000
Table Ditto	600,000
	Puds
Bees-wax	22,000
Iſing-glaſs	1500
Flax	65,000
Hemp	1,000,000
Tallow	100,000
Ruſſia-leather	200,000
Preſſed Caviar.	20,000
Hogs-briſtles	6500

400,000 Hare-ſkins

70,000 Pieces of Furr, *&c. &c.*

* A *Pud* is about thirty-ſix pounds avoirdupoiſe, or forty *Ruſſian* pounds.

† An *Arſhine* is equal to 28 $\frac{1}{10}$ inches.

The

The goods imported into *Ruſſia* are ſilks, chints and cotton, cloth and other woollen ſtuffs, fine linen, toys, *French* brandy, wines, herrings and other fiſh, ſpices, hard ware, *&c.* In the year 1749 the value of the goods exported from *Petersburg* amounted to 3,184,322 *Rubels*; and that of the imports to 2,942,242 *Rubels*. Of theſe were exported to *England* to the value of 2,245,573 *Rubels*; and the value of the commodities imported from thence amounted to 1,012,209 *Rubels*.

But to enter more particularly into the ſtate of commerce in the *Ruſſian* Empire; the trade of *Ruſſia* is divided into the land and ſea commerce, or into foreign and domeſtic trade. The land-trade principally conſiſts of,

1. The trade to *China* which, at preſent, is carried on by caravans, and partly by private adventurers. The greateſt in quantity and moſt valuable commodities which the *Ruſſians* carry to *China* are furrs; and in return for theſe they bring back gold, tea, ſilks, cotton, *&c.*

2. The trade with the *Calmucks* which is entirely in private hands, but of no great importance. To theſe people they carry all kinds of iron and copper utenſils; and the returns are made in cattle and proviſions; and, ſometimes, in gold and ſilver.

3. The trade to *Bughar* or *Bochara**, which brings in ready money, or, by bartering of goods, curled lamb-ſkins, *Indian* ſilks, and ſometimes gems; which are brought to the yearly fair at *Samarkand*.

4. The trade to *Perſia* by the way of *Aſtracan* and the *Caſpian* ſea, which is conſiderable; and the returns are made in raw ſilk, and ſilken ſtuffs.

5. The traders in the *Ukeraine* ſell all kinds of proviſions to the *Crim-Tartars*; and alſo trade with the *Greek* merchants at *Conſtantinople*.

6. The inhabitants of *Kiow* trade to *Sileſia* in cattle and *Ruſſia* leather; and, notwithſtanding the ſevereſt prohibitions, great quantities of goods are ſmuggled from the Government of *Smolenſk*, to *Konigsberg* and *Dantzic*.

As to the naval commerce of *Ruſſia*, it owes its origin to the *Hanſe-towns*, which formerly carried on a conſiderable trade with *Revel*, *Novogrod*, and *Pleſkow*. Afterwards, about the middle of the ſixth century, ſome *Engliſh* traders † found the way to *Archangel*.

The *Ruſſians*, at firſt, were ſtrangers to any courſe of exchange, which was not introduced among them till the year 1670; and money was ſo very ſcarce in this country, that foreigners were obliged to barter their goods for thoſe of *Ruſſia*, and even to give the *Ruſſians* money in exchange for their commodities. Moſt of the foreign merchants uſed to reſide at *Moſcow*, and took a journey in ſummer time to *Archangel*, where they had their warehouſes and factors. This practice continued till the year 1721, when,

* *Bochara* is ſituated near the river *Oxus*, and is one of the chief cities of *Usbec Tartary*.

† This was Captain *Chancellor* who ſailed into the *White Sea* and landed at *Archangel* in 1553.

by

by order of *Peter the Great*, the ſeat of commerce was transferred from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*; and the foreign traders accordingly were obliged to remove their factories to the latter. At the ſame time alſo, among other regulations, a Tariff was ſettled; but this was aboliſhed in 1733, and the old *Ruſſian* Rubels reſtored; and to this day the cuſtoms and duties are computed by that coin. The old *Rubel*, before the preſent century, was no more than an imaginary piece, containing a hundred ſilver *Copeiks* of thoſe times, which, however, were as large and heavy as thoſe coined ſince. Fifty ſuch *Copeiks* were valued at one ſpecie or *Holland* Rix-dollar *; and a hundred of thoſe *Rubels* weighed fourteen pounds of fine ſilver †. They ſtill compute by *Rubels* of this value in commercial affairs: but the duty for all merchandiſes imported and exported is paid in *Alberts* or new *Holland* Rix-dollars, and not in *Ruſſian* money. Fourteen ſuch Rix-dollars are valued at a pound weight of fine ſilver, which muſt be paid either in coin or bullion. Foreign merchants are not allowed to keep the goods conſigned to them in their own warehouſes; but are obliged to depoſit them in magazines built by the Government for that purpoſe; and pay rent for warehouſe room in proportion to the quantity of goods they are poſſeſſed of.

The merchants and traders at *Petersburg* conſiſt of natives and foreigners. The former may ſell by wholeſale or retail; but the latter by wholeſale only, and that to none but the natives: for foreigners are not permitted to ſell any thing to one another, nor to have any commercial dealings together in *Ruſſia*. Moſt of the foreign traders at *Petersburg* are only factors; the reſt, who trade on their own bottoms, deal moſtly in toys and grocery. The factors are intruſted with very large capitals, and may, without engaging in any commerce for themſelves, raiſe handſome fortunes. The native *Ruſſian* traders who bring goods from ſeveral places to *Peterſburg*, and carry foreign commodities farther into the continent, do not reſide at *Petersburg*, but in ſeveral parts of *Ruſſia*. In *May* or *June* they bring their goods thither annually by water; and in the months of *September*, *October*, and *December*, after they have diſpoſed of their own goods, they return with foreign commodities to their reſpective homes. The wealthieſt among theſe traders ſave themſelves the fatigue of travelling, by ſending their factors to *Petersburg*. All foreign merchandiſes are generally ſold at a twelvemonth's credit: But the *Ruſſian* commodities muſt be paid for at the delivery of the goods, unleſs the natives find a difficulty in ſelling their ſtock; and in this caſe they deal by way of exchange. However, they will not barter goods for goods, but commonly inſiſt on one fourth, one third, or one half of the value of the whole in ſpecie. Of late foreign

* A *Holland* Rix-dollar is equal to 4*s*. 4*d*. $\frac{1}{2}$ ſterling money.

† The Author does not tell us whether he means a pound *Troy* weight, *&c.*

merchants

merchants deal for the *Ruſſian* commodities by contract, and even advance the money to the *Ruſſians* in winter upon condition that they deliver in the goods, at a ſettled price, in the enſuing ſummer; and, for the greater ſecurity, theſe contracts are entered in the Cuſtom-houſe books. To this unreaſonable partiality in favour of the natives, to the prejudice of the foreign traders, the large credit given by the latter to the former, and ſometimes the miſconduct of the factors, may be chiefly imputed the great loſſes ſuſtained by foreign merchants in *Ruſſia*, which amount to ſome millions of *Rubels* ſince the removal of the ſeat of trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*; ſo that the remarkable increaſe of foreign commerce amidſt ſuch enormous loſſes in trade, one year after another, has ſomething in it very ſurpriſing. But it is alſo evident that the commerce of *Petersburg* is now arrived at its higheſt pitch. In the year 1744, the number of ſhips which came into the port of *Petersburg* from *England*, *Holland*, *France*, *Norway*, *Denmark*, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Stetin*, *Roſtoc*, *Kiel*, *Pruſſia*, *Sweden*, *Dantzic*, &c. amounted to two hundred and ſixty-four; and in the following year only to one hundred and ninety-five: But in 1750, the number increaſed to two hundred and ſeventy-two; and in 1751, to two hundred and ninety.

The *Engliſh* enjoyed here conſiderable privileges in trade ſo early as the reign of the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz* *, which were renewed by *Peter the Great*, who gave them great encouragements; however, that Monarch permitted them to ſend their goods only to *Moſcow*. In 1752, a treaty of commerce was concluded betwixt *Ruſſia* and *England*, by which it was ſtipulated that the *Engliſh* ſhould be allowed the privilege of ſending goods through *Ruſſia* into *Perſia*; but Captain *Elton* an *Engliſhman*, having entered into the ſervice of *Schach Nadir* in 1746, and built ſhips on the *Caſpian* ſea for that Monarch, the *Ruſſians* put a ſtop to this trade to *Perſia*. The *Engliſh* ſtill have a conſiderable trade with *Ruſſia*, which exceeds that of any other nation.

Next to the *Engliſh* the *Hollanders* carry on the greateſt trade with the *Ruſſians*. Bills of exchange are drawn at *Petersburg* on *Amſterdam* only; ſo that the traders of other countries, who give commiſſion for buying *Ruſſian* commodities at *Petersburg*, are obliged to procure credit, or to have proper funds at *Amſterdam*.

Such foreigners as ſettle at *Petersburg*, without actual commiſſions and a ſufficient credit in exchanges, run a great riſk of becoming bankrupts, of which there are too many inſtances. There is not a nation in the world more inclined to commerce than the *Ruſſians*; but they are ſo full of chicanery and fineſſe, that a foreigner cannnot be too much on his guard in his dealings with them.

* Captain *Chancellor* delivered a Letter to this Emperor from *Edward* VI. in 1553, and received a favourable anſwer, with licence to trade, *&c.*

§. 12. The ſeveral ſorts of weights peculiar to *Ruſſia* are,

A *Solothnick*, which is the $\frac{1}{6}$ of an ounce, and is divided into halves, quarters, and eighths.

A *Ruſſian* pound, which is equal to ninety-ſix *Solothnicks*.

A *Pud* or *Pood*, which is forty pounds *.

A *Berkowetz*, which is equal to ten *Puds*. The other weights are the ſame with thoſe of *Germany*. Their meaſures of length are,

The *Arſhine*, or *Ruſſian* ell, which is equal to twenty-eight inches and $\frac{1}{16}$ *Engliſh* meaſure.

A *Werſock*, which is the $\frac{1}{16}$ of an *Arſchine*.

A *Saſhen*, or fathom, contains three *Arſchines*.

§. 13. All *Ruſſian* coins, the ducats excepted, have inſcriptions in the *Ruſſian* language. The gold coins are Imperial ducats; and the largeſt ſilver coin is the *Rubel*, the value of which riſes and falls according to the courſe of exchange. In *Ruſſia* a *Rubel* is always equal to one hundred *Copeiks* †. The other ſilver coins are,

Half-Rubels, which are called *Poltinnik*, and Quarter-Rubles.

A *Gryphe* or *Griwe* is ten *Copeiks*, and ten *Griwes* are equal to a *Rubel*.

An *Altine*, which is qual to three *Copeiks*; but theſe pieces, and the ſmall unſtampt ſilver *Copeiks* are no longer current in *Ruſſia*. Indeed neither the ſilver nor copper *Copeiks* are at preſent in common uſe. The copper coins are

A *Copeik* ‡.

A *Denga*, or diminutively, *Denuſhka*, two of which make a *Copeik*.

A *Poluſhka*, which is $\frac{1}{4}$ of a *Copeik*.

The only foreign pieces current in *Ruſſia* are ducats, *Holland* rix-dollars, and *Albert*-dollars.

Beſides the *Ruſſian* coins, the following are alſo current in *Livonia*. A white *Schelling*, which is worth two black *Schellings*. Three of the former make one *Groſch* ||.

A *Farding* which is one *Groſch* and a half.

A *Riga Mark*, which is ſix *Groſchen*.

A *Poliſh* guilder which is five *Riga* marks.

A *Kopa-Schock* or *Lowenthaler* which is equal to twenty-five *Groſchen*.

A *Rix-dollar*, is valued at ſixty *Fardings*.

§. 14. The ancient *Ruſſian* hiſtory is ſtill involved in darkneſs and obſcurity; however it might be conſiderably cleared up if the *Ruſſians* were

* A *Pud* is equal to thirty-ſix pounds *Engliſh* weight; ſo that the Author's pound is $\frac{1}{16}$ leſs than a pound *Avoirdupoiſe*.

† Or four ſhillings and ſix-pence ſterling.

‡ A *Copeik* is $\frac{27}{30}$ of a penny ſterling.

|| A *Groſh* is $\frac{7}{15}$ of a penny *Engliſh* money.

more

more communicative of the accounts of their own country*. The moſt ancient *Ruſſian* chronologer, whoſe works are now extant in manuſcript, is *Neſtor*, who was Abbot of the convent of *Petſchow* at *Kiow*, and lived in the beginning of the twelfth century. He begins his *Annals* from the arrival of the *Waregers* into *Ruſſia*; and theſe chronicles have been continued down to the year 1206 by an anonymous Writer. Profeſſor *Muller* of *Petersburg*, who muſt be allowed to be better acquainted with the *Ruſſian* hiſtory than any living Author, has in the firſt Volume of his *Sammlung Ruſſiſcher Geſchichte* or 'A Collection of *Ruſſian* hiſtorical Tracts,' given us an abridgement of this *Ruſſian* manuſcript in *High-Dutch*, with notes wherein he corrects, in ſome places, the errors of the Author, to whom he gives the name of *Theodoſius*.

It is certain that the *Ruſſians* are coloniſts in the country which they now inhabit. The *Aborigines* or ancient inhabitants not only in *Ruſſia*, but all over *Siberia*, even as far as the borders of *China*, are called *Tſhudi*; for the abovementioned Profeſſor *Muller*, upon enquiring by whom the ancient buildings and ſepulchral monuments were erected? and whether they were the work of the *Ruſſians?* was every where anſwered by the inhabitants That thoſe monuments, *&c.* were ſet up by the *Tſhudi*, who, in ancient times, had lived in that country. But the *Tſhudi*, who, as the *Ruſſian* hiſtory informs us, inhabited the north part of *Ruſſia* antecedently to the preſent poſſeſſors, are properly the *Finns*, *Carelians*, and *Finnean Eſthlanders:* For the adjective *Tſhudſki* is ſtill retained in the *Ruſſian* language, as in *Tſhudſkoi-Oſero*, which is the name they give to the *Peipus*-lake, and *Tſchudſkoi-Iaſick*, i. e. the *Finnean* or *Eſthonian* language.

The nation from which the *Ruſſians* derive their origin were the *Slavians* or *Sclavonians*, who firſt ſettled along the banks of the *Wolga*, and afterwards, near the *Danube* in the countries now called *Bulgaria* and *Hungary*. But, according to the account of the *Ruſſian* hiſtorians, being driven from thence by the *Wolochers* or *Wolotaners*, i. e. the *Romans*, they firſt removed to the river *Boryſthenes* or *Dnieper*; over-run all *Poland*; and, as it is ſaid, built the city of *Kiow*. Afterwards they extended their colonies farther north to the rivers which run into the *Ilmen*-lake; confined the *Finns* within narrower limits; and laid the foundation of the city of *Novogrod*. The towns of *Smolenſk* and *Tſhernikow* appear alſo to have been built by the *Sclavonians*. Indeed the date of theſe events cannot be properly aſcertained.

In the ninth century the *Scandinavians*, who were the *Danes*, *Normans* or *Norwegians*, and *Swedes*, emigrated from the North, and croſſing the *Baltic*, came to ſeek for habitations in *Ruſſia*. They firſt ſubdued the *Courlanders*, *Livonians*, and *Eſthonians*; and extending their conqueſts ſtill

* The *Ruſſians*, it ſeems, make a ſecret of the hiſtory and antiquities of their own country; but it is a wonder ſuch an idle whim ſhould prevail amongſt them, ſince arts and ſciences have been introduced into *Ruſſia*.

farther, they exacted tribute from the *Novogrodians*, and settled Kings over them; and traded as far as *Kiow*, and even to *Greece*. They were called *Wareger*, which name according to M. *Muller* signifies 'sea-faring people,' and probably was first used by the *Scandinavians*, but afterwards by the *Russians*; and with people unacquainted with the northern language, this word came in time to pass for a proper name. Not to mention other etymologies; it may possibly be derived from the old northern word *War*, i. e. war, and be rendered 'warlike' To these *Warregers*, the name of *Russes* or *Russians* as I have observed above [§. 2.] owes its origin. M. *Muller* has cleard up this point in his learned Dissertation *de originibus gentis & nominis Russorum*; but unhappily the publication of that curious work has been prohibited. This loss, however, may in some measure be compensated by the following historical pieces, viz. *T. S.* BAYER *de Varagis* T. IV. *Comment. Acad. Scient. Imp. Petrop.* p. 275. *Erici Jul.* BIOERNER *Sched. Hist. Geograph. de Varegis heroibus Scandianis, & primis Russiæ Dynastis, Stockholmiæ*, 1743. 4to. *Arvid* MOLLERUS *de Varegia*, 1731. *Algot* SCARINUS *de originibus priscæ gentis Varegorum*. The two last treatises are mentioned by *Biœrner*.

It may not be improper to enquire whether these *Waregers* might not possibly have been *Franks*, who emigrated hither from the northern part of *Europe* called *Scandinavia*: For, to this day, the *Asiatics* call the *Europeans Parengi*, i. e. *Franks*. And though the *Waregers*, both in their language, customs, and manner of living differed very much at first from the *Sclavonians*; yet the two nations were by degrees so connected, and blended together, as not to be distinguished in succeeding times. The three *Waregerian* Brothers *Rurik*, *Sineus*, and *Truwor* were elected as chiefs by the *Russians*. The first took up his residence at *Ladoga*, the second at *Bielo-Ozero* or the White-lake, and the third at *Isborsk*. After the decease of the two last, *Rurik* became the sole sovereign. In the year of Christ 955, *Olga*, who was the consort of his son and successor the Great Duke *Igor*, was baptized at *Constantinople*; and in the year 988, *Wladimir*, *Rurik*'s grandson, likewise embraced the Christian religion. According to *Sturleson*'s and *Odden*'s account, *Olga* was *Wladimir*'s wife, and both were converted to Christianity at the same time. The city of *Kiow* was the residence of all the Great Dukes or Sovereigns of *Russia* till the twelfth century.

After the death of *Wladimir*, which happened in the year 1015, his son *Suetopolk* placed himself on his father's throne at *Kiow*; but his tyranical government incited his brother *Iaroslaw* to make war against him, who at last became master of the whole *Russian* Monarchy. In the reign of this Great Duke the Christian religion first gained footing in *Russia*.

Iaroslaw died in the year 1055, and divided his dominions among his twelve sons. The *Tartars*, who lived on plunder, took advantage of the weakness of the brothers on this partition of the *Russian* dominions, by making frequent inroads into their territories. These incursions, with the establishment

eſtabliſhment of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order in *Livonia*, brought the Great Dutchy of *Ruſſia* to the brink of ruin in the beginning of the thirteenth century.

When the State was in the utmoſt danger of being loſt, the brave and wiſe Prince *Alexander*, exerted himſelf againſt his enemies; and by his courage and conduct, partly in his father's life time when he was hereditary Prince, and partly after his death, while he was Great Duke, reſcued his country from the calamities under which it groaned. In the year 1241, he obtained a ſignal victory, near the river *Newa*, over the *Swedes* and the *Teutonic* Knights of *Livonia*, and on that account he was honoured with the ſurname of *Newski*. In 1245, he ſucceeded his father *Iaroſlaw* as Great Duke; and after a glorious and happy reign, ended his days in the year 1263. It is pretended that ſeveral miracles were performed at his grave; inſomuch that the *Ruſſian* church ranked him in the number of her ſaints. *Peter* I. erected a ſtately monaſtery near the *Newa*, to his memory; the *Czarina Catharine* founded the well known order of knighthood called by his name in honour of him; and their daughter *Elizabeth*, the preſent reigning Empreſs, cauſed his remains to be laid in a magnificent ſilver ſhrine placed on a ſuperb monument all plated over with ſilver, in a convent at *Petersburg* which is called after his name.

Daniel Alexandrowitz, *Alexander*'s fourth ſon, was the firſt Great Duke who reſided at *Moſcow*.

Iwan Iwanowitz, grandſon of the preceding Duke, mounted the throne in the year 1353, and was ſurnamed the *Defender of the faith*. At this time *Ruſſia* fell almoſt entirely under the dominion of the *Tartars* and *Poles*.

At laſt, about the cloſe of the fifteenth century, *Iwan Baſilowitz* I. ſhook off the *Tartarian* yoke; ſubdued the petty Princes of *Ruſſia*; and laid the firſt foundation of the preſent grandeur of the *Ruſſian* monarchy.

Baſili Iwanowitz, his ſon and ſucceſſor, was frequently haraſſed by the incurſions of the *Caſan Tartars*, and died in the midſt of thoſe diſturbances.

Iwanowitz was ſucceeded by his ſon *Iwan Baſilowitz* II. This politic, but cruel Prince conquered the two *Tartarian* kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and committed great ravages in *Livonia*; but he was unſucceſsful in his wars againſt *Poland* and *Sweden*. To him *Ruſſia* owes ſeveral great improvements; for he drew great numbers of foreigners into his dominions. In his reign the *Engliſh* diſcovered the way to *Archangel* *; and *Siberia* was annexed to the *Ruſſian* dominions. The rigour and ſeverity

* Captain *Richard Chancellor* was the firſt who diſcovered the bay of St. *Nicholas*, or the *White Sea*, 1553, and ſailed through it to *Archangel*.

this

this Prince exerciſed towards his ſubjects, was, in ſome meaſure, unavoidable, the obſtinacy of their nature requiring compulſion; but he often carried it too far. *Peter* I. proſecuted the great deſigns which were planned by *Iwan Baſilowitz* II. who died in the year 1584.

Feodor or *Theodore Iwanowitz*, ſon to *Iwan Baſilowitz* II. was the laſt Sovereign of this race; and after his deceaſe *Ruſſia* fell into extreme confuſion, being torn to pieces by the factions of the counterfeit *Demetrii*.

In the year 1612 *Michael Feodorowitz* of the houſe of *Romanow* aſcended the throne; and, after he had ſuſtained conſiderable loſſes, reſtored the public tranquility.

His ſon *Alexius Michaelowitz*, took *Smolensk* from the *Poles*, together with a great part of the *Ukraine*. At his death he left three ſons by two wives; the eldeſt of whom, *Feodor*, or *Theodore*, was ſucceſsful in the war againſt the *Turks*.

After this prince's death, his half-brothers *Iwan* and *Peter* reigned jointly together; but after ſeveral diſturbances, *Peter* took the reins of government into his own hands. This illuſtrious Prince, whoſe name will be remembered with honour to lateſt poſterity, added *Livonia*, *Ingermania*, and a part of *Carelia* to his dominions by the peace of *Nyſtadt*. He alſo brought about a wonderful change in the manners of his ſubjects; built the city of *Petersburg*; put trade and manufactures on an excellent footing; eſtabliſhed the right of the *Ruſſian* Czaar to nominate a ſucceſſor; took upon him the title of Emperor, and by his actions juſtly acquired the ſurname of *Great*. He finiſhed his glorious courſe in the year 1725. He had firſt married *Ewdokia* * *Feodorowna* in 1694; but ſhe was divorced by him, and ſent into a convent at *Suſdal*. From thence ſhe was removed to *Ladoga*; and in the year 1725, ſhe was carried as a priſoner to *Schluſſelburg*, were ſhe received very ſevere treatment. But in 1727, when her grandſon mounted the throne of *Ruſſia*, ſhe was ſet at liberty and reſtored to her former dignity; and died in 1731. His ſecond wife was *Catharina Alexeewna*, whom he publickly eſpouſed in 1713, and cauſed to be crowned Empreſs in 1724. She was a perſon of a very mean extraction, but of great natural parts; and ſucceeded him to the Imperial crown of *Ruſſia*.

Upon the demiſe of the Czarina, which happened in 1727, *Peter Alexiewitz*, grandſon to *Peter the Great*, mounted the Imperial throne of *Ruſſia*; but this young Prince was taken of by the ſmall-pox in 1730.

Anne, Dutcheſs dowager of *Courland*, daughter to the Czaar *Iwan* ſucceeded *Peter* II. This Princeſs, by a treaty of peace concluded with *Perſia* in the year 1732, enlarged the *Ruſſian* Empire by an acceſſion of *Dageſtan* and *Schirwan*; but ſhe ſoon after relinquiſhed thoſe provinces. The Czarina *Anne* was ſucceſsful in the war againſt the *Turks* and *Crim-Tartars*; and

* Some authors call this Princeſs *Ottokeſa*.

in

in the year 1740, ſettled the ſucceſſion on her nephew *Iwan*, an infant, who was ſon of the Great Dutcheſs *Anne* and Duke *Antony Ulrick* of *Brunſwick-Wolfenbattle*.

Iwan III. together with his mother who was Regent, was depoſed in 1741; and the moſt Serene and Gracious Princeſs *Elizabeth* †, youngeſt daughter of *Peter the Great*, ſucceeded to the Imperial crown of *Ruſſia*. In the year 1743, the Czarina concluded an advantageous peace with *Sweden* by the treaty of *Abo*; and declared her elder ſiſter *Anne*'s ſon *Charles Peter Ulrick*, Duke of *Holſtein*, after he had embraced the *Greek* religion, Great Duke of *Ruſſia*; who thereupon took the name of *Peter Feodorowitz*.

§. 15. On the fifth of *February* 1722, the Emperor *Peter the Great* publiſhed an Ordinance, by which the ſucceſſion was entirely to depend on the will and pleaſure of the reigning ſovereign; and this is the only written fudamental law with regard to the ſucceſſion in *Ruſſia*. The power of the *Ruſſian* Emperor is abſolute and unlimited.

§. 16. The ancient ſovereigns of *Ruſſia* ſtiled themſelves *Great Dukes*, and afterwards were called *Czaars* *. But *Peter* I. aſſumed the title of Emperor, which was offered him by his ſubjects, and is now acknowledged by all *Europe*. The preſent reigning Princeſs is ſtiled, 'Empreſs and ſole Sovereign of all the *Ruſſias*'. The title of the *Ruſſian* Emperor at full length is as follows. 'N. N. Emperor and ſole Sovereign of all the *Ruſſias*, 'Sovereign Lord of *Moſcow*, *Kiow*, *Wlodimiria*, *Novogrod*; Czaar in *Caſan*, '*Aſtracan*, and *Siberia*; Lord of *Pleskow*; Great Duke of *Smolensko*; 'Duke of *Eſthlonia*, *Livonia*, and *Carelia*; of *Tweria*, *Ingoria*, *Pernia*, '*Wiatkia*, *Bulgaria*, and Lord of ſeveral other territories; Great Duke of '*Novogrod* in the low country, *Tſchernickow*, *Reſan*, *Roſtow*, *Iaroſlaw*, '*Bielo-ſero*, *Uldoria*, *Obdoria*, *Condinia*; Emperor of all the Northern 'Parts; Lord of the territory of *Jweria*; of the *Carthalinian*, *Greuzinian* 'and *Georgean* Czaars; of the *Kabardinian*, *Circaſian* and *Gorian* 'Princes; and Lord and ſupreme Ruler of many other countries and 'territories.'

§. 17. The arms of *Ruſſia* ſince the reign of *Iwan Baſilowitz* are, *Or*, an eagle diſplayed *Sable*, holding a golden ſcepter and *monde* in its talons. Over the head of the eagle are three crowns, and on its breaſt it bears a ſhield with the arms of *Moſcow* in the center, ſurrounded with ſix others, namely, thoſe of *Aſtracan*, *Siberia*, *Kaſan*, *Kiew*, and *Wlodimiria*. The *Ruſſian* Empire ever ſince the time of *Iwan Baſilowitz* I. has been an undivided inheritance; but the female line is not excluded from the ſucceſſion.

† This Princeſs now ſits on the Throne of *Ruſſia*.

* This title ſeems to be a contraction of the word *Cæſar*, or *Kaiſer* as the *German* Emperor is ſtiled.

§. 18. The

§. 18. The ſplendor and magnificence of the *Ruſſian* Court is augmented by three orders of knighthood, which are as follows.

The firſt and moſt honourable is that of St. *Andrew*, or the *blue ribbon*, inſtituted by *Peter the Great* in 1698, in honour of St. *Andrew* the patron of *Ruſſia*; and the Empreſs *Catharine* gave the ſtatutes, and aſſigned proper habits for this order. It has its enſigns, motto, and collar.

The ſecond is the order of St. *Alexander Newski* or the *red ribbon*, which was indeed inſtituted by *Peter* I. but the Czarina *Catharine* firſt conferred it in the year 1725. This order has alſo its badge and motto.

Beſides theſe two there is a female Order in *Ruſſia*, which *Peter the Great* founded in 1714 in honour of his conſort *Catharine*; and from her name he called it the order of St. *Catharine*.

The Colleges, and Chanceries, or offices, which have the direction of the affairs of the *Ruſſian* Empire, are as follows.

1. The Senate, or Directing Council, is the ſupreme Court of Judicature, to which all proceſſes are brought by appeal as the laſt reſort. The Senate takes care of all domeſtic affairs, receives accounts from all the Colleges excepting the Holy Synod, and iſſues out orders to them all accordingly. In the reign of the Empreſs *Catharine* the honourable Privy Council uſed to ſend orders to the Senate; but in that of the Empreſs *Anne* ſuch orders were iſſued only by the Cabinet Council, which conſiſted of two miniſters of ſtate. During the minority of the Emperor *Iwan* III. and the regency of the Great Dutcheſs *Anne*, Field-Marſhal Count *Munich* was declared Prime Miniſter, Count *Oſtermann* High Admiral, the Knees *Tſherkaskoy* Great Chancelor, and Count *Gollowkin* Vice-Chancelor of the *Ruſſian* Empire. The preſent Empreſs *Elizabeth* has entirely aboliſhed the Cabinet Council, and by a manifeſto of the twelfth of *December* 1741 reſtored to the Senate the ſame power which it had in the time of *Peter the Great*. According to this ordinance, the poſts of General Procurator and Supreme Procurator are again eſtabliſhed in the Senate, and other Procurators are appointed in the reſpective Governments. As for the direction of foreign affairs relating to the Empire, a particular account will be given of that department in N° 5.

2. The Holy Synod or Eccleſiaſtical Council. Of this an account has already been given in §. 8.

3. The War-College has the care of recruiting and exerciſing the whole *Ruſſian* army, except the guards which are immediately under the direction of the Empreſs. This office alſo receives the taxes appointed for the maintenance of the troops, and nominates the officers even as high as the lieutenant-colonels. Under the War-College are, 1. The Office of the General Commiſſary at war. 2. The Office of Ordnance. 3. That of the under Commiſſary at war. 4. The Military Cheſt. 5. The Office for clothing the army. 6. The Victualling Office. 7. The Accomptant's Office. The Military College has alſo a particular office at *Moſcow*.

4. The Admiralty College manages all naval concerns without exception; and ſuch foreſts as lie near navigable rivers are under the inſpection of this college. Subordinate to it are, 1. The Office of the General Commiſſary at war; which pays the navy, has the care of victualling the fleet, and has the keeping of the monies aſſigned for thoſe ſervices. 2. The Store Office, which has the direction of the magazines, and every thing belonging to the equipment of ſhips of war. 3. The Office which directs the conſtruction of ſhips, provides neceſſary materials for that purpoſe, and has alſo the inſpection of the foreſts. 4. The Artillery office. The Admiralty has alſo inferior offices at *Kronſtadt*, *Archangel*, *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, *Woronetz* and *Tawrow* on the river *Don*.

5. The College for Foreign Affairs pays the ſalaries of the *Ruſſian* miniſters at foreign courts, penſions, and expences of foreign envoys, which are always defrayed. This College alſo makes out paſs-ports, and decides any difficulties or diſputes relating to foreign miniſters, which happen from time to time. The members of this college are, the Chancellor of the Empire and Vice-Chancellor, who upon any momentous affairs are aſſiſted by ſome of the Counſellors of State. This college has an inferior office at *Moſcow* for receiving and remitting the public money.

6. The College of Juſtice at *Moſcow*. Under this is the *Sudnoy Pricas*, ſome of the members of which conſtitute a College of Juſtice at *Petersburg*, which determines ſuits brought thither by appeal from the conquered provinces, and has likewiſe a conſiſtorical juriſdiction over the Proteſtants and Papiſts in that city; but on this occaſion the miniſter of the church to which the plaintiff belongs is ſummoned to attend. The *Ruſſians* have their particular *Code* or law-book called *Sobornoe Uloſhenie*, i. e. an 'uniform and univerſal law,' which *Alexius Michalowitz* publiſhed in 1649, and the ſucceeding Czaars enlarged by new edicts. The proceſs is ſummary and ſhort, and the puniſhment inflicted by the *Ruſſian* law very ſevere; but it was formerly much more rigorous. The *Battogen*, *Katze*, and *Knute* are infamous puniſhments.

7. The *Wotſhinoy College*, or Feudal Chancery is held at *Moscow*, and has the care of every thing relating to the eſtates of private perſons, and their boundaries or limits.

8. The College of the Treaſury has the direction of levying all the public revenues, except the poll-tax and the produce of the ſalt-works. The office which has the care of the monies ariſing from the conquered provinces is at preſent held at *Peterſburg*; but all the other departments belonging to the treaſury are at *Moſcow*.

9. The State Office iſſues out the public money, and gives the neceſſary directions to the Chamber of accompts; accordingly the revenue chambers at *Petersburg* and *Moſcow* are dependent on this Office.

10. The Reviſion College is a ſort of a check on other colleges, and receives their accompts in order to examine them.

11. The colleges for trade, mines and manufactures are diſtinct offices; and beſides the departments from which they take their names, have alſo the management of the naval cuſtoms or tolls, and decide all commercial diſputes between merchants and traders.

12. The *Confiſcation-Chancery*, directs the ſale of all forfeited eſtates, *&c.* and the levying of all fines impoſed by the other colleges.

13. The Salt-Office has the direction of the revenues ariſing from the ſalt-works, which are appropriated for the Empreſs's privy purſe.

After theſe we muſt take notice of the *Government*, as it is called; the Academy-Chancery; the Privy-Chancery which takes cognizance of all hoſpitals, diſpenſaries, medicines, *&c.* and the College of the Magiſtracy, to which all the magiſtrates throughout the Empire are accountable for their conduct.

§. 20. The revenues of the Empire are variouſly computed. The author of the *Anmerkungen uber die Moſcowitiſchen Briefe*, or 'Obſervations on the '*Muſcovite* Letters', pretends that they amount to ſixty millions of *Rubels* *; but this certainly is exaggerating beyond the truth. Some compute them at twenty millions of *Rubels*, which is ſtill beyond the mark; others on the contrary, reckon them to be but eight millions, and this is ſomething ſhort of it; others again ſuppoſe them to be fifteen millions of *Rubels*, but this, probably, is no more than an arbitrary conjecture. By virtue of an Imperial *Ukaſe* or edict iſſued in *December* 1752, the revenues and number of troops under the reign of the preſent Empreſs *Elizabeth* were augmented near a fifth part. But it is in general to be remarked, 1. That the Imperial revenues are not proportionate to the vaſt extent of the *Ruſſian* dominions. 2. That they do not all conſiſt of ready money; the country in many places furniſhing recruits for the army in lieu of it, and moſt of the inhabitants of *Siberia* paying their tribute in furrs. 3. That, notwithſtanding all this, the revenues are equal to the exigencies of the State. I have now before me an authentic account of the Empreſs's whole revenues, according to which they amount to about ten millions of *Rubels*. They ariſe from the following funds.

1. From the annual capitation or Poll-tax, to which the vaſſals of Noblemen pay ſeventy *Copeiks*, the burghers 120 *Copeiks*; the *Tartars*, the *Tſcheremiſſes* and other nations in the territory of *Caſan*, together with the vaſſals of the Kan, 110 *Copeiks* a head. This tax amounts to five millions; but as it is not duly paid by a great number, the arrears remaining every year are very conſiderable. At the cloſe of the year 1752, the gracious Empreſs *Elizabeth*

* A *Rubel* is always reckoned in *Ruſſia* at a hundred *Copieks*, or 4 *s.* 6 *d.* ſterling; but varies with regard to foreign merchants, according to the courſe of exchange.

gave

gave a new proof of her indulgent care over her ſubjects, by freely remitting the arrears of the poll-tax from the year 1724 to 1747; the whole ſum amounting to no leſs than 2,534,000 *Rubels*. From the abovementioned ſum we may form ſome conjecture of the number of inhabitants in the *Ruſſian* Empire.

2. From the demeſne lands occupied by 360,000 peaſants, each of whom pays 110 *Copeiks per annum*, in all amounting to 396,000 *Rubels*.

3. From the revenues of the *Cabaques* or inns and drinking houſes, which are in all about two millions; the privilege of ſelling beer, mead, and ſpirits diſtilled from corn being monopoliſed by the Crown.

4. From the tolls or cuſtoms by ſea and land, which produce about 1,150,000 *Rubels*. It muſt, however, be obſerved that all the inland duties throughout the whole Empire of *Ruſſia* were aboliſhed in the year 1754.

5. From the continual trade carried on by the Crown, 1. In iron, of which the annual exports amount to about 400,000 *Puds*; and every *Pud*, being thirty-ſix pound *Avoirdupoiſe*, is ſold for forty *Copeiks*, amounting in the whole to 240,000 *Rubels*. Private perſons alſo have a ſhare in the iron-works, and annually ſell as large a quantity as the crown does. 2. In Pot-aſh, the profits ariſing from which amounts to about 40,000 *Rubels*. 3. In aſhes of the willow-tree, which brings in 30,000 *Rubels*. 4. In Rhubarb, the annual produce of which is 200,000 *Rubels*. The Government regulates both the quantity to be exported and likewiſe the price of this drug. 5. In tar, of which about 80,000 barrels are annually exported from *Archangel* at a *Rubel per* barrel. 6. Laſtly, In Train-oil; the profits ariſing to the crown from this article amounts yearly to 24,000 *Rubels*.

6. From the Salt-works, which bring in to the crown 700,000 *Rubels*.

7. From the duty on Stamp-paper, amounting to 120,000 *Rubels*.

8. From the Caravans to *China* at leaſt 100,000 *Rubels*; but the revenue ariſing from this article is not every year equal, for it ſometimes amounts to more, but is never under that ſum.

9. From the exportation of Sail-cloth; which trade, however, is in private hands. The revenue from coining and the mines is likewiſe very conſiderable. The uncertain and caſuals ſums ariſing from confiſcations and fines do not properly come in here; as they are generally given away to favourites.

The ordinary expences of the *Ruſſian* Court are, indeed, very large; but as I have obſerved before, they are no more than what the revenues can ſufficiently defray. The chief expences are the following.

The annual charge of the fleet, and the canal of *Cronſtadt*, amounts to 1,200,000 *Rubels*, for which part of the *Cabaque*, or revenue ariſing from the ſale of liquors, is appropriated.

The charge of maintaining the army is about four millions of *Rubels*, which is defrayed by the Poll-tax. The two regiments of guards are paid out of the profits arifing from the *Cabaques*, or the ſale of liquors. The *Iſmailow* regiment is maintained by the produce of the ſalt-works; and the horſe-guards from the *Siberian* Pricaſe or Colleges of judicature.

The corps of Cadets ſtands the government in 65,000 *Rubels per annum*, which ariſe from the capitation, and the general commiſſion of war. The expence of the train of artillery amounts yearly to 300,000 *Rubels*.

The annual charge of the Civil Liſt, in the time of *Peter* I. did not exceed 50 or 60,000 *Rubels*; but in the reign of the Empreſs *Anne* the ſalaries of the court officers alone amounted to 120,000 *Rubels*. In the preſent reign they are not leſs than 190,000 *Rubels*; and the total of the annual expences of the Court is about a million of *Rubels*. A hundred and fifty tables are ſpread twice a day at court; and the diſhes for theſe tables are about 1800. To make this proviſion, the court purveyor receives for every three days 2000 *Rubels*, excluſive of the produce of the crown-eſtates, and the proper quantity of wine, ſugar, and ſpices. The daily conſumption of coffee at court is a *Pud* or thirty-ſix pounds *Engliſh* weight; and 7000 *Puds* of ſalt are expended there every month.

The Great Duke, or heir apparent, is allowed 200,000 *Rubels* a year, for the maintenance of his houſhold.

The annual expences of the *Ruſſian* miniſters in foreign courts amount to about 100,000 dollars *.

The Academy and Univerſity at *Petersburg* receive annually from the Treaſury, by Warrant of the State-Office, 53,928 *Rubels*.

The court allows 110,000 *Rubels* for the ſupport of public diſpenſaries; and the deductions from the pay of the officers and ſoldiers for that purpoſe make about 40,000 *Rubels*; ſo that the whole expence amounts to 150,000 *Rubels*. Other inconſiderable ſums laid out by the court I ſhall take no notice of. The produce of the public ſhows of tumblers and rope-dancers, of which multitudes are exhibited at *Eaſter* for the diverſion of the people who are paſſionately fond of them, are allotted for defraying the expences of the Police, paving the ſtreets, *&c.* Beſides, every houſe-keeper pays an aſſeſſment for his houſe and court-yard according to the extent of ground he occupies, which is applied to the ſame purpoſes. The ſalaries of all civil officers are paid out of the monies received by the Chanceries or offices belonging to their departments; and thoſe of the Governors from the *Pricaſes* or offices of their reſpective Governments. A Senator, as ſuch, receives no penſion or ſalary. The ſurplus remaining in the inferior offices is transferred to the State-Office.

§. 21. The military eſtabliſhment of *Ruſſia*, by the indefatigable care of *Peter the Great*, has been entirely new modelled. Before his time the in-

* A dollar is equal to 3*s.* 6*d.* ſterling.

fantry,

fantry, for the moſt part, were called *Strelitzes*, who, being honoured with particular privileges as the Czaar's body-guards, arrogated to themſelves a power which often proved dangerous even to the Emperor's life. But *Peter* I. ſuppreſſed both the name and the corps. The *Ruſſians* at preſent are good ſoldiers, eſpecially if they be well diſciplined; but the infantry far ſurpaſſes the cavalry: both horſe and infantry are on the *German* footing.

The army, according to the ſtate of it given by M. *Von Haven*, conſiſts

Firſt, Of REGULAR TROOPS which are divided into

	Men.
I. The Field Army, which conſiſts of	
1. Infantry, namely,	
Three regiments of Guards containing in all — —	8244
Fifty marching regiments in time of peace amounting to 70,450; but in war time to — — — —	78,300
The corps of matroſſes and engineers — —	5011
2. Cavalry, namely,	
One troop of life-guards of three hundred men, and the horſe-guards of 1443, amounting together to — —	1743
Three regiments of cuiraſſiers — — —	2934
Twenty-nine regiments of dragoons making in time of peace 31,668, but in war time — — — —	35,699
Four regiments of huſſars containing — —	4435
II. The army belonging to the Garriſons and Governments, which conſiſts of	
1. Infantry, namely,	
Twenty regiments which are cantoned towards the *Baltic* amounting in all to — — — —	26,520
Twenty-eight regiments in the heart of the Empire making in all — — — — — —	36,736
Land militia on the *Sakomsko* line — — —	2342
Six battalions containing — — — —	4020
The corps of artillery and engineers — —	5950
2. Cavalry, namely,	
Twenty regiments of land militia on the *Ukraine* line amounting in all to — — —	22,700
Land militia on the *Sakomsko* line — —	3351
Seven regiments of dragoons in garriſon making —	7399
Two ſquadrons in garriſon amounting to — —	1130
Total of the regular troops — —	246,494

Secondly,

Secondly, Of IRREGULAR TROOPS, which conſiſt of

	Men.
Ten *Little Ruſſia* regiments amounting to — —	60,000
Five *Slabodian* regiments making in all — —	30,000
Don Coſſacks — — — — —	10,000
Calmucks — — — — — —	20,000
Total of irregular troops. — — —	120,000

Theſe, like the regular army, may be augmented at the Empreſs's pleaſure.

As for the Officers pay, it muſt be obſerved, 1. That the officers of the twenty garriſon-regiments in the towns lying on the *Baltic* have double the pay of other garriſon regiments. 2. That the officers of all marching regiments have three times the pay of the officers of the regiments in the governments or provinces. 3. That the private men in the guards have double the pay of thoſe in the marching regiments.

Here follows an account of the annual pay of the Generals, officers, and private men in the *Ruſſian* ſervice.

A General Field-Marſhal is allowed *per annum*.

Rubels.	*Rations.*		*Rubels.*		*Denſheks* or Servants.
7000	200	valued at	1140	and	16

A General in chief.

3600	80		456		12

A Lieutenant-General.

2160	50		285		10

A Major-General.

1800	40		228		8

A Brigadier.

840	20		171		7

In the marching regiments a Colonel is allowed yearly.

Rubels.	*Rubels.*		*Copeiks.*		*Servants.*
600	96	and	90	for *Rations.*	6

A Lieutenant Colonel.

360	62		70		4

A Major.

300	62		70		3

A

A Captain.

Rubels.	*Rubels.*		*Copeiks.*		*Servants.*
180	28	and	50	for *Rations.*	2

A Lieutenant.

120	22		80		1

A Second Lieutenant.

84	17		10		1

An Enſign.

84	17		10		1

A Quarter-maſter of a regiment.

84	22		80		1

An Adjutant.

120	22		80		1

From this table, and the paragraph immediately preceding it, we may find out the pay of the officers belonging to the regiments in the garriſons and Governments.

A private man is allowed yearly ten *Rubels* and ninety-eight *Copeiks*, beſides three barrels of meal, a certain quantity of groats or coarſe oatmeal, twenty-four pounds of ſalt, and fleſh to the value of ſeventy-two *Copeiks*; all theſe articles are computed at five *Rubels* ſeventy-four *Copeiks*. But ſix *Rubels* thirty-five *Copeiks* are deducted from the pay of every private man for clothing, medicines, fleſh, cartridges, and flints for their firelocks. His whole clothing from head to foot coſts near twelve *Rubels*.

The *Dentſkeks* or ſervants are taken out of the recruits to attend the officers: And for the ſupport of every one of theſe eleven Rix-dollars and two *Copeiks* and a half are paid annually out of the military cheſt; but the maſters are obliged to clothe them. The corps of Cadets ſhall be ſpoken of in my account of *Peterſburg*.

§. 22. The *Ruſſians* owe their ſkill in the art of ſhip-building, and conſequently their naval power, entirely to *Peter the Great*. For they had only barks and other ſmall craft, for paſſing up and down the *Volga* and the *Don*, before that Monarch's time. *Ruſſia* naturally abounds in all kinds of naval ſtores; and at *Petersburg* and *Archangel* are large dock-yards, in each of which three *Engliſh* ſhip-carpenters ſuperintend the building of ſhips. It appears from a liſt publiſhed by M. *Haven*, that in the year 1746 the *Ruſſian* navy conſiſted of twenty-four ſhips of the line, ſeven frigates, three bomb-ketches, and two *Praams* or flat-boats; beſides the galley-fleet at

Petersburg conſiſting of 102 galleys. The complement of the whole fleet amounted to 10,570 men; and of theſe 7701 were ſeamen. The fleet ſince that time continues pretty nearly in the ſame ſtate; for if ſome ſhips are built every year, others become unfit for ſervice. The men of war are laid up at *Revel* and *Cronſtadt*, and the galleys at *Petersburg*. The *Ruſſians* cannot as yet be ſaid to have a complete good harbour on the *Baltic*; the water at *Cronſtadt* being too freſh, which does conſiderable damage to the ſhips that lie there.

There is a new Academy for 300 Sea-Cadets erected at *Petersburg*. The High-Admiral has the pay and rank of General Field-Marſhal; an Admiral, of a General in chief; A Vice-Admiral, of a Lieutenant-General; and a Rear-Admiral, of a Major-General. A Captain of a man of war has the ſame pay, and ranks with a Colonel, a Lieutenant-Colonel, and a Major of a marching regiment; and a Sea-Lieutenant, with a Captain.

§. 23. The *Ruſſian* Empire lies partly in *Europe* and partly in *Aſia*. The *European* part contains *Great*, *Little*, and *White Ruſſia*; to which may be added the conquered provinces which formerly belonged to *Sweden*. *White Ruſſia* in this Empire muſt not be confounded with the country of the ſame name in *Lithuania*. As for *Red Ruſſia*, it belongs to *Poland*. In order to underſtand the origin of theſe names it muſt be obſerved, that it is a cuſtom among the *Eaſtern* people, to diſtinguiſh countries by the epithets white and black; and that by the former they call the moſt extenſive and fertile, and by the latter the ſmaller and leſs fruitful countries or territories. There are indeed different opinions concerning the uſe and application of theſe names; but to enter into a minute diſquiſition on this head, would lead me too far from my ſubject.

The *Aſiatic* provinces of the *Ruſſian* Empire make no ſmall part of *Great Tartary*; and have been conquered partly in ancient, and partly in more modern times.

The *Ruſſian* Empire is divided into Governments; and every Government conſiſts of certain Provinces or Circles. Theſe Governments have been frequently altered; but, according to the preſent diviſion, they are as follow.

The Government of *Riga*, *Reval*, *Narwa*, *Petersburg*, *Wiburg*, *Great Novogrod*, *Archangel-gorod*, *Moſcow*, *Niſhneinow-gorod*, *Smolensk*, *Kiew*, *Bielogorod*, *Woronetz* and *Aſow*, *Aſtracan*, *Orenburg*, *Caſan*, and, laſtly, that of *Siberia*.

Note. In order to facilitate the pronunciation of the *Ruſſian* names of places mentioned in the geographical part, I have ſet them down as they are ſpoken *; and for the farther ſatisfaction of the reader, I ſhall here

* Where the *German* pronunciation differs from the *Engliſh*, I have accommodated the *Ruſſian* words to the latter, particularly in the *ſch* which is expreſſed by *ſh*, and *j* conſonant by *i* or *y*, as it is pronounced ſo by the *Germans*: the method of writing the names of places after the *German* manner with *ſch*, *ch*, *j*, &c. would ſerve to embaraſs the *Engliſh* reader.

add

add the following explanation of ſuch *Ruſſian* words as occur in this account, in alphabetical order.

Bieloi, *Bielaia*, *Bieloie*, white.
Gora, a mountain.
Gorod, a city or town.
Gorodiſhtſhe, a place where a town formerly ſtood.
Guba, when ſpeaking of water, ſignifies a bay or gulf.
Kamen, a rock.
Kamennci Gorod, a walled town.
Kraſnoi, *Kraſnaia*, *Kraſnoie*, red, or beautiful, theſe being ſynonymous terms in the *Ruſſian* language.
Krepost, a fort, or fortified town.
Liman, a marſhy lake, with a river iſſuing from it, or diſcharging itſelf into it.
Maloi, *Malaia*, *Maloie*, little.
Monaſtir, a convent.
More, the ſea.
Niſkoi, *Niſkaia*, *Niſkoie*, low.
Nos, a cape or promontory.
Nowoi, *Nowaia*, *Nowoie*, new.
Oſero, a lake.
Oſtrog, a place incloſed with paliſadoes, frequent in *Siberia*. Inſtead of a wall, they are ſurrounded with long piles driven perpendicularly into the ground, or wooden breaſt-works, like ramparts, made of logs and beams of timber laid upon each other. Theſe *Oſtrogs* have only the principal buildings incloſed within them, as the *Waiwode* or Governor's houſe, the public offices, a magazine of proviſions, an armory, a furr-warehouſe, a church, &c. But a town or village ſtands near moſt of the *Oſtrogs*.
Oſtrow, an iſland.
Pogoſt, properly a church with the buildings belonging to it; in a more extenſive ſenſe it denotes the whole territory of a pariſh belonging to a church. The villages likewiſe dependent on the church have alſo the ſame names.
Pricas, a chancery or public office.
Porogi, water-falls or cataracts.
Provincialnoi Gorod, or a Provincial city, is the reſidence of a Governor, Deputy Governor, or of a *Woiwode*; and has other towns under its juriſdiction.
Sawod, a ſmelting houſe, or place where ores and metals, as iron, copper, &c. are melted down and wrought.
Saſtawa, a toll-place, or cuſtom-houſe.

Selo, a village conſiſting of one church, and the houſes which belong to it. Some *Selo*'s belong to private perſons or convents.

Slobodes, are different from the preceding. The *Slobody Uiezdnyia*, or *Slobode* circles, have handſome buildings and are larger than many ſmall towns, but not fortified. The inhabitants of them are traders, and have a particular magiſtrate and a toll-place or cuſtom-houſe. *Iamskiie-Slobody*, are places where carriers generally live. The *Slobodes* in *Siberia* are inhabited by peaſants; and theſe may be accounted part of a Circle, as they include ſeveral pariſhes and villages; and in ſome of them there are *Oſtrogs*. *Sloboda* in the province of *Tobolsk* ſignifies a town ſurrounded with wooden walls; and there are few other fortifications in *Siberia*, except thoſe of the city of *Tobolsk*. Indeed, the only enemies the *Siberians* have to deal with are the *Baſhkirians*, the *Calmucks*, and the *Kaſatſha-Horda*; and their wars may be looked upon as robberies rather than military expeditions, for they attack the villages on horſeback for the conveniency of carrying away the plunder immediately; ſo that the main point is to prevent the enemies from breaking in. They have but little to fear from their weapons, which, for the moſt part, are only bows and arrows.

Sluſhiwie, irregular foot ſoldiers.

Sol, ſalt.

Stan, a part of a Circle containing fifty churches, with the chapels dependent on them.

Staroi, *Staraia*, *Staroie*, old.

Step, a waſte or wilderneſs; likewiſe a level barren country.

Swiatoi, *Swiataia*, *Swiatoie*, holy.

Tſhernoi, *Tſhernaia*, *Tſhernoie*, black.

Uiezd, a Circle or diſtrict, leſs than a province, and more extenſive than a *Stan*, a *Woloſt*, or *Pogoſt*.

Oſt-ie, the mouth of a river.

Welekoi, *Welekaia*, *Welikoie*, great.

Wercnei, *Wercniaia*, *Wercnoie*, ſuperior or above.

Werſta, a *Ruſſian* meaſure of diſtance, of which 104½, or according to ſome, 105 are equal to a degree of the Equator.

Yam, a Poſt-ſtage, where the horſes are changed.

Yamskaia, a village or ſmall town inhabited by ſledge-drivers, carriers, &c.

Yar, a ſteep high coaſt.

Yurte, hutts.

Zemlia, a country, or the earth.

THE

THE EUROPEAN PART OF THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

§. 1. THE boundaries of this part of the *Ruſſian* Empire towards the Eaſt are indeed the ſame with the limits between *Europe* and *Aſia*; but theſe are not eaſily aſcertained. All that can be ſaid with any certainty is, that the river *Don* has, from time immemorial, been looked upon as the ſouthern boundary; that the kingdom of *Aſtracan* and *Kaſan* are reckoned to be in *Aſia*; and that the *Wercoturian* mountains have commonly paſſed for the limits between *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*.

§. 2. The ſeas bordering on *Ruſſia* have been deſcribed above *. The principal rivers in the *European* part of the *Ruſſian* Empire are as follow.

1. The *Wolga*, in Latin *Volga*. This river was formerly known by the name of *Rha*; and is at preſent by the *Tartars* called *Atel*, *Edel*, or *Idel*, i. e. 'the large river'. It has its ſource in the foreſt of *Wolconſki*; and is one of the largeſt rivers in the world; for it runs a courſe of between four and five hundred geographical or *German* miles, before it falls into the *Caſpian* ſea. Its borders are generally fertile; and though they are not ſufficiently cultivated, on account of the frequent incurſions of the *Tartars*; yet the ſoil naturally produces all kinds of eſculent herbs; and particularly aſparagus of a very extraordinary ſize and goodneſs. Moſt of the oaks in *Ruſſia* grow in the countries that are watered by this river. At *Twer*, a town but little more than twenty geographical miles from its ſource, the *Wolga* is navigable for large ſhips. Towards the end of the ſpring, this river is ſo ſwelled by the melting of the ice and ſnow as to cauſe great inundations; particularly in the months of *May* and *June*. The maſters of

* See pag. 60, 61, 62.

the veſſels which are bound down the *Wolga* to *Aſtracan*, carefully obſerve this ſeaſon, as at that time they have not only the opportunity of a ſafe paſſage over the ſhallows; but likewiſe over ſeveral flat iſlands, which then lie at a conſiderable depth under water. Trees are often torn away by the roots from the banks of this river by the violence of the current; and the anchors of the veſſels are frequently ſo entangled amongſt them, that there is a neceſſity of cutting the cable, ſo that a great number of anchors are ſuppoſed to lie at the bottom. The *Wolga* abounds with the fine fiſh called *Beluga**. It receives ſeveral noted rivers, and among the reſt the *Occa* and *Cama*; and empties itſelf into the *Caſpian* ſea through ſeveral mouths or channels, which form a great many iſlands.

2. The *Don*, in Latin *Tanais*, by the *Tartars* called *Tuna* or *Duna*. The ancients ranked the *Tanais* among the moſt famous rivers, and looked upon it as the boundary between *Europe* and *Aſia*. Its ſource is not far from *Tula*, in the *Iwano Oſero* or *John's lake*. It runs firſt from north to ſouth; and after its conflux with the *Soſna* near the fortreſs of *Nowa Pawlowſkaia* in the Government of *Woroneſe*, it directs its courſe from Weſt to Eaſt, and in ſeveral large windings runs again from North to South. At laſt it divides into three channels which begin to ſpread from each other below *Czerkaſkoi*, and falls into the *Palus Mæotis* near *Aſow* and *Lutik*. The waters of the *Don* are thick and chalky; and conſequently not very wholſome to drink. In ſummer this river is very ſhallow and full of ſand-banks; however, it affords plenty both of ſmall and large fiſh. The *Don*, in its courſe, approaches ſo near to the *Wolga*, that the diſtance between them in one place is but one hundred and forty *Werſt*, or about eighty *Engliſh* miles. But if the river *Lawla* which runs into the *Don*, and the *Camiſhinka*, which empties itſelf into the *Wolga*, were made navigable, the diſtance between the two rivers then would hardly be four *Werſts*; and they might be eaſily united by cutting a canal. However, it is ſaid that *Peter the Great* did not think this project feaſible.

3. The *Dwina*, in Latin *Duina*, a very large river. The name ſignifies double; for it is formed by the conflux of the two rivers *Sukona* and *Yug* at *Uſtiaga*. This river divides itſelf into two branches or channels near *Archangel*, which run into the *White Sea*. Some imagine that a famous temple ſtood on the bank of this river, in which an idol called *Solotaia Baba*, or the 'Golden Matron,' was ſet up. This Goddeſs was worſhipped, under the name of *Yumala*, not only by the inhabitants of the country; but by the *Scythian* and *Grecian* merchants, who reſided near the *Dnieper* and the *Black Sea*, and uſed to travel hither to trade and pay their adorations to the idol. Others place that temple on the *Petſhora*, and others again, with greater probability, on the river *Oby*; but the

* This fiſh is about eight or ten feet in length, and is eſteemed preferable to the Sturgeon.

whole

whole is very uncertain. The *Duina* or *Duna* a river of *Poland*, though its ſource is likewiſe in *Ruſſia*, is not to be confounded with this river.

4. The *Dnieper*, or *Danapris*, in Latin *Boryſthenes*, riſes from a moraſs in the foreſt of *Wolconſk* about twenty *German* or Geographical miles above *Smolenſk*. It forms ſeveral windings through *Lithuania*, *Little Ruſſia*, the country of the *Zaporo-Coſaks*, and a tract inhabited by the *Nagaian Tartars* of *Crimea*; and after forming a *Liman*, or marſhy lake, of ſixty *Werſts* in length, and in many places two, four, or even ten *Werſts* in breadth, it loſes itſelf in the *Black Sea* between *Oczacow* and *Kinburn*. The banks of this river on both ſides are generally high, and the ſoil is excellent; but the water in ſummer is not very wholſome. The *Dnieper* has no leſs than thirteen water-falls within the ſpace of ſixty *Werſts*; yet in ſpring, during the land-floods, empty veſſels may be halled over them.

This river, till it comes to the *Liman* near the mouth of it, is ſo full of iſlands, that all the intervals being computed together do not amount to thirty *Engliſh* miles; and abounds with ſturgeon, ſterled, carp, pyke, *karauſh*, &c. The only bridge over the *Dnieper* is the float-bridge at *Kiew*, which is 1638 paces in length. This bridge is taken away about the end of *September*, to give the flakes of ice a free paſſage down the river, and is again put together in ſpring. A great number of mills erected in boats are to be ſeen on this river; any one being allowed the liberty of ſetting them up.

§. 3. The principal lakes in this part of the *Ruſſian* Empire are,

1. The *Peipus* lake in *Livonia*, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Tſhudſkoe Oſero*, which is ten geographical miles * in length, and ſeven or eight in breadth. It abounds with fiſh; and runs into the gulf of *Finland* by the river *Narva*. This lake has alſo a communication with that of *Pleſkow* which is called by the Ruſſians *Pſkowſkoe Oſero*.

2. The famous lake of *Ladoga*, which lies between the gulf of *Finnland* and the *Onega*-lake, is twenty-five *German* or geographical miles in length, and fifteen in breadth. It is reckoned the largeſt lake in *Europe*, and is ſuppoſed to exceed any other for plenty of fiſh, among which are alſo ſeals or ſea-dogs. *Ladoga* is full of quick-ſands, which being moved from place to place by the frequent ſtorms it is ſubject to, cauſe ſeveral ſhelves along its coaſts, that often prove fatal to the flat-bottomed *Ruſſian* veſſels. This induced *Peter the Great* to cauſe a canal of one hundred and four *Werſts* † in length, ſeventy feet in breadth, and ten or eleven feet deep, to be cut at a vaſt expence from the ſouth-weſt extremity of this lake in *Ingria* and *Novogrod*, to the ſea; which with the neceſſary windings

* The miles by which the Author computes the length and breadth of theſe lakes, &c. are mentioned in general terms; but as *mile* is a word of ſuch latitude, it were to be wiſhed he had been more accurate.

† Near ſeventy *Engliſh* miles.

was

was carried from *Schluſſelburg* to *New Ladoga* in the river *Wolcow*. This work was begun in the year 1718; and though it was vigorouſly proſecuted, was not compleated till the year 1732, in the reign of the Empreſs *Anne*. This canal at firſt reached no farther than a village called *Cabona* ſituated on a river of the ſame name, at the diſtance of forty-four *Werſts* from *Schluſſelburg*, and where the veſſels ſailed into the lake; for which purpoſe the ſluice is ſtill kept up there. The canal has twenty-five ſluices; ſeveral rivers run into it as the *Lipka*, *Naſſia*, *Tzeldika*, *Lawa*, *Cabona*, and two ſmaller anonymous ſtreams on which ſtand two ſmall villages. At the diſtance of every *Werſt* along this canal is erected a pillar marked with the number of *Werſts*, &c. It is the conſtant employment of a regiment of ſoldiers to keep the canal in repair; and for this purpoſe they are quartered in ſeveral places on its banks. In ſummer-time it is covered with floats and veſſels paſſing from the *Wolcow* to the *Neva*, which pay toll in proportion to the value of their cargo; but not a few, to avoid the duty, and the labour of drawing the veſſel or the floats on the canal, rather venture on the *Ladoga*-lake. The iſlands *Sarcow*, *Selency*, *Kirwet* and *Tinow*, which lie in the lake and are inhabited by fiſhermen, may be ſeen from the canal. The river *Neva*, which ſhall be ſpoken of in the ſequel, iſſues from this lake.

3. The lake of *Onega* lies betwixt lake *Ladoga* and the *White Sea*; and has a communication with the former by means of the river *Swir*. Its length is one hundred and eighty *Ruſſian Werſts*, the breadth about eighty; and though it be a freſh-water lake ſeals are often ſeen in it. A ſcheme was laid before *Peter the Great* for joining the rivers *Wytegra* and *Rouſka*, and by that means opening a communication betwixt the *Onega*-lake and *Beloſero* or the *White Lake:* But the execution of this plan was prevented by the death of that Monarch.

We ſhall now proceed to give an account of

The PROVINCES acquired by RUSSIA, and taken from the SWEDES in this century; and theſe are *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Carelia*.

I. The DUTCHIES of *LIVONIA* and *ESTHONIA*.

§. 1. AMONG the maps of this dutchy which are extant, that ſtiled *Nova totius Livoniæ accurata deſcriptio, apud Janſſonio-Waeſbergios & Moſem Pitt*, is at preſent too obſolete, and much leſs accurate than the *Nova exhibitio geographica ducatuum Livoniæ & Curlandiæ* publiſhed by *Homann*.

mann. The map of *Eſthonia* and *Livonia* inſerted in the *Ruſſian* ATLAS, notwithſtanding all its improvements, is not without many faults. This map, indeed, exhibits more countries than its title contains; for beſides *Eſthonia* and *Livonic*, it alſo includes *Courland*, *Ingermania*, and part of the Governments of *Novogrod* and *Smolensk*.

§. 2. The country we are now deſcribing was formerly inhabited by three different nations, namely, the *Livonians*, *Lettonians*, and *Eſthonians*. It was accordingly divided into *Liefland* or *Livonia*, *Lettland* or *Lettonia*, and *Eſthland* or *Eſthonia*; not to mention *Courland* and *Semgallen*, which Dutchies, till the time of *Gothard Kettlern*, alſo made a part of this country. The name of *Liefland* or *Livonia*, which properly belongs only to the Diſtrict that lies along the *Duna*, has in time been applied alſo to *Lettonia*; and in common converſation *Livonia* includes the country properly ſo called, together with *Lettonia* and *Eſthonia*. But to ſpeak with greater preciſion, *Livonia*, or the ſouth part of the country, muſt be carefully diſtinguiſhed from *Eſthonia*, or the north part; which diſtinction we ſhall obſerve in the particular deſcription of them.

§. 3. This country * borders on *Courland*, the *Baltic*, the gulf of *Finnland*, *Ingria*, *Ruſſia*, and *Poland*. It extends in length from North to South between forty-five and fifty geographical or *German* miles; and its breadth from Eaſt to Weſt is from thirty-five to forty, excluſive of the iſlands belonging to it.

§. 4. *Livonia* conſiſts partly of woods and moraſſes, and partly of a fertile ſoil, which yields the inhabitants all the neceſſaries of life in great plenty. The air is clear and ſalubrious; and though the winter be long and ſevere, and the ſummer, conſequently, but ſhort; yet the heat of the climate during the latter ſeaſon is ſuch, that the grain ſown both in ſummer and winter ripens at the proper time. In a plentiful year when the crops have not failed, the inhabitants export many thouſand Laſts of rye and barley to *Holland*, *Spain*, and other foreign countries: Hence *Livonia* is called the 'Granary of the North.' Before the corn is threſhed, it is dried and hardened in kilns heated by large ſtoves or ovens, which are built contiguous to their barns; however, this does not render it unfit for ſowing, or for making bread and malt; beſides, it keeps the better for it.

The horned cattle, horſes, and goats of this country are very numerous, and much eſteemed; but the ſheep are not extraordinary, their wool being coarſe, and reſembling goats hair.

Vaſt quantities of flax, hemp, lin-ſeed, leather and ſkins are exported from hence in foreign bottoms.

* *Livonia*, including *Eſthonia* and *Lettonia*.

The rivers which water this country are the *Duna* *, the *Aa*, the *Embak*, the *Pernaw*, &c. It has alſo many ſtanding-lakes, as that of *Peipus* † mentioned above, the *Werczer*-lake, which is five geographical miles in length and two in breadth, the *Luban*-lake, *&c.* Both the lakes and rivers afford plenty of the fineſt ſalmon, and other fiſh. Turbots are alſo taken in the gulf of *Riga*; and the fiſheries ſupport a conſiderable part of the inhabitants. *Stromlings*, which are a ſpecies of herrings, are found in vaſt ſhoals along theſe coaſts, and are the common food of the peaſants who ſalt great quantities of them. In the preſent reign a *Swede* has ſet on foot a pearl fiſhery, and there are above forty-five rivulets and lakes in *Eſthonia* and *Livonia* where this fiſhery is carried on; but the former yields more pearls than the latter, which come pretty near the oriental pearls both for ſize and clearneſs.

This country was formerly overrun with vaſt woods of oak, fir, pine, and birch-trees; but theſe are now too thin, partly by the method of building practiſed by the inhabitants, whoſe houſes and other edifices in towns and villages conſiſt almoſt entirely of wood; and partly by their clearing of the woods in order to cultivate the land for ſowing corn, *&c.* The harbour of *Roderwyck*, which required a prodigious quantity of timber, contributed not a little to the deſtruction of the woods in *Livonia*. However the country has reaped one advantage by it; for it is not ſo much infeſted with bears, wolves, elks, lynxes, martens, and other wild beaſts. *Livonia*, ſtill abounds with the ſmaller wild quadrupeds and other game; ſo that hares, which turn white here in winter, and wild fowl, are ſold very cheap. As for ſtags, deer, and wild boars, there are none in this country. Quarries of good ſtone are very common here. The highways and roads in *Livonia* are in very good order; and at the end of every *Ruſſian Werſt* a red pillar is erected, on which is marked the number of the *Werſts* paſſed and remaining in travelling from one capital to another. The country inns are very mean; but the poſt-houſes have every thing in proper order.

The diſtances between the principal towns are as follows.

From *Riga* to *Narva* 400 *Werſts*, or 21 Poſt-ſtages.
From *Riga* to *Pernaw* 172 *Werſts*, or 9 Poſt-ſtages.
From *Pernaw* to *Reval* 138 *Werſts*, or 6 Poſt-ſtages.
From *Reval* to *Habſal* 95 *Werſts*, or 4 Poſt-ſtages.
From *Reval* to *Narva* 196 *Werſts*, or 9 Poſt-ſtages.

The ſledges are a very great conveniency for carrying on trade, and travelling in winter.

§. 5. This country was formerly interſperſed with a great number of towns and villages: But in the wars and commotions which *Livonia* has ſo often experienced, moſt of them were deſtroyed; ſo that at preſent nothing but

* This is called here *Duna* to diſtinguiſh it from the *Dwina*, which runs to *Archangel*. See pag. 412, N° 3.

† See §. 3 of the Introduction to *Ruſſia*.

the

the ruins of many of them are to be ſeen. A traveller paſſes through more towns in a journey of twelve or fifteen geographical miles in many countries, than in all this vaſt extent of land. To the ſame cauſe alſo the poverty of the *Livonian* peaſants may be attributed; who amidſt all their affluence find ſo much difficulty in turning the overplus of their ſubſtance into money, that they are obliged to give half of it away, and at the ſame time buy whatever foreign commodities they have occaſion for, at a very high price.

§. 6. This country might undoubtedly afford ſubſiſtence to a much greater number of inhabitants than it has at preſent; for they have been extremely thinned by war, peſtilence and famine. The number of them may in ſome meaſure be determined by the following method. The eſtates in *Livonia* are taxed according to the number of *Hakes*, i. e. 'of men fit for labour from fifteen to fifty years of age;' five of theſe being reckoned to a *Hake*. Now the peaſants of *Eſthonia* are ſaid to conſiſt only of 5000 *Hakes*, which amount to 25,000 labouring men; an inconſiderable number for a province of ſuch extent.

Beſides the inhabitants who are deſcended from the *Germans*, this country contains great numbers of *Eſthonians* and *Letotnians*, which are people of a very different extraction and language; but their manners and cuſtoms are pretty much the ſame. The *Eſthonians* ſeem from the affinity of the two languages and other circumſtances, to be derived from the ſame origin with the *Finns*. The *Lettonians* both from their name and language appear to be ſprung from the ſame ſtock as the *Lithuanians*, who were a mixture of ſeveral *Sarmatian* tribes. They are both termed *Undeutſchen*, i. e. 'people that are not *Germans*', by the other inhabitants. Their ſtature very ſeldom exceeds the middle ſize; but they are vigorous and hardy; enduring cold and heat, and undergoing the greateſt labour and fatigue with chearfulneſs. Their houſes are very meanly built; and the rooms quite black with ſmoke. They are all vaſſals, or rather ſlaves to their lords, who may treat them as they pleaſe, if they do not kill them. Their chief occupations are agriculture, grazing, and ſometimes fiſhing; but they have a good natural genius for mechanics. They are very much given to drunkenneſs; and are ſtill fond of many ſuperſtitious practices in private. There are alſo many *Ruſſians* in this country. The languages uſually ſpoken by the inhabitants are, the *Lettonian*, the *Eſthonian*, the *German*, the *Ruſſian*, the *Swediſh*, and *Finnean* tongues.

§. 7. The Nobility are very numerous, and are moſtly of foreign extraction; for their anceſtors were partly ſuch familes as anciently came into *Livonia* with the King of *Denmark*; but for the moſt part removed hither from *Germany*, particularly from *Thuringia*, *Weſtphalia*, *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburg*, and other parts of the circle of *Lower Saxony*. Here are alſo ſome noble families of *Swediſh* and *Poliſh* extraction. Moſt of the Nobility of this country have always given themſelves up entirely to a military life.

Thoſe of another turn of mind, who reſide on their eſtates and make improvements in agriculture, are generally inveſted with civil and juridical employments; and of this claſs are Governors, Prefects, *Land-Marſhals*, provincial and *Hake* Judges, *&c.* The Nobility are far from being ſufferers by falling under the dominion of *Ruſſia*; for ſince that time all their rights and privileges have been confirmed to them; and the eſtates which the Court of *Sweden* had reaſſumed have likewiſe been reſtored to the former feudatories.

A Diet or Provincial Aſſembly is held for *Eſthonia* once in three years at *Reval*, in which a Chief Head of the Nobleſſe, who is equal to a *Land-Marſhal*, is choſen by a majority of votes; and at the expiration of that office he is entitled to the next ſurvivorſhip of the poſt of *Land-Rath*, or provincial Counſellor. Every thing relating to the public utility is the ſubject of the deliberations of this Diet; and out of it is appointed a committee in which the *Land-Raths*, as they are called, have a ſeat. The Diet is convened on any important occaſion by the chief of the Nobility. A Diet is never held at *Riga* without permiſſion from the *Ruſſian* Court; which being obtained, a *Land-Marſhal* is choſen, whoſe employment is chiefly confined to the affairs under deliberation in the Diet.

§. 8. Artificers and mechanics are not ſo common here as in other countries. The commerce of *Livonia* always flouriſhes in time of peace; *Riga*, *Reval*, and *Narva* being well known in the commercial world. *Pernau* is likewiſe in a flouriſhing condition. However, theſe towns ſuffer greatly from the clandeſtine trade, which is carried on by land; and though it has been often prohibited it ſtill encreaſes. The gentry purchaſe corn both of their own vaſſals and other peaſants; and ſome of them diſtil ſpirits from it, while others ſend it to the ſea-ports, and there ſell it to the beſt advantage. The peaſants are obliged to bring what corn they intend for ſale to the Noblemen's ſeats, where, inſtead of ready money for it, they generally receive iron, ſalt, ſteel, tobacco, and other commodities and utenſils of little value.

§. 9. At *Riga* and *Reval* are good *Gymnaſia*, or Seminaries, and ſchools: but this country at preſent cannot boaſt of one Univerſity.

§. 10. The inhabitants of *Livonia*, for the moſt part, profeſs Lutheraniſm; but the Calviniſts, Papiſts, and *Ruſſians* are indulged with the free exerciſe of their religion. There is an yearly allowance from the crown of 1200 *Rubels* towards the ſupport of the national churches in this country; but the churches of the ſeparatiſts do not partake of this bounty. The Bible has been publiſhed here in the *Lettonian* and *Eſthonian* languages.

In ESTHONIA, all the country pariſhes, together with the cathedral of *Reval*, with regard to eccleſiaſtical juriſdiction, are ſubject to the Nobility, and are but forty in number: we may hence form a conjecture of their great extent. They are divided into Provoſtſhips, according to the Circles in which they are included. The Conſiſtory of Nobles is compoſed of a preſident,

preſident, who is a *Land-Rath* or provincial Counſellor, Provoſts, the Preachers belonging to the cathedral of *Reval*, and ſome other Aſſeſſors. Here is alſo a Supreme Court of Appeals in ſpiritual cauſes, which conſiſts of ſome eccleſiaſtics, *Land-Raths*, and noblemen. LIVONIA or the General-Government of *Riga* contains above one hundred and twenty pariſhes, which together with St. *James*'s church in *Riga*, is under the juriſdiction of the Conſiſtory of Nobles. Over theſe preſides a General Superintendant, who has his reſidence at *Riga*. The High-Conſiſtory is alſo held at *Riga*, and the preſident of it is a *Land-Rath*. Every Circle has a Governor in civil and eccleſiaſtical affairs, who muſt be of the claſs of the Nobility. The Miniſters of *Pernau*, *Dorpat*, and other ſmall towns in *Livonia*, are ſubject to the General Superintendant; but the cities of *Riga*, *Reval*, and *Narva* have their own Conſiſtories, which, as well as their magiſtracy, are independent of the Nobility.

§. 11. The higheſt tribunal in ESTHONIA is that called the *Government* or Supreme Provincial Court, which meets to adminiſter juſtice every year about the middle of *January*, and continues ſitting till *Eaſter*. It conſiſts of the Governor as preſident, and twelve *Land-Raths* or Provincial Counſellors, who are all Noble, and have the rank of Major-General. The *Land-Raths* may, by a free choice, fill up the vacancies in their college from among the Nobility, without any licence or nomination from the crown; and the ſenior *Land-Raths* compoſe a *Government* in the abſence of the other *Governors*. Subordinate to this tribunal are the *Mann-Gerichte* or inferior courts, and *Haken-Richter* or inferior judges. The *Haken-Richter* of every Circle in *Eſthonia* has two *Adjuncti* or aſſiſtants. His office is to take care of the roads and bridges, to levy the money granted by the Nobility at the Diet for the ſervice of the public; and all diſputes about limits and other incidents have the firſt hearing before him. A *Mann-Gericht*, of which in all there are three, conſiſts of a Judge, two Aſſeſſors, and a Notary. Theſe take cognizance of all criminal matters, and diſputes of more importance. An appeal alſo lies from the *Haken-Richter* to the *Mann-Richter*. Both theſe are appointed by the *Land-Raths* college, and muſt be of the claſs of Nobles; and continue in office but three years. When they are exchanged the *Adjuncti* are uſually made *Aſſeſſores*; and one of the Aſſeſſors is appointed *Haken-Richter*; and the *Haken-Richter* is promoted to be *Mann-Richter*. As theſe courts are held only at certain times, the plaintiffs are obliged previouſly to apply to the *General-Government* or Supreme Council, where the Governor who is nominated by the Crown preſides.

In the General-Government of RIGA, or LIVONIA, the chief tribunals are the *Hof-Gericht* or Supreme Court of Judicature which is appointed by the *Czarina*. Here are alſo twelve *Land-Raths*, or Provincial Counſellors; but only one of them has a ſeat in the *Hof-Gericht*. Each of theſe *Land-Raths* reſides in his turn at *Riga* for a month, in order to preſide in the College of the Nobility, and

takes cognizance of the ſame affairs as the above-mentioned Chief of the Nobles does in *Eſthonia*. The *Land-Raths* indeed elect the College; but their choice muſt be confirmed at the *Ruſſian* Court. The inferior courts are, the *Land-Gericht* and *Ordnungs-Gericht*, the members of which have their reſpective Aſſeſſors; and they are on the ſame footing as the *Mann-Richter* and *Haken-Richter* in *Eſthonia*. But from all theſe courts there lies an appeal to the College of Judicature eſtabliſhed at *Petersburg* for the provinces of *Eſthonia* and *Livonia*; and from that again to the *Senate*, which is the Supreme Tribunal for the whole *Ruſſian* Empire.

§. 12. The ancient hiſtory of theſe Dutchies is very dark and obſcure. Pagnaniſm prevailed here down to the twelfth century, when by the following accident the Chriſtian religion was firſt introduced into *Livonia* properly ſo called. In the year 1158, ſome merchants of *Bremen* bound to *Wisby* in *Gothland* were driven by ſtreſs of weather on the coaſt of *Livonia*, and landed at the mouth of the river *Duna* near the *Baltic*. The inhabitants of thoſe parts who called themſelves *Liven*, at firſt, were for oppoſing their landing; but becoming more tractable by degrees, they trafficked together. Theſe beginnings the *Bremeners* improved, by reſorting hither in greater numbers with commodities to trade with the natives; and with the conſent of the inhabitants, went about two leagues up the *Duna*, where they pitched their tents. After this they built a ſtrong ware-houſe of timber on an eminence, in which they depoſited their goods. To this edifice the inhabitants gave the name of *Ykeskola*, that is, a ſchool or convent; and to this very day it is called *Uxkul*. The *German* coloniſts encreaſing in number, brought with them, probably about the year 1186, an eccleſiaſtic of the name of *Meinhard*, who was an *Auguſtine* monk of the convent of *Segeberg* in *Wagria*. This monk, having learnt the language of the country, perſuaded ſome of the inhabitants to be baptized. The town of *Uxkul* was then built with ſtone, and a caſtle was erected at the foot of the hill. In the former *Meinhard* founded a church and a convent of *Auguſtine* monks. This firſt preacher of the Goſpel was made Biſhop; and *Kerkholm* was erected into an epiſcopal ſee. From this time ſeveral *German* families came and ſettled in *Livonia*. About the ſame æra, namely 1196, *Canute* VI. King of *Denmark* made an expedition into *Eſthonia*; and having ſubdued that province, he introduced Chriſtianity, erected churches in the country, and ſent prieſts to officiate in them. Biſhop *Albert*, in order to promote the conqueſt of *Livonia*, inſtituted the order of knighthood called the Knights of Chriſt; and Pope *Innocent* III. gave them the ſame Statutes with the Knights Templars, and a croſs and a ſword as a badge to be worn on their coats, enjoining them at the ſame time to obey the Biſhop of *Riga*. In the year 1206, Biſhop *Albert* gave a grant to the Order of the third part of *Livonia*, with all the privileges of Sovereignty; which was confirmed by Pope *Innocent* III. in the year 1210, who exempted the Knights from tythes

and other impoſts. The firſt Grand-Maſter of this order was *Winno*, who ordered that the Knights for the future ſhould be ſtiled *Fratres Enſiferi* ‘ or ſword-bearing Knights.’ In 1231, theſe *Fratres Enſiferi* were ſolemnly united with the Knights of the *Teutonic* order; and as the habit of theſe incorporated Knights was a white mantle with a black croſs, they ſtiled themſelves ‘ Brothers of the croſs.’ But this humble title, in 1382, they changed to that of ‘ Lords of the Croſs.’ In the year 1346, *Waldemar* III. King of *Denmark* ſold *Eſthonia* to this Order for 18,000 *Lothige* marks of ſilver *. In 1521, *Walter Plettenberg*, the General of this order, purchaſed from the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonic* order in *Pruſſia* the chief juriſdiction in *Livonia*; and he as well as the States of *Livonia* were diſcharged from their oath of obedience to the *Teutonic* Grand Maſter. And not long after, the Emperor *Charles* V. admitted them among the Princes of the Empire. By this privilege the *Livonians* had a right of appealing from their high Court of Judicature to the Aulic Council at *Spires*. About this time the Reformation began to ſpread itſelf throughout the whole country.

Towards the middle of this ſixteenth century the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz* formed the deſign of conquering this country; which induced the city of *Reval* and the dutchy of *Eſthonia* to put themſelves under the protection of *Sweden:* And on this was grounded the claim of that crown to *Livonia*, and the ſuperior privileges which *Eſthonia* enjoyed beyond *Livonia*. *Gotha Ketler*, who was chief of the Order, gave up *Livonia* to the King of *Poland*, as great Duke of *Lithuania*, upon which it was annexed to that crown; ſolemnly reſigned his command; and in 1561 was created the firſt Duke of *Courland*, but was to hold this Dutchy as a fief of *Poland*. The *Poles* alſo got poſſeſſion of *Riga* and *Lettonia*. And now this country became the cauſe, as well as the diſmal ſcene of very bloody wars betwixt *Ruſſia*, *Sweden*, and *Poland* for a whole century; namely, from the year 1561 to 1660.

By the peace of *Oliva*, which was concluded in 1660, *Livonia* was given up by *Poland* to *Sweden*; and the *Duna* was agreed on as the boundary betwixt the *Swediſh* and *Poliſh* dominions. In 1681, the decrees of the Diet held at *Stockholm* in 1680 concerning the Reaſſumption of alienated crown-lands, began to be put in execution here; which was an extreme grievance to the Nobility.

In the famous northern war which broke out in the beginning of the preſent eighteenth century, this country was miſerably ravaged; till at laſt, by the treaty of *Nyſtadt* concluded in the year 1721, *Sweden* agreed to cede *Livonia* for ever to *Ruſſia*. In the fourth article of that treaty it is expreſly ſtipulated ‘ That the crown of *Sweden* ſhall yield and give

* A *Lothige* mark is nine ounces twelve-penny weights *Troy* weight.

‘ up

'up to the *Ruſſian* Empire for ever, as lawful conqueſts, the provinces of '*Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and *Ingria*; a part of *Carelia*, together with the 'Diſtrict of *Wiburg*, and the towns and fortreſſes of *Riga*, *Dunamunde*, '*Pernau*, *Reval*, *Dorpat*, *Narva*, *Wiburg*, *Kexholm*; and all towns, forts, 'harbours, places, diſtricts, and coaſts belonging to the ſaid provinces; with 'the iſlands of *Oeſel*, *Dagoe* and *Moen*, and all other iſlands lying off the 'frontiers of *Courland* towards the coaſts of *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and *Ingria*, 'on the eaſt ſide of *Reval*, and in the road of *Wiburg*, as they were profeſſed 'by the crown of *Sweden*.'

In the ninth and tenth articles of the ſame treaty. 'His *Czariſh* Ma-'jeſty engages to preſerve and maintain the inhabitants of all ranks and 'degrees in *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and the iſland of *Oeſel*, and alſo the towns, 'magiſtracies, companies, and trades in the ſaid provinces, in the conſtant 'and unmoleſted enjoyment of all the rights, privileges, cuſtoms, and 'juriſdictions, which they were in poſſeſſion of under the dominion of '*Sweden*; and that in theſe ceded countries he ſhall be ſo far from of-'fering any violence to the conſciences of the inhabitants, as to permit the 'Evangelical [*Lutheran*] religion, with the churches and ſchools, and all 'the endowments, *&c.* thereto belonging, to remain and continue on the 'ſame footing as under the *Swediſh* government; with a proviſo, that 'the profeſſors of the *Greek* religion ſhall likewiſe enjoy an entire liberty of 'conſcience, and the free exerciſe of their religion in thoſe provinces.'

In the year 1741, *Sweden* attempted the recovery of part of theſe ceded countries, but this was attended with a farther loſs of part of *Finnland*; and by the peace of *Abo*, which was concluded in 1743, *Ruſſia* was not only confirmed in the poſſeſſion of all its conqueſts, but acquired ſome additional Diſtricts in *Finnland*, of which an account ſhall be given in the ſequel.

Since this country has been under the *Ruſſian* dominion it has been divided into two General Governments and one City, which are,

1. The General Government of RIGA.

This Government contains *Lettonia*, to which the name of *Livonia* is alſo given in a more limited ſenſe, and conſiſts of the Circles of *Riga*, *Wenden* *Pernau*, *Dorpat*, and the province of *Oeſel*.

The towns and other places of note in the General Government of *Riga* are as follows.

Riga, the capital of the whole country, is ſituated on the river *Duna* and is ſaid to derive its name from a rivulet formerly called *Rige*, now *Riſing*, which is almoſt dried up. This city is not of any great extent, but populous, well fortified, and famed for its trade and opulence. In the year 1660, *Charles* XI. King of *Sweden* not only declared it to be the capital of the country; but conferred on it the next rank to *Stockholm*, and honoured all the members of its council, and their ſucceſſors, whilſt they have a ſeat in the council, with the title of Noble. The houſes are handſome and

for

for the moſt part, built with ſtone; but the ſtreets are narrow, and the manner of building very much reſembles that of the *Hanſe-towns* ſituated on the *Baltic*. The *Lutheran* churches, namely, the Cathedral, St. *James*'s, St. *Mary Magdalene*'s, St. *Peter*'s, and St. *John*'s are handſome ſtructures. The Seminaries called the imperial *Lyceum* and the city *Gymnaſium*, the maſters of which have very conſiderable ſalaries, are in a flouriſhing condition. Here are alſo an old caſtle, a ſtrong citadel, and two arſenals well ſtored with arms, one at the charge of the crown and the other of the city. The fortifications, both on the land and water-ſide, have been improved under its preſent maſters; and theſe towards the ſea are enlarged by additional works. This city, by means of its excellent harbour, has a good trade with *England*, *Holland*, and the *Hanſe-towns* during the ſummer-ſeaſon; and in winter-time it trafficks with the *Ruſſian* provinces by the conveniency of ſledges. Its privileges, which are very conſiderable, were confirmed by the Empreſs *Anne*. The Supreme Court of Judicature for *Livonia*, and the High-Conſiſtory are held in this city; which is alſo the reſidence of the Governor and General Superintendent. *Riga* was built in the year 1200, and ſoon after incloſed with a wall. It has ſuffered very much both by fires and ſieges: Of the latter the moſt remarkable are thoſe it ſuſtained from the *Ruſſians* in 1656; the *Saxons* and *Poles* in 1700; and a ſecond time from the *Ruſſians* in 1710, when it was obliged to ſubmit to the victorious arms of *Peter the Great*.

Dunamunde is a noble fortification lying about two Geographical miles from *Riga*, at the mouth of the *Duna*, where the ſhips which ſail out of the *Baltic* into that river pay toll or cuſtom. This place was taken by the *Swedes* in 1609, and 1618; and by the *Saxons* in 1700, who gave it the name of *Auguſtusburg*. In 1701, it ſurrendered a third time to the *Swedes*, who by that means became maſters of a fine train of artillery belonging to the *Saxons*; and in 1710, it was taken by the *Ruſſians*. *Dunamunde* was formerly a convent of *Ciſtercian* monks, founded in the year 1201 by *Albert* Biſhop of *Livonia*.

Wenden was formerly a place of great note, and the reſidence of the Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order; and ſeveral Diets were alſo held there. It is, at preſent, but a ſmall mean town; eſpecially ſince it was entirely conſumed by fire in the year 1748. When *Wenden* was beſieged and taken by the *Ruſſians* in the year 1577, ſeveral of the inhabitants, dreading the ſavage cruelty of the *Ruſſian* army, blew themſelves up with the caſtle of this town. It belongs at preſent to Count *Beſtuchef*, the great Chancellor of *Ruſſia*.

Wolmar is a mean town ſituated on the river *Aa*; and derives its name from *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, on account of a victory which he obtained in this place in 1220 over the pagan *Livonians*. It was built in the year 1283; and was entirely burnt down, except the church and the caſtle, in the year 1689. The

The other caſtles and places of note in *Lettonia* were *Rockenhauſen*, which was formerly the Biſhop's See; *Aſherade*; *Walk*, a ſmall town; *Lemſal*, another little town; *Treiden*; *Uxkul*; *Leuwarden*; *Luban*; *Shmilten*; *Ronneburg*; *Erla*; *Kerkholm*, &c. which are now all in ruins.

Dorpat or *Dorpt*, in Latin *Derptum*, *Derbatum* or *Torpatum*, a town ſituated on the river *Embeck*, which is called *Emma Joggi*, i. e. 'Mother 'river,' by the *Eſthonians*, lies in the Circle of the ſame name, and is alſo called *Odempe*. It was built in the year 1030, by *Iurii Iaroſlaw Wladimiritz*, Great Duke of *Ruſſia*, who gave it the name of *Iuriew*; but the *Ruſſians* continued in the poſſeſſion of it only to the year 1191.

Volquin, Great maſter of the Order of the *Fratres Enſiferi* took *Dorpat* by aſſault in 1210. Soon after, this town was rebuilt at the expence of thoſe Knights; who alſo erected it into a Biſhop's See.

It was formerly in a flouriſhing condition, being the reſidence of a Biſhop, and embelliſhed with a cathedral: it was alſo a member of the *Hanſeatic* confederacy; and, by means of the communication it had with *Pernau* by a canal, which was deſtroyed in the laſt *Ruſſian* wars, carried on a conſiderable trade by ſea. An *Engliſh* ſtaple was alſo fixt in this town, as appears from the large ſtone edifice which was the *Engliſh* factory, but afterwards converted into a magazine.

While *Dorpat* was ſubject to the *Swedes* it was ſometimes the reſidence of the Governor; and the Supreme Court of Judicature and High-Conſiſtory, were held there till the commencement of the laſt war. In the year 1632, *Guſtavus Adolphus* founded an Univerſity in this town; and this falling to utter decay amidſt the confuſions of ſubſequent wars, was reſtored in 1690: But in the year 1699, it was removed to *Pernau*. Beſides, the inhabitants were wealthy, and the town was embelliſhed with many handſome ſtone-edifices; but its wealth and beauty have, from time to time, fallen a prey to the frequent ravages of war.

Not to mention the more ancient ſieges of *Dorpat*, and thoſe in 1582, 1604, and 1654; this city was beſieged by the *Ruſſians* in 1704, when it was taken and plundered, and the inhabitants treated with great cruelty. But the total ruin of it happened in the year 1708, when all the inhabitants were carried away, as priſoners of war, by the *Ruſſians*, and the caſtle and fortifications blown up. Thoſe unhappy captives being afterwards permitted to return to their native place, rebuilt it with mean timber-houſes as their wretched circumſtances would permit.

Since the peace of *Nyſtadt* the number of its inhabitants has been conſiderably increaſed; many foreigners having ſettled here, which has made the town rather more populous than it was under the dominion of the *Swedes*. But notwithſtanding all this, almoſt all the buildings ſtill lie in ruins; and the fortifications, walls, and gates, with moſt of the public edifices and private houſes, which are fallen to decay, make a very melancholy

lancholy appearance. There are as yet but fifteen private houſes built with ſtone at *Dorpat*, and as for public buildings, none but the magazine and the *German* or St. *John*'s church. The preſent inhabitants, though very numerous, are generally poor and indigent, and their affairs are not yet reſtored to their proper order; nor are their former privileges confirmed. Its Univerſity, which was for a time removed to *Pernau*, is quite fallen to decay. Here is an imperial Office called the *Oeconomie*.

Pernau lies in the Circle of *Pernau*, and on the river of the ſame name, near the *Baltic*. It is but a ſmall town moſtly built with timber, has ſome trade, and is defended by a caſtle: it contains about a hundred houſes. I obſerved above that the Univerſity of *Dorpat* was removed hither; but the college is now converted into a magazine; and there is ſcarce ſo much as a common ſchool remaining in the town. The fortifications are ſtill kept in a defenſible ſtate.

Fellin, a ſmall town and caſtle in the Circle of *Pernau*.

The province of *Oeſel*, which includes the iſlands of *Oeſel*, *Moon*, and *Runoe*.

The iſland of *Oeſel*, *Oſilia*, lies at the entrance of the gulf of *Riga* about two leagues to the ſouth of *Dagho*. It is fourteen geographical miles in length, and between two and three in breadth, and contains ten pariſhes. The ſoil is ſtony, but fertile. It was formerly ſubject to the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order, but without prejudice to the crown of *Denmark*'s pretenſions to it. At laſt, the Knights reſigned it up to the *Danes*, who, at the peace of *Bremſebro*, ceded it to the *Swedes*; and the latter, by the treaty of *Nyſtadt*, gave it up to *Ruſſia*. It was formerly a dioceſe; but at preſent is included within the General Government of *Riga*: However, it has an *Unterſtatthalter* or Deputy-Governor, a College of *Land-Raths* or Provincial Counſellors, and its chief of the Nobility. The Deputy-Governor reſides at *Arenſburg* one of the towns of *Oeſel*. *Sonneburg* was formerly a caſtle; but is now totally demoliſhed. A light-houſe has been erected on this iſland for the ſafety of navigators. The *Eſthonians* call this iſland *Curreſaar*, i. e. 'the iſland of the *Cures*;' The inhabitants having in all ages been famed for privateering. M. *Gruber* ſuppoſes that the word *Corſair*, which ſignifies a pirate, is derived from the name of theſe people, contrary to the general opinion which deduces it from the *Corſicans*.

The little iſland of *Moon* which lies near *Oeſel* conſtitutes a pariſh.

The iſland of *Runoe* alſo lies in the gulf of *Riga*; and a light-houſe is erected on it.

2. The general Government of REVAL.

This Government includes the province of *Eſthonia*; or the ſmall Diſtricts of *Wyk*, which is divided into *Land Wyk* and *Strand Wyk*, *Eaſt* and *Weſt Harrien*, *Ierwen*, and *Wirrland*. The chief town in this government is

Reval, which lies on the *Baltic*, and though not very large, is an opulent city and well fortified; and is a place of conſiderable trade. In the year 1218, both the town and caſtle were founded by *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, on the ſame place where his anceſtors had built the convent of St. *Michael*, which, in 1310, was included within its walls. This town, as well as the whole dutchy of *Eſthonia*, received moſt of its privileges from the *Daniſh* Kings; and the arms of *Denmark*, with inſcriptions in the *Daniſh* language, are ſtill ſeen in the churches and other public edifices. The houſes are moſtly of brick, and well built; but the ſtreets are ſomething irregular. The only churches or congregations here, beſides thoſe of the *Ruſſian* Church, are *Lutherans*. The *Germans*, including the Superintendent, have four Miniſters which conſtitute the town clergy: But the cathedral, in which two preachers officiate, belongs to the Nobility; who alſo have their Chapter of Nobles there. The *Swediſh* congregation has but one Miniſter; and that of *Undeutſche* or native *Eſthonians* has two preachers. An annual aſſembly of all the clergy of *Eſthonia* is held at *Reval*; but the town-miniſters are excluded from this Synod. The imperial *Gymnaſium* or Seminary, founded here in the year 1631, has four Profeſſors, and one teacher of the *Ruſſian* language. Here is alſo a town-ſchool; and near the cathedral the ſchool of the Nobility, which has five claſſes. The tolls or cuſtoms of this town are conſiderable; of which the magiſtracy have a part, and the reſt belongs to the crown. *Reval* has its own arſenal; and maintains a number of matroſſes, and a company of ſoldiers. This city, formerly, made no inconſiderable figure among the *Hanſe-towns*; and is ſtill a ſtaple-town, and has a flouriſhing trade. Its harbour is convenient and ſpacious; and a part of the *Ruſſian* fleet uſually lies in it. The town is ſurrounded with high walls, ſtrengthened with baſtions, and a deep ditch; and for its further ſecurity is fortified with a caſtle, which ſtands on a rock and is embelliſhed with ſeveral towers. The citizens have very pleaſant gardens without the walls. King *Waldemar* II. erected this city into a Biſhop's See.

Reval was totally deſtroyed by fire in the year 1433; and in 1710 ſurrendered to *Peter the Great*, who not only confirmed its former privileges, but reſtored ſeveral others of which the crown of *Sweden* had deprived it.

A quarter of a league from this city, near the ſea-ſide, ſtands the fine imperial Garden called *Catharinen-Thal*.

The rich convent of *Marienthal* lies about a geographical mile from *Reval*. The building of this convent took up twenty-nine years, and was begun in the year 1400, or 1407; it was demoliſhed at the Reformation, and is at preſent nothing but a heap of ruins.

Padis, which was formerly a fortified convent; but at preſent belongs to a nobleman.

Habſal,

Habſal, a ſmall town, lies on the ſpot where formerly ſtood the cathedral of the dioceſe of *Oeſel*, which was a ſtately edifice, but is now in a ruinous condition. It has a harbour; but has no great trade.

Lode, a caſtle in this neighbourhood.

Leal, a town where the See of *Oeſel* was firſt eſtabliſhed.

The iſland of *Dagho* in the *Baltic* is tolerably fertile. It is of a triangular form, each ſide being about three geographical miles in length. *Dageroth* on this iſland is remarkable for a light-houſe. *Faden* is a ſmall town; but has a pretty good harbour.

Rogerwick, which lies not far from *Padis*, and about ſix geographical miles from *Reval*. Here *Peter* I. purpoſed to have made an excellent harbour, but it was not compleated in his time. The Empreſs *Eliſabeth*, in 1746, took a view of this place; and ordered the work begun by her father to be proſecuted.

Wittenſtein or *Weiſſenſtein*, a ſmall country town, lies in the Diſtrict of *Ierwen*. Its caſtle in the ſixteenth and ſeventeenth centuries was ſeveral times beſieged and taken; but is now in ruins.

Waſenberg, formerly a ſmall town with a caſtle, now a manor belonging to the noble family of *Tieſenhauſen*.

3. The City of NARVA.

This city lies on the borders of *Ingria*, on the banks of a rapid river of the ſame name, which runs from the *Peipus*-lake, and empties itſelf into the gulf of *Finnland* about four leagues from the city. There is a high water-fall in this river about a geographical mile from *Narva* towards the lake; ſo that the goods brought from the lake to the city, muſt be taken out at that place and carried by land. The town, probably, derives its name from the river; and was built in the year 1224 by the Governor, in the reign of *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*. The circuit of *Narva* is not large; but the houſes are handſomely built with ſtone. It ſtands very commodiouſly for trade, is well fortified, and has always a ſtrong garriſon. On the market-place ſtands an elegant triumphal arch, erected in the year 1746 in honour of the preſent Empreſs *Eliſabeth*.

Beſides the *Ruſſian* churches here is alſo a *Lutheran* church for the *Germans*, and two other churches for the *Finns* and *Swedes*.

Flax is the chief commodity exported from hence; and a great quantity of ſalt is imported in return.

Narva has frequently felt the calamities of war. When it was hardly preſſed by the *Ruſſians* in 1700, it was relieved by *Charles* XII. of *Sweden*; who, with an army greatly inferior in number to that of the *Ruſſians*, entirely defeated the latter with a very great ſlaughter, and raiſed the ſiege. In the year 1704, it was again beſieged by the *Ruſſians* and carried by aſſault; and ſince that time it has been a part of the *Ruſſian* dominions, but with the full enjoyment of all its former rights and privileges; the *Ruſſians* only reſerving the right of appeal to the Senate at *Peterſburg*.

II. INGERMANNLAND,

In Latin *Ingria*;

Or the GOVERNMENT of *PETERSBURG*.

A Map of this province is to be ſeen in M. *Kirillow*'s ATLAS, which *Homann*'s heirs have copied, and in the year 1734, publiſhed under the title of *Ingermannlandia* or *Ingria*. In the large *Ruſſian* ATLAS *Ingria* is included in the map of *Livonia*. It was called, formerly, *Ingarien*, from which the *Latin* name *Ingria* is derived. This province lies between the gulf of *Finnland*, *Carelia*, and *Ruſſia* properly ſo called; and extends about thirty geographical miles in length, and its breadth is nearly equal to its length. This country is fertile, producing both corn and paſture; and abounds in all kinds of game, particularly elks.

Its principal rivers are the *Luga*, the *Siſta*, the *Cowaſſa*, and the *Newa* or *Neva*. The laſt has its ſource in the *Ladoga*-lake, and is a broad, rapid, and navigable river. It runs through *Peterſburg*, where it divides itſelf into ſeveral branches or channels, particularly into the *Great* and *Little Newa*, and the *Newka*; and after a courſe of ſixty *Werſts*, or forty *Engliſh* miles, diſcharges itſelf into the gulf of *Finnland*. There are ſome villages and ſeveral brick-kilns along the banks of the *Newa*; and oppoſite to the village of *Toſna* many ſawing-mills are erected. On the *Ingria* ſide, it receives the ſmall rivers of *Smolenſko*, *Slowianka*, *Izora*, *Cormina*, *Toſna*, *Mga*, *Moika*, *&c.* and on that of *Carelia*, the rivulets *Ockta*, *Singawina*, *Rybnaia*, and *Zernowka* run into the *Newa*. The diſtance from *Narva* to *Petersburg* is ſeven Poſt-ſtages, or one hundred and forty-five *Werſts*.

Formerly, whilſt the *Swedes* were in poſſeſſion of *Ingria*, Lutheraniſm was the only religion profeſſed in the country: but, at preſent, great numbers of *Ruſſians*, who are of the *Greek* religion, are mixed with the old inhabitants.

In the year 1702, this province was recovered by the *Ruſſians*, who were maſters of it once before, even ſo early as the thirteenth century; but had been obliged to give it up to *Sweden*. It was confirmed to *Ruſſia* with their other conqueſts by the treaties of *Nyſtadt* * and *Abo*, as I have mentioned above. *Ingria*, at preſent conſtitutes the Government of *Petersburg*; and the moſt remarkable places in it are as follows.

* See §. 12. p. 421, 422.

Iwan-

Iwangorod, or *John*'s caſtle, is a ſtrong fort on the river *Narva*, cloſe by the city of the ſame name. A particular Diſtrict belongs to this caſtle; which was built in the year 1492, by the Great Duke *Iwan Baſilowitz*. It ſtands on a rock, and is ſurrounded with a treble wall, and ſeveral round baſtions. It derives its name from the founder of it, and is alſo called *Narwa* in the *Ruſſian* language.

Iamburg, a ſmall mean town with an ancient ſtone-caſtle on the river *Luga*. It gives name to the *Iamburg* Diſtrict.

Koporie is a ſmall town built on an eminence in a pleaſant country. In 1612, it was taken by the *Swedes*, but recovered by the *Ruſſians* in 1703.

Kronſtadt, a good town and admirable fortification, ſtands on the iſland of *Retuſari*, which is about a geographical mile in length and one third of a mile in breadth, and is called by the *Ruſſians*, on account of its figure, *Kotlinnoi-Oſtrow*, or the 'kettle-iſland.' *Kronſtadt* lies in the gulph of *Finnland* about eight leagues, by water, from *Petersburg*, and near two leagues from the coaſt of *Ingria*. It was built by *Peter* I. who gave it the name of *Kronſtadt*; and near it, the ſame enterpriſing prince erected the ſtrong fort of *Kronſchloſs* in 1703, in the winter ſeaſon. *Kronſtadt* is pretty large and regular in thoſe parts which were firſt built; but the original plan was not entirely executed. The ſtreets are broad; but only ſome parts of them are paved. The palace of *Peter the Great*, which was built with ſtone, is now uninhabited, and, together with other handſome ſtone edifices which make a grand appearance on the *Ingria* ſide, is falling to decay. The other buildings in this town are but mean. Beſides two principal and ſeveral dependent *Ruſſian* churches, here is a ſmall *Lutheran* church: But the *Engliſh* congregation is no longer in being. The inhabitants of *Kronſtadt* are a medley of all nations, conſiſting of ſailors, ſoldiers, and burghers; and amount to about 20,000 ſouls. The wall round the town has ſeveral great guns planted on it. It is likewiſe defended by the citadel and *Kronſchloſs* fort, which are at a ſmall diſtance from the town on the *Ingria* ſide. *Kronſtadt* has three harbours which are all large, ſafe, and commodious: But the freſh water in the harbour, is very detrimental to the ſhips. The harbour for merchantmen lies weſtward and is very convenient; but that for the ſhips of war, in which the greateſt part of the *Ruſſian* fleet is laid up, lies towards the eaſt. The powder magazine is erected in the water in this harbour. The middle harbour is for other ſhips and yachts belonging to the Crown. This place *Peter the Great* intended to fit up for the repairing of his large men of war, by cutting a ſtone canal of an extraordinary breadth and depth with ſeveral docks in it. But this great work was not compleated till the preſent reign. The canal alone is two *Werſts* and fifty fathoms in length; and from the outward ſluice of the dock to the ſea is three hundred and fifty-eight *Ruſſian*, or four hundred and ſeventeen *Engliſh*, fathoms. The water in it is raiſed to the depth of twenty-four feet by means of two large

large ſluices. On the ſurface of the water, the canal when full is one hundred feet, and at the bottom from fifty-four to ſixty-ſeven, in breadth; the outward and inward walls of the canal and the mole are hewn out of a rock. At the end of the canal is a deep baſon lined with ſtone, which interſects the former at right angles, and is deſigned for a reſervoir of the water of the canal, when the docks are to be cleared of it. This great and uſeful work is not to be paralleled. At the firſt opening of the canal in the year 1752, it received the name of *Peter the firſt and the Great*; and at the mouth of it were erected two pyramids. On the north-ſide of the iſland *Retuſari*, towards *Carelia*, the water is ſo ſhallow as to be navigable only for ſmall boats.

Kronſchloſs is a ſtrong caſtle built on a ſand-bank in the ſea, at the diſtance of a cannon ſhot from *Kronſtadt* harbour, towards *Ingria*. It was erected by *Peter* I. as I obſerved above, for the defence of his conqueſts; and ſuch improvements have been added to it ſince, that like *Kronſtadt*, it is juſtly called the bulwark of *Petersburg*. It is built in the form of a round tower with three galleries one above another; and is well provided with cannon on every ſide. All the ſhips that ſail to *Petersburg* are obliged to paſs between this caſtle and *Kronſtadt* within reach of the cannon from both ſides.

Oranienbaum a fine palace ſituated on the continent, near the gulf of *Finnland*, and directly oppoſite to *Kronſtadt*. It was built by Prince *Menzſhikow*, and was afterwards converted into an hoſpital for ſeamen; but, at preſent, it is the ſummer reſidence of the Great Duke, to whom it belongs. Nothing can be more delightful than the garden adjoining to this ſeat.

Peterhof an imperial ſeat on the coaſt of *Ingria*, where the Empreſs ſpends the ſummer ſeaſon. From the time of *Peter* I. no expence has been ſpared in adding to the charming ſituation of this palace all the embelliſhments of art. The houſe indeed cannot boaſt of any great regularity: But whoever views the elegance of the gardens which are adorned with fountains ejecting vaſt columns of water to an extraordinary height, with the grotto's, double caſcades, pleaſant groves, and many other admirable ornaments, will not think this place much inferior to the celebrated *Verſailles*. The palace ſtands on a hill which is about ſixty feet high; and on one ſide it has a moſt extenſive proſpect, diverſified with noble objects; namely, the city of *Petersburg*, *Kronſtadt*, and the ſea. Among the ſummer houſes belonging to this palace one, diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Mon plaiſir*, i. e. 'my delight,' is particularly remarkable for its curious paintings.

Strelen-Hof, or *Strelna-Muſa*, is an imperial palace built in the water. *Peter* I. employed many thouſands of men in erecting it; for he deſigned it for a ſuperb palace, and a garden with a labyrinth and other embelliſhments; but his plan has not been completed to this day.

Eliſabeth-Hoff, *Annen-Hoff*, and *Catharine-Hoff* are alſo imperial palaces or pleaſure-houſes on the river *Neva*. The laſt, which was the favourite reſidence

ſidence of the Empreſs *Catharine*, conſiſts properly of two edifices, and ſtands in a wood, on one of the fineſt ſpots in the neighbourhood of *Petersburg*: but its low ſituation expoſes it to frequent inundations.

St. PETERSBURG, in Latin *Petropolis* or *Petroburgum*, is one of the capitals and imperial reſidences of the *Ruſſian* Empire. The beginning and increaſe of this great city were very extraordinary; for till the year 1703, the only buildings on the ſpot where this flouriſhing metropolis now ſtands, were two ſmall fiſhing huts. But *Peter the Great* having in that year taken the town of *Nyenſchanze* ſeated on the river *Neva*, and made himſelf maſter of this country; its commodious ſituation for the *Baltic* trade determined him to build a town and fortreſs here. He immediately began to put his project in execution, calling the town by his own name.

At firſt it was deſigned only for a place of arms, to which all kinds of military ſtores might be conveniently brought from the interior parts of the Empire; ſo that by that means the war with *Sweden* might be carried on with more vigour and diſpatch. At this time both the public edifices, and private houſes were built only with timber. The dock and the town had no other fortifications than a mean rampart of earth; nor were the ſtreets paved. In ſhort, if the Czaar had been then deprived of the place, the loſs of it would not have been great. But the victory at *Pultawa* and the conqueſt of *Livonia* inſpired *Peter* I. with hopes that he ſhould be able to preſerve his conqueſts, and to render *Petersburg* the capital of his Empire. His fondneſs for maritime affairs, a deſire of perpetuating his name, and his averſion to *Moſcow*, where in his younger years he had received ſo much ill treatment, were the chief motives that induced him to lay the foundation of this new ſeat of Empire; to which ſome add another inducement, namely, the pleaſure of mortifying the *Ruſſians*, who were ſo ſtrongly attached to the city of *Moſcow*.

Upon this *Peter* I. ordered the caſtle to be built with ſtone, the Admiralty to be walled in with the ſame materials, and all the buildings to be erected in a handſomer and more durable manner, and gardens to be laid out.

In the year 1714, he removed the Council to *Petersburg*, and handſome edifices were erected, in a ſtraight line, for the public offices; which in 1718 were alſo tranſlated hither. The principal families likewiſe were ordered to make this their reſidence, and build houſes according to their abilities. But all this occaſioned an irregularity in the buildings; for the ſituation of the town was not preciſely laid out till the year 1721. The nobility and burghers had been directed to build their houſes on the iſland of *Petersburg*; and not a few buildings both public and private were, accordingly, erected there. But afterwards the Emperor determined, that the whole town ſhould ſtand on the iſland of *Waſili-Oſtrow*. The ſtreets were marked out; canals were dug; the iſland was to be fortified with fifty-ſeven baſtions; and the

the nobility had their houſes to begin a ſecond time. However, the death of the Czaar put a ſtop to the execution of this plan; and the ſtone-buildings which had been erected went to ruin.

The reluctance of the *Ruſſian* Nobility to ſettle at *Petersburg* was no more than what was natural; as they can neither live ſo cheap nor ſo commodiouſly here as they did at *Moſcow*. The country about *Petersburg* is none of the moſt fertile; ſo that proviſions are brought to that city from a great diſtance, and muſt be paid for in ready money; which was no ſmall grievance to the Nobility, who chiefly ſubſiſted on the produce of their eſtates, but ſeldom abounded in money. Beſides, *Moſcow* ſeemed much fitter for the imperial ſeat; being in the centre of the Empire, from whence juſtice might be more eaſily adminiſtred, and the national revenue be received and diſburſed with more conveniency and diſpatch. *Petersburg*, beſides other inconveniences, ſeemed to them to lie too near the *Swediſh* frontiers. However, this city in the time of *Peter* I. became large and ſplendid; and, under his ſucceſſors, received additional improvements; ſo that it is now ranked among the largeſt and moſt elegant cities in *Europe*.

Petersburg lies partly on the continent in *Ingria* and *Finnland* among thick woods, and partly on ſeveral iſlands formed by the branches of the *Neva*, in 59 degrees 57 minutes North Latitude. The low and ſwampy ſoil on which it ſtands has been conſiderably raiſed with trunks of trees, earth, and ſtone: Its ſituation, however, is pleaſant, and the air ſalubrious. The city is about ſix *Engliſh* miles in length, and about as many in breadth; and has neither gates nor a wall; but is open, and ſituated on ſeveral iſlands.

The river *Neva* is about eight hundred paces broad, near *Petersburg*, but has not every where a proportionate depth of water; ſo that large merchant-ſhips are cleared at *Kronſtadt*: but the men of war, built at *Petersburg*, are conveyed to *Kronſtadt* by means of certain machines called *camels*. This river divides itſelf into two main branches, called the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and ſeveral ſmaller ſtreams. Beſides the *Neva*, the rivers *Fontanka* and *Moika* contribute to form the large and ſmall iſlands on which the city ſtands; which is alſo watered by ſeveral canals. There is but one ſingle bridge over the *Neva*, which is conſtructed with large flat-bottomed boats, and joins the dock-yard to *Baſili-Oſtrow*. The *Praams*, or lighters by which this bridge is ſupported, are laid acroſs the river in ſpring ſo as to form a ſafe and convenient paſſage: But in autumn, before the froſt begins, they are always removed. The only communication between the other iſlands, even in ſummer, is either in boats or barks which croſs the water at ſtated times: but bridges are built over the *Moika* and *Fontanka*, and likewiſe over the canals.

The number of houſes at *Petersburg* are computed at 8000, about ſix hundred of which are of ſtone; but the reſt are built with timber, and far

the moſt part, in an irregular manner after the *Ruſſian* taſte. There are about twenty *Ruſſian* churches in this city, beſides four Lutheran churches for the *Germans*, and ſeveral Calviniſtical for the *Swedes*, *Finns*, *Germans*, and *French* Proteſtants; and other places of worſhip for the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Roman-Catholics*. In deſcribing this city more particularly, we ſhall begin with

1. *Petersburg-iſland*, which is formed by the *Great* and *Little Neva* and the *Newka*. Under this name we alſo include the ſmall iſland on which the fort, which is in the middle of the *Neva* and alſo of the city, ſtands. This fort is of an hexagonal form, and built with ſtone according to the modern improvements in fortification: It is planted with a great number of cannon, and additional works are continually made to it, which are all vaulted: the dungeons under it are chiefly made uſe of for priſons. In the middle of it ſtands an elegant church, where the remains of *Peter the Great*, his conſort *Catharine*, and ſeveral other perſonages of that illuſtrious family are depoſited in very magnificent mauſoleums. In the high beautiful tower belonging to this church, the ſpire of which is covered with gilt copper, hangs a fine ſet of bells, with chimes made in *Holland*, which play twice in four-and-twenty hours at twelve of the clock. On one of the baſtions of this fort facing the imperial palace, a flag is always hung out according to the cuſtom in *Holland*; which, on ſtate-holydays, is exchanged for a finer with the *Ruſſian* Eagle on it. On the ſame baſtion alſo, when the *Neva* is not frozen, a great gun is fired at the riſing and ſetting of the ſun, as a ſignal for the ſailors. As this fort ſtands in the centre of the town, it is not only a defence, but a very great ornament to it. It ſerves alſo for a ſecure priſon; and, on an exigency, may prove a convenient aſylum to the Sovereign. On ſtate-holydays the baſtions and curtains of this fort are finely illuminated with lamps. On the iſland of *Petersburg*, properly ſo called, is a horn-work belonging to the caſtle. This iſland is above two leagues in circumference, and is extremely well peopled; but moſt of the houſes are meanly built; and the five *Ruſſian* churches, the ſhambles, inns, and corn-market have nothing that deſerves notice. On this iſland is ſtill to be ſeen the ſmall wooden houſe which *Peter the Great* ordered to be built, and lived in, the firſt time he arrived on the ſpot where, at preſent, this ſuperb city ſtands; and that it may remain as a laſting monument of that circumſtance, it is incloſed within a ſtone-wall, and has been covered with a new roof. This iſland is ſeparated, by the *Carvowka*, from another called the *Apothecaries-Iſland*, which is about five or ſix *Engliſh* miles in circumference, and contains about two hundred houſes, beſides the large phyſic garden where all kinds of *European* and *Aſiatic* plants, roots and trees, with proper green-houſes, *&c.* are to be ſeen. The other part of this iſland conſiſts of a pleaſant wood. From the iſland of *Old-Petersburg* you croſs the *Little-Neva*, and come to

2. The iſland of *Waſili-Oſtrow*, or '*Baſil*'s *Iſland*,' which is the largeſt of all theſe iſlands. It is environed by the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and lies towards *Kronſtadt*. The greateſt part of it is covered with woods, and the reſt with buildings. It has twelve broad ſtreets running in a direct line, and of an uncommon length. They are called the *Lines*, and diſtinguiſhed by numbers; they are alſo interſected at right angles by ſix croſs ſtreets; but are not paved. The viſta's through theſe ſtreets are very broad and beautiful at both extremities. The largeſt extends the whole length of the iſland as far as the galley-harbour; but the ſmalleſt is not ſo long. Several large canals are cut through this iſland, particularly at the places where the buildings ſtand; but moſt of them being now gone to decay, are little better than moraſſes. Oppoſite to *Peterſburg* iſland, and adjoining to the hemp warehouſe, are the Exchange, the Cuſtom-houſe, the Pack-houſe, and the Key where the merchants ſhips unload. Contiguous to theſe are ſeveral large ſtone-buildings belonging to the Imperial Academy of Sciences, which was founded in 1724 by *Peter* I. and endowed with a yearly revenue of 24,912 *Rubels*. That Monarch alſo intended to erect an Academy of the Polite Arts; but as eſtimates of the neceſſary charges of ſuch an inſtitution have not yet been made, the preſent Empreſs *Elizabeth* was pleaſed to augment the above-mentioned endowment to 53,298 *Rubels*.

The Academy is divided into two claſſes; the firſt conſtituting the ACADEMY, properly ſo called, and the ſecond the UNIVERSITY. The members of the former are employed only in finding out new inventions, or in improving the diſcoveries of others. They are properly ſtiled *Academici*; but are commonly called *Profeſſores*. They are under no obligation to inſtruct youth, unleſs particular pupils are recommended to them, or they do it voluntarily for their own advantage. This Academy is again divided into four claſſes: Namely, 1. The Aſtronomical and Geographical Claſs. 2. The Phyſical Claſs, whoſe province it is to make improvements in Botany, Anatomy, and Chymiſtry. 3. The Phyſico-Mathematical Claſs, who ſtudy Mechanics, civil and military Architecture, and Experimental Philoſophy. 4. The Higher Mathematical Claſs, who ſolve queſtions and problems propoſed by the other Claſſes, and likewiſe ſuch as are received from foreign parts. Beſides the ten Ordinary Members, the Academy has ten foreign Extraordinary Members, to whom, for the trouble they are ſometimes put to in elucidating difficult and important queſtions ſent them by the Academy, a penſion is allowed, which is not to exceed two hundred *Rubels*. Every Academician has an *Adjunctus*, who is under his care, and ſucceeds him in his place. The Academy is governed by a Preſident, but in ſuch a manner, that every thing is tranſacted under the auſpices and direction of her Imperial Majeſty. The Preſident, at this time, is Count *Kirila Grigoriiewitſh Raſumouſki* or *Cyrillus*

Cyrillus Grogorides, *Hettmann* of the *Coſaks*. By the Statutes of the Academy three ſolemn meetings are to be held every year; and at each of thoſe public aſſemblies a *Latin* and a *Ruſſian* diſſertation are to be read.

The UNIVERSITY has its particular Profeſſors who read lectures in the Sciences both in the *Latin* and *Ruſſian* languages. Difference of religion does not diſqualify a perſon for being a Profeſſor; but they are injoined not to inculcate to their pupils any thing contrary to the doctrines of the *Greek* church. The ſtudents are inſtructed in Poetry, *Greek* and *Latin*, Arithmetic, Drawing, Geometry and other branches of the Mathematics, civil and eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory, Genealogy and Heraldry, Philoſophy, and Antiquity: But every pupil is not inſtructed in all theſe ſeveral ſciences; nor are youth of mean circumſtances admitted into the Univerſity. In the year 1750, the number of ſtudents amounted to thirty; who were ſent hither from different convents, and lived in one houſe together under the inſpection of a Profeſſor. The college deſigned for the Academy, which ſtands ſomething lower, was deſtroyed by fire in 1747, and has not yet been rebuilt. In the buildings which belong to the Academy are 1. The Imperial library, which, as appears by the catalogue publiſhed in the year 1742, in three Volumes 8*vo*. contains 2699 *folio's*, 3410 *quarto's*, 8078 *octavo's* and *duodecimo's*; amounting in all to 14,187 volumes, beſides 282 *Ruſſian* manuſcripts. 2. The fine Muſeum, containing natural and artificial curioſities, with a collection of phyſical, mathematical, and other inſtruments. 3. The Printing-houſe. 4. The Bookſeller's ſhop. 5. The apartment for Book-binding. 6. Another for Letter-founding. 7. The Engraving apartment. 8. The Painting Academy. 9. The room where mathematical inſtruments are made. The famous copper-globe of *Gottorp*, which ſtood on the tower of the Academy, was almoſt totally conſumed by fire, along with the tower, in 1747; but has been repaired at a great expence, and with admirable ſkill. You aſcend a few ſteps, and enter into the Globe through a ſmall door. Within ſtands a table with benches round it, on which twelve perſons may conveniently ſit, and be turned round with the celeſtial globe, the outſide of which is the terreſtrial globe. The diameter of it is eleven feet: It was brought hither, in 1714, from *Gottorp* at a great expence; and at preſent ſtands in a ſtone edifice by itſelf, having been firſt repaired and beautified, and rendered more accurate than before by new improvements.

The *Gymnaſium* and *Seminarium* alſo belong to the Univerſity.

The next remarkable place in order is the *Theatrum Pyrotechnicum*, or the 'Fire-work Theatre,' which is built on piles in the *Neva*, oppoſite to the imperial Winter-Palace. Here is a very long ſtone-building appropriated for the State-colleges and offices. Juſt beyond theſe ſtands the ſpacious and elegant ſtructure, which was formerly Prince *Menſhikow*'s palace, but now the Academy of the corps of Cadets of noble families,

to which conſiderable additions have been made; but it ſtill wants a left wing.

By the advice of the Field-Marſhal Count *Munich*, the Empreſs *Anne*, in the year 1731, iſſued out a proclamation inviting all the young nobility, and officers ſons, of *Ruſſia* and *Livonia* to repair to *Petersburg*, where they ſhould be educated *gratis* according to their rank, *&c.* Purſuant to this ordinance, in the beginning of the year 1732, they made their appearance at *Petersburg*; and the above-mentioned palace was aſſigned for their dwelling. At that time the number of *Ruſſian* Cadets on this foundation was to be two hundred and forty, and of the *Germans* one hundred and twenty; which number was then indeed complete, beſides ſome ſupernumeraries. But it is now no longer ſo, eſpecially with reſpect to *German* Cadets; as, of late years, they have been obliged to engage, That they will never quit the *Ruſſian* dominions, nor enter into foreign ſervice. Three, four, five, ſeven, eight or even ten *Germans* and *Ruſſians* intermixed together lodge in one apartment, under the inſpection of a ſubaltern, or one of the ſenior Cadets, as a monitor. At dinner they have three, and at ſupper two diſhes ſerved up; a captain and a lieutenant being always preſent. They form three companies, each of which ought to conſiſt of one hundred and twenty perſons. Their preſent Director or Governor in chief is Prince *Iuſſopow*. Next to him is the *Commandeur*, who is a Lieutenant-Colonel; and under him is the Major. Every company has a Captain, a Lieutenant-Captain, a firſt and ſecond Lieutenant, Enſign, Serjeant-major, two Serjeants, a *Capitaine d'Armée*, a Quarter-maſter, a Vice-Enſign, four Corporals, and eight Exempts. The ſubaltern officers are ſelected from among the Cadets; and ſometimes even the field-officers. Formerly, they uſed to be employed during the whole ſummer-ſeaſon in the exerciſe of arms: but at preſent they are exerciſed in *June* and part of *July*; and that not after the *Pruſſian* manner as heretofore, but according to the *Ruſſian* diſcipline on foot. They are divided into Granadiers, of which there are but few, and *Muſqueteers*. Every four hours twelve men and three Granadiers with a Serjeant, Corporal, and Exempt mount guard. They have two ſuits of clothes once in two years, one for every day, and the other to wear when they are on duty. Their uniform conſiſts of green, and ſtraw-coloured waſte-coats; and the coats they wear on duty are embelliſhed with a narrow gold-lace. They are alſo allowed two laced-hats, the one for duty and the other to wear every day; three half-upper ſhirts trimmed with lawn at the boſoms, three pair of ruffled ſleeves, three cravats, three under-ſhirts, two pair of ſpatter-daſhes once in two years, and every year three pair of ſhoes. Their hours for inſtruction are, in the morning, from ſeven to eleven, and in the afternoon from two to ſix; they are taught in claſſes the *Ruſſian*, *German*, *French*, and *Latin* languages, with the following ſciences, namely, Mathematics, Hiſtory, Geography, Ethics, Politics,

Politics, Logic, Civil Law; and likewiſe dancing, fencing, riding, drawing, and other genteel exerciſes. According to the original plan, their education was to be intruſted to three Profeſſors of Law, Mathematics, Hiſtory and the *Ruſſian* language; four *Adjuncti* or aſſiſtants, and twenty-four maſters; but ſome of theſe places are now vacant. There are alſo a riding-maſter and his aſſiſtant, an equerry and four grooms, with a ſtud of ſeventy or eighty horſes maintained on this foundation. The *Ruſſian* Cadets have their particular church with two Prieſts, two Lecturers, one Deacon, and two Sextons; and the *Germans* have a Preacher, a Chanter, and a Sexton, with a church ſet apart for them; which is alſo frequented by many other *Lutherans* from the city. Divine Service is performed in both churches morning and evening; and the *Ruſſian* Popes or Prieſts generally preach a ſermon. None are admitted into this corps under twelve years of age; and every Cadet, according to the ſtatutes, is to continue there five or ſix years: But ſeveral of them do not ſtay ſo long, and others continue longer in the Academy. Some of theſe young perſons who are deſigned for civil employments are termed ſtudents, and are not inſtructed in any military exerciſes. The others, at their diſmiſſion, are diſtributed among the regiments, the Cadets as Enſigns; the Corporals as ſecond Lieutenants; the Serjeants as Serjeants-major; and the Enſigns as firſt Lieutenants. This corps is under the controul of the Council of State and the Senate; and the annual expence of this foundation amounts to 65,000 *Rubels*. The ſalary of the Governor in chief is 1000 *Rubels*; that of the Colonel 1500, and that of the Major 700 *Rubels*; and the reſt in proportion. The Profeſſors and Maſters have apartments *gratis* in the houſe, to which a very fine garden alſo belongs.

Near this Academy is the bridge of boats over the *Neva*; and not far from the latter is the Academy for three hundred and ſixty Sea-Cadets. Beſides a *Ruſſian* church, and the above-mentioned *Lutheran* church for the Cadets; there is alſo in the ſtreet called the *Third-Line* a *German* Lutheran church, which has the appearance of a private houſe, and the Preacher lives in it. On this iſland of *Baſil* are likewiſe two *Ruſſian* pariſh churches and a ſugar-houſe. The galley-harbour lies a little lower down towards *Kronſtadt*. In ſailing up the *Neva* from *Kronſtadt*, one ſees on the *Waſili-Oſtrow*, which lies to the left, a very long row of near fifty elegant ſtone-palaces, built by the *Ruſſian* Nobility, in the *Italian* taſte, extending itſelf on the bank of the river almoſt as far as the Cadet-Academy; but moſt of them are now empty and falling to decay. On the right-hand is

3. The Admiralty-Side, or Admiralty-Iſland, which is environed by the *Neva* and the river *Fontanka*; and from this iſland the bridge of boats is laid in the ſummer to *Waſili-Oſtrow* or *Baſils* iſland. There is alſo a watch tower erected at the mouth of the *Neva* between theſe two iſlands. This is the moſt magnificent part of the city. A parchment-manufactory, the Admiralty-

Admiralty-Victualing-Office, the Galley-dock where all the galleys are built, and the vaſt timber ſtorehouſes for ſhip-building lie on this iſland. Here are alſo a great number of handſome ſtone-houſes and elegant palaces, along the river ſide, reaching almoſt to the bridge of boats. The *Engliſh* factory have their place of worſhip in this part, and behind it, is *New-Holland*, with the rope-walk. The Admiralty, or Dock-yard, is fortified with a wall, and five baſtions planted with a great many guns; and all ſhips at coming into the harbour ſalute it. There are always ſome men of war on the ſtocks in this yard. The top of the tower belonging to the Admiralty is gilt in the ſame manner as that of the great church in the caſtle.

Near this place is the imperial Winter-Palace, which is a large ſquare building of three ſtories high; but the architecture is not extraordinary. Behind it in a ſpacious area ſtands a noble equeſtrian ſtatue of gilt braſs, erected in honour of *Peter* I. Adjoining to this, along the banks of the *Neva*, are ſeveral other palaces, among which is the old imperial Winter-Palace, ſeveral elegant ſtone buildings, the new Play-houſe which is built with timber; and the delightful imperial Summer-Palace which is alſo of wood, but one ſtory high, and looks only like a pleaſure-houſe. Behind this palace are ſeveral ſtone-buildings for the officers, *&c.* belonging to the court. It has a very fine orangery, and a beautiful large garden ornamented with a moſt admirable grotto, fountains and other water-works, and a great number of valuable marble and alabaſter ſtatues brought from *Italy*; but they are not all of them equally well executed. Two of theſe ſtatues which ſtand near the grotto, repreſenting Religion and Faith, are greatly admired by the connoiſſeurs for the appearance of the faces through thin tranſparent veils, which ſeem to cover them. This garden is alſo famous for a pleaſant grove of oaks; which has not its equal in all the *Ruſſian* Empire. The dock affords a double viſta, one to the *Ruſſian* church of the Aſcenſion; the other is terminated by the Convent of *Alexander Newſki*. The elegant buildings on both ſides of the river *Fontanka* alſo make a moſt beautiful appearance from hence. The ſtreets that lie behind the Admiralty, and along the fields behind the imperial Summer-Palace, are very grand and magnificent; but theſe are equalled, if not excelled by the *Great* and *Little Morſkoi* and the *Million-Street*, which are embelliſhed with the moſt ſuperb buildings. At the end of the *Million-Street*, near the garden of the Summer-Palace, the Emperor has a curious diſpenſary. In this part alſo lie the imperial ſtables, and the dwellings of the Officers belonging to them; the church of the *Swediſh Finns*; the *German* Lutherans church, dedicated to St. *Peter*, which is an elegant ſtructure and the chief of the Proteſtant eccleſiaſtical buildings; the church of the *German* and *French* Calviniſts; the ſhops, which to the number of one hundred lie in a ſtraight line, and form a viſta (no merchant being allowed to have a ſhop in his houſe) where all ſorts of goods are to be ſold; and lastly, two market-places full of ſhops, near which are the menagery, the park, and the elephant-yard where ſeveral of thoſe animals are kept.

4. The

4. The *Moſcovite-Side*, which is properly the city, is on the continent; and part of it is very well built. In this quarter are the following places of note: The private dock; the Court-Victualling-Office; the foundery on the *Neva*, in which great numbers of mortars and cannon are caſt; the fire-work elaboratory; the aqueduct which ſupplies the fountains in the Emperor's garden; the *German* Lutheran church dedicated to St. *Anne*; three *Ruſſian* churches; the pheaſant-houſe; the *Italian* Garden; the *Muſcovite Iemſkoi*; the Convent of St. *Alexander Newſki*, of which a particular account ſhall be given in the ſequel; and the barracks for the horſe-guards, together with the ſtables for their horſes.

5. Laſtly, on the *Wibourg-Side*, as it is called, are the following remarkable places: St. *Samſon*'s church, and the *Ruſſian* and *German* burial-places; the ſugar-houſe; the land and ſea-hoſpital; the hoſpital-church; the beer-brewers quarter; the *Dutch* beer brew-houſe; a rope-walk; the ſuburb called *Sloboda Koſatſchia*; a nurſery of young oaks; great *Ockta*; a *Ruſſian* church; the ruins of a fort called *Nienſchanz*, which was taken and demoliſhed in 1703 by *Peter* I. and little *Ockta*.

There is a great variety of curious manufactures in this city; as that of looking-glaſſes, gold and ſilver works, tapeſtry, *&c.* Its extenſive commerce alſo adds a great importance to *Petersburg*; for a vaſt number of ſhips from all maritime countries frequent this port, as the mart for buying all *Ruſſian* commodities; and find a vent for all the goods they import, and for which there is a demand in *Ruſſia*.

The inhabitants of this large city, beſides *Ruſſians*, conſiſt of all nations; ſo that a perſon hears a great variety of languages, and ſees an infinite diverſity of faſhions and cuſtoms at *Petersburg*. The burghers or citizens, properly ſo called, do not exceed two hundred; but the town contains above 100,000 Souls. The ſplendor of the Court is imitated by the inhabitants in general; though every thing belonging to apparel, and eſpecially if it be made by foreign artificers is very dear; and likewiſe furniture, and houſes in a good ſituation bear, ſometimes, a very high price in this city. On the other hand, proviſions (wine, lemons, oranges and ſome other foreign particulars excepted) are ſold here very cheap, and in winter are brought hither in great abundance from the diſtance of ſeveral hundred miles.

The morals of the inhabitants, as in all large cities, are very much corrupted and depraved. The ſupicious vigilance of the *Ruſſian* government renders it neceſſary for a ſtranger to be very circumſpect in his words and behaviour: However foreigners, who are very numerous here, enjoy all poſſible liberty of conſcience, as long as they do not ſay any thing againſt the *Greek* religion.

When a perſon intends to ſet out from hence in order to quit the country, he muſt be furniſhed with a Paſs, and advertiſe his name and intention of travelling in the news-papers. No ſooner is the winter ſet in, than near

3000

3000 *Ruſſians* repair with their ſledges to *Petersburg*, where they ſtand in every ſtreet, and are ſo cheap and convenient that few go on foot even about the town. A ſledge and a horſe may be hired for ten *Copeiks* * an hour; and within that time this carriage will go about ſeven or eight *Engliſh* miles, the horſe continually galloping. Every *Iſhvoſtiek*, or driver, is marked with a certain number on his back. It is ſufficient for a ſtranger to know the place or the houſe where he is to go, and three or four *Ruſſian* words; as *Stupai*, drive on; *Stoy*, ſtop; *Pramo*, ſtraight on; *Na prava* to the right; *Na leva* to the left; and the driver will carry him ſafe. Moſt houſe-keepers have their own ſledges and horſes; and perſons of diſtinction have alſo their poſtillion. In ſummer-time thoſe who are not inclined to go on foot in this extenſive city, either make uſe of their own carriage, which is almoſt of abſolute neceſſity here, or elſe hire curricles or boats. The police of this city is good, and ſtrictly executed. There are few places where ſo many great guns are fired, for diverſion, as at *Petersburg*. A ſouth-weſt wind in autumn frequently occaſions an inundation here: thoſe which happened in 1721, 1726, 1736, and 1752 did very great damage, to this city.

The convent of St. *Alexander Newſki* lies about five *Werſts* from the caſtle, on the river *Neva*; and was built in honour of that pious Prince in the form of an eagle, but is not yet compleated. It contains above two hundred apartments. In the middle of the building ſtands a very large and beautiful church, which repreſents the eagle's body; the two towers, its neck and head; the ſpire, the Imperial Crown; and the two ſmall churches on each ſide, the two wings. In this convent are depoſited the pretended remains of that Saint, for which the preſent Empreſs *Eliſabeth* ordered a ſilver ſhrine to be made, which lies on a ſuperb monument covered with ſilver plates of a conſiderable thickneſs.

Sarſkoe-Selo is a pleaſant imperial palace about thrity *Werſts* from *Petersburg*, with a park and a garden. In the hermitage is a table, which by ſcrews may be raiſed up into the apartment above, and let down again, at pleaſure.

Poſad is a mean little town at the entrance of the *Ladoga* canal; near which, on a ſmall iſland in the *Neva*, is another imperial palace.

Schluſſelburg, a ſtrong fort, ſtands on a ſmall iſland in the middle of the *Neva*, juſt where it runs out of the *Ladoga*-lake, and commands both ſhores. It was formerly called *Oreſhek*, or *Oreckowitz*; and in the *Swediſh* language, *Notteburg*, from the form of the iſland whereon it ſtands, which reſembles a nut. But *Peter the Great* having made himſelf maſter of it in the year 1702, changed the name of this fort to *Schluſſelburg*; that monarch eſteeming it the key [*Schluſſel*] of his conqueſts. Its walls are two fathoms and a half thick, and built in the old manner. In one angle of this fort is a ſmall ſtrong caſtle. The *Ruſſians* have improved this fort both

* About five-pence ſterling.

within and without, and added new works to it. It has undergone many ſieges; and when *Peter* I. took it in 1702, he ordered two medals to be ſtruck in commemoration of his ſucceſs. On one of them is the following inſcription:

Notteburgum nunc Schluſſelburgum poſt annos XC *ab hoſte recuperatum.* Actum d. 12 Octob. ſ. v. MDCCII.

'*Notteburg*, now called *Schuleſſelburg*, recovered from the enemy, after 'ninety years poſſeſſion, on the twelfth of *October* 1702.'

III. The late acquiſitions in *CARELIA*,

Or the GOVERNMENT of *WIBURG*.

THIS province includes part of the Great Dutchy of *Finnland*, which was ceded to *Ruſſia* by the *Swedes*, and conſiſts of,

1. Part of FINNLANDISH-CARELIA.

Carelia has often been a bone of contention between *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*. In the year 1293, it fell under the *Swediſh* dominion; but in 1338, part of it was yielded up to *Ruſſia*. By the peace of *Nyſtadt* concluded in 1721, a ſtill greater part of this country was reſigned to the *Ruſſians*; the weſtern part only being left in the poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*. After this *Sweden* was obliged to give up, by the treaty of *Abo*, the fort of *Frederickſhamn* and *Wilmannſtrand*, with part of the pariſh of *Pythis*, which lies on the other ſide of the eaſtern branch of the river *Kymmene*. In this part of *Carelia* are the following places of note.

Suſterbeck, which lies on the gulf of *Finnland*, is remarkable both for the excellency, largeneſs, and contrivance of its manufactories of muſkets, ſwords, and iron utenſils. The greateſt part of the arms of the *Ruſſian* forces are caſt or forged in this place.

Wiborg, by the *Finnlanders* called *Somelinde*, was formerly the capital of all *Carelia*, a Biſhop's See, and the bulwark of *Sweden* againſt *Ruſſia*. It is ſituated on the ſea, and carries on a conſiderable trade. *Peter the Great* having taken this town by capitulation in the year 1710, improved its fortifications; which have ever ſince been kept in ſuch good condition, that *Wiborg* may now be looked on as the bulwark of *Ruſſia* againſt *Sweden*. This city was built in the year 1293, and has often ſuffered by fire.

Willmannſtrand ſtands on the *Saima*-lake, and is called in the *Finnean*-language *Lappi Weſſi*, i. e. '*Lapp*-water.' It had formerly the name of *Lapſtrand* and was only a market-place; but was afterwards made a town: however, it has no magiſtrate of its own, but is dependent on *Frederickſhamn*. It was alſo a conſiderable mart for tar, and the reſidence of a

Swediſh Governor. On the twenty-third of *Auguſt* 1741, an obſtinate battle was fought about an *Engliſh* mile from this town between 3000 *Swedes* and 16,000 *Ruſſians*; but at laſt the former were obliged to yield to ſuperiority of numbers. The *Ruſſians*, having gained the victory, burnt *Willmannſtrand*, which before was fortified with a moat and wall; but it has ſince been rebuilt.

Frederickſhamn, in Latin *Frederici Portus*, lies on the gulf of *Finnland*, on the ſpot where the town of *Wekelax*, which was burnt by the *Ruſſians* in 1712, formerly ſtood. In the year 1723 this town was endowed with a charter, and governed by two burgomaſters: it had alſo a good harbour, and a conſiderable trade in tar; and was fortified by a caſtle built in 1722. But in the laſt war between the *Swedes* and *Ruſſians*, it was burnt to the ground and ceded to the latter. By the peace of *Nyſtadt* the limits betwixt the *Swediſh* and *Ruſſian Carelia* were fixed near this place.

2. Part of KEXHOLM.

This country anciently belonged to *Ruſſia*; and, indeed, was wreſted from them, in 1293 and 1580, by the *Swedes*; but ſoon after recovered. The Czaar *Waſilei Iwanowitz Shuiſki* promiſed it to King *Charles* IX. in conſideration of the aſſiſtance he gave him; but the Czaar did not keep his word. *Guſtavus Adolphus* revenged this affront, and compelled the Czaar *Michael Feoderowitz* to reſign this country to him at the peace of *Stolbow*. In 1721, the ſouthern and beſt part of it, together with the fortreſs of *Kexholm*, was reſtored to *Ruſſia* by the treaty of *Nyſtadt*. The moſt remarkable place in it is

Kexholm or *Calerogorod*, i. e. 'the fortreſs of *Carelia*,' which is a ſtrong town; but the buildings are all of wood. It ſtands on two ſmall iſlands at the influx of the river *Woxen* into the lake of *Ladoga*. The town is built on one of theſe iſlands, and the caſtle on the other.

3. A Part of SAWOLAX,

Yielded up to *Ruſſia*, by the treaty of *Abo*, in 1743. It conſiſts of the town of *Nyſlot* and a diſtrict of two miles round it.

Nyſlot, in Latin *Arx Nova*, and in the *Finnean*-language called *Sawotinna*, lies on the *Saima*-lake, and was built in 1745. Its caſtle which ſtands on a rock in a river near the town, and from which the latter derives its name, is extremely well fortified both by art and nature. In the year 1495, it baffled the attempts of *Ruſſia*; but in 1714 was obliged to ſubmit to their arms. It was reſtored to the *Swedes* at the peace of *Nyſtadt*; but they were obliged to give it up to the *Ruſſians* by the treaty of *Abo*.

In the next place, we are to give an account of

The PROVINCES which have always made a part of RUSSIA. Theſe are as follows.

I. The

I. The GOVERNMENT of *NOWOGROD.*

THIS Government includes the Dutchy of *Nowogrod*, or the iſland of Great *Nowogrod*, which the *Ruſſians* conquered in the year 1478. In this country lies the *Oſero-Ilmen*, or *Ilmen*-lake, from which the river *Wolcow* runs; and thoſe great rivers called the *Wolga*, *Dneiper*, and the *Poliſh Dwina* have alſo their ſources in this province. *Peter the Great* ordered a canal to be cut between the rivers *Twerza* and *Miſta*, near the town of *Wiſchni Wolotſhok*; ſo that, at preſent, there is a communication between the *Caſpian-Sea*, (along the rivers *Wolga*, *Twerza*, and *Miſta*,) and the *Ilmen*-lake; and from thence there is a paſſage for veſſels along the river *Wolcow* into the *Ladoga*-lake; and from the latter down the *Neva* into the *Baltic*.

This Government includes the following Circles or Diſtricts.

1. The Circle of NOWOGROD, called by the *Ruſſians Nowogorodſkoi Uiezd.*

In this Diſtrict are the following remarkable places.

Nowogrod Weliki, or *Great Nowogrod*, in Latin *Novogardia* or *Neapolis magna*, is a very ancient, large and celebrated city, ſituated on the river *Wolcow*, juſt where it runs out of the *Ilmen*-lake. It is a place of conſiderable trade, and the ſeat of a Governor. It was firſt built in the ninth century by the *Sclavonians*; and improved by *Rurik*, a *Waregerian* Prince, for his place of reſidence. *Nowogrod* was a famous ſtaple of the *Hanſe-towns* till 1494; and grew ſo powerful as to give occaſion to a phraſe, 'Can any body withſtand God and *Nowogrod?*' But by frequently falling into the hands of the enemy, and the many conflagrations which from time to time have happened in this town, it is ſo far reduced, that ſcarce any marks of its former grandeur now remain. The churches and convents are the only objects worthy of notice; the reſt of the town conſiſting of ſmall wooden houſes. It is however, an Archbiſhop's See. The fortifications conſiſt of old walls and deep moats. The old *Ruſſian* writers call this city *Holmgarde*.

St. *Antony*'s convent lies on the river *Wolcow* about two *Werſts* from *Novogrod*, and is the principal monaſtery in the country. St. *Antony*, the founder of it died, and was buried here in 1147. Beſides his monument, here is ſhewn a mill-ſtone on which, as his votaries gravely aſſert, he ſailed from *Rome* to this place, and ſome other curioſities of the ſame nature.

Staraia Ladoga, or old *Ladoga*, is a ſmall town on the river *Wolcow* conſiſting of about fifty houſes, with two churches and the ruins of a caſtle. It was, indeed, formerly a large city, and the firſt reſidence of *Rurik* Prince of *Ruſſia*; but when the canal of *Ladoga* was made, it gradually fell to decay.

Nowaia Ladoga, or *New Ladoga*, lies between the lake of *Ladoga*, and the canal of that name which here joins the river *Wolcow*. This ſmall town was peopled from *Old Ladoga* for the moſt part, and is the reſidence of a *Waiwode*.

Wiiſhnei Wolotſhok, a conſiderable village on the river *Twerza*, inhabited by ſea-faring people. It was conſumed by fire in the years 1748 and 1753. Here the *Twerza* and *Mſta* are joined together by a canal.

Staraia Ruſſa, a ſmall town, but famous for its ſalt-works.

Tikſinſkoi Poſad, a convent ſituated on the river *Tikſina*.

Stolbowa, a village near the *Tikſina*, where, in the year 1617, a peace was concluded betwixt *Ruſſia* and *Sweden*.

Olonetz, a town on the river *Olonia*, to which belongs a large territory. In this town are an iron-work, and a forge.

Petrowſkoi Sawod, an iron work.

Powenetz, a large village.

Wygowſkie Mednie Sawodi, an iron work on the river *Wiig*.

Porkow, a town ſituated on the river *Shelona*.

Waldai, a large market town.

Cotilaw, a poſt-ſtage. This is remarkable for being the place where the Great Duke *Peter Feodorowitz* lay ill of the ſmall pox in 1745, and happily recovered of that dangerous diſtemper.

2. The PROVINCE of PLESKOW.

Places of note in this province are,

Pſkow or *Pleſkow*, a ſtrong provincial town which lies on the river *Welika*. It is a Biſhop's See, and a place of great trade; and conſequently is very populus. In the year 1581, it held out a ſiege againſt the *Poles*.

Iſborſk, an ancient town with a caſtle of the ſame name.

Petſherſkoi, a convent famous in hiſtory for having been frequently beſieged by the *Livonian* knights. It is ſo called from the ſubterraneous paſſages near it, which, it is ſaid, have a communication with thoſe of *Kiew*.

Kobylie was formerly a town on the *Peipus*-lake, and on account of its having been often demoliſhed it had the name of *Goroditſke*. Here are ſtill ſome inhabitants.

Gdow a town in this neighbourhood.

Oſtrow, a ſmall town, ſtands on an iſland in the river *Welika*, and has a Diſtrict belonging to it.

Wyſhegorod, *Wrew*, *Wybor*, *Wolodimeritz* and *Dubkow* or *Dubiow*, ſmall towns dependent on *Oſtrow*.

Opotſka, a ſmall town lying on an iſland in the river *Welika*, to which the little towns of *Kraſnoi*, *Welie* and *Woronetſh* are ſubject.

Rſkewa Puſtaia, or *Sawolotſkie*, is immediately dependant on *Pleſkow*. This town ſtands on an iſland formed by the river *Welika*.

3. The

3. The Province of WELIKOLUK, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Welikoluzkaia Provinciia.*

Places of note in this province are,

Welikie Luki, a provincial town, which gives title to the Archbiſhop of *Novogrod.*

Colm, a little town on the river *Lowat*, to which a particnlar Diſtrict belongs.

Tropetz, a town of good trade on the river *Toropa.*

4. The Province of TWER.

Remarkable places in this Province are,

Twer, the provincial town, which lies on both ſides of the *Wolga*, at the influx of the river *Twerza.* It is a large town, having ſeventy churches and convents, and carries on a conſiderable trade in corn. It is at preſent an Archbiſhop's See; and formerly was the reſidence of ſeveral Great Dukes and Princes. Near the town ſtands a caſtle on an eminence.

Torſhok, a pretty large town ſurrounded with walls on the river *Twerza.*

Stariza, *Subzaw*, and *Rſhewa Wolodomerowa* are towns which lie on the banks of the *Wolga.*

Oſtaſhkow and *Pogoreloe Goroditſche* were formerly towns, but now little better than villages.

Kraſnoi, *Cholm*, and *Mikulin* on the river *Shoſha* were alſo formerly conſiderable towns; particularly *Cholm*, which was the reſidence of the Sovereign of the country, who was deſcended from the royal family of *Twer.* A *Mikklin* of a particular line of the ſame family alſo reſided here.

5. The Province of BELOSERO, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Beloſerskaia Provinciia.*

This Province formerly had its own Princes, being an appenage of the Great Ducal family. In this Province are, the lakes of *Beloſero*, i. e. the 'White Lake,' which is fifty *Werſts* in length, *Woſhe-Oſero*, and *Latſha-Oſero.*

In this province are the following places of note.

Beloſero, the provincial town, lies on the weſt ſide of the lake of that name. It contains about five hundred dwellings, and eighteen churches. Here is a caſtle of a quadrangular form, incloſed with a wall of earth; and within which are two churches, the Archbiſhop's palace, the revenue offices, the *Waiwode*'s houſe and other buildings. In the year of Chriſt 862, when *Sineus*, a *Waregerian* Prince, preſided at *Beloſero*, the city is ſaid to have ſtood on the north ſide of the lake. About a *Werſt* and a half from this city, on the banks of the river *Shopna*, lies *Iamskaia-Sloboda*, and a monaſtery.

Slowianskoi or *Slowinskoi Wolok*, is a ſmall town or village.

Tſabaronda, a town lying on the weſt ſide of the lake *Woſhe Oſero.*

Uſtiuſzna Sheleſopolskaia is a town on the river *Mologa*, in which is a conſiderable iron foundery.

II. The

II. The GOVERNMENT of ARCHANGEL,

Called in the *Ruſſian* Language

ARCHANGELAGORODSKAIA GUBERNIIA.

THIS Government includes a part of *Lapland*, of which country we have given a ſufficient account in treating of *Sweden*. As great numbers of the people called *Samoiedes* live in this Government, they are not to be entirely paſſed over in ſilence. The *Samoiedes* inhabit the coaſt of the *Northern Ocean* and *Ice Sea*, both in *Europe* and *Aſia*. The word *Samoiad* is ſaid to ſignify 'Man-eater;' for it was erroneouſly imagined that theſe people devoured their deceaſed friends and the priſoners taken in war: but their cuſtom of eating fiſh and the fleſh of animals raw muſt have given occaſion to this report. The *Samoiedes*, that live in the Government of *Archangel*, are quite ſeparated from the reſt of that nation; and, as it were, excluded from any intercourſe with them: They have alſo a different language; however, as to religion and cuſtoms, they entirely correſpond. They are very poor, ſimple, and undeſigning. Their ſtature is low; and their feet, eſpecially thoſe of the females, are remarkably ſmall. Their tawny complexion, longiſh eyes, and puffed cheeks make them appear very diſagreeable to ſtrangers.

Their winter dreſs is made of rein-deer ſkin with the hairy ſide outwards; and generally the cap, coat, gloves, breeches, and ſtockings are ſewed together; ſo that the whole ſuit makes but one piece. In ſummer they dreſs themſelves in fiſh-ſkins; and inſtead of thread uſe the nerves of wild beaſts cut into long filaments.

They all ſubſiſt by hunting and fiſhing; the fleſh of rein-deer, bears, ſeals or ſea-dogs, fowls, dried fiſh, and turneps being their uſual food. The fleſh they eat partly raw and partly boiled. Their hunting weapons are bows and arrows, and javelins, the points of which are of bone; they have alſo ſome darts bearded with iron. When they find it difficult to ſubſiſt in one place, they immediately remove to another. Their ſummer huts are made of nothing but the bark of birch-trees; but in winter they are covered with the ſkins of rein-deer. Their whole ſubſtance conſiſts in tents, clothes, and rein-deer. Both Sexes among them wear the ſame kind of dreſs; and as they are equally diſagreeable in their features, it is not an eaſy matter to diſtinguiſh one from the other.

Their marriages are attended with no other ceremony but merely an agreement between the parties. Moſt of them have but one wife; though polygamy is not prohibited among this people. The *Samoiedes*, like the *Oſtiaks*, call their new-born children by the name of the firſt animal they meet; or if they firſt happen to meet a relation, he generally names the child.

Before they became ſubject to the *Ruſſian* Government, the only puniſhment among them was, to ſell the perpetrator of any heinous crime, as murder, *&c.* together with his whole family for ſlaves. But, at preſent, the *Ruſſian* laws have been introduced in the principal places in this country.

They have very little knowledge of a Supreme Being; but pay their adorations to miſhapen wooden images of men, beaſts, fiſhes, birds, *&c.* They alſo worſhip the heads of beaſts of prey, particularly thoſe of bears, which they put up in the woods, and fervently pray to; that being an animal of which they are extremely afraid. Their Prieſts, whom they call *Shamanns* or *Kodeſniks*, are choſen from among ſuch as are moſt advanced in years; and theſe they imagine can make known to them the will of their Gods, foretel future events, and perform all kinds of magical operations by their ſtrange geſtures and ridiculous grimaces.

Till the reign of the Czaar *Iwan Waſilowitz*, the only magiſtrate among them was the oldeſt man in the family or village, to whom the reſt were ſubject. But in this Czaar's reign a perſon called *Anica Stroganow* ſent his ſon to make diſcoveries in this country, who, on his return, made an ample report to the Government. The *Ruſſians* were not a little fond of the fine furrs it produced; and the Czaar immediately ordered ſeveral forts to be built in different parts of the country. The *Samoiedes* readily ſubmitted to pay a tribute of furrs, which was impoſed on them. By degrees the habitable places were occupied by *Ruſſian* colonies and Governors. Theſe people made two attempts to ſhake off the *Ruſſian* yoke, but were ſoon reduced. They have the fineſt furrs in all the *Ruſſian* Empire, which they diſpoſe of to the *Ruſſians* for trifles; and, when they meet with no ſucceſs in hunting and fiſhing they exchange them for meal: They mix the meal with water, and eat it out of a kettle which always hangs over the fire.

The Circles of this Government are,

1. The Circle of KOLA which is a part of *Lapland*.

Places of note in this Circle are as follow.

Kola or *Kolſki Oſtrog* is a ſmall place in the Latitude of 68°, 54′. It ſtands on the river *Kola*, which riſes in a lake of the ſame name, falls into a ſmall bay of the *Northern Ocean*, and forms a harbour in this place which is frequented every year by ſome foreign ſhips. Near *Kola* ſtands the convent of *Peſhenſkoi*.

Swiatoi Noſs, i. e. 'The holy cape,' which projects into the *Northern Ocean*.

Kandalax,

Kandalax, *Koweda*, *Keret*, *Kemſkoi Oſtrog*, and *Sumſkoi Oſtrog* are all mean towns ſituated near the *White Sea*.

2. The DWINA Circle, called by the Ruſſians *Dwinskoi Uiezd*.

Remarkable places in this Circle are,

Archangel, in the *Ruſſian* language *Gorod Arkangelskoi*, in Latin *Archangelopolis*, the capital of this Government, and a famous commercial city, lies in 64° 34′ North Latitude, on the river *Dwina*, about ſeventy-five *Werſts* from the *White Sea*. This city is about three *Engliſh* miles in length, and one in breadth, and the houſes are all built with wood after the *Ruſſian* manner, except the large *Goſtinnoi Dwor*, or 'Merchants Exchange,' which is of ſtone. The citadel, where the Governor lives, is ſurrounded with a kind of wall made with large pieces of timber. This city is a Biſhop's See. The *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts* have their reſpective churches here. Proviſions are ſold very cheap at *Archangel*.

The foundation of its commerce was laid by the *Engliſh* in the reign of the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz* *; and the advantages they reaped from the *Ruſſia*-trade ſoon prompted other nations to put in for a ſhare of it. But the gradual increaſe and proſperity of *Petersburg* has occaſioned this city to decline in the ſame proportion. However, a poſt has been eſtabliſhed between this town and *Petersburg* for the conveniency of trade.

Nowa Dwinka a fort, which ſtands on an iſland.

Kolmogozi, a ſmall town, which lies on an iſland in the *Dwina*, not far from *Archangel*. This place is remarkable for being the reſidence of *Anthony Ulric* Duke of *Brunſwic*, and his auguſt family.

Kemi, a ſmall town, on the *White Sea*. Near it lies the iſland of *Solowezkoi*, on which ſtands the famous monaſtery where two celebrated ſaints are worſhipped, and on that account much frequented by pilgrims. Here is alſo a ſtate priſon.

3. The Circle of KEWROL, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Kewrolskoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict lies

Kewrol, a ſmall town, with ſome other mean towns or villages.

4. The Circle of MESEN, called by the Ruſſians *Meſenskoi Uiezd*, and in the imperial titles, *Udorien*. Its chief town is *Meſen*, ſituated on a river of the ſame name. It has alſo ſeveral other places of leſs note.

5. The Circle of PUSTOSERSK, in the *Ruſſian* language *Puſtoſerskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies *Puſtoſerskoi Oſtrog*, on the lake of *Puſtoſero*, which has a communication with the river *Petſhora*. This country was formerly called *Ingorien*.

6. The Circle of YARENSK, in the *Ruſſian* language *Iarenskoi Uiezd*.

The moſt remarkable place in this Circle is the ſmall town of *Yarensk* which ſtands on the river *Wytſhegda*.

* In the year 1553. See note in p. 393.

7. The

7. The Circle of SOLWYTSHEGOTSK, called by the Ruſſians *Soliwytſhegotskoi Uiezd.*

Places of note in this Circle are,

Solwytſhegotskaia, a town famous for its ſalt-works.

Lalskoi Poſad, a market-town on the river *Lala*, which falls into the *Luſa* about two *Werſts* from this place. It has three handſom churches built with ſtone, and two alms-houſes, one of which has a good church. The number of houſes in this town is about one thouſand; and the inhabitants are almoſt all traders. Some villages belong to this place; and near it ſtands a monaſtery.

8. The Circle of USTIUG, called by the Ruſſians *Uſtiuſhkoi Uiezd.*

In this Circle lies the provincial town

Uſtiug Weliki, near the conflux of the rivers *Sukſona* and *Iug*. *Uſtiug* formerly ſtood at the mouth of the latter, from which it derives its name. This city is about three *Werſts* and a half in length, and half a *Werſt* in breadth, and, including the *Dymowskaia Sloboda*, which joins to it, contains twenty-three churches, beſides five covents, and fifteen other churches about it. This city is an Archbiſhop's See. Its communication by water with *Archangel* and *Wologda* makes it ſo convenient for trade, that moſt of its inhabitants are merchants; and ſome of them are very wealthy. Thoſe who go from *Archangel* to *Siberia*, generally paſs through this city; and moſt of the merchants who travel from *Siberia* to *Ruſſia* go by way of *Uſtiug*. There is great plenty of fiſh taken in this place. Though *Uſtiug* lies in Latitude 61 degrees 15 minutes; yet the fruits of the earth often come to maturity in this climate.

9. The Circle of WASHSK, by the *Ruſſians* called *Waſhskoi Uiezd.*

In this Circle are the following remarkable places.

Poſad Wercowaſhskoi, a good market-town.

Shenkursk, a town or village on the river *Waga*.

10. The Circle of TOTMA, or *Totemskoi Uiezd.*

In this Diſtrict are,

Totma, a town conſiſting of about two hundred mean houſes, and thirteen churches. Moſt of the inhabitants both of the town and *Sloboda*, or ſuburbs, are traders. Without the town are two convents, and eighteen ſalt-pits which are ſupplied by three ſaline ſprings. The ſalt is white and tranſparent, but not very pungent; and the taſte of it is a little bitteriſh. *Totma* formerly ſtood on the river of the ſame name. It is under the juriſdiction of the province of *Wologda*.

Nowoie Uſſolie, which ſtands on the river *Kowda*, has four ſalt-pits.

Ledingskoie Uſſolie, ſeated on the river *Ledinga*, has five ſalt-pits, where both a very white and a browniſh ſalt is made.

11. The Circle of WOLOGDA, or *Wologoſhkoi Uiezd.*

In this Circle the places of note are,

Wologda, the provincial city, which ſtands on a river of the ſame name. It has ſeventeen hundred dwelling-houſes, ſixty-eight churches, two convents with four churches, and a German *Slobode*, or Suburb, though but two *German* families now live in it. To this city alſo belong two *Slobodes* or Suburbs inhabited by ſledge-drivers, in which are two churches; beſides a convent of Monks with four churches, and a *Slobode* with two churches. It is the See of an Archbiſhop. This city formerly was in a flouriſhing condition, and carried on a conſiderable trade: But its commerce now conſiſts of hemp, hemp-ſeed, and matting made of the bark of lime-trees, which the inhabitants ſend to *Archangel* in a few large barges that belong to this town; and the *Ruſſia*-leather and tallow they ſend by land to *Petersburg*. *Archangel* on the other hand ſupplies *Wologda* with all foreign commodities, which are ſold here very cheap. Moſt of the inhabitants of this town are dealers. *Hollanders* and *Germans* have been ſettled here for a long time paſt; and upon the taking of *Narva*, the greateſt part of the inhabitants, who were taken priſoners, were ſent to this town, and by their induſtry provided ſo well for themſelves, that it was with reluctancy they went back. The *Archangel* poſt paſſes through this town, which is eight hundred *Werſts* diſtant from that city.

Kubenskoie Selo, a village on the lake *Rubenskoe*, which abounds with fiſh, and is ſixty *Werſts* in length, and between five and fourteen in breadth. It belongs to the *Soltikow* family.

12. The Circle of GALITSH, called by the Ruſſians *Galitſhkoi Uiezd*, formerly a principality.

The moſt remarkable places here are,

Galitſh, the principal town of this Circle.

Sol Galitſhkaia, *Tſhukloma*, *Sudai Kolorew*, *Perſenew*, and *Unſha*, ſmall towns in this Circle.

III. The GOVERNMENT of

MOSCOW,

By the *Ruſſians* called

MOSKOWSKAIA GUBERNIIA.

THIS Province is the beſt cultivated and moſt populous in the whole Empire, and may be called the garden of *Ruſſia*, in the centre of which it lies.

The

The Circles included in this Government are the following.

1. The Circle of KOSTROMA.

In this Diſtrict lies

Koſtroma, a provincial town of a middling ſize, ſituated on the *Wolga*, and ſurrounded with a rampart of earth. Oppoſite to it on the right hand lies a ſuburb called *Slobode Gorodiſhtſhe*; and near this, above the town, ſtands the ſtately monaſtery of *Iratskoi*, ſurrounded with ſtone-walls and ornamented with towers, battlements, *&c.*

The ſmall towns of *Bui*, *Liubim* and *Shuia* are alſo in this Circle.

2. The Circle of YAROSLAWL, which was formerly a Principality.

In this Diſtrict are the following remarkable towns.

Yaroſlawl, a large and well built provincial town, which has a good trade, and is celebrated for its *Iuchte* or *Ruſſia*-leather. The ſhops in the large Exchange make a very grand appearance, and are very well ſtocked both with home and foreign goods. Here is alſo a conſiderable manufacture for all kinds of linen, and flowered woollen ſtuffs, which belong to the *Satrupeſnow*, who employs there 4000 of his vaſſals. The *Ruſſian* church, which ſtands near the manufactory, is built in the *German* taſte, and has few equal to it in this country. This town is famous in hiſtory for having been the reſidence of the unfortunate *Ernſt John*, Duke of *Courland*.

Doſhekonie, a town ſituated at the conflux of the *Tſhukona* and the *Skekſna*.

Romanow, a town on the river *Wolga*.

3. The Circle of UGLITSH.

In this Circle lies

Uglitſh, a provincial town on the *Wolga*. It is of the middling ſize and has a wooden fort.

Kaſhin, a ſmall town which ſtands on the *Wolga*.

4. The Circle of PERESLAW-SALESK, or the Dutchy of ROSTOW.

In this Circle are,

Pareſlawl Saleskoi, a Provincial town ſituated in a pleaſant country, and ſurrounded with hills.

Roſtow, a little town on a ſmall lake, in which the river *Weda* has its ſource. It is an Archbiſhop's See.

5. The Circle of YURIEW.

In this Circle lie

Yuriew Polskoi, a provincial town, ſituated on the river *Nerl*.

Luch, a ſmall town.

6. The Circle of SUSDAL.

In this Diſtrict lies

Suſdal, a provincial city and a Biſhop's See. *Peter* I. after divorcing his firſt wife *Eudoxia Feodorowna*, confined her in the covent of St. *Baſil* in this town, which is a ſtately edifice.

7. The Circle of WOLODIMER, which is a Dutchy.

The only remarkable place in this Diſtrict is

Wolodimer, a provincial town, which ſtands on the river *Kliaſma*. It was formerly one of the ſeats of the Great Dukes.

8. The Circle of Moscow.

In this Circle lies

MOSKWA or *Moſcow*, the ancient capital of the *Ruſſian* Empire, and reſidence of the Czaars, which is the largeſt city in *Europe*, and lies in a pleaſant plain. It derives its name from the river *Moskwa*, which runs on the ſouth ſide of it. *Moſcow* was founded in the year 1156; at leaſt it appears to have been a city in 1175. It lies in a round ſituation formed by the winding of the river; and the compaſs of the curve is about thirty-ſix *Werſts*, or twenty-four *Engliſh* miles. But its circuit is ſaid to have been formerly twice as large. The number of the churches in this city is computed at 1600, among which are eleven cathedrals and two hundred and ſeventy-one pariſh churches: The reſt either belong to convents, or may be looked on as private chapels. Near the churches are hung up ſeveral large bells, which are kept continually chiming. Many of the churches have gilt ſteeples and are magnificently decorated within: the veſtments of the Prieſts are alſo very rich. The number of public edifices and areas, or places, at *Moſcow* amount to forty-three.

The mean houſes, indeed, are much more numerous than thoſe that are well built; but the latter are daily increaſing. The ſtreets are broad and well laid out; but as only a part of them is paved, they are very dirty. This city is divided into four Circles, which lie one within another.

The interior Circle, or the *Kremlin*, which ſignifies a fortreſs, contains the following remarkable buildings; namely, the old imperial palace, pleaſure-houſe, and ſtables; a victualing-houſe; the palace which formerly belonged to the Patriarch; nine cathedrals; five convents; four pariſh-churches; the public colleges and other offices; and the arſenal. All the churches in the *Kremlin* have beautiful ſpires; moſt of them being gilt with pure gold, or covered with ſilver. The architecture is in the old or *Gothic* taſte; but the inſide of the churches is richly ornamented; and the pictures of the Saints are decorated with gold, ſilver, and precious ſtones. In the cathedral called *Sobor*, which has no leſs than nine towers or cupolas covered with copper double gilt, is a ſilver branch with forty-eight lights, which is ſaid to weigh 2800 pounds. Here are depoſited in ſilver ſhrines the remains of three Archbiſhops, namely, *Peter*, *Philip*, and *Jonas*; and in a golden box is kept a robe brought from *Perſia*, which is here looked upon as the identical garment which our Saviour wore. Many other reliques of great value, to be ſeen in this cathedral, I omit. The remains of the Sovereigns of the *Ruſſian* Empire and their male deſcendants are interred in St. *Michael*'s church; and thoſe of their Conſorts, and the Princeſſes, are depoſited

poſited in the convent of *Tſhudow*. In the great tower of the church of *Iwan Weliki*, which is two hundred and ſixty-two *Engliſh* feet high, are eighty-ſix bells of different ſizes; and the laſt which was hung up there weighs about 500,000 pounds or 2500 tons. The height and diameter of it being equal, are eighteen *Rhinland* feet and a half; but this bell was very much damaged by a fall. All theſe ſtructures, which are in the *Kremlin*, or interior part of the city, are both lofty and ſpacious, and built with ſtone. This Circle is three hundred fathoms in diameter. It is ſurrounded with very high and thick walls flanked with ſix towers, and planted with cannon, and with deep moats and ramparts. On one ſide it is watered by the *Moſkwa*, on the ſecond by the *Neglina*; and on the third lies *Kitaigorod*. From this Circle you paſs over a ſtately ſtone-bridge into

The ſecond Circle of the city, which is called *Kitaigorod*, or the *Chineſe* town. In this Circle are five ſtreets, two cathedrals, eighteen pariſh churches, four convents, thirteen noblemens houſes, and nine public edifices, and places or areas. Theſe are 1. The famous chief diſpenſary, which is adorned with rich porcelain gallipots and other veſſels decorated with the Imperial arms; and from this place the whole Empire is ſupplied with medicines. 2. The Mint, which is a ſupurb ſtructure. 3. A magazine or warehouſe, where all goods are brought before they have paid duty. 4. The Cuſtom-houſe. 5. The Ambaſſador's palace, which is now converted into a ſilk manufactory. 6. A Printing-houſe. 7. A hall for a Court of Judicature. 8. The Phyſic Garden. 9. The Exchange, called *Goſtinnoi Dwor*, in which are about 6000 handſome ſhops. This is the ſcene of trade, and where all commercial affairs are tranſacted; particularly what relates to the trade with *China*, ſo that it ſwarms with merchants and ſpectators. This part of the city is fortified with a pretty high wall, which is ſtrengthened with twelve round and quadrangular towers, and ſtrong bulwarks. One ſide of this Circle lies towards fort *Kremlin*; the ſecond is ſurrounded by the river *Moskwa*; the third by that of *Neglina*; and the fourth is incloſed by a wall which runs from the *Nelgina* to the *Moskwa*.

The third Circle which ſurrounds the former, is *Belgorod*, or the 'White town,' ſo called from a white wall with which it is encompaſed: It is alſo called the Czaar's Town. The *Neglina* runs through this part of the city from South to North. In this Circle ſeveral *Knees*, *Boiars*, *Merchants* and tradeſmen reſide; but there are alſo many dirty ſpots in this quarter, and the houſes for the moſt part are very mean. It includes eleven convents, ſeven abbeys, ſeventy-ſix pariſh-churches, and nine public edifices and areas; namely, two palaces, a cannon-foundery, two market-places, one brew-houſe, one magazine of proviſions, the ſalt-fiſh harbour, and the *Baſil*-Garden. At the timber market are ſold new wooden houſes, which may be taken to pieces, and put together again where the purchaſer pleaſes.

The fourth Circle is called *Semlanoigorod*, i. e. 'a town ſurrounded with ramparts of earth'. This Circle incloſes the three preceding parts; and its

its ramparts include an area of eighteen or nineteen *Werſts*. The entrance through theſe ramparts was formerly by thirty-four gates of timber and two of ſtone. But of theſe only the two laſt are ſtanding at preſent. Over one of theſe gates is a Mathematical ſchool and an Obſervatory. This Circle contains two convents, one hundred and three pariſh churches, an imperial ſtable, a cloth-manufactory, an artillery-arſenal, a magazine for proviſions, and a mint.

Round theſe principal parts of the city lie the vaſt ſuburbs belonging to it, in which are ten convents and ſixty pariſh churches. Theſe all look like the villages in other parts of this country, except the *German* quarter called *Inaſemſka Sloboda* or *Nemetska Sloboda*; which is both the largeſt and handſomeſt, and contains two *Lutheran* churches, a grammar ſchool, a *Calviniſt* church and a Popiſh church. This ſuburb lies towards the Eaſt, on the river *Yauſa*. To the Weſt of it lies a palace called *Annenhof*, with a good garden; and towards the North is a large and ſtately hoſpital. Farther to the Weſt of the ſuburb ſtands the palace of the Empreſs *Eliſabeth*, which is called *Pokrouske*; and weſtward of that, the old caſtle of *Preobraſhenskoi*; and ſtill nearer the city are an artillery arſenal, a magazine for bombs and grenadoes, another for forage and proviſions, and the hawk-mews. From the palaces of *Semonowskoi*, *Iſmailow*, and the above-mentioned caſtle of *Preobraſhenskoi*, the three regiments of guards derive their names, who are called the *Preobraſhenskoi*, the *Semenowskoi*, and *Iſmailow* regiments.

The whole number of the inhabitants of this vaſt city are ſuppoſed to be about 150,000 *; theſe conſiſt of ſtateſmen, noble families and their ſervants, ſoldiers, merchants, mechanics, ſledge-drivers and carriers, prieſts, monks, and ſervants belonging to the churches, labourers, *&c.*

The police of this city is on very laudable footing. Since the building of *Petersburg*, and its being made the ſeat of the Empire, *Moſcow* is greatly declined. In the year 1755, an Univerſity, and two *Gymnaſia* or Seminaries were founded here. *Moſcow* has often ſuffered by fires; and in the years 1737, 1748, and 1752, a conſiderable part of it was reduced to aſhes; eſpecially by the laſt fire, which conſumed above half the city, together with the noble diſpenſary mentioned above, and the *Czarina*'s ſtables. But the houſes have always been ſoon rebuilt after ſuch a calamity, as they are for the moſt part of very mean materials. The gardens hereabouts yield variety of fruit and are particularly famous for the tranſparent apple called by the Ruſſians *Naliwi*.

In the Circle of *Moſcow* are alſo the following places of note.

Troitz, or *Troiskoi monaſtir*, i. e. 'The convent of the Holy Trinity.' This is the largeſt convent, and the beſt endowed in all *Ruſſia*; the number of

* Notwithſtanding the vaſt extent of *Moſcow*, which our author calls the largeſt city in *Europe*, it appears by this that it is vaſtly inferior to *London*; the number of inhabitants in the latter being ſix times as many, as are computed to be in the former.

peaſants who are its vaſſals being no leſs than 20,000. It lies at the diſtance of ſixty *Werſts* from *Moſcow*, and is built in a quadrangular form, in the old *Gothic* taſte. It is alſo incloſed with ſtrong walls, ramparts, and moats, and is always garriſoned by a company of ſoldiers. The convent itſelf is a ſpacious, lofty, and handſome ſtructure. The great church is very ſplendid, and has a fine tower in which are ſeveral valuable bells. Beſides the principal church, there are nine other churches and a grammar ſchool within the incloſure of this convent. The number of monks who reſide here is ſaid to be about ſix hundred. This was the place where *Peter* I. took ſhelter after he had narrowly eſcaped the hands of the *Strelitzes*, who had been ſpirited up againſt him by his half-ſiſter *Sophia*. It has been an ancient cuſtom for the ſovereign of the *Ruſſian* Empire to go a pilgrimage to this place. Here are ſeveral dead bodies which, from natural cauſes, remain undecayed. Near this convent lies a ſmall town.

Kolomna, a ſmall town; which, however, is a Biſhop's See.

The towns of *Klin*, *Swenigorod*, *Moſaiſk*, *Boriſow*, *Wereia*, *Borowsk*, *Serpucow*, *Yaroſlawetz*, *Obolensk*, *Taruſa*, and *Roſhira* alſo lie in this Circle.

9. The Circle of PERESLAW-RIASANSKOI.

In this Circle are,

Pereſlaw Riaſanskoi, a provincial town, on the river *Oka*, which firſt began to flouriſh after the deſtruction of the town of *Reſan*. An Archbiſhop's See is erected here.

Reſan, which was formerly a noted town; but is now very much decayed; having been deſtroyed by the *Tartars* in the year 1568. This ruinous town lies on the river *Oka*.

Prousk and *Micailow*, are ſmall towns on the banks of the river *Prona*.

10. The Circle of KALUGA.

In this Circle lies

Kaluga, a provincial town, which ſtands on the river *Oka*.

Worotinsk, *Peremyſhl*, *Rozelsk*, *Likwin*, *Meſhtſhowſk*, and *Serpetsk* are ſmall towns in this Circle.

11. The Circle of TULA.

In this Diſtrict are,

Tula, a fine provincial and trading city, ſituated on the river *Upa*. It contains one hundred and forty-four churches and convents; and great quantities of fire arms and *Ruſſia*-leather are made in this town.

Diedilow and *Alexin*, two ſmall towns or villages.

IV. The

IV. The GOVERNMENT of *NISHNEI-NOVOGROD.*

THIS Government is inhabited by the following tribes; namely,

The *Mordunians*, *Morduans* or *Morduats*, whoſe language is ſaid very much to reſemble the *Finnlandiſh* dialect.

The *Tſheremiſſians*, diſtinguiſhed into the *Logowoi*, who inhabit the plain on the left ſide of the *Wolga*; and the *Nagornoi* who live among the mountains on the right ſide of that river. The former belong to this Government; but the greateſt part of the latter to that of *Kaſan*. They ſeem to have no religion but that of Nature. Their chief ſacrificing prieſt they call *Yugtuſh*; and under him is another diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of *Muſhan*. Their language is neither that of the *Tartars* nor *Ruſſians*. Many of theſe people have been baptized.

The *Tſhuwaſhians*, who live diſperſed in this and the *Kaſan* Government, and are a numerous tribe. In the diſtrict of *Tſhebaxar* they exceed 18,000 ſouls; in that of *Kuſmademianski* they are above 10,000 in number: in the territory of *Siriſgorod* they amount at leaſt to 12,000, and in that of *Swyask* to 60,000; but in the Diſtrict of *Kokſhaisk* they do not exceed 400 ſouls. They worſhip, as they ſay, one God, whom they call *Tora*; they alſo look upon the Sun as a kind of Divinty, and pay their adoration to that luminary. They have ſeveral other inferior or ſubordinate Deities which, they ſay, hold the ſame rank with the ſaints of the *Ruſſians*. Every village has its own idol, which is erected in a quadrangular conſecrated place incloſed with palliſadoes. They perform their devotions to it near a fire; where they offer a ſheep to the idol, and hang up the ſkin for a trophy in honour of it. The perſon who performs this ſacrifice, and to whom they have recourſe in every difficulty, is ſtiled *Yumaſſe*; and both ſexes are capable of this religious office. Great numbers of theſe Pagans have been baptized; and in all the *Ruſſian* towns, in the Diſtricts where they live, ſchools have been erected for the inſtruction of their youth in the principals of the Chriſtian religion, in order to qualify them to be miſſionaries among their own tribe.

This GOVENRMENT includes the following Circles.

1. The Circle of NISHNEI-NOVOGROD, or *Niſhneinowgorodſkoi Uiezd*, which is alſo a Dutchy.

In this Circle lies

Niſhnei-Novogrod, i. e. '*Lower-Novogrod*,' a large provincial city which ſtands on the *Wolga*, at the influx of the river *Oka*. It was built in the year 1222 by the Great Duke *Jurii*, or *George*, *Wſewoloditſh*; and as it was the

the appenage and place of reſidence of the petty *Ruſſian* Princes, many of them lie buried here. In this city are two cathedrals; twenty-eight pariſh-churches, moſt of which are built with ſtone; and five convents. It is an Archbiſhop's See; and has a caſtle ſurrounded with ſtone walls. The trade of this town is ſo conſiderable, that the ſhops make a very handſom appearance, being richly furniſhed with all kind of foreign and home goods. In the great fire that broke out here in 1715, ſome thouſands of the inhabitants loſt their lives.

2. The Circle of BALACNA, in the *Ruſſian* language *Balaconſkoi Uiezd.* In this Circle are,

Balacna, a very long town but meanly built. It ſtands on the *Wolga*, and is famous for its ſalt-ſprings, which afford a conſtant ſupply to fifty boiling houſes.

Yuriiew Powolski, a ſmall town on the *Wolga*, near which, on the bank of the river, are to be ſeen the ruins of a large caſtle that was built with brick.

3. The Circle of ARSAMAS, or *Arzamaskoi Uiezd*, in which the only place of note is

Arſanas, the provincial city.

4. The Circle of KASIMOW, in which lie

Kaſimow and *Murom*, two ſmall towns on the river *Oka*.

V. The GOVERNMENT of *SMOLENSK.*

THIS Government contains *White Ruſſia*, properly ſo called; and was ceded by *Poland* to *Ruſſia*, as a Dutchy, by the treaty of *Andruſſow*, which was concluded in 1667, and confirmed in the year 1686.

The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Smolensk, a large and well fortified town, on the *Dnieper*. It is the reſidence of the Governor, and a Biſhop's See; and its commerce is very conſiderable. It is famous in hiſtory, as the ſubject of many diſputes between the *Poles* and *Ruſſians*; during which it was often beſieged and taken by both parties.

Andruſſow, a village lying between *Smolensk* and the town of *Mſtiſlaw*, cloſe by the river *Harodna*. This place is famous only for the treaty of peace concluded here in 1667 between *Ruſſia* and *Poland*.

Dogorobus, a ſmall place ſeated on the *Dnieper*.

Wiaſma, a ſmall town on a river of the ſame name.

VI. The GOVERNMENT of *KIEW*.

THIS Government is a part of *Little Ruſſia*, and is inhabited by the *Coſaks*; which word ſignifies irregular troops of horſe. The *Coſaks* are divided into

The EUROPEAN *Coſaks*; and theſe are

1. The *Za-porog Coſaks*; who live below the cataract of the *Dnieper*, ſome on the ſide next to *Ruſſia*, and others on the oppoſite ſide of the river. The latter are ſubdivided into *Sietſhian* or *Lower Coſaks*, and *Upper Coſaks*. Moſt of theſe are ſubject to the *Ruſſians*.

2. The *Bielogorod-Coſaks*, and

3. A part of the *Don-Coſaks*. Both theſe are under the *Ruſſian* Government.

The ASIATIC *Coſaks*, including,

1. The reſt of the *Don-Coſaks*.

2. The *Grebin-Coſaks*.

3. The *Yaik-Coſaks*. All theſe are ſubject to *Ruſſia*.

4. The *Caſatſhia-Horda*, who were formerly an independent people; but are now, partly, ſubject to *Can-Taiſha*.

It appears from *Conſtantine Porphyrogenetes*, that the *Coſaks* were known by that name ſo early as the year of *Chriſt* 948. They lived on mount *Caucaſus*, in the place now called *Cabardey*; and were reduced under the *Ruſſian* dominion in 1021, by Prince *Mſtiſlaw*. The *Poliſh* writers repreſent the *Coſaks* as a very ſtrange ſet of people; but this, in a great meaſure, muſt be imputed to national prejudice. They reproach them in particular by calling them a mixed rabble. It is true that, from time to time, many *Ruſſians*, *Poles*, &c. who could not live at home, have been admitted among the *Coſaks*: But the latter, abſtracted from theſe fugitives, muſt have been an ancient and a well-governed nation.

The *Zaporog-Coſaks*, in the beginning of the ſixteenth century, fixed their habitations on the ſpacious plains that lie along the banks of the *Dnieper*. Ever ſince the thirteenth century, they had ſuffered very greatly from the ravages of the *Tartars*, for which they afterwards took ample revenge. The *Poles*, being ſenſible how uſeful the *Coſaks* might be to defend them againſt the incurſions of the *Tartars*, and even of the *Ruſſians*, propoſed an alliance to them. In the year 1562 they ſolemnly took them under their protection, and engaged to pay them a yearly ſubſidy; in return for which the *Coſaks* were to keep on foot a good body of troops for the defence of the *Poliſh* dominions. In order to bind them more ſtrongly by ties of intereſt, the *Poles* gave up to them the whole country lying between the

the rivers *Dnieper* and *Nieſter* and the borders of *Tartary*. This fruitful tract of land the *Coſaks* ſo induſtriouſly cultivated, that in a ſhort time it was interſperſed with large towns and handſome villages. Beſides, they continually haraſſed the *Turks*, and did them all poſſible damage by their incurſions; and to prevent the latter from purſuing them, or making repriſals, they ſeized on ſeveral ſmall iſlands in the *Dnieper*, where they kept their magazines, *&c.* The *Hettman* or General of the *Coſaks* was not in the leaſt ſubordinate to the Field-Marſhal of *Poland*; but acted in concert with the latter as an ally of that Republic, and not as a ſubject. But this alliance, though it was ſo advantageous both to the *Poles* and *Coſaks*, did not long ſubſiſt. The former envied the latter the fine country that they were in poſſeſſion of, and made an attempt to bring them into ſubjection. Upon this, the *Coſaks* fired with indignation, had recourſe to arms, and applied both to *Ruſſia*, and the *Ottoman Porte* for protection. A very bloody war enſued, which, in the ſixteenth and ſeventeenth century, was, from time to time, renewed with the utmoſt fury and animoſity. In the years 1587, 1596, 1630, 1637, and 1638, the *Poles* were, for the moſt part, victorious. And though the *Coſaks*, in the year 1648, gained conſiderable advantages over the *Poles*; yet, in the following year, they made overtures for an accommodation; in which, however, they not only preſerved their old immunities, but acquired new privileges. The reſult of all was, that theſe *Coſaks* remained under the protection of *Ruſſia*; and as their former country was all laid waſte in the late wars, they ſettled in the *Ruſſian Ukraine*, upon receiving formal aſſurances from the Court of *Ruſſia*, that no alteration ſhould be made in their political conſtitution; and that no taxes or impoſts ſhould be laid on them. On the other hand, the *Coſaks* were always to keep in readineſs a good body of troops for the ſervice of *Ruſſia*. But *Mazeppa* their *Hettman* or Chief, in the year 1708, went over from the *Ruſſians* to the *Swedes*; upon which *Peter* I. determined to prevent ſuch revolts for the future. To this end after the battle of *Pultawa*, he ſent a ſtrong detatchment into the above-mentioned little iſlands in the *Dnieper*, whither the *Coſaks* had fled, with their wives and children, and all their effects, and ordered them all without diſtinction to be put to the ſword, and the plunder to be diſtributed among the ſoldiers. Beſides, that monarch ſent a great number of his men into their country, and cauſed many thouſands of the *Coſaks* to be carried to the coaſt of the *Baltic*, where they were put to all manner of hard labour; and by that means, he in a manner, exterminated them. Upon the death of their laſt *Hettman*, which happened in 1722, that office was abeliſhed: but it was reſtored again in 1750, when they elected for their *Hettman* Count *Kirila Grigoriewitſh Raſumowsky*, Privy Counſellor of the *Ruſſian* Empire, preſident of the Academy of Siences, and Lieutenant-Colonel of the *Iſmailow*-regiment of life-guards. This election being publicly declared and confirmed by the reigning Empreſs *Eliſabeth* on the twenty-

fourth of *April* O. S. his promotion was made public by the Senate at *Peterſburg*, by an inſtrument bearing date the twelfth of *June* following. The country of theſe *Coſaks* is commonly called the *Ocraine* or *Ukraine*, which word properly ſignifies a frontier; for it lies on the borders of *Ruſſia*, *Poland*, *Little Tartary*, and *Turkey*. By virtue of the laſt treaty, concluded in 1693, between *Ruſſia* and *Poland*, the latter remains in poſſeſſion of all that part of the *Ukraine* that lies on the weſt ſide of the *Dnieper*, which is now but indifferently cultivated. The country on the eaſt ſide of that river inhabited by the *Coſaks* is in a much better condition, and extends about ſixty geographical or *German* miles in length, and as many in breadth. It is one continued fertile plain, watered by a great number of fine rivers, and diverſified with pleaſant woods. It produces all kinds of grain, pulſe, tobacco, honey, and wax in ſuch quantities, as to ſupply a great part of the *Ruſſian* Empire with thoſe commodities. The paſtures are extremely rich and ſucculent, and the cattle of an extraordinary ſize; the rivers alſo abound with excellent fiſh. This fine country, however, is very much infeſted by locuſts, which are a great plague to the inhabitants. Moſt of the houſes in the *Ukraine* are built with wood after the *Ruſſian* manner. The *Coſaks*, as to their perſons, are tall, well made, generally hawk-noſed, and of a very good mien. They are vigorous, hardy, brave, and very jealous of their liberty; fickle and wavering, but ſociable, chearful and ſprightly. Their forces entirely conſiſt of cavalry. Their dialect is a mixture of the *Poliſh* and *Ruſſian* languages; but the latter is moſt predominant. They profeſs the *Greek* religion; but there are alſo ſome *Roman* Catholics and Proteſtants among them. They are a very powerful people. Every town, with the diſtrict belonging to it, is governed by an officer called *Ottomann*, or *Attamann*.

The *Don-Coſaks*, who live on the banks of the river *Don*, very much reſemble thoſe we have been deſcribing. In 1549, when the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz* was Emperor of *Ruſſia*, they voluntarily put themſelves under his protection; and are, at preſent, nearly on an equal footing with the other *Ruſſian* ſubjects. Theſe *Coſaks* have a great number of towns and villages along the banks of the *Don:* But the ſcarcity of freſh water and wood in many places, prevents them from extending themſelves farther up the country. They ſubſiſt chiefly by grazing and agriculture, and occaſionally by robbing and plundering, for which they want neither capacity nor inclination. Every town is governed by a magiſtrate, which they call *Tamann*; and the *Tamanns* with their towns, are under the juriſdiction of two *Ottomanns*, who reſide at *Tſherkasky*. The troops of theſe *Coſaks* likewiſe conſiſt entirely of cavalry. Every town and village in this country is fortified and ſurrounded with palliſadoes, by way of ſecurity againſt the incurſions of the *Calmucks* and *Kuban-Tartars*, with whom they are always at war. The *Coſaks*, in general, are of great ſervice to garriſon-towns

or

or defend them, and to purſue an enemy; but are not ſo good at regular attacks.

The *Sietſh-Coſaks* have their particular *Hettman*; and are alſo known by the name of *Haidamacks*. They live in the *Ruſſian*, *Poliſh*, and *Turkiſh* dominions along the banks of the *Dnieper*.

The *Yaik-Coſaks* live on the ſouth ſide of the river *Yaik*; and on the ſucceſs of the *Ruſſian* arms in the kingdom of *Aſtracan*, voluntarily ſubmitted to them. In height of ſtature they very much reſemble the other *Coſaks*; though by their booriſh manner of living, and inter-marriages with the *Tartars*, they have not the ſhape and air peculiar to the reſt of their countrymen: However, they reſemble them in their natural diſpoſitions and cuſtoms. Their chief occupations are agriculture, fiſhing, and feeding cattle; and, like the other tribes, they ſeldom let ſlip an opportunity of purloining from their neighbours. Their continual wars with the *Kara-Kalpacs* and the *Kaſatſkia-Horda*, lay them under a neceſſity of keeping their towns and villages in a defenſible ſtate. They are, indeed, ſubject to Ruſſian *Waiwodes*, to whom they are every year obliged to pay tribute in corn, wax, honey, and cattle: But they have alſo their particular Chiefs, who govern them according to their ancient cuſtoms. The greateſt part of the *Yaik-Coſaks*, it is true, profeſs the *Greek* religion; but a great many reliques of Mahometaniſm and Paganiſm are ſtill to be found among them. They make excellent ſoldiers, being remarkable for hardineſs and courage; and they are not ſo turbulent as the other *Coſaks*. They live in an entire peace, and even have a commercial intercourſe, with the *Calmucks*, &c.

The Government of KIEW conſiſts of the following Circles.

1. The Circle of STARODUB.

In this Diſtrict are,

Starodub, one of the four guarantee-towns, which was the firſt yielded as a ſecurity to the *Ruſſians* by the *Poles*. This town obtained the privileges of a royal free city from the Kings of *Poland*.

Roſlawl, a town of the middling ſize, on the river *Beliſna*.

Potſhep, a ſmall town on the river *Suda*.

2. The Circle of SEVERIEN, or NESHIN, formerly a Dutchy, was ceded by the *Poles* to the *Ruſſians*, by the treaty of *Andruſſow*, in the year 1667.

Places of note in this Circle are,

Nowgorod Sewerſki, in Latin *Novogardia*, or *Neapolis Severiæ*, a ſmall town on the river *Deſna*.

Baturin, a town which, before it was deſtroyed by the *Ruſſians*, ſtood on a ſmall eminence near the river *Sem*, and was the ſeat of a *Coſak Hettmann*. In the year 1708, it was carried, without any great loſs, by the *Ruſſians* ſword in hand; who after plundering it, and putting all the inhabitants to the ſword, ſet fire to the town and reduced it to aſhes. The

caſtle is now handſomely rebuilt for the new *Hettmann*; and preparations are making alſo for repairing the town.

Glucow, a city, where formerly the Chiefs or Governors of the country reſided.

Konotop, a ſmall town.

Neſhin or *Nieſhin*, one of the four guarantee-towns. It ſtands on the river *Uda*, and when, it belonged to the *Poles*, was a royal free town.

3. The Circle of TSHERNIGOW was formerly a Dutchy, and, like the preceding, ceded by the *Poles* to the *Ruſſians* by the treaty of *Andruſſow*.

Remarkable places in this Circle are,

Tſhernigow, a city on the river *Deſna*, and the See of an Archbiſhop, who is alſo Archbiſhop of *Nowgorod Sewerſki*.

Lubitſh, a ſmall town.

4. The Circle of KIEW.

In this Diſtrict lies

Kiew, or *Kiow*, the capital of this Government, which ſtands on the *Dnieper*. This city is ſaid to owe its beginning to *Kius* a *Sclavonian* Prince, and, according to the *Poliſh* writers, was built in the year 430; but this account is not to be depended upon. It was, at firſt, the reſidence of *Skold* and *Dir*, two famous *Waregerian* Chiefs: But in the year 1037, the Great Duke *Iaroſlaw* declared it the capital of all *Ruſſia*; and it continued to be the reſidence of the Great Dukes till the twelfth century. Afterwards it fell into the hands of the *Poles*; but at the treaty of *Andruſſow*, they gave it up in 1667 to the *Ruſſians* for a certain term of years, and in 1686 ceded it to *Ruſſia* for ever. It conſiſts properly of three ſmall towns, namely, the caſtle of *Petſhersky* with its ſuburbs, the old city of *Kiew*, and the town of *Podol* that lies below the latter; which are partly incloſed with a common fortification, and in other parts have a communication by a large entrenchment, carried on as the inequality of the mountains would permit. The whole garriſon conſiſts of ſeven regiments of foot; and the city is governed by a *Statthalter* General, a Deputy-*Statthalter*, and a *Commandant*.

The caſtle of *Petſhersky* ſtands on an eminence facing the ſouth; and, beſides barracks for the garriſon, magazines, officers houſes, and ſome churches, includes that rich and ſtately monaſtery which was founded in the eleventh century, and called *Petſhersky*, becauſe the Monks formerly lived in a *Petſhera*, i. e. 'a cavern', on the mountain where the convent now ſtands. In its ſubterraneous vaults, which reſemble a labyrinth, and conſiſt of cells, chapels, *&c.* are found great numbers of undecayed bodies, ſuppoſed to be the remains of Saints and Martyrs, like thoſe ſhewn at *Troitz*. The bodies of the deceaſed Monks are alſo depoſited here. Prints of theſe large ſubterraneous vaults, which are called *Crypta Antonia*, and of the ſmaller vaults, or *Crypta Theodoſia*, are to be ſeen in a little book pub-

publiſhed by *J. Herbinius*, and entitled *Religioſæ Kiiovienſes Cryptæ.* Ienæ, 1675. Oppoſite to this monaſtery formerly ſtood a nunnery, which is now converted into a magazine. The ſuburbs of *Petſhersky* are very large, conſiſting of the houſes belonging to the above-mentioned convent; and alſo ſeveral convents and churches, the principal of which is the convent of St. *Nicholas*.

The old city of *Kiew* ſtands on an eminence facing the north, and is fortified, according to the mountainous nature of the country, with horn-works, *&c.* Here ſtands the cathedral of the *Greek* Archbiſhop of *Kiew*, *Halitſh*, and *Little Ruſſia*, who reſides in the convent of St. *Sophia*. To this church, and the convent of St. *Michael* where the reliques of St. *Barbara* are kept, belong moſt of the houſes in the city.

Podol lies below *Old Kiew* in the plain on the banks of the *Dnieper*; and, excepting the churches and convents, conſiſts entirely of ſhops and tradeſmens houſes. Under the Kings of *Poland* its magiſtrates enjoyed the privileges of a royal free city: and even now are independent of the Colonels of the regiments in garriſon, and receive their orders immediately from the War-Office at *Glucow*. The Academy adjoining to the *Bratskoi* monaſtery, not far from the town-houſe, is entirely built with ſtone; and is one of the nobleſt edifices in the city. The Univerſity of *Kiew* is, from the names of its founders, called *Academia orthodoxa Kiovomohylæana*, or *Kiovomohylæanozaborowskiana*. The Archbiſhop of *Kiow*, *Halitſh*, and *Little Ruſſia* is the Principal of the Univerſity; and under him are two other officers, who have the care of the ſtudents. The nine Profeſſors, who live in a wooden building to which belongs a charming garden, are all monks, and are not to taſte fleſh throughout the whole year; but they are ſaid to make little ſcruple of tranſgreſſing this rule privately. Their ſalaries are but ſmall; ſo that, for the moſt part, they are maintained by the ſtipends and preſents which they receive from the ſtudents. The number of collegians amounts to about one hundred; and public lectures in all the ſciences are read to them. They alſo perform ſeveral exerciſes according to the cuſtom of the Univerſities in *Germany* and other countries, as public diſputations, *&c.* beſides ſome others peculiar to themſelves.

While *Kiew* was ſubject to the *Poles*, the Papiſts had a Biſhop, a college of Jeſuits, a *Dominican* Convent, and likewiſe ſeveral churches in this city; which were all ſuppreſſed, and appropriated to the uſe of the profeſſors of the *Greek* religion. It was owing to the incurſions and ravages of the *Coſaks* of *Little Ruſſia*, that *Kiew* was ceded to the *Ruſſians*, together with three other towns, as barriers to ſecure them from inſults. My plan will not allow me to enlarge any further on the hiſtorical particulars relating to this city.

There are ſeveral ſmall towns, *viz.*

Boriſopol, *Pogowka*, *Gogolez*, *Oſter*, *Kozelsk*, *Noſowka*, *Iwangorod*, &c. in this Circle.

On

On the weſtern bank of the *Dnieper* ſtood formerly the capital of the *Trethimerow-Coſaks*, which, at preſent, is only a village. Not far from it on the frontiers, ſtands the fortreſs of *Bielaia Zerkow*.

5. The Circle of PEREIESLAWL contains the fortreſs of *Pereieſlawl*, which is one of the guarantee-places, with ſome other ſmall towns and villages.

6. The Circle of PRILUKI.

In this Diſtrict are the ſmall towns of *Priluki*, *Perewolotſhna*, *Romna*, &c.

7. The Circle of LUBNI, in which are,

Lubni, and other ſmall places.

8. The Circle of M-RGOROD.

In this Diſtrict are,

Mirgorod, *Orſitz*, and other ſmall towns.

9. The Circle of GADITSH, containing *Gaditſh*, *Dobſhenk*, &c.

10. The Circle of PULTAWA.

In this Diſtrict are the following places of note.

Pultawa, a town on the river *Worſkla*, the fortifications of which are not very ſtrong. This town, with the regular fort belonging to it, is ſubject to a Commandant, and not to the Colonel of the regiment of *Coſaks*, who reſides here. The Burghers carry on a conſiderable trade to the *Crimea*, and through *Poland* to *Germany*. This is but an indifferent town, being built in the manner of the *Coſak* towns; but was rendered famous by the *Swedes* beſieging it in 1709. At laſt, it fell into the hands of the *Ruſſians* after the defeat of *Charles* XII. near this place. A monaſtery ſtands upon an eminence without the town, where the King of *Sweden* had his head quarters.

Kolomak, a ſmall fort.

Perewolotſhna, a ſmall fortreſs, ſtands on the river *Worſkla*.

Orel and *Kitaigorodok*, are ſmall places on the river *Orel*.

11. The Circle of SAMARA, in which lie,

Samara, a ſmall town on a river of the ſame name.

Rudak, a mean place on the *Dnieper*.

VII. The GOVERNMENT of *BIELOGOROD.*

THIS country is a part of *Little Ruſſia*, and inhabited by *Coſaks*.

The Government includes,

1. The Diſtrict of IZIUM, which contains the little town of *Izium* ſituated on the river *Donez*, with ſeveral other ſmall places.

2. The

2. The Diſtrict of CARKOW, in which are,

Carkow, a little town.

Tſhugnew and *Saltow*, two other little towns which ſtand on the river *Donez*.

3. The Circle of BIELOGOROD, in which lies

Bielogorod, the capital of the Government, which ſtands on the river *Donez*, and was built in the year 990, by the Great Duke *Wladimir*. About an *Engliſh* mile from the town is a large chalk hill, where *Bielogorod* formerly ſtood, and from which it derives its name, which ſignifies a white town; but it was afterwards built in a valley between two mountains. It is dived into the *Old* and *New Town* and has three ſuburbs: The *Old Town* is ſurrounded with a rampart and moat, and the *New Town* with palliſadoes. *Bielogorod* is an Archbiſhop's See. It was formerly called *Sarkel*, which name is of the ſame import with its preſent *Ruſſian* name.

From this town to the little town of *Staroi Oſkol* a line of communication is drawn; and there is another intrenchment between the ſmall town of *Nowoi Oſkol* and *Wercoſoſnizy* which lies in the Government of *Woroneſh*.

Karpow, *Iablonow*, and *Korotſha* are ſmall places in this Diſtrict.

4 The Circle of WALUIKI contains *Waluiki*, a little town on the river *Oskol*, and ſome other ſmall places.

5. The Diſtrict of SUMYN, in which are the little towns of *Sumyn* and *Suſa*.

6. The Diſtrict of KURSK, in which are

Kyrsk, a ſmall town on the river *Sem*.

Kylsk and *Putiwl*, which are ſmall towns on the ſame river. The latter is a Biſhop's See.

7. The Circle of SIEWSK.

Places of note in this Diſtrict are as follows.

Siewsk, a large town ſurrounded with high ramparts, in which is a ſtrong garriſon. Part of the field-artillery, for the defence of *Kiew* and other places on the frontiers of the *Crimea* upon any emergency, are kept in this town.

Sursk, a ſmall town on the river *Sem*.

Trubtſhewsk, a ſmall town ſituated on the river *Deſna*.

Krony, *Samowa*, and *Kalakobowa*, which are ſmall towns in this Circle.

Karatſhew and *Briansk* are towns of a moderate extent.

8. The Province of OREL, in which are the ſmall towns of *Orel*, *Mſensk*, *Tſkern*, *Bolcow*, and *Bielew*.

VIII. The GOVERNMENT of *WORONESH* and *ASOW*.

THIS Government includes the following Diſtricts.

1. The Diſtrict of WORONESH.

Remarkable places in this Diſtrict are,

Woroneſh, a large and populous provincial city, which lies on the narrow but very deep river of the ſame name. It is ſurrounded with a wall, and is the reſidence of the *Statthalter* or Governor, and a Biſhop's See. Moſt of the ſtreets are laid with beams of timber inſtead of a ſtone pavement. *Peter* I. cauſed a large dock-yard to be made here for building of ſhips, in order to maintain his ſovereignty over the *Black Sea*; which drew hither many new inhabitants, among whom were ſeveral foreign artificers who came to ſettle here. *Woroneſh* is a place of conſiderable trade.

Tawrow, a ſmall town on the river *Woroneſh*. *Peter* I. likewiſe ordered a dock-yard to be made here for ſhip-building; and a great number of *praams*, gallies, and barques were built here, which were employed at *Aſow* in the war againſt the *Turks*. The ſtreets of *Tawrow* are broad and ſtraight, and the houſes well built.

Roſtins, a ſmall town on the river *Don*.

Uſman, *Demſhin*, *Bielokolsk*, *Romanow*, and *Sopolsk* are ſmall towns in this Diſtrict.

2. The Diſtrict of IELEZ, in which are,

Ielez, a provincial town.

Talez, *Tſhernawsk*, *Ieſremow*, *Lebedian*, *Donkow*, and *Epifan*, which are all inconſiderable towns.

3. The Diſtrict of SHATSK contains

Shatsk, a provincial city.

Elatma, *Radom*, *Temnikow*, and *Riask*, which are ſmall towns.

4. The Diſtrict of TAMBOW.

In this Diſtrict lie

Tambow, a provincial town on the river *Sna*.

Koſlow and *Werchnei Lomow*, which are ſmall towns.

Boriſogliebsk and *Novocoperskaia* are towns of the middling ſize, which ſtand on the river *Coper*.

5. The Diſtrict of KOROTOIAK.

Places of note in this Diſtrict are,

Korotoiak, a ſmall provincial town on the river *Don*.

Oſtrogoſhk, *Olſhansk*, *Bobrowsk*, &c. which are but ſmall towns.

Pawlowsk, a ruinous town built on the *Don* by *Peter the Great*. It is ſurrounded with chalk-hills, and conſequently an unhealthy place *. Here was formerly kept a part of the field-artillery.

6. The Diſtrict of BACHMUT.

In this Diſtrict are the following places of note.

Bakmut, a town on a river of the ſame name. It lies partly upon an eminence on its weſtern bank, and partly in a plain on the eaſt ſide of the *Bakmut*. The former is defended by a citadel; and, indeed, the whole town is fortified, for the ſecurity of its ſalt-works. The imperial ſalt-office at *Bakmut* maintains one battalion of regular troops, and a company of *Coſaks* conſiſting of one hundred men. The country which lies between the *Donez*, the *Don*, the *Palus Mæotis*, *Mius*, and *Kalmius* not only exceeds all the reſt of *Little Ruſſia* in fertility, but alſo has ſeveral ſpots that are ſuppoſed to contain rich ore, *&c.*

Tor, a fortification on a river of the ſame name.

Raigorodok, *Iampol*, &c. are ſmall towns in this Diſtrict.

The *Don-Coſaks* who reſide in this Government are poſſeſſed of a great many ſmall towns ſituated on the rivers *Don* and *Donez*. Their capital is

Tſherkask, which is the reſidence of the *Ottomann*. It is built in the *Turkiſh* manner, and part of it is encompaſſed with high palliſadoes fixed on the *Don*. This city is of a large compaſs, being inhabited by great numbers of all kinds of *Aſiatic* nations, and carries on a very great trade.

Four *Werſts* beyond *Tſherkask* lies St. *Anna*, a new town regularly built and fortified by the *Ruſſians*. It is but ſmall, and lies low on the bank of the *Don:* It has ſix baſtions and the neceſſary outworks, with a garriſon conſiſting of two marching and two garriſon regiments. The ſtreets are broad, ſtraight, and the houſes well built. The adjacent country conſiſts of a marſhy ſoil.

Not far from the city of *Tſherkask* the *Don* divides itſelf into two channels. The ſouthern branch, which is the principal, retains the name of *Don*; but the northern branch is, by the *Ruſſians*, called *Donez*, or the *Little-Don*, which muſt be diſtinguiſhed from the great *Donez* that runs into the *Don* higher up. On the ſouth channel of this river formerly ſtood

Aſow, a celebrated and important fortreſs, and a town of conſiderable trade, which is now demoliſhed. Near this place the *Greeks*, many centuries ago, built the city of *Tanais*, which was very famous for its trade, and, from time to time, underwent many viciſſitudes. The name *Aſow* ſeems to have been given this city from the *Polowzian* † Prince *Aſup* or *Agiup*, or at leaſt from ſome word in the *Polowzian* language; for the

* This conſequence is not very clear, and, I believe, will hardly be granted by the faculty.

† The Author calls theſe people *Polowzier:* I ſuppoſe he cannot mean the *Poles*, who are never called by that name in the *German* language; but are termed *Polen*.

Polowzians were in poſſeſſion of this city and territory in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and were driven out of it by the *Ruſſians*. Be that as it will, the *Ruſſians*, from that time, called it *Aſow*, which name it ſtill retains. The *Turks* pronounce it *Adſak*, and it was further corrupted by ſeveral Authors who ſometimes wrote it *Oſow*, and ſometimes *Kaſak*, or *Kaſawa* *.

From the *Polowzians* this city fell under the dominion of the *Genoeſe*, who took it in the beginning of the thirteenth century, and gave it the name of *Tana* †. This town appears to have, long before, been taken from the *Tartars*, who were very powerful in theſe parts; for there are *Aſow* coins extant, on which the name of the *Taktamyſs-Kan* is to be ſeen.

From the *Genoeſe* this city fell into the hands of the *Turks*, loſt its former advantages of trade, and became an inconſiderable town.

In the year 1637, it was taken by the *Coſaks*, who defended it againſt the attack of the *Turks* in 1641; but in the following year they ſet fire to the town and blew it up.

After this the *Turks* rebuilt the place; and *Ruſſia* laying claim to the town in 1672, the former ſtrongly fortified it. In the year 1695, the *Ruſſians* demoliſhed the two ſtrong towers which ſtood before the town; and in 1696 they took the town itſelf, which they fortified with additional works; but by the treaty of peace concluded at the *Pruth* in 1711, it was reſtored to the *Turks*.

In the year 1736, the *Ruſſians* became maſters of *Aſow* once more, and put it in a good ſtate of defence; but at the treaty of peace concluded at *Belgrade* in 1739, they were obliged to relinquiſh and entirely demoliſh the town.

Such were the various turns of fortune which befel this important fortreſs, of which we have a large account in the ſecond Volume of the Collection of *Ruſſian* Tranſactions, in an excellent hiſtorical piece firſt publiſhed ſeparately by Profeſſor *Beyer*, and entitled, *Begebenheit von Aſow*, i. e. 'The 'Fate of *Aſow*.'

In this Diſtrict are alſo

Lutik, a ſtrong caſtle which ſtands on an iſland, formed by the two channels of the river *Don*, oppoſite to *Aſow*. It conſiſts of four citadels, which have a communication with each other by walls, *&c.* This fort was taken by the *Ruſſians* in 1696.

Taganrok was a fortification and excellent harbour on the *Palus Mœotis* or ſea of *Aſow*, built in the year 1697 by *Peter the Great*; but by the peace concluded at the *Pruth* it was demoliſhed and abandoned by the *Ruſſians*. The fort called *Semenowſki*, which alſo lies in this Government, likewiſe met with the ſame fate.

* It is generally called *Aſoph* or *Aſof* in the maps.

† Or rather *Catawa*.

THE


RUSSIA in ASIA,
Containing SIBERIA, and the GOVERNMENTS of KASAN, ORENBURG & ASTRACAN.
for Busching's Geography,
from the best Authorities
By T. Kitchin Geog.r
RUSSIA in EUROPE
FROZEN O
NOVAIA SEMLIA OR NEW LAND
ICE
Arctic Circl.
Waigats or Weigats
Yamsk
Obdorskoi
Yurak Samoi.
Samoiedes
Chatanskoi Post
Katanskoi Pogost
Turkoya
Mangasea or Turukansk
Turukan R.
Yenisei
Podkamenie Tung.
Nasimovskoi
Yemiseisk
Markowo-Gorodkiskoi
Rubenskoi-Ostrog
Maskowskoi Ostrog
Meleesk
Tomsk
Abrainsk
WerkneiKamuschog
Kinskoi Ostrog
Bratskoi Ostrog
Irkutskoi Ostrog
Balaganskoi Ostr.
Idinskoi
Baskoi Ostrog
Nikolskoia Stanitza
Buratians
Tartars
Abakanskoi Ostrog
Kolowzi Tartars
Theleuti Tartars
Desert of Barrabin
Wogulitzi
Permskoi
Kasan
Orenburg
Bashkirians Tartars
Yaik R.
Volga R.
Don R.
Dwina R.
Petchora R.
Kama R.
Tobol R.
Irtish R.
Ob R.
Yenisei R.
Lena R.
Tunguska R.
Angara R.
Selinga R.
Argun R.
Amur R.
Kolyma R.
Indigirska R.
Yana R.
Olenek R.
Lena R.
Jana R.
Kolyma R.
Anadyr R.
Penjigan R.
Tamura R.
Caltuga R.
Obskaia Guba or Ob Bay
Taz Bay
Yenisei Bay
Lena Bay
Anadyr Bay
Penjigan Bay
Archangel
Wologda
Kasan
Astracan
Caspian Sea
Aral Lake
Kasatshia Horda Tartars and Karacalpacks Tributaries to the Russians
Longitude E. from Ferro


SEA
SEA OF ANADIR
SEA OF KAMTSHATKA
SEA OF OCHOZK
OR Bolsherezkoi
LAMA
CHINESE
TARTARY
Kurile Isles
The Inhabitants of these Isles are called Jesso by the Japanese
Tshuktskoi Noss
Anadirskoi Ostrog
Anadir R.
Kamtshatka R.
Okotzkoi Ostrog
Ochotzk
Yakutsk
Lena R.
Aldan R.
Olenik R.
Jana R.
Indigirka R.
Kolyma R.
Amur R.
Penshina R.
Tigil R.
Ud R.
Maia R.
Uda R.
Wilui R.
Muna R.
Olekminskoi Ostrog
Vitimskoi Ostrog
Irkutsk
Nertshinsk
Argunsk
Selenginsk
Udinsk
Tunguski
Podkamenie Tunguski
Yenisei
Beering I.
St. Peter & St. Paul Harbour
Makarow C.
Sviatoi C.
Cape Dimidof
St. Laurence

THE

ASIATIC PART

OF THE

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

§. 1. THE *Ruſſian* dominions in *Aſia*, make a conſiderable part of *Great* or *Aſiatic Tartary*. The word *Tatar* * properly ſignifies the Lord or Sovereign of a country; and conſequently it cannot be originally applied to any particular *Tartarian* nation, much leſs to a certain river, as was formerly imagined. That the *Tartars* and *Turks* have certainly the ſame origin, is evident from the ſimilitude of their language, complexion, and air of their countenances. Under the name of *Tartary* a part only of this vaſt tract is properly included; but cuſtom has extended it to the whole country. This extenſive region has, no leſs improperly, been called *Mungalia*; for it is uncertain whether the people who live more northerly or eaſterly had ever any connection with theſe *Tartars* and *Mungalians*. The *Yakuthians*, and the more remote nations differ extremely from the *Tartars*, properly ſo called, in their cuſtoms and manner of living. The country of the *Siberians* and *Oſtiaks* came to be looked upon as part of *Tartary*, becauſe thoſe nations had been conquered by the *Tartars*, or rather by the *Mungalians*, who ſent ſeveral colonies amongſt them; or becauſe it formerly belonged to the kingdom of *Great Tartary*, which was founded by *Zingis-Kan*. This diſtinction muſt be particularly obſerved with regard to *Ruſſian Tartary*; we ſhall therefore ſpecify in the proper places, what territories are a part of *Tartary*, properly ſo called, and what provinces do not belong to it.

* The Author calls the country *Tatarey* and the people *Tatars*, which I preſume is the right name; but *Tartar* is the name they are generally known by in *Europe*.

§. 2. The

§. 2. The ſeas bordering on this country, and incloſed by it, have been already deſcribed *; what now remains is only to give an account of its rivers and lakes. With regard to the former the moſt remarkable are,

Firſt, The rivers which run into the *Caſpian-Sea*.

Theſe are,

1. The WOLGA, of which we have already given an account in deſcribing *European Ruſſia*.

2. The YAIK, formerly called *Rhymnus*, has its ſource among the *Uralian* mountains, in Latitude 54° and Longitude 87°, and after running a courſe of about 1000 *Werſts*, empties itſelf by two channels into the *Caſpian-Sea* in Latitude 47°, 30′, and Longitude 74°. The principal rivers which fall into it are the *Upper* and *Lower Kyſyl*, and the *Sacmara*. The *Yaik* abounds with excellent fiſh, and has a very rapid current; but in ſome parts is very ſhallow. Its banks near the influx of the river *Sacmara* are rocky: and are alſo very high and mountainous near the river *Kyſyl*. Oppoſite the *Upper Kyſyl* ſtands a high mountain, out of which are dug magnets or load-ſtones. But the farther you go from this river, the more extenſive are the plains; and the country is more level near the mouth of it than about its ſource: However it is, for the moſt part barren and ſandy; ſo that corn is chiefly produced in the higher grounds for the ſubſiſtance of the inhabitants. There is but little wood growing in theſe parts, except in the neighbourhood of *Sacmara*.

3. The YEM, or, as it is called by the *Ruſſians*, *Iemba*, is a rapid, but very ſhallow river; for it is hardly five feet deep at the mouth. Its water is clear, and the banks are fertile; but there are neither towns nor villages built on the borders of it. The *Tartars* of the *Kaſatſha Horda*, who inhabit the country on the weſt ſide of this river, live in tents and little huts. The *Yem* empties itſelf into the *Caſpian-Sea*.

4. GIHUN, which is alſo called by the ſeveral names of *Amu*, *Amol*, *Amu-Daria*, *Midergias*, *Sheherbas*, *Nahar*, † or ſimply *Roud Kanem*, i. e. 'the large ſtream'. This river was the *Oxus* and *Bactrus* of the Ancients; and formely diſembogued itſelf by two channels or mouths into the *Caſpian-Sea*; but theſe are now become dry, and the ſtream has been diverted by art into the ſea or lake of *Aral*. In *Cyrus*'s time it was the boundary of the *Perſian* Monarchy; and is by ſome authors ſuppoſed to be the *Araxes* of the Ancients. Its ſource is in the mountains of *Paropamiſſus*.

5. SIHUN, was anciently called *Alſhaſh*, *Saert*, *Acſaert*, *Sir*, *Daria*, *Sirdergias*, *Jaxartes*, and *Siris*; but was erroneouſly thought by the *Macedonians* to be the *Tanais*. This river has always emptied itſelf into the lake of *Aral*.

Secondly, Thoſe rivers which diſcharge themſelves into the *Ice-Sea*, which are,

* See p. 60, *& ſeq.* † נהר or *Nahar*, in the *Hebrew* language ſignifies a river.

1. The

1. The famous and large river OB or OBY, which under the name of *Bi*, iſſues from the *Altin*-lake (by the *Ruſſians* called *Teleſkoi-Oſero*,) in Latitude 52° and Longitude 103°, 30′. Its name ſignifies 'great;' and accordingly in *Ruſſia* it is often called the *Great River*. The *Kalmucks* and *Tartars* generally give it the name of *Umar*. It is a very large, ſmooth ſtream, its current being uſually ſlow; and is between two and three hundred fathoms in breadth: But in many places it is much broader, eſpecially in great floods. It abounds with fiſh; and is navigable almoſt to the lake in which it ſprings. The bottom of this river for a conſiderable way from its ſource is ſtony; but from the influx of the river *Ket* it is clayey. In its courſe, eſpecially towards the town of *Bereſow*, it forms a great many iſlands. The *Oby* in its ſeveral windings traverſes a long tract of land, and in Latitude 67°, and Longitude 86°, empties itſelf into a bay of the *Ice-Sea*, which runs eighty *German* miles into the land; but the mouth of the bay, where it joins the *Ice-Sea* lies in Latitude 73°, 30′, and 90° Longitude. The ſprings where this river riſes are not very copious; but it receives ſeveral large rivers in its courſe. Theſe are,

The *Catuna*, at the influx of which it acquires the name of *Oby*.

The *Tſharyſh* and *Alei*, which runs into it on the left ſide.

The *Tſhumyſh*, on the right ſide.

The *Tſheus* and *Shagarca*, which falls into it on the left.

The *Tom* and *Tſhulim*, which laſt, is called *Iiuſs*, near its ſource, and is formed by the conflux of two ſtreams called the *White* and *Black River*.

The *Ket*, which is well known on account of its proximity to the river *Ieniſea* near its ſource, falls into the *Oby* on the right ſide; and the *Waſſuga* on the left.

The *Tym* and the *Wak*, famous for the paſſage of ſeveral ſhips, which ſail through theſe rivers and the *Yelogui* into the *Ieniſea*, run into the *Oby* on the right ſide.

The *Iugan* and *Irtis*, and ſeveral other rivers empty themſelves into the *Oby* lower down; among which *Kaſim*, on the right ſide, and *Soſwa*, on the left, are the principal.

Of all the rivers which increaſe the *Oby*, the moſt remarkable is the *Tom*; it being navigable as far as the town of *Kutſneſk*. Its ſource is near the river *Abakan*, in Latitude 53°, and its influx into the *Oby* is in Latitude 58°. It receives ſeveral rivulets in its courſe; but the *Condoma*, which runs into it on the left ſide, oppoſite to the town of *Kutſneſk*, is a conſiderable river.

The *Irtis* or *Irtiſh* riſes in the country of the *Kalmuks*, and in Latitude 46° 30′ and 103° Longitude, runs through the lake of *Saiſſan*; and, after winding through a long tract of land, falls into the *Oby*, in Latitude 61°, and 86° of Longitude. In this river are ſeveral iſlands, which in ſummer, when the water is low, are more numerous than during the floods in ſpring. Some of theſe

theſe iſlands diſappear, and others ſeem to ſupply their place. The depth of the *Irtis* is ſo remarkably variable, that ſhips can no longer paſs where they formerly uſed to do; and on the other hand, thoſe parts which were once ſhallow have now a ſufficient depth of water for veſſels of burden. Its water is light and clear, and abounds with fine fiſh; particularly ſturgeon, the fat of which is, by the inhabitants of this country, reckoned the greateſt delicacy. The *Irtis* on both ſides receives ſeveral rivers. The principal of theſe, after it has paſſed the fortreſs of *Uſtkamenogorſk* in its courſe, are the following:

The *Ulba*, *Shulba*, and *Uba* which run into it on the right.
The *Zarguban*, which name ſignifies three oxen, on the left.
The *Tſhernuia* falls into the *Irtis* on the right.
The *Sheleſenca* and *Tawgutſkei*, on the left.
The river *Om* on the right.
The *Camyſhlowia* on the left.
The *Tara*, *Shiſh*, and *Tui* on the right.
The *Iſhim*, *Tobol*, and *Konda* on the left.

Of theſe rivers the *Iſhim*, the *Tobol*, and the *Konda* are the largeſt. The *Konda* falls into the *Irtis* a little beyond the 30th degree of North Latitude. The *Tobol* riſes from ſeveral ſprings in Latitude 52° 30′, and Longitude 81°. Its banks are ſo low, that the neighbouring country is ſubject to frequent inundations: It falls into the *Irtis*, in Latitude 58°, and 86° of Longitude.

The ſmaller rivers *Ui*, *Iſet*, *Tura*, and *Tawda* increaſe the *Tobol* conſiderably. The *Iſet* has its ſource in a lake, and runs through the territory of *Cathrinenburg*; and, after receiving, on the right, the *Siſert*, *Sinara*, *Tetſha*, and *Mias*; and ſeveral ſmall ſtreams on the left, it diſcharges itſelf into the *Tobol* in Latitude 57°. The *Tura* riſes in the mountains of *Wercoturia* in Latitude 59°, and falls into the *Tobol* in Latitude 57°, 30′. If the water of the *Tura* were to be deducted from that of the *Tobol*, the former, on the right ſide, receives but a little leſs quantity of water than is contained in the *Tobol*, from the rivers *Salda*, *Tagil*, *Niza* (which is formed by the *Nieva* and *Reſh*, and is enlarged by the *Irbit* from the right) and the *Pyſhma*. The *Tawda* riſes about the Latitude of 63°, and Longitude 80°, and is formed by the conflux of the *Soſwa* and the *Loſwa*, and, ſomething beyond the 59th degree of Latitude, and about the ſame degree of Longitude runs into the *Tobol*.

2. The IENISEI, or IENISEA, is little inferior to the *Oby*. The *Tartars* and *Moguls* call this river *Keen*, but the *Oſtiaks* give it the name of *Guck* or *Ke-ſes*, i. e. 'The great river.' It is formed by the conflux of the two rivers *Ulu-Kem* and *Bri-Kem*, in Latitude 51°, 30′, and 111° of Longitude. From thence it directs its courſe almoſt due North; and in Latitude 70°, and 103° 30′ Longitude, forms a kind of bay, in which are ſeveral iſlands:

This

This bay runs about 3° 30′ in length, towards the North, in which Latitude * and the 100th degree of Longitude, at laſt it joins the *Ice-Sea*. At the town of *Ieniſeiſk*, in autumn when this river is loweſt, the breadth of it at the ſurface of the water is 570, and in the ſpring when it is higheſt about 795 fathoms. The bottom of the *Ieniſei* is ſtony and ſandy; and the banks, eſpecially on the eaſt ſide, are very mountainous and rocky. The fiſh in this river are palatable, and its current for the moſt part is rapid; but it gradually leſſens its rapidity towards the mouth; ſo that at laſt it has ſcarce any appearance of a current. In that part of its courſe where it approaches the rivers *Dubtſhes* and *Turukan*, it forms ſeveral iſlands between the towns of *Ieniſeiſk* and *Kraſnoiarſk*; and, below the *Dubtſhes*, it has ſome cataracts or waterfalls; but is navigable from its mouth as far as the *Abakan*, and even higher up. A little way from its ſource, the *Ieniſei* receives the following rivers; *viz.*

The *Kemtſhuk* and *Abakan* on the left.

The *Tuba*, *Mana*, *Kan*, and *Tunguſca* on the right.

The *Kaſs*, *Syn*, and *Dubtſhes* on the left.

The *Tunguſca podeamenaia*, i. e. 'beyond the mountains,' and the *Bacta* on the right.

The *Yelogui* on the left.

The *Lower Tunguſca* on the right.

The *Turuca* on the left; not to mention other rivers that fall into the *Ieniſei* near its mouth.

It muſt be obſerved that there are three rivers called *Tunguſca*, which all run into the *Ieniſei*. The firſt and moſt northerly of theſe is called ſimply *Tunguſca*, and acquires this name after it is joined by the river *Ilien:* it is called *Angara* from the influx of that river to its ſource, which is in the lake of *Baikal*. Its bottom is ſtony, and full of rocks, which cauſe four waterfalls in this river. But it is navigated during the ſummer both with and againſt the ſtream, though the paſſage upwards muſt be attended with no ſmall difficulty and hazard.

3. The LENA, which is a large river, waters the eaſt part of *Siberia*, and riſes on the north ſide of the lake of *Baikal*, in Latitude 52° 30′, and Longitude 124° 30′. This river, after pervading a large tract of land in Latitude 73°, divides itſelf into five branches; three of which run weſtward, and two towards the eaſt; and by theſe channels it diſcharges itſelf into the *Ice-Sea*. Its three weſtern mouths lie in 153 degrees of Longitude, but the eaſtern extends only as far as 143°. The current is every where very ſlow; and its bed is entirely free from rocks. The bottom is ſandy; and the banks are in ſome places rocky and mountainous. The principal rivers that fall into the *Lena* are,

The *Manſurca*, and *Culenga*, which run into it on the weſt or left ſide.

* That is, ſeventy-three degrees and a half.

The *Orlenga*, on the right.
The *Ilga*, on the left.
The *Kirmga*, *Tſhebſhui*, and *Tſhaia*, on the right.
The *Itſhora*, on the left.
The *Witim*, the two *Potama*'s, the *Olecma*, the two *Talba*'s, and the *Aldan*, on the right.
The *Wilui*, on the left, *&c.*

Among all theſe, the *Witim*, *Olecma*, *Aldan*, and *Wilui* have the longeſt courſe. The *Witim* is ſaid to owe its ſource to a great number of lakes, which have a communication with each other by natural channels. Among other rivers, it receives two ſtreams called *Mama*, celebrated for a tranſparent foſſile called *Marienglas*, or *Muſcovy-glaſs*, dug along its banks. The courſe of the *Wilui* is in 16°, 30′ before it joins the *Lena*. The river *Aldan* receives, on the right or the eaſt ſide, the *Utſhun* and *Maia*, and on the oppoſite ſide the *Iudoma*. There is a paſſage for veſſels from the *Lena* and *Aldan* through the *Maia* and *Iudoma*, almoſt to the ſource of the latter; from which, after a journey of twenty *German* miles by land, a traveller may go down the *Urack* by water into the *Sea* of *Kamtſhatka* *. We come

Thirdly, To thoſe rivers which diſcharge themſelves into the *Eaſtern Ocean*. Theſe are,

1. The AMUR, a large and celebrated ſtream formerly called *Karanmuran*; but, at preſent, the *Chineſe* and *Manſhurians* give it the name of *Sagalin-Ula*. It is alſo called *Yamur*, *Onon*, *Helong-Kiang*, and *Skilka*. The *Amur* is formed by the conflux of the rivers *Skilk* and *Argun*; is navigable a great way from its mouth; and abounds with fiſh. The length of its courſe is four hundred *German* or geographical miles.

2. The UD, or *Uda*, is the only conſiderable river that runs into the *Sea* of *Kamtſhatka*.

3. The PENSHINA, which gives name to the gulf of *Penſhinſka*.

4. The ANADIR, a conſiderable river which runs into the *Eaſtern Ocean*.

§. 3. The principal lakes in the *Aſiatic* Part of the *Ruſſian* Empire are,

1. The *Aral* †, which lies not far from the *Caſpian-Sea*, and is one of the largeſt lakes in all *Aſia*. Its length from North to South is ſaid to be thirty *German* or geographical miles, and its breadth from Eaſt to Weſt is about half as much. Its water is very ſalt; and on that account it is conveyed by the neighbouring *Karacalpacks*, the *Kaſatſha-Horda*, and the *Turkomanians*, by ſmall narrow canals into ſandy pits, where the heat of the ſun, by exhaling the water, provides them with a ſufficient quantity of ſalt for their neceſſary uſes. The ſame ſpecies of fiſh are found in this lake as in the *Caſpian-Sea*; and the *Aral*, like the latter, has no viſible outlet.

* This is a bay of the *Eaſtern Ocean*.
† This is called the *Sea* of *Aral* in the maps.

2. The

2. The *Baikal*-lake, by the neighbouring people called *Swiatoie-More*, or 'the holy lake,' extends in length from Weſt to Eaſt five hundred *Werſts*; but from North to South it is but twenty or thirty in a direct line, and in ſome parts only fifteen *Werſts*. It is entirely ſurrounded by high mountains. This lake does not begin to freeze till about *Chriſtmas*, and thaws about the beginning of *May*; from which time to *September* a ſhip is ſeldom wrecked upon it; but by the high winds, which blow in that month, many veſſels are loſt on this lake. When ſuch ſtorms happen, the inhabitants that live near the *Baikal* imagine, that by complimenting it with the name of a SEA they render the lake propitious, and are preſerved againſt all the dangers it ſeems to threaten. In that part of it that lies near the river *Barguſin*, it throws up an inflamable liquid called *Maltha* *, which the inhabitants of the adjacent country burn in their lamps. There are alſo ſeveral ſulphureous ſprings near the *Baikal*-lake. Its water at ſome diſtance appears of a ſea-green colour; it is very freſh, and ſo clear that one may ſee objects to the depth of ſeveral fathoms in it. In this lake great plenty of large ſturgeon and pyke, and ſeveral black, but no ſpotted ſeals are caught. This lake contains ſeveral iſlands; and the borders of it are haunted by black ſables and civet-cats.

3. The *Altin*-lake, called by the *Ruſſians Teleſkoi-Oſero*, from the *Teleſſi*, a *Tartarian* nation who live on the borders of it. The *Tartars* call it *Altin-Kul*, and the *Kalmucks* give it the name of *Altinnor*. It is about eighteen *German* or geographical miles in length, and twelve in breadth. The north part of this lake is ſometimes frozen ſo hard, as to be paſſable on foot; but the ſouth part is never covered with ice. The bottom is ſteep and rocky. The water in the *Altin*-lake, and alſo in the rivers that run through the adjacent parts, contrary to what happens in other lakes, *&c.* riſes only in the midſt of ſummer, when the great heats diſſolve the ſnow on the mountains, which had withſtood the rays of the vernal ſun.

We now proceed to the Deſcription of the country itſelf, where we firſt meet with

---

The WEST and SOUTH PART of

RUSSIAN TARTARY,

WHICH, from time immemorial, has made part of the *Ruſſian* dominions; and belongs to *Tartary* properly ſo called. This country is inhabited by various nations, of which we ſhall give a conciſe account.

* This is a kind of liquid ſulphur.

1. The *Circaſſians*, who inhabit the country lying to the north-weſt part of the *Caſpian-Sea*, between *Georgia* and the mouth of the *Wolga*. *Circaſſia* is above ſixty *German* miles in length, and of an equal breadth; and is partly ſubject to *Ruſſia*, and partly under the dominion of the *Crim-Kan*: However, ſome of the inhabitants ſtill preſerve their independency. The *Circaſſians*, and eſpecially the women, have the reputation of being the moſt beautiful of all the eaſtern nations. Prince *Cantemir*, in his Hiſtory of the *Ottoman* Empire, ſays, that they may be juſtly termed the *French Tartars*, becauſe they continually invent new faſhions both as to their dreſs and their arms; and that the other *Tartars* never fail to imitate theſe modes; and generally ſend their children among them for education. As to their religion, they ſeem to be Half-Mahometans; for they uſe circumciſion and other *Mahometan* rites; but have no *Mulhas* * or *Moſques*, and expreſs no veneration for the *Koran*. They are moſtly employed in hunting, feeding of cattle, and agriculture. That part of their country that borders on the *Caſpian-Sea* is very barren; but towards *Dagheſtan* and *Georgia* the ſoil is exceeding fertile. The *Circaſſian* horſes are far from being handſome; but as they are hardy and ſpirited, they bear a good price.

2. The *Grebinian* and *Yaik Coſaks*, the latter of which live near the river *Yaik*. Mention has been made of theſe tribes in our account of the Government of *Kiew*.

3. The *Great Nogayans*. Theſe are Mahometan *Tartars*, and live near the *Caſpian-Sea*, between the *Wolga* and the *Yaik*. They ſubſiſt by hunting, and feeding of cattle; and ſome of them are employed in agriculture. Great numbers of the *Nogayans* have been converted to the *Greek* religion.

4. The *Torgautians* or rather the *Torgut-Kalmuks*, who inhabit the country that lies between the *Wolga* and the *Yaik*, are *Kalmuks* and Pagans. *Torgut* ſignifies the illuſtrious tribe, or the great, noble, celebrated *Horde*; and the *Torgutes* are thought by the learned to be the *Thyſſagetes* or *Thyrſagetes*, mentioned by *Herodotus* the hiſtorian, above 2000 years ago.

5. The *Tſheremiſſians* and *Tſhuwaſhians*, of whom we have ſpoken in our account of the Government of *Niſhneinowgorod*.

6. The *Wotiakians*, who belong to the Government of *Kaſan*, live in a very ſavage and ſordid manner. They, indeed, believe in a ſupreme Being, whom they term *Yumar*, and imagine that he reſides in the ſun; but they neither worſhip, nor pay him any regard. On any exigency they repair for advice and aſſiſtance to a certain perſon whom they call *Dona*. They ſpeak both the *Tartarian* and *Ruſſian* languages; and ſubſiſt chiefly by hunting.

7. The *Tartars* of the Government of *Kaſan*. Theſe profeſs the *Mahometan* religion; and are more civilized and decent in their behaviour than the *Tſheremiſſians* and *Wotiakians*.

* The *Mulhas* are *Mahometan* prieſts; their temples are called *Moſques*; and the *Koran* commonly called the *Alcoran*, is their ſacred book, written by *Mahomet*.

8. The

8. The *Baſhkirian* and *Uſian Tartars*, who alſo live within the Government of *Kaſan*. The former inhabit the country that lies towards the Eaſt, between the river *Kama*, the mountains of *Ural*, and the *Wolga*; but the latter live in the north part of that Government. They live together and intermarry, without mixing with other nations. Theſe *Tartars* are ſtrong, and well-made. They have broad faces, a brown complexion, black hair, and long beards. Their dreſs is not unlike that of the *Ruſſians*. They are excellent horſemen; and are remarkable for their valour and dexterity in managing their bows and arrows. As to their religion, they may rather be accounted Heathens than *Mahometans*, circumciſion and few other ceremonies being all that they practice of the latter: Some of them, indeed, have been converted to the *Greek* religion. They live in towns or villages, and employ themſelves in hunting, feeding of cattle, and agriculture: They have alſo plenty of honey and furrs. They uſually threſh their corn in the field before they bring it home. They pay their tribute in the produce of their country, as corn, wax, honey, cattle and furrs. Though they have a great number of hogs, they never eat any pork. They uſe both horſes and dromedaries for travelling, *&c.* They take as many wives as they can maintain, and give horſes in exchange for them: ſometimes ſix or ſeven horſes are given for a wife. Both the *Baſhkirian* and *Uſian Tartars* have ſeveral times, and particularly towards the cloſe of the year 1735, attempted to ſhake off the *Ruſſian* yoke; but were ſoon reduced to obedience. After this, upon their requeſting a new form of government, a *Ruſſian Starſhine* or Judge, and a *Sotnik* or Prefect have been ſet over every Diſtrict; and a kind, of Overſeer is appointed in every village; ſo that all opportunities of future revolt ſeem to be taken from them, eſpecially as there are ſeveral fortreſſes built in this country by way of a further check upon them.

We ſhall, in the next place, treat of every province, or Government, in particular.

I. The GOVENRNMENT of

ASTRACAN;

Called in the *Ruſſian* language

ASTRACANAIA GUBERNIIA.

THIS province contains the ancient *Tartarian* Kingdom of *Aſtracan*, which, in year 1554, was conquered by the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz*; and includes the country lying on the north and partly on the weſt ſide of

of the *Caſpian-Sea*. The heat here is ſo intenſe in ſummer, that, according to obſervations made at *Aſtracan* by M. *Lerch*, the Thermometer ſometimes riſes to above a hundred, and even to a hundred and three degrees and a half according to *Fahrenheit*'s Scale; though *Boerhaave*, in his *Elemen. Chym.* p. 192, aſſerts, that a heat above the ninetieth degree of *Fahrenheit*'s Thermometer would be more than human creatures could bear; and that all animals, of which he had any knowledge, ſoon expired in ſuch a degree of heat. The *Steppe*, or wide deſert plain of *Aſtracan*, according to the account given us by travellers, is a dreary waſte, without water or verdure; and towards the coaſt of the *Caſpian-Sea* it is ſaid to be very ſandy. In the neighbourhood of *Aſtracan*, are ſmall lakes and ponds ſo impregnated with ſalt, that ſometimes it incruſts the ſurface of the water like ice. This ſaline incruſtation is ſo thick that one may ſecurely walk on it; and ſalt is likewiſe found at the bottom of the ponds in the form of cryſtal ſalts. The *Arbuſes*, or water-melons, that grow about *Aſtracan* are accounted the beſt in the *Ruſſian* Empire; and the vines, which have been planted here, thrive extremely well.

The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Aſtracan, which is the capital, the reſidence of the Governor, and a Biſhop's See, ſtands near the *Caſpian-Sea* on an iſland formed by the *Wolga*; and in the *Ruſſian* language is called *Dolgoi*, which ſignifies *long*. It is almoſt a *German* mile in circuit, and is ſurrounded with a good ſtone-wall; and oppoſite to it ſtands a fort. Among the *Ruſſian* churches in this city the Cathedral is the moſt elegant and the lateſt built. The *Lutherans* have a church here; as have alſo the *Armenians*, who, to the number of forty families, reſide here for the ſake of trade. *Aſtracan* has always been remarkable for its commerce; and above thirty different nations reſort hither to traffic. A garriſon of 3000 men is always kept in this city.

Kraſnoiiar, a ſmall town, ſtands on the *Wolga* and is incloſed with a kind of wooden wall. This town, with the next following, keep a watchful eye upon the roving *Calmuks*, who often bring their cattle to graze hereabouts. The name of this town ſignifies 'a red bank.'

Tſhernoiiar, a little town in the *Steppe*, or deſert, on the bank of the *Wolga*. It is fortified with eight wooden towers and ſtrong barricadoes, againſt the incurſions of the *Coſaks*. As theſe fortifications were erected in the reign of the Great Duke *Michael*, the town is alſo called *Michailo-Novogrod*.

Zarizin, a ſmall town on the *Wolga*, ſurrounded with wooden redoubts and towers. Its garriſon watches the motions of the *Tartars* and *Coſaks*, againſt the incurſions of which a ſtrong line, called the *Zarizin-Line*, has been drawn from the *Wolga* to the *Don*. Along this line the forts *Metſhonaia*, *Gratſki*, *Ozokor*, and *Donſkaia* are erected.

Guriew,

Guriew, a ſmall place on an iſland, formed by the river *Yaik*, at its mouth where it falls into the *Caſpian-Sea*.

Yaik, or *Yaitzskoi Gorodok*, a large town ſituated on the river *Yaik*. It carries on a very conſiderable trade, and has a good fiſhery: and is famous for the *Caviere* made in this town.

On the weſt ſide of the *Caſpian-Sea* ſtands

Kiſliarskaia, a fortreſs near the river *Terek*. On the ſame river are alſo ſome other inconſiderable places, as *Sſhedrin*, *Tſherwlenoi*, &c.

The *Ruſſians* have extended their conqueſts on this ſide of the *Caſpian-Sea* a great way towards the South, both under the Emperor *Peter* I. in 1722, and ſtill farther in the reign of the Empreſs *Anne*. For the *Perſians*, by the treaty of peace concluded in 1732 at *Ratſha* in the province of *Ghilan*, for ever ceded to *Ruſſia* a tract of land along the coaſt of the *Caſpian-Sea* of above ſixty *German* miles in length, and comprehending the provinces of *Dageſtan* and *Shirwan*. But as multitudes of the *Ruſſian* ſoldiers died in this warm climate, ſo different from their own; and as the revenues of the provinces did not anſwer the charges of keeping up the troops; *Ruſſia* evacuated theſe conqueſts in exchange for the privilege of an unlimited commerce throughout all the *Perſian* dominions. At preſent, the river *Terek* is the limits betwixt *Ruſſia* and *Perſia*.

II. The GOVERNMENT of

ORENBURG.

THIS Government lies in the province of *Ufa*, and has been but lately erected. It has its name from

The town and fortreſs of *Orenburg*, which was built in 1738 by order of the Empreſs *Anne*, at the conflux of the *Or* and the *Yaik*. But that ſituation being found inconvenient, the inhabitants were removed, and the town built lower down on the *Yaik* in 1740. This town was deſigned to protect the new ſubjects who, from time to time, put themſelves under the protection of the *Ruſſians*, and to promote the trade with the people that live more towards the South. Since the eſtabliſhment of a conſiderable commerce here, all *Ruſſian* and *Aſiatic* merchants are permitted, on paying a certain duty, to ſell their goods by wholeſale or retail; and all *European* foreign merchants are allowed to bring their goods from the harbours and frontier towns to *Orenburg*.

The other places of note belonging to this Government are,

Ozernoi, *Bordinſkoi*, and *Ilek*, which are forts on the river *Yaik*.

Sakmarsk,

Sakmarsk, a little town on the river *Sakmara*.

Ufa, a fortified provincial town, ſituated on a river of the ſame name.

Kandara, a fortreſs on a lake of the ſame name; and *Menzelinsk* is alſo a fortreſs on the river *Menzelia*.

Kungur. Near this town is a remarkable cavern of chalk; the inſide of which is ſo curiouſly formed by Nature, that no traveller, who paſſes this way, omits ſeeing it. It is ſaid to have been formerly inhabited by ſome *Ruſſians*, who fled thither for ſhelter againſt the incurſions of the *Baskirians*; and to this it is owing that a wooden croſs is ſtill to be ſeen in the cave.

On the *Steppe*, or deſert, are alſo the forts of *Atſhitzkaia* and *Biſert*, ſo called from the rivers on which they ſtand.

III. The GOVERNMENT of KASAN.

THIS Government is of greater extent than the ancient kingdom of *Kaſan*, which was conquered in the year 1552 by the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz*. It contains

1. The Circle of KASAN, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Kaſanskoi Uiezd*. Places of note in this Diſtrict are,

Kaſan, the capital of this Government. It ſtands on the river *Kaſanka*, which, about a *German* mile from this place, runs into the *Wolga*. In the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* languages *Kaſan* ſignifies a cauldron large enough to contain victuals for many perſons; and this name the *Crim* and *Budziak Murſes* give to the families of their ſubjects or vaſſals, about ten men being reckoned to a *Kaſan*. This city conſiſts of a ſtrong fort built with ſtone, the *Wooden Town*, as it is called, and ſeveral adjoining *Slobodes* or Suburbs; and among theſe there is one inhabited by *Tartars*, in which are four *Metſheds*. Here are about fifty churches almoſt all of them built with ſtone, and eleven convents, in and near the town. In the fort is the Government's Chancery, which is under the direction of the Governor and Deputy-Governor. The Governor of the fort has all the garriſons and regiments within the Government under his command. The garriſon of the city conſiſts of two regiments, for the ſervice of which a very good hoſpital is provided. *Kaſan* is alſo an Archbiſhop's See; and the nunnery of the *Virgin* Mary in this city boaſts of a miraculous image of the Bleſſed Virgin. At one end of the town is a cloth manufactory; and all the cloth is bought up at a ſet price by the Crown, in order to clothe the ſoldiers. In the convent

convent of *Silandowo*, which ſtands on the river *Kaſanka* about two *Werſts* from the town, is a ſchool where the children of Tſhuaſhian, Tſheremiſſian, Mordunian *Calmuks* and *Tartars* are taught the *Ruſſian* and *Latin* languages, the principles of the Chriſtian religion, and the elements of Philoſophy, in order to qualify them as preachers for the converſion of the nations to which they belong. In 1749 and 1752 this city was totally deſtroyed by fire. The *Ruſſians* firſt made themſelves maſters of this important place on the third of *October* 1552.

Laiſhew, a ſmall town on the river *Kama*, where the veſſels laden with ſalt from *Permia* arrive every year; and the maſters hire men to draw them up the *Wolga* from hence to *Niſhneinowogrod*.

About ſeventy *Werſts* from *Kaſan*, and not far from the river *Kama*, are to be ſeen the ruins of the ancient city of *Bulgar*, which was formerly the capital of the *Bulgarians*. *Peter the Great*, in the year 1722, when he went on his expedition againſt the *Perſians*, viſited theſe ruins, and gave orders for copying and tranſlating into the *Ruſſian* language ſeveral *Armenian* and *Turkiſh* monumental inſcriptions found among them. *Bulgaria* ſtill makes a part of the Czaar's titles.

Staro Sheſhminsk, and *Nowo Sheſhminsk*, on the river *Sheſma*, which runs into the *Kama*; and alſo *Biliarsk* on the river *Maloi*, *Tinsk* on the ſmall river *Tnia*, and *Sainsk* are fortreſſes in this Circle.

Malmyſh, a ſmall town on the river *Wiatka*.

Sarapul, which ſtands on the river *Kama*, is a ſmall town, or rather a fortreſs with a *Slobode* or Suburb.

Oſſa, a fortification and *Slobode* or Suburb on the *Kama*. About five *Werſts* from this fort is a copper-work.

2. The Circle of SINBIRSK, called *Sinbirſkoi Uiezd* in the *Ruſſian* language.

In this Circle are,

Simbirsk, a pretty large provincial city, which ſtands on the *Wolga*.

Bieloiiar, *Syſhran*, *Kaſhpor*, and *Saratow*, are ſmall towns on the *Wolga*.

Petrowſk on the river *Medweditza*, *Sursk*, on the river *Sura*, *Pogoreloi*, *Uren*, *Karſun*, and *Tagai* are ſmall places in this Circle.

3. The Circle of PENSISK, in the *Ruſſian* language *Penſinskoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict are,

Penſa, a provincial city on the river *Sura*.

Ramſaisk, *Mokſhaisk*, *Temar*, and *Saransk* are ſmall places in this Circle.

4. The Circle of ALATYRSK, called by the Ruſſians *Alatyrskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies

Alatyr, a provincial town, ſituated on the river *Sura*.

5. The Circle of SWIIASK, in the *Ruſſian* language *Swiiaskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies

Swiiask, a provincial city ſituated on the *Wolga*.

6. The Circle of ZYWILSK, called by the Ruſſians *Zywilskoi Uiezd.*
The only place of note in this Circle is
Zywilsk, a ſmall town.

7. The Circle of TSHEBAKSAR, in the *Ruſſian* language *Tſhebakſarskoi Uiezd.*
In this Circle lies
Tſhebakſar, a handſom provincial town on the river *Wolga.*

8. The Circle of KUSMODEMIANSK, in *Ruſſian* called *Kuſmodemianskoi Uiezd.*
In this Circle are,
Kuſmodemiansk, a ſmall town on the *Wolga.*
Waſiligorod, a ſmall town, which ſtands on an eminence.

9. The Circle of KOKSHAISK, called in the *Ruſſian* language *Kokſhaiskoi Uiezd*, in which lies
Kokſhaisk, a ſmall mean town on the river *Kokſhaga.*

10. CAREWO KOKSHAISKOI UIEZD, or Circle, in which lies
Karewo Kokſhaisk, on the river *Kokſhaga.*

11. CAREWO SANTSHURSKOI UIEZD, or Circle, in which *Samezurſt*, a ſmall place, lies.

12. The Circle of YARANSK, in the *Ruſſian* language *Iaranskoi Uiezd*, takes its name from *Yaransk* the provincial town.

13. The Circle of URSUM, in which lies the town of
Urſum, on a river of the ſame, which runs into the *Wiatka.*

14. The Circle of KLYNOW, called by the Ruſſians *Klynowskoi Uiezd*, or *Wyatskaie Provinciia*, i. e. 'the *Wiatsk* Province.'
In this Province are,
Klynow, a provincial town on the river *Wyatka.*
Orlow, or *Orel*, a ſmall place on the ſame river.
Sheſtakow, which alſo ſtands on the *Wiatka*, and *Wolynskoi* are two mean places.

15. The Circle of KAIGORODOK, by the *Ruſſians* called *Kaigorodoſkoi Uiezd.*
The only place of note in this Circle is
Kaigorodok, a ſmall town on the river *Kama*, the inhabitants of which ſubſiſt partly by agriculture, but chiefly by fiſhing.

16. The Circle of TSHERDYN, in the *Ruſſian* language *Tſherdynskoi Uiezd.*
This is a part of the ancient *Permia*; and in it lies
Tſherdyn, a provincial city on the river *Koiwa.* It is a Biſhop's See, and has a *German* ſchool.

17. The Circle of *Solikamskaia*, called by the Ruſſians *Solikamskoi Uiezd.*
In this Circle, which is alſo a part of the ancient *Permia* lies
Solikamskaia, a provincial city, on the river *Uſſolka*, conſiſting of about ſix hundred wooden houſes, ſeveral churches built with ſtone, two convents, *&c.* This town is famous for its many ſalt-pans where ſalt is made, which like all the reſt that is boiled in *Permia*, is accounted the beſt

beſt in *Ruſſia*, whither great quantities of it are exported. Theſe ſalt-works belong to forty-eight private perſons; however, ſeveral of them are not wrought at preſent, and the number of them frequently varies. There is alſo a *German* ſchool in this town.

The *Pyſhkora* copper-works ſtand on the little river *Pyſhkora*, which falls into the *Kama*. The ore is brought hither from ſeveral mines, with which this country abounds. To the monaſtery which ſtands near the works belong twenty-ſix ſalt-pans in the village *Diiadukina*, which conſiſts of about two hundred houſes. The monks have alſo four more, about ſeven *Werſts* below the village.

18. The Barony of STRAGANOW.

This Diſtrict contains many towns and villages. The Baron has in the village of *Lenwa* twenty-ſeven ſalt-works, and forty in the large and handſome village of *Nowo-Uſſolie*; which are divided into what the *Ruſſians* call *Werchnoi* and *Niſhnoi Promysk*. But ſome of theſe works are at a ſtand.

SIBERIA;

Or the NORTHERN and EASTERN PARTS of

GREAT TARTARY,

Which were lately added to the RUSSIAN DOMINIONS.

§. 1. THE name *Sibiria*, or *Siberia*, was originally applied, and ſtill properly belongs only to the ſouth part of the province of *Tobolsk*: But, in a more extenſive ſenſe, it now includes all the northern part of *Aſia*, which borders on *Ruſſia* to the Weſt, on the *Ice-Sea* to the North, on the *Eaſtern Ocean* towards the Eaſt, and on *Great Tartary* to the South. Its length from Weſt to Eaſt is ſomething above eight hundred *German* or geographical miles, and the breadth from North to South is about three hundred.

§. 2. *Siberia* ſeems to derive its name from an old city called *Sibir*, which, according to a received tradition, ſtood on the right ſide of the river *Irtis*, about eighteen *Werſts* from *Tobolsk*, and was the reſidence of the ancient Sovereigns of *Siberia*. This city alſo, probably, gave name to the river *Sibirka*, which, in this province, falls into the *Irtis*. There are ſtill ſome ruins of a rampart to be ſeen on the ſpot, but no other remains of a city.

§. 3. The air of *Siberia* is, in general, extremely piercing; and we learn from authentic obſervations that the cold here is more ſevere than in any

other part of the *Ruſſian* dominions. The *Siberian* rivers are frozen very early, and it is late in the ſpring before the ice is thawed. The ſnow often falls in *September*, and is frequently ſeen on the ground in *May*. If the corn does not come to maturity in *Auguſt*, there is little hopes of a harveſt in this country; and in the province of *Ieniſeisk* it is ſometimes covered with ſnow before the peaſants can reap it. The earth is never thawed to any conſiderable depth in *Siberia*. M. *Gmelin*, having, on the eighteenth of *June* O. S. cauſed the earth to be dug near *Iakutzk*, where the ground was high found the depth thawed to be ſcarce four feet from the ſurface; and in low places it did not exceed three feet. Near fort *Argunsk*, which is but little beyond the fiftieth degree of North Latitude, the inhabitants acquainted him, that in ſeveral places the ſoil was not thawed to above the depth of an ell and a half; and that this internal froſt made it very difficult to come at any ſprings. M. *Gmelin* obſerved that the quickſilver ſunk to a hundred and twenty degrees of *Fahrenheit*'s Scale at *Ieniſeisk*, which is a degree of cold never felt hitherto in any other country on the globe. But Providence ſeems the more liberally to have dealt out to the inhabitants of this country wood for fuel, and furrs which they make uſe of to preſerve them againſt the ſeverity of the weather. Even ice itſelf is by them, in ſome meaſure, converted into a fence againſt the cold: For in the northern parts, particularly at *Iakutzk*, it is uſual to hew a piece of tranſparent ice of the ſize of the hole which ſerves the peaſants for a window; and having placed it on the outſide, they ſprinkle a little water at the edges which immediately freezes, and cements the ice in the hole. This ice-window keeps out the wind and cold without much diminiſhing the light. Thoſe who have glaſs-windows beſides, place them on the inſide of the hole, that the houſe may not be incommoded by the cold and moiſt effluvia of the ice; but this inconveniency the common people do not regard. Beer is ſeldom known to freeze in the cellars, when the holes for admitting the light are thus ſtopped with a piece of ice. As the winter-days in the north parts of *Siberia* laſt but few hours, and the ſtorms and flakes of ſnow darken the air ſo much, that the inhabitants even at noon cannot ſee to do any thing without artificial lights, they ſleep away the greateſt part of that ſeaſon. In thoſe parts where the river *Ieniſei* empties itſelf into the *Ice-Sea*, the Northen Lights make their appearance from the beginning of *October* till *Chriſtmas*; and the corruſcations of one kind of them are ſaid to be very terrifying. M. *Gmelin* thinks this to be the place where the *Aurora Borealis* is to be ſeen in its greateſt perfection.

Theſe ſevere winters are ſucceeded by warm and delightful ſummers; and the heat is ſo intenſe that the *Tunguſians*, who inhabit the province of *Iakutzk*, go almoſt naked. Here is hardly any night during that ſeaſon; and towards the *Frozen Ocean* the ſun appears continually above the Horizon. The vegetables and fruits of the earth are here extremely quick

in

in their growth. Thunder is ſeldom heard near the *Ice-Sea*, on the coaſt of which the thunder-claps are ſaid to be ſo faint, as ſcarcely to ſtrike the ear; but the lightning may be ſeen very plainly in that climate. On the contrary, the ſouth part of *Siberia* is ſubject to very dreadful tempeſts.

§. 4. In the north part of *Siberia* neither corn nor fruit grows; ſo that the whole tract of land that lies beyond the ſixtieth degree of Latitude is a barren waſte: However, barley is known frequently to come to perfection in *Iakutzk*. On this account, the inhabitants of thoſe northern parts are obliged to live on fiſh and fleſh; but the *Ruſſians* are ſupplied with corn from the ſouthern: For in thoſe parts of *Siberia* the fertility of the ſoil is ſurpriſing. The countries that lie beyond the lake of *Baikal*, eſpecially towards the Eaſt as far as the river *Argun*, are remarkably fertile and pleaſant: But by the ſupine indolence of the inhabitants ſeveral fruitful tracts of land, which would make ample returns to the peaſant for cultivating them, lie neglected. The paſtures are excellent; and one meets with vaſt numbers of fine horned cattle, horſes, goats, *&c.* in this country, on which the *Tartars* chiefly depend for ſubſiſtence. However, there are ſeveral *ſteppe*'s, or barren waſtes, and unimproveable tracts in theſe parts; and not one fruit-tree is to be ſeen. As for vegetables, here is a great variety; and in ſeveral places, particularly near *Kraſnaia Sloboda*, the ground is, as it were, over-run with aſparagus of an extraordinary height and delicious flavour. The bulbs of the Turkiſh *Bundes*, and other ſorts of lilies, is much uſed by the *Tartars* inſtead of bread. Their want of fruit, *&c.* is richly compenſated by the great plenty of tame and wild beaſts and fowls, and the vaſt variety of fine fiſh, among which are the Sturgeon and the *Sterled*, which this country affords. Proviſions are ſo cheap, that in ſeveral places a *pud* or thirty-ſix pounds of meal may be bought for five or eight, and a *pud* of the fineſt beef for twenty or thirty *Copeiks*.

In that part of *Siberia* which lies near the *Ice-Sea*, and ſeveral other places, no trees, but ſhrubs and buſhes, grow; but the greateſt part of this country produces large woods of pine, larch, and other trees: Beſides, a conſiderable quantity of wood is thrown aſhore by the waves of the *Ice-Sea*. The *Siberian* cedar, called in Latin *Pinus foliis quinis, cono erecto, nucleo eduli*, grow to a great height and thickneſs; and the pine-apples, which they produce, are very large, and contain ſmall nuts with a thin blackiſh ſhell, in which are very palatable white kernels that are much admired. Theſe nuts alſo yield an oil, which the *Ruſſian* gentry make uſe of inſtead of butter for paſtry, and frying fiſh in lent and other faſts.

§. 5. Not to mention the great quantity of wild fowl, as moor-hens, partridges, woodcocks and ſnipes; here is an incredible number of wild quadrupeds; ſome of which are eatable, and others valuable for their ſkins or furrs. The *Argati*, which are alſo called *Stepnie Baranni* or wild ſheep, the

Dſha-

Dſholactſhan, the *Gaadinadatſh*, the *Kytyp* and *Kulem*, reſemble roe-bucks more than ſheep; and are a particular ſpecies of animals between theſe two. They are found about the *Irtis*, and from thence eaſtward as far as *Kamtſhatka*. In the province of *Irkutzk*, and beyond the *Baikal*-lake is a kind of deer called the *Iſubr*; but the inhabitants that live near the river *Irtis*, call this creature *Maral*, and the *Tartars* about the *Yeneſei* give it the name of *Syn*. This ſpecies is alſo diſtinguiſhed by the ſeveral appellations of *Maime*; *Meyimie*, *Búha*, *Kúmaka* and *Kumaká*. Here are two kinds of wild goats, one in the province of *Irkutſk*, which are called *Dſhers*, and perfectly reſemble the roe-buck, except that they have horns like the ſhamois, which they never ſhed: The other kind is called *Saiga*, and are very frequent near the ſource of the *Irtis*; but are to be found in no other part of *Siberia*. This *Saiga* is not unlike the ſhamois, except that the horns are quite ſtraight and have no branches. Their horns are ſemi-tranſparent, and much uſed to make handles for knives, daggers, *&c.* The animal called *Saiga* beyond *Kraſnaiarſk*, and over the whole province of *Irkutzk* and the Government of *Iakutzk* is the muſk or civet-cat. The *Koſi* or roe-buck, the *Socaty* or elk, rein-deer, hares, the *Kabari* or wild boars, and bears are well known in *Siberia*. The *Tſhigitai* or wild mules in the province of *Irkutzk* reſemble a bay horſe; but their tail is like that of a cow, and their ears of an enormous length: However, they are very ſwift.

The animals whoſe ſkins are moſt valued are the black fox, the ſable, the hyena, the ermine, the ſquirrel, the beaver, and the lynx. The ſkin of a real black fox is more valuable than even that of a Sable. In the country that lies near the *Frozen Ocean* are alſo found blue and white foxes. The fineſt Sables come from *Nertſhinſk* and *Iakutſk*; where thoſe animals are caught by the inhabitants, in the mountains of *Stannowoi Krebet*. It is uſual in thoſe parts for ten or twelve men to form themſelves into a ſociety, and ſhare all the Sables they take. One of the members is choſen as chief, to whom all the reſt muſt pay obedience, or be well drubbed, or baniſhed out of the ſociety. Before they ſet out, they never fail to make a vow of giving ſomething of their capture to the church. Several *Tartars* alſo apply themſelves to the hunting of Sables, and purſue them very dexterouſly through all their ſhifts. For when the Sable finds no means of eſcaping its purſuers, it climbs up the higheſt tree within ſight; but the hunters immediately ſet fire to the tree, and ſpreading out a net catch the Sable as it leaps down to avoid the flames, and thus he becomes their prey. By the great value ſet on Sables, the number of theſe animals is very much decreaſed; and, what is no ſmall detriment to the crown, great numbers have been caught, and ſold clandeſtinely, notwithſtanding the ſevereſt prohibitions. Formerly the tributary nations were obliged to pay their tribute in the ſkins of Sables and foxes only; But now the ſkins of ſquirrels, bears, rein-deer, *&c.* and ſometimes money is received by way of tribute; and this not only

from thoſe that live near the *Lena*, but alſo in the Governments of *Ilinſk*, *Irkutzk*, *Selenginsk* and *Nertſhinks*. When the *Tartars* where firſt made tributary to the *Ruſſians*, they brought their furrs indiſcriminately as they had caught them, and among them were often ſables of extraordinary value; and formerly if any trader brought with them an iron kettle, they filled it with Sables, and gave as many as it held in exchange for that utenſil: But now they are better acquainted with the value of them. They ſell their ſables at a very high price to the ſmugglers; and of their gains pay only a *Rubel* inſtead of a ſkin into the Revenue-Office; which now receives more ready money than Sables by way of tribute. The ſubjects plead the ſcarcity of furrs, and, I have already obſerved, not without ſome appearance of truth.

The Hyena is a very crafty animal, watching other creatures with very ſingular addreſs, in order to execute that by cunning, which it could not do by open force; and is equally artful in avoiding the ſnares and contrivances of men. It keeps an eye upon fawns, young elks, rein-deer, civet-cats, roe-bucks, hares, ſquirrels, foxes, and young partridges; and either watches them on a tree, from whence it ſprings upon them, and faſtens on their neck with its teeth, or ſurpriſes them in their lares or dens. The hyena often devours the animals caught in the toils of the hunters; and conſequently does them a conſiderable damage. This creature runs from ſouth to north, and from north to ſouth, in queſt of its prey, and is extremely voracious *; but the opinion that it ſqueezes itſelf between two trees to force out its excrements and make room for additional food, wants confirmation. This animal in *Siberia* is called *Roſſomak*.

As for ſquirrels, the blackeſt, which are indeed the ſmalleſt, are caught in the above-mentioned mountain of *Staunowoi Krebet*. Thoſe of *Bereſow* are larger; but their furr is of an aſh-colour. The ſilvercol-oured ſquirrels of *Tſelut* are famous all over *Siberia* for their largeneſs; and are, by ſome, preferred even to the black ſort. The flying ſquirrels ſcarce reſemble the common ſpecies, except in their manner of climbing up trees. The flying ſpecies have more the appearance of a rat; and have a ſtrong tegument from the hind to the fore leg on both ſides, which is above an inch broad, and can be contracted or dilated as the animal pleaſes. This mechaniſm enables it to fly a little way. The tail is not ſo long as that of a ſquirrel, and is of a dark yellowiſh colour.

The whitiſh beavers are tame, and friendly to mankind, who, in return, have purſued and deſtroyed ſuch numbers of them, that they are become very ſcarce in *Siberia*. The greateſt number of them is found at preſent, in the country that lies near the ſource of the river *Ieneſei*, and the banks of the *Oby*; but the largeſt are thoſe of *Kamtſhatka*.

* The *German* name *Vielfras* ſignifies a glutton.

§. 6. *Siberia*

§. 6. *Siberia* has ſtill other, and more valuable treaſures, than what we have yet enumerated. The ſilver mines of *Argun* are very rich, and the ſilver they produce yields ſome gold. Both ſilver and gold are likewiſe found among the copper ore of *Kolywan*. This country is alſo particularly rich in copper and iron ore. The former lies even on the ſurface of the earth; and the mountains of *Picktow*, *Koliwan*, *Ploskaii*, *Woskreſensk*, *Kuſwi*, and *Alapaick* are full of it; and, not to mention ſeveral others, the Government of *Kraſnoiarski* affords ſeveral copper mines. Iron is ſtill more plentiful there, and of a very good ſort: but that of *Kamenski* is reckoned the beſt. From the copper and iron ſmelting houſes ſeveral hundred thouſands of *puds* are annually exported. Theſe works belong partly to the Crown, and partly to private perſons; and among the latter M. *Demidow*, a Counſellor of State, has the largeſt ſhare: Moſt of them lie in the Government of *Cathrinenburg*. The *Tartars* alſo extract a great quantity of iron from the ore.

Several ſorts of precious ſtones are alſo found in *Siberia*. The topazes of this country have ſuch a fine luſtre, that he muſt be a very good judge who can diſtinguiſh a *Siberian* from an Oriental topaz. Single ſmall pieces of Agate are found near the *Argun* in open ſandy places, and on the banks of other rivers and lakes. Here are alſo Carnelians, and green Jaſper with red veins: the latter is chiefly to be met with in the *Gobiskoi* deſerts.

The famous *Marienglas* or *Lapis Specularis* * is dug up in great quantities in *Siberia*. The ſtone or *Matrix* in which it is found is partly a light yellow *Quartz* or *Marcaſſia*, and partly a brown indurated fluid; and this ſtone contains it in all the ſpecies of the *Marienglas*. The moſt tranſparent, which is like pure water, is accounted the beſt, and that of a greeniſh tinge is looked upon as the worſt ſort. Next to the colour, its ſize is moſt regarded. Some pieces have been found of an ell and a quarter, an ell and a half, or an ell and three quarters ſquare †: but theſe are not very common. Hence a very high value is ſet upon them; and a *Rubel* or two a pound is readily paid for a piece of an ell ſquare. As for the more common ſort, a *pud* of that of a quarter of an ell ſquare is ſold for nine or ten *Rubels*. But the very worſt ſort, which is ſtitched together, is ſold for a *Rubel* and a half or two *Rubels* a *pud*. To render the *Muſcovy-glaſs* fit for uſe, it is ſplit with a thin two-edged knife; but care is taken that the *laminæ* be not too thin. It is uſed for windows and lanterns all over *Siberia*, and looks very beautiful; its luſtre and clearneſs ſurpaſſing that of the fineſt glaſs. In the villages and many ſmall towns of *Ruſſia*, it is uſed for window-panes; and lanterns are made of it in every part of the Empire. It is preferable to glaſs for windows and lanterns on board a ſhip, as it

* This is a particular ſpecies of tranſparent ſtone lying in *ſtrata* like ſo many ſheets of paper; and is by ſome called *Muſcovy* or *Ruſſian-glaſs*, and by others, leſs properly, iſinglaſs.

† As ells vary in every country I cannot pretend to determine how many inches we muſt allow to an ell.

ſtands

ſtands the exploſion of cannon, which is apt to ſplit other glaſs, though it be ever ſo thick. The *Marienglas* is found in the greateſt quantity about the river *Witim*.

Siberia affords magnets of an extraordinary ſize, and even whole mountains of load-ſtones. Pit-coal is dug up in the north parts of this country. The *Kamennoie Maſlo* is a yellowiſh kind of alum: It is unctuous and ſmooth to the touch like tophus, and exudes from blackiſh a *ſtratum* of alum. It is found in ſeveral mountains of *Siberia*, namely, thoſe of the *Kraſnoiarſk*, *Ural*, *Altaiſk*, *Yeniſea*, *Baikal*, *Barguſik*, *Lena*, &c.

§. 7. It is remarkable that *Siberia* contains not only freſh-water lakes, of which there are a great number in this country, but alſo ſeveral lakes whoſe waters are ſalt; and that its lakes are ſubject to very ſurprizing alterations, a freſh-water lake being ſometimes changed into a ſaline, and a ſaline lake into a freſh one. Some lakes alſo dry up, and others break out in places where none were ever ſeen before. Among all the ſaline lakes *Yamuſha* in the province of *Tobolſk* is the moſt remarkable; for it contains a ſalt, which is as white as ſnow, and conſiſts entirely of cubic cryſtals. Salt-water brooks, ſaline ſprings, and a hill of ſalt are alſo to be met with in *Siberia*. The ſalt-ſprings in the province of *Irkutsk*, which are about two hundred *Werſts* from *Olecminskoi Oſtrog*, not far from the banks of the *Kapitendei*, are ſo ſtrongly impregnated with ſaline particles, that a pure white ſalt is by degrees accumulated to the height of ſeveral feet above the ſpring. In the ſame province lies the ſalt-hill, which is thirty fathoms high, and two hundred and ten fathoms in length from Eaſt to Weſt. This hill, as far as two thirds of its height from the baſe, is a congeries of a very hard, tranſparent ſalt, which conſiſts of large cubic cryſtals, apparently without the leaſt mixture of any heterogeneous ſubſtance. From what has been ſaid, it may be concluded that there are a great number of ſalt-works in this country.

§. 8. *Siberia* affords a great many other things that deſerve attention; and therefore they muſt not entirely eſcape our notice. That excellent root called *Rhubarb* grows in vaſt quantities in the neighbourhood of the city of *Selenginſk*. The curious *Mamont*'s bones and horns, as they are called, which are found along the banks of the *Oby*, *Yeneſei*, *Lena*, and *Irtiſh*, are unqueſtionably the teeth and bones of elephants; for they are made into combs and other utenſils like ivory. Some of theſe teeth, or horns as they are called in *Siberia*, are four *Ruſſian* ells * in length, and ſix inches in diameter; and the largeſt ſort weigh ſix or ſeven *puds*. The colour of them is like that of ivory, excepting few of them which are yellowiſh, brown, or of a black inclining to blue; and this, probably, is owing to their long continuance in the earth. Thoſe that are found near the mouths of the rivers which empty themſelves into the *Frozen-Ocean*, or on the banks of the freſh-water lakes which lie at no very great diſtance

* I ſuppoſe the author means *Arſhines*. See p. 394.

from the *Ice-Sea*, where the ground is perpetually frozen, are generally very freſh: Whereas thoſe that are dug up in the ſouthern parts of *Siberia* are often ſoft and decayed. But whether theſe elephants teeth and bones were conveyed to theſe northern regions by the general deluge, or by any other innundation, and were by degrees covered with earth is a diſquiſition foreign to my purpoſe. Such bones have alſo been found in *Ruſſia*, and even in ſeveral parts of *Germany*. A kind of bones of a larger ſize than theſe have alſo been dug up in *Siberia*; which ſeem to have belonged to an animal of the ox-kind. The horn of the whale called *Narwhal* has been found in the earth near the rivers *Indigirka* and the *Anadir*, and the teeth of another ſpecies of whales called *Walroſs* about *Anadirskoi*. The latter are much larger than the common ſort which are brought from *Greenland*, *Archangel*, and *Kola*.

Among the objects which deſerve our notice, we muſt not forget the *Siberian Volcano* near *Kamtſhatka*, where violent earthquakes are not uncommon: And they have alſo been often, though in ſmaller ſhocks, felt in other parts, particularly in *Irkutsk* and about the *Baikal*-lake.

§. 9. The chain of *Siberian* mountains reaches from that of *Werchoturie* towards the ſouth, as far as the neighbourhood of the city of *Orienburg*, in a continued ridge under the name of the *Uralian* mountains; but from thence it alters its poſition towards the Weſt. Theſe mountains are a kind of boundary, which divides *Ruſſia* from *Siberia*. Another chain of hills ſeparates *Siberia* from the country of the *Kalmuks* and *Mongalians*. Theſe mountains between the rivers *Irtis* and *Oby* are called the *Altaic*, or the golden mountains; which name they afterwards loſe, particularly between the river *Yeneſei* and the *Baikal*-lake; and are called the *Sayanian*-mountains. From this chain ſome branches advance towards the ſouth into the country of the *Kalmuks* and *Mongalians*, and ſome towards the north which partly ſurround the rivers *Oby* and *Tom*, and eſpecially the *Yeneſei*. The whole country which extends to the North and Eaſt towards the two Oceans *, begins here to grow mountainous and rocky. But the longeſt chain of mountains in *Siberia*, is that which lies between the rivers that run into the *Eaſtern Ocean* and the *Ice-Sea*: This ridge begins in the country of the *Mongalians*, and extends to the north-eaſt extremity of *Siberia*. The mountains of leſs note in this country are thoſe between the *Yeneſei* and the *Lena*, from which the river *Tunguſta* that runs beyond theſe mountains derives its name. Another ridge of hills lies on the ſouth ſide of the river *Aldan*, in which are the ſources of thoſe rivers which empty themſelves into the *Ice-Sea*. This chain of mountains is called *Wercoianſkoi*.

§. 10. The inhabitants of *Siberia* conſiſt of three ſorts of people, namely, the *Aborigines* or ANCIENT INHABITANTS, the TARTARS, and the

* i. e. The *Frozen Ocean* and the *Eaſtern Ocean*.

RUSSIANS.

RUSSIANS. Of the two firſt ſome have no other religion but that of Nature; others are Pagans or Mahometans; and ſome of them have been converted to Chriſtianity, or rather only baptiſed by the *Ruſſian* miſſionaries. The *Aborigines* or firſt inhabitants conſiſt of,

I. The *Wogulitzians* or *Wagulians* who live in the province of *Tobolſk*, and, may more properly, be claſſed here than among the *Tartars*. Theſe, by living among the *Ruſſians* in a conſtant intercourſe of trade, *&c.* before the latter had conquered this country, are more civilized than the other *Siberian* nations. They have ſome notion of a God, or the Creator and Preſerver of all things. They believe a reſurrection of the dead, and a future ſtate of rewards and puniſhments; which important articles they probably received from the *Ruſſians*. But they abſolutely deny the exiſtence of the devil, alledging that if there was ſuch a being, he could do them no hurt; and that they never knew any inſtance of it. Their whole religious worſhip conſiſts in the following ceremony: Every year towards the end of the ſummer every father or head of a family in all their villages meet, and in ſome neighbouring wood offer the head of every ſpecies of animals they are acquainted with, and hang the ſkins on the trees. They afterwards make ſeveral reverential bows before them, but without uttering a word by way of prayer. After this they feaſt, with great rejoicings, on the fleſh of the animals whoſe heads have been thus offered. The only reaſon they aſſign for performing this ceremony, is the practice of their anceſtors. When they bury their dead, they throw money into the grave with the deceaſed. They generally take as many wives as they can maintain. In their dreſs and method of building, they, for the moſt part, imitate the *Ruſſians*; but furniſh the inſide of their houſes rather in the *Tartarian* than the *Ruſſian* manner. As they have not a ſufficient quantity of arable land, they moſtly ſubſiſt by grazing and hunting. Theſe people are entirely ſubject to the *Ruſſian* government; and many of them have embraced the Chriſtian religion, as profeſſed by the *Greek* or *Ruſſian* church.

II. The *Samoiedes*, who live in the province of *Yeniſeiſkoi*. Of theſe we have before ſpoken in our account of the Government of *Archangelgorod*.

III. The *Yuraki*, a numerous tribe of *Samoiedes*, who inhabit the ſea coaſt and further up the continent between the rivers *Ieniſei* and *Oby*. Moſt of theſe ſtill live without any form of government: and though ſome of them pay tribute to the *Ruſſian* Empreſs, the generality have not yet ſubmitted to the yoke.

IV. The *Oſtiaks* or *Aſtaks*, who call themſelves *Conti* or *Konni-yung*, and by the *Tartars* are ſtiled *Yſhtuk*, are divided into the *Oſtiaks* of *Narim*, *Yeniſei*, *Oby*, *Surgut*, *Irtis*, &c. The anceſtors of this people are ſuppoſed to have emigrated hither from *Welika Permia* when Chriſtianity was firſt introduced into *Ruſſia*, to enjoy their idolatrous worſhip without moleſtation: at leaſt their language is ſaid to have a great analogy with that of

the *Pernians*, which is very different from that of the neighbouring *Samoides* and *Wogolitſkians*. The *Oſtiaks* are of a middling ſtature, and generally well-ſhaped, but very ſordid and naſty in their way of living. They give the name of the firſt beaſt they meet to their children; and as they grow up, inſtruct them in hunting and fiſhing. They never give over fiſhing in ſummer till they have caught a ſufficient quantity of fiſh to ſerve for the whole winter; and in the latter ſeaſon they go out with their dogs to hunt hyena's, lynxes, ſables, ermines, and bears, which enables them to pay their tribute, and carry on a trade with ſtrangers. They alſo catch a great number of birds and rein-deer for food in theſe excurſions. They are immoderately fond of *Shaar*, or *Chineſe* tobacco. Their dwellings are ſmall low huts made with ſhrubs and buſhes, and covered with the bark of birch-trees; and in the middle is the hearth for fire. They mind neither feeding of cattle nor agriculture, and keep no animals, but dogs for hunting and drawing their ſledges. They worſhip three deities called *Stariks*, beſides a great number of large and ſmall frightful idols; of theſe, however, ſeveral were deſtroyed in the years 1712, 1713 and 1714, when many of theſe Pagans were converted to Chriſtianity. They call the devil *Shaitan*; and bury their deceaſed friends with arms and houſhold furniture. When they take an Oath of Fidelity to the *Ruſſian* government they uſe the following ceremony. Having laid down a bear-ſkin and an ax, and holding over it a piece of bread on a knife, they pronounce theſe woods, 'In caſe I do not, to my 'life's end, prove true and faithful to the Supreme Government of the 'country; or if I knowingly and willingly break through my allegiance, or 'be wanting in the duty I owe to the ſaid Supreme Government; may 'the Bear tear me to pieces in the wood; may the Bread I eat ſtick in my 'throat and choke me; may the knife ſtab me, and the ax cut off my head!' The like ceremony is uſed among them in the depoſition of a witneſs.

V. The *Barabinzians*, who live on both ſides of the river *Irtis*; ſome of whom pay tribute to the Empreſs of *Ruſſia*, and others to the *Kan Taiſha*. They ſubſiſt on the cattle which they feed, and by fiſhing; the lakes in the deſert of *Baraba* abundantly ſupplying them with fiſh. They have plenty of all kind of game and wild fowl, particularly ducks and puffins. The *Barabinzians* are, for the moſt part heathens; but *Mahometaniſm* daily gains ground among them. They, probably, derive their name from the *Barrabaian* deſert.

VI. The *Tunguſians*, or rather *Tingiſians*. This populous nation is ſcattered far and wide in the provinces of *Yeniſeiſk* and *Irkutzk*. The *Chineſe* call them *Solun*, and the *Oſtiaks* give them the name of *Kellem*, or *Vellem*, i. e. 'the party-coloured;' but they term themſelves *Oewonki*. The *Tunguſians* muſt not be confounded either with the *Tangutes*, nor with the Eaſt-*Mongaleans*, whom the *Calmuks* call by the nick-name of *Tungus*, i. e. 'ſwine.' As ſome of the *Tunguſians*, when they became ſubject to the

the *Ruſſian* Empire, were obſerved to travel in ſledges drawn by horſes, others by rein-deer, and others again by dogs, they were divided accordingly into the following tribes.

1. The *Konnie Tunguſi*, who live in *Dauria* and about the town of *Nertſhinſk*, and are ſo called from the horſes they uſe in travelling. Theſe almoſt univerſally ſubſiſt by graſing or feeding of cattle. Their dreſs is like that of the *Mongaleans*, whom they pretty much reſemble in other reſpects. They wear their hair like the *Calmuks* and *Mongaleans*, and uſe almoſt the ſame arms, except that they wear no ſabre. They do not mind agriculture; contenting themſelves with a kind of meal made of the roots of yellow lilies, which they uſe inſtead of flour. Theſe *Tunguſians* are good horſemen, ſtrong built, and behave with great bravery in war.

2. The *Olennie Tunguſi*, who are ſo called from their rein-deer, and live about the rivers *Lena*, *Niſhnaia*, and *Tunguſka*. They ſubſiſt by hunting and fiſhing; and alſo breed ſome cattle. They make their clothes of rein-deer-ſkins, and wear caps of fox-ſkins. Their uſual oath is *Olimni*, which ſignifies, that they call God to witneſs the truth of what they aſſert. When they are accuſed, they clear themſelves by an oath of purgation. And having firſt killed and burnt a dog, the defendant, after drinking ſome of its blood, wiſhes with an imprecation, that he may ſhrivel up and be burnt like that animal if the charge againſt him be true. The circumſtances of this ceremony are differently related; but theſe are the principal and eſſential parts of it.

3. The *Sabatſhie Tunguſi*, who, for the moſt part, live in the province of *Iakutsk*; and are ſo called not only becauſe they uſe dogs to draw their ſledges, but alſo eat the fleſh of thoſe animals. They are likewiſe termed *Lamuts*, from the country about *Ocotzk*, which is alſo called *Lama*. Their winter-clothing is made of rein-deer-ſkins.

4. *Podkamenie Tunguſi*, who inhabit the country that lies between the rivers *Ieniſei* and *Lena*, or about *Ilimsk*. Theſe people are poor, and live much in the ſame manner as their neighbours the *Oſtiaks* and *Samoiedes* do.

If we compare theſe ſeveral nations with one another, we may eaſily conclude from their cuſtoms, *&c.* that they are deſcended from the ſame ſtock. Their complexion is not ſo yellow as that of the *Calmuks*, nor have they ſuch flat noſes, and large eyes as the latter. Moſt of them are alſo of a ſmall ſtature; and, from a cuſtom of plucking off the hair, very few have any beard. They mark the cheeks, forehead, and chin of their children when young with black or blue figures. This is done by mixing up the colour with their ſpittle, and dipping a needle and thread in it, with which they ſtitch the child's face; continually drawing the thread thus coloured under the ſkin, though the poor child, in the mean time, makes a lamentable outcry. If the face ſwells, they ſmear it over with fat by way of

the *Pernians*, which is very different from that of the neighbouring *Samoides* and *Wogolitſkians*. The *Oſtiaks* are of a middling ſtature, and generally well-ſhaped, but very ſordid and naſty in their way of living. They give the name of the firſt beaſt they meet to their children; and as they grow up, inſtruct them in hunting and fiſhing. They never give over fiſhing in ſummer till they have caught a ſufficient quantity of fiſh to ſerve for the whole winter; and in the latter ſeaſon they go out with their dogs to hunt hyena's, lynxes, ſables, ermines, and bears, which enables them to pay their tribute, and carry on a trade with ſtrangers. They alſo catch a great number of birds and rein-deer for food in theſe excurſions. They are immoderately fond of *Shaar*, or *Chineſe* tobacco. Their dwellings are ſmall low huts made with ſhrubs and buſhes, and covered with the bark of birch-trees; and in the middle is the hearth for fire. They mind neither feeding of cattle nor agriculture, and keep no animals, but dogs for hunting and drawing their ſledges. They worſhip three deities called *Stariks*, beſides a great number of large and ſmall frightful idols; of theſe, however, ſeveral were deſtroyed in the years 1712, 1713 and 1714, when many of theſe Pagans were converted to Chriſtianity. They call the devil *Shaitan*; and bury their deceaſed friends with arms and houſhold furniture. When they take an Oath of Fidelity to the *Ruſſian* government they uſe the following ceremony. Having laid down a bear-ſkin and an ax, and holding over it a piece of bread on a knife, they pronounce theſe woods, 'In caſe I do not, to my 'life's end, prove true and faithful to the Supreme Government of the 'country; or if I knowingly and willingly break through my allegiance, or 'be wanting in the duty I owe to the ſaid Supreme Government; may 'the Bear tear me to pieces in the wood; may the Bread I eat ſtick in my 'throat and choke me; may the knife ſtab me, and the ax cut off my head!' The like ceremony is uſed among them in the depoſition of a witneſs.

V. The *Barabinzians*, who live on both ſides of the river *Irtis*; ſome of whom pay tribute to the Empreſs of *Ruſſia*, and others to the *Kan Taiſha*. They ſubſiſt on the cattle which they feed, and by fiſhing; the lakes in the deſert of *Baraba* abundantly ſupplying them with fiſh. They have plenty of all kind of game and wild fowl, particularly ducks and puffins. The *Barabinzians* are, for the moſt part heathens; but *Mahometaniſm* daily gains ground among them. They, probably, derive their name from the *Barrabaian* deſert.

VI. The *Tunguſians*, or rather *Tingiſians*. This populous nation is ſcattered far and wide in the provinces of *Yeniſeiſk* and *Irkutzk*. The *Chineſe* call them *Solun*, and the *Oſtiaks* give them the name of *Kellem*, or *Vellem*, i. e. 'the party-coloured;' but they term themſelves *Oewonki*. The *Tunguſians* muſt not be confounded either with the *Tangutes*, nor with the Eaſt-*Mongaleans*, whom the *Calmuks* call by the nick-name of *Tungus*, i. e. 'ſwine.' As ſome of the *Tunguſians*, when they became ſubject to the

the *Ruſſian* Empire, were obſerved to travel in ſledges drawn by horſes, others by rein-deer, and others again by dogs, they were divided accordingly into the following tribes.

1. The *Konnie Tunguſi*, who live in *Dauria* and about the town of *Nertſhinſk*, and are ſo called from the horſes they uſe in travelling. Theſe almoſt univerſally ſubſiſt by graſing or feeding of cattle. Their dreſs is like that of the *Mongaleans*, whom they pretty much reſemble in other reſpects. They wear their hair like the *Calmuks* and *Mongaleans*, and uſe almoſt the ſame arms, except that they wear no ſabre. They do not mind agriculture; contenting themſelves with a kind of meal made of the roots of yellow lilies, which they uſe inſtead of flour. Theſe *Tunguſians* are good horſemen, ſtrong built, and behave with great bravery in war.

2. The *Olennie Tunguſi*, who are ſo called from their rein-deer, and live about the rivers *Lena*, *Niſhnaia*, and *Tunguſka*. They ſubſiſt by hunting and fiſhing; and alſo breed ſome cattle. They make their clothes of rein-deer-ſkins, and wear caps of fox-ſkins. Their uſual oath is *Olimni*, which ſignifies, that they call God to witneſs the truth of what they aſſert. When they are accuſed, they clear themſelves by an oath of purgation. And having firſt killed and burnt a dog, the defendant, after drinking ſome of its blood, wiſhes with an imprecation, that he may ſhrivel up and be burnt like that animal if the charge againſt him be true. The circumſtances of this ceremony are differently related; but theſe are the principal and eſſential parts of it.

3. The *Sabatſhie Tunguſi*, who, for the moſt part, live in the province of *Iakutsk*; and are ſo called not only becauſe they uſe dogs to draw their ſledges, but alſo eat the fleſh of thoſe animals. They are likewiſe termed *Lamuts*, from the country about *Ocotzk*, which is alſo called *Lama*. Their winter-clothing is made of rein-deer-ſkins.

4. *Podkamenie Tunguſi*, who inhabit the country that lies between the rivers *Ieniſei* and *Lena*, or about *Ilimsk*. Theſe people are poor, and live much in the ſame manner as their neighbours the *Oſtiaks* and *Samoiedes* do.

If we compare theſe ſeveral nations with one another, we may eaſily conclude from their cuſtoms, *&c.* that they are deſcended from the ſame ſtock. Their complexion is not ſo yellow as that of the *Calmuks*, nor have they ſuch flat noſes, and large eyes as the latter. Moſt of them are alſo of a ſmall ſtature; and, from a cuſtom of plucking off the hair, very few have any beard. They mark the cheeks, forehead, and chin of their children when young with black or blue figures. This is done by mixing up the colour with their ſpittle, and dipping a needle and thread in it, with which they ſtitch the child's face; continually drawing the thread thus coloured under the ſkin, though the poor child, in the mean time, makes a lamentable outcry. If the face ſwells, they ſmear it over with fat by way of

of remedy. Anciently, a conqueror in war, or in ſingle combat, was honoured with ſuch figures; but in that caſe, the figures were not limited to the face only, but were made all over the body. Such marks, in thoſe times, commanded univerſal reſpect; and this, probably, firſt brought them into ſuch vogue, and induced this people to look upon them as highly ornamental. The religion of theſe nations is pretty much alike; and they ſtile their idols *Shewuki*. They obſtinately adhere to their ſuperſtitions, and render any endeavours for their converſion abortive. Polygamy is allowed among them; but very few have more than two wives. The generality of them live in ſmall tents or huts, which they remove from place to place. The *Tunguſians* are active and ſprightly; have a natural propenſity to juſtice and equity, and are even inſpired with a thirſt after fame. They are all under the protection of the *Ruſſian* government, excepting ſome few that belong to *China*. They are divided into tribes or families; and over a certain number of theſe preſides a *Saiſſan* or Chief, who has a deputy under him who is ſtiled *Taiſha*. Both theſe officers are appointed by, and receive a penſion from the Empreſs of *Ruſſia*. The *Tunguſians* bring the very beſt furrs to market.

VII. The *Buratts* or *Buratians*, whom the *Ruſſians* call *Bratski*, differ from the *Tunguſians* only in their language, which has a great affinity with that of the *Mongalians*. They formerly lived on the ſouth-ſide of the *Baikal*-lake; but, towards the cloſe of the laſt century, they gradually removed to the north of the province of *Irkutſk*. About the year 1644, a handful of *Coſaks* ſent from *Kraſnoiarſk* perſuaded them by fair words, without ſtriking a blow, to become ſubjects of *Ruſſia*. They were formerly one people with the *Iakutians*. They are of a good ſhape and ſtature, and ſubſiſt by feeding cattle and ſheep, and hunting. Inſtances are not wanting of a *Buratt*'s being poſſeſſed of a thouſand ſheep, beſides a great number of bullocks and horſes. The men cut off their hair cloſe to the head; but their dreſs differs very little from that of the common people in *Ruſſia*. The greateſt ornament of the females is their hair, which the elderly women plait into two locks, and the younger ſort into three or four. They live in hexangular huts, built with logs of wood laid upon one another to the height of three or four feet; and upon theſe, poles are fixed which terminate almoſt in a point, leaving only an apperture at the top for the ſmoke. The entrance of theſe cottages always faces the Eaſt; and on each ſide of them ſtands a birch-tree. From one of theſe trees to the other a pole is laid, on which hang narrow ſlips of furrs, the ſkins of ermines and weaſels, and the fleeces of ſheep; and before theſe trophies the *Buratt* makes ſeveral bows and proſtrations night and morning, touching his forehead with two of his fingers, according to the oriental cuſtom. They have a kind of prieſts or ſoothſayers, who, in their language, are called *Bo*, and dreſs themſelves in a frightful manner. Great numbers of the poorer ſort among the *Buratts*

ratts have been perſuaded to be baptiſed, eſpecially thoſe who live about *Balaganſkoi Oſtrog*; and theſe, contrary to the cuſtom of the reſt of their nation, apply themſelves to agriculture and trades, ſo that many of them are very ſkilful mechanics, particularly at inlaying iron with pewter or ſilver. They ride either on horſes, oxen, or cows, taking the firſt that comes in the way; and ſeldom continue above a month or two in one place. For, whenever they obſerve that their flocks and herds have eat up the paſture, they immediately remove to another ſpot.

VIII. The *Iakutians*, who, as to their features, very much reſemble the *Calmuks*; and, in their manner of living, are not very different from the other pagan nations we have been ſpeaking of. It is, however, obſervable that they wear long hair, and ſhort garments, contrary to the cuſtom of their neighbours. They give themſelves little trouble about bread; but live on ſeveral ſorts of roots, garlick and onions, the fleſh of horſes and cows, milk, and all kinds of wild beaſts that they happen to meet with; but mice, maramottos, and wild-fowl are their favourite diſhes. They have both winter and ſummer cottages; and the cattle lie under the ſame roof with their owners. They uſe mortars of frozen cow or ox-dung, in which they bruiſe not only dried fiſh, roots, and berries, but the more wealthy among them pound pepper and ſalt. They have a great number of idols, which look like ſo many puppets, and are all made of rags; for wooden images they hold in contempt. They rub the mouths of theſe wretched figures with the fat or blood of animals. It is ſaid that the *Iakutians* formerly either burnt their dead, or expoſed them to the air on trees; or left them unburied in the hutts where they expired. But, at preſent, they generally bury their deceaſed friends, which cuſtom they have probably learned from the *Ruſſians*. Several of theſe are now baptized.

IX. The *Yukagirians*, who live near the *Ice-Sea*, and moſtly among the mountains. Theſe are a tribe of the *Iakutians*.

X. The *Tſhukſhians*, who live in the north-weſt part of *Siberia*, wear the tooth of a *Wallroſs* in each cheek, which are inſerted in the fleſh from their childhood; and the *Oluterskians*, a ſavage fierce nation, which, as far as we can learn, are ſo far from ſubmitting to the *Ruſſian* yoke, that they commit all poſſible hoſtilities againſt them: This obliges the *Ruſſian* traders to go from *Ocotzk* to *Kamtſhatka* by water.

XI. The *Shelatians*, *Kurilians*, and *Coriakians*, who alſo live in theſe parts, are little known.

XII. The *Kamtſhadatians*, or inhabitants of the peninſula of *Kantſhatka*, are more tractable and civilized than their northern neighbours. They are ſuppoſed to have been originally a *Japaneſe* colony: However, they pay the *Ruſſians* a tribute in furrs.

§. 11. The ſecond principal claſs of inhabitants who live in this country, are the TARTARS. Theſe are the moſt civilized of all the foreign nations in

Siberia; and thoſe *Tartars* who are Mahometans are ſtill more ſo, than the Pagan *Tartars*. The latter have their *Kamen* or prieſts and ſorcerers, who impoſe on the people by their juggling tricks in a moſt ſcandalous manner. They affect to appear as if they were poſſeſſed; and have their magic-drum, by which their deluded followers believe they can procure loſt things, heal the ſick, and predict future events. Their common dreſs is a coat of leather with a great many pieces of iron hanging to it, leather ſtockings with a vaſt number of ornaments, and a cap which is very well calculated to raiſe awe and terror in the ignorant people. Theſe *Tartars* conſiſt of ſeveral populous nations and leſs numerous tribes, and live under the protection of *Ruſſia*; they alſo derive their names from the countries, towns, and rivers, near which they dwell. The *Tartars* houſes and huts may be known by a broad low ſeat, and a hearth, with a chimney. We ſhall now proceed to give a particular account of theſe *Tartarian* nations.

In the province *Tobolsk* are the following tribes, *viz.*

1. Thoſe who live in the city of *Tobolsk*. Of theſe I ſhall take further notice in my account of that city, and ſhall here only obſerve, that they are more cleanly than the *Tartars* of *Kaſan*; but ſo poor that they ſeldom have above one wife, and drink water which is their only liquor.

2. The *Tartars* who live about *Tibyk-Aul*, or *Siniarskoi Prud*, as the *Ruſſians* call it, near the river *Siniar*, pay no tribute whatever to the crown; but are obliged to perform *Coſak* ſervice, and are termed *Moſhtſkiaraki*. They have fixed habitations, and live continually in one place.

3. The *Tartars* who live in the government of *Turinsk*. Theſe are of a more ſavage diſpoſition than the other *Tartars*. In 1720, they were baptized by *Philophei* Archbiſhop of *Tobolsk*; and great numbers of them who refuſed to comply, were driven by force into the river, which the *Ruſſians* concluded would anſwer the purpoſe very well.

4. The *Mirow Tartars*. Theſe, for the moſt part, are independent, and exempt from paying tribute; and live in a decent cleanly manner.

5. The *Tartars* who live about *Iſhmisk* a town on the river *Irtis*. Theſe have uſually one village for the ſummer, and another for their winter habitation: however, this cuſtom is not peculiar to them.

6. Thoſe who live in the neighbourhood of the city of *Tara* are called *Yeſaſhnie Tatari*, i. e. *Tartars* paying tribute to the crown.

7. Great numbers of theſe people, eſpecially the *Theleuti Tartars*, live about the river *Tſhumuſh*. Theſe were formerly much more numerous; for great multitudes of them removed farther up into *Siberia*, to avoid the ravages of the *Kalmuks*; but they now begin gradually to return to their former habitations.

8. The *Tartars* who live in the province of *Ieniſea*. Theſe, with many of the *Theleuti* and *Kaſhtim Tartars*, who live near the river *Kaltirak* in the neighbourhood of *Iliinſkoi Pogoſt*, were baptized by the above-mentioned prelate;

prelate; but they are far from being Chriſtians. They do not ſo much as wear the croſs that is given them in baptiſm, which in theſe parts is accounted the eſſential part of Chriſtianity: but publickly declare that they were compelled to be baptized againſt their inclination. However, they are very liberal in uſing the ſign of the croſs; are generally married by a *Ruſſian* prieſt; and ſometimes look into a *Ruſſian* church.

9. The *Theleuti Tartars*, who live near *Kuſnetſk*, are not *Mahometans*; nor have they any ſettled form of religion. They, indeed, believe the exiſtence of a God; but almoſt the only worſhip they pay him is as follows. Every morning at the riſing of the ſun, they turn to the Eaſt, and ſay this Laconic prayer 'Do not ſtrike me dead.' Near their villages are open places or areas called *Taulga*, where they perform the following ceremony once a year, or oftener. They firſt kill a horſe and eat the fleſh of it; then they ſtuff the ſkin, and turn the horſe's head towards the Eaſt. The *Taulga* is alſo built facing the Eaſt; and is only a ſquare place incloſed with ſtakes of birch-tree: However, it is looked upon as a conſecrated place. Here they leave the ſtuffed ſkin as an offering to the Deity, which they reckon an act of religious worſhip. They eat no pork; but when they can come at any brandy, they make no ſcruple of drinking it. They are ſo fond of tobacco, that they generally ſwallow the ſmoke of it. Some of theſe *Tartars* burn their dead, and others bury them.

10. The *Abintzi Tartars*, who alſo live near *Kuſnetſk*, are ſaid to be of the ſame religion with the *Theleuti*. Their huts are, for the moſt part, built only with earth; and their employment is agriculture.

11. The *Beltiri* are the only *Tartars* in the *Kuſnetsk* Government, who, beſides the tribute they pay to *Ruſſia*, are alſo taxed by the *Kalmuks*, and are obliged to pay the latter in iron and *Ruſſia*-leather. In this country are alſo the *Kabal* and *Saga* Tartars.

12. Farther up in the continent, near the river *Iom*, live the *Tuliberti* and *Kiſtimi Tartars*.

13. The *Tſhulimzians*, who are alſo baptized, though they have but a very imperfect knowledge of a God. They eat dead horſes, and offer up the ſkins to the devil. They, indeed, bury their dead; but every perſon preſent at the funeral leaps through a fire which is kindled on the ſpot, that the deceaſed may not follow him; for they are perſuaded that the dead are very much afraid of fire. When Archbiſhop *Philophei* came to thoſe parts, in order to baptize the inhabitants, he ordered thoſe who ſhewed any backwardneſs or reluctance to be dragged by the dragoons who attended him, and driven by force into the river *Tſhulum*; and upon their coming out of the water, croſſes were hung about their necks, and then they were called *Baptized Tartars*. After this a church was built among them. They are void of all real knowledge of the eſſential part of Chriſtianity; falſely imagining that it conſiſts in carrying the croſs about them, and making the ſign of it; in

abſtaining from eating the fleſh of horſes and ſquirrels; in going to church, and having their children baptized; in confining themſelves to one wife, and obſerving the faſts of the *Greek* church.

14. The *Tartars* who live about *Kraſnoiarsk* have very much the air of *Europeans*. They are generally lean, but briſk and ſprightly. In their manners they are civil, converſible, juſt, and honeſt, and do not want a capacity for buſineſs. Some caution, indeed, muſt be uſed in trading with this people; but robberies and theſts are never heard of among them. They have generally two or three, and ſometimes four wives. They are not very curious as to cleanlineſs, and neatneſs in their apparel, *&c.* They have a good breed of horned cattle and horſes; and are no ſtrangers to agriculture. Hitherto they have been ſo tenacious of Paganiſm, that neither the *Mahometans*, *Ruſſians*, nor *Mongols*, have ever been able to make any impreſſion on them in favour of another religion.

15. The *Arinzi* were formerly a principal tribe of *Tartars*; but at preſent the number of them is but inconſiderable.

16. The country lying between *Abakansk* and *Kansk* is inhabited by the *Kotowzi* and *Kamatſhinzi*. The *Tartars* who live in the neighbourhood of *Kansk* are not very wealthy; and few of them have more than two wives. Both ſexes among them wear no other garment but a coat; but thoſe few, who have been baptized, wear ſhirts and ſhifts. But as they never waſh them, they appear very ſlovenly and dirty. Like many of the other *Tartars*, they uſe the bulb of the Turkiſh *Bundes*, and other lilies inſtead of bread; for as yet, they have not applied themſelves to agriculture, their only occupation being hunting of ſables.

17. The *Aſſani Tartars*, who were a numerous tribe, are now almoſt extinct; the few that remain live near the rivers *Uſſolka* and *Ona*.

18. In the province of *Irkutsk*, near *Tunkinsk Oſtrog*, live the *Soieti*, a kind of roving Pagan *Tartars*. Theſe ſpeak the ſame language with the *Tartars* of *Kraſnoiarsk*.

§. 12. The third principal claſs of inhabitants who live in *Siberia*, are the RUSSIANS, of whom great numbers have ſettled here ſince the conqueſt of this country; but moſt of them, from time to time, fled to *Siberia* from other provinces. Since their eſtabliſhment they have founded a great many towns, *Oſtrogs*, and villages, which, according to their cuſtom, are built and fortified with timber. Moſt of the villages are called after the names of the peaſants by whom they were firſt built, and but few from the rivulets on which they ſtand. The *Siberian* dialect in the villages is very different from the language commonly ſpoken in *Ruſſia*, and is corrupted with abundance of words never uſed in that country. As for the nicknames which the inhabitants of the *Siberian* towns give to each other, we ſhall take notice of them in deſcribing thoſe particular places. Santering, drunkenneſs, and debauchery univerſally prevail throughout all *Siberia*, ſo that in

in many parts of it, one meets with few perſons who are free from the venereal diſtemper. The notion believed and propagated by foreigners, that the criminals exiled by the *Ruſſian* court to *Siberia* (whoſe number is very conſiderable) are obliged, daily or weekly to catch and deliver in a certain number of ſables, is a vulgar error; for that is an exerciſe to which they are little accuſtomed. Theſe unhappy exiles are diſpoſed of in the following manner. Some, who are ſent hither as ſtate-priſoners, are ſtrongly guarded in fortified houſes, and maintained at the expence of the crown; others enjoy their liberty, but under ſome reſtrictions: others again are ſent hither into ſlavery, to work in the mines, fortifications, &c. Several decayed merchants, who are exiled to *Siberia* as debtors to the Crown, meet with more favourable opportunities of getting money and gradually retrieving their affairs than if they had continued in *Ruſſia*; and they are not debarred from embracing theſe opportunities when they offer. To ſuch induſtrious perſons, *Siberia* muſt be looked upon rather as a deſirable and advantageous country, than a wretched place of baniſhment.

All theſe *Siberian* nations will be better known, when M. *G. Muller*, whom I have already mentioned with the reſpect due to ſo learned a man *, publiſhes thoſe excellent accounts which he collected in *Siberia*, and has long ſince digeſted. The firſt Volume of his Hiſtory of *Siberia* was publiſhed, in the year 1750, in the *Ruſſian* language; and it is to be hoped, that other nations will not be long without tranſlations of that excellent work.

§. 13. A very conſiderable trade is carried on in *Siberia*, which is much facilitated by the many navigable rivers that water every part of this country. By means of their commerce with the *Chineſe*, foreign *European* goods are often ſold in the towns of *Siberia* nearly at the ſame rate as at *Petersburg* and *Moſcow*. There is not a city in *Ruſſia*, from which merchants do not travel to *Siberia* with foreign goods. Theſe traders diſpoſe of their commodities partly among the inhabitants of the *Siberian* towns, but moſtly to the *Chineſe* merchants who frequent the great yearly fairs in *Siberia*; and purchaſe ſome of their commodities in return. Such a merchant performs a very long and tedious journey before he ſees his home again. For inſtance, he leaves *Moſcow* in the ſpring; arrives at *Makar*, where a fair is held, in the ſummer; and is at *Irbitz* by the annual fair in the beginning of the enſuing year. In the former place he makes it his buſineſs to barter ſome of his goods for ſuch as will turn to better account in the latter; which he does chiefly with an eye on the *Chineſe* trade. If any goods remain upon his hands, which he apprehends he cannot diſpoſe of to advantage in *Irkutſk*, he endeavours to procure a market for them at *Tobolſk*, where he arrives by winter. This place he leaves in the ſpring, and trading through all *Siberia*, comes about the end of the ſummer to *Irkutsk*; or if he be hindered by the ice, he never fails to reach it by the beginning of winter, and

* See p. 395, 396.

trades with the *Chineſe*. Afterwards, he bends his courſe to *Kiakta*; and, the following ſpring, arrives at *Iakutsk*: From thence he returns for ſix or ſeven hundred *Werſts* by water, and proceeds in ſledges directly to *Kiakta*, in order to diſpoſe of his *Iakutzkian* commodities. In the ſpring following he ſets out for *Irkutzk*; and in autumn reaches *Tobolſk*. After that, he takes care to be preſent at the *Irbitz* fair in winter, and, in the following ſummer, at that of *Makar*. After travelling thus from place to place for four years and a half, at laſt he returns to *Moſcow*; and in that time if he underſtands his buſineſs, and things have turned out well, his gains amount at leaſt, to three hundred *per cent*. The only coin uſed in this country is the *Ruſſian* money: But moſt of the traffick is carried on by bartering, or exchanging goods for goods.

§. 14. All *Siberia* is at preſent under the *Ruſſian* dominion; and was reduced under that Government about the cloſe of the ſixteenth century in the following manner. In the reign of the Czaar *Iwan Baſilowitz* II. and *Feoder Iwanowitz* his ſucceſſor, *Jermak Timiofevitz*, a *Don-Coſak*, at the head of ſome thouſands of *Coſaks* terribly ravaged the countries which lie about the rivers *Oka* and *Wolga*, ſacking and plundering the towns, and deſtroying every thing before him. But at laſt, he was driven to ſuch extremities by the troops ſent againſt him, that his retreat to the country of the *Coſaks* was cut off. After the loſs of the greateſt part of his army, he croſſed the rivers *Kama* and *Tſhuſowaia*, and by the aſſiſtance of a certain *Strobinow*, who was ſovereign of a vaſt tract of land near the *Tſhuſowaia*, he embarked with the eight hundred *Coſaks*, ſtill remaining, and other auxiliaries, on the river *Tura*; laid ſiege to the town of *Onzigidin*, at preſent called *Tiumen*, and made himſelf maſter of it. He afterwards even took the city of *Tobolsk*, out of which he drove the *Kuzium-Kan*. Theſe two were then the only towns in *Siberia*. *Iermak* had, indeed, got them into his power: But he very well perceived, that he ſhould not be able to keep in awe the vaſt numbers of Mahometan *Tartars* who inhabited this country. This induced him to ſend to *Moſcow*, *Altanai Sultan*, ſon to the *Kuſium Kan* whom he had taken priſoner, with a tender of his conqueſt to the *Ruſſian* court, on condition that the Czaar ſhould grant him a free pardon. This favour was eaſily obtained; and a good body of troops were ſent to take poſſeſſion of the country. From this epocha, the *Ruſſians* have been continually extending their dominions in *Siberia*. Soon after, *Iermak*, being on an expedition with ſome ſhips on the river *Irtis*, was, in the night time, ſurprized by the *Tartars*, and, with moſt of his people, cut to pieces. His memory is, to this day, held in great veneration in *Siberia*. As the *Coſaks* had been the inſtruments of his conqueſt, his honour was conferred upon them; namely, that all troops kept up by the *Ruſſians* in *Siberia* ſhould be incorporated with the *Coſaks*, and bear their name: Hence the *Siberian* militia, to this day, are ſtiled *Coſaks*.

§. 15. *Siberia*,

§. 15. *Siberia*, at preſent, conſtitutes a very extenſive Government, conſiſting of three conſiderable provinces, each of which includes ſeveral towns, with their reſpective Diſtricts. Every town has its *Woiwode*, whoſe juriſdiction extends to the Diſtrict belonging to it, without any *Uprawitel* or deputy under him. The *Statthalter* or General Governor of *Siberia* reſides at *Tobolſk*; and the Deputy-*Statthalter* whoſe ſeat is in *Irkutzk*, and all the *Woiwodes*, are ſubordinate to him. However, he has not the power of appointing a *Woiwode*; for they are nominated by the Chancery or Office for the *Siberian* affairs at *Moſcow*. In the Government-Chancery at *Tobolsk* are two Secretaries, who are not changed, like the governors, but continue in office during life, unleſs they forfeit it by male-practices. This procures them more reſpect than the General-Governor himſelf, and the *Siberians* of all ranks and degrees pay their court to the Secretaries. The principal officers of the garriſon are alſo obliged to conform to their directions; and their power over the city of *Tobolsk* is almoſt unlimited. All eccleſiaſtical perſons and affairs in *Siberia* are under the juriſdiction of the Metropolitan of *Tobolsk*. The *Siberian* provinces mentioned above are as follow.

I. *TOBOLSKAIA PROVINCIIA*,

Or the PROVINCE of *TOBOLSK*.

THE ſouth part of this province includes proper *Siberia*, which was formerly called *Tura*; but the whole province belongs to *Tartary* properly ſo called, as it formerly made a part of the Kingdom of Great *Tartary*, and is peopled with *Tartarian* colonies. The Circles or Diſtricts in this province are,

1. The Circle of WERCOTURIE, which is the firſt one enters on in going the uſual road from *Ruſſia*, from which it is ſeparated by the *Wercoturian Uralian*, or *Riphean* mountains. In this Diſtrict are the following places of note.

Wercoturie is the firſt town you meet with in *Siberia* in travelling the common road from *Solkamsk*; and is alſo the firſt town built by the *Ruſſians* in this country. It lies on the river *Tura*, and is ſo called, becauſe the town with the territory belonging to it includes part of that river, and the country that lies near its ſource. On *Troitskoi Kamen*, or *Trinity Rock*, as it is called, ſtands a caſtle built with ſtone, in which are a church, the Town-Chancery, the *Woiwode*'s houſe, and ſome other ſtone and wooden buildings. Facing the caſtle, and near the church, is a market-place, and on it an Exchange, on each ſide of which ſtands a church. Beſides theſe buildings, there are in the town a convent of monks, a nunnery, four churches, two or three chapels, and about two hundred and fifty dwelling-houſes. All the

the goods that are brought to, or carried out of *Siberia* are here narrowly ſearched. The ſituation of *Wercoturie* is pleaſant; however, but little corn grows in its neighbourhood; agriculture being neglected for the more profitable employment of gathering pine-nuts, vaſt quantities of which grow in theſe parts.

Lialinskoi Pogoſt lies on the river *Liala*. Near this town is a copper mine; but a quintal of the ore yields no more than two pounds of pure copper.

Kuſhwinskoi, or *Blagodat-Kuſhwinski Sawod*, is an iron work on the ſmall river *Kuſhwa*, granted by the Empreſs *Eliſabeth* to Count *Peter Shwalow* in 1754. In the mountain called *Blagodat*, which yields the iron-ore, good magnets are alſo found. Here is a copper-ſmelting houſe, which is ſupplied with ore from *Polowinnoi Rudnik*. Above one hundred houſes are already built here. The forges in *Turinskoi* belong to theſe iron-works.

Wuiskoi Sawod, which are copper and iron-works with about two hundred houſes, belonging to M. *Demedow*, a Counſellor of State. This place is famous for a writing-ſand of a golden colour, which is made of *Gold-talc*, as it is called.

Niſhno-Tagilskoi Sawod, a place conſiſting of about ſix hundred houſes, with an iron work, belonging to the above-mentioned *Ruſſian* nobleman, the iron found here is the moſt malleable of any in this country.

Neiwianskoi, a town on the river *Neiwa*, where M. *Demidow* has his principal iron-work, and reſides, in order to ſuperintend all his other works in the neighbourhood. It was built in the year 1701 at the expence of the the Crown, and in the following year was conferred on M. *Demidow*'s father as his perpetual property. Beſides theſe works, the town conſiſts of a wooden fort and about eight hundred houſes, moſt of which are built in direct lines and form ſtraight broad ſtreets. *Neiwianskoi* is plentifully provided with all the neceſſaries of life. Among the inhabitants of this town are great numbers of *Starowerzi* or old believers, as they ſtile themſelves; but by the *Greek* church they are called ſchiſmatics. Very curious and ſerviceable copper and braſs utenſils are made here.

Bynkowskoi, an iron-work which belongs to the ſame counſellor, and alſo a braſs manufacture on the river *Niewa*.

Werkno-Tagilskoi Sawod, and *Shuralinskoi Sawod*, other iron works belonging to M. *Demidow* on the river *Tagil*. On the eaſt ſide of the river is a rock of aſbeſtos; but few of the veins are an inch thick. On being ſcraped, the filaments are almoſt as ſoft as the fineſt ſilk.

2. The Circle of CATHRINENBURG, called in Ruſſian, *Ekateringburg-skoi Uiezd*.

This Diſtrict is very rich in mines; and in it lies

Cathrinenburg or *Ekaterinburg*, a regular town, built in the *German* manner. It ſtands on the river *Iſet*, which runs through the middle of it; and was begun in the year 1723, by *Peter* I. and finiſhed in 1726, by the Czarina *Catharine* his conſort, from whom it derives its name. As

Cathri-

Cathrinenburg lies in the neighbourhood of the *Baskirians*, it is well fortified, and garriſoned with two companies of ſoldiers, beſides a party of engineers and matroſſes for the artillery. All the houſes in this town were built at the expence of the government, and moſt of its inhabitants are officers belonging to the crown; the reſt are artificers and head-miners who have the care of the works. *Cathrinenburg* conſiſts of about four hundred and fifty houſes, beſides the ſuburbs without the walls, which are inhabited partly by exiled criminals, or others who voluntarily work at the fortifications or mines for daily pay. The public buildings of the town are, a wooden church, a ſtone edifice for the Public Offices, an Exchange with ſhops, an arſenal, and a toll or cuſtom-houſe. The laſt is dependent on the Government of *Tobolsk*; and the goods of the merchants going to the annual fair at *Irbitz*, which is the only time they are allowed to paſs through this town, are ſearched here. *Ekateringburg* may be accounted the centre of all the *Siberian* mine-works belonging to the crown; and on this account the director of the *Siberian* mines reſides here, and iſſues his inſtructions to the other directors of the works, and paſſes their accounts. The water of the river *Iſſet* is raiſed by a dam ninety-eight fathoms long, three fathoms high, and twenty broad, in order to ſupply a great number of mills and other engines belonging to the mines. All the forges and works about this town are kept in a good condition; and the miners and artificers work with a diligence and ſpirit far beyond what is ſeen in other countries. Their wages are punctually paid every four months; and all kinds of proviſions are here ſold very cheap. When any of the workmen fall ſick, they are taken great care of in the hoſpital; to which patients are alſo brought from the neighbouring works. Adjoining to this hoſpital is a phyſic-garden for the uſe of the patients. This town is not ſubject to the *Siberian* Government-chancery, though belonging to the *Tobolsk*-government, but has its particular juriſdiction; and the Director-General when he ſits in the chief Mine-Court has two mine-officers for Aſſiſtants. There is, beſides, a Court of Juſtice in this Diſtrict, and a Police peculiar to itſelf. A *German* ſchool has been founded in this town.

There are a great many other iron and copper mines and works in this Circle; but we ſhall only mention the following which are the principal.

Shaitanskie, or *Sheleſnie Sawod*.

Werk-Iſetzkoi.

Imperatrizi Anni Sawoni, in the mines belonging to which a valuable iron-ore is dug up.

Polewskoi Sawod, a copper-work.

Kamenskie Sawodi, where the beſt *Siberian* iron is made, eſpecially for cannon.

Suſanskoi Sawod.

Alapaewskoi Sawod.

Note.

Note. The following forts have been erected to the ſouth of this Circle, as a defence againſt the incurſions of the *Baſhkirians* and the *Caſatſhia-Horda.*

Miaskaia Krepoſt, a fort with a large *Slobode.* It ſtands on the river *Mias*, in a fruitful country, which is very proper for tillage.

Tſhiliabinskaia, on the ſame river, is a larger fort than the foregoing, and garriſoned by dragoons: it ſtands in a pleaſant ſituation.

Itkulskaia Krepoſt, a fort on the lake of *Itkul*, is garriſoned by two or three hundred men; and has a ſtrong *Slobode* or Suburb. Near it are good meadows, arable land, and woods.

Tſhebarkulskaia Krepoſt ſtands on the bank of the *Shebat*-lake, which is about ſeven *Werſts* in length from ſouth-eaſt to north-weſt, and contains twelve iſlands; its greateſt breadth is alſo about ſeven *Werſts.* The fort is ſurrounded with a rampart and four baſtions, all of earth. Within the largeſt is a citadel, which was erected before the former, namely in 1736, and was the firſt fortification that was ever built in the country of the *Baſhkirians.* The ſituation of this fort, which is ſtrongly built, is very pleaſant; and the garriſon conſiſts only of ſixty-ſix men. Not far from hence, near the river *Mias*, fine beavers, which are very black, are caught.

Uiskaia Krepoſt, a fort on the river *Ui*, which ſtands in a country extremely well adapted for tillage.

Ukly-Karagaiskaia Krepoſt, ſo called from a wood of pines and a lake that lies near it, is garriſoned with two hundred men; and is ſituated in the midſt of a fine arable and verdant tract of land.

Werkiaitzkaia-Krepoſt, a fort on the river *Yaik*, which was built in the year 1735, and has a garriſon of two hundred men. About fifty *Werſts* from this place, near the river *Yaik*, is a whole mountain of loadſtone, which is three *Werſts* in length from north to ſouth, and, on the weſt ſide, is divided into eight ſlopes of different depth reſembling ſo many terraſſes. The ſeventh, which is the higheſt terraſs, contains the beſt magnets. There are none found at the ſummit of the hill; but about eight fathoms below it, there is to be ſeen a heap of ſixty or ſeventy *Puds* of ponderous ſtones, which at a diſtance look like large pebbles. Theſe ſtones are overgrown with moſs, and are found to have a magnetic virtue; for they attract a knife at the diſtance of an inch or more. One of theſe large magnets conſiſts of a congeries of ſmaller ſtones, which operate in different directions. That part of the mountain where the load-ſtones are found conſiſts chiefly of a fine ſteel ore, which lies in *ſtrata* between the magnetic rocks.

3. The Circle of TURINSK, or *Turinskoi Uiezd.*

In this Diſtrict lies

Turinsk, a town, which ſtands on the river *Tura*, and was formerly called *Yepantſhin*, which name it alſo ſtill retains. It contains a wooden fort, a mother church, with ſix ſubordinate churches, and above three-hundred

dred and fifty houſes. Proviſions are very good, and ſold cheap in this town; ſo that a *Pud* of excellent beef may be bought for twenty or thirty *Copeiks* *.

4. The Circle of TIUMEN, or *Tiumenskoi Uiezd.*

In this Diſtrict are the following places of note.

Tiumen, formerly called *On-Zigibin*, is a town lying on the ſouth ſide of the river *Tura*, where the bank is very high. This town is not built parallel to the river, but at right angles with it; and the little river *Tiumenka* runs through the town, and falls into the *Tura* at the extremity of it. Over the river is a bridge of eighty-three fathoms in length; and a little below it ſtands a fort built with ſtone, in which is a church of the ſame materials. Without this fortification, and towards the lower bank of the *Tura*, are ſix wooden churches, a convent of nuns with a church, and five hundred dwelling-houſes. At the lower end of the town is an *Oſtrog*. Beyond the *Tumenka* lies the *Yamskaia Sloboda*, conſiſting of two hundred and fifty houſes, inhabited by people of all ranks and profeſſions; and at the extremity of this ſuburb ſtands a monaſtery: it has likewiſe three churches built with ſtone. Another ſuburb lies oppoſite to *Tiumen*, on the north ſide of the *Tura*, which is inhabited by *Ruſſians*, Mahometan *Tartars*, and *Bucharians*. The firſt-mentioned have a church, and the two laſt a *Metſhad*, or moſque in this place.

Kraſnaia Sloboda, or *Kraſnoſlobodskoi Oſtrog*, which ſtands on the river *Niſa*. The governor of this place is of equal dignity with the *Woiwodes* of the ſmaller towns in *Siberia*. Great plenty of excellent aſparagus near an ell in height, grows wild in theſe parts.

Irbitskaia Sloboda, which ſtands on the river *Irbit*, is famous for its annual fair, which is kept in the month of *January*. On this occaſion traders reſort to this place almoſt from every town in the *Ruſſian* dominions; and among the foreign merchants that frequent this fair, are *Greeks*, ſome of every *Tartarian* nation, and *Bucharians*. The merchants pay a duty of ten *per Cent.* for all the goods they have here for ſale; but gold and ſilver bullion is free of all duty.

Bielakouskaia Sloboda, is ſituated on the river *Pyſhma*, and has a wooden fort.

5. ISETSKAIA PROVINCIIA.

This Diſtrict was erected into a province in 1737, and contains the following remarkable places.

Dalmatow, a ſtately convent, which ſtands on the river *Iſet* in a level, fertile, and pleaſant country.

Butkinskaia Sloboda, which is defended by a wooden fort.

Okunewskoi Oſtrog, ſituated on the river *Mias*.

Tetſkinskaia Sloboda which ſtands on the river *Tetſha*, and is defended by a wooden fort.

* i. e. Thirty-ſix pounds for about a ſhilling or fifteen pence.

Iſetzkoi Oſtrog, on the river *Iſet*, includes within its circuit ſixty houſes; and about forty-ſix dwellings are built without the incloſure.

6. The Circle of TOBOLSK.

In this Diſtrict the places of note are as follows; the principal of which is *Tobolſk*, in Latin *Tobolium*, the capital of all *Siberia*, and the reſidence of the Governor-General. It lies in Latitude 58°, 12′ on the *Irtis*, not far from the influx of the *Tobol* into that river. This city is divided into the *Upper* and *Lower Town*. The *Upper Town* ſtands very high on the eaſt ſide of the *Irtis*; and the *Lower Town* lies on a plain between the hill, on which the former is built, and the river. Both towns taken together are of a very large circumference; but the houſes are all built with wood. In the *Upper Town*, which is properly called the city, ſtands the fort, which was built with ſtone by the late Governor *Gagarin*. In the fort are the Government-Court, as it is called, the Governor's houſe, the Archbiſhop's palace, the Exchange, and two of the principal churches, which are all ſtone buildings. The *Upper Town*, which ſtands on the eaſt ſide of the fort, and is incloſed within an earthen rampart, affords nothing remarkable but a market for proviſions and all kinds of ſmall ware, three wooden churches, and a convent called *Roſhdeſtwenſkoi*. The *Lower Town* contains a market-place for all kinds of proviſions, on which ſeveral ſhops are built; ſeven churches, and a ſtone convent called *Snamenſkoi*; and ſeveral ſmall brooks run through it into the *Irtis*. The *Upper Town* is out of the reach of inundations from the river, by its high ſituation; which, however, is attended with this inconveniency, that the inhabitants are under a neceſſity of going down the hill for water. Beſides, large maſſes of earth fall from the ſide of the hill on which the town ſtands towards the river almoſt every year, which obliges the inhabitants to pull down and rebuild the houſes that ſtand near the declivity. The *Lower Town*, indeed, has water at hand; but is expoſed to inundations when the river overflows his banks; but ſuch floods do not happen every year. There is a communication between the *Upper* and *Lower Town* by three different ways, one of which is moſt frequented in ſummer and ſpring, the ſecond is very ſeldom uſed, and the third moſtly in winter. The town is very populous; and almoſt the fourth part of its inhabitants are *Tartars*, who are partly deſcended from thoſe that were ſettled there before the conqueſt of *Siberia*, and partly from the *Bucharians*. Theſe *Tartars*, in general, behave very quietly, and carry on ſome commerce; but practiſe no mechanic trades. They are very ſober, and averſe to intemperance and all kind of riotous living. The reſt of the inhabitants are *Ruſſians* whoſe anceſtors were baniſhed hither for their crimes, or ſuch as are exiles themſelves. As every thing is ſold here ſo exceeding cheap that a common man may live very well at *Tobolſk* for ten *Rubels* a year; indolence and ſloth prevail to ſuch a degree, that it is a hard matter to get the leaſt utenſil, *&c.* made, though the town abound

abounds with artificers, who want neither tools nor materials to carry on their reſpective trades. The inhabitants of *Tobolsk* have the nickname of *Iaſſowiki*, either from a kind of fiſh called *Iaſſi*, i. e. 'red eyes' of which there is great plenty here; or on ſome other account. Commerce is in a flouriſhing condition in this city; and the traffick which the *Bucharian* and *Calmuk* merchants carry on in *Indian* goods, with which they ſupply all *Siberia* and part of *Ruſſia*, is very conſiderable. All the *Chineſe* caravans are obliged to paſs through this town; and all the furrs furniſhed by *Siberia* are brought into a ware-houſe in this city, and from hence are forwarded to the *Siberian* Chancery at *Moſcow*. Several of the *Swediſh* officers, who were taken priſoners at the battle of *Pultawa* and ſent to *Tobolsk*, ſet up ſchools here in the year 1713, for teaching the children of *Swedes*, *Ruſſians*, *Coſaks*, *Tartars*, &c. the *German*, *Latin*, and *French* languages, with Geography, Geometry, and Drawing. Many of them alſo took in boarders. Theſe ſchools acquired great reputation; ſo that children were ſent hither for education from a conſiderable diſtance, and the exemplary behaviour of theſe military pedagogues was attended with uncommon ſucceſs. However, when the peace of *Nyſtadt* was concluded, the *Swediſh* officers returned into their own country; and then theſe beneficial ſeminaries of learning dropped of courſe. Some time after, a *German* ſchool was founded here under the auſpices of the *Ruſſian* Empreſs.

Abalack, a ſmall town about twenty *Werſts* from *Tobolsk*, is famous for a picture * of the Virgin *Mary*. Great numbers of pilgrims reſort to pay their devotions to the Virgin at all times of the year; and ſeveral maſſes are ſaid before it. This picture is every year brought to *Tobolsk* in a proceſſion of the clergy, and is kept there about a fortnight.

Korkina Sloboda, which is the reſidence of the Governor of this Circle, and immediately depends on *Tobolsk*, containing above a hundred dwelling-houſes, and fortified with *Oſtroge* or paliſadoes, &c. *Iſhimskoi Oſtrog*, which ſtands on the river *Iſhim*; *Abaſhaia Sloboda*, on the ſame river, whoſe church, like all the reſt in this country, is ſurrounded with *Oſtroge*, which is garriſoned with thirty dragoons; and *Irouskoi Paſs* which is garriſoned by fifty men and ſtands on the river *Ir* which falls into the *Iſhim* below the *Iſhim*-Circle lie in this Diſtrict.

Yalutorouskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands on the river *Tobol*, was built in 1659 on the ſpot where a *Tartarian* fortification formerly ſtood, and is defended by ſix iron guns. It conſiſts of more than two hundred houſes. The inhabitants traffick very much in horſes, and the country affords a ſufficient quantity of corn for their ſubſiſtance. Eleven *Slobodes* lie within the circuit of this *Oſtrog*.

* I have rendered *Bild* a picture here, as the *Ruſſians* have an averſion to images, though it commonly ſignifies an image.

Note. The deſert of *Barraba* lies between the rivers *Irtis* and *Oby*, and extends itſelf between the city of *Tara* and *Tſhawskoi Oſtrog*. This yields but little wood; but has an excellent ſoil for tillage, and part of it may alſo be laid out in meadows and paſtures: However, this place is, as yet, without inhabitants. *Barraba* is interſperſed with a great number of lakes which yield plenty of *Karawſchen*, a ſpecies of carp; and abounds with elks, deer, foxes, ermines, and ſquirrels. Among its lakes *Tſhane* is the largeſt, and contains ſeveral iſlands. Some forts which are erected on this deſert ſhall be taken notice of in the province of *Ieniſea*.

Tara, a ſmall town on the river *Irtis*. About thirty-two *Werſts* from hence the river *Tara* falls into the *Irtis*. *Tara* was firſt built on the former, from which it derives its name. Part of the town ſtands on an eminence; and it is defended by an *Oſtrog* and *chevaux de friſe*, and in the front with a rampart of earth. This part is embelliſhed with the Government-Chancery and the *Waiwode*'s houſe. The lower part joins to the *Tartar Slobode*, or Suburb, in which is a *Metſhed*, or Moſque. Every thing is ſold at a high price here, proviſions excepted; a *Pud* of rye-meal being generally valued at five *Copeiks*. Here is but little trade ſtirring; for the richer ſort engroſs all foreign goods into their own hands. The inhabitants of *Tara* have the nicknames of *Roskolſhtſhiki*, from the great number of ſectaries among them, and *Kolowitſhi*, becauſe many of them were impaled in the year 1723, for refuſing to take the oath relating to the ſucceſſion to the crown of *Ruſſia*.

Bergamaskaia Sloboda ſtands on the river *Tara*, and conſiſts of fifty-two houſes, and a fortification built with pieces of timber laid on one another, and ſurrounded with a deep moat.

Omſk, or *Omskaia krepoſt*, a fortification built in the year 1716, on the river *Om*, not far from its conflux with the *Irtis*. Without the fort, on both ſides of the river, are ſeveral private houſes called the *Omskoi Slobode*: that on the north ſide of the river is ſecured by an *Oſtrog*, beſides a garriſon of one hundred and fifty ſoldiers, and two hundred *Coſaks*.

Sheleſinskaia Krepoſt, or *Sheleſinsk*, is a large fortification on the eaſtern bank of the river *Irtis*; and within it the ſmall *Oſtrog*, which was firſt built here, is incloſed. This fort is defended by four guns, and is garriſoned with ſeventy ſoldiers, and a hundred *Sluſhiwes*. The adjacent country is without inhabitants, and conſequently lies uncultivated. The dwelling-houſes at *Sheleſinsk* have no roofs, being only huts raiſed with earth. Here is a vaſt number of a large kind of wild hogs, which for want of acorns, feed entirely on graſs and roots.

Yamuſhewa Krepoſt is a fort on the *Irtis*, and ſtands in a diſagreeable ſituation on the deſert. The firſt fortification, which had been built here in the year 1715, was in the very ſame year demoliſhed by the inroads of the *Calmuks*: But in 1717 the preſent fortification was erected in its place.

It

It is entirely built with wood, has baſtions and battlements, and is defended by eleven pieces of cannon. A Major is Governor of it; and the forts of *Shleleſinsk*, *Sempalat*, and *Uſt-Gemeno-Korsk* are under his command. Near it is a *Slobode* ſurrounded by an *Oſtroge*.

About ſix *Werſts* to the eaſt of this place lies the famous ſalt-lake called *Iamuſha*, which gives name to the fort, and may be looked upon as a prodigy in Nature. It is of a round form, and about nine *Werſts* in circumference. Its banks are ſo full of ſalt, that the ground is, as it were, cryſtalized with it. The water is ſaline to the higheſt degree; and the ſalt that it yields is excellent, ſurpaſſing all other ſalt in whiteneſs, and conſiſting entirely of cubic cryſtals. It is found here in ſuch quantities, that ſeveral ſhips might be ſoon loaded with it; and the empty places, where the ſalt has been taken away, are filled up with it again in five or ſix days. The provinces of *Tobolsk* and *Ieniſea* are ſupplied with ſalt from this lake; which yields a ſufficient quantity for fifty ſuch provinces. This ſalt-trade has been monopolized by the Crown. A *Pud* of ſalt is ſold on the ſpot for twelve *Copeiks*; but at *Tobolsk*, *Tomsk*, and *Ieniſeisk* it coſts about twenty *Copeiks*.

Sempalataia Krepoſt, or *Sempalat* fort, was built in the year 1714 on the bank of the *Irtis*; but it was taken down and built on a new ſituation ſeveral times on account of the gradual encroachments which the water made on the land; ſo that now it ſtands in its fourth ſituation. This fort is eaſily commanded from the mountains that lie to the eaſt of it; and the adjacent country is very pleaſant and fertile, but lies uncultivated. The gardens at *Sempalat* yield a very fine ſpecies of melons. The fort has its name from *Sempalat*, a ruinous town lying about ſixteen *Werſts* from it, on the river *Irtis*, where ſome remains of old ſtone buildings are ſtill to be ſeen. The firſt *Ruſſian* ſettlers here found ſeven of theſe houſes, as the name of the place imports. The Learned are of opinion that ſome old inſcriptions, which were found among theſe ruins, relate to the mythology of the *Kalmuks*; and that this place was deſerted by that nation, agreeably to a maxim of their religion, that when any conſecrated place is once profaned by war, it muſt be relinquiſhed for ever.

Uſt-Kameno-Gorſk, a ſmall *Krepoſt* or fortreſs, ſtands in a ſpacious plain near a ſhallow branch of the *Irtis*, and is ſo called from the mountains which lie to the eaſt of it. Its garriſon conſiſts of a hundred and fifty men. The neighbouring country abounds with wild animals.

Betwixt the *Irtis* and the *Oby* are ſome rich copper-mines; and from the *Ploskaia Gora*, or the flat mountain, fine ore is carried to the copper-works at *Kolivan*. The copper-mines on the mountain *Pičtowa* (ſo called from the *Pičta*, or white firs, that grow on it) yield a vaſt produce: and there is no need of digging deep to come at the ore, as it lies near the ſurface of the ground. Every hundred weight of ore yields twelve pounds of pure copper. Not far from *Pičtowa* are two other hills near the ſurface of which ore is found.

found. The *Woskreſenskian* mountains abound with ore; but it lies moſtly in *ſtrata* or veins of a conſiderable depth. The *Koliwan* copper-works which belong to M. *Demiedow*, at firſt were built on a mountain called *Koliwano*, which is not far from the preſent ſtructure. It is defended by a fort conſiſting of four baſtions, and ſurrounded with a rampart of earth and a moat. Moſt of the miners are *Roskolſhtſhiki* or *Ruſſian* ſeparatiſts from the *Greek* church. Theſe works have lately become extremely profitable. The ore is very rich in copper, and yields a great deal of ſilver; beſides the ſilver yields ſo much gold as makes rich returns for the trouble and expence of extracting it from the former. It is preſumed that the whole country lying betwixt the *Irtis* and the *Oby* abounds in rich ore of various metals; and that the ore generally lies near the ſurface of the earth.

To the North-eaſt of the city of *Tobolſk* lie the following places of note.

Demianſk, a town which ſtands on a hill near the *Irtis*, and is moſtly inhabited by *Iemſhicks*, or carriers; who in ſummer-time ply with veſſels up and down the river, and in winter carry goods and paſſengers in ſledges.

Samarowſkoi Yam, or *Samarowſk*, a poſt-ſtage at the conflux of the *Irtis* and *Oby*. Here are about fifty houſes and a church. The adjacent country lies uncultivated; and all ſorts of proviſions are brought hither from *Tobolſk*. *Samarowſk* is famous for a large trading place.

Karimkarsk and *Atlimsk*, which are alſo poſt-ſtages.

7. The Circle of SURGUT, in Ruſſian *Surgutskoi Uiezd.*

This Diſtrict has its name from

Surgut, a pretty large town on the *Oby*. It is ſurrounded with palliſadoes and towers; and the *Oſtiaks* who live in this country annually pay tribute to the *Woiwode* of *Surgut*. The adjacent country abounds with ſables; black, white, and red foxes, and fine gray furrs; and has plenty of excellent fiſh, but produces no corn. The inhabitants of this city have the nick-name of *Griwiie* becauſe moſt of them are obſerved to ſquint.

8. The Circle of PELYM, in Ruſſian *Pelymskoi Uiezd.*

This Diſtrict is large but contains no remarkable place, except the ſmall town of *Pelym*, which ſtands on a river of the ſame name. To this place the famous Field Marſhal Count *Munich* was baniſhed, and ſtill lives here in exile. There are ſeveral lakes, and ſome of a conſiderable extent, in this Circle.

9. The Circle of BERESOW, called by the Ruſſians *Berezowskoi Uiezd.*

This Diſtrict is bounded to the North by *Waigatz* ſtraits, and to the Eaſt by a large bay of the *Frozen Ocean*, which runs into the land towards the ſouth; and at the ſixty ſixth degree of Latitude ſeparates into two arms, one of which is called the *Obskaia Guba* or the *Oby-bay*, and the other *Tazowskaia Guba*, or the bay of *Tazow*. Into the former the river *Oby* empties itſelf, and the *Taz* into the latter; and from theſe two rivers the bays derive their names. This Diſtrict was under the *Ruſſian* dominion long before the other parts of *Siberia* were conquered; for it was added to the

Empire by the Czaar *Gabriel* ſo early as the year 1536. The moſt remarkable places in it are

Liapinskoi, from which the *Oſtiaks*, who live in theſe parts, are called *Liapinians*.

Berezow, which ſtands on the river *Oby*, and is fortified with palliſadoes. Here the court-favourite, Prince *Menſhikoff*, died in exile. The inhabitans of *Berozow* are called by way of ridicule *Bielkoiedi*, on account of their eating a great number of ſquirrels.

Kuiskoi, a *Slobode*, which ſtands on the river *Kuiskoi*, and gives name to the *Oſtiaks* and *Samoiedes* who inhabit the adjacent country.

Obdorskoi Oſtrog, which lies near the mouth of the *Oby*, is the place where the *Samoiedes* bring in their tribute.

Nadymskoi Oſtrog, which ſtood by the mouth of the river *Nadym*, where it falls into the *Oby-bay*, was deſtroyed by the *Iuraki*. Not far from this place is a ſpacious deep cavern in a mountain, where the *Nadymian-Oſtiaks* ſhelter themſelves. They make uſe of ladders to aſcend to, and deſcend from this cave.

Note. The iſland and ſtraits of *Waigatz*, and *Novaia Semlia* or *Newland* which lies beyond them, and is erroneouſly written *Nova Zembla*, are but little known. This country was firſt diſcovered in the year 1566, by *Stephen Barrow* an *Engliſhman*. In 1596, two *Hollanders*, namely, *William Barentz* and *Jacob Heemskirk*, wintered here with their crew. The Sun diſappeared on the third of *November*, and they never ſaw it till the twenty-fourth of *January* following. The *Ruſſians* have not yet ventured to ſail round the coaſt of *Novaia Semlia*; but as they go in ſmall veſſels between that country and the coaſt of *Aſia*, and the *Dutch* navigators have diſcovered the northern coaſt of it, we may conclude that it is an iſland; and it is exhibited as ſuch in the *Ruſſian* ATLAS. The *Samoiedes*, who live in this neighbourhood on the coaſt of the *Ice-Sea*, ſometimes croſs over to *Novaia Semlia*, to hunt rein-deer, elks, and white bears. It is yet uncertain whether this iſland be inhabited or not: For granting that men have been ſeen on it, that does not abſolutely prove that they always dwell there.

II. *IENISEISKAIA PROVINCIIA*,

Or the PROVINCE of *YENISEI*.

THE ſouth part of this province muſt have been included in the kingdom of *Tartary*; but whether the north part ever belonged to it is a queſtion. Some account has been given above * of the *Tunguſians*,

* See p. 473.

Oſtiaks

Oſtiaks, and other *Tartarian* nations who inhabit this province: It conſiſts of the following Circles or Diſtricts.

1. The Circle of MANGASEA, in Ruſſian *Mangaſeiskoi Uiezd.*

In this Diſtrict are four bays, into one of which the *Yeneſei* diſcharges itſelf, beſides the large gulf of the *Frozen Ocean*, of which that of *Tazow* is only a bay. Though the climate of the country that lies near the mouth of the *Yeniſei* be ſo exceſſively cold, yet it is very well peopled; the bountiful Creator having liberally beſtowed many advantages on this country, which is generally repreſented in ſuch dreadful colours. The white and blue foxes, and the white wolves and bears which are caught here, are ſaid to ſurpaſs thoſe of all other parts in largeneſs of ſize. Beſides the hair is alſo finer and grows cloſer than common; accordingly the ſkins always bear a higher price, than thoſe that are brought from the *Oby* and the *Lena*. For the ſake of theſe profitable captures, more *Ruſſians* ſettle on the banks of the *Ieniſei* than near any other river in *Siberia*. From *Mangaſea* to the ſea, and along the coaſt to the river *Piaſiga*, and from the *Piaſiga* to the *Cantanga*, and along the banks of the laſt river, the country is full of *Ruſſian* dwellings: Some of the inhabitants remove to end their days in other places, and ſome live and die in this country. People who want employment flock to theſe parts in great numbers; and a young fellow, though he be ever ſo poor at his firſt ſetting-out, ſoon makes his fortune in this country, if he is active, induſtrious, and a good oeconomiſt, by catching thoſe animals whoſe ſkins are ſo valuable, and with which it abounds. In ſummer, when no creatures but rein-deer are to be caught, here is the opportunity of fiſhing, in order to lay up a plentiful proviſion for winter. In the ſixty-eighth degree and a half of North Latitude lies the *Ruſſian* pariſh called *Katanskoi Pogoſt*, on the bank of the *Ieniſei*; which is much frequented by the huntſmen who live in the neighbouring houſes, of which there is no ſmall number in the adjacent country. This place muſt not be confounded with *Catanskoi*, on the river *Catanga*, which lies alſo in this Circle in Latitude 70° 30′. The moſt remarkable place in this Diſtrict is

Mangaſea, or *Mangazeia*, the moſt northern town in *Siberia*, which lies in Latitude 66°. The exact time when *Mangaſea* was diſcovered, and peopled by *Ruſſian* colonies, cannot be well aſcertained. According to an old tradition delivered down from father to ſon, a colony from *Archangel* built the old *Oſtrog* of *Mangaſea*, before there was ſuch a thing as a *Ruſſian* town known in *Siberia*. It derives its name from a *Samoiedean* tribe, who inhabited this country, and call themſelves *Mangaſe*: For this people, by promiſing to pay tribute to the *Ruſſians*, gave occaſion to the building of this town. Old *Mangaſea*, which ſtood on the river *Taz*, gradually fell to decay; and in the year 1600, the preſent town was built, and the inhabitants of the old *Oſtrog* were removed hither. This new *Oſtrog* was alſo called *Mangaſea*; but as it lies at the mouth of the river *Turukan*

Turukan, it had alſo the name of *Turukanſk*, which it retains to this day among the common people. As this *Oſtrog* proved the means of making ſeveral nations tributary to the *Ruſſians*, it was, probably on that account, afterwards endowed with the privileges of a town. *Mangaſea* ſtands at preſent on the north bank of the *Nikolſkoi Shar*, which is a ſmall branch of the *Ieniſei*, and, about a *Werſt* from this place, is augmented by the influx of the river *Turukan*. The houſes in this town are not contiguous, and, at moſt, do not exceed one hundred. The greateſt part of it is incloſed within a ſmall wooden fortification, with four pieces of cannon; and in this ſtands the houſe of the Governor or Prefect, and the principal church; and without it are two other churches. Moſt of the inhabitants of *Mangaſea* have always been *Coſaks*; who were placed here, in order to ſubdue, or at leaſt to check, the Pagan nations of this country, particularly the *Tunguſians* and *Samoiedes*. The *Mangaſeans* are by way of ridicule called *Swietlobi* from their ſhining foreheads, and *Porſowiki* becauſe they eat dried and putrified fiſh inſtead of bread. This town carries on a good trade in furrs. In ſummer time the ſun is ſeen here continually above the horizon; and during that ſeaſon prodigious flocks of birds, eſpecially water-fowl and ſeveral kinds of wild geeſe and ducks, plovers, ſnipes, &c. frequent the neighbouring country. Since the year 1721, this town and its Diſtrict have been annexed to the province of *Ieniſea*; whereas before that time it depended immediately on *Tobolſk*, and prior to that, was in the juriſdiction of *Tomſk*.

2. The Circle of NARYM, or *Narymſkoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict are,

Narym, a ſmall town, which ſtands on an iſland in the river *Oby*, and is fortified with palliſadoes and wooden towers. The tribute due from the neighbouring *Oſtiaks* is paid here.

Ketſkoi Oſtrog, which lies on the river *Ket*.

3. The Circle of TOMSK, or *Tomskoi Uiezd*.

The following places of note lie in this Diſtrict.

Tomsk, a town ſituated on the river *Tom*. A brook called *Uſhaika* runs through the town, and at the northern extremity of it falls into the *Tom*. The foundation of *Tomsk* was laid in the reign of the Czaar *Feodor Iwanowitz*, who built an *Oſtrog* on this ſpot; and this happened about twenty years before the building of the town of *Kuſnetsk*. Several nations of theſe countries having been reduced by force of arms, and others voluntarily ſubmitting to the *Ruſſians*, the *Oſtrog* was by degrees converted into a fort; and the fort in time increaſed to a town; which, at preſent, contains above 2000 houſes within its circuit. It was at firſt, next to *Tobolsk*, the ſecond principal city in *Siberia*, and continued ſo for ſome years; but has ſince been included in the province of *Ieniſei*. Some, indeed, are of opinion that the Circle of *Tomsk* at preſent belongs to the province of *Tobolsk*; but we rather follow the *Ruſſian* ATLAS which places it in that of *Ieniſei*. On

the higheſt part of the town ſtands a ſmall wooden caſtle defended by fourteen pieces of cannon; and in it are a cathedral built with wood, the *Woiwode*'s houſe, the Government-Chancery, and an arſenal. Near the fort ſtand ſeveral private houſes and a church. The lower part of the town is the moſt populous; and is ſeparated into two parts by the rivulet *Uſhaika*. In that part which lies to the left are a monaſtery, a nunnery, a church, and a Tartarain *Slobode*; and in that part on the right are three pariſh churches and an Exchange for merchants. This town is extremely well ſituated for commerce, and the inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade. It lies in the great road from *Ieniſeiſk* and all the towns in the eaſtern and northern parts of *Siberia*; ſo that all caravans going to and from *China* paſs every year through this town, beſides a caravan or two from the country of the *Kalmuks*. Here are indeed all kinds of tradeſmen and artificers; but they are extremely indolent and ſlothful; which is owing to the extraordinary cheapneſs of proviſions in this town, and their brutiſh propenſity to drinking and debauchery, there being ſcarce a family among the inhabitants which is entirely free from the *Lues Venerea*. The *Tonskians* have the nick-names of *Olionotſhi*, from a woman called *Oliiona*, who was very famous for her ſtrength, and *Buligi*, i. e. 'boaſters.' The adjacent country is very fertile and produces all kinds of grain.

Melesk and *Atſzinsk*, which are two *Oſtrogs*.

Bogorodskoi, a town on the *Oby*. The church belonging to this town is famous for a celebrated picture of the Virgin *Mary*, which is diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Oediitria*, and every year on the twenty-firſt of *May* is brought in proceſſion to *Tomsk*. There are iron works in this place.

Urtamask and *Umrewinsk*, two *Oſtrogs* near the *Oby*. The latter is one of the oldeſt in this country.

Tſhauskoi Oſtrog and *Sloboda*, which ſtands on the river *Tſhaus*, was built in 1713, in order to check the incurſions of the *Kaſatſhia Horda*, who, ſince that time, have never appeared in theſe parts. This *Oſtrog* is advantageouſly ſituated, and has great plenty of all kinds of proviſions: It is defended by five pieces of cannon. The *Slobode* belonging to it conſiſts of eighty private houſes. The inhabitants are, for the moſt part, people of wealth, which conſiſts in herds of cattle.

In the deſert of *Barraba* and on the borders of it are the following fortreſſes.

Ubinskoi Paſs and *Kainskoi Paſs*, which are not far from the lake *Uebu*. The former has a garriſon of fifty men, and is dependent on the latter. *Kainskoi Paſs* ſtands near the river *Om*, and is defended by braſs guns, and a garriſon of one hundred and fifty men.

Tartaskoi Paſs, which likewiſe ſtands on the river *Om*, is but a mean place; However the ſituation is good, and the adjacent country very fertile.

4. The Circle of KUTSNETSK, or *Kutnetskoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict lies

2 1. *Kutſnetsk*,

Kutſnetsk, a large town on the river *Tom*, which was formerly inhabited by the *Kirgiſian Tartars*, who gradually retreated towards the borders of the country of the *Kalmuks*, when the *Ruſſians* ſettled in this place. This town has been built above a hundred years; and was peopled with colonies from the Diſtricts of *Tomsk*, *Werkoturie*, and *Weliki-Novogrod*. Before that time, the *Tartars* who lived in the place where the city now ſtands, uſed to ſmelt iron from the ore, and ſubſiſted partly by that employment and partly by the iron which they wrought. Hence the town had its name; *Kusnetz* in the *Ruſſian* language ſignifying a forge. In the year 1689, *Kutſnetsk* was declared a city. The upper and middle parts of this city ſtand on a high bank, and the lower part on a level between the river *Tom* and that eminence. In the upper part ſtands a ſmall wooden citadel; in the middle is an *Oſtrog* incloſing the *Woiwode*'s houſe and the Government-Chancery; and in the lower part are moſt of the houſes, which amount to about five hundred, and a church. No manner of trade is carried on in this town. The inhabitants are called by their neighbours by the nick-name of *Surki*, becauſe they wear the ſkins of a ſmall kind of maramottos called *Surki*.

Bieloiaskaia, and *Bikatunskaia*, are two frontier fortifications, which were built in this Circle to check the incurſions of the *Kalmuks*.

5. The Circle of KRASNOIARSK, or *Kraſnoiarskoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict lies

Kraſnoiarsk, a town ſituated on the *Ieniſei*; and at the lower end of it runs the river *Katſha*. It was firſt built in the year 1728, as an *Oſtrog* to oppoſe the incurſions of the neighbouring tribes, and to keep them in awe, and gradually roſe to a town. It derives its name from the dark-red colour of the northweſt bank of the *Katſha*. The original *Oſtrog* lies on the north ſide of the town, and contains the great church, the Government-Chancery, the *Woiwode*'s houſe, the arſenal, *&c.* In the town itſelf, which is ſurrounded with palliſadoes, towers, *&c.* are a church, the Town-houſe, and about three hundred and fifty houſes. The inhabitants by way of contempt are called *Buntowſhiki* on account of their frequent revolts. Moſt of them are *Sluſhiwie*, or a ſort of irregular infantry: However, ſome of theſe are not without ſuch wealth as the country affords; and this conſiſts in horſes and cattle, which feed both winter and ſummer on the *Steppe* or heaths. Such is the fertility of the adjacent country, that if it be only ſuperficially plowed, without any manure, it will bear crops of corn five or ſix years ſucceſſively; and when the land is impoveriſhed, there is plenty of other waſte ground which may ſoon be made fit for ſowing. Many antiquities were formerly found in theſe parts, particularly in the town of *Kraſnoiarsk*. Theſe remains of antiquity were taken out of graves and old monuments, ſeveral of which are ſtill to be ſeen near *Abalansk* and *Sagansk*. Even conſiderable quantities of gold and ſilver have formerly been found in them; and copper is now frequently dug up in ſuch places. The great road from *Tomsk* to *Irkutsk* lies through this place.

In this country near the river *Ieniſei*, are three large ſubterraneous caverns; and in one of them the rock is painted with ſeveral figures.

In this Circle are alſo the following *Oſtrogs*.

Werkneikaraulnoi Oſtrog, which lies on the river *Ieniſei*.

Abakanskoi Oſtrog, which alſo ſtands on the *Ieniſei*, was founded in the year 1707, and rebuilt in 1725. It is ſo called from the river *Abakan*, which falls into the *Ieniſei* about ſixty-two *Werſts* beyond this *Oſtrog*. It is defended by ſeveral pieces of cannon, and has always a good garriſon. The number of houſes near this fortification is continually increaſing.

Sanianskoi Oſtrog, which is likewiſe on the river *Ieniſei*, was built in the year 1709 to keep the *Kirgiſians* in awe; and has fully anſwered the purpoſe, as they are very quiet at preſent. On the river *Lukaſa* near this *Oſtrog* ſome copper-works are erected.

Kanskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands on the bank of the river *Kan*. The ſurpriſing dexterity of the *Tartars* in catching ſables near this *Oſtrog* renders it one of the beſt places in *Siberia* for that trade; on this account the merchants, who travel to the frontiers of *China*, generally make ſome ſtay here. It is alſo one of the moſt lucrative places in the juriſdiction of the *Woiwode* of *Kraſnoiarsk*; and the *Kanskoi*, or receiver of the tribute, pays a round ſum for his office.

6. The Circle of YENISEI, or *Ieniſeiskoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict are the following places of note.

Yeniſeisk, the capital of this province, lies on the river *Yeniſei*, which is here about a *Werſt* and a half in breadth. This city is built along the ſide of the river, and is about ſix *Werſts* in circuit. In the year 1618 an *Oſtrog* was founded in this place, which firſt depended on *Tobolsk*, and then was under the juriſdiction of *Tomsk*; but it was afterwards raiſed to a town, and, in 1719, made the capital of the province. Within the old *Oſtrog* are the great church, the *Woiwode*'s houſe, the Chancery or State-Offices, and an arſenal. The city contains three churches, a monaſtery, a nunnery, an Exchange for merchants, a powder magazine, and a magazine for proviſions, (the two laſt incloſed by *Oſtrogs)* and ſeven hundred private houſes. The *Archimandrite*, who has the ſuperintendency of the convent of *Troitz-Mangaſea* which ſtands near the mouth of the river *Niſhna-Tunguska*, and of the whole body of the *Yeniſean* Clergy, reſides in the monaſtery at *Yeniſeiſk*. The commodious ſituation of the town cauſes a very briſk trade to be carried on here, eſpecially in ſummer; and moſt of the inhabitants are more or leſs concerned in commerce. Here is great plenty of corn, fleſh, and fowl; but the only fruit this country produces are two or three ſorts of berries. Drunkenneſs, ſloth, and debauchery prevail here, as in the other towns of *Siberia*; and ſuch diſeaſes as are the conſequence of thoſe vices are very common in this city. The inhabitants are looked upon as a crafty, deceitful people, which has procured them the nickname of *Skwoſniki*,

Skowsniki, which signifies 'sharp-sighted,' or people that are not easily imposed upon.

Maskowskoi Ostrog, which stands on the river *Ket*.

Markowo Gorodishtshe is a pretty large village on the river *Yenisei*.

Rubenskoi Ostrog, a mean fortification.

Ust-Tunguskoi, which lies seven *Werfts* below the influx of the *Tunguska* into the *Yenisei*, and *Iesaulowo Sielo*, are two handsome villages, or small towns.

Tasseovskoi Ostrog, which stands on the river *Ussolka*, was rebuilt and improved in the year 1723. The *Tartars* and *Tungusians* of this country are become so peaceable and submissive, that the *Ostrog* has no longer occasion to use the few guns with which it is provided. As the inhabitants have very little trade or intercourse with strangers, they may serve as a just specimen of the *Siberian* manner of living.

Udinskoi Ostrog, a small place, was built in the year 1644 on the river *Uda*; and brings a considerable income to the *Ienisean Woiwode*; for the neighbouring *Buratians* bring their tribute of furrs to this *Ostrog*.

III. *IRKUTSKAIA PROVINCIIA*,

Or the PROVINCE of *IRKUTSK*.

THIS Province also belongs to *Tartary* properly so called, at least as far as the Circle of *Yakutsk*, which cannot properly be included in it. It is governed by a *Deputy-Statthalter* under whose jurisdiction are the *Woiwodes* of *Ilimsk*, *Selenginsk*, *Nertshinsk*, *Yakutzk*, and the officers who preside over *Okotsk* and *Kamshatka*: However, he is subject to the Governor of *Tobolsk*, though he has a large appointment; for his perquisites, exclusive of his salary, amount to no less than 30,000 *Rubels* a year. The *Buratians*, *Yakutians*, and other nations who live in these parts, have been spoken of above*. This province includes the following Circles.

1. The Circle of ILIMSK, or *Ilimskoi Uiezd*.

Remarkable places in this District are,

Ilimsk, a mean little town on the river *Ilim*. It lies between high mountains, and contains but eighty houses and an *Ostrog*; however, it is the seat of a *Woiwode*. Great quantities of beautiful black sables are caught in the neighbourhood of this town.

Bratskoi Ostrog, which stands on the river *Angara*, consists of fifty dwelling houses; and at the distance of five *Werfts* from it, stands a

* See p. 494, *& seq.*

monastery

monaſtery called *Spaskoi*. Great numbers of *Tunguſians* live in theſe parts; and about four *Werſts* from the *Oſtrog* is a great diſtillery for ſpirits.

Endinskoi Oſtrog, which lies on the bank of the *Angara*.

Lenskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands on the river *Lena*.

Uſt-Kutskoi Oſtrog, which is alſo on the *Lena*, is a very mean place. At a little diſtance from this *Oſtrog*, near the river *Kuta*, are ſeveral ſaline ſprings, which furniſh the whole Circle of *Ilimsk* with ſalt.

Kirenſkoi Oſtrog, which was built on the bank of the *Lena* in the year 1655, is now in a mean condition. The neighbouring country is very fertile; and, conſidering its Latitude which is 57° 47′, it has a ſurpriſing verdure, and produces various ſorts of vegetables which are remarkably large in their kind. The ſturgeons and ſterleds caught in the rivers near this *Oſtrog* are, for their exquiſite reliſh, the fineſt that *Siberia* affords. Not far from this place, near the influx of the river *Kirenga* into the *Lena*, is a convent remarkable for its opulence and endowments. Many of the people who live in the neighbourhood of *Kirenſkoi* have wens of an extraordinary bigneſs, which render their perſons none of the moſt agreeable; and it is not uncommon to ſee their oxen and cows with theſe excreſcences.

Spoloſkenſkia Sloboda ſtands near the *Lena* in a very fertile country, which conſiſts both of meadow and arable land. The inhabitants of theſe parts are alſo disfigured with wens.

2. The Circle of IRKUTSK, or *Irkutskoi Uiezd*.

This Diſtrict contains the following places of note.

Irkutsk, the capital of this Province, and the reſidence of its *Vice-Statthalter*, ſtands near the river *Angara*, in a fine plain, not far from the lake of *Baikal*. This city derives its name from the river *Irkutsk*, which runs into the *Angara* near this place; and is one of the moſt conſiderable and populous towns in all *Siberia*. It contains near 1000 good dwelling-houſes, and is ſurrounded with palliſadoes, within which are fourteen ſmall forts, a moat, and ſome *chevaux de frize*: It is alſo defended by a fort which ſtands near the *Angara* without the town, and is planted with ſixteen pieces of cannon. There are two churches built with ſtone, and four with wood, within the city; and two other churches, one of which belongs to a nunnery, ſtand without it. All the clergy of the province are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Irkutsk*. The inhabitants, who for the moſt part are traders, live in the *Siberian* manner, that is, in drunkenneſs, indolence, and debauchery, and the conſequences of theſe vices are very common among them. The adjacent country is pleaſant, and diverſified with hills and vallies; but as it lies uncultivated, a great quantity of corn is brought hither from the neighbouring countries. Here is plenty of game, as elks, ſtags, wild boars, and roe-bucks; and alſo partridges, wood-cocks, moor-hens, and ſnipes. The lake of *Baikal* is an inexhauſtible magazine of fiſh. Foreign goods may be bought here almoſt as cheap as at *Moſcow* and *Peterſburg*;

Petersburg; for merchants reſort hither from every town of any note in *Ruſſia*, and barter their commodities for *Chineſe* goods.

About ſix *Werſts* from *Irkutsk*, is a diſtillery for ſpirits, conſiſting of thirty-ſeven Alembics; a little further is another of fifty-three, and beyond that is a third with ſixty Alembics. Theſe diſtilleries belong to the Czarina, and furniſh the Circles of *Irkutzk*, *Ilimsk*, and *Selenginsk* with diſtilled ſpirits.

Nikolskaia Saſtawa, or St. *Nicholas*'s cuſtom-houſe, ſtands at the mouth of the river *Angara*. The toll or duty, payable on commodities brought from *China*, is received here. The collector of theſe duties has ſo profitable a poſt, that he generally makes his fortune in one year. This country is frequented with prodigious flights of all kinds of wild ducks.

Urik, a *Slobode* or Suburb on a rivulet of the ſame name, conſiſts of ſeveral well-built houſes, which few towns in this country can equal.

On an iſland formed by the river *Angara* are two ſalt-works, which plentifully ſupply the whole Diſtrict of *Irkutz* on this ſide the lake of *Baikal*, and part of that of *Ilimsk* with ſalt.

Olonki, a *Slobode* or village, which conſiſts of two large villages, lies in a very pleaſant ſituation; and the adjacent country yields plenty of corn.

Beskoi and *Idinskoi Oſtrogs* are but inconſiderable places.

Balaganskoi Oſtrog, on the *Angara*, was built before that of *Irkutz*, and is a place of ſome note. It is defended only by two pieces of braſs cannon. Near this *Oſtrog* are about ſixty good dwelling-houſes, which are partly inhabited by *Sluſhwies* or irregular troops, and partly by traders, who are all in very good circumſtances.

Wercolenskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands on the river *Lena*.

3. The Circle of SELENGINSK, or *Selengiskoi Uiezd*.

The following places of note lie in this Diſtrict.

Selenginsk, a town ſituated on the river *Selenga*; was made an *Oſtrog* in 1666; but about twenty years after that, the fort, which is now ſtanding, was built; and to this the place owes its proſperity. The town lies parallel to the river, and contains two churches and one hundred and fifty houſes, which are incloſed in the fortification. The latter is defended by five pieces of braſs cannon, and as many iron guns; and the garriſon conſiſts of a regiment of ſoldiers. The inhabitants have the nickname of *Peſoſhniki*, from the great quantities of ſand found in theſe parts. The whole adjacent country is very mountainous and barren; but there is good arable land fifteen *Werſts* below it. The country about *Salengisk* yields a very great plenty of rhubarb; and all the rhubarb that is exported from *Ruſſia* grows in theſe parts.

Strielki, a fort erected on a point of land between the rivers *Tſhikoi* and *Selenga*, is alſo called *Petra i Pawloſkaia Krepoſt*, i. e. 'the fort of *Peter* 'and *Paul*.' It is a ſquare incloſure, ſurrounded with palliſadoes, and includes the garriſon church, and that of the *Chineſe* caravans; and likewiſe the habitations and magazines belonging to the latter, the ſoldiers barracks, &c.

monaſtery called *Spaskoi*. Great numbers of *Tunguſians* live in theſe parts; and about four *Werſts* from the *Oſtrog* is a great diſtillery for ſpirits.

Endinskoi Oſtrog, which lies on the bank of the *Angara*.

Lenskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands on the river *Lena*.

Uſt-Kutskoi Oſtrog, which is alſo on the *Lena*, is a very mean place. At a little diſtance from this *Oſtrog*, near the river *Kuta*, are ſeveral ſaline ſprings, which furniſh the whole Circle of *Ilimsk* with ſalt.

Kirenſkoi Oſtrog, which was built on the bank of the *Lena* in the year 1655, is now in a mean condition. The neighbouring country is very fertile; and, conſidering its Latitude which is 57° 47′, it has a ſurpriſing verdure, and produces various ſorts of vegetables which are remarkably large in their kind. The ſturgeons and ſterleds caught in the rivers near this *Oſtrog* are, for their exquiſite reliſh, the fineſt that *Siberia* affords. Not far from this place, near the influx of the river *Kirenga* into the *Lena*, is a convent remarkable for its opulence and endowments. Many of the people who live in the neighbourhood of *Kirenſkoi* have wens of an extraordinary bigneſs, which render their perſons none of the moſt agreeable; and it is not uncommon to ſee their oxen and cows with theſe excreſcences.

Spoloſkenſkia Sloboda ſtands near the *Lena* in a very fertile country, which conſiſts both of meadow and arable land. The inhabitants of theſe parts are alſo disfigured with wens.

2. The Circle of IRKUTSK, or *Irkutskoi Uiezd*.

This Diſtrict contains the following places of note.

Irkutsk, the capital of this Province, and the reſidence of its *Vice-Statthalter*, ſtands near the river *Angara*, in a fine plain, not far from the lake of *Baikal*. This city derives its name from the river *Irkutsk*, which runs into the *Angara* near this place; and is one of the moſt conſiderable and populous towns in all *Siberia*. It contains near 1000 good dwelling-houſes, and is ſurrounded with palliſadoes, within which are fourteen ſmall forts, a moat, and ſome *chevaux de frize:* It is alſo defended by a fort which ſtands near the *Angara* without the town, and is planted with ſixteen pieces of cannon. There are two churches built with ſtone, and four with wood, within the city; and two other churches, one of which belongs to a nunnery, ſtand without it. All the clergy of the province are under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Irkutsk*. The inhabitants, who for the moſt part are traders, live in the *Siberian* manner, that is, in drunkenneſs, indolence, and debauchery, and the conſequences of theſe vices are very common among them. The adjacent country is pleaſant, and diverſified with hills and vallies; but as it lies uncultivated, a great quantity of corn is brought hither from the neighbouring countries. Here is plenty of game, as elks, ſtags, wild boars, and roe-bucks; and alſo partridges, wood-cocks, moor-hens, and ſnipes. The lake of *Baikal* is an inexhauſtible magazine of fiſh. Foreign goods may be bought here almoſt as cheap as at *Moſcow* and *Peterſburg*;

Petersburg; for merchants reſort hither from every town of any note in *Ruſſia*, and barter their commodities for *Chineſe* goods.

About ſix *Werſts* from *Irkutsk*, is a diſtillery for ſpirits, conſiſting of thirty-ſeven Alembics; a little further is another of fifty-three, and beyond that is a third with ſixty Alembics. Theſe diſtilleries belong to the Czarina, and furniſh the Circles of *Irkutzk*, *Ilimsk*, and *Selenginsk* with diſtilled ſpirits.

Nikolskaia Saſtawa, or St. *Nicholas*'s cuſtom-houſe, ſtands at the mouth of the river *Angara*. The toll or duty, payable on commodities brought from *China*, is received here. The collector of theſe duties has ſo profitable a poſt, that he generally makes his fortune in one year. This country is frequented with prodigious flights of all kinds of wild ducks.

Urik, a *Slobode* or Suburb on a rivulet of the ſame name, conſiſts of ſeveral well-built houſes, which few towns in this country can equal.

On an iſland formed by the river *Angara* are two ſalt-works, which plenſfully ſupply the whole Diſtrict of *Irkutz* on this ſide the lake of *Baikal*, and part of that of *Ilimsk* with ſalt.

Olonki, a *Slobode* or village, which conſiſts of two large villages, lies in a very pleaſant ſituation; and the adjacent country yields plenty of corn.

Beskoi and *Idinskoi Oſtrogs* are but inconſiderable places.

Balaganskoi Oſtrog, on the *Angara*, was built before that of *Irkutz*, and is a place of ſome note. It is defended only by two pieces of braſs cannon. Near this *Oſtrog* are about ſixty good dwelling-houſes, which are partly inhabited by *Sluſhwies* or irregular troops, and partly by traders, who are all in very good circumſtances.

Wercolenskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands on the river *Lena*.

3. The Circle of SELENGINSK, or *Selengiskoi Uiezd*.

The following places of note lie in this Diſtrict.

Selenginsk, a town ſituated on the river *Selenga*; was made an *Oſtrog* in 1666; but about twenty years after that, the fort, which is now ſtanding, was built; and to this the place owes its proſperity. The town lies parallel to the river, and contains two churches and one hundred and fifty houſes, which are incloſed in the fortification. The latter is defended by five pieces of braſs cannon, and as many iron guns; and the garriſon conſiſts of a regiment of ſoldiers. The inhabitants have the nickname of *Peſoſhniki*, from the great quantities of ſand found in theſe parts. The whole adjacent country is very mountainous and barren; but there is good arable land fifteen *Werſts* below it. The country about *Salengisk* yields a very great plenty of rhubarb; and all the rhubarb that is exported from *Ruſſia* grows in theſe parts.

Strielki, a fort erected on a point of land between the rivers *Tſhikoi* and *Selenga*, is alſo called *Petra i Pawloſkaia Krepoſt*, i. e. 'the fort of *Peter* 'and *Paul*.' It is a ſquare incloſure, ſurrounded with palliſadoes, and includes the garriſon church, and that of the *Chineſe* caravans; and likewiſe the habitations and magazines belonging to the latter, the ſoldiers barracks,

&c.

&c. The houſes of the commandant, ſoldiers, and other inhabitants are built without the palliſadoes. This place ought to be garriſoned with a whole regiment for the defence of the frontiers; but, at preſent, it is not complete. The adjacent country is fertile and pleaſant.

Troitzkaia Krepoſt, on the ſmall river *Kiakta*, is a fort lately built on the frontiers, and conſiſts of an *Oſtrog* with four baſtions. All traders and merchants who paſs through this place are obliged to pay duty for their goods, unleſs they quit the road, and go another way to avoid the fort.

Kiakta, or *Kiaktinskoi Krepoſt*, and *Kiaktinskaia Torgowaia Sloboda*, are the limits between *Ruſſia* and *China* towards the South, as they were ſettled by Count *Sawa Wladiſlawitz Raguſinſki*, according to a treaty concluded in 1727. Before that time the river *Bura*, which lies about eight *Werſts* further towards the ſouth, was looked upon as the boundary between the *Ruſſian* and *Chineſe* Empire; and this was more conformable to the natural diviſion of the countries, as well as more advantageous to *Ruſſia*, than the preſent limits; which are arbitrarily laid out acroſs deſarts, and over mountains, and aſcertained by pillars erected along the frontiers, and properly numbered. By this alteration of the frontier, the *Ruſſians* have alſo loſt the excellent iron-ore which the mountains near the river *Bura*, and no other place in theſe parts, afforded. Two *Slobodes*, one of which is inhabited by *Ruſſians* and the other by *Chineſe*, were erected on the banks of the little river called *Kiakta* in the year 1727: the former lies on the north, and the latter on the ſouth ſide of the river. They lie about a hundred and twenty fathoms aſunder, and are ſurrounded with an *Oſtrog*; and the *Ruſſian Slobode* is further defended by ſix baſtions and a moat. Between theſe two *Slobodes* a barrier is erected, and a guard placed, who, on both ſides, are very careful that no encroachments be made on the frontiers. As the *Slobodes* are ſituated in a barren waſte, all ſorts of proviſions are very dear there. The *Chineſe* traders are more numerous than the *Ruſſian* merchants in theſe frontier towns.

Tunkinskoi Oſtrog lies to the weſt of *Kaikta* in Latitude 50° 15′; and, conſequently, is placed too far to the north in the maps. In the neighbourhood of this *Oſtrog* live the roving *Soietians*, who are pagan *Tartars*.

On the other ſide of *Selenginsk*, near the lake of *Baikal*, lie the following remarkable places.

Udinsk, which is a ſmall town on the river *Uda* that runs into the *Selenga* not far from this place. In the year 1670, an *Oſtrog* was erected on this ſpot; and in 1688, a fort was built here, which ſtands on the eaſt ſide of the town upon a hill, and is defended by five braſs guns. The town conſiſts of one hundred and ſixteen dwelling-houſes, and round it are fine fields and meadows, with great plenty of wood. *Udinsk* alſo ſtands on a navigable river; and the road to the ſouth and eaſt frontiers of *China* lies through this town. Here is plenty of proviſions, particularly garden fruit and

and fiſh; and about the latter end of *Auguſt* great numbers of *Omuli*, which are a ſpecies of whitings, are caught in the river *Selenga*.

Iliinskoi Oſtrog, or *Bolſhaia Saimka*, which ſtands on the river *Selenga*.

Troitskoi Monaſtir, an ancient, ſtately, and rich convent.

Kabanskoi Oſtrog is built near the brook *Kabana*, which, about half a *Werſt* from this place, runs into a branch of the *Selenga*. The country hereabouts affords good arable land and excellent paſtures.

Poſolskoi Monaſtir, a convent on the ſouth ſide of the *Baikal*-lake.

Itanzinskoi Oſtrog lies, indeed, in the Diſtrict of *Selenginsk*; but properly belongs to *Nertſhinsk*. This place is famous for *Bratski-work*, by which moſt of the *Ruſſian* inhabitants get a ſubſiſtence.

Barguzinskoi Oſtrog ſtands on the little river *Barguzin*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*.

4. The Circle of NERTSHINSK, or *Nertſhinſkoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict are,

Nertſhinsk, a frontier town towards *China*, which was built on the river *Nertſka* in the year 1658. In the fort, which was the firſt beginning of the town, are thirty-two braſs guns and one of iron. The town, beſides ſome public edifices, contains one hundred and fifty houſes, moſt of which are very meanly built. The inhabitants give themſelves up entirely to ſloth, drunkenneſs, and debauchery. The *Chineſe* caravans formerly paſſed through this place; but now they take another road. However, the *Ruſſian* Envoys are received and handſomely entertained by the *Chineſe*, and the like compliment is paid to thoſe of *China* by the *Ru ans*, in this town. A treaty of peace was concluded at *Nertſhinsk* between *Ruſſia* and *China* in the year 1689. This town ſeems to derive its name from the two ſmall rivers called *Nertſka* and *Shinke*, between which it lies. The adjacent country is, indeed, very mountainous, but yields excellent paſture for cattle.

Argunsk, an *Oſtrog* which lies on the weſt ſide of the *Argun*. It was firſt built in 1682, on the eaſt bank of that river, for the conveniency of levying the tribute payable by the *Tunguſians*, who inhabit theſe parts; but in 1689, *Argunsk* was built on its preſent ſituation. It is the furtheſt fort towards the Eaſt on the *Mungalian* frontiers; has a good garriſon; and carries on a conſiderable trade with the *Mungals*. The adjacent country is very fertile, and the air ſalubrious, but ſo cold that in ſummer the earth, in many places, is not thawed above two or three feet below the ſurface. The territory of *Argunsk* is commonly ſubject to ſlight ſhocks of an earthquake in the ſpring, and about the beginning of winter. The diſeaſes to which the inhabitants of the country about *Argunsk* are moſtly ſubject, are Epilepſies, a diſtemper called *Woloſſez*, and the *Lues Venerea*; and the laſt is ſo common here, that the young and old of both ſexes are miſerably afflicted with it. In theſe parts the *Chineſe* erect every year new pillars, to mark the limits of their frontiers, on the eaſtern bank of the *Argun*.

Not far from *Argunsk* are the *Argunskian* ſilver-mines, which are alſo called the *Nertſhinskian* mines. The ſmelting houſes, which belong to

them, ſtand on the little river *Tuſatki*, about fourteen *Werſts* from the river *Argun*, and ſix or ſeven from the rivulet *Serebrenka*. Theſe works are built in a valley between two mountains, which extend a good way from Weſt to Eaſt. The ore does not lie deep in the earth; though it is found in maſſes or *Strata*. The profit ariſing from theſe mines is not very great; however, it anſwers the expence of refining, &c. One pound of fine ſilver extracted from this ore contains the value of two ducats and a half of fine gold, which has a beautiful colour and is exceeding malleable. Twenty-ſix *Puds* and ſome odd pounds of pure ſilver, and twenty-ſeven pounds of fine gold, both which were the produce of this mine, were delivered in at *Petersburg* for the uſe of the crown in 1740 and 1741. Two leagues to the ſouth-eaſt of this place is a mountain of a beautiful green jaſper, but not without a mixture of common ſtone; ſo that it is rare to meet with pieces weighing three pounds quite tranſparent and without flaws. In the neighbouring waſte are ſeveral ſalt-lakes, one of which is above three *Werſts* in circumference; and on the ſurface of the water good common ſalt floats in great quantities.

Sitanskoi Oſtrog, which ſtands at the influx of the river *Tſhiia* into the *Ingoda*.

Terawninskoi Oſtrog, which lies on the bank of the lake *Terawna*.

5. The Circle of YAKUTSK, or *Iakutzkoi Uiezd*.

In this Diſtrict are the following remarkable places.

Yakutzk lies near the river *Lena*, and conſiſts of between five and ſix hundred houſes meanly built; and a wooden fort ſtands near the town. It is ſupplied with plenty of ſeveral kinds of fiſh. The circumjacent country is, indeed, very fit for tillage; but the inhabitants chooſe to employ themſelves in hunting.

Olecminskoi Oſtrog, which alſo ſtands on the *Lena*, derives its name from the river *Olecma*, which falls into the *Lena* about ſixteen *Werſts* from this town. This is one of the oldeſt *Oſtrogs* in theſe parts; but conſiſts only of few mean houſes, and has no more than forty-ſix peaſants families in its territory. The country which lies between this place and *Witimsk* is level, and ſo fertile, that it might plentifully ſupport a great number of inhabitants if they were induſtrious. The rye, barley, oats, and hemp which grow here, are very good in their kind; however, the country is but indifferently cultivated.

Witimskaia Sloboda is one of the oldeſt *Ruſſian* ſettlements on the banks of the *Lena*, and is almoſt as ancient as the town of *Iakutzk*. It conſiſts of few houſes, a church, and a cuſtom-houſe. Though this place lies in 59° 28′ north Latitude, yet the harveſt, when the weather proves favourable, is ſeldom later than the middle of *Auguſt* old ſtile.

Farther north towards the *Ice-Sea* is the river *Karaulac*, which runs into a bay of the *Frozen Ocean*. Near this river Lieutenant *Laſſenius* wintered with his party in the year 1735, and from the ſixth day of *November* to the eighteenth of *January* they never ſaw the ſun above the Horizon.

6. The territory of OCOTZK lies on the coaſt of the ſea of *Kamtſhatka*, and takes its name from the *Ocotzkoi Oſtrog*, which ſtands on the little river

river *Ocota*, and is the reſidence of a Governor, under whoſe juriſdiction are the *Oſtrogs* of *Taviſkoi*, *Udſkoi*, and *Anadirſkoi*. From the harbour of *Ocotzk*, which is three *Werſts* from the *Oſtrog*, the *Ruſſians* croſs over into the peninſula of *Kamtſhatka*. The ſoil about the *Ocotzkoi Oſtrog* produces little or no graſs; and proviſions are brought hither from *Iakutzk*, both by land and water. The laſt method of conveyance is very tedious, and attended with ſome danger: nor is the land-carriage free from difficulties; for the diſtance is nine hundred and nineteen *Werſts*, and the road lies over mountains, and through moraſſes and thick woods of larch and birch-trees, ſo that the journey takes up near ſix weeks. Beſides, every thing muſt be carried this way on horſes or rein-deer, and the latter are furniſhed by the *Tunguſians* who live in the neighbourhood of *Ocotzk*.

The north-eaſt extremity of *Siberia* is ſtill but very little known. The cape at the furtheſt north point of this country called *Tſhuketſhoi*, [in the maps *Shalaginskoi Noſs*] is in *Siberia*, and conſequently belongs to *Ruſſia*. Near the promontory, or north-eaſt point of the continent, is an iſland called *Diomedes*; and near the eaſt point lies the iſland of St. *Laurence*.

7. The peninſula of KAMTSHATKA runs upwards of one hundred and fifty *German* miles into the ſea towards the ſouth-eaſt; on the North it joins to the continent; to the Weſt and South of it are the bay of *Penſhinsk* and the ſea of *Kamtſhatka*; and towards the Eaſt it is bounded by the *Eaſtern Ocean*. From the extreme ſouth-eaſt point of this peninſula a chain of great and ſmall iſlands extends as far as *Japan*. On ſome of theſe iſlands are *Volcano's*, or burning mountains; and ſeveral of them are ſubject to terrible earthquakes. On the peninſula of *Kamtſhatka*, not far from the river of the ſame name, which runs into the *Eaſtern Ocean*, there is alſo a burning mountain, and violent ſhocks of an earthquake are often felt in the neighbourhood of it. Some ſpecies of plants that grow in *Lapland*, and others that were thought peculiar to *Canada* in *North America*, are found here, which is ſomething remarkable.

Since the beginning of the preſent century ſome *Ruſſian* colonies have ſettled in theſe parts, and built ſeveral forts and villages. The moſt remarkable among theſe are,

Niſhnei Kamtſhatzkoi Oſtrog, which ſtands near the mouth of the river *Kamtſhatka*.

Werknei Kamtſhatzkoi Oſtrog.

St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*'s Harbour.

Bolſheretzkoi Oſtrog.

I cannot pretend to ſay more of this country, which is ſo little known, with any certainty. Of *Kamtſhadalen* I have given ſome account above.

Note. KAMTSHATKA has, of late, been rendered famous by the attempts made from thence, to diſcover whether *Siberia* be joined to *America* towards the North; or whether there be a north-eaſt paſſage by ſea between theſe two continents.

The Czaar *Peter the Great* gave orders, that Captain *Beering*, a *Dane*, who took along with him Lieutenant *Spangenberg*, who was alſo a *Dane*; and M. *Tſhirikow*, a *Ruſſian*, ſhould ſail from hence to make this diſcovery. After that Emperor's death, the ſame Gentlemen were actually ſent out by his conſort and ſucceſſor the Czarina *Catharine* in the year 1725; but, after ſpending about five years in the voyage, they returned, without ſucceſs, in the ſpring of the year 1730. They ſailed as far as the ſixty-ſeventh degree of North Latitude; and found that the land extended no farther towards the North.

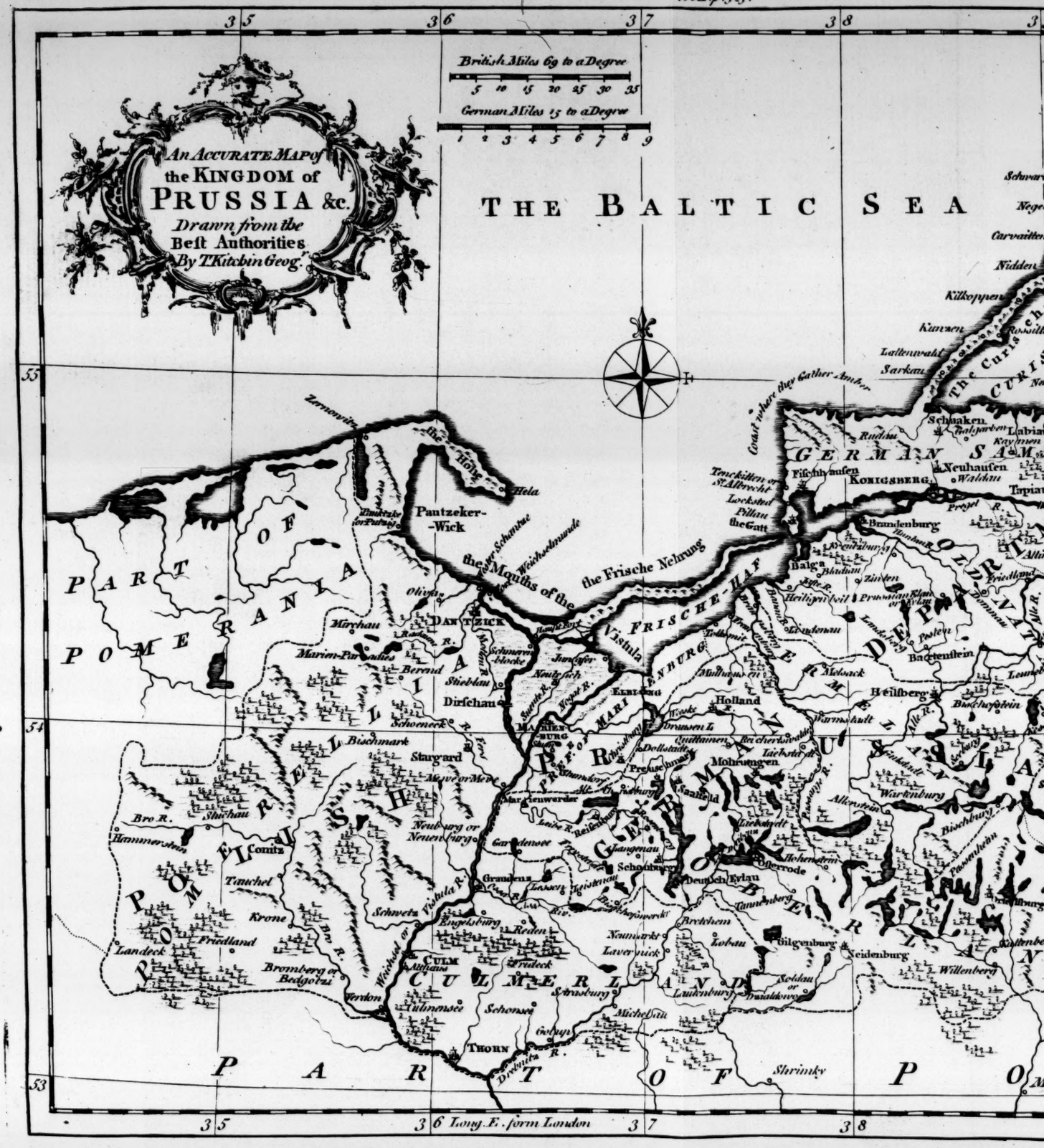
In the year 1732, the very ſame ſea-officers were ſent out a ſecond time in proſecution of this diſcovery. *Spangenberg* ſteered his courſe to the South-eaſt, arrived at the northern coaſt of *Japan*, and from thence ſailed back to *Ocotzk*.

Captain *Beering*, accompanied by one M. *Steller*, ſet ſail from St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*'s harbour, and ſteered towards the South-eaſt; but meeting with no land after he had ſailed about two hundred and fifty leagues, he directed his courſe to the North-eaſt, and, at laſt, diſcovered land towards the North-weſt. On the twentieth of *July* 1741, he anchored near an iſland in 59° 40′ North Latitude, to which he gave the name of *Elias-Iſland*. From thence he ſailed betwixt the ſouth and weſt points nearer to the continent of *America*, of which he alſo had ſight. After this, he landed on an iſland in the fifty-third degree of North Latitude, and had ſome little traffick with the *Americans* who lived upon it: to this iſland Captain *Beering* gave the name of *Skumagin*. In the fifty-firſt degree and odd minutes of North Latitude, he diſcovered an iſland to the North-weſt-and-by-north, which he called St. *Martian*'s *Iſland*. Two days after, he ſaw ſeveral other iſlands to the North-north-weſt, to which he gave the name of St. *Stephen*'s *Iſlands*; and the next day he diſcovered another iſland to the Weſt, which he called St. *Abraham*'s *Iſland*. The Captain, in his return, was ſhipwrecked on an iſland near the coaſt of *Katmſhatka*, where he ended his days. In 1742, the reſt of the crew arrived ſafe at the harbour of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, in a ſmall bark which they had made out of the wreck of the ſhip.

M. *Tſhirikow*, who was accompanied by Profeſſor *De l' Iſle de la Croyere*, ſet ſail from *Kamtſhatka*; continued his courſe till he came within fourteen degrees weſt of *California*, and ſailed twelve degrees and a half to the north of that country where no voyager had been before. M. *Tſhirikow*, on his return, ſaw land for ſeveral days together to the North of his courſe, and when he ſailed near the coaſt, he could diſtinguiſh the inhabitants; and ſeveral of them rowed to him in ſmall boats, like thoſe uſed by the *Greenlanders* and *Eſquimaux*. Perhaps, this land is a continuation of that near the *North* Pole, which joins to *America*. From theſe diſcoveries of the *Ruſſians* it may be concluded, that *Aſia* and *America*, about the ſixty-ſixth degree of North Latitude, are ſeparated from each other only by a very narrow channel.

THE

THE KINGDOM OF PRUSSIA.


An Accurate Map of the KINGDOM of PRUSSIA &c.
Drawn from the Best Authorities
By T. Kitchin Geog.
British Miles 69 to a Degree
5 10 15 20 25 30 35
German Miles 15 to a Degree
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
THE BALTIC SEA
GERMAN SEA
PART OF POMERANIA
POMERELLEN
CULMERLAND
PART OF POLAND
Pantzeker-Wick
the Mouths of the Weichselmunde
the Frische Nehrung
FRISCHE-HAF
Vistula
DANTZICK
Marienburg
Elbing
Holland
Mohrungen
Saalfeld
Osterrode
Deutsch Eylau
Gilgenburg
Neidenburg
Lobau
Neuhausen
Fischhausen
KONIGSBERG
Brandenburg
Balga
Heilsberg
Bischofstein
Bischofsburg
Stargard
Schwetz
Graudenz
Culm
Thorn
Strasburg
Neuenburg or Neuenburg
Bromberg or Bedgotzi
Friedland
Landeck
Krone
Tuchel
Comitz
Hammerstein
Bro R.
Vistula R.
Weichsel or
Long. E. from London
35
36
37
38
55
54
53


39
40
41
55
54
53
SAMOGITIA
LITHUANIA
LITTLE
Memel
Garnden
Schwartzort
Negeln
Carvaitten
Nidden
Kilkoppen
Kunzen
Rossitten
Heydekrug
Russ
Tauroggen Lordsh. to the King of Prussia
Alga R.
Memel R.
Abstainen
Memel or Minmel
Tamsenburg
Lappienen
Nev Gilge R.
Wirge R.
Schneken
TILSIT
Ragnit
Schaaken
Labiau
Neuhausen
Wehlau
Tapiau
Pregel R.
Welau
Insterburg
Altinb
Friedland
Wehlau
Gerdauen
Bartenstein
Leunenburg
Angerburg
Pilkallen
Schirwind
Georgenburg
Stallupehnen
Gumbinnen
Kiauten
Darkehmen
Goldapp
Wischtin
Rhein
POLISH GOVE
Johannesburg
Biala
Pissa R.
Willenberg
Narew R.
Makow
Memel
Inster R.
Pregel R.
Alle R.
Lyck
Nicolaiken
Arys
Prostken
Pissa R.

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

KINGDOM OF PRUSSIA*.

§. 1. M. *Henneberger*'s map of *Pruſſia*, which was firſt publiſhed in 1576, and afterwards in 1638 and 1656, is the firſt map of this country that is delineated with any accuracy. This was the ground work of the maps publiſhed by *Janſſon*, *Danckert*, *Witten*, *Viſcher*, *Schenk*, *Homann*, and *Seutter*. However, a truly correct and uſeful map of *Pruſſia* may be ſtill looked upon as one of the geographical *Deſiderata*. The map delineated by the King's order in 1703, by M. *Suckodoletz*, chief ſurveyor of the canals and dikes, has, indeed, the reputation of a very good performance, which makes me wiſh for the publication of it. *Pruſſia* is alſo ſometimes included in the maps of *Poland*. In the year 1733, a map of *Lithuania*, conſiſting of two ſheets of royal paper, was publiſhed: this has the name of every particular place; but, at the ſame time, is far from being accurate.

§. 2. *Pruſſia* is bounded partly by water, and partly by other countries. Towards the North it borders on part of *Samogitia*, towards the Eaſt on the *Lithuanian* Palatinates of *Trocko* and *Podolia*; to the South of it lie *Poland* and *Maſovia*; and to the Weſt it is bounded by *Poliſh Pruſſia* and the *Baltic*. The length of it, from the northern extremity near *Deutſch-Krottingen* to *Soldau*, is forty *German* or geographical miles, and the breadth, from the borders of the great Dutchy of *Lithuania* near *Schirwind* to the weſtern coaſt of *Samland*, is twenty-four *German* miles; but in other places it is much narrower.

* By the Kingdom of *Pruſſia* the Author does not mean *Regal Pruſſia* or *Pruſſia Royal*, which is ſubject to *Poland*; but only that part which by other writers is called *Ducal Pruſſia*, and belongs to the Houſe of *Brandenburg*.

§. 3. As to the climate and temperature of the air, the two laſt months of the ſpring, and the two firſt ſummer months are temperate, warm, and pleaſant; and the weather generally very favourable to bring the fruits of the earth to maturity: But before and after theſe months the air is cold and piercing; the autumns being often wet, and the winters ſevere. However, the air is well purified by frequent ſtorms and high winds. As for the diſtempers peculiar to *Pruſſia*, the inhabitants are more ſubject to the gout and ſtone than to the ſcurvy.

§. 4. The ſoil produces plenty of corn, eſculent herbs, fruit, and paſturage. *Pruſſia* alſo abounds with flocks and herds, and exceeding fine horſes; its chief commodities are wool, honey, wax, pitch, pit-coal, flax, hemp, hops, and buckwheat.

This country alſo affords plenty of game, as white and common hares, elks, ſtags, deer; roebucks, and wild boars, but, at the ſame time, it is infeſted with beaſts of prey as lynxes, wolves, foxes, and bears. As for wild aſſes and horſes, they ſeem to have deſerted *Pruſſia* of late; and the buffaloes that uſed to frequent this country have been extirpated by the poachers.

Woods, and eſpecially thoſe of oak, are ſaid to be greatly diminiſhing in *Pruſſia*; particularly in the leſſer *Lithuania*.

The *Pruſſian* Manna, called *Schwadengruſſe*, is found in the meadows on the top of a kind of graſs, and gathered in the morning whilſt the dew lies on it. *Natangen* yields the beſt ſort, and in the greateſt plenty.

The beautiful red colour, called St. *Johns blood*, is made of the eggs of a ſmall inſect or worm frequent in this country.

Amber is found in vaſt quantities on the coaſts of the *Baltic* in *Pruſſia*, eſpecially on the *Samland* ſhore. It owes its origin to a ſulphurous matter; and is pellucid, and generally of a yellow colour: But the white ſort is accounted the beſt. If Amber be well rubbed, it attracts light ſubſtances: It is alſo inflamable; and when it is burnt, the odoriferous effluvia of it ſurpaſs thoſe of frankincenſe or maſtic. It likewiſe yields an acid ſpirit. That it was once in a fluid ſtate, is manifeſt from the leaves, minerals, flies, ſpiders, gnats, ants, fiſhes, frogs, worms, drops of water, pieces of wood, and grains of ſand, which are frequently ſeen incloſed in Amber. It is generally found on large trees, which are buried under ground in a vitriolic earth, and contain an oily ſubſtance. Hence ſome are of opinion that the oil, being coagulated by the acidity of the vitriol, becomes a ſolid body, which we call Amber; and that it is waſhed off the trees by the agitation of the waves in high weſterly or northweſt winds, and driven on ſhore. Amber was exceedingly valued by the ancient *Romans*. The profits ariſing from it is one of the *Pruſſian Regalia*, and amount annually to 26,000 dollars, or thereabouts. It is chiefly uſed by the turners, who make ſeveral ſorts of toys of it.

This

This country yields neither ſalt, wine, nor minerals; however, it contains iron ore in ſome places. It is for the moſt part a level champaign country. Among the *Pruſſian* mountains that of *Goldap* near the town of the ſame name, and *Goldberg* near *Neidenburg*, are the higheſt.

§. 5. The lakes, rivers, and canals of this country, together with the neighbouring ſea, afford a variety of excellent fiſh; as ſalmon, ſturgeon, cod, turbots, ſoles, *muræna* (a kind of lampreys which are peculiar to *Pomerania* and *Pruſſia*) hallybuts, pikes, pearch, plaiſe, eels, *&c. &c.*

The principal rivers in the Kingdom of *Pruſſia* are,

1. The *Weichſel*, or *Viſtula*, of which an account will be given in our deſcription of *Poland*. In 1734, his *Pruſſian* Majeſty eſtabliſhed a ferry over this river at a ſmall diſtance from *Marienwerder*, which is the only place where it waters the Kingdom of *Pruſſia*; the *Poles* not admitting of it in any other part.

2. The *Pregel*, formerly called *Prigora* and *Pregolla*, is formed by the conflux of the *Angerappe* and the *Inſter* near *Georgenburg*, from whence it is navigable for large boats. This river, in its courſe, receives the *Piſſe* the *Alle*, and the *Deume*; and divides itſelf into two branches or channels about a *German* mile and a half above *Konigsberg*. The branch on the right hand is called the *Old*, and that on the left, the *New* or the *Natangian Pregel*. Theſe two channels meet at *Konigsberg*; and, after ſurrounding the *Kneiphof*, unite again. About a *German* mile from that city, the *Pregel* runs through two channels into the bay called *Friſche Haf*.

3. The *Memel* or *Mummel*, called by the Antients *Chronus*, and by the *Poles Niemen* or *Nemonin*, has its ſource near *Slonin* in *Lithuania*; and is joined by the *Scheſſupe*, the *Iuhr*, and the *Tilſe*. The banks of this river are high and fertile. About a *German* mile below *Tilſit* it loſes its name, and runs through ſeveral channels, the principal of which are the *Gilge* and *Ruſſe*, into the *Curiſche Haf*. In *Poland* it runs a courſe of near ſeventy *German* miles, and about thirteeen in *Pruſſia*. The *Gilge* has a communication with *Fridericks Graben* and the *Deume* or *Deine*, a branch of the *Pregel*; which greatly facilitates the carriage of corn, flax, hemp, wood, pot-aſh, and other *Poliſh* commodities to *Konigsberg*.

4. The *Paſſarge*, which riſes near *Hochſtein*, and empties itſelf into the *Triſche Haf* a little beyond *Braunsberg*.

5. The *Alle*, which has its ſource in *Ermeland*, and runs into the *Pregel* near *Wehlau*.

Theſe rivers abound with fiſh and are partly navigable; but at certain times of the year, and in high winds, they are apt to overflow their banks and cauſe terrible inundations.

This country is alſo watered by ſeveral large bays, lakes, and canals, which yield great plenty of fiſh, and the conveniency of a communication by water between ſeveral towns for the carriage of merchandiſe, *&c.* the principal of theſe are,

1. The *Friſche Haf*, in Latin *Sinus Venedicus*. This bay or lake is from one and a quarter to three *German* miles in breadth, and twelve in length: Near *Pillau* it has a communication with the *Baltic-Sea*, by a ſtrait called the *Gatt*. In other places it is ſeparated from the *Baltic* by a narrow ſlip of land called the *Friſche Nerung*, which was thrown up by the waves, and a long continuance of ſtormy weather, in the year 1190. The *Gatt* is about an *Engliſh* mile in breadth, and twelve feet in depth: But the *Friſche Haf* is not ſo deep as the river *Pregel*; ſo that no ſhips of burden can ſail upon it, but are obliged to unload at *Pillau*.

2. The *Curiſche Haf*, in Latin *Lacus* or *Sinus Curonicus*. This bay, which derives its name from the Dutchy of *Courland*, is thirteen *German* miles in length and ſix in breadth. It is ſeparated from the *Baltic* by a narrow ridge of land called *Curiſche Nerung*; but joins the ſea near *Memel*, where it is about an *Engliſh* mile broad, and nineteen feet deep. This bay is full of dangerous ſhelves and ſand-banks, and is agitated by frequent ſtorms. The coaſts of it on every ſide are inhabited by fiſhermen, who are all included under the general name of *Curen*.

As for the inland lakes, of which this country has a great number from one to eight *German* miles in length, and one or two in breadth, thoſe of *Spirding*, *Angerburg*, *Rein*, and *Drauſen* are the principal.

§. 6. The number of inhabitants in this Kingdom were computed, in the year 1755, at 635,998 perſons capable of bearing arms. They conſiſt of native *Pruſſians*, who by their language and manners appear to be genuine deſcendants of the *Germans*; *Lithuanians*, whoſe anceſtors were the *Schalavians* and *Nadravians*, and have their peculiar language; and *Poles* who are deſcended from the *Sudavians*. Here are alſo a great number of *French*, *Engliſh*, and *Hollanders*.

Since the year 1719, it is computed that about 34,000 Coloniſts have removed from *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Germany*, into the Kingdom of *Pruſſia* *, 17,000 of whom were *Saltzburghers*; and that they have built four hundred ſmall villages, eleven towns, eighty-ſix ſeats, fifty new churches, and founded 1000 village-ſchools, in this country. *Little Lithuania*, as it is called, is for the moſt part peopled by thoſe colonies. But it is thought that *Pruſſia* can afford both room and ſubſiſtence for as many more emigrants.

The *Pruſſian* Nobility are moſtly deſcended from the ancient *Germans*. Moſt of the peaſants are vaſſals either to the King or the Nobles.

§. 7. As to their religion, the inhabitants of this country in general are Lutherans; but as great numbers of the coloniſts are Calviniſts, they have alſo their churches not only in the cities and towns, namely, *Konigsberg*,

* The author ſays *Royal Pruſſia*; which expreſſion would miſlead the reader, as that name is applied by other geographers to *Poliſh Pruſſia*.

Memel,

Memel, *Inſterburg*, *Gumbinnen*, &c. but likewiſe in ſome villages they have a particular church appropriated for their uſe, and in other places perform divine ſervice in the Lutheran churches. The Papiſts have but one church at *Konigsberg*, and another near *Tilſit*; beſides the *Holy-Marienlinde*, as it is called, and ſome few in the villages. Here are alſo *Mennonites*, who are ſettled in the Diſtrict of *Tilſit*; and *Socinian* congregations at *Ruteu*, *Andreſwalde*, and *Natanger*.

The name of the firſt Biſhop of *Pruſſia* was *Chriſtian*, who was conſecrated in the year 1215. Biſhop *William* divided all *Pruſſia* into four dioceſes; namely, thoſe of *Culm*, *Ermeland*, *Samland*, and *Pomeſan*, who were all ſuffragans to the Archbiſhop of *Riga*. When the Margrave *Albert* ſeculariſed this country, he committed the direction of Eccleſiaſtical affairs in the greateſt part of *Pruſſia* to the Biſhop of *Pomeſan*, and inveſted the Biſhop of *Samland* with the dioceſe of *Samland* and the territory of *Sehеſten* in *Natangen*. In the year 1587, both theſe Biſhopricks were ſuppreſſed, and in lieu of them, the Conſiſtories * of *Samland* and *Pomeſan* were erected, the former of which is held at *Konigsberg*, and the latter at at *Saalfeld*. To theſe conſiſtories King *Frederick William* added the general Eccleſiaſtic and Scholaſtic Commiſſion, which controuls all accompts, and gives proper vouchers, *&c.* for the eccleſiaſtical revenues. In ſubordination to this Commiſſion, the churches within every *Haupt-Amt*, Government, or Diſtrict, have their *Erz Prieſter*, i. e. '*Arch Presbyter*, or inſpector.' In matrimonial and eccleſiaſtical proceſſes, there lies an appeal from the Conſiſtory to the *Hofgericht*, or Supreme Court of Judicature.

§. 8. The Univerſity at *Konigsberg* is, at preſent, under good regulations, and in a flouriſhing condition. There are alſo three large ſchools at *Konigsberg*, beſides the *Collegium Fredericianum*; and provincial ſchools are erected at *Saalfeld*, *Lik*, and *Tilſit*. The country ſchools have alſo been lately put on a tolerable good footing; and the maſters are paid from particular funds appropriated for that laudable purpoſe, and from the *Mons Pietatis* founded by King *Frederick William*.

§. 9. The manufactures in *Pruſſia* are daily improving and increaſing; particularly the glaſs and iron works; paper, powder, copper and braſs mills; manufactures of cloth, camblet, linen, woven ſilk, ſtockings, *&c.* *Pruſſia* is alſo very conveniently ſituated for trade; and for the advancement of it, the College of Commerce and Navigation has been erected, which takes cognizance of all caſes, and ſettles all diſputes and propoſals relating to trade and commerce.

The commodities of *Pruſſia* and *Great Lithuania*, which are vended to foreign merchants, and annually exported by ſhipping, are all kinds of grain to the amount of 20,000 Laſts a year, pine trees for maſts, deal boards, and other timber, tar, wood aſhes, pot-aſh of which about

* Theſe are ſomething like the *Preſbyteries* in the *Kirk* of *Scotland*.

two tons and a half are annually exported; elks ſkins, leather, furrs, amber, 12,500 ſtone of wax, honey, graſs-manna, lin-ſeed oil, flax, hemp, lin-ſeed and hempſeed, 4000 laſts of the former, and ſeven hundred of the latter being exported every year; alſo yarn, hogs briſtles, ſtags horns and elks hoofs; oat-meal of all kinds, mead, dried fiſh, ſturgeon, caviar, lampreys, ſauſages, butter, and tallow of which 3400 ſtone are exported every year. Moſt of theſe commodities, as grain, flax, hemp, lin-ſeed, *&c.* are brought in the ſpring from the *Great* Dutchy of *Lithuania* into *Pruſſia* by water.

The number of foreign ſhips, that reſort hither to load with theſe goods, are ſuppoſed to amount to about five hundred and fifty, which alſo import ſuch commodities as are wanted here, *viz.* wine, ſalt, ſpice, linen, cloth and other woollen-ſtuffs, herrings, tin, iron, copper, lead, tobacco, ſugar, rice, coffee, tea, raiſins, almonds, prunes, indigo, braſil wood, *&c.* *Konigsberg* is the great mart and magazine for all ſorts of merchandiſe which are exported from the Kingdom of *Pruſſia* and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* to foreign countries. *Memel* carries on a conſiderable trade with *Samogitia*; and *Tilſit* deals largely with *Poland* for wood.

The *Pruſſian* coins are as follows:

Six *Pfennings* (which, however, are but imaginary pieces of money) make a *Pruſſian* or Poliſh *Schilling*.

Three *Schillings* make a Pruſſian or Poliſh *Groſchen* *.

A *Brandenburg* piece of ſix *Pfennings* contains two *Groſchen*.

An *Ort* is eighteen *Groſchen*, which is the higheſt *Groſchen* piece.

A dollar † is equal to three *Guldens*, ninety *Groſchen*, five *Achtzehners*, fifteen *Seſchers*, thirty *Dutchens*, or two hundred and ſeventy *Schillings*. From *Dantzic*, bills of exchange are drawn on *Konigsberg*; and at the latter bills are drawn on *Amſterdam*. Ducats, Specie-Dollars, two-third Pieces, and other foreign gold and ſilver coin, are alſo current in *Pruſſia*.

§. 10. The ancient *Pruſſian* hiſtory is involved in obſcurity. About three hundred years before the birth of Chriſt it is ſaid that this country was poſſeſſed by the *Aeſtians*, a *Gothic* people; and after that, by the *Alanians*, *Vandals*, *Gallindians*, *Sudavians*, and *Sclavonians*. Theſe different nations at laſt became one people; and were for a long time without any particular Chief or Sovereign. The common tradition concerning King *Widemut* and his twelve ſons is a fabulous account ſupported only by *Stella*, an author who deſerves but little credit; for none of the ancient hiſtorians of the greateſt repute for veracity confirm that circumſtance.

The amber, with which *Pruſſia* abounds, was the allurement which raiſed the curioſity of the ancient *Romans*; and induced them to penetrate into this country, and ſubdue it. That part of *Pruſſia* which lies beyond

* A *Groſchen* is $\frac{1}{15}$ of a penny ſterling, and 18 *Groſchen* is 8*d*. $\frac{2}{3}$.

† A Dollar, or ninety *Groſchen*, &c. is equal to 3*s*. 6*d*. ſterling.

the

the *Viſtula*, and borders on *Germany*, ſubmitted to the Emperor *Charles the Great*, and though ſome time after, it recovered its liberty, it was again reduced, and obliged to pay tribute.

The name of *Pruſſen* or *Pruſſians* was firſt known in the tenth century; but it was written ſeveral different ways by the old hiſtorians, *viz. Pruci*, *Prucci*, *Pruzi*, *Pruti*, *Bruti*, and *Bruchii*; ſo that its etymology is very uncertain. That which appears moſt probable to ſome writers is, that the former inhabitants, alluding to their proximity to the *Ruſſians*, called themſelves *Porruſſi*, i. e. 'bordering on the *Ruſſians*;' for *Po* in the old *Pruſſian* language ſignifies *near* or *hard by*.

From that æra the *Pruſſian* hiſtory begins to clear up; for the Kings of *Poland*, in that age, took great pains, and even made uſe of compulſion and force of arms, for the converſion of the Pagan *Pruſſians* to Chriſtianity. *Boleſlaus* I. began by chaſtizing the *Pruſſians* for the murder of St. *Adalbert* or *Albert*, who was deſirous of being the Apoſtle of that nation. His ſucceſſors, from time to time, had ſeveral quarrels with the inhabitants of *Pruſſia*; and *Boleſlaus* IV. who committed dreadful ravages in their country, loſt his life in an unſucceſsful battle, which was fought in 1163.

In the thirteenth century, the *Pruſſians* laid waſte *Culm*, *Cujavia*, and *Maſovia*; upon which *Conrad*, Duke of *Maſovia*, was obliged to ſollicit aſſiſtance from the Princes that were in alliance with him. All theſe wore the ſign of the croſs, which they alſo carried into the field againſt the *Pruſſians*, looking upon them as enemies to the Chriſtian name. But all their efforts proving ineffectual, the Duke applied to the *German* Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, or the Croſs-bearing Knights, and ſtrongly repreſented to them the great importance of defending the frontiers. Accordingly, in the year 1230, they obtained the Palatinates of *Culm* and *Doberzin* for twenty years, and afterwards for ever; together with the abſolute property of any future conqueſts in *Pruſſia*. Theſe Knights *, after long and bloody wars during the ſpace of fifty-three years, by the aſſiſtance of the *Enſiferi*, or Sword-bearing Knights, ſubdued the whole country; and in 1309, the Grand-Maſter of the Order fixed his reſidence at *Marienburg*. After this, a war broke out between the *Teutonic* Knights and the *Lithuanians*, which was attended with the moſt dreadful outrages, and deſtruction of the human ſpecies. This Order was now become exceeding inſolent and cruel; but its dignity received a terrible blow in the year 1410, when, after a moſt obſtinate and bloody battle, they were totally defeated by the *Poles* near *Tannenberg* and *Grunwald*.

In the year 1454, one half of *Pruſſia* revolted from their obedience to the *Teutonic* Order, and declared for *Caſimir* III. King of *Poland*. This

* Theſe *Teutonic* Knights made religion the cloke of their ambitious views, and committed the moſt inhuman barbarities, deſtroying all before them with fire and ſword, under pretence of propagating the Goſpel of Peace. It is agreed by all, that they quite extirpated the native *Pruſſians*, and planted the *Germans*, their countrymen, in their ſtead; though our author is ſilent on this head.

occaſioned freſh effuſions of blood; till, at laſt, in the year 1466, it was concluded by treaty, that one part of *Pruſſia*, now called *Poliſh Pruſſia*, ſhould continue a free province under the King's protection; and that the Knights and the Grand-Maſter ſhould retain the other part; which, however, they were to hold as a fief, and acknowledge themſelves vaſſals of *Poland*. The Knights, ſoon after, endeavoured to throw off this yoke; but did not ſucceed in their attempt. In 1519 they ſtirred up new wars, which were terminated in 1525, by a treaty of peace concluded at *Cracow*. It was then agreed that the Margrave *Albert*, Grand-Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order, ſhould be acknowledged Duke or Sovereign of the eaſt part of *Pruſſia*, which he was to hold as a fief of *Poland*. Theſe territories, however, were to deſcend to his male heirs; and, upon failure of male iſſue, to his brothers and their male heirs. Thus ended the Sovereignty of the *Teutonic* Order in *Pruſſia*, after it had ſubſiſted three hundred years. The new Duke favoured the introducing of the reformed religion into his dominions; and in 1544, founded an Univerſity at *Konigsberg*.

The Elector *Joachim* added the Dutchy of *Pruſſia* *, to the dominions of the Electoral houſe of *Brandenburg*, with which it had been cloſely connected for a long time before. The reign of the Elector *George William* was unfortunately diſtinguiſhed by the diſorders and calamities of the thirty years war; in which *Pruſſia* ſuffered extremely from the ravages of the *Swedes*. His ſon, the powerful Elector *Frederic William*, at firſt, indeed, ſided with the *Swedes*, but ſoon after went over to the *Poles*; and in 1657, was, by the conventions of *Welau* and *Bromberg*, acknowledged by *Caſimir* King of *Poland* to be free from the vaſſalage, and, together with his male deſcendants, declared independent and Sovereign Lord of his part of *Pruſſia*. He alſo obtained a grant of the Lordſhips of *Lauenburg* and *Butow*, to be held in the ſame manner as they had formerly been by the Dukes of *Pomerania*. He further increaſed the power of his electoral houſe by other acquiſitions; and was juſtly ſtiled *The Great*.

Frederick William's ſon and ſucceſſor, the Elector *Frederick*, raiſed the Dutchy of *Pruſſia* † to a Kingdom; and on the eighteenth of *January* 1701, with his own hands put the crown on his head and on that of his conſort at *Konigsberg*. He was, ſoon after, acknowledged as King of *Pruſſia* by all the other Chriſtian Powers.

King *Frederick William*, who came to the throne in the year 1713, peopled his country by the favourable reception he gave to the diſtreſſed *Saltzburghers*; and rendered his reign glorious by a great number of uſeful and magnificent foundations.

* Now called *Ducal Pruſſia*, or rather the Kingdom of *Pruſſia*, of which the author is here treating.

†. i. e. 'Ducal *Pruſſia* which was then erected into a Kingdom;' but Royal *Pruſſia*, as it is called, is ſtill under the dominion of the *Poles*.

This

This monarch was ſucceeded in 1740 by King *Frederick* II *. who has annexed to his dominions the greateſt part of *Sileſia* and *Eaſt-Friezland*, and promoted the happineſs of his ſubjects by an amendment of the laws, the increaſe of commerce, and other wiſe and wholeſom regulations.

§. 11. The royal Arms are, *Argent*, an eagle diſplayed *Sable*, crowned *Or*, for *Pruſſia*. *Azure*, the imperial ſceptre *Or* for *Courland*. *Argent*, an eagle diſplayed *Gules* with ſemicircular wreaths, for the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*. To theſe are added the reſpective arms of the ſeveral provinces, that are ſubject to the *Pruſſian* crown.

§. 12. The Order of the *Black Eagle*, which was inſtituted by King *Frederick* I. on the day of his coronation at *Konigsberg*, is the chief *Pruſſian* Order of Knighthood. The enſign is a croſs of gold, in the ſhape of that of *Malta*, enamelled with blue. In the middle of it on one ſide is a cypher of the King's name F. R. and at each of the four angles next the middle is a black eagle diſplayed. This croſs the Knights wear appendent to a broad orange-coloured ribbon over the left ſhoulder, acroſs the breaſt, to the right hip. On the left ſide of their breaſt a ſilver ſtar is embroidered on the coat; and in the middle of it a black eagle *Volant*, with a laurel wreath in one of its talons, and in the other a thunder-bolt, with this motto SUUM CUIQUE. The Sovereign is always Grand Maſter of this Order; and the number of Knights, excluſive of the royal family, is limited to thirty.

Next to this is the order of *Merit*, inſtituted by his preſent Majeſty; the Enſign of which is a golden ſtar of eight rays enamelled with blue, which is worn appendent to a black ribbon edged with ſilver; and the motto is POUR LE MERITE.

§. 13. Inſtead of the ancient *Comtureyen* and *Land-comturen*, or provincial Diviſions, the Margrave *Albert* inſtituted *Haupt-aemter*, i. e. Governments or Juriſdictions; and *Frederick* II. appointed nine Chambers of Juſtice for determining cauſes in trade, and even eccleſiaſtical affairs. Theſe are ſubordinate to the *Hofgericht*, or High Court of Judicature, at *Konigsberg*, to which there lies an appeal from them. From the *Hofgericht* alſo, (except in criminal caſes, when a report is made at Court) an appeal lies to the *Ober-Appellations-Gericht*, or the Supreme Court of Appeals, where the Chancellor ſits as preſident. According to the nature of the cauſe, on depoſiting the *Succumbenz-Gelder*, or Court fees, it may be farther removed to the *Secret Chamber of Juſtice or Reviſions* at *Berlin*, which is called the *Hoflager*. The Supreme College in *Pruſſia* is the *Koniglich Regierung*, or

* This is the Monarch that now ſits on the Throne, whoſe uncommon abilities have rendered him the admiration or envy of the other *European* powers. That this Heroic Prince may extricate himſelf from the difficulties, in which he is at preſent involved, muſt be the ardent wiſh of every Proteſtant and friend to Liberty.

Royal

Royal Court of Regency, which ſuperintends all the affairs of the whole kingdom, whether they be political, civil, or eccleſiaſtical; and likewiſe all feudal and academical cauſes. Every member of this college is ſtiled a Privy Counſellor or Miniſter of State and War, and has his particular department. Theſe are five in number, and have two Secretaries. *Pruſſia* has its own particular Digeſt of laws, which was publiſhed with amendments in the year 1721. There are, beſides, two Chambers of War and the Demeſnes, erected by King *Frederick-William*, one at *Konigsberg*, and the other at *Gumbinnen*; which have the direction of all matters relating to the Exciſe, the Revenue, Commerce, Manufactures, Magazines, Forage and whatever belongs to the Colonies. Every War and Demeſne-Counſellor has his peculiar department. Subordinate to theſe are, the Counſellors of the Taxes, the Provincial Receivers of the Taxes, the Commiſſaries of War, the Officers of the Exciſe and Licences, the farmers of the Royal *Aemter* or Diſtricts, and the Officers of the revenues in cities and towns.

§. 14. The chief ſources of the Royal Revenue are the produce of the Exciſe, Cuſtoms, and Services; Stampt-paper, Almanacs, and News-papers; the Farm of the royal *Amts* and Demeſnes; the corn-mills in large towns, with the ſeveral other kinds of mills; the timber trade; duties ariſing from veniſon, and the ſkins of ſtags, elks, and other beaſts; maſt in the royal foreſts; the King's ſtuds of horſes; the ſalt and iron-works; the poſt-houſes; granaries; manufactures; the feofees and Knights military ſervice; the Cheſt of forfeitures, and the Recruit-Cheſt, into which the purchaſe-money of poſts and employments is paid; amber; ſturgeon fiſheries, and all other kinds of fiſheries. The taxes are certainly heavy in *Pruſſia*; and whoever would live independent either in town or country muſt be very careful and induſtrious; and, indeed, ſuch perſons ſeldom fail of getting a fortune here, when trade is briſk.

§. 15. The *Pruſſian* military forces, eſpecially in the reign of his preſent Majeſty, have been no leſs formidable for their diſcipline than by their number. And it may be aſſerted with great truth, that for a fine appearance, military diſcipline, and activity, the King of *Pruſſia*'s army has not its equal in the whole world. The Corps of Cadets at *Berlin* is a nurſery for good officers. Every regiment has its Diſtrict or Canton, where the young men belonging to it are regiſtered; and, in caſe of neceſſity, may be ordered to march. His *Pruſſian* Majeſty has lately iſſued an Order, ſignifying, that all the regiments ſhall be recruited with volunteers and foreigners; and that the young peaſants of *Pruſſia* ſhall remain unmoleſted.

§. 16. Formerly all *Pruſſia* conſiſted of the eleven following Diſtricts; namely, *Samland*, *Sudauen*, *Nadrauen*, *Schalauen*, *Natangen*, *Barthenland*, *Galinderland*, *Hockerland* or *Pomeſania*, and the territory of *Culm*. After that it was laid out in two principal diviſions, *viz.* the Kingdom of *Pruſſia* and the Dutchy

Dutchy of *Pruſſia* *: we ſhall ſpeak of the latter in our deſcription of *Poland*. The Kingdom of *Pruſſia* is divided into three parts, namely, *Samland*, *Natangen* and *Oberland*; and each of theſe is ſubdivided into certain *Haupt-aemter*, Juriſdictions or Governments. Subordinate to the latter were particular *Kammer-aemter*, or inferior juriſdictions; but theſe were ſuperſeded in the year 1751, by nine colleges, or Courts of Judicature, eſtabliſhed in *Brandenburg*, *Inſterburg*, *Lik*, *Memel*, *Mohrungen*, *Neuhauſen* and *Klein-heyde*, *Neidenburg*, *Raſtenburg*, and *Saalfeld*.

Next to theſe are the Chambers or Offices, of War, and the Royal Demeſnes, mentioned in §. 13.

This Kingdom, at preſent, conſiſts of two Departments; namely, the *German* and the *Lithuanian* Department. We ſhall, in the firſt place, treat of the former.

* The author cannot mean here *Regal* and *Ducal Pruſſia*, which diviſion he ſeems to take no notice of; for the former belongs to *Poland* and the latter to the King of *Pruſſia*. *Ducal Pruſſia* is at preſent a Kingdom, but *Poliſh Pruſſia* is ſeldom called a Dutchy.

THE GERMAN DEPARTMENT OF PRUSSIA

INCLUDES forty-four towns, fifty-ſix *Amts* or Governments, and two hundred and eighty pariſhes, ſeven of which are inhabited by Papiſts, and ſeven by Calviniſts; but the reſt by *Lutherans*.

Before I proceed to deſcribe the ſeveral *Amts* or Governments, I ſhall in the firſt place give ſome account of the capital of the whole Kingdom; namely,

KONIGSBERG, called in Latin *Regiomontum* or *Mons Regius*, and in the *Poliſh* language *Krolewies*, the metropolis of the Kingdom of *Pruſſia*, is ſeated on the river *Pregel*, over which it has ſeven bridges, and lies in 54° 43′ North Latitude. This city was founded in the year 1255, when *Ottocarus*, or *Premiſlaus* I. King of *Bohemia*, came to the aſſiſtance of the *Teutonic* Knights againſt the Pagan *Samlanders*. For a caſtle was firſt built by his advice, and afterwards a town, which was named *Konigsberg* in honour of that Prince. In the year 1264, *Konigsberg* was rebuilt on another ſituation, and in 1286, obtained the Privileges of *Culm*, as they are called. It is a large beautiful city; and the rampart with which it was ſurrounded in the year 1626, is about ſeven *Engliſh* miles in circumference, and has thirty-two *Ravelins* and eight gates. This rampart incloſes ſeveral gardens, the large caſtle moat, and ſome meadows and fields. The whole circuit of the city is above eight *Engliſh* miles. The number of houſes is about 3800; and the inhabitants amount to 60,000 ſouls. *Konigsberg* properly conſiſts of three towns joined together, namely, *Altſtadt*, *Lobenicht*, and *Kneiphof*, (the two firſt lying in *Samland*, and the laſt in *Natangen*,) and of ſeveral ſuburbs.

Altſtadt,

I. *Altſtadt*, or the Old Town, was particularly called *Konigsberg* till the year 1455; but afterwards, to diſtinguiſh it from *Lobenicht*, was named *Altſtadt*. It contains ſixteen ſtreets, and five hundred and fifty houſes, above one hundred of which are malt-houſes and brew-houſes. It is embelliſhed with ſix gates, beſides four poſterns; two ſtrong built towers, and four bridges. Its public edifices are,

The pariſh-church of St. *Nicholas*, which is eighty-five ells long, forty-ſeven broad, and twenty-ſeven ells and a half high within the church.

The *Altſtadt* Pariſh-ſchool, which has five claſſes and nine maſters. In this edifice the City-library is at preſent, which Mr. *Lilienthal*, beſides his judicious arrangement of it, increaſed with a third part of the collection. Among other valuable books in this library are the following; *viz.* a large collection of Bibles, *Auguſtine Pfeifer*'s *Rabinical Library* entire, and a great number of genealogical books.

The *Pauper-haus* houſe, as it is called, for the maintenance of thirty poor ſcholars.

The *Rathhaus* or Town-houſe.

The *Junkerhof*, which was rebuilt in 1710, where weddings and other ſolemnities are celebrated, with the *Junker-garten* belonging to it. In the latter the *Altſtadt* beer is ſold; and the Burghers and others meet there to make merry: This garden was originally deſigned for the recreation of the Traders and Beer-brewers.

The *Gemeingarten*, or common garden, which is frequented by artizans, and others of the lower claſs; and laſtly, the hot baths.

The ſuburbs of *Altſtadt* are,

1. The *Steindamm*, which is extremely well built, and conſiſts of the *Vorder-Steindamm*, and the *Hinter-Steindamm*. It contains eleven ſtreets; and in it ſtands the oldeſt church belonging to *Konigsberg*: It was built in the year 1255, and belongs to the *Poliſh* congregation. Here is alſo the *Dinghaus*, an edifice in which formerly was held the Court of Judicature for the ſuburb of *Steindamm*.

2. The Suburb called the *New Roſs-garten*, part of which was formerly reſerved for paſture for the horſes and cows belonging to the inhabitants of *Altſtadt* and the ſuburb of *Steindamm*; and the reſt was arable land. On an eminence in this ſuburb ſtands the *Roſs-garten* church; and the Preacher belonging to it is a member of the *Altſtadt*-clergy. The large Hoſpital for the Burghers widows, the Orphan-houſe and Peſt-houſe which belong to *Altſtadt*, and alſo the ſhooting ground, are in the *Roſs-garten*.

3. The *Laacke*, in which are, the city timber-yard, the long pleaſant walk called *Reifferbahn*, and the large town-meadow which lies between the old and new moats.

4. The *Laſtadie*. In this ſuburb are the following public edifices, *&c.* the *Altſtadt*-Merchants-magazine, the Weigh-houſes, the Pack-houſes, the

Herring-bridge, the *Krahnhof* or Crane-wharf, the *Weinhof* or Wine-wharf, the *Teerhof* or Tar-wharf, and the King's Licence-houſe, in which the Colleges of Admiralty and Licences, *&c.* meet every week on *Mondays* and *Thurſdays* in the fore-noon. Without the wooden gate of *Altſtadt* or the old town, lie the coal-magazines, many of which are now converted into dwellings; and oppoſite to it is the ox-market, with the ſlaughter-houſes belonging to *Altſtadt*. Farther on the right hand, is the *Lomſe* or *Lanſe*, as it is called, on which handſom houſes with delightful gardens have lately been built.

Laſtly, The *Damm*, on which manufactories for ſtockings, woollen cloth, and leather are erected, belong to *Altſtadt* or the old town.

II. *Lobenicht*, which was built about the year 1300, was formerly called *Neuſtadt*, or the new town. It has four gates, and is divided into two parts. One of theſe, which ſtands on an eminence, is generally called *Der Berg*, and contains the city-church, the city-ſchool, and the *Gemeingarten*, or public garden. In the other part, which lies lower, are the Town-houſe, the *Junkerhof*, and the Weigh-houſe; the large Hoſpital, which has a church, and was once a convent; and the *Munchenhof*, which was formerly a monaſtery, but ſince converted into a ſtore-houſe.

Without the gate of *Lobenicht* are the ſuburbs called *Old* and *New Anger*, *Steegen*, and *Sackheim*.

Sackheim is the moſt ancient of all the ſuburbs belonging to *Konigsberg*, and is almoſt as old as the city itſelf. It conſiſts of five long ſtreets, which are interſected by ſeveral croſs-ſtreets or lanes. A Roman-Catholic church, an Evangelical or *German* Lutheran church, and a *Lithuanian* Lutheran church ſtand in this ſuburb. *Sackheim* alſo contains the royal Orphan-houſe with its chapel, founded in 1701, and conſecrated in 1703; the King's *Great* and *Little* Timber-yard and the offices belonging to it.

III. *Kneiphof* is the moſt modern or the lateſt built of the three towns; for it was not founded until the year 1324. It ſtands on an iſland formed by the river *Pregel*; and, for want of a ſolid foundation, the buildings are erected on piles of Alder-tree, which by length of time are become as hard as iron. It has five large gates and thirteen ſtreets; and among the latters the *Lange Gaſſe*, or Long ſtreet, is the fineſt in the city of *Konigsberg*. Among the public edifices in *Kneiphof* the following are the moſt remarkable.

1. The fine cathedral which formerly ſtood in *Altſtadt*, or the old town, but in 1332, was built here by order of Duke *Luderus*. In this church ſtand the famous organ which conſiſts of 5000 pipes, and was finiſhed in the year 1721.

2. The *Wallenrod* library, which, contains above 5000 volumes, is above the cathedral.

3. The *Kneiphof* Grammar-ſchool ſtands in the cathedral church-yard.

The *Pauper-haus* ſtands near the cathedral, in which thirty poor boys are decently provided with all kinds of neceſſaries. On

On the other ſide of the cathedral ſtands the Biſhop's palace, which at peſent is taken up by the Court chaplains.

4. The Univerſity or college, as it is called, with the buildings appertaining to it, ſtands near the cathedral. This Univerſity, from the name of the city, is called *Academia Regiamontana*, and from its founder *Academia Albertina*, and *Academia Pregelana* from the river *Pregel*. It was founded in the year 1544 by the Margrave *Albert*, and has thirty-eight Profeſſors excluſive of the *Magiſtri* or Tutors. In the refectory of the Univerſity are eight tables; and twelve perſons ſit at each of them. Twenty-eight of the ſtudents have their commons *gratis*, beſides ſeveral exhibitions or penſions, which are beſtowed according to merit, and the circumſtances of the pupils.

5. The edifice where the Royal *German* Society meet ſtands near the Univerſity.

6. The Town-houſe is a very fine building, where the magiſtrates of the three towns, which were incorporated in 1724, meet every day.

7. The *Junkerhof* at *Kneiphof*, which is appointed for the ſame uſes and under the ſame regulations as the *Junkerof* in *Altſtadt* mentioned above.

8. The *Junker-garten* and the *Gemein-garten*, which lie near the rampart and the river *Pregel*.

9. The ſtately Exchange for merchants, which ſtands near the *Green Bridge* built over the *Pregel*, was rebuilt in the year 1729, and is embelliſhed with very curious paintings in ſixty compartments. Not far from the Exchange is a foundation for ſtudents.

To *Kneiphof* belong the *Exterior* and *Interior Suburbs*, which conſiſtof a broad ſtreet, and the *Schnurleinſdamm*, as it is called. On the *Laſtadie* ſtand the merchants Ware-houſes, the Wood-Magazine, and a houſe of correction.

The Exterior Suburb conſiſts of a broad ſtreet, and ſeveral croſs lanes. In this Suburb are, the *Old Garden*, the *Upper* and *Lower Haberberg*, and the *Naſſe-garten*, which plentifully ſupplies the city with all kinds of culinary roots and eſculent herbs.

In the Interior Suburb lies St. *George*'s hoſpital, which belongs to *Altſtadt*, where ſixty poor perſons are maintained, and have a chapel in which they perform their devotions. On the *Upper Haberberg* ſtands an alms-houſe for the widows of the Burghers of *Kneiphof*; and *Haberberg* church is one of the moſt elegant in all *Konigsberg*.

We come, in the next place, to ſpeak of the Palace with the ſuburbs belonging to it. This edifice is built in the form of a Parallelogram, or an oblong ſquare; and the area within it is one hundred and thirty-ſix common paces in length, and ſeventy-five in breadth. The north ſide appears to be the moſt ancient, and even to have been built in the time when the Knight's of the *Teutonic* Order flouriſhed. The eaſt and ſouth

Herring-bridge, the *Krahnhof* or Crane-wharf, the *Weinhof* or Wine-wharf, the *Teerhof* or Tar-wharf, and the King's Licence-houſe, in which the Colleges of Admiralty and Licences, *&c.* meet every week on *Mondays* and *Thurſdays* in the fore-noon. Without the wooden gate of *Altſtadt* or the old town, lie the coal-magazines, many of which are now converted into dwellings; and oppoſite to it is the ox-market, with the ſlaughter-houſes belonging to *Altſtadt*. Farther on the right hand, is the *Lomſe* or *Lanſe*, as it is called, on which handſom houſes with delightful gardens have lately been built.

Laſtly, The *Damm*, on which manufactories for ſtockings, woollen cloth, and leather are erected, belong to *Altſtadt* or the old town.

II. *Lobenicht*, which was built about the year 1300, was formerly called *Neuſtadt*, or the new town. It has four gates, and is divided into two parts. One of theſe, which ſtands on an eminence, is generally called *Der Berg*, and contains the city-church, the city-ſchool, and the *Gemeingarten*, or public garden. In the other part, which lies lower, are the Town-houſe, the *Junkerhof*, and the Weigh-houſe; the large Hoſpital, which has a church, and was once a convent; and the *Munchenhof*, which was formerly a monaſtery, but ſince converted into a ſtore-houſe.

Without the gate of *Lobenicht* are the ſuburbs called *Old* and *New Anger*, *Steegen*, and *Sackheim*.

Sackheim is the moſt ancient of all the ſuburbs belonging to *Konigsberg*, and is almoſt as old as the city itſelf. It conſiſts of five long ſtreets, which are interſected by ſeveral croſs-ſtreets or lanes. A Roman-Catholic church, an Evangelical or *German* Lutheran church, and a *Lithuanian* Lutheran church ſtand in this ſuburb. *Sackheim* alſo contains the royal Orphan-houſe with its chapel, founded in 1701, and conſecrated in 1703; the King's *Great* and *Little* Timber-yard and the offices belonging to it.

III. *Kneiphof* is the moſt modern or the lateſt built of the three towns; for it was not founded until the year 1324. It ſtands on an iſland formed by the river *Pregel*; and, for want of a ſolid foundation, the buildings are erected on piles of Alder-tree, which by length of time are become as hard as iron. It has five large gates and thirteen ſtreets; and among the latters the *Lange Gaſſe*, or Long ſtreet, is the fineſt in the city of *Konigsberg*. Among the public edifices in *Kneiphof* the following are the moſt remarkable.

1. The fine cathedral which formerly ſtood in *Altſtadt*, or the old town, but in 1332, was built here by order of Duke *Luderus*. In this church ſtand the famous organ which conſiſts of 5000 pipes, and was finiſhed in the year 1721.

2. The *Wallenrod* library, which, contains above 5000 volumes, is above the cathedral.

3. The *Kneiphof* Grammar-ſchool ſtands in the cathedral church-yard.

The *Pauper-haus* ſtands near the cathedral, in which thirty poor boys are decently provided with all kinds of neceſſaries. On

On the other ſide of the cathedral ſtands the Biſhop's palace, which at peſent is taken up by the Court chaplains.

4. The Univerſity or college, as it is called, with the buildings appertaining to it, ſtands near the cathedral. This Univerſity, from the name of the city, is called *Academia Regiamontana*, and from its founder *Academia Albertina*, and *Academia Pregelana* from the river *Pregel*. It was founded in the year 1544 by the Margrave *Albert*, and has thirty-eight Profeſſors excluſive of the *Magiſtri* or Tutors. In the refectory of the Univerſity are eight tables; and twelve perſons ſit at each of them. Twenty-eight of the ſtudents have their commons *gratis*, beſides ſeveral exhibitions or penſions, which are beſtowed according to merit, and the circumſtances of the pupils.

5. The edifice where the Royal *German* Society meet ſtands near the Univerſity.

6. The Town-houſe is a very fine building, where the magiſtrates of the three towns, which were incorporated in 1724, meet every day.

7. The *Junkerhof* at *Kneiphof*, which is appointed for the ſame uſes and under the ſame regulations as the *Junkerof* in *Altſtadt* mentioned above.

8. The *Junker-garten* and the *Gemein-garten*, which lie near the rampart and the river *Pregel*.

9. The ſtately Exchange for merchants, which ſtands near the *Green Bridge* built over the *Pregel*, was rebuilt in the year 1729, and is embelliſhed with very curious paintings in ſixty compartments. Not far from the Exchange is a foundation for ſtudents.

To *Kneiphof* belong the *Exterior* and *Interior Suburbs*, which conſiſtof a broad ſtreet, and the *Schnurleinſdamm*, as it is called. On the *Laſtadie* ſtand the merchants Ware-houſes, the Wood-Magazine, and a houſe of correction.

The Exterior Suburb conſiſts of a broad ſtreet, and ſeveral croſs lanes. In this Suburb are, the *Old Garden*, the *Upper* and *Lower Haberberg*, and the *Naſſe-garten*, which plentifully ſupplies the city with all kinds of culinary roots and eſculent herbs.

In the Interior Suburb lies St. *George*'s hoſpital, which belongs to *Altſtadt*, where ſixty poor perſons are maintained, and have a chapel in which they perform their devotions. On the *Upper Haberberg* ſtands an alms-houſe for the widows of the Burghers of *Kneiphof*; and *Haberberg* church is one of the moſt elegant in all *Konigsberg*.

We come, in the next place, to ſpeak of the Palace with the ſuburbs belonging to it. This edifice is built in the form of a Parallelogram, or an oblong ſquare; and the area within it is one hundred and thirty-ſix common paces in length, and ſeventy-five in breadth. The north ſide appears to be the moſt ancient, and even to have been built in the time when the Knight's of the *Teutonic* Order flouriſhed. The eaſt and ſouth

wings were built by the Margrave *Albert* the elder; and the Margrave *George Frederic* added the weſt ſide of this ſtructure. In the laſt are, the *Lutheran* Court-church, the library which is open on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* from one of the clock till four in the afternoon; the Demeſne-office, the Supreme Court of Juſtice, the Archives of the court, the *Samland* Conſiſtory, which was removed hither in 1699; the *Muſcovite* hall, as it is called, which is two hundred and ſeventy-four feet in length, and fifty-nine broad; the *Collegium Medicum*, or College of Phyſicians, who aſſemble by the direction of the conſiſtory. In the eaſt wing are the great palace-gate, with ſeveral apartments for the principal miniſters of ſtate, and the royal apartments; and in a pavillion the Chamber of War, the Demeſne Chamber, the Accompt and Rent Chambers, the Exciſe-Office and other Colleges. The north wing contains the Amber-Office, the Private Chancery, with the Archives of the Pruſſian *Hofgericht*, or Supreme Court; the Fief Chamber; the *Officium fiſci*, or Revenue-Office; the Privy-Council Chamber where the Lords of the Regency meet; the Accomptant's Office; the *Collegium Sanitatis*, or College of Health; the Archives relating to hunting; the High Tribunal; and the apartments in which the States of the country aſſemble, and the provincial cheſts are depoſited, *&c.* In the ſouth wing are ſeveral kitchens, and apartments for the Royal Family and foreign Princes; at one end of it ſtands the *Schloſs-thurm*, or Palace-tower, which is aſcended by two hundred and eighty-four ſteps, and yields a noble proſpect of the whole city, with a great part of the adjacent country, and the *Friſche Haf.* The ſtables, where the ward-robe is alſo kept; the pleaſure-garden; the bear-garden; and the great and little park are great embelliſhments to the palace. The five following Suburbs, or Liberties, as they are called, alſo belong to the palace.

1. The *Burgfreyheit*, which includes the area about the Palace, and ſeveral ſtreets. The moſt remarkable places in this Suburb are, the mint, where formerly a convent ſtood; the *German* Calviniſts church, the new *French* church, and the place of worſhip for the *Poliſh* Proteſtant congregation, who aſſemble in the *German* ſchool; the *Jews* ſchool, in the ſtreet called *Kehrwieder-Gaſſe*; the canal or moat belonging to the Palace, with pleaſant gardens adjoining to it; and laſtly the *Collegium Fredericianum.* This College is pretty much on the ſame footing as the *Pædagogium Regium* at *Halle.* As many ſtudents as the College will contain have apartments in it; and when they exceed that number, they are recommended to lodge in creditable houſes in the town.

2. The *Tragheim*, which is divided into three parts. Remarkable places in this Suburb are the *Tragheim* church, and ſeveral pleaſant gardens; the Convent for ladies; and the *Scalichenhof*, famous for having been the reſidence of the celebrated Dr. *Paul Scalichius.*

3. The

3. The two *Roſs-gartens*, which conſiſt of a long ſtreet, with ſome lanes running parallel to it, and two or three croſs ſtreets. This Suburb affords nothing remarkable but a church and ſchool.

4. The *Neue-Sorge*, which is, at preſent, called *Konigſtadt*, contains a great many elegant houſes.

5. A part of the Suburb called *Sackiheim*, which has been deſcribed above in the account of *Lobenicht*.

The ſtrong citadel called *Fredericksburg*, which was built in the year 1657, ſtands directly facing *Kneiphof* at the conflux of the two branches of the *Pregel*. This fort is a regular ſquare ſurrounded with broad ditches and the river *Pregel*, which is there increaſed by the canal or dike called *Kupferteich*. A church and an arſenal ſtand in the citadel.

We ſhall farther take notice of the followng particulars relating to *Konigsberg*. Ever ſince the year 1731 the ſtreets of this city have been illuminated every evening with 1253 lanterns *.

Konigsberg has always made a conſiderable figure in commerce and ſhipping, and was formerly a member of the *Hanſe*-towns-aſſociation. Its trade is ſtill in a flouriſhing condition; and the river *Pregel*, which is here navigable for the largeſt ſhips, and from one hundred and twenty to two hundred and forty feet in breadth, renders this city very fit for commerce. In the year 1752 four hundred and ninety-three ſhips arrived in this port, beſides two hundred and ninety-eight *Struſen* and *Wittinen* †, and three hundred and ſeventy-three floats of timber.

Moſt of the inhabitants of *Konigsberg* are *Germans*, who are of the Evangelical or Lutheran profeſſion; and a colony of *French* Calviniſts conſiſting of about fifty families is ſettled here. Commerce has alſo introduced the *Poliſh* and *Lithuanian* languages into this city.

Above eight hundred indigent perſons receive weekly penſions out of the general charitable fund, beſides the poor who are provided for in almshouſes and hoſpitals.

In the year 1724, *Altſtadt*, *Lobenicht* and *Kneiphof* were united, and the courts of Judicature belonging to the three towns, Suburbs and Liberties were incorporated.

In the year 1701, *Frederick* I. crowned himſelf King of *Pruſſia* with his own hands at *Konigsberg*.

We ſhall now proceed to give an account of the ſeveral *Haut-aempter*, or Governments in this Department.

* I ſuppoſe this city is illuminated, like *Paris*, with candles ſet in lanterns which hang to lines tied acroſs the ſtreets, and not with globular lamps.

† Smaller veſſels ſo called, I preſume.

I. GERMAN SAMLAND,

Which contains the three following Governments, *viz.*

1. THE *Haupt-Amt*, or Government of FISHHAUSEN, to which the *Kammer-Aemts* or inferior Juriſdictions of *Dirſchkeim*, *Kragau*, *Palmniken* and *Lochſted*, are ſubject. It includes ten churches, which are under the inſpection of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Fiſchhauſen*. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Fiſchhauſen, a ſmall town, which from the year 1289 to the Reformation was the reſidence of the Biſhops of *Samland*. The caſtle is incloſed with a wall and a moat.

Pillau, the bulwark and key of *Pruſſia* towards the ſea, is a city ſtrong with a fine harbour: It is well fortified, and ſtands on a point of land that projects into the ſea. The ſtreets are broad and run in a ſtraight line, and the houſes are built and furniſhed in the *Dutch* taſte. This city is frequented by people of various nations, ſome of whom are ſettled here, and others belong to the foreign ſhips in the harbour. Veſſels of great burden are cleared and take in their lading here; for the *Friſche-haf* has not a ſufficient depth of water to carry them up to *Konigsberg*. The fort is nearly a regular pentagon. The baſtions make a grand appearance; and all the buildings belonging to the fortifications are ſtrong, handſom, and regular. It has alſo a magazine for military ſtores. Below the gate of the caſtle is a ſtone equeſtrian ſtatue of *Frederick William the Great*; and over the gate a fine watch-tower is erected, where a centinel ſtands upon duty day and night. There is alſo a church in the fort, which ſerves both for the Lutherans and Calviniſts. Over the gate, on one ſide of the entrance towards the outworks, ſtands the image of *Mars*, in a bold attitude, looking towards *Sweden*. The fort is well planted with cannon.

Note. The peninſula, along which the road from *Pillau* to *Fiſchhauſen* lies, is called the 'Paradiſe of *Pruſſia*,' from its extreme pleaſantneſs and fertility; for it yields not only the neceſſaries of life in great plenty, but alſo every thing that contributes to pleaſure and entertainment. Near the fort is a fine plain, where the *Friſche-Haf* forms a fine ſemicircular bay, which is frequented by great numbers of ſwans, ſex-mews, wild ducks, and other water-fowl. On the other ſide of this bay lies *Alt-Pillau* or *Old Pillau* conſiſting of two contiguous villages, namely, *Alt Pillau* and *Wogram*, which are inhabited by fiſhermen. In *Alt-Pillau* is a public burying-ground, where all the dead belonging to *Pillau* are interred. Near the church on a ſteep hill ſtands the *Pfundbude*, which was formerly the Cuſtom-houſe, when

when the ſea came up ſo far. This ſtrong lofty edifice ſerves as a land-mark for ſhips bound to *Pillau*; and accordingly they pay a ſmall duty towards the ſupport of it. Nothing can exceed the proſpect which this place affords; for it extends to a part of *Samland*, *Natangen*, *Ermland*, and ſeveral miles beyond *Pillau*, and is diverſified with the view of the ſhips coming in and going out of the harbour, and the *Nerung* or narrow ſlip of land that lies between the haven and the ſea. In *Wogram* near the *Friſche-Haf* lies the *Storbude*, where the ſturgeons are boiled and packed up, and likewiſe where Caviar is made of the roe of that fiſh; and moſt of theſe are exported to *England*. The fiſhermen in theſe parts catch no leſs than thirty different ſpecies of ſea and freſh-water fiſh; in the *Droſſelzeit*, or thruſh-ſeaſon here are aſtoniſhing flights of thruſhes, black-birds, and magpyes. A great number of kitchen-gardens and orchards are to be ſeen round theſe villages. After paſſing the delicious ſpot about *Alt Pillau*, you croſs over a barren piece of ground to a well cultivated farm, and the *Pillau Kruge*, as it is called, which is a public houſe ſtanding in a moſt delightful grove, conſiſting of various kinds of trees, which grow ſo cloſe together as to afford a good ſhelter from the rain. It was, probably, from this charming grove that the adjacent country acquired the name of Paradiſe. Such, however, is the 'Paradiſe of *Pruſſia*.'

Tenckitten, or St. *Albrecht*, was formerly a village with a church; and the ruins of the latter are ſtill to be ſeen. *Tenkitten* church was built in honour of St. *Adalbert*, who ſuffered martyrdom in this place on the twenty-fourth of *April* in the year of Chriſt 997. Here alſo formerly was a deep channel through which the ſhips uſed to paſs. Amber is gathered along this whole coaſt, being left on ſhore by the ſea; and the inhabitants alſo frequently dig and fiſh for it. Fine gray writing ſand is likewiſe thrown up here by the waves.

Lockſted, a ſmall and mean town, where the marks of a channel are ſtill plainly ſeen, which may now be ſafely croſſed either on horſe-back or in a carriage. Part of the ancient famous caſtle of *Lockſted* is ſtill remaining, in which is to be ſeen the dreadful priſon or dungeon where criminals were confined by the ancient Sovereigns of this country.

Galgarben, formerly called *Geylgarben*, a village near which is the higheſt hill in *Pruſſia*, which is ſaid to have been thrown up by the ancient Pagan inhabitants. This place was formerly fortified, and the Sovereigns of the country reſided in it.

2. The Government of SCHAAKEN. In this *Haut-amt* are ten churches, which are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Schaaken*; and the following places of note,

Schaaken, an old caſtle with a ſmall town, lies about half a *Geman* mile from the bay called *Curiſche-Haf*. It was taken by King *Ottocar* from the Pagan inhabitants; but was afterwards rebuilt and improved by the

Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. It is the reſidence of the *Amts-haupt-man* or Governor; though he generally lives in the neighbourhood of the town. The whole country hereabouts is quite level. Paſſengers uſually embark at this place to croſs to *Memel*.

Rudau, a church-village, which, on account of its ſituation in a defile, was formerly fortified with a caſtle, which now lies in ruins. This place is remarkable for the victory obtained by the Knights of the *Tentonic* Order in 1370, over *Kinſtud* Great Duke of *Lithuania*, in memory of which a ſtone pillar was erected in a field near the village of *Tranzau*, which is ſtill remaining. The miracle of the blood ſaid to have been found in the chalice at the celebration of the Euchariſt in this village, in the year 1615, may be explained by natural cauſes. A great many ancient monuments of the Pagan idolatry are ſtill to be ſeen in the neighbourhood of *Rudau*.

The *Vier Bruderſeule*, which monument, in all probability, was erected to the memory of four brothers or Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who about the year 1295 were attacked by ſurpriſe and killed on the ſpot by the Pagan *Sudavians*, ſtand in the middle of the road in the *Caporniſhen Heide*, or heath of *Caporn*, which is a royal foreſt ſtocked with elks and roe-bucks. The ſtatues on the top of theſe four pillars or pedeſtals have a good attitude and are very well executed. Theſe monumental ſtatues have been repaired and kept up, from time to time, for the ſpace of four hundred years, ſometimes by the Prefecture of *Caporn*, ſometimes by the ſociety of hunters, in whoſe diſtrict it ſtands, and ſometimes by the Governments of *Schaaken* and *Fiſchhauſen*, according to the directions of the Sovereigns of the country.

Kaymen, a large church village and Prefecture, where the unhappy peaſants made an inſurrection in the year 1525; but were ſoon reduced to obedience.

The *Curiſche Nerung*, in Latin *Peninſula Curonenſis*, may very properly be taken notice of here, though a part of it only belongs to this Government. This narrow ſlip of land reaches from the village of *Kranskrug* almoſt to *Memel*, and ſeparates the *Baltic-ſea* from the *Curiſche-Haf*. It is about ſixty *Engliſh* miles in length, and in moſt parts one in breadth. This peninſula is a barren, ſandy tract of land, where the high winds often make great ravages by blowing up the ſand into ridges and hills, which obliges the poor inhabitants often to remove their dwellings, and tear up great numbers of pine-trees by the roots, which lie ſcattered about till they rot. Moſt of the trees, particularly on the *Baltic* ſide, are more or leſs blaſted, and appear like bare trunks. This wood, however, affords ſhelter for ſtags, falcons, and thruſhes. The bottom of the *Curiſche-Haf* is claiey and ſtony, which, with the many capes projecting from it, renders it very dangerous for mariners. There are ſeveral ſmall, mean villages on the peninſula called *Nerung*, among which the following belong to the Government of *Schaak*, viz. *Sarkau*, which has a church; *Latterwald*; *Kunzen*, which has

alſo

alſo with a church; *Roſſitten*, in which formerly a *Burgraf* reſided, and where the ruins of an old caſtle are ſtill to be ſeen; and *Pilkoppen*, where ſtands a high hill, on which the *Pruſſian* idol called *Pilkov* was formerly worſhipped. The villages of *Nidden*, *Carwaiten*, *Negeln* and *Schwartzort*, the inhabitants of which ſubſiſt by fiſhing, and have very few cattle, belong to the Government of *Memel*.

3. The Government of LABIAU, including eleven churches, five of which are under the juriſdiction of the Senior Court-chaplain at *Konigsberg*, and the remaining under the Arch-Preſbyter of *Labiau*. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Neuhauſen, an old caſtle, lying about ſix *Engliſh* miles from *Konigsberg*, which formerly ſerved as a ſummer retirement for the Canons of *Konigsberg*. The Margrave *Albert* was ſo fond of this place that he often ſpent ſome time here, and diverted himſelf with hunting. Here is a Court of Juſtice for the Governments of *Fiſchhuaſen*, *Schaaken*, *Labiau*, and *Tapiau*.

Kalthof, and *Waldau*, are two Prefectures in this Government. The former remarkable for its fine ſituation, and an elegant houſe of entertainment, and the latter for ſeveral remains of antiquity.

Klein Heyde, a pleaſant royal manor.

Labiau, a trading town on the river *Deine*, with an ancient caſtle.

Rautenburg, a good town belonging to Count *Keyſerling*.

Note. In this Government are ſeveral navigable rivers abounding with fiſh, and canals or dikes lately cut. Among the latter are the following.

The *New Deim*, which begins at the royal manor of *Schmerberg*, and is carried in a direct line for two *German* miles and a half as far as *Tapiau*, where it joins the *Pregel*.

The new *Gilge* which reaches from the church-village of *Lappenen* to the village of *Skepen*, where it runs into the river *Gilge*.

Two new canals called the *Great* and *Little Frederick's Graben*, which join the river *Deim* with the *Wippe* and *Nemmonin*, and alſo joins the latter with the *Gilge*. This work, which is ſo convenient for the trade with *Poland*, was executed between the years 1688 and 1696 by order of the Counteſs dowager of *Waldburg*, who was born at *Rauter* in *Rautenburg*. The *Little Frederick's Graben* begins at the river *Gilge*, not far from *Rautenburg*, is about ſix *Engliſh* miles in length, and extends as far as the fiſhing village of *Petricken*, where it falls into the river *Nemmonin*. The *Great Frederick's Graben* commences at the *Wippe*, which is a branch of the river *Nemmonin*, is carried on for three *German* miles to *Labiau*, and then joins the river *Deim*. The Counts of *Waldenburg* received a toll from all veſſels which paſſed by this canal, till the King purchaſed that right in the year 1713, and made it a part of the royal demeſnes. The inhabitants on the banks of this canal are termed *Grabeninker*, and, at preſent conſtitute a diſtinct *Amt* or Government called the *Graben Amt*.

4. The Government of TAPIAU, containing eighteen churches, which are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Welau*. In this Government are the following towns, &c.

Tapiau, a regularly built, but mean little town, which had no privileges nor ſo much as a magiſtrate till the year 1722. It ſtands at the conflux of the *Pregel* and the *Deim*; and has a large caſtle, which is ſurrounded with a moat, where, formerly, the records of the Kingdom were kept. Duke *Albert* died here in the year 1568.

Welau, an ancient, well built town founded in 1336, ſtands on an iſland at the conflux of the *Alle* and the *Pregel*. It lies properly in *Natangen*, and yet belongs to this Government. This town conſiſts of two principal and five croſs ſtreets, two ſuburbs, and two hundred and ſixty-four houſes. It has about one hundred and fifty burghers, beſides the other inhabitants. After the fire, which broke out here in 1736, the buildings have been much improved; however, *Welau*, never recovered its former trade. This town is chiefly remarkable in hiſtory for the treaty concluded here with *Poland* on the nineteenth of *September* 1657, when the Elector *Frederick William* was inveſted with the Sovereignty of *Ducal Pruſſia*; and this inveſtiture was alſo ratified at *Bidgoſt*, or *Bromberg*, in *Poland*.

Sanditten, a noble ſeat with a fine manor near the *Pregel*, belongs to Count *Schlieben*.

Taplaken, a ſeat and Prefecture. In the adjacent country were formerly *Buffaloes*, which the inhabitants in ſnowy-weather houſed in their barns.

Allinburg, an obſcure little town; but it is well ſituated on the river *Albe*.

Wohnſdorf, a caſtle pleaſantly ſituated between *Allenburg* and *Friedland*. It is famous for its antiquity, and belongs to Baron *Schroder*.

II. *OLD NATANGEN.*

THIS country is populous and well cultivated, and conſiſts partly of arable and partly of meadow land; ſo that agriculture and grazing turn to good account here. Though the ſoil is in ſome parts very ſtony, yet it produces better corn than *Samland* or *Little Lithuania*. It is alſo well wooded and yields all ſorts of game, and plenty of fiſh.

Old Natangen contains the following Governments.

1. The *Haupt-amt* or Government of BRANDENBURG, which includes the *Amts* or Prefectures of *Karſchau Hobbelbude*, *Uderwangen*, and *Dolſtadt*. It alſo contains twenty-nine churches, which are under the juriſdiction of the principal court chaplain at *Konigsberg*. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Brandenburg,

Brandenburg, an indifferent town, with ſome good houſes in it, but moſtly inhabited by fiſhermen. It lies at the mouth of the *Huntau* near the *Friſche-Haf*. The large caſtle of *Brandenburg* was built in the year 1266 by *Otho*, Margrave of *Brandenburg*; and was deſtroyed by the *Pruſſians* in 1520, but afterwards rebuilt. This was formerly a *Comturey*, as it is called; but Duke *Frederick* aboliſhed that privilege, and made it a Government, whoſe chief officers are ſtiled directors of the provincial council.

Charlottenthal, a fine ſeat in a pleaſant ſituation, built by *Frederick Lewis*, Duke of *Holſtein Beck*, who named it *Charlottenthal* from his Lady *Charlota*.

Friderickſtein, a noble ſeat, is moſt delightfully ſituated, and belongs to Count *Donhof*, who is alſo proprietor of the manor of *Barten*.

Kreutzburg, a little town, which has an old caſtle built in 1252 by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order.

Friedland, a town on the river *Alle*, which has often ſuffered by ſieges both rom the *Poles* and *Swedes*; and alſo by frequent fires.

Domnau, a mean town with a caſtle. Several monuments of antiquity are to be ſeen in the neighbouring country.

Groſs-waldeck, a ſeat of the Barons of *Kittlitz*, to whom it was granted in 1536 by the Margrave *Albert*. On the ſame ſpot formerly ſtood the convent of the Holy Trinity; and the inn which ſtands near this ſeat is ſtill called the Convent-Inn. The city of *Romowe*, which was the chief ſeat of the Pagan idolatry of theſe parts, ſtood in the ſame ſituation.

2. The Government of BALGA, containing fourteen churches, which are under the juriſdiction of the Senior Court-Chaplain of *Konigsberg*. In this Government are the following places of note.

Balga, a town ſeated on the *Friſche-haf*, with a very old caſtle which was taken by the Knights of the *Teutonic* order ſo early as the year 1238. It was formerly a *Comturey*, which Duke *Frederick*, Grand-Maſter of the Order, converted into a *Haupt-amt* or Government.

Bladiau, or *Pladia*, a ſmall town, or village.

Zinten, a ſmall town, which has often ſuffered by fire. In the year 1520, the *Poles* were defeated near this place.

Heiligenbeil, in Latin *Sancta civitas*, and in the *Poliſh* language *Swiata Siekierka*, is a ſmall town ſeated on the *Jafte* or *Garſt*, which, a little below this place, joins the *Banaw*, and falls into the *Friſche-haf*. This town is ſaid to have been founded in the year 1301. It is famous for fine beer and excellent white bread; as alſo for being the ſeat of idolatry of the ancient *Pruſſians*, who uſed in a very ſolemn manner to worſhip the idol *Curetro* under a large oak in this place. The Chriſtians who founded the new town, ſeem to have altered the ancient name of *Heiligſtadt* into that of

of *Heilegenbeil* from the city arms, which are two axes or bills placed croſs-wiſe. On the ſuppreſſion of pagan idolatry, the conſecrated grove which had been long incloſed, was alſo deſecrated and thrown open to the great advantage of the town. As for the miracle related by modern writers of an ax with which the ſacred oaks are ſaid to have been hewn down, the ancient hiſtorians are entirely ſilent on that head. This town was totally deſtroyed by fire in 1463, 1519, and 1677.

Lindenau, a ſeat with an elegant garden belonging to Count *Seeguth*.

3. The Government of BARTENSTEIN lies in *Bartenland*, as it was formerly called, and contains ſixteen churches, which are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Bartenſtein*. The remarkable places in this Government are,

Pruſſian Elau, in Latin *Gilavia Boruſſica*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *German-Elaw*, is a ſmall town which was built in the year 1528.

Landſberg, a ſmall town, which, at preſent belongs to Count *Schwerin*. The famous *Andrew Grunheyde*, who uſed to ſwallow knives, was buried here in 1645. A knife which he had ſwallowed was taken out of him by inciſion, without the loſs of his life.

Bartenſtein, the moſt regular and beſt built town in *Natangen*. It ſtands in a pleaſant country on the river *Alle*, and has the precedency of all the towns in *Pruſſia*. Its old caſtle, which was built by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order about the middle of the thirteenth century, was in ancient times frequently beſieged. An Arch-Preſbyter reſides in this town.

Kirſitten, a ſeat belonging to M. *Kunheim*.

Gaalingen, a ſeat of Baron *Eulenburg*.

Peſten and *Bucholts* are two eſtates belonging to M. *Kreytzen*.

Stablauken, an eſtate, the income of which is appropriated for the King's privy purſe.

4. The Governments of GARDAUEN and NORDENBURG are alſo part of the old province of *Barten*. Theſe united Diſtricts was by grant from the Grand Maſter, which was confirmed by the ſucceeding Sovereigns, conferred on the brave *George Schlieben*, a Knight of the *Teutonic* Order, for himſelf and his heirs, in conſideration of the important aſſiſtance brought by that Knight againſt the *Poles* in 1460; though ſeveral other noble families live within this hereditary Prefecture. It contains ſeven churches, which are under the direction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Raftenburg* and the conſiſtory of *Samland*. In this Government are the following remarkable places.

Gerdauen, a ſmall town built in the year 1325. It is ſeated on the river *Omet*, and has two ſeats or caſtles belonging to the Count and Baron *Schlieben*: the new ſeat is magnificent and has an elegant garden. The town derives its name from *E. Gerdaw*, a *Pruſſian* Nobleman, near whoſe caſtle it was built in the above-mentioned year. In a lake near this town is a floating iſland, which is a plat of ground covered with verdure, and driven

driven to and fro from one one bank of the lake to the other. It was formerly three hundred and fifty paces in length, and two hundred and fifty in breadth; ſo that it afforded paſture for a hundred head of cattle: but at preſent it is divided into ſeveral little pieces which are continually decreaſing. This iſland is called the *Gerdauen Almanac*, becauſe the inhabitants of the town prognoſticate approaching ſtorms by its motions.

Nordenburg, a ſmall town and caſtle, built by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order in the year 1305. It ſtands on the north ſide of the *Aſchwin*-lake, and belongs to Count *Schlieben*.

Berkenfeld, a fine ſeat and gardens, and a very profitable glaſs-manufactory, which belong to the ſame Nobleman, and alſo the two following ſeats, *viz.*

Dombroſken, and

Adams-heide. *Wandlacken* was purchaſed of Count *Schlieben* by King *Frederick William* for the ſum of 42,000 dollars.

Great and *Little Benuhunen* are two eſtates belonging to Count *Donhof*, which he purchaſed of Count *Lohndorf* in the year 1702.

5. The Government of BARTEN is a very pleaſant country, which has induced many families of diſtinction to have their principal ſeats here. It includes eight churches, which are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Raſtenburg*. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Barten, a ſmall but well built town, with a ſtately caſtle or palace. It was erected on the *Liebe* in the middle of the fourteenth century; and was formerly the reſidence of the Biſhop of *Pomeſania*, and the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order.

Drengfurth, a little town which ſtands at the foot of a mountain, was built in the year 1403.

Scandalack, a ſeat of Baron *Buddenbrock*.

Neuhof, a ſeat belonging to Baron *Heideck*.

Steinort, a fine ſeat with a good eſtate belonging to it, is the property of Count *Lohndorf*.

6. The Government of RASTENBURG. The Arch-Preſbytery of *Raſtenburg* is very extenſive, and comprehends not only the eighteen churches belonging to this *Haupt-amt*; but alſo thoſe included in the Governments of *Barten*, *Seheſtein*, *Rhain*, and *Gerdauen*. Places of note in this Diſtrict are,

Raſtenburg, a handſome town with a caſtle ſeated on the river *Guber*. It was founded in the year 1329; and though it was deſtroyed by the *Lithuanians* in 1348, it was ſoon rebuilt, together with its caſtle, and put in a more defenſible ſtate than before. It is incloſed with a wall, and, in the year 1669, it was alſo ſurrounded with a rampart. The *German* pariſh-church is the largeſt and handſomeſt ſtructure of that kind in all the *Pruſſian* inland towns, except the cathedral of *Marienwerder*; and the ſenior of the three Miniſters belonging to it has alſo the ſuperintendency

of

of forty-ſix churches. The church of St. *Catharine* ſtands in the ſuburbs of *Raſtenburg*, and is one of the moſt ancient in the Kingdom of *Pruſſia*; and in the middle of the great *Hoſpital* is the church of the *Holy Ghoſt*. This Hoſpital was founded in the year 1361, and conſiſts of two wards, where twenty indigent perſons are comfortably provided with food and a penſion in money. In the ſecond hoſpital twenty-five poor perſons are maintained by the alms and donations of well-diſpoſed benefactors. Here is a ſchool under the direction of a Rector and three Aſſiſtants. The Burghers, moſt of whom are *Lutherans*, are about two hundred. The inhabitants of this town are ſupported by ſome little commerce, brewing, agriculture, and mechanic trades. This town is poſſeſſed of the largeſt territory of any inland town in all *Pruſſia* except *Fiſch-hauſen*; for it conſiſts of two hundred and thirty-eight Hides of land. A poſt-houſe is alſo ſet up here. *Raſtenburg* caſtle was the reſidence of forty Commanders and nine Grand Maſters of the *Teutonic* Order, from the year 1356 to the ſecularization of the country. In the year 1531, a conference was held here betwixt the Lutherans and the Anabaptiſts.

Die Heilige Linde, called in the *Poliſh* language *Swiata Lipka*, is a rich convent, which ſtands in a large wood on the King's land. It lies about a *German* mile and a half from *Raſtenburg*, between the Epiſcopal See of *Reſſel* and the village of *Beisſlack*. The pretended miraculous image of the Virgin *Mary* in this convent is viſited by the Papiſts from all parts, and even from *Rome*; ſo that 10,000 perſons have communicated here on the feaſt of the Annunciation.

Schippenheil, a middling town ſeated on the *Alle* near the influx of the river *Guber*, was built in the year 1319, and has ſuffered extremely both by the ravages of war and by fire. In the year 1750, half of it was burnt down; but it is already rebuilt with improvements.

Leuneburg, *Luneburg*, or *Eulenburg*, a town and ſeat belonging to Baron *Eulenburg*.

Groſs-Wolfsdorf is a town, where the Counts of *Donhof* have built an elegant ſeat called *Donhofſtedt*, with a fine garden and park, and likewiſe a Calviniſt-church. This ſeat is accounted one of the fineſt in all the kingdom of *Pruſſia*.

Groſs-Schwansfeld is a ſeat belonging to Baron *Groben*.

7. The Government of ANGERBURG, which is famous for producing the beſt *Schwade*, or *Pruſſian* Manna. The Arch-Preſbyter of *Angerburg* has twelve churches under his juriſdiction.

Places of note in this Diſtrict are,

Angerburg, which is a modern well-built flouriſhing town, ſurrounded with palliſadoes. It is alſo defended by a ſtrong caſtle built in the year 1335 on the bank of the lake where the river *Angerapp* has its ſource. This lake, which is ſeven *German* miles in length, and one and a half in breadth,

breadth, is of great ſervice to the town and abounds with eels. *Angerburg* church is a large handſome ſtructure. In the year 1725, an Arch-Preſbytery was founded here; and in 1734 and 1736 King *Staniſlaus* made ſome ſtay in this town.

Steinort, a noble ſeat of Count *Lehndorf* with one of the fineſt gardens in all the country. The iſland belonging to this ſeat in the *Angerburg*-lake, and the ſummer-houſe built on it are extremely pleaſant.

Engelſtein, a village, with a handſome church, which ſtands in a thick wood. Here are ſeveral remains of antiquity.

8. The Government of SEHESTEN lies in the province of *Galindien*. It contains ſix churches which are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Raſtenberg*.

Boſen, a town ſeated on the *Sallen*-lake.

Seheſten, a ſmall town with a caſtle, ſtands on a lake. It was built, in the middle of the fourteenth century, in a very pleaſant ſituation. In the year 1520, it was ſacked and burnt by the *Poles*, and, in 1568, was laid in aſhes by an accidental fire.

Aweyden, an eſtate belonging to Count *Finkenſtein*.

III. OBERLAND.

THIS country is fertile, rich, and well cultivated; and was formerly called *Hockerland*. Before the Knight's of the *Teutonic* Order invaded Pruſſia, *Hockerland* was ſo populous, that it could bring into the field an army of 10,000 effective men, conſiſting of horſe and foot. But the *Hockerlanders* having, on ſeveral occaſions, exerciſed great cruelties towards the Chriſtians, the *Teutonic* Knights in the year 1273 attacked the country, laid it waſte, and made themſelves maſters of it.

Oberland contains the following *Haupt-amts* or Governments.

1. The Government of GILGENBURG, which is an hereditary fief belonging to Count *Finkenſtein*'s family. The churches in this Government are under the direction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Saalfeld*. There is a Calviniſt-church at *Roſchlau*, and a Popiſh-chapel at *Thurau*.

The ancient town of *Gilgenburg* lies on the river *Gilge* near a lake; the caſtle belonging to it is very large and commodious. After the battle of *Tannenburg*, which was fought in 1410, this town was laid in aſhes; and in the year 1520 it was ſacked and plundered. In 1578 it was entirely deſtroyed in the *Swediſh* wars; ſo that even to this time it has not quite recovered its former condition.

2. The Government of ORTELSBURG and WILLENBERG contains nine churches, which are ſubject to the Arch-Preſbyter of *Saalfeld*. In this Government are the following places of note,

Ortelsburg, a little town which is well ſituated and carries on ſome trade, with a fine old ſeat. On the twenty-ſecond of *May* 1629, the

Elector *George William* and *Uladiſlaus* had an interview in this place. The adjacent country is interſperſed with ſeveral lakes; and between theſe are fine arable lands, meadows, and woods.

Paſſenheim, a ſmall town ſeated on a lake, which was built at the cloſe of the fourteenth century. This town never arrived at any pitch of proſperity, on account of the frequent calamities of fire, war, and peſtilence it has, from time to time, experienced.

Willenberg, a ſmall town on the frontiers of *Poland*, which obtained its privileges in the year 1723.

Kuttenberg, a village, with a hunting-ſeat. The adjacent country abounds with iron-ore.

3. The Government of NEIDENBURG, which the Elector *Frederick William* annexed to *Soldau*. It contains fourteen churches which belong to a particular Preſbytery. There are two Popiſh chapels on the frontiers; and the Calviniſts perform Divine Service in the caſtle of *Soldau*.

The following remarkable places lie in this Government.

Neidenburg, a handſome town ſituated in a very pleaſant country, with a caſtle and a court of Judicature.

Soldau, called in the *Poliſh* language *Dzialdowo*, is a free town with a caſtle, and ſtands on a lake near the frontiers of *Poland*. It was built in the year 1306, and has often ſuffered by fire; eſpecially in 1733 and 1748. The Arch-Preſbyter reſides in this town; which is remarkable for being the head-quarters of *Charles Guſtavus* King of *Sweden* in the year 1656.

4. The united Governments of OSTERRODE and HOHENSTEIN. The churches in this Government are under the inſpection of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Saalfeld*. The places moſt worthy of notice in this Diſtrict are,

Oſterrode, a well-ſituated trading town, which ſtands on the lake of *Dribentz*, and a river of the ſame, which plentifully ſupply it with fiſh. The ſoil of the adjacent country is ſandy; but at the ſame time fertile. The inhabitants of this town formerly carried on ſome trade with *Great Poland*. The caſtle of *Oſterrode* was built in 1270 or 1302; and had formerly a *Teutonic* convent, and a *Commanderie*. In the year 1400, it was laid in aſhes; and in 1737 a ſalt-factory was ſet up here. In the year 1740, and 1134, ſome ancient *Roman* coins were found at a little diſtance from this town, on the eſtate of *Gorlitz*, which belongs to the King of *Pruſſia*.

Hohenſtein, a ſmall town with a caſtle, which was built in 1312 at the ſource of the *Paſſarge*.

Tannenberg, a church-village, lies between *Gilgenburg* and *Hohenſtein*, and is famous for the obſtinate battle fought there on the fourteenth of *July* 1410, between the *Poles* and the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, wherein the latter were totally defeated; and from that time the Order viſibly declined.

5. The Government of DEUTSCH or GERMAN EYLAU. In this Diſtrict are two Popiſh churches; but the two *Lutheran* churches are ſubject to the

the Arch-Preſbyter of *Saalfeld*. This Government contains the following places of note.

Deutſch Eylau, an open ſmall town with an old caſtle. It was built about the beginning of the fourteenth century, and ſtands near a large lake in a very pleaſant country.

Seewald, a ſtately ſeat with fine gardens, and a paper-mill belonging to Count *Finkenſtein*.

6. The Government of MARIENWERDER, and that of REISENBURG are both under one Governor; but the former is a Preſbytery by itſelf. *Marienwerder* contains 11,000 hides of land, and its Arch-Preſbyter has ſix churches under his juriſdiction. The Arch-Preſbyter of *Reiſenburg* is alſo a member of the Conſiſtory of *Saalfeld*; and has the ſuperintendency of the churches of three towns and ten villages, beſides thoſe of *Schonberg* Diſtrict. The moſt remarkable places in this diviſion are,

Marienwerder, called in Latin *Inſula Mariana*, and in the *Poliſh* language *Kwidzin*, a well-built town with a caſtle, which ſtands on the frontiers of *Pomerania*, not far from the *Viſtula*. It was formerly the reſidence of the Biſhops of *Pomeſania*, and of ſome Grand Maſters of the *Teutonic* Order. *Marienwerder* was at firſt built in the year 1233, on a *Werder* * or ſmall iſland called *Quidzin*; but was ſoon after rebuilt on its preſent ſituation. The cathedral, which was erected about the thirteenth century, is the largeſt church in the kingdom of *Pruſſia*, being three hundred and twenty feet long; and by its ſtrong breaſt-works ſeems to have formerly ſerved for a fortreſs. The palace at *Marienwerder* is ſpacious and built in the old *Gothic* taſte. The adjacent country is very pleaſant, and full of eminences and gentle declivities. The inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade with their neighbours. In the year 1723 ſalt-works were ſet up here, and a magazine for corn and forage in 1728. This town has often been damaged by inundations, war, and fire. The famous league formed by the towns and country againſt the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order was concluded here in 1440. This town held out againſt a vigorous ſiege in 1520; and in the year 1613, it was for ſome time the reſidence of the Elector *John Sigiſmund*. In 1709 the Czaar *Peter the Great* and *Frederick* I. King of *Pruſſia* had an interview at this place. King *Staniſlaus* retired to this town from *Dantzick* in *July* 1734. Both the ſuburbs of *Marienwerder* are continually improving. The adjacent country is fertile and well-inhabited; and the great ſluice on the *Viſtula* is kept in repair by aſſeſſments on the Government, the town, and the neighbouring nobility.

Gardenſee or *Garnſee*, by the *Poles* called *Shlemno*, is a ſmall trading town on the frontiers, ſituated in a very pleaſant country. Its caſtle is very old.

Reiſenburg, a mean town with narrow ſtreets, ſtands on an eminence near the river *Leibe*, and derives its name from the adjacent *Pruſſian* territory, which was anciently called *Reſin*. The *Poles* call it *Prabutha*, which

* *Werder* ſignifies an iſland formed by a river.

ſignifies a ruinous houſe. The caſtle, which is more ancient than the town, ſtands on a hill, and is extremely decayed. It was the reſidence of the Biſhops of *Pomeſania* till the year 1587; and a conference for peace was held here betwixt the *Poles* and *Swedes* in 1628; but without ſucceſs. The town was built in 1169, and contains a *German* and a *Poliſh* church. The Burghers, beſides ſome little commerce, ſubſiſt by brewing, agriculture, and feeding of cattle. In 1323, 1414, and 1422, *Reiſenburg* was burnt by the *Poles*. It was alſo conſumed by fire in 1628, 1688, and 1728. In the year 1556, an eccleſiaſtical ſynod was held here. In the neighbourhood of the town are three lakes, and higher up in the country are the ruins of a labyrinth made by the ancient *Pruſſians*.

Birchofswerder, a ſmall town on the river *Aſſe*, was founded in 1325; but ſince the fire which conſumed it in 1730, it has been rebuilt with more regularity.

Freyſtadt, a mean little town, but conveniently ſituated on a lake.

Leiſtenau, a ſeat and lordſhip belonging to Count *Dohna*.

7. The Government of SCHONBERG. The churches in this Diſtrict are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Rieſenburg*. The places of note in this Government are,

Schonberg, a village with a caſtle, which was built at the cloſe of the thirteenth century, and belongs to the Counts of *Finkenſtein*.

Roſenberg, a ſmall town, ſituated near two freſh water lakes. It was built in 1319; and was almoſt totally deſtroyed by fire in the year 1400.

Finkenſtein, otherwiſe called *Haberſdorf*, is a ſmall village with a ſtately caſtle and fine gardens, and belongs to the *Finkenſtein* family.

Langenau, a church-village and a noble manor belonging to the *Kalnein* family. The church is famous for its beautiful paintings.

8. The Government of MOHRUNGEN, which the Elector *Frederick William* incorporated with LIEBSTADT. In the former are ſeven churches, and ſix in the latter, which are all ſubject to the Arch-Preſbyter of *Holland*.

In this Government lies

Mohrungen, a little town, where Count *Dohna* has a remarkable ſeat. This town is ſaid to have been begun in 1302, and compleated in 1328; but the old caſtle had been erected in 1280. It is well-built and ſurrounded with good walls and a double moat, and almoſt encompaſſed on all ſides by the *Mohrung*-lake and a large mill-dam. Not far from this place is the lake of *Scherting*. As this little town lies in the road to *Poland*, it is much frequented by ſtrangers. In the year 1697 it was entirely deſtroyed by fire; but has been ſince rebuilt to greater advantage. The old caſtle was formerly a convent belonging to the *Teutonic* Order, and, together with the town, muſt have ſuffered greatly in the many wars in which thoſe Knights were concerned. In 1410 it was taken by the *Poles*, and in 1461, it was retaken by the *Teutonic* Knights; but in 1520 it was burnt by the former.

Reichertſwalde,

Reichertſwalde, a church-village, where the Counts of *Dohna* have an elegant ſeat with fine gardens.

Liebſtadt, a ſmall town with a caſtle, built in the year 1329, which, beſides ſeveral accidents by fire, has likewiſe ſuffered much in the *Swediſh* wars.

9. The Government of PREUSCHMARK, which is united with LIEBMUHL and DOLLSTADT under one Governor. Seventeen churches belong to this *Haupt-amt*, which are ſubject to an Arch-Preſbyter who reſides at *Saalfeld*. The remarkable places in this Government are,

Preuſchmark, a ſmall village dependent on that of *Liebwalde*. It ſtands near a freſh-water lake; and has a very ſtrong and ſpacious caſtle built in a quadrangular form, and ſurrounded with a deep moat.

Saalfeld, a well-built middling town, in which a famous convent of *Bernardines* formerly ſtood. When the epiſcopal ſee of *Pomeſania* was aboliſhed, the *Oberland* Conſiſtory was inſtituted here in its ſtead in the year 1587. The *Erzprieſter*, or Arch-Preſbyters of *Saalfeld*, *Rieſenburg*, and *Holland*, have a ſeat in this Conſiſtory, from which an appeal lies to the *Pruſſian* High Court of Judicature. In the year 1588, *George Frederick* founded the third *Pruſſian* ſchool in this town.

Chriſtburg, or *Alt-Chriſtburg*, an old mean town, with an ancient caſtle.

Altſtadt, a village with an elegant ſeat belonging to the Counts of *Wallenrodt*.

Liebmuhl, a ſmall town, with a caſtle built in 1337, in which the Biſhop of *Pomeſania* reſided towards the cloſe of the ſixteenth century.

Dollſtadt, a Prefecture which is near the *Drauſen*-lake on the other ſide of the town of *Holland*; and makes part of the Government of *Preuſchmark*.

10. The Government of PREUSCH-HOLLAND. This Diſtrict contains twenty-one churches, which are under a particular Arch-Preſbyter. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are as follows.

Holland, a handſome town ſeated on an eminence near the river *Weeſke*, with a ſtrong fortreſs. It is ſaid to have been built by ſome *Hollanders* of diſtinction, who fled hither on account of the murder of Count *Florentius* V. from whom it had the name of *Holland*. Its ſituation renders it naturally ſtrong; beſides, it is ſurrounded with a wall and towers. The ſtreets are long and broad, and the houſes well-built. To this town belong two ſuburbs, ſome pleaſant gardens, and ſeveral country ſeats; and the inhabitants have a free fiſhery, and the liberty of going out in their boats on the *Drauſen*-lake. St. *Bartholomew*'s church is a large handſome ſtructure. The Calviniſts celebrate Divine Service in a large hall belonging to the caſtle; and without the town ſtands St. *George*'s church. Here is alſo a good hoſpital, and the preſent edifice was built in the year 1690. This town was formerly mortgaged to Baron *Czehmen*; but the Margrave *George Frederick* redeemed it in 1576 for 30,000 guilders. It was conſumed by fire

fire in the years 1543, 1610, 1663 and 1695. *Holland* has undergone ſeveral viciſſitudes in the frequent wars between the *Poles* and *Swedes*. In the year 1521 it was taken by the former. In 1722 ſalt-works were ſet up, and in 1728 a magazine for corn and forage was erected in this town. The preſent caſtle was begun by Duke *Albert*, and compleated by *George Frederick*. It is ſurrounded by moats and walls, and has draw-bridges, and fine apartments which yield a noble proſpect.

Muhlhauſen, a mean little town, which was built in 1365, and conſumed by fire in 1455. Many ridiculous ſtories are told of its inhabitants; but they ſeem to be borrowed from fabulous books and idle traditions.

Schlobitten, a remarkale caſtle belonging to the Counts of *Dohna*. It has elegant apartments which are richly furniſhed, a fine library, and a handſome wardrobe. The water is conveyed hither by a curious aqueduct.

Schlodien is alſo a caſtle belonging to the ſame noble family. It is remarkable for its pleaſant ſituation, and elegant ornaments. In theſe parts are ſeveral ſeats belonging to Count *Dohna*, and other Noblemen, where no expence has been ſpared to improve the beauties of Nature with the embelliſhments of Art.

Quittainen, a caſtle and Lordſhip belonging to Count *Donhof*.

The LITHUANIAN DEPARTMENT.

THIS diviſion comprehends eighteen towns, ſixty-two *Amts* or Diſtricts, and one hundred and five pariſhes; and the *Haupt-amts* or Governments in this department I ſhall deſcribe in the following order.

I. The *LITHUANIAN* GOVERNMENTS.

LITTLE LITHUANIA is twenty-four *German* miles in length, and from eight to twelve in breadth. This country was anciently over-run with thickets and woods; and in the year 1710, it was almoſt depopulated by the peſtilence. In 1720, King *Frederick William*, at the expence of five millions of Rix-dollars, induced 20,000 *Switzers*, *French* Proteſtants, *Palatines*, and *Franconians* to ſettle in this country; and in 1732, 350,000 dollars were alſo diſtributed among a freſh colony of 12,500 *Saltzburgers*. By the ſkill and induſtry of theſe emigrants this deſolate country has been extremely well cultivated. The ſuperfluous woods have been rooted up, the moraſſes drained, and a great number of towns, villages, farm-houſes, and churches built; ſo that in few years the country has put on quite a new appearance, and now makes ample returns for the money which his

Pruſſian

Pruſſian Majeſty laid out upon it. The richneſs of the paſtures, the many thouſand Laſts of corn which are either laid up in the King's granaries, or exported; the fine horned cattle, excellent horſes, and numerous flocks of ſheep, with the excellent butter, cheeſe, &c. which this country affords, are inconteſtible proofs of its uncommon fertility. It likewiſe abounds with wood for fuel, and has plenty of fiſh and game. Several manufactures are alſo eſtabliſhed here; particularly for coarſe and fine cloth, leather, &c. The ancient inhabitants of this country have a peculiar language, into which the Bible, the Catechiſm and ſome books of devotion have lately been tranſlated. The *Lithuanians* are by no means ſo ſimple and ſtupid as they are generally repreſented; but they have their good and ill qualities like other nations. Among the coloniſts, the *Switzers* are moſtly employed in graſing and breeding cattle; the *French* are very well verſed in trade, and ſkilful in the cultivation of tobacco, which they have introduced into this country; and the *Saltzburgers* are remarkable for their ſkill in agriculture. The *Switzers*, *French*, and *Franconians* are all Calviniſts; ſo that there are ten *German* and *French* Reformed pariſhes, as they are called, in *Little Lithuania*. The reſt are *Lutherans*, with very few Papiſts among them.

The *Lithuanian* Governments or *Haupt-amts* are,

1. The Government of MEMEL. The ſoil is but indifferent, and the air ſomething ſharp in this Diſtrict. It has nine churches which are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Memel*. In this Government lies

Memel, a trading town, fortreſs, and port ſeated on the bay called *Curiſche-Haf*. It was built in the year 1279, and fortified in 1312; and in the year 1328, it was given up by the Governor of *Livonia* to the Great-Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order ſettled in *Pruſſia*. This town on one ſide, has the *Baltic*, and on the other the *Curiſche-Haf*; beſides theſe it is alſo watered by the river *Dange*. The harbour is deep, and has a very good entrance; and, within theſe few years, has been improved with two moles, which are carried above fifty rods into the *Haf* or bay, and were raiſed at the expence of 11,000 dollars. *Memel* lies under the guns of the fort, and is well inhabited: It conſiſts of above four hundred houſes. Beſides the *German* town-church, here are a *Lithuanian* and a Calviniſt church. The Burghers, who are divided into thoſe of *Altſtadt* or the *Old Town* and *Frederickſtadt*, are employed in commerce, brewing, ſoap-boiling, agriculture, fiſhing, &c. Great quantities of flax, lin-ſeed, thread, and hemp are annually exported from this town. In 1752, ſeventy ſhips arrived in this port, and ſixty-nine ſailed from hence to other ports. *Memel* is fortified with three whole and two half baſtions, with other works, all in the modern way. It was formerly one of the *Hanſe-towns*; and as ſuch, its College of Juſtice in 1254 admitted the *Lubeck* law. A royal magazine, a ſalt-factory, and a poſt-houſe of a conſiderable revenue

are eſtabliſhed in this town. The citadel conſiſts of four baſtions which are pretty regular, with ravelines and half-moons. The buildings and apartments in this citadel were much improved by the Elector *Frederick William* and King *Frederick* I. The moſt remarkable things in it are the two arſenals, the ſuperb houſe of the Commandant, the garriſon-church, and the powder-magazine. In 1323, 1379, 1457, 1540, and 1678 this town ſuffered greatly by fire.

To this Government alſo belong

Ruſs, a ſmall Diſtrict at the mouth of a river of the ſame name, in which there is the fineſt ſalmon fiſhery in theſe parts.

Heidekrug, a ſmall town of good buſineſs.

Werden, a large church-village, where a market is held, on the river *Schiſche*.

2. The Government of TILSIT, or TILSE, contains eleven churches which are under the direction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Tilſit*.

In this Diſtrict lies

Tilſit, a city of conſiderable note, which, next to *Konigsberg*, is the largeſt and moſt opulent town in *Pruſſia*, and carries on the greateſt trade. It obtained the privileges of a city in 1552; though the caſtle is ſaid to have been ſtanding ſo early as the year 1289. The river *Memel*, which runs along the north ſide of the town, opens to it a very advantageous trade with *Konigsberg* in corn, lin-ſeed, butter and other proviſions. *Tilſit*, properly ſo called, conſiſts of two long ſtreets of a proportionate breadth, which are called the *German-ſtreet* and the *High-ſtreet*, contiguous to which is the ſuburbs called the *Liberty*. The number of houſes in this city is about ſix hundred, and the inhabitants amount to 7000 ſouls. The eccleſiaſtical buildings are an Evangelical or Lutheran *German* church, a *Lithuanian* church and a Calviniſt or Reformed church. Without the town ſtands a *Lutheran* chapel, and about an *Engliſh* mile from it a *Roman* catholic chapel. Near the *German* church is the royal provincial ſchool. Here is an hoſpital where ninety indigent perſons have a comfortable ſubſiſtence; and in the peſt-houſe the ſick and lame, as well as thoſe who are infected with the plague, are carefully provided for. Here is alſo a *Pauperhaus*, as it is called, in which ten poor boys are maintained, and a charitable foundation for widows. A ſalt-factory is likewiſe eſtabliſhed in this town. The flat country about *Tilſit* which is about four *German* miles in length, and as many in breadth is one of the moſt fertile ſpots in the whole kingdom. The inhabitants of it breed great numbers of horned cattle, and furniſh not only *Pruſſia*, but likewiſe other provinces with excellent butter and cheeſe; and the fiſheries in this place are alſo conſiderable. The horſes are large and ſtrong, but clumſey. Barley is almoſt the only grain ſown in theſe parts; which afford little or no wood. The marſh-land is, in ſpring, expoſed to inundations by the overflowing of the rivers, which often do great damages. In this level near the old *Gilge* is *Kaukenen* a royal manor and church-village with a market. *Ran-*

Rautenburg, a conſiderable and extenſive eſtate, which, at preſent, belongs to the *Kaiſerling* family; and

Schnecken, a hunting ſeat, which ſtands in the midſt of a large foreſt frequented by great numbers of elks, and near the river *Schnecken*; are both in this Government.

3. The Government of RAGNIT, which is inhabited chiefly by *Saltzburg* colonies, who carry on a great trade in flax and lin-ſeed. This Diſtrict includes nine churches which are under the Arch-Presbyter of *Ragnit*. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Ragnit, a ſmall town on the river *Mummel* or *Memel*, which is ſurrounded with palliſadoes, and was endowed with the privileges of a town in 1722. Its caſtle is one of the moſt ancient in the country, and was famous even in the times of Paganiſm. It was rebuilt in the year 1255 with additional works by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; but being laid in aſhes by the Pagans, it was rebuilt a ſecond time in 1357, and called *Landſhuth*; but afterwards it had the name of *Ragnit*, which it ſtill retains, from the river which runs cloſe by it. In this caſtle is a very large royal magazine for proviſions, *&c.* and the proſpect from that part of it which is called *Konigsberg* is hardly to be equalled.

Abſteinen a Diſtrict and farm-houſe on the other ſide of the *Memel*. It is a mountainous but very pleaſant country, and from its extraordinary fertility in corn and paſturage is called the 'Larder of *Lithuania*.' Here are very extraordinary flocks of ſheep, a great plenty of all kind of game, and excellent horſes.

Pilkallen, which was formerly a village, but in 1724 it became a town, and continues in a flouriſhing condition.

Schirwind, a mean town, which, before the year 1725, was only a poor village.

4. The Government of INSTERBURG is the largeſt *Haupt-amt* in *Pruſſia*; for it contains thirty *Kammer-amts* or ſmall Diſtricts, forty-three pariſhes, five towns, five caſtles, and above eight hundred villages large and ſmall. It alſo includes an area of above 20,000 Hides of land. The churches in this Government, are ſubject to the Arch-Preſbyter of *Inſterburg*; ten country churches excepted, which in 1726 were aſſigned to the newly erected Preſbytery of *Staaluphen*.

In this Government are the following remarkable places.

Inſterburg, a town of ſome note, ſeated on the *Angerap*, near its conflux with the *Inſter* where it aſſumes the name of *Pregel*, a river famous for its commerce. This town was built in 1572, and ſurrounded with palliſadoes in 1727: It contains about three hundred and fifty houſes and 3000 inhabitants. Beſides the Lutheran churches, here is alſo a place of worſhip for the Calviniſts. *Inſterburg* carries on a conſiderable trade in corn and beer; and the latter is famous both for its wholſomneſs and ſtrength. Here is alſo a Court of Juſtice. The

caſtle was built in the middle of the fourteenth century, and much improved by King *Frederick William:* It has, at preſent a granary and ſalt-factory. In the year 1724, a Court of Judicature for the adminiſtration of juſtice in the *Lithuanian* Governments or *Haupt-amts* was erected here. In 1655, *Maria Eleanora*, Dowager of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, died in this town.

Georgenburg, a caſtle, with a Diſtrict and church-village.

Gumbinnen, a regular town built, ſince the year 1725, in a very pleaſant and fertile country on the river *Piſſe*. It conſiſts of about two hundred houſes; and the number of its inhabitants amounts to 3000. The ancient *Deputation-Chamber* and the preſent *War* and *Demeſne-Chambers* have been removed to this place. The public buildings in this town are the *Conference-houſe*, the town-houſe, and the magazine, which was built in 1742 at the expence of 11,000 dollars; the Calviniſt church in the *New-town*, the Lutheran church in the *Old-town*; and the *Saltzburg* alms-houſe, which has a particular chaplain. Here is a good cloth-manufacture.

Darkehmen, a mean town, which obtained its privileges in the year 1725, and in 1732 was rendered more populous by a colony of *Saltzburgers* who ſettled there. Here is a flouriſhing cloth and woollen manufacture; alſo tobacco and gunpowder are prepared in this town.

Goldapp, a place of ſome trade, but mean and dirty: it was built by the Margrave *Albert* in the year 1564, and is a frontier town on the borders of *Poland*.

Kiauten, a ſmall Diſtrict in a hilly country, where a flatting mill, a ſmelting furnace, and a paper mill are ſet up.

Stallupehenen, a newly built town, to which a charter was granted in the year 1722. The inhabitants trade conſiderably in cattle; and a good fair is held here. The late inſtitution of an Arch-Preſbytery in this town has been mentioned above. Freſh water and wood for fuel are very ſcarce here.

II. The *POLISH* GOVERNMENTS.

Theſe *Haupt-amts* are as follows.

1. THE Government of OLETZKO, which contains the *amts* or ſmall Diſtricts of *Stradaunen*, *Polommen*, and *Czichen*. The eleven churches belonging to this Government are ſubject to the viſitation of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Lik*; and the moſt remarkable places in it are,

Oletzko, a caſtle, the inſide of which was much embelliſhed in the year 1640. The town of *Marggrabowa*, which ſtands near this caſtle, is both regular and large. It derives its name from the founder, Margave *Albert*, who

who built it in memory of the interview he had here with *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*; and the latter, in 1560, built a town which he called *Auguſtowa* on the *Poliſh* frontiers, about eight *German* miles diſtant from *Marggrabowa*. The market place is the largeſt area in all the towns in *Pruſſia*, and on it ſtands the church quite detached from any other building. In the neighbourhood of *Marggrabowa* the *Swediſh* and electoral troops defeated the *Tartars* in 1656, and releaſed the Prince of *Radzivil*, who had been taken priſoner by them.

Kalinowen, a market-village on the frontiers of *Poland*.

Widminnen, a large church-village conſiſting of two congregations.

2. The Government of LOTZEN. The churches in this Diſtrict are ſubordinate to the Arch-Preſbyter of *Angerburg*; and the moſt remarkable places in it are,

Lotzen, a ſmall town, with a caſtle built in 1285. It is ſituated in a well watered delightful country which yields plenty of all ſorts of game, and ſtands on a canal which joins the *Leventin* and *Angerburg* lakes. Some ancient *Roman* coins have been found near this town.

Groſs-Sturlack, a ſeat belonging to Baron *Shenk* of *Tautenburg*.

3. The Government of LIK in *Old Sudavia* derives its name from the river *Lik*. In this Diſtrict are five churches, which together with the eleven churches in the Government of *Oletzko* are under the juriſdiction of the Arch-Preſbyter of *Lik*.

Lik, in Latin *Licca*, a trading town ſeated on the *Satrind*-lake. Here is nothing worthy of notice but the church, the provincial ſchool, which was founded in 1588 and was formerly in a very flouriſhing condition, the caſtle, and the Arch-Preſbyter's manſion houſe. The caſtle belonging to *Lik*, which was built in 1272, ſtands very pleaſantly on an iſland. This country ſuffered extremely by the inhuman ravages of the *Tartars* in 1656; till at laſt the famous battle of *Warſaw* drove thoſe barbarians from the frontiers. In 1662 it was declared a town, and received its privileges. The adjacent country abounds with fiſh and other proviſions, and yields plenty of wood.

Goldap, a ſmall, but well built town.

Oſtrokolln, a church-village, to which alſo the village of *Proſtken* belongs. In the latter a pillar was erected in the year 1545 as a boundary on the ſide of *Great Lithuania*, with a *Latin* inſcription in further confirmation of the treaty of peace concluded with *Poland* in 1525.

The villages of *Kuſſinowen* and *Taluſſen*, which are inhabited moſtly by *Arians*, who behave in a very quiet inoffenſive manner, and perform their devotions in private houſes.

4. The Government of RHEIN, which lies in *Sudavia*, and was formerly well peopled. This Diſtrict contains ſeven churches, four of which are under the Arch-Preſbyter of *Raſtenburg*, and the other three belong to *Johannesburg*.

Rhein, a ſmall town on the *Spirding*-lake, but its caſtle which was built about the middle of the fourteenth century, is ſpacious and ſtrong, and an inferior juriſdiction belongs to it.

Aris, a ſmall town with a little Diſtrict; King *Frederick William* granted it the privileges of a town, and it has continued to flouriſh ever ſince.

Eichmedin, a ſeat belonging to Baron *Hoverbeck*.

Nicolayken lies near the *Spirding-Sea* which is the largeſt lake in the country. It is but ſmall, and was declared a town in the year 1722.

5. The Government of JOHANNESBURG contains five churches, which have their own Arch-Preſbyter, who alſo has juriſdiction over three churches in the *Haupt-amt* of *Rhein*. The moſt remarkable places in this Government are,

Johannesburg, a ſmall, but handſome town ſeated on a plain near the *Spirding*-lake, in which are four iſlands, and plenty of fiſh. Here is a caſtle which was once fortified; and an Arch-Preſbyter reſides in this town. In 1698, the Elector *Frederick* had an interview of four days with *Auguſtus* II. then newly elected King of *Poland*, at *Johannesburg*. A large granary, and a magazine for forage were erected here in 1728.

Biala a ſmall town which received its privileges in 1722.

Note. Beſides the *Haut-aempter* or Governments which we have been deſcribing, his *Pruſſian* Majeſty is alſo poſſeſſed of the following Lordſhips in the *Poliſh* territories.

1. TAUROGGEN, which is a large Diſtrict near the river *Juhr* in *Samogitia*, and about three *German* miles from *Tilſit*. It conſiſts of above three hundred hides of land, and has an excellent breed of horſes: It alſo abounds with fiſh, and yields plenty of game. *Tauroggen* devolved to the houſe of *Brandenburg*, in 1691, on the demiſe of the Princeſs of *Radzivil*. The *Pruſſian* ſteward here is accountable to the Chamber of Revenues in *Lithuania*.

2. SERREY in the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* and the palatinate of *Trocko*. It lies not far from *Kauen*, and conſiſts of near ſix hundred hides of land, on which are twenty-two villages, three manors, and twenty lakes and ponds. This lordſhip devolved to the houſe of *Brandenburg* by the marriage of the Princeſs *Ludovica Carolina* of *Radzivil* with *Lewis* Margrave of *Brandenburg*. In 1703, and 1734, it ſuffered ſeveral calamities. In the little town on this territory the Calviniſts and Papiſts have each a church, and the Jews a ſynagogue.

POLAND,

POLAND, LITHUANIA,

POLISH PRUSSIA,

AND

COURLAND,


A MAP of the KINGDOM of POLAND.
Drawn from the Best Authorities
By T. Kitchin, Geogr.
Gulf of Riga
Riga
Mitau
Libau
Windau
Memel
Konigsberg
Pillau
Elbing
Marienburg
Dantzick
Thorn
Culm
Graudentz
Gnesna
Posnan
Warsaw
Prague
Cracow
Lublin
Chelm
Zamosck
Brody
Lemberg
Halicz
Dniester R.
Moldavia
Transil-vania
Carpathian Mountains
P.T OF HUNGARY
PARTOF SILESIA
POMERANIA
BRANDENBURG
LITTLE POLAND
GREAT POLAND
RED RUSSIA
VOLHINIA
PODOLIA
POCUTIA
LITHUANIA
SAMOGITIA
CURLAND
LIVONIA
PRUSSIA
BALTIC SEA
Luban
Polotsk
Witepsk
Smolensko
Mohilow
Orsha
Mscislaw
Minsk
Nowogrodek
Grodno
Bielica
Brzesc
Pinsk
Wolkowisk
Wilna
Troki
Kowna
Dunaburg
Drissa
Braslaw
Dwinsk
Dryssa
Disna
Lida
Slonim
Nowogrodek
Zaslaw
Ostrog
Lucko
Dubno
Rowno
Zytomirz
Kiow
Kaminiec
Bar
Jaruga
Mohilow
Moldavia
Jassy
Dniester R.
Pruth R.
Danube R.
Wisloka R.
Vistula R.
Bug R.
Niemen R.
Dwina R.
Borysthenes R.


British Miles 69 to a Degree
German Miles 15 to a Degree
Polish Miles 90 to a Degree
Smolensk
Roslavl
Lubitsch
Tshernigon
Kiew
Deser
Long. E. from Ferro

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

KINGDOM OF POLAND.

§. 1. OMITTING the moſt ancient maps of the kingdom of *Poland*, I ſhall only take notice of the beſt among the modern, which are the following, viz. *Dahlberg*'s map in *Puffendorf*'s *Res Geſtæ Caroli Guſtavi*; that of *Vaſſour*; *Homann*'s map, drawn *ad mentem Starolvolſcii*, in the year 1739; *Allard*'s and *De L'Iſle*'s maps; and that delineated by M. *Mayer* in 1750, entitled *Mappa Geographica regni Poloniæ, ex noviſſimis quotquot ſunt mappis ſpecialibus compoſita, et ad leges ſtereographicæ projectionis revocatæ*, Printed by *Homann*'s heirs. The laſt certainly exceeds all the preceding maps in accuracy, &c. however, the names of a great number of places are omitted in it. We are alſo in expectation of a complete collection of maps repreſenting the particular provinces of *Poland*, or a *Poliſh Atlas*, which is to be publiſhed in that country. *Mayer* has alſo given us a beautiful map of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* from a draught by *Peter Nieprecki*, a Jeſuit, which was publiſhed in 1749 by *Homann*'s heirs.

§. 2. The word *Pole*, in the *Poliſh* language, ſignifies a flat, level country; but that the kingdom and the whole nation derive their name from that origin, cannot be affirmed with any certainty.

This large kingdom from Eaſt to Weſt is two hundred *German* or geographical miles in length, and one hundred and forty in breadth. Towards the North it borders on *Pruſſia*, *Courland*, *Livonia*, and *Ruſſia*, and towards the Eaſt on *Ruſſia* and *Little Tartary*; to the South it is bounded by *Moldavia*, *Tranſylvania* and *Hungary*, and to the Weſt by *Sileſia*, *Brandenburg*, and *Pomerania*.

§. 3. The air is ſomething cold, but ſalubrious; and the country is for the moſt part level, and has but few hills. On the *Carpathian* * mountains,

* Theſe are called the *Krapack* mountains in the maps, and I know not with what propriety they are called *Carpathian* mountains; for *Carpathus* is an iſland in the *Mediterranean*, now called *Scarpanto*.

which

which ſeparate *Poland* from *Hungary*, the air is very cold; for it ſnows there frequently in the midſt of ſummer, and in ſome parts of them the ſnow never melts. The *Beſciatian* mountains are a continuation of the *Carpathian* chain of hills.

The ſoil of this country is exceeding fertile, and yields plenty of grain, of which there cannot be a greater proof than that near 4000 veſſels and floats, moſt of which are laden with corn, annually paſs down the *Viſtula* to *Dantzick*. In *Podolia*, *Volhynia*, the *Ukraine*, and the province of *Ruſſia* corn grows in vaſt plenty, and with little culture or manure. In *Great* and *Little Poland* agriculture requires more attention and labour; but the harveſts make ample amends for the pains of the induſtrious peaſant. The ſoil of *Lithuania* is as fruitful as that of *Podolia*; and *Samogitia* produces abundance of grain, beſides hemp and flax. *Poliſh Pruſſia* is alſo a very fertile country. Here are likewiſe excellent paſtures; and in *Podolia* the graſs grows to ſuch a height, that ſometimes a perſon cannot ſee the horns of the cattle when they are graſing in the meadows. The following is a remarkable inſtance of the fertility of the ſoil, and the plenty of all kinds of proviſions in this country; namely, that from the year 1701 to 1718, during which time there were ſeveral armies in *Poland*, there was not the leaſt ſcarcity of bread.

Travellers can ſeldom meet with any thing to eat in the country inns in *Poland*; but are obliged to buy proviſions in the towns and carry them with their baggage. This inconveniency, however, is owing to a want of honeſty in the natives when they travel; for the inn-keepers never make any extraordinary proviſion, becauſe they find by experience, that their gueſts are ſeldom in the mind to make any returns for their entertainment.

Peat, oker of all kinds, chalk, *Belemnites*, agate, chalcedony, cornelians, onyxes, opals, jaſper, fine rock cryſtal, amethyſts, granite, topazes, ſapphires, and even rubies and diamonds are found in *Poland*. This country likewiſe affords *Marienglas* or *Muſcovy* glaſs, talc, alum, ſalt-petre, amber, pit-coal, and an inexhauſtible quantity of ſalt which is hewn out of the rock in large blocks, and ſalt-ſprings; alſo ſpar, quickſilver, *Lapis calaminaris*, iron, lead, a ſmall quantity of tin, gold and ſilver; but there are no mines of the two laſt metals wrought in *Poland*.

The *Poliſh* Manna is produced by an herb that grows in the meadows and fenny grounds; and it is gathered, in great quantities, from the twentieth of *June* to the end of *July*. The Poliſh *Kermes*-berries are always gathered in *May*, before they are quite ripe; for in the month of *July* they ſwarm with inſects, which leave a kind of protuberances behind them; ſo that the berries are rendered unfit either for dying or medicine. Great quantities of theſe berries grow in the *Ukraine* and in the neighbourhood of *Warſaw* and *Cracow*; and were formerly exported to *Genoa* and *Florence*. Here are ſeveral woods of oak, beech, pine, and fir-trees.

Poland alſo yields abundance of honey and wax; and a great quantity of mead is made of the former, which liquor derives its name from the *Poliſh* word *Miod*, which ſignifies honey.

Horned cattle are bred in this country in ſuch numbers, that 80, or 90,000 oxen are driven every year out of *Poland*. The *Poliſh* horſes are very ſtrong, ſwift, and beautiful. Of theſe there are great numbers in this country, and likewiſe of wild beaſts; as the elk, called in the *Poliſh* language *Los*, or a wild ram with one horn; the *Biſon** called *Zubr* by the *Poles*; the hyena, in the *Poliſh* language called *Roſomak*; the *Suhak*, which reſembles a wild goat; and laſtly, the *Aurrachs* are very common in *Poland*.

There are ſeveral lakes in *Great Poland*, ſome of which abound with fiſh. The moſt remarkable among theſe is the *Gopler*-lake in the *Woywodſhip* or Palatinate of *Brezeſc* in *Cujavia*, which is five *German* miles in length, and half a mile in breadth. In the other provinces are ſeveral large fiſh ponds. As for the *Poliſh* rivers, the eight following are the moſt remarkable.

1. The *Duna* or *Dzwina*, in Latin *Duna* and in Poliſh *Kubo*, has its ſource in *Ruſſia*, and after a long courſe through *Lithuania* empties itſelf into the *Baltic*.

2. The *Memel*, called in Latin *Chronus*, and in Poliſh *Niemen*, riſes in the Palatinate of *Novogrodeck*, and runs through *Lithuania* and *Pruſſia* into the bay called *Curiſche-Haf*.

3. The *Weichſel*, called in Latin *Viſtula*, and in Poliſh *Wiſla*, i. e. 'water 'that runs down a declivity,' riſes in *Hungary* among the *Carpathian* mountains, runs through *Poland*; and, after receiving ſeveral other ſtreams in this kingdom, and in *Pruſſia*, it partly diſcharges itſelf into the *Baltic* near *Dantzick*, and by two other channels called the *Nogat* and the *Old Viſtula*, runs into the bay of *Friſche-Haf*. The *Viſtula* is, indeed, very broad; but, at the ſame time, of no great depth.

4. The *Warta* has its ſource in the Palatinate of *Cracow*, and runs into the *Oder* a little above *Cuſtrin*.

5. The *Nieſter* or *Dnieſter*, in Latin *Danaſtris*, is the *Tyras* or *Tyres* of the Ancients. It riſes in a lake among the *Carpathian* mountains, and, dividing *Poland* from *Moldavia* in its courſe, falls into the *Pontus Euxinus* or *Black Sea*.

6. The *Bog*, which has its ſource in *Podolia*, and runs into the *Dnieper*.

7. The *Nieper* or *Dnieper*, in Latin *Danapris* or *Boryſthenes*, riſes in the mountains of *Budin* in *Ruſſia*, and after a courſe of forty days journey, or two hundred *German* miles, diſcharges itſelf into the *Black-Sea*.

8. The *Przypiecz*, in Latin *Pripetius*, has its ſource in the Palatinate of *Chelm* in *Red Ruſſia*, and runs into the *Dnieper*.

§. 4. The *Poles*, when conſidered as members of the community, are either Nobles; Citizens, in which claſs merchants, artiſts, and mechanics are included; or Peaſants, who are moſtly vaſſals to the Nobles.

* The *Biſont* or *Biſon* is an animal reſembling a wild bull, or buffalo.

The *Poliſh* towns are, for the moſt part, built with wood; and the villages conſiſt of mean cottages, or huts.

The Nobles of *Poland* have, from time immemorial, reſided in the country. Every Nobleman lives in his own village, ſeat, or caſtle; manages his eſtate by his vaſſals or hired ſervants; and maintains himſelf and whole family by agriculture, breeding of bees, grazing, and hunting. Some of the Nobility alſo ſpend part of their time in the cities or towns. A Nobleman in the *Poliſh* language is called *Szlakcic* *, and the dignity is termed *Shlaketſtwo*. There are among the *Poliſh* Nobility certain *Gentes* or tribes; and theſe again are divided into diſtinct families: This diſtinction, however, is not owing to the different places or provinces where they live; but they are ranked according to the names and arms they bear. Though *Poland* has its Princes, Counts, and Barons; yet the whole nobleſſe are naturally on a level, excepting the difference ariſing from the poſts ſome of them enjoy. Hence all thoſe who are of noble birth call one another brothers. However, Noblemen whoſe circumſtances are low ſubmit to enter into the ſervice of the richer ſort, eſpecially if the latter are in any eminent poſt, either for a comfortable ſubſiſtence, or to learn politeneſs and addreſs, and, perhaps, to raiſe their fortunes; and this is accounted no diſgrace. The *Poliſh* Nobility enjoy a great many conſiderable privileges; and, indeed, the ſo much boaſted *Poliſh* Liberty is properly limited to the Nobles only: for they have the power of life and death over their vaſſals, who, on that account, groan under an oppreſſive vaſſalage, or rather ſlavery. Every Nobleman is abſolute Lord of his eſtates; ſo that the King can require no ſubſidy from him; nor is he obliged to maintain or find quarter for any ſoldiers. If a foreigner dies on a Nobleman's eſtate in *Poland* without leaving any heirs, his effects fall to the Lord of the manor as an eſcheat. But on the demiſe of a Nobleman without heirs, his eſtate does not eſcheat to the King, whilſt there are any perſons living who are related in the eighth degree to the deceaſed; and if a Nobleman dies without heirs, or any ſuch relations, the King cannot appropriate his eſtate to himſelf, but is obliged to beſtow it on ſome other Nobleman of merit. The houſe of a Nobleman is a ſecure aſylum for perſons who have committed any crime; for none muſt preſume to take them from thence by force. The Judges in the towns dare not cauſe a Nobleman's vaſſal to be arreſted, or his effects to be ſeized. Noblemen and their vaſſals pay no toll or duty for the cattle, corn, *&c.* which they ſend out of the kingdom for ſale: They have alſo the liberty of working any mines or ſalt-works on their own eſtates. No magiſtrate, nor even the King himſelf, can cauſe a Nobleman to be arreſted, without ſignifying the crime he is guilty of, and a previous citation; unleſs he be a robber and have been three times impeached by his aſſociates;

* The *German* way of writing *Poliſh* words make them ſtill more difficult to be pronounced; I have therefore kept as near the *Engliſh* orthography as I could.

or

or be ſurprized in any other crime *ipſo facto*; or, laſtly, when he cannot, or will not put in bail. A Nobleman is ſubject to none but the King: However, he is not obliged to appear before his Majeſty out of the kingdom, when cited on any cauſe, unleſs it relate to the Royal treaſury; but muſt be judged in *Poland*. All eccleſiaſtical dignities and civil poſts in this kingdom are to be held only by the Nobility. None but Noblemen are qualified to be proprietors of eſtates, except the Burghers of the cities of *Thorn*, *Cracow*, *Vilna*, *Lemberg*, and *Lublin*, who have the privilege of purchaſing lands. Any Nobleman may purchaſe a houſe, and live in a city or town: but he muſt then ſubmit to ſerve municipal offices; and if he is concerned in trade or commerce, he forfeits the privileges of a Noble *Pole*. Every Nobleman has a vote in the election of a King; and is even qualified to wear the crown, if he be raiſed to it by the free choice of the reſt of the Nobility. The *Poliſh* Nobility has alſo ſome excluſive advantages in purchaſing ſalt. Theſe and other important privileges the Nobles of *Poland* enjoy partly by the indulgence of their Kings, and partly by ancient cuſtom or preſcription. A perſon deſcended from noble anceſtors is much more honoured than one that is newly enobled. All civil cauſes relating to the Nobility are tried in the Provincial Courts of Judicature; but if a Nobleman commence a ſuit with the farmers of the royal demeſnes, a Commiſſorial-Court is appointed to terminate the diſpute. The *Poliſh* Burghers alſo enjoy ſome valuable privileges.

§. 5. The *Poliſh* language is derived from the old *Sclavonic*; however, it differs extremely from all the other languages which come from the ſame ſource.

The *High-Dutch* language is very much in vogue in *Poland*; and, indeed, the *Germans* have done the *Poles* ſome very conſiderable ſervices; for they firſt introduced into *Poland* a taſte for learning, opened the channels of commerce, and built ſeveral towns, which they alſo raiſed to a flouriſhing condition. *Caſimir the Great* was very ſenſible of the great advantages which *Poland* might reap from *German* colonies. Accordingly that Prince invited them to ſettle in his kingdom by the greateſt encouragements; for he granted them the moſt improvable ſpots in *Poland*, and even permitted them to be governed by their own laws.

The *Latin* tongue is alſo commonly ſpoken in *Poland* even by the lower claſs of people; but without any regard to accent, quantity, or purity of language *.

§. 6. From the time of King *Sigiſmund* I. to the reign of *Wladiſlaus* IV. was the interval when Arts and Sciences flouriſhed moſt in *Poland*. Since that Æra the *Poliſh* Muſes ſeem to have drooped and languiſhed: However, they now begin to revive again. For, at preſent, the purity and

* The ſame may be ſaid of *Germany*; the following ſentence, as I have accented it, being generally fathered upon the inhabitants of that country: *Nos Gérmani non cúramus quantitatem Syllábarum.*

The *Poliſh* towns are, for the moſt part, built with wood; and the villages conſiſt of mean cottages, or huts.

The Nobles of *Poland* have, from time immemorial, reſided in the country. Every Nobleman lives in his own village, ſeat, or caſtle; manages his eſtate by his vaſſals or hired ſervants; and maintains himſelf and whole family by agriculture, breeding of bees, grazing, and hunting. Some of the Nobility alſo ſpend part of their time in the cities or towns. A Nobleman in the *Poliſh* language is called *Szlakcic* *, and the dignity is termed *Shlaketſtwo*. There are among the *Poliſh* Nobility certain *Gentes* or tribes; and theſe again are divided into diſtinct families: This diſtinction, however, is not owing to the different places or provinces where they live; but they are ranked according to the names and arms they bear. Though *Poland* has its Princes, Counts, and Barons; yet the whole nobleſſe are naturally on a level, excepting the difference ariſing from the poſts ſome of them enjoy. Hence all thoſe who are of noble birth call one another brothers. However, Noblemen whoſe circumſtances are low ſubmit to enter into the ſervice of the richer ſort, eſpecially if the latter are in any eminent poſt, either for a comfortable ſubſiſtence, or to learn politeneſs and addreſs, and, perhaps, to raiſe their fortunes; and this is accounted no diſgrace. The *Poliſh* Nobility enjoy a great many conſiderable privileges; and, indeed, the ſo much boaſted *Poliſh* Liberty is properly limited to the Nobles only: for they have the power of life and death over their vaſſals, who, on that account, groan under an oppreſſive vaſſalage, or rather ſlavery. Every Nobleman is abſolute Lord of his eſtates; ſo that the King can require no ſubſidy from him; nor is he obliged to maintain or find quarter for any ſoldiers. If a foreigner dies on a Nobleman's eſtate in *Poland* without leaving any heirs, his effects fall to the Lord of the manor as an eſcheat. But on the demiſe of a Nobleman without heirs, his eſtate does not eſcheat to the King, whilſt there are any perſons living who are related in the eighth degree to the deceaſed; and if a Nobleman dies without heirs, or any ſuch relations, the King cannot appropriate his eſtate to himſelf, but is obliged to beſtow it on ſome other Nobleman of merit. The houſe of a Nobleman is a ſecure aſylum for perſons who have committed any crime; for none muſt preſume to take them from thence by force. The Judges in the towns dare not cauſe a Nobleman's vaſſal to be arreſted, or his effects to be ſeized. Noblemen and their vaſſals pay no toll or duty for the cattle, corn, *&c.* which they ſend out of the kingdom for ſale: They have alſo the liberty of working any mines or ſalt-works on their own eſtates. No magiſtrate, nor even the King himſelf, can cauſe a Nobleman to be arreſted, without ſignifying the crime he is guilty of, and a previous citation; unleſs he be a robber and have been three times impeached by his aſſociates;

* The *German* way of writing *Poliſh* words make them ſtill more difficult to be pronounced; I have therefore kept as near the *Engliſh* orthography as I could.

or

or be ſurprized in any other crime *ipſo facto*; or, laſtly, when he cannot, or will not put in bail. A Nobleman is ſubject to none but the King: However, he is not obliged to appear before his Majeſty out of the kingdom, when cited on any cauſe, unleſs it relate to the Royal treaſury; but muſt be judged in *Poland*. All eccleſiaſtical dignities and civil poſts in this kingdom are to be held only by the Nobility. None but Noblemen are qualified to be proprietors of eſtates, except the Burghers of the cities of *Thorn*, *Cracow*, *Vilna*, *Lemberg*, and *Lublin*, who have the privilege of purchaſing lands. Any Nobleman may purchaſe a houſe, and live in a city or town: but he muſt then ſubmit to ſerve municipal offices; and if he is concerned in trade or commerce, he forfeits the privileges of a Noble *Pole*. Every Nobleman has a vote in the election of a King; and is even qualified to wear the crown, if he be raiſed to it by the free choice of the reſt of the Nobility. The *Poliſh* Nobility has alſo ſome excluſive advantages in purchaſing ſalt. Theſe and other important privileges the Nobles of *Poland* enjoy partly by the indulgence of their Kings, and partly by ancient cuſtom or preſcription. A perſon deſcended from noble anceſtors is much more honoured than one that is newly enobled. All civil cauſes relating to the Nobility are tried in the Provincial Courts of Judicature; but if a Nobleman commence a ſuit with the farmers of the royal demeſnes, a Commiſſorial-Court is appointed to terminate the diſpute. The *Poliſh* Burghers alſo enjoy ſome valuable privileges.

§. 5. The *Poliſh* language is derived from the old *Sclavonic*; however, it differs extremely from all the other languages which come from the ſame ſource.

The *High-Dutch* language is very much in vogue in *Poland*; and, indeed, the *Germans* have done the *Poles* ſome very conſiderable ſervices; for they firſt introduced into *Poland* a taſte for learning, opened the channels of commerce, and built ſeveral towns, which they alſo raiſed to a flouriſhing condition. *Caſimir the Great* was very ſenſible of the great advantages which *Poland* might reap from *German* colonies. Accordingly that Prince invited them to ſettle in his kingdom by the greateſt encouragements; for he granted them the moſt improvable ſpots in *Poland*, and even permitted them to be governed by their own laws.

The *Latin* tongue is alſo commonly ſpoken in *Poland* even by the lower claſs of people; but without any regard to accent, quantity, or purity of language *.

§. 6. From the time of King *Sigiſmund* I. to the reign of *Wladiſlaus* IV. was the interval when Arts and Sciences flouriſhed moſt in *Poland*. Since that Æra the *Poliſh* Muſes ſeem to have drooped and languiſhed: However, they now begin to revive again. For, at preſent, the purity and

* The ſame may be ſaid of *Germany*; the following ſentence, as I have accented it, being generally fathered upon the inhabitants of that country: *Nos Gérmani non cúramus quantitatem Syllábarum.*

elegance of the *Poliſh* and *Latin* languages are ſtudied, the New Philoſophy is introduced, the Mathematics are taught, and Natural Philoſophy flouriſhes, in *Poland*. The Learned in this country alſo apply themſelves to the ſtudy of the Hiſtory of *Poland*, which they cultivate and improve; and endeavour to make the good Writers of former ages better known, and uſeful to the preſent; and for this end, the valuable library of Count *Zaluſki* at *Warſaw* opens an ineſtimable treaſure of ancient Authors. The *Greek* lan guage alſo begins to be ſtudied in *Poland*; and literary correſpondences are carried on with learned foreigners. It is true, the preſs has not produced ſo many books in *Poland* as in other countries; but this may be imputed, in a great meaſure, to a want of able publiſhers, liberal patrons of learning, and well regulated printing-houſes.

§. 7. There are no manufactures in *Poland*; but all the commodities of the country are exported unwrought out of the kingdom. Religious zeal, or rather bigotry, is of infinite detriment to the trade and commerce of *Poland*, which, notwithſtanding all its natural advantages, is daily ſinking deeper and deeper into poverty; ſo that the commerce of *Poland* ſeems on the brink of ruin. The *Poles*, indeed, export grain of all kinds, flax, hemp, lin-ſeed, hops, honey, wax, tallow, hides, leather dreſſed in the *Ruſſian* manner, pitch, pot-aſh, maſts, deal-boards, ſhip and houſe timber, horned cattle, horſes and other home commodities; but theſe are greatly over-balanced by the imports, namely, wine (that of *Hungary* alone carrying ſome millions annually out of the kingdom,) ſpices, cloths, rich ſilk ſtuffs, fine linen, pearls, precious ſtones, plate, copper, braſs, ſteel, furrs, *&c.*

§. 8. As for the religion profeſſed in this country, it was decreed by the Conſtitutions of the Pacification Diet held in the year 1736, 'That no 'perſon ſhould be elected King of *Poland* and Great Duke of *Lithuania*, 'without firſt making a ſolemn profeſſion of the orthodox *Roman*-Catholic 'religion; and that the Queen muſt either have been brought up in that 'communion, or publicly declare herſelf a member of it.' Hence it appears that the Popiſh religion is looked upon as the eſtabliſhed, and orthodox religion in this country.

The *Diſſidentes*, i. e. the *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, and *Greeks*, by the treaties concluded with the ancient *Confederations*, and particularly the Conſtitution of the year 1717, are promiſed ſecurity as to their effects, and an equality with the other ſubjects as to their perſons. Some few of the *Greek* profeſſion have conformed to the *Romiſh* church, and are called *Unites*; but thoſe *Greeks* who perſiſt in their ſeparation, are called *Diſunites*. The Archbiſhop of *Polocko*, and four other Biſhops, are reckoned among the former.

Arians, by which name the *Socinians* are called here, Quakers, *Mennonites*, and Anabaptiſts, are not tolerated in *Poland*.

The Proteſtants, by virtue of the above-mentioned Conſtitutions, ſollicited for the free exerciſe of their religion on the foot of the treaty of *Oliva*; and

and for this end, ſeveral other Powers intereſted themſelves in their behalf. This procured them many fair promiſes; which, however, have not been fulfilled. On the contrary, a great number of their churches have actually been taken from them, or demoliſhed; and ſuch open violations of the laws of juſtice and equity are of late become more frequent; ſo that the Proteſtants have now only twenty-two churches in the cities and towns, and ſixty-five in the villages of *Poland*.

The *Greeks* are alſo no leſs oppreſſed in this Kingdom than the Proteſtants.

The Jews are indulged with great privileges, and are very numerous in *Poland*; hence this country is ſtiled the 'Paradiſe of the Jews.' In the ſecond volume of the *Callenbergiſchen Nachrichten von der fortwahrenden Bemuhung um das Heil des Judiſchen Volks*, printed in the year 1752, is inſerted a letter (p. 106, &c.) written by an old *Poliſh* General who was a native of *Germany*; by which it appears, that there are at leaſt above two millions of Jews only in the villages of *Poland:* and here it muſt be obſerved that there are at leaſt one, two, or three jewiſh families in every village, excluſive of the great numbers of Jews in the towns and inns. Their annual capitation or poll-tax amounts to 220,000 *Poliſh* guilders in the kingdom of *Poland*, and 120,000 in *Lithuania*, which makes, in the whole, the ſum of 56,666 rix-dollars; and this over and above the general impoſts and taxes.

It muſt be further obſerved with regard to the ſuperiority of the Popiſh religion here, that the King is ſtiled *Orthodoxus*, as a title of honour; that St. *Florian* and St. *Adalbert* are worſhipped as the Patron Saints of *Poland*; that the number of monaſteries in this kingdom amounts to five hundred and ſeventy-ſix, and of nunneries to one hundred and ſeventeen, beſides two hundred and forty-ſix ſeminaries or colleges, and thirty-one abbeys; and laſtly, that the clergy are poſſeſſed of two thirds of the lands and revenues of the kingdom.

§. 9. All the Writers, who have treated of the ancient hiſtory of *Poland*, are of opinion, that the preſent inhabitants were not the original poſſeſſors of this country; but emigrated hither as colonies from other parts. It is alſo the general opinion, that they came from *Sarmatia*, and ſettled on the banks of the *Viſtula:* But *Sarmatia* was a very extenſive country, and inhabited by various nations; from what part of it, therefore, did the *Poles* remove to this country? This may be ſhewn by attending to the name by which, the *Poles* call themſelves in their own language, viz. *Polacy*. It is well known, that among other nations in *Sarmatia* were a people called *Lazi*, of whom *Procopius* and *Agathias* have given an accurate deſcription; and that they dwelt in the ancient *Colchis* near the *Pontus Euxinus* or *Black-ſea*. From theſe, the learned M. *Lengnich* ſuppoſes the *Poles* to be deſcended; and that from hence they are called *Polacy*, i. e. the poſterity or deſcendants of the *Lazi*. It further appears that the name of the *Lazi* was corrupted into that of *Lech*; hence it is pretended, that the *Poles* marched into foreign countries under the conduct of an imaginary Prince of that name.

Theſe

Theſe *Lazi*, who were united with their neighbours the *Zechi*, and perhaps alſo mingled with the other *Sarmatians*, croſſed the rivers *Don*, *Nieper*, *Nieſter*, and the *Danube*, into *Pannonia*; and extending themſelves farther in their progreſs, the *Zechi* at laſt fixed their habitations near the *Elbe*, where *Bohemia* now lies, and the *Lazi* near the river *Warta*, in the country now called *Great Poland*. This appears to have happened a little before the 550th year of the Chriſtian *Æra*. The *Lazi*, *Zechi*, and other *Sarmatians* were in time ſo intermixed together, that even their names were no longer heard of; and they were promiſcuouſly called *Slavians* or *Sclavonians*, which name was firſt uſed in the ſixth century. After this the *Slavian* nations were diſtinguiſhed from each other; and a particular name was given to each of them. Among theſe were the *Licicavic Slavians*, who are firſt mentioned by *Witichind* of *Corvey*, an hiſtorian of the tenth century; and by this name, in all probability, he means the *Lazi*. Their King *Miſka* is the *Mieſko* or *Meſka* of the *Poles*, who by the modern hiſtorians is called *Mieciſlaus*, and was the firſt of the name that reigned over this nation. This is the account which M. *Lengnich* gives of the origin of the *Poles*; and a fuller detail of it is to be found in his diſſertation at the end of the *Poliſh* Hiſtory.

All the tradition about *Lech*, the pretended Founder of the *Poliſh* kingdom and nation, and of his ſucceſſors down to *Piaſt*, is obſcure, and entirely fabulous.

Piaſt, who, about the year of Chriſt 840 is ſaid to have been raiſed from a peaſant to be a Sovereign Prince, is remarkable as to theſe particulars; namely, that his family flouriſhed for ſeveral ages after in *Poland* and *Sileſia*; and that to this day all the Kings and even canditates for the crown, who are natives of *Poland*, are from him called *Piaſtes*.

Mieciſlaus I. the fourth from *Piaſt*, and great grandſon to that Prince, aſcended the throne in the year 964. He became a convert to the Chriſtian religion, and prevailed on his ſubjects to follow his example.

Boleſlaus I. His ſon and ſucceſſor, aſſumed the title of King; which dignity was continued by his ſucceſſor *Mieciſlaus* II. *Caſimir* I. and *Boleſlaus* II. But the regal title ceaſed at the death of the laſt mentioned Prince, and was not revived till the cloſe of the thirteenth century, in the perſon of *Premiſlaus*.

Boleſlaus III. a moſt warlike Prince, divided his dominions among his four ſons in 1138, to the prejudice of the fifth. This partition gave riſe to many diſputes and open quarrels. Before this, the above-mentioned *Premiſlaus*, Prince of *Great Poland*, had reaſſumed the title of King in 1295.

Uladiſlaus ſurnamed *the Little* made himſelf King of all *Poland* in the year 1309; and from that time it has been ſubject to one Sovereign.

Uladiſlaus's only ſon, *Caſimir the Great*, laid claim to *Red Ruſſia*, and made it a province of *Poland*; conferred great privileges on the Jews; and was the laſt Prince of the *Piaſtian*-line. To this excellent Prince

Poland

Poland owes its Laws, Courts of Juſtice, and Polity; and likewiſe moſt of its towns, caſtles, and other uſeful edifices.

After this Prince, *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, was alſo crowned King of *Poland*; and on his demiſe, *Hedwig*, his ſecond wife, was crowned Queen in the year 1384. *Jagello*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, embraced Chriſtianity in 1386, and at his baptiſm had the name of *Uladiſlaus*. He married the Queen, ſhared the Throne with her, and was the founder of a new royal family, which was called the *Jagellonian*-line. This Prince ſat on the Throne of *Poland* till the year 1572, and added the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* to the *Poliſh* dominions. He alſo reduced *Samogitia*, and in 1410, defeated the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order in the memorable battle of *Tannenberg*.

Jagello's ſecond ſon, *Caſimir* III. took that part of *Pruſſia*, which is, at preſent, called *Poliſh Pruſſia*, under his protection; and obliged the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order to hold the other part as a fief of *Poland*.

In the reign of *Sigiſmund* I. *Caſimir*'s youngeſt ſon, the Margrave *Albert* Grand-Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order was made Duke of *Pruſſia* in the year 1525; which, however, he held as a vaſſal of the King and kingdom of *Poland*.

Sigiſmund Auguſtus ſon to *Sigiſmund* I. obliged the new Duke of *Courland*, *Gotthard Ketlern* to become his vaſſal; and, in the year 1569, compleated the Union of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* with the kingdom of *Poland*. *Livonia* gave itſelf up to the *Poles*; *Volhynia*, *Podolia*, *Polachia* and *Kiovia*, were alſo annexed to the *Poliſh* dominions in the ſame reign; and the male line of the *Jagellonian* family became extinct at his death, which happened in 1572. After this, the kingdom of *Poland* was governed by Kings of different families.

Henry Duke of *Anjou*, ſon of *Henry* II. of *France*, obtained the crown under certain reſtrictions in the year 1573; and ſome laws were inſtituted, which were to ſerve as fundamental rules of Government to the King and his ſucceſſors. This Prince, after a reign of two years, withdrew clandeſtinely out of *Poland* into *France*.

Upon this, the Throne was declared vacant in the year 1575, and the Crown beſtowed on *Stephen Bathori*, Prince of *Tranſylvania*. This monarch, in the year 1578, inſtituted the two great Tribunals or Courts of Judicature at *Peterkau* and *Lublin*; and had his life been prolonged, would certainly have greatly augmented the power, reputation, and proſperity of the kingdom; but this wiſe Prince was ſnatched away in the flower of his age.

Sigiſmund III. a *Swediſh* Prince, the ſon of *Catharine*, ſiſter to *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, loſt the Great Dutchy of *Livonia*, of which he was diſpoſſed by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*.

Uladiſlaus IV. *Sigiſmund* the third's ſon, reſtored tranquility to the kingdom; and his wiſe Government deſerved the higheſt praiſe. This Prince

intended to inſtitute a new Order of knighthood under the title of the 'Knights of the Immaculate Virgin;' but this project was never carried into execution. He alſo ſet up poſt-houſes throughout the kingdom, for the conveyance of letters, in the year 1647. This Monarch's death was followed by a tumultuous *Interregnum*, the calamities of which were greatly heightened by the incurſions and ravages of the revolted *Coſaks*.

In the year 1649, *John Caſimir*, brother to *Uladiſlaus* IV. was elected King. This Prince was unſucceſsful in his war againſt *Sweden*, and by the peace of *Oliva*, concluded in 1660, was obliged to cede *Livonia* to that Crown. In 1668 he reſigned the Government out of diſguſt, and retired into *France*. *John Caſimir* was the laſt Prince of the female branch of the *Jagellonian*-line in *Poland*; and the Pope honoured him with the title of *Orthodoxus*, or 'True believer.'

Caſimir was ſucceeded by *Michael Thomas Wiſniowiecki*, a nobleman of great learning and parts; but without any poſt of honour or eſtate.

On the death of *Wiſniowiecki*, which happened in the year 1674, the regal dignity was conferred on the heroic Prince *John* III. ſurnamed *Sobieſki*, the High Marſhal and General in chief to the Crown, who, by a ſignal victory gained over the *Turks* at *Chozim*, paved his way to the Throne, and greatly contributed to raiſe the ſiege of *Vienna*.

On the demiſe of King *John* III. which fell out in 1696, *Auguſtus* II. Elector of *Saxony*, was choſe King of *Poland*, who by the treaty of *Carlowitz* re-annexed the fortreſs of *Caminiec* to his dominions.

By the peace of *Ranſtadt* concluded in the year 1706, this Prince was obliged to give up the *Poliſh* crown to *Staniſlaus Lezynſki*; which, however, he reaſſumed after the defeat of the *Swedes* at *Pultowa*, when *Staniſlaus* was obliged to yield it up, and withdraw. *Auguſtus* inſtituted the Order of the *White Eagle*; and ended his days in the year 1733.

Frederick Auguſtus III. *Auguſtus* the ſecond's ſon, by the help of the *Ruſſian* army, kept poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Poland* againſt *Staniſlaus*; and the latter had the Dutchy of *Lorrain* conferred upon him.

§. 10. *Poland* was formerly an hereditary kingdom; but afterwards, the acceſſion of a new King to the Government was always preceded by a declaration of the Nobility. However, the Kings did not only ſtile themſelves Sovereigns of *Poland* by the conſent of the people; but alſo heirs to the kingdom, and its dependencies, by right of ſucceſſion.

Sigiſmund Auguſtus was the laſt who aſſumed this title. After his deceaſe it was enacted by a law, 'That no King ſhould, in his life-time, appoint, 'or chuſe a ſucceſſor; nor convoke a Diet for the Election; nor, 'laſtly, in any manner intermeddle with the ſucceſſion to the Crown: but 'that, on the deceaſe of a King, the choice ſhould perpetually remain free 'and open to all the Nobles of the Kingdom.' This law has, accordingly, been hitherto obſerved. Thus *Poland* is become an elective Kingdom.

The

The place of election is in a common, or open field, near the village of *Wola*, not far from *Warſaw:* It is ſurrounded with a ditch and a rampart, and has three gates, one of which is towards the Eaſt for *Great Poland*; the ſecond towards the South for *Little Poland*; and the third, which faces the Weſt, is for *Lithuania*. The Senators, or Counſellors of State, are accommodated on this occaſion with a wooden houſe built for that purpoſe, called *Szopa*. Without this edifice the repreſentatives aſſemble in a place called *Kola*, i. e. a circle or crown; and thoſe noblemen who attend the Election in perſon pitch their tents at a greater diſtance from it. The Sovereign is elected by the ſpiritual and temporal Counſellors of State; the Nobles who ſend their repreſentatives or proxes, though every Nobleman may attend in perſon if he pleaſes; by the cities of *Cracow*, *Poſnan*, *Vilna*, *Lemberg*, and *Warſaw*, whoſe choice always coincides with that of the Nobility; and likewiſe by *Thorn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzic*, the three principal cities of *Poliſh Pruſſia*. None but *Roman*-catholics dare appear at the Election. The King Elect is obliged either perſonally, or by his ambaſſador or proxy, to ſwear to the obſervance of the *Pacta Conventa*, which are drawn up in the *Poliſh* language, and adminiſtered by the States. After this he is proclaimed King, and crowned in the cathedral of *Cracow* by the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*.

Poland, in conjunction with the Great Dutchy * which is annexed to it, conſtitutes a Republic, of which, indeed, the King is conſidered as the head; but moſt of the power is lodged in the Senate, or Council of State, and the Nobleſſe. The King is not permitted to enter into a war, to aſſemble an army, conclude a peace, or to make any public alliances; neither is he inveſted with the power of ſending envoys on important occaſions, impoſing taxes, contributions or cuſtoms, or of coining money without the conſent of the States. He is to make no laws, determine no religious diſputes, nor to alienate any of the royal demeſnes; nor, laſtly, is he to undertake and carry into execution any matters of importance that concern the kingdom, without the conſent of the States duly convened. Among his royal prerogatives, the chief is, that the King has the diſpoſal of the poſts of honour, and the royal demeſnes. But, without conſent of the States, he is neither to diminiſh, or increaſe, the honorary poſts; nor to confer above one office on one perſon; nor to deprive any one of his poſt.

As for the eccleſiaſtical preferments, the King nominates the Archbiſhops and Biſhops, except the Archbiſhop of *Ermland*; and the Pope confirms the nomination. The King is patron only of twelve abbeys and one provoſtſhip. The reſt of the abbots are elected by the monks, and confirmed by the Pope.

The King of *Poland* has, at preſent, little or no property in what is called the royal eſtates; but is obliged to beſtow them on private perſons; and the Conſideration-money does not come into the King's coffers, but is applied to the ſervice of the Republic. Theſe eſtates conſiſt of *Staroſteys*,

* *Lithuania.*

intended to inſtitute a new Order of knighthood under the title of the 'Knights of the Immaculate Virgin;' but this project was never carried into execution. He alſo ſet up poſt-houſes throughout the kingdom, for the conveyance of letters, in the year 1647. This Monarch's death was followed by a tumultuous *Interregnum*, the calamities of which were greatly heightened by the incurſions and ravages of the revolted *Coſaks*.

In the year 1649, *John Caſimir*, brother to *Uladiſlaus* IV. was elected King. This Prince was unſucceſsful in his war againſt *Sweden*, and by the peace of *Oliva*, concluded in 1660, was obliged to cede *Livonia* to that Crown. In 1668 he reſigned the Government out of diſguſt, and retired into *France*. *John Caſimir* was the laſt Prince of the female branch of the *Jagellonian*-line in *Poland*; and the Pope honoured him with the title of *Orthodoxus*, or 'True believer.'

Caſimir was ſucceeded by *Michael Thomas Wiſniowiecki*, a nobleman of great learning and parts; but without any poſt of honour or eſtate.

On the death of *Wiſniowiecki*, which happened in the year 1674, the regal dignity was conferred on the heroic Prince *John* III. ſurnamed *Sobieſki*, the High Marſhal and General in chief to the Crown, who, by a ſignal victory gained over the *Turks* at *Chozim*, paved his way to the Throne, and greatly contributed to raiſe the ſiege of *Vienna*.

On the demiſe of King *John* III. which fell out in 1696, *Auguſtus* II. Elector of *Saxony*, was choſe King of *Poland*, who by the treaty of *Carlowitz* re-annexed the fortreſs of *Caminiec* to his dominions.

By the peace of *Ranſtadt* concluded in the year 1706, this Prince was obliged to give up the *Poliſh* crown to *Staniſlaus Lezynſki*; which, however, he reaſſumed after the defeat of the *Swedes* at *Pultowa*, when *Staniſlaus* was obliged to yield it up, and withdraw. *Auguſtus* inſtituted the Order of the *White Eagle*; and ended his days in the year 1733.

Frederick Auguſtus III. *Auguſtus* the ſecond's ſon, by the help of the *Ruſſian* army, kept poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Poland* againſt *Staniſlaus*; and the latter had the Dutchy of *Lorrain* conferred upon him.

§. 10. *Poland* was formerly an hereditary kingdom; but afterwards, the acceſſion of a new King to the Government was always preceded by a declaration of the Nobility. However, the Kings did not only ſtile themſelves Sovereigns of *Poland* by the conſent of the people; but alſo heirs to the kingdom, and its dependencies, by right of ſucceſſion.

Sigiſmund Auguſtus was the laſt who aſſumed this title. After his deceaſe it was enacted by a law, 'That no King ſhould, in his life-time, appoint, 'or chuſe a ſucceſſor; nor convoke a Diet for the Election; nor, 'laſtly, in any manner intermeddle with the ſucceſſion to the Crown: but 'that, on the deceaſe of a King, the choice ſhould perpetually remain free 'and open to all the Nobles of the Kingdom.' This law has, accordingly, been hitherto obſerved. Thus *Poland* is become an elective Kingdom.

The

The place of election is in a common, or open field, near the village of *Wola*, not far from *Warſaw:* It is ſurrounded with a ditch and a rampart, and has three gates, one of which is towards the Eaſt for *Great Poland*; the ſecond towards the South for *Little Poland*; and the third, which faces the Weſt, is for *Lithuania*. The Senators, or Counſellors of State, are accommodated on this occaſion with a wooden houſe built for that purpoſe, called *Szopa*. Without this edifice the repreſentatives aſſemble in a place called *Kola*, i. e. a circle or crown; and thoſe noblemen who attend the Election in perſon pitch their tents at a greater diſtance from it. The Sovereign is elected by the ſpiritual and temporal Counſellors of State; the Nobles who ſend their repreſentatives or proxes, though every Nobleman may attend in perſon if he pleaſes; by the cities of *Cracow*, *Poſnan*, *Vilna*, *Lemberg*, and *Warſaw*, whoſe choice always coincides with that of the Nobility; and likewiſe by *Thorn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzic*, the three principal cities of *Poliſh Pruſſia*. None but *Roman*-catholics dare appear at the Election. The King Elect is obliged either perſonally, or by his ambaſſador or proxy, to ſwear to the obſervance of the *Pacta Conventa*, which are drawn up in the *Poliſh* language, and adminiſtered by the States. After this he is proclaimed King, and crowned in the cathedral of *Cracow* by the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*.

Poland, in conjunction with the Great Dutchy * which is annexed to it, conſtitutes a Republic, of which, indeed, the King is conſidered as the head; but moſt of the power is lodged in the Senate, or Council of State, and the Nobleſſe. The King is not permitted to enter into a war, to aſſemble an army, conclude a peace, or to make any public alliances; neither is he inveſted with the power of ſending envoys on important occaſions, impoſing taxes, contributions or cuſtoms, or of coining money without the conſent of the States. He is to make no laws, determine no religious diſputes, nor to alienate any of the royal demeſnes; nor, laſtly, is he to undertake and carry into execution any matters of importance that concern the kingdom, without the conſent of the States duly convened. Among his royal prerogatives, the chief is, that the King has the diſpoſal of the poſts of honour, and the royal demeſnes. But, without conſent of the States, he is neither to diminiſh, or increaſe, the honorary poſts; nor to confer above one office on one perſon; nor to deprive any one of his poſt.

As for the eccleſiaſtical preferments, the King nominates the Archbiſhops and Biſhops, except the Archbiſhop of *Ermland*; and the Pope confirms the nomination. The King is patron only of twelve abbeys and one provoſtſhip. The reſt of the abbots are elected by the monks, and confirmed by the Pope.

The King of *Poland* has, at preſent, little or no property in what is called the royal eſtates; but is obliged to beſtow them on private perſons; and the Conſideration-money does not come into the King's coffers, but is applied to the ſervice of the Republic. Theſe eſtates conſiſt of *Staroſteys*,

* *Lithuania.*

in Latin * *Capitaneatus*, either with or without a jurisdiction annexed; *Tenutes*, in Latin *Tenutæ*, *à tenendo*, *quòd qui tenutam habent*, *tenent aliquid*, *seu possident*, to which belong lands and villages; and *Advocations*, which consist of some arable land, meadows, mills, *&c.* The other royal prerogatives are as follows. The chief care of the public welfare is committed to the King, who is to consult with the States about every thing relating to the kingdom: His Majesty summons the ordinary and extraordinary Diets or assemblies of the States, and presides in them: No law can be made without his concurrence; and they are all promulgated in his name. The King is also the chief Protector of the laws and subjects of the Kingdom. The Tribunals and Courts of Judicature are held in his name; and he confers new, and confirms former, privileges. The Sovereign can grant titles of Nobility, but not the privileges annexed to those titles, which require the consent of the States; and when no Diet is assembled, he can consult with the Counsellors and Ministers of his Court. The King also has power to send Envoys on affairs which are not of great consequence to the Republic; and when he is in the army, he has the chief Command, and can summon the Nobility on any emergency. These, and some other particulars of less consequence, make up the royal prerogatives of the Kings of *Poland*.

§. 11. The royal Revenues are in *Poland* termed 'Estates for the Kings 'table, Oeconomies, and Oecumenical revenues.' These were formerly very considerable; but, at present, do not amount to a million of *Prussian* Gilders. The revenues arise from the salt-mines in the Palatinate of *Cracow*; the decayed lead and silver-mines of *Olkush* when they come to be wrought again; the ancient tolls and customs; the oeconomy or rents of *Marienburg* in *Prussia*, *Dirschau* in *Pomerellia*, and *Rogenhus* in the District of *Culm*; those of the *Great*, but now small, Prefecture of *Cracow*, which brings in about 20,000 *Prussian* Guilders, and of the District of *Niepoliomicz*, which are nearly the same with the preceding; and the tolls or customs of *Elbing* and *Dantzic*, with other annual sums paid by those cities. These revenues and lands the King can neither augment, diminish, nor farm for less than the real value. They must be farmed to none but Noblemen who are natives of *Poland* and resident in the country, and that at the highest rate possible. The only revenue particularly appropriated for the use of the Queen, is the sum of 2000 gold guilders annually paid to her Majesty out of the salt-mines of *Cracow*.

§. 12. The arms of the Republic are, *Gules* an eagle *Argent* for *Poland*, and *Gules* a cavalier *Argent* for *Lithuania*.

§. 13. The Order of the White Eagle was instituted by King *Augustus* II. in the year 1705. Its ensign is a cross of gold enamelled with red, with a white border and four flames between the points, appendent to a blue

* i. e. *German* Latin. *Prefectura* would better express the *Polish* word *Starostey*.

ribbon.

ribbon. On one ſide of the badge is the *Poliſh* White Eagle, with a white croſs and the Electoral ſword, &c. on its breaſt. On the other ſide, the King's cypher A. R. and round it this motto: *Pro Fide Rege, et Lege.* The croſs is ſurmounted with a crown ſet with diamonds.

§. 14. The *Poliſh* Senate, or Council of State, conſiſts of one hundred and forty-four members, who are all ſtiled 'Senators of the kingdom, or Counſellors of State,' and have the title of *Excellency*; however, they have no appointments or penſions as Senators. The Senate conſiſts

I. Of two Archbiſhops, namely, thoſe of *Gneſen* or *Gneſna* in *Great Poland*, and *Lemberg* in *Ruſſia*. The Archbiſhop of *Gneſna* is next in rank to the King, and ſits on his right hand in the Senate. He is alſo *Legatus natus*, or perpetual legate of the See of *Rome*, Primate of the church, and *Primas regni* or *Primus Princeps*, i. e. 'the firſt Senator, and firſt Prince of kingdom.' In the King's abſence, or during the vacancy of the throne, he may ſummon the Diet; aſſemble the Senate or Council of State; propoſe the articles to be debated, and carry them into execution; give audience to foreign ambaſſadors; and, at ſuch times, is always the *Interrex*. This Prelate likewiſe crowns the King and Queen; and is ſtiled *Canonicus natus*, or canon born, of the cathedral of *Ploczko*. He reſides at *Lowicz*, where he has his Marſhal, Croſs-bearer, and Chancellor. This high dignity is always enjoyed by a prelate; for the *Poles* are apprehenſive leaſt a layman ſhould be tempted to ſet up for himſelf, and make his way to the throne.

Next to the Primate is the Archbiſhop of *Lemberg*, who ſits on the King's left hand in the Senate.

II. Fifteen Biſhops, who ſit on both ſides, next to the Archbiſhops, in the following order.

1. The Biſhop of *Cracow*, who is Duke of *Severia*, and has eccleſiaſtical juriſdiction over the three Palatinates of *Leſſer Poland* properly ſo called. This Prelate's revenues are larger than thoſe of any other Biſhop, or even the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*; and ſix Biſhops of *Cracow* are found in the liſt of cardinals. Though he is the firſt Biſhop, he ſits on the King's left hand, next to the Archbiſhop of *Lemberg*.

2. The Biſhop of *Wladiſlaw* in *Cujavia*, who alſo ſtiles himſelf Biſhop of *Pomerellia*, ſits on the King's right hand, next to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*. During a vacancy of the throne, and the abſence of the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna* or vacancy of that See, this Prelate ſits as *Interrex*.

3. The Biſhop of *Poſen* or *Poſnan*, whoſe Dioceſe, beſides the palatinate of *Poſnia*, comprehends part of *Maſovia* and *Warſaw*. In the abſence of the Primate and the Biſhop of *Cujavia*, he preſides at the Election of a King.

4. The Biſhop of *Wilna*, whoſe Dioceſe extends beyond *Lithuania* and *White Ruſſia*, as far as the borders of *Maſovia*. This Prelate and the preceding take place of each other alternately.

I

5. The Biſhop of *Ploczko*, who is ſupreme and abſolute Lord over the Diſtrict of *Pultowa* in *Maſovia*; ſo that there lies no appeal from his ſentence even to the King. His eccleſiaſtical juriſdiction extends alſo to the Diſtrict of *Dobrzin*.

6. The Biſhop of *Ermland* in *Pruſſia*, of whoſe Dioceſe we have given an account in our deſcription of that kingdom. This Prelate depends immediately on the Pope.

7. The Biſhop of *Luocko* in *Volhynia*, whoſe Dioceſe alſo includes a part of *Maſovia* and *Podlachia*, and of the palatinate of *Brzeſcie* in *Lithuania*.

8. The Biſhop of *Premiſlaw*, or *Przemiſl*, in *Little Ruſſia*.

9. The Biſhop of *Samoyten*, or *Samogitia*, who alſo ſtiles himſelf 'Biſhop of *Pilten* in *Courland*.'

10. The Biſhop of *Culm* in *Pruſſia*, who has alſo the title of 'Biſhop of *Pomerania*.'

11. The Biſhop of *Chelm* in *Little Ruſſia*.

12. The Biſhop of *Kiow* and *Czernikow*.

13. The Biſhop of *Cameniec* in *Podolia*.

14. The Biſhop of *Livonia*.

15. The Biſhop of *Smolenſko*.

Two of theſe Prelates, namely, thoſe of *Kiow* and *Smolenſko* are only titular Biſhops, thoſe cities being now in the poſſeſſion of the *Ruſſians*; however, the titles are thought worth ſolliciting for, on account of the rank and ſeat in the Senate annexed to them. After theſe eccleſiaſtical members of the Council, are the lay Senators, namely,

III. Thirty-ſeven *Woiewodas* or Palatines, including the three Caſtellans and the *Staroſta* of *Samogitia*, who rank with the Palatines. The office of a *Woiewoda* or Palatine is to march at the head of the Nobility of his *Woiewodzwo* or Palatinate in time of war; as his title implies, which is derived from *Woyna*, which ſignifies war, and *Wodz*, a leader: and in time of peace he is to aſſemble the Nobility, to preſide in the Courts of Judicature and pronounce ſentence; to ſettle the price of goods brought to market, except in war time, and during the ſeſſions of a Diet; to examine weights and meaſures; and laſtly, to protect and adminiſter juſtice to the Jews. Some of the Palatines are meerly titular *Woiewoda*'s, without any palantinates, as thoſe of *Kiow*, *Smolenſko*, and *Czernikow*. Every Palatine is a Prince by his office. The King has the nomination of all this claſs, except the *Staroſta* of *Samogitia*, and the Palatines of *Polocko* and *Witepſk*, who are choſen by the Nobility of their reſpective Palatinates, and confirmed by the King. Some of the Palatines, eſpecially thoſe of the province of *Ruſſia*, are fond of the title of General-*Woiewoda*. No Palatine is permitted to hold two palatinates at the ſame time; and every *Woiewoda* or Palatine has his Deputy-*Woiewoda*. The Palatines, and other Senators who rank with them, are in order of precedency as follows.

The

The Caſtellan of *Cracow*.
The Palatines of *Cracow* and *Poſnania*, who alternately change their places of reſidence and order of voting.
The Palatines of *Wilna* and *Sandomir*.
The Caſtellan of *Wilna*.
The Palatines of *Kaliſh*, *Trock*, and *Siradia*.
The Caſtellan of *Trock*.
The Palatine of *Leczycz*.
The chief *Staroſta* of *Samogitia*.

The Palatines of

Brzeſt in *Cujavia*.
Kiow.
Jungenleſlau.
Ruſſia.
Volhynia.
Podolia.
Smolenſko.
Lublin.
Polocko.
Belsk.
Novogrod.
Plocko.
Witepsk.
Maſovia.
Podlachia.
Rawa.
Brzeſcz in *Lithuania*.
Culm.
Mſciſlaw.
Marienburg.
Braclaw.
Pomerellia.
Minsk.
Livonia.
Czernikow.

IV. Eighty-two *Caſtellani*, or Caſtellans, who in time of peace are only Senators without any juriſdiction. But in time of war, by general ſummons, they act as Palatines, whoſe Lieutenants they in ſome meaſure are, and march at the head of the Nobility under the *Woiewoda*'s. In the *Poliſh* language, a Caſtellan is ſtiled *Pan* or Lord, and the termination *ki* or *ſki* is added to the name of the place over which he is Caſtellan; as *Pan Poſnanſki*, 'Lord of *Poſnan*,' *Pan Plocki*, Lord of *Plocko*.' They are divided into *Great* and *Little* Caſtellans; the latter have been admitted into the Senate poſterior to the former. The Great Caſtellans, together with the other ſpiritual and temporal ſenators are admitted into the moſt ſecret councils, from which the others are ſometimes excluded.

The Great Caſtellans are thoſe of

Poſnan.
Sendomir.
Kaliſh.
Woynicz.
Gneſna.
Siradia.
Leczycz.
Samogitia.
Brzeſt in *Cujavia*.
Kiow.
Jungenleſlau.
Lemberg.
Volhynia.
Caminiec.
Smolenſko.
Lublin.
Polocko.
Belsk.
Novogrod.
Plocko.
Witepsk.

Witepsk.
Czern.
Podlachia.
Rawa.
Brzeſt in *Lithuania.*
Culm.
Mſciſlaw.
Elbing.
Braclaw.
Dantzick.
Minsk.
Livonia.
Czernikow.

The *Little* Caſtellans are thoſe of

Sandecz.
Miedrzizecz.
Wiſlicz.
Biecz.
Rogozno.
Radom.
Zawikoſt.
Landen.
Szrem.
Zarnowo.
Malogoſt.
Wielun.
Przemyſl.
Halicz.
Sanock.
Chelmno.
Dobrzyn.
Polaniec.
Przemecz.
Kriwino.
Czekowo.
Nakel.
Roſpirz.
Biekowo.
Bydgoſzcz.
Brzezinin.
Kruſzwicz.
Oſwiecim.
Kamia.
Spicimierz.
Inowlodz.
Kowal.
Santok.
Sokaciowo.
Warſaw.
Goſtyn.
Wiſna.
Raciaz.
Sieprz.
Wyſzogrod.
Rypin.
Zakroczym.
Ciekanowo.
Liwa.
Slon.
Lubaczowo.
Konar in *Siradia.*
Konar in *Leczycz.*
Konar in *Cujavia.*

V. Laſtly, the Crown-Officers, in Latin *Officiales ſeu magiſtratus majores Ordinis ſenatorii.* Theſe are

The Crown Great-Marſhal.
The Great-Marſhal of *Lithuania.*
The Crown Great-Chancellor.
The Great-Chancellor of *Lithuania.*
The Crown Vice-Chancellor.
The Vice-Chancellor of *Lithuania.*
The Crown Great-Treaſurer.
The Great-Treaſurer of *Lithuania.*
The Crown Deputy-Treaſurer.
The Deputy-Treaſurer of *Lithuania.*
The Crown Court-Marſhal.
The Court-Marſhal of *Lithuania.*

Theſe

These State-Officers, though they are the last of the Senators in order, are persons of great power and dignity, and in a fair way of rising to the highest posts in the kingdom.

§. 15. The Diets are usually held on two accounts; namely, to consider on the resolutions of the Senate relating to the public welfare, and for the administration of Justice. They are divided into *Comitia togata*, which are the most usual Diets, when the States assemble in the city * without any tumult or military attendants; and *Comitia paludata*, when they meet armed and in the field, which are generally held during an *Interregnum*. The Assemblies of the States are also commonly distinguished into *Ordinary* and *Extraordinary* Diets. The former, by the laws of the Republic, are summoned once in two years; but the latter are assembled on an exigency, before the expiration of that term; and to these Extraordinary Diets either all the States, or only the Senators, are summoned. The most usual place where the Diet assembles is the city of *Warsaw*; but every third Diet is held at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*.

The Diets are preceded by the *Lantage*, or Provincial assemblies of the Nobility, according to the King's appointment; and for these, particular places are fixed in every province and Palatinate. In these Provincial assemblies the Deputies or Representatives of the Nobility, and of the Provinces, who are stiled in Latin *Nuntii terrestes seu Delegati provinciales*, are chosen. These Deputies either receive particular instructions how to act in the Diet; or their conduct in the deliberations is left to their own judgment and probity.

After this, the General-Provincial-Diets were formerly held in the following places; namely, in *Great Poland* at *Kolo*; in *Little Poland* at *Korczyn*, which is also called *Neustadt*; in *Lithuania* at *Slonim*; and in *Prussia* at *Graudentz* or *Marienburg* alternately. The principal State Officers, the new-elected Representatives, and such of the Nobility as were inclined, usually assisted at these assemblies, and from thence they proceeded to the Grand Diet. But these General-Provincial-Diets have been gradually disused, except in *Masovia*, where they still hold these assemblies, and from which they repair to the General Diet at *Warsaw*.

The *Prussians* also meet in the same manner at the places appointed, before they proceed to the Diet.

The resolutions of the Diet may be prevented by the opposition of any single Representative, whether it relate to the matter under deliberation, or some remote affair arbitrarily introduced; and such an opposition even annuls all the preceding acts of the Diet. Hence it comes to pass, that the *Polish* Diets so frequently terminate without doing any thing. But whatever is unanimously assented to by the Representatives, the Senators, and the King, has the force of a decree of the Diet, passes into a law, and is printed and

* Either at *Warsaw* in *Poland*, or *Grodno* in *Lithuania*.

published

publiſhed accordingly. When the Noble *Poles* enter into an aſſociation either during an *Iterregnum*, or while the King is living, it is called a *Confederation*.

§. 16. Among the Officers of State are two Generals; one of whom is ſtiled the Great General, and the other the Lieutenant-General. Theſe Officers, as Generals, have no ſeat in the ſenate; however, they may be, and often are, Senators.

The principal Secretary of the Kingdom, and that of the Dutchy of *Lithuania*, are alſo admitted into the ſenate, after a ſolemn oath, as Aſſiſtants; and in the abſence of the Chancellor, ſupply his place at court, and have the precedence of all provincial and court-officers, excepting the Court-Marſhal. The Secretaries are always noble eccleſiaſtics.

The next to theſe in rank are the *Referendaries*. Of theſe there are two for the Kingdom, and two for *Lithuania*; and one of them is an eccleſiaſtic, the other a layman. At preſent, they have no power to hear and report the complaints of private perſons; but their buſineſs is to decide, in their particular courts which are called *Referendariatus*, the diſputes ariſing betwixt the farmers of the King's eſtates and *Oeconimies*, as they are called, and the peaſants. They have alſo a ſeat in the *Aſſeſſorial* and *Relation* Court.

The other State-Officers of *Poland* and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* are, the Court-Treaſurer; the Under-Chamberlain; the Standard-bearer; Sword-bearers; the Maſter of the horſe and his Deputy; the Clerk of the kitchen; the Cup-bearer; the Carvers, Taſters, Huntſman, *&c.*

§. 17. In every Palatinate and Diſtrict are the following officers, who are ſtiled *Dignitarii*; namely, a Vice-Treaſurer, a Standard-bearer, a Judge, a Taſter, a Cup-bearer, an inferior Judge, a Vice-Steward, an Under-Cup-bearer, a Huntſman, a Captain or Military Officer, a Secretary, a Sword-bearer, a Lieutenant-Captain, and a Cofferer. Some of theſe, *viz.* the Sword-bearer, Cup-bearers, and Treaſurers, have only the title and dignity, without any actual employment; unleſs the king happens to take his reſidence in their palatinate: but the reſt are in actual employment. The Vice-Treaſurer only takes cognizance of affairs relating to the boundaries and the demeſnes in his province; but the Vice-Treaſurer of *Cracow* has alſo the inſpection of the ſalt-mines in that country.

Here we muſt alſo take notice of the *Caſtellani* or Caſtellans whoſe office, *&c.* is deſcribed above.

Next to theſe are the *Staroſta*'s, in Latin *Capitanei judiciales*, who not only have the care of the royal caſtles, but are likewiſe to preſerve the good order and tranquility of their reſpective *Staroſties*, and not to ſuffer any violences or robberies to be committed in their Diſtricts. They have power to judge and puniſh the inhabitants of the town or country, and even the Nobility, in their juriſdiction; and when no other magiſtrate is willing or able to do it, they put in execution the ſentences paſſed by eccleſiaſtical or lay-judges. They alſo have an eye to the rights and profits of the Sovereign or proprietor, ariſing either from the occupyers of the lands, or the aſſeſſments and revenues paid by the Burghers and Peaſants; and have juriſdiction over the

the caſtles, villages, and farms, and alſo of the royal towns and villages. Every *Staroſta* has his Deputy, who is generally called *Under-Staroſta*, and in his name ſuperintends the whole Staroſtey; and alſo a *Burgrave*, who maintains the public tranquility, and executes the ſentences paſſed by the Judges. In the ordinary courts of juſtice, a *Grod*, or caſtle-judge, and a Notary, who is alſo called the *Grod-clerk*, aſſiſt. The *Staroſta*'s are generally diſtinguiſhed by the caſtles and extent of land in their juriſdiction, rather than by the palatinates to which they belong. Some of them preſide over more than one Diſtrict. There are alſo *Staroſta*'s who have no juridiction; and theſe indeed are more numerous than the former. Some Biſhops, Princes, and wealthy Noblemen have alſo their caſtles and *Staroſtas*.

The towns in *Poland* are governed by Burgomaſters and a Common Council; and the villages by Village-Judges, as they are called, and other inferior officers. Some of the plebeians in the cities, towns, and villages, are vaſſals to the King, others to Princes and Noblemen; and a good many are vaſſals to the Clergy. Theſe are governed rather by the arbitrary will of their Lords, than by any fixed laws.

The Courts of Judicature in *Poland* are,

1. The Court-Tribunals, which are divided into *Aſſeſſorial* Courts, and Courts of Reports; and in theſe appeals may be lodged from the towns.
2. The Provincial Courts.
3. The Palatine Courts.
4. The *Staroſta*'s and Vice-Treaſurer's Courts.

There is a particular Tribunal for the Nobility, which was firſt held at *Peterkau* for *Great Poland*, and afterwards in *Lublin* for *Little Poland*; and the judges of this Court conſiſt both of eccleſiaſtics and laymen. The *Lithuanian* Tribunal is held at *Wilna*, *Novogrodek*, or *Minſk*.

§. 18. All the Clergy are ſubject to the Archbiſhops and Biſhops. The Biſhops have the principal direction of the eccleſiaſtical courts, where they are repreſented by their Commiſſaries, Vicars, Chancellors, and Officials. The principal Official is called the Official-General; and the reſt are ſtiled Provincial-Officials. From the Biſhops and their Commiſſaries an appeal lies to the Archbiſhops; and from the Archbiſhop of *Lemberg* to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*; and laſtly, from him to the Pope. The eccleſiaſtical Judges puniſh the Clergy immediately; but the intervention of the civil power is neceſſary to put in execution their ſentence paſſed on laymen. The Clergy aſſume an unlimited authority in every part of the kingdom, and are endeavouring to engroſs the power and wealth of the nation into their own hands.

§. 19. We are now, in the laſt place, to give an account of the military forces of *Poland*. No ſuch thing as a ſtanding army, kept in conſtant pay, was formerly known in this country; but all that were capable of bearing arms in the nation took the field on any emergency. In the year 1551 the *Lithuanians* firſt began, for the ſecurity of their frontiers, to keep on foot, and pay a certain number of troops. Their example was followed

by the *Poles*, who raiſed an army to defend their frontiers from the ravages of their roving, lawleſs neighbours, who live on plunder. The fourth part of the produce of the royal *Table-lands*, as they are called, are appropriated to maintain theſe troops; hence they are called *Quartians*; and the money appointed for the payment of them is depoſited in the caſtle of *Rawa*. But as theſe *Quartians* were found not to be ſufficient for the defence of the kingdom, the army was augmented, and divided into Cavalry and Infantry; but the former were more numerous than the foot. The troops are now divided into the Crown-army, and that of *Lithuania*; but ſome of the troops in both armies are clothed and exerciſed in the *Poliſh*, and others in the *German* manner.

1. The Crown-Army conſiſts of
1000 Spear-men.
3940 Cuiraſſiers.
1000 light armed troops. All theſe are diſciplined in the *Poliſh* manner.
4000 Dragoons.
6750 foot ſoldiers.
850 matroſſes.
400 *Hungarians*. All theſe, except the *Hungarians*, are trained in the *German* diſcipline.

2. The *Lithuanian* army is compoſed of
400 men bearing lances or ſpears.
Above 1160 Cuiraſſiers.
460 *Tartars*.
240 *Coſaks*.
Four regiments of Dragoons.
Three regiments of foot.
150 matroſſes; beſides a corps of *Janizaries* and *Kuruks*.

Both theſe armies are paid twice a year. The charge of theſe troops in *Poland* is defrayed by a capitation or poll-tax; but in *Lithuania* other taxes are levied for this purpoſe: the ſoldiers alſo receive what is called Winter-Quarter-money beſides their pay. The troops are moſtly cantoned on the crown-lands.

Beſides this ſtanding-army, which receives conſtant pay, *Poland*, on any preſſing exigency, is provided with another which can ſpeedily be got together, and is of no charge to the Public. For on any ſudden and imminent danger, the whole body of the Nobility are ſummoned to appear in the field on horſe-back; and ſuch a general ſummons of the Nobles is in the *Poliſh* language called *Poſpolite Ruſzenie*. This is concluded upon in a Diet, after having been previouſly propoſed in the provincial meetings; and is done by royal Letters with the ſeals of the kingdom and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*. Theſe, being faſtened to poles by the ſummoners, are carried to the principal Noblemen, State-Officers, and perſons of rank in every palatinate, and read in the Market-places of the cities and towns. When this has been three times repeated, the Nobility, after holding their

aſſemblies

aſſemblies in their Palatinates and Diſtricts, appear in the field on horſe-back, and, during the campaign provide ſubſiſtence for themſelves. The following perſons are exempt from obeying this ſummons, *viz.* the Miniſters of the Senate or Council of State, and thoſe who are about the King's perſon; Envoys at foreign courts, the Burgrave of *Cracow*, the Under-Staroſtas, and the Clerks of the revenue; thirty officers of the Queen's houſhold; invalids, and ſome few others. The reſt are obliged to appear, under forfeiture of their eſtates, *&c.* The King himſelf always marches at the head of this army. The cities and towns provide carriages and other military ſtores; and likewiſe a certain number of foot ſoldiers. After the Nobility have been a fortnight at the general rendezvous, if no enemy appear, they are at liberty to return to their reſpective homes. Theſe troops are not obliged to go beyond the limits of the kingdom: but if this be reſolved by the States, and the Nobility voluntarily conform, every horſeman and foot-ſoldier previouſly receives five *Poliſh* marks*, and the campaign is not to laſt above three months. Such a general ſummons has not been iſſued ſince the year 1672; ſo that it may be claſſed among the rare occurrences: Nor is it of any great advantage to the Republic, on account of the ſhort duration of the campaign, the want of good diſcipline and obedience to their chiefs; of proper arms, ſufficient ſupplies of proviſions, and other important articles.

Foreign auxiliaries are not to be brought into the kingdom without the conſent of the States. Few or no fortified places are to be ſeen in *Poland* or *Lithuania:* for the *Poles* alledge that the courage and bravery of the inhabitants is the beſt defence of their country. *Kameniec*, on the frontiers of *Podolia*, owes its ſtrength more to Nature than art. The ſo much boaſted fortifications of the city of *Zamoſk*, if compared to fortified towns in other countries, muſt appear very inconſiderable; and all the towns, which formerly ſtood only one ſiege, are now open and defenceleſs. When a foreigner reads of fortified places in *Poland*, he muſt not ſuppoſe that ſuch expreſſions ſignify any thing more than a ditch, a rampart, a wooden or a ſtone-wall, with which ſuch places are ſurrounded. *Dantzick* is the only place that deſerves the name of a fortreſs in the *Poliſh* dominions; but this is an independent city.

§. 20. The Kingdom of *Poland* conſiſts of three principal Provinces, namely, *Great Poland*, *Little Poland*, and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*. This diviſion is of great utility with regard to the public law of *Poland*, according to which the nation conſiſts of three diſtinct people and three provinces; and the Marſhal in the Diet is alternately choſen from theſe provinces. Of this the reader may ſee more in *Lengnick*'s *Jus publicum Regni Poloni*, Tom. I. p. 18. In conſequence of this diviſion we ſhall begin with the firſt.

* A *Poliſh* mark is about 4*s.* 6*d.* ſterling.

GREAT POLAND;

OR

WIELKOPOLSKA PROWINCYA.

THIS name, taken in a more extenſive ſenſe, includes *Maſovia* and *Poliſh Pruſſia*. *Great Poland* conſiſts of the following Diviſions.

I. *GREAT POLAND* properly ſo called, Which is alſo termed LOWER POLAND.

This Province contains five Palatinates or *Woiewodzo*'s, which are,

1. The Palatinate of POSNANIA or POZNAN, in Latin *Palatinatus Poſnanienſis*, with the three Diſtricts of *Wſchowa*, *Roſcian*, and *Walecz*. The *Staroſta* of *Poſnania* is chief *Staroſta* of *Great Poland*. The remarkable places in this Palatinate, *&c.* are,

Poſen or *Poſnan*, a handſome but not very large city on the river *Warta*. It is incloſed with a double wall and a deep moat; and on the other ſide of the *Warta* it has two ſuburbs, namely, *Szrodka* and *Waliſzewo*, which are ſurrounded with a large moraſs. Both the city and ſuburbs are ſubject to frequent inundations by the overflowing of the river. The caſtle ſtands on an iſland in the *Warta*, and is a good ſtructure. Beſides ſeveral churches and convents, the public edifices of this town are the Jeſuit's college, founded by Biſhop *Adam Konarſki*, and built according to the model of that at *Brunſwick*; an accademical *Gymnaſium* inſtituted by Biſhop *John Lubranſki*, and from his name called *Athenæum Lubranſcianum*, which ſtands in the ſuburbs; and an Epiſcopal Seminary. The Biſhop's palace ſtands near the cathedral, which is a fine ſtructure, and between the moraſſes. This is the firſt in rank, and the moſt ancient Biſhop's See in *Poland*. It was founded by the Emperor *Otho* I. in the reign of *Miecziſlaus* I. King of *Poland*, and made ſubordinate to the Archbiſhopric of *Magdeburg*; under which it continued a conſiderable time, till it was ſubjected to the Archbiſhopric of *Gneſna*. This city owes a great part of its proſperity to the trade with

with *Germany*: It is a ſtaple-town, and enjoys ſeveral other privileges. A Court of Judicature is held in this city; and the Chriſtian Religion firſt gained a footing in this part of *Poland*. In the year 1716, *Poſnan* was garriſoned by *Saxons*; but taken by ſtorm, and plundered by the *Poles*.

Golan, a ſmall town which lies in one of the roads from *Poſnan* to *Dantzick*. In this Palatinate alſo lie the towns of *Sroda*, *Lubien*, *Czarnkow*, *Gluſzyn*, and *Obra*.

Rogoſzno, *Szrzem*, *Przemecz*, *Krzywno*, and *Santok*, are ſmall towns; and in each of theſe a *Caſtellan* reſides.

Bleſen, a ſtately abbey on the frontiers.

Meſeritz or *Miedzyrzez* a town on the borders of *Brandenburg*, where a *Caſtellan* reſides. Here is an Evangelical or Lutheran church. This town was plundered in the year 1519.

Paradyz, an abbey in the neighbourhood of *Meſeritz*.

Frauſtadt, called in the *Poliſh* language *Uſkowa*, a handſome town on the frontiers of *Sileſia*, was built by *Germans*, and a great part of its inhabitants are of that nation. There are three *Lutheran* churches in this town; and the inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade in oxen and wool. A Court of Judicature is alſo held here. *Frauſtadt* formerly belonged to *Sileſia*; but King *Caſimir* annexed it to the *Poliſh* dominions. However, that Prince promiſed to maintain it in its former privileges, among which was the right of coining money. In the year 1644, this town was almoſt entirely deſtroyed by fire; and in 1706 the combined armies of the *Saxons* and *Ruſſians* were entirely defeated by the *Swedes* near this place.

Liſſa or *Poliſh Liſſa*, by the *Poles* called *Leſzno*, a fine, populous town and lordſhip not far from the preceding, in the territory of which it lies. *Liſſa* was formerly no more than a village. But when great numbers of Proteſtants from *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and *Auſtria* removed to this place, and obtained the free exerciſe of their religion, it conſiderably increaſed, and was raiſed to a town. The inhabitants carry on a good trade. Here is a Lutheran church, a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary, and a Calviniſt church; and the General-Senior of all the Evangelic or Lutheran churches in *Great Poland*, who was formerly ſtiled the Superintendent, reſides in this town. In the year 1656, the inhabitants quitted the town for fear of the *Poliſh* troops, who plundered and laid it in aſhes. In 1707 it was alſo laid waſte by the *Ruſſians*; but after this, it was rebuilt with great improvements.

Ridzin, or *Reuſſen*, which lies about a *German* mile from *Poliſh Liſſa*, is a caſtle belonging to the *Leſczinſki* family. Before it was demoliſhed by the *Saxons* in 1705, it was one of the fineſt ſtructures in all *Poland*. It is very pleaſantly ſituated on an iſland formed by a river, and near a wood, through which a viſta is cut in a ſtraight line that is terminated by a diſtant view of the town of *Liſſa*.

Ravitz, a ſmall town, but well planned and regularly built; ſo that the four gates of it may be ſeen from a certain point of view. It is ſurrounded with a rampart, which is but mean. The *German* is the only language ſpoken here. Moſt of the inhabitants are Lutherans; and among them are ſeveral woollen weavers: Hence cloth is the chief manufacture of the place, in which it drives a conſiderable trade. *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* took up his winter quarters in this town in 1704, and continued here till the *Auguſt* following.

Krobe, formerly a rich and large village, well known under the name of *Sulcava*, but now a ſmall town.

Koſten, a little town ſituated in a marſhy country, remarkable for a Court of Judicature held in it.

Note. To this Palatinate the *Staroſtey* of *Drabeim*, which was mortgaged to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, belongs.

2. The Palatinate of KALISH, called in the *Poliſh* language *Kaliſz*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Caliſſienſis*, with the Diſtricts of *Konin*, *Pyzdry*, *Gniezno*, *Krcenia*, and *Nakio*. In this Palatinate are the following places of note.

Boreck, a ſmall town ſeated on a lake. Here is a famous image of the Virgin *Mary*, to which great numbers of pilgrims reſort.

Kaliſh or *Kaliſz*, a large town ſurrounded with moraſſes, a wall, and towers, lies on the river *Proſna*. The Jeſuits college here, which is ſo highly extolled by the *Poles*, was founded by *Staniſlaus Karnkowſki* Archbiſhop of *Gneſna* at his own private charges. Here is held a Court of Juſtice; and this town is the reſidence of a Palatine and a Caſtellan. In the year 1655, *Kaliſh* was taken by the *Swedes*. In 1706, General *Mardefeld* and the *Swediſh* army were totally defeated and taken priſoners by the confederate army, commanded by *Auguſtus* II. King of *Poland*, near this town.

Grabau; *Coſmin*, where is a Court of Judicature; *Pleſrow*, *Kolo*, *Stawiſzyn*, *Romi*, where alſo is a Court of Juſtice; *Landen*, *Pyzdry*, and *Slupcza* are all little towns. The Provincial Diet for *Great Poland* is held at *Kolo*.

Olobok, a rich nunnery, is a handſome ſtructure, and lies between *Grabau* and *Kaliſh*, about two *German* miles from the latter.

Razimierz, a village lying betwixt *Slupcza* and *Poſnan*, where the unfortunate Count *Patkul* was broke alive on the wheel and impaled, by order of *Charles* XII. of *Sweden*, in the year 1708.

Gneſna or *Gneſen*, in the *Poliſh* language *Gniezno*, the capital of *Great Poland*, and the moſt ancient city in the kingdom, lies in a plain. It is a large town, and the See of an Archbiſhop, whoſe power and grandeur have been deſcribed above*. A Caſtellan reſides, and a Court of Judicature is held in this town. *Boleſlaus* I. bought the body of St. *Adalbert*

* See p. 579.

or

or *Albert*, whom the *Pruſſians* had murdered, and had it conveyed to *Gneſna* and buried in the cathedral; and King *Sigiſmund* III. encloſed his remains in a ſilver ſhrine. But whether the Saint's bones are ſtill preſerved here, or whether they were carried away to *Prague* by the *Bohemians* in the year 1038, is the ſubject of an idle diſpute between the *Poles* and *Bohemians*, that, probably, will never be cleared up. This city was erected into a Biſhop's See by *Boleſlaus* I. in the year 1000. There is a particular Chancellor belonging to this Chapter, and a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary is founded here. The Kings of *Poland* were formerly crowned in this city. In 1613, almoſt the whole town was deſtroyed by fire.

Naklo, a ſmall town, and the reſidence of a Caſtellan; a Court of Juſtice is alſo held here.

3. The Palatinate of SIRADIA, or SIERADZ, in Latin *Palatinatus Siradienſis*, contains the Diſtricts of *Szadek*, *Piotrkow*, and *Radomſk*. In this Palatinate are the following places of note.

Sirad or *Siradia*, in Poliſh *Sieradz*, a pretty good town on the river *Warta*. It has a caſtle, and a Court of Judicature. In the year 1290, the *Tartars* made themſelves maſters of this town, and in 1292 it was plundered by the *Bohemians*; and laſtly, in 1331 it fell into the poſſeſſion of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order.

Laſk, *Pabianice*, and *Szadek*, where a Court of Judicature is held; *Warte*, *Uniejow*, *Spicimierz*, *Widawa*, *Sulejow*, *Witow*, *Wolborz*, and *Koniecpol*, are all inconſiderable towns.

Petrikow, *Peterkau*, or *Piotrkow*, a commercial town, but not very large, in which formerly the Kings of *Poland* were elected, and the Diets held. At preſent, the High Tribunal of *Great Poland*, a Provincial Court, and likewiſe the Synod of the Clergy of the province, are held in this town. A college of Jeſuits, and another of the *Patres piarum ſcholarum* are founded here. *Petrikow* was conſumed by fire in 1640, and in 1731.

Radoniſk, a ſmall town, in which is held a Court of Judicature. It is alſo the ſeat of a *Staroſta*.

The territory of *Wielun*, in which are the following towns, *viz.* *Wielun*, the ſeat of a *Staroſta* and a Caſtellan, where a Provincial Diet, and a Court of Judicature are alſo held; *Boleſlawiec*, *Dzialoſzyn*, *Oſtrzeſzow*, *Grabow*, and *Wieruſzow*.

4. The Palatinate of LENCZICZ or LECZYZA, in Latin *Palatinatus Lencitienſis*, contains a *Staroſtey* which includes three Diſtricts, namely, *Brzeziny*, *Orlow*, and *Inowlodz*; and has four Caſtellans. The towns, *&c.* in this Palatinate are,

Lenczicz, a town lying in a moraſs near the river *Bſura*. It is ſurrounded with a wall and a moat, and is defended by a caſtle which ſtands on a rock. A Provincial Diet, a Court of Judicature, and Provincial Synods of the Clergy are held in this town. In the year 1462, it was burnt

burnt by an accidental fire; in 1294, it was laid in aſhes by the *Lithuanians*; and in 1656, when it was garriſoned by the *Swedes*, it was burnt by the *Poles*, who put moſt of the inhabitants, eſpecially the *Jews*, to the ſword.

Piatek, a ſmall town belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, and famous only for the excellent beer brewed there.

Unienow, a town ſeated on the *Warta*, which alſo belongs to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, with a handſome caſtle. This town was conſumed by fire in the year 1331. The Clergy of *Poland* held a Synod here in 1376.

Brzeziny, a ſmall town, in which a Court of Judicature is held; *Kladawa*, *Kutno*, *Lodz*, *Orlow*, *Konarzew*, *Inowlodz*, and *Biekow*, are ſmall inconſiderable towns.

5. The Palatinate of RAWA, in Latin *Palatinatus Ravenſis*, was formerly a part of *Maſovia*; and contains the three *Staroſties* of *Rawa*, *Goſtyn*, and *Sokaczow*; each of which is the reſidence of a Caſtellan. The moſt remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

Rawa or *Rava*, a ſmall, but populous town, where the Provincial Diet and a Court of Juſtice are held. Here is alſo a Jeſuits college. In the caſtle of *Rawa* the fourth part of the monies ariſing from the royal demeſnes is depoſited, in order to pay the troops which ſerve for frontier guards; and ſtate-priſoners are alſo confined in it.

Viaſdum, a ſmall town, with a fine caſtle.

Lowicz, a populous town on the river *Bſura*, in which ſtands a palace belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*. This town lies in a moraſs; and, beſides a cathedral, has three other churches and ſome convents. Among the inhabitants are great numbers of artificers; and the fairs held in this town are famous for a great variety of goods which are expoſed to ſale in it. The Provincial Synod of the Clergy is held here.

Goſtyn, a ſmall town and caſtle, where a Provincial Court of Judicature is held. A Caſtellan and a *Staroſta* alſo reſide here.

Gombin, *Gambin*, or *Gabin*, and *Sokaczow*, are ſmall towns, in which Provincial Diets and Courts of Judicature are held.

Mogilnica, *Skierniewice*, and *Bolemow*, are ſmall towns of little note.

II. *CUJAVIA.*

THIS part of *Great Poland* is very fertile, and is watered by a great many lakes which abound with fiſh: the principal of theſe is the lake of *Goplo*, which is five *German* miles in length, and half a mile in breadth. The Biſhop of *Cujavia* is a ſuffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, and alſo ſtiles himſelf Biſhop of *Pomerellia*. This Biſhopric was formerly

formerly called the dioceſe of *Kruſwico*, for the cathedral was in that city; but the See was afterwards removed to *Wladiſlaw*, ſo that it is now alſo called the dioceſe of *Wladiſlaw*. *Cujavia* contains two Palatinates, namely,

1. The Palatinate of BRZESC or KUJAWSKI, in Latin *Palatinatus Breſtienſis*, which includes the Diſtricts of *Kruſzwica* and *Kowal*. Remarkable places in this Palatinate are as follows.

Brzeſc, a ſmall town ſituated in a marſhy country, and ſurrounded with a wall, a rampart, and a moat. A Provincial Court of Judicature is held in this town; and a Caſtellan and *Staroſta* reſide here.

Kruſzwica, a ſmall town, ſeated on the lake of *Goplo*, with a caſtle which ſtands on an iſland in the lake. St. *Peter*'s church, which has a chapter of twenty-four Canons, lies without the city. The famous *King Piaſt* was at firſt a Burgher of this town. It is the reſidence of a Caſtellan; and a Court of Judicature is held here. *Kruſzwica* and its territory forms a particular Diſtrict. The See of *Cujavia* was firſt founded in this town.

Wolborz, the reſidence of the Biſhop of *Cujavia*.

Kowal, a ſmall town with a Diſtrict, where a Court of Judicature is held. A Caſtellan reſides here.

Wroclawek, *Brdow*, *Nieſzawa*, and *Wiſla*, are ſmall towns of little note.

Radziejow, a fine caſtle, where a Court of Judicature and a Provincial Diet are held.

2. The Palatinate of WLADISLAW or JUNGENLESLAU, in Latin *Palatinatus Wladiſlavienſis* or *Juniuladiſlavienſis*. To this Palatinate belongs the Diſtrict of *Bydgoſcz*, as do likewiſe *Plowcewies*, *Labiſzyn*, *Dybow*, and *Strzelno*. In the laſt place is a nunnery, which is ſaid to be the richeſt in all *Poland*. In this Province are the following towns, *&c.*

Wladiſlaw, a handſom city ſeated on the *Viſtula*. Here is a palace where the Biſhop of *Cujavia* reſides, which was built and decently furniſhed by Biſhop *Staniſlaus Karnkowſki*. The See was removed hither in the year 1173 from *Kruſwica*. Some date the foundation of this town as early as the year 966, when *Mieczislaus* I. ſat on the throne; but others date it only from the reign of *Mieczislaus* II. grandſon to the former.

Inowloczaw, *Inowiadiſlow*, or *Jungenleſlaw*, is a ſmall place; in which, however, a Court of Juſtice is held, and a Caſtellan and *Staroſta* reſide.

In the territory of *Dobrzyn*, which has had ſeveral maſters, and includes the Diſtrict of *Rypin* and *Lipne*, are the following towns.

Lipne, a ſmall place where a *Staroſta* reſides, and a Court of Juſtice and a Provincial Aſſembly is held.

Rypin, a little town in which a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are likewiſe held.

Skompe, a ſmall town. Here is a convent of *Minims*, where a famous image of the Virgin *Mary* is kept.

Gorzno, a ſmall town belonging to the Biſhop of *Plocsk*. Near this place a ſkirmiſh happened between the *Swedes* and *Poles*, to the diſadvantage of the latter.

Bobrowniki, a town of little note.

III. *MASOVIA*, or *MASUREN*.

THIS country has, from the beginning of the *Poliſh* monarchy, been conſidered as a part of that kingdom. And though the inhabitants revolted on the deceaſe of *Mieczeſlaus* II. *Caſimir* I. ſoon reduced them to obedience. In the partition which *Boleſlaus* III. made of the *Poliſh* dominions between his four ſons in 1138, *Maſovia* was given to the ſecond ſon, (afterwards *Boleſlaus* IV.) who was ſucceeded by his ſon *Leſco*. The latter bequeathed it to *Caſimir* his father's brother; and after this, it devolved by inheritance on *Caſimir*'s youngeſt ſon *Conrad*. Hence it appears, that this province had its own Dukes for a long time. Duke *Wenceſlaus* became a vaſſal to *John* King of *Bohemia* in the year 1329 but *Charles*, that monarch's ſon, having transferred the ſovereignty of *Maſovia* to *Caſimir the Great*, King of *Poland*, *Siemonit* Duke of *Maſovia* was obliged to be inveſted with this country as a fief dependent on *Poland*. In the year 1526, the male line of the Dukes of *Maſovia* being extinct, the Dutchy became immediately ſubject to *Poland*. And though King *Sigiſmund* I. was ſtrongly importuned to make his ſon *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* Duke of *Maſovia*, he could not be prevailed on; but that Monarch having firſt confirmed the rights and laws of the inhabitants, annexed it to *Great Poland* in 1529. King *Stephen*, in the year 1576, endowed *Maſovia* with the ſame rights and privileges as the reſt of the kingdom; but permitted the inhabitants to retain ſome of their ancient cuſtoms. This province has been twice given to the Queens of *Poland* as a dowery; and for ſometime was governed by a *Statthalter* appointed by the King. But in 1576, the *Woiewoda* of *Maſovia* was placed on the ſame footing with the other Palatines. No other religion but Popery is tolerated in this province; thoſe of other profeſſions being treated with the greateſt ſeverity: For if a Lutheran or Calviniſt Miniſter be found in *Maſovia*, he is certainly puniſhed with death. *Staravolſcius* computed the number of noble families in this country to be, in his time, no leſs than 45,000. *Maſovia* conſiſts of two palatinates, which are,

1. The Palatinate of CZERSK, (in Latin *Palitinatus Czercenſis*) or *Maſovia* properly ſo called. This includes ten Diſtricts, namely, *Czersk*, *Warszawa*, *Wizna*, *Wyszogrod*, *Zakrocim*, *Ciekanow*, *Nur*, *Lomza*, *Rozan*, and *Liw*. To the territory of *Warſaw* belong the Diſtricts of *Blonsk* and *Tarczyn*, to that of *Liw* the Diſtrict of *Pultusk*; and the territory of *Lomza*

includes the Diſtricts of *Oſtroleka*, *Kolno*, and *Zambrow*. As to eccleſiaſtical affairs, this palatinate is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhops of *Poſnan*, *Ploczk*, and *Luocko*. The moſt remarkable places in it are

Czersk, a fine city on the river *Viſtula*, where a provincial Court of Judicature is held. In 1656, *Frederick*, Margrave of *Baden*, withdrew to this place, which the *Poles* beſieged for two days: But happily for him, they drew off their forces on the third; upon which he made the beſt of his way to *Warſaw*.

Warſaw, or *Warſzawa*, is the capital of *Maſovia*, and the royal reſidence; it has alſo a ſtately caſtle. The general Diets of *Poland* are uſually held in this city; which is ſeated on the *Weiſſel* or *Viſtula*, and lies almoſt in the centre of the kingdom. It is ſurrounded with a moat and a double wall; and conſiſts of the *Old* and the *New Town*, with two handſom ſuburbs, called *Krakau* and *Praga*. Here are ſeveral elegant ſtone buildings and palaces, a great number of beautiful churches and convents, a hoſpital, an arſenal, and a ſtatue of King *Sigiſmund* III. erected to his memory by his ſon *Uladiſlaus* IV. The valuable library of Count *Zaluski*, which was opened in the year 1746, and is ſaid to contain above 200,000 volumes, is both an advantage and ornament to the city. Some years ſince, an academy for military exerciſes and a literary ſociety were inſtituted at *Warſaw*. When the general Diet is aſſembled there is ſuch a vaſt concourſe of people in this city, that great numbers of them are obliged to pitch tents without the town, where they live during the ſeſſion. The provincial aſſembly or Diet, and a Court of Judicature are alſo held here. King *Sigiſmund* III. was the firſt who made this city the royal reſidence; and his ſucceſſors have reſided here ever ſince. In the year 1569, in order to gratify the *Lithuanians*, the Diet was removed to *Warſaw*. In 1655 this city had a *Swediſh* garriſon, who brought hither a conſiderable booty from ſeveral parts of *Poland*; and a great number of military and civil officers, with ſome ladies of diſtinction of that nation, reſided here. But the *Poles* laid ſiege to it in 1656; and after a moſt vigorous defence, obliged the town to ſurrender. By the articles of capitulation, the *Swedes* were permitted to leave the place; but the beſt part of the plunder they had amaſſed together fell into the hands of the *Poles*. However, *Charles Guſtavus* approaching with an army to the relief of the town, King *John Caſimir* marched againſt him; and a battle was fought near the ſuburb of *Praga* which laſted three days. At laſt, the *Poles* were obliged to retreat, leaving behind them their baggage and artillery; upon which the *Swedes* placed a ſmall garriſon in the town, and deſtroyed the fortifications. In 1702 *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* made himſelf maſter of *Warſaw*, which happened to be then without a garriſon; and fixed his head quarters at *Praga*.

Wola, a village which lies about half a *German* mile from *Warſaw*, on the plain where the King's of *Poland* are elected.

Viaſdow, a royal palace, pleaſantly ſituated on the *Viſtula* at the diſtance of a *German* mile from *Warſaw*.

Villanow, a royal palace, built by King *John* III. known by the name of *Sobieski*; who alſo ended his days in this place in the year 1696. In the month of *Auguſt* 1732, King *Auguſtus* II. exhibited near this palace a ſpectacle, which had never before been ſeen in *Poland*. For he ordered his army, which was diſciplined in the *German* manner, to encamp cloſe to the walls of *Villanow*, where he reviewed the troops, and cauſed them to perform all kinds of military exerciſes. This ſplendid encampment laſted for three weeks.

Lomza, a town on the river *Narew*, remarkable for a college of Jeſuits. It is the reſidence of a *Staroſta* and a court of juſtice; and provincial aſſemblies are held here.

Pultusk, a town on the ſame river, with a caſtle built on an iſland. This town together with its territory belongs to the Biſhop of *Plocsk*, from whom lies no appeal even to the King himſelf. The public buildings are a ſtately cathedral with a chapter-houſe, and a college of Jeſuits. In 1324 and 1364, *Pultusk* was laid in aſhes by the *Lithuanians*; and in 1703, the *Saxons* were defeated here by *Charles* XII. of *Sweden*.

Wiſzogrod, a ſmall town and caſtle ſeated on the *Viſtula*. It is the reſidence of a Caſtellan and a *Staroſta*; and a court of juſtice is held in it.

Wizna, *Nur*, *Zakroczym*, *Ciekanow*, *Zambrow*, *Rozan*, and *Liw* are ſmall towns. Courts of Judicature and Provincial Aſſemblies are held in all of them except *Zambrow*; and mention has been already made of them above.

Warca, *Garwolin*, *Blon*, *Tarczyn*, *Wonſoz*, *Radzielow*, *Kolno*, *Oſtrolenka*, *Makow*, *Camenecz*, and *Oſtrow*, are likewiſe ſmall places where courts of juſtice are held.

Czernienſk, *Grodzye*, and *Praſni*, are ſmall towns of little note.

2. The Palatinate of Ploczko, in Latin *Palatinatus Plocenſis*, contains three Diſtricts, namely, *Plonsk*, *Raciaz*, and the territory of *Zawskryn*. The moſt conſiderable places in this Palatinate are

Ploczko, a city which ſtands on an eminence by the *Viſtula*, from which there is a very pleaſant proſpect. It is the See of a Biſhop, who is ſuffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, and ſovereign of the territory of *Pultusk*. This city is alſo the reſidence of a Palatine, a Caſtellan, and a *Staroſta*. Here are ſeveral churches richly ornamented; the principal among which are thoſe which belong to the Nuns of St. *Mary Magdalen*, and the Benedictine Monks in the caſtle. The latter is the cathedral; and the revenues of the Chapter are almoſt equal to the Biſhop's: The *Provoſt*, or Dean, is Lord of the Diſtrict of *Sielun*, and ſovereign of the Nobility who reſide there; and accordingly is ſtiled Prince of that territory. The Jeſuits have a college here; and in the caſtle is a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary. The provincial Court of Judicature is held in this city; and its inhabitants carry on a good trade.

Bielskot, and *Shrimky* are ſmall towns of little note.

Sierpecz,

Sierpecz, a little town, remarkable for a famous image of the Virgin *Mary*.

Plonsk, *Raciaz*, and *Zauskryzn*, are ſmall places where courts of judicature are held. The provincial Diet alſo aſſembles in *Raciaz*.

Mlawa, and *Razanow* are ſmall towns of little note.

IV. *POLISH PRUSSIA.*

THIS country has, probably, been added to the general province of *Great Poland*, and looked upon as a Diſtrict of it, becauſe it borders on that part of the *Poliſh* dominions. However, we ſhall not give a particular account of it here; but refer the deſcription of *Poliſh Pruſſia* to another place in the ſequel.

LITTLE POLAND,

Or MALOPOLSKA PROWINCYA.

THIS country is alſo called *Upper Poland*, and properly contains the palatinates of *Cracow*, *Sendomir*, and *Lublin*; but the provinces of *Ruſſia*, *Volhynia*, *Kiovia*, and *Podlachia* are alſo annexed to *Little Poland*. We ſhall therefore deſcribe

---

I. The Three *PALATINATES* which conſtitute *Little Poland* properly ſo called; and theſe are

1. THE Palatinate of CRACOW, in Latin *Palatinatus Cracovienſis*, which includes the Diſtricts of *Sczerzyc*, *Proſzow*, *Xiaz*, *Lelow*, *Sadecz*, *Czkow*, and *Biecz*; and alſo the three Dutchies of *Oſwiecim*, *Zator*, and *Severia*, which formerly belonged to *Sileſia*; and the County of *Scepus*. The Dutchies of *Oſwiecim* and *Zator* are *Staroſties*; but *Severia* is ſubject to the biſhop of *Cracow*. Places of note in this Palatinate are

Lelow, a town with a territory belonging to the *Staroſtey* of *Cracow*. A Court of Judicature is held here, and likewiſe at *Xiaz* and *Czkow*.

Miekow, a little town whoſe ſituation is ſaid to reſemble that of *Jeruſalem*; which city the founder, *Gryphius Jaxa*, took for his model when he built

this town in memory of his pilgrimage to *Jeruſalem*. He afterwards granted this place to the *Knights of the Holy Sepulchre*.

Mſtow, a ſmall town on the river *Warta*.

Czenſtokowa, a little town on the ſame river. This place is principally famous for a convent of Monks of the order of St. *Paul* the hermit, which ſtands a little without the town on the *Clarenberg* and is celebrated for a picture of the Virgin *Mary* pretended to be painted by St. *Luke*; ſo that it is much frequented by pilgrims. This convent is fortified, and maintains a garriſon. In the year 1655, it ſtood out a ſiege when preſſed by the *Swedes*. Near this town a battle was fought in 1665 between the King's forces and Prince *Lubomerski*'s army, to the diſadvantage of the former. The nuptials of King *Michael* with *Eleanor*, ſiſter to the Emperor *Leopold*, were ſolemniſed in this town in 1670.

Olsztyn, a ſmall place with a caſtle, which ſtands on a rock near the *Warta*.

Olkusz or *Ilkush*, a ſmall town, which was famous for its lead and ſilver mines, and belongs to the King. The produce of theſe mines was formerly very conſiderable; but they have not been wrought for many years, and are fallen to decay. However, they are capable of being reſtored.

CRACOW, the capital of the whole kingdom, and the fixed reſidence of the King, is ſeated in a fertile country at the conflux of the *Viſtula* and the *Ridawa*.

Cracow, properly ſo called, is ſurrounded with walls, and contains a great number of convents and churches; and among the latter that of the Virgin *Mary* is the principal. On the weſt ſide of it is a ſuburb with beautiful gardens; and near it ſtands the King's Palace with elegant gardens and a canal, which are incloſed with a wall. On the ſouth ſide of it, the royal caſtle ſtands on a high rock near the *Viſtula*. This large ſtructure is defended by walls, towers and baſtions; and has the appearance of a town. It includes the King's palace, the cathedral, and two other churches, with ſeveral dwelling houſes. The cathedral is dedicated to St. *Staniſlaus*, formerly biſhop of this See, whom *Boleſlaus* II. killed at the altar with his own hands, becauſe the good Biſhop's admonitions were grown inſupportable to him. The remains of St. *Staniſlaus* are incloſed in a ſilver ſhrine; and maſſes are continually performed day and night in this church. In the treaſury of the cathedral, among other things of great value, the *Regalia*, namely the crown, ſcepter and *Monde* are depoſited; and on this account the Treaſurer of the Kingdom has the care of it. The Kings of *Poland* are always crowned, and their remains are interred in this church. The Biſhop of *Cracow* is alſo Duke of *Severia*; but an account of this Prelate's dignity, *&c.* has been given in the Introduction to *Poland* *, The annual revenue of the biſhopric of *Cracow* amounts to 40,000 dollars. The chapter conſiſts of thirty-ſix canons, beſides other prieſts, whoſe revenues are alſo very

* See page 579.

conſiderable

conſiderable. Contiguous to the caſtle is the ſuburb of *Stradomo*, which includes ſeveral churches, convents, and hoſpitals; and from *Stradomo* a bridge over the *Viſtula* leads to the town of

Kazimircz, which may be looked upon as the ſecond diviſion of the city of *Cracow*. It lies to the eaſt of the latter, was built by *Caſimir the Great*, and is incloſed with a wall. The chief edifice in this part of the city is the Univerſity; but *Caſimir the Great* was prevented by death from compleating it. However, it was quite finiſhed by King *Uladiſlaus Iagello*, and his conſort *Hedewig*, in the year 1401. It conſiſts of eleven colleges, to which fourteen grammar ſchools, diſperſed in ſeveral parts of the city, are ſubordinate. The Biſhop of *Cracow* is perpetual Chancellor of the Univerſity. In the year 1549, it received a ſevere blow; for all the ſtudents quitted the Univerſity in one day, alledging, that ſufficient ſatisfaction had not been made to their comrades, ſome of whom had been killed, and others wounded in a frivolous quarrel. The *Jews Town* joins to *Kazimierz*.

Laſtly, to the north of it lies the ſmall town or ſuburb of *Kleparz* or *Klepardia*, which has no walls; but contains ſeveral churches, particularly that of St. *Florian*, a very ſtately edifice, and the Biſhop's palace.

The city of *Cracow* is large, and was formerly very opulent and flouriſhing; but by the removal of the Court, and the many calamities it ſuſtained in both the *Swediſh* wars, it has very much declined, and is far from being ſo populous as it formerly was. The *Germans* and *Italians* had once brought its commerce to a great height; but, at preſent, it is very inconſiderable.

The Burghers of *Cracow* have this particular privilege, namely, that no appeal lies from the City-Council, but to the King only; and his Majeſty can judge no cauſes relating to the city, or to the towns of *Kaſimierz* and *Kleparz* in any other place, but in *Cracow*. The *Woiewoda* or Palatine of *Cracow* has the power of chooſing the council, but not of diſplacing any Counſellor when elected. The Caſtellan of this city has nothing in common with the other officers of that denomination; however, he has the ſame name and appointments, and by his poſt is entirely exempt from ſerving any other offices, except that he is obliged to appear in the Council. The inhabitants of *Cracow* are likewiſe allowed the privilege of purchaſing and holding eſtates.

As to the hiſtorical particulars relating to this city; it is ſaid, but with little certainty, to have been founded by a *Poliſh* or *Bohemian* Prince of the name of *Cracus* in the year of Chriſt 700. It was erected into a Biſhop's See in the year 1000; and in the year 1257, it obtained the municipal rights of *Magdeburg*. It has often been conſumed by fire, namely, in the years 1241, 1260, 1439, 1462, 1473, 1494, 1504, 1652, and 1702. *Cracow* was viſited by the peſtilence in 1707 and 1708, which ſwept away ſeveral thouſands of the inhabitants. In the year 1655, it was beſieged and taken by the *Swedes*; but in 1657, they were obliged to deliver it up again to the *Poles*.

Tinieck, a Benedictine convent, which ſtands on the *Viſtula*, and is one of the principal monaſteries in *Poland*, whoſe Abbot is always one of the canons

of

of *Cracow*. It was founded by *Caſimir* I. in the year 1046. It is chiefly celebrated for the learning of the monks belonging to it, and their ſkill in the ſciences. To this convent belong five towns and one hundred villages. The Abbot *Derſlaw*, when this monaſtery began to decline, raiſed it to its former proſperity, and *Mielecki* made the monks a preſent of his library and mathematical *muſeum*.

Claratumba, or *Mogila*, a rich, beautiful, and fortified *Ciſtercian* convent. It lies about a *German* mile from *Cracow*, and is famous for being the burying-place of Queen *Vanda*.

Proſzowice, a town with a territory; and in it are held the aſſemblies of the Nobility of *Cracow*, and alſo a Provincial Court of Judicature. The ſoil hereabouts is exceeding rich and fertile.

Bocnia, a town famous for its ſalt-mines, which were firſt diſcovered in 1251, when this place was only a village. The ſmall river called *Raab*, that falls into the *Viſtula*, runs near this town, which is ſurrounded with hills and eminences. The ſalt-mine of *Bocnia* is in a narrow ſlip of land of ſeventy-five *Lachter* * in breadth from North to South; about one thouſand in length from Eaſt to Weſt; and the greateſt depth of it is one hundred and twenty *Lachter* from the ſurface. The ſalt lies in veins, and is ſomething finer than that of *Wieliczka*, eſpecially at a certain depth. It is cut in ſmall pieces and put up in caſks. The number of labourers in this mine is about two or three hundred. Large pieces of black wood have been found in this mine, which are incruſted with ſalt; and likewiſe alabaſter. Every part of theſe mines is very dry. They are under the direction of the magiſtrates of *Wieliczka*.

Wieliczka, a ſmall town, but famous for its ſalt-mines, lies in a valley about a *German* mile from *Cracow*. The town is entirely undermined; and the mines extend for a conſiderable diſtance round it. The length of the mine from Eaſt to Weſt is ſix hundred *Lachter*, the breadth from North to South is two hundred, and its greateſt depth is eighty *Lachter*. But the viens of ſalt are not limited to this extent; for the depth and length of them from Eaſt to Weſt are as yet unknown, and only the breadth has been hitherto determined. The number of ſhafts, at preſent, is ten; and within the whole ſalt-mine there is not ſo much as one ſpring. The ſubterraneous paſſages or galleries are very ſpacious; and in many of them altars or chapels are hewn out of the ſalt-rock. In theſe chapels Crucifixes, or the images of Saints, are ſet up; and a light is kept continually burning before them. The places where the ſalt is hewn out of the mine, and the empty cavities where it has been formerly hewn out, are called *Chambers*; and ſome of theſe are ſo ſpacious that a large church might be incloſed in one of them. Several of theſe *Chambers* are made uſe of as warehouſes for the ſalt caſks, or magazines for fodder for the horſes;

* A *Lachte* is five *Dreſden* ells, or ten feet.

and

and others ſerve for ſtables, in which twenty or thirty horſes ſtand, according to the number that the work requires. In ſome chambers, where formerly the water has ſtagnated, the bottoms and ſides are covered with very thick incruſtations of ſome thouſands of ſalt cryſtals one upon another; many of which weigh half a pound, or more: and when any candles happen to be brought into theſe places, the numerous rays of light reflected by theſe cryſtals emit a ſurprizing luſtre. In ſome parts of the mine huge columns of ſalt are left ſtanding to ſupport the rock. The number of miners employed in theſe mines are between four and five hundred; but the ſalt-works may be ſaid to employ ſeven hundred men in all. The ſalt lies in large ſhapeleſs maſſes near the ſurface, out of which, blocks of ſixty, eighty, or a hundred ſquare feet may be hewn; but at a conſiderable depth it is found in ſmaller lumps. Above 600,000 quintals of ſalt are annually dug out of theſe mines. The worſt and cheapeſt ſort is called *Zielona*, i. e. 'green ſalt;' which is probably ſo called from its greeniſh colour, cauſed by a heterogenous mixture of a grayiſh mineral or clay. It conſiſts entirely of ſalt-cryſtals of different dimenſions; and a caſk of this ſalt, which generally contains ſix quintals, ſells for about twenty-two *Poliſh* Guilders. But a quintal of that in large maſſes or blocks is worth thirty-two or thirty three *Florins* *. A finer ſort of ſalt is called *Szybikowa*, which is ſold for twenty-four Florins *per* caſk, and in large blocks at four Florins the quintal. The third ſpecies of ſalt dug out of theſe mines is the cryſtal-ſalt, or *ſal gemmæ*. This is found in ſmall pieces interſperſed in the rock, and when detached from it, always breaks into cubes, or rectangular priſms. This is uſually ſold unprepared. The colour of the ſalt-ſtone is a dark gray mixed with yellow. Salt was formerly boiled out of the *Sole*, as it is called, which is accumulated in the mines; but this has been diſcontinued ſince the year 1724, on account of the too great conſumption of wood it occaſioned. Theſe ſalt-mines have always made a part of the King's board-revenues, as they are called, and are generally farmed. Sometimes, however, the King has kept them in his own hands, and appointed proper officers for the management of them. The office of Mine-maſter at *Wieliczka* is hereditary in the family of *Morſztein*; and a conſiderable ſalary ariſing from theſe mines is annexed to it; but as the ſalt-works are part of the King's table-revenues, the Mine-maſter has no other advantage from his office. The Nobility in *Great* and *Little Poland* are allowed a ſufficient quantity of ſalt for their families and vaſſals, (which amounts annually to above 20,000 caſks) on paying only four *Poliſh* Guilders *par* caſk, though it ſtands the King in twelve Guilders a caſk. Theſe ſalt-mines are ſaid to have been diſcovered in 1251; thoſe at *Bochnia* being firſt wrought, and ſome time after thoſe at *Wieliczka*. In 1444, and 1696, theſe mines accidentally took fire, and continued burning for a long time.

* A *Poliſh* Florin is equal to 1*s*. 2*d*. ſterling; and a *Poliſh* Guilder is about 6*d*. $\frac{1}{2}$.

Lipowiec, a ſmall town on the *Viſtula*, with a caſtle built upon a rock, which ſerves as a priſon for eccleſiaſtical delinquents.

Landſkron, a ſtrong caſtle built on a high rock. In the neighbourhood of it is a convent, which ſtands on a mountain called *Calvary*, and is much frequented by pilgrims.

Sandecz, a ſmall walled town on the river *Donaiecz*. It carries on a good trade, and is the ſeat of a Caſtellan. It is further remarkable for a college and a monaſtery of *Premonſtratenſes*. The cauſes belonging to the Diſtrict of *Sandecz* are tried at *Cſzkow*. In *Old Sandecz*, which is about a *German* mile diſtant from this place, is another convent of *Premonſtratenſes*, which is reckoned the richeſt monaſtery in all *Poland*.

Pienin, a caſtle well fortified by Nature, which is acceſſible but by one avenue, and that very narrow.

Tarnow, a town and caſtle, in which are two convents, and a collegiate church.

Biecz, a ſmall town, in which a Caſtellan reſides, and a Court of Judicature is held.

Andrzeiow, or *Dederzeiow*, a town near the frontiers of *Hungary* and *Sileſia*, in which is a *Ciſtercian* abbey. In the year 1576, an aſſembly of the Nobility was held here, when the election of King *Stephen Bathori* was confirmed; and in 1607 the *Rokoſſians*, or Noblemen engaged in the League, alſo aſſembled in this town.

The ſmall towns of *Promink*, *Rudawa*, *Czerna*, *Teczyn*, *Oycow*, *Alwernia*, *Niepolomice*, *Skala*, *Olbrom*, *Pilica*, *Ogrodzieniec*, *Krzepice*, *Zarki*, *Klobucko*, *Nowytarg*, alſo lie in this Palatinate.

The Dutchy of OSWIECIM, which, in 1457, *Caſimir* III. purchaſed from *Sileſia*, and annexed to *Poland*, is, at preſent, a royal *Staroſtey*, and in it lie

Oſwiecim, a ſmall town on the *Viſtula*, which conſiſts of wooden houſes, and has a caſtle of the ſame materials; and *Rety* and *Zywiec*, two other ſmall towns.

The Dutchy of ZATOR, which was mortgaged to the republic of *Poland* in 1494; and actual poſſeſſion was taken of it in 1513. It is, at preſent, a *Staroſtey* in the King's gift, and includes *Zator*, a town and caſtle on the *Viſtula*, where a Provincial Aſſembly and Court of Judicature are held; and *Berwald*, a ſmall town.

SEVERIEA, or SIEWEIRZ, a Dutchy, ſold in 1543 by the Duke of *Teſhen*, in *Sileſſa*, to the Biſhop of *Cracow*, who, about three years after, took poſſeſſion of it. The Biſhop of *Cracow* is ſtill the Sovereign of it, is alſo ſtiled Duke of *Severia*, with full power even in civil caſes. In this Dutchy lie the towns of

Sieweirz, or *Severia*, the capital, which has a ſtrong caſtle built on an iſland in a large lake.

Slawkow, a ſmall town, near which is a ſilver-mine.

The

The county of SCEPUS or ZIPS, the greateſt part of which was mortgaged in the year 1412, by *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary*, to *Uladiſlaus Jagello*, King of *Poland*, and has not yet been redeemed. The mortgaged towns and caſtles are,

Lublyo,	*Durandſdorf*,	*Fulek*,
Padolin,	*Deutſchendorf*,	*Kirchdorf*,
Knieſen,	*Michelſdorf*,	*Matzdorf*,
Bela,	*Neudorf*,	and
Laibitz,	*Riſtdorf*,	*Georgenberg*,
Menhardſdorf,	*Vallendorf*,	

with all their dependencies. For a deſcription of theſe places, and of the other part of the county *Zips*, the reader is referred to *Hungary*; and particularly to the account of *Upper Hungary*.

2. The Palatinate of SANDOMIR or SENDOMIR, called in Poliſh *Sandomirz*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Sandomirienſis*, includes the Diſtricts of *Radom*, *Stezyca*, *Wiſlica*, *Checiny*, *Opoczno*, and *Pilſno*. Remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

Sandomir, *Sendomir*, or *Sandomirz*, the capital of this Palatinate. It ſtands on an eminence near the *Viſtula*, not far from the influx of the river *San* into the former. Its delightful ſituation rendered it the favourite reſidence of *Caſimir the Great*, and other Kings of *Poland*. This city is well fortified both by Nature and Art; and in it are a college of Jeſuits and other Orders, and a rich foundation called *Collegium Canonicorum*. The caſtle, which ſtands on a ſteep rock, was blown up by the *Swedes* in 1656. A Provincial Court of Juſtice is alſo held here. The *Sendomirian Staroſtey* is the only one in *Poland* that can neither be mortgaged, nor let on a perpetual leaſe. In the year 1259, the *Tartars* and *Ruſſians* committed terrible ravages in this city, and put the inhabitants to the ſword. On the twenty-ſecond of *Auguſt* 1702, the Nobility entered into a confederacy at *Sendomir*, and engaged by a ſolemn vow, to defend their religion, their liberty, and their lawful King *Auguſtus* II.

Pilſno, a ſmall town, in which a *Staroſta* reſides, and a Court of Juſtice is held. Within its territory lie *Sendiſow*, *Zarnovecz*, *Socolow*, *Praeclaw*, *Zaclyn*, and *Lazakiſko*, all places of little note; but in the laſt is a celebrated image of the Vigin *Mary*. The caſtles of *Rzemient*, *Vieviork*, *Chriſtopher*, and *Baranow*, are alſo in this Diſtrict.

Oleſnicz, *Stobnica*, *Paczanow*, *Polanecz*, *Staſow*, and *Oſieco*, are ſmall towns in this Palatinate.

Korczyn, or *Neuſtadt*, is a town and caſtle ſeated on the *Viſtula*, where a *Staroſta* reſides, and the Provincial Diet for *Little Poland* is held.

Wiſlica, a ſmall town, which ſtands near the river *Niba* in the middle of a moraſs. It is the reſidence of a Caſtellan; and a Court of Judi-

cature is held here. In 1136, the *Ruſſians* having taken this town by treachery, ſacked and plundered it. *Wiſlica* is frequently mentioned in the hiſtory of *Poland*.

Sborow, and *Chrobers*, two caſtles of little note.

Pinczow, a Marquiſate, belonging to Count *Wiolopolſki*. Its chief town is *Pinczow*, remarkable for a *Gymnaſium* or Seminary.

Szydlow, an old town, in which a great number of Jews is found amongſt the inhabitants.

Rakow, which was formerly a populous town; and the *Socinians*, or, as they are called in *Poland*, the *Arians*, had a college and printing-houſe here; but in 1643, they were expelled from this place. The *Rakovian* catechiſm takes its name from this town.

Checiny, a ſmall town, remarkable for its lead and ſilver mines, and marble quarries. It has a caſtle, which ſtands on a high rock, and a *Staroſta*. An inferior Court of Judicature is alſo held here. The mines of *Checiny* belong to the King.

Malogocz, a ſmall town, where a Caſtellan reſides.

Sulow, a ſmall town, with an abbey of *Ciſtercian* monks, to which ſome of the neighbouring towns belong.

Setzini, a good town, with a caſtle built on a rock. Near it are ſilver mines, in which *Lapis lazuli* is alſo found.

Kielce, a ſmall town, in which are a cathedral and an epiſcopal palace. The mines which are wrought near this place belong to the Biſhop of *Cracow*.

Radoſkiczs, *Opoczno*, *Inowlod*, *Drevitz*, and *Zarnowo*, are ſmall towns; but the laſt is the reſidence of a Caſtellan.

Stezycz, a ſmall town on the *Viſtula*, rendered famous by the Diet held there in 1575, and by the aſſembly of the Nobility in 1606. A Caſtellan alſo reſides in this town.

Radom, a walled town, and the reſidence of a Caſtellan and a *Staroſta*. A Provincial Diet, a Court of Judicature, and the *Poliſh* Court of the Treaſury, which laſts ſix weeks every year, are held here.

Iedlinsk, which is remarkable for an academical *Gymnaſium*. *Tarnow* and *Szydlowiec* are ſmall towns.

Vonkocz, a rich convent of *Ciſtercian* monks. In the neighbourhood of this monaſtery are fine ſtone quarries, and iron-works.

Kunow, a ſmall town belonging to the Biſhop of *Cracow*, near which are quarries of fine marble.

Ilza, a pretty town, which likewiſe belongs to the Biſhop of *Cracow*. It has a caſtle, and is remarkable for a good earthern-ware manufacture.

Kaleberg, in Latin *Mons calvus*, is the higheſt mountain in all *Poland*. The abbey of the holy croſs, which is famed for many pretended miracles and the crowds of pigrims who reſort to it, ſtands upon this mountain.

There is not ſo much as a tree growing on this hill; hence it derives its name of *Kaleberg*, ' or the bare mountain.'

Bozentin, a town ſurrounded with a wall and a rampart, which belongs to the Biſhop of *Cracow* who has a palace here. It lies juſt at the foot of *Kaleberg*.

Lagow a ſmall town, in which earthern ware is made. It belongs to the Biſhop of *Cujavia*.

Slupecz, a ſmall town belonging to the abbey of the holy croſs.

Opatow, a conſiderable town, ſituated in a pleaſant and fruitful country. Here is a large collegiate church; and a Diet is held in this town.

Iwanſiz, a ſmall town of little note.

Zawikoſt, a ſmall town and caſtle on the *Viſtula*, governed by a Caſtellan. Here is a nunnery; and in the year 1205, the *Ruſſians* were defeated near this place.

The towns of *Lyſagora*, *Szydlowiec*, *Sieciekow*, *Piotrowin*, *Borzecin*, *Skrzynno*, *Studziana*, *Dzikow*, *Baranow*, *Dambrowa*, *Choretnik*, and *Poloviec*, lie in this Palatinate.

3. The Palatinate of LUBLIN, in Latin *Palatinatus Lublinenſis*, contains the Diſtricts of *Lukow*, and *Urzedow*. In eccleſiaſtical matters, it is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Cracow*. The following are the moſt remarkable places in this Palatinate.

Urzedow, a town ſituated on a lake, in which a Court of Judicature is held.

The towns of *Kock*, *Kraſnik*, *Lewartow*, *Piaſki*, *Lacza*, *Parczow*, and *Palawy*.

Kazimierz, a well-built town, ſituated among rocks near the *Viſtula*. It is a place of conſiderable trade; and is one of the towns which conſtitute the juriſdiction of the *Six Towns*, as it is called. In the year 1656, *Charles Guſtavus* paſſed the *Viſtula* at this place, and defeated *Czarniecki* the Caſtellan of *Kiow*.

Lublin, a city ſurrounded with a wall and a ditch, and a place of good trade but not very large. It has a caſtle built on a high rock, and ſtands on the little river *Byſtrzna* in a very pleaſant and fertile country. Here are ſeveral churches and convents, and a college of Jeſuits. Great numbers of Jews live in the ſuburbs of *Lublin*, and have a ſpacious ſynagogue there. Three annual fairs are held here (and each of them laſts a month) which are frequented by great numbers of *German*, *Greek*, *Armenian*, *Arabian*, *Ruſſian*, *Turkiſh*, and other traders and merchants. The chief Tribunal for *Little Poland* is held here, beſides a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature. In the year 1240, *Lublin* was ſet on fire by the *Tartars*; and after that continued for a long time in the poſſeſſion of the *Ruſſians*. In 1447, and 1606, this town alſo ſuffered greatly by fire; and in 1656, it was laid in aſhes by the *Swedes*. In 1703, an extraordinary Diet was held here.

Lukow,

Lukow, a ſmall town, in which a *Staroſta* reſides, and a Court of Juſtice is held.

Rakow, a ſmall town of little note.

II. *PODLACHIA*,

Or the PALATINATE of *BIELSK*,

In Latin *Palitinatus Bielcenſis.*

THE *Poles* took this country from the Pagan *Jaczvingians* in the reign of *Boleſlaus* V. and in 1596, it was annexed to the kingdom of *Poland.* This province was formerlythe occaſion of many diſputes and quarrels between the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*. In eccleſiaſtical affairs, all *Podlachia* is ſubject to the Biſhop of *Lucko*. This Palatinate contains the three Diſtricts of *Drogiczyn*, *Mielnik*, and *Bielsk*. The moſt remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

Auguſtow, a beautiful town ſeated on a lake, and ſo called from its founder King *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*.

Knyſzn, a ſmall town, where King *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* ended his days on the ſeventh of *July* 1572.

Bialyſtok, a city which is divided into the *Old* and *New town*. In 1753, the greateſt part of this city was deſtroyed by fire. Count *Braniki*'s ſeat and gardens in the *New town*, for their elegance, may be called the *Verſailles* of *Poland*.

Tykoczin, a town of ſome note on the river *Narew*, with a handſome caſtle, ſituated amidſt inacceſſible moraſſes. A Court of Judicature is held here. In the year 1705, King *Auguſtus* II. inſtituted the Order of the *White-Eagle* in this town, which he conferred as a reward of courage and loyalty.

Suraz, *Vizſokie*, and *Branſk*, ſmall towns; but in the firſt and the laſt, Courts of Judicature are held.

Bielcz, a large town, which is all built with wood; but is a place of great trade, which is carried on by the Jews. It is ſituated on the river *Biala* which runs into the *Narew*.

Grodeck, a little town on the river *Bug*.

Drogiczn, a ſmall town on the ſame river, in which a Court of Juſtice and a provincial Diet are held.

Miedziles, a ſmall town where a Court of Judicature is likewiſe held.

Mielnik, a ſmall town ſituated on the river *Bug*. A Court of Judicature and a provincial Diet are held in this little town.

Bocki, *Wegrow*, *Ciekanowiec*, *Narew*, *Siemiatycze*, and *Waſilkow*, are ſmall towns in this Palatinate.

III. *LITTLE*

III. *LITTLE* or *RED RUSSIA.*

In Latin *Ruſſia Parva* or *Ruſſia Rubra.*

THIS country was formerly governed by its own Dukes; but on the deceaſe of the laſt Duke which happened in 1340, King *Caſimir*, by right of conſanguinity, laid claim to *Red Ruſſia*, and rendered it a province of *Poland*. King *Lewis* divided the territories of *Red Ruſſia* among the *Hungarians*; however, they were again driven out of them in 1396. And though *Uladiſlaus Jagello*, by a treaty of alliance concluded with *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary*, by an overſight relinquiſhed all right and claim to *Ruſſia* and *Podolia*, the country ſtill remained under the dominion of *Poland*. *Red Ruſſia* includes the following Palatinates.

1. The Palatinate of CHELM, in Latin *Palitinatus Chelmenſis*, which has one Caſtellan and two *Staroſtas*. Remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

Chelm, a city and epiſcopal See; but the Biſhop reſides at *Kraſnoſtaw*, and is a ſuffragan of the Archbiſhop of *Lemberg*. Here is alſo a *Greek* Biſhop, who has his cathedral, and is ſubject to the metropolitan of *Kiow*. In this city a Caſtellan and *Staroſta* reſide, and a provincial Diet and Court of Juſtice are held.

Kraſnoſtaw, a city where the Biſhop of *Chelm* and a *Staroſta* reſide, lies on the river *Vieprz*. Here is alſo held a Court of Judicature. *Maximilian* Archduke of *Auſtria*, after he had been defeated by *Zamoyſki* at *Byczyn* on the borders of *Sileſia*, where he was obliged to ſurrender himſelf priſoner, was confined in this town in 1588. The following year he was ſet at liberty, on renouncing all claim to the crown of *Poland*.

Ulodaw, a ſmall town on the river *Bug*.

Laſczow, a ſmall place of little note.

2. The Palatinate of BELZ, in Latin *Palitinatus Belcenſis*, which includes three Diſtricts, namely, *Busk*, *Horodla* and *Hrabowiec*. In this Palatinate are the following places of note.

Horodla, a town on the river *Bug*, where a provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held, and a *Staroſta* reſides. At a Diet held here in 1413, the *Lithuanians* were placed on a level with the *Poliſh* ſubjects, with regard to offices, rights and privileges. Several families of the former were admitted among the latter; their arms were quartered; and many other ordinances were made in favour of the *Lithuanians*.

Rubieſkow, a ſmall town of little note.

Zamoſcia, *Zamoſzcia*, or *Zamoſk*, is a city and fortification, built by the famous Great Chancellor *John Zamoyſki*. It has a ſtately cathedral and ſeveral other churches; a decayed Univerſity, of which the Biſhop of *Chelm* is perpetual Chan-

Chancellor; a charitable foundation called *Mons Pietatis*, and ſeveral valuable privileges: But the fortifications are now in a bad condition. The proprietor of this town, &c. ſtiles himſelf Prince *Zamoski*. In the year 1656, *Charles Guſtavus*, King of *Sweden*, made a fruitleſs attempt upon this place: But on the twenty-ninth of *December* 1715, it was ſurprized by the *Saxons*.

Sczerbzeſzin, *Turobin*, *Tamogrod*, *Tomaſſow*, *Tyſzowicze*, &c. are ſmall towns; and for the moſt part, belong to the territory of *Samoskia*.

Belz, a large town, and the reſidence of a Palatine, a Caſtellan, and a *Staroſta*. A provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are alſo held here.

Grabowiec, *Sokal*, *Busk*, *Olesko*, *Brody*, *Podkamenie*, *Toporow*, are all towns of little note.

Rava, a ſmall town, where King *Auguſtus* II. entertained the Czaar *Peter the Great* for three days ſucceſſively, in the year 1698. A Conference was alſo held here between the Deputies of the Confedrates and the *Saxon* army in 1716.

3. The Palatinate of LEMBERG or *Lwow*, in Latin *Palatinatus Lembergenſis* or *Leopolienſis*, conſiſts of four Diſtricts; and each of theſe is governed by a Caſtellan and a *Staroſta*, and deſerves a particular deſcription.

1. The Diſtrict of *Lemberg*, in which are the following towns, &c.

Lemberg, called in Latin *Leopolis*, and in Poliſh *Lwow*, is the capital of this Palatinate. It is a large opulent city, and pretty well fortified in the *Poliſh* manner, that is, only with timber; and lies low on the banks of the river *Peltew*, being ſurrounded with hills and mountains which command the town. *Lemberg* is the See of a Popiſh Archbiſhop, and likewiſe of a *Ruſſian* and *Armenian* Biſhop. It carries on a conſiderable trade, and has two caſtles, one within, and another without its walls. The latter ſtands on a high hill, and the Carmelite monaſtery, which is fortified, may ſerve for a citadel to this caſtle. Here is a magnificent cathedral, and likewiſe ſeveral other churches, among which is a *Ruſſian*, and an *Armenian* church. Here are ſome rich convents, particularly that of the *Dominicans*, which is ſaid not to have its equal in *Poland*, a college of Jeſuits, a *Gymnaſium* or ſeminary, an arſenal, a public granary, two Jewiſh ſchools, &c. A Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature alſo are held in this town. The inhabitants of this city are a mixture of ſeveral nations; but no Proteſtants are tolerated amongſt them. *Lemberg* was erected into an Archbiſhop's See in 1361, or 1362. In the year 1375 the See was removed to *Halicz*; but in 1416, it was reſtored to this city. In the year 1656 *Lemberg* held out two months, when beſieged by the *Ruſſians* and *Coſaks*; and in 1672, it alſo baffled the attempts of the *Turks*; who, at laſt, purchaſed it for 80,000 dollars. But in 1704, it was taken ſword in hand by *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden*.

Jaworow, a ſmall town remarkable for its warm baths.

Bialykamien,

Bialykamien, a ſmall place, near which the river *Bug* has its ſource.

Gliniany, a town rendered famous by the aſſembly of the *Ruſſian* Nobility on the death of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*; and in 1648, the *Poliſh* troops made this town their place of rendezvous.

Zborow, a town near which an obſtinate battle was fought between the *Poles* on one ſide, and the combined army of the *Coſaks* and *Tartars* on the other. In this engagement the latter were defeated and left 10,000 men dead on the ſpot: But the day after, a treaty of peace was concluded.

Zloczow, *Danilow*, *Grodeck*, *Komorna*, *Stry* and *Zolkiew*, are all inconſiderable places; but the laſt has a fine church, and a caſtle.

2. The Diſtrict of *Przemyſl*, in which are,

Jaroſlaw, a handſom town with a caſtle on the river *San*. It carries on a good trade; and within the town ſtands a college of Jeſuits, and without it is another foundation belonging to the ſame Order. In the year 1625, this place was conſumed by fire.

Przemyſl, a good town with a caſtle built on a rock. It lies in a fertile country near the river *San*; and is the reſidence of a Popiſh and a *Greek* Biſhop, the former of whom is a ſuffragan of the Archbiſhop of *Lemberg*. It has alſo a Jeſuits college, a Caſtellan and a *Staroſta*; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Juſtice are held here.

Reſow, a town with a caſtle, which carries on a conſiderable trade, eſpecially in linen. In the neighbouring country live a great many *Germans*, whoſe anceſtors emigrated hither by the invitation and encouragement of *Caſimir the Great*.

Przeworsk (which has a Court of Judicature) *Lancut*, *Felſtin*, *Kreſiezyn*, *Rzeſzow*, *Dombromil*, *Drohobycz*, *Lezcysk*, *Wiſnia*, *Dubiecz*, *Samborz*, &c. are ſmall towns in this Diſtrict. *Samborz* is a royal table-revenue as it is called, with part of the ſalt-works in this Palatinate which belong to it.

3. The Diſtrict of *Sanock* is, for the moſt part a mountainous country. The principal places in this Diſtrict are

Sanock, a town with a caſtle, ſeated on the river *San*, in which a Court of Judicature and a Provincial Diet are held; and likewiſe a Caſtellan and *Staroſta* reſide.

Kroſna, a better town than the foregoing, which has a flouriſhing trade, and is the ſtaple for the wine and other commodities of *Hungary*. Here is a college of Jeſuits.

Brozow, *Dinow*, *Lesko*, and *Iaſliſka* are ſmall towns of little note.

4. The Diſtrict of *Halicz*. The ſouth-eaſt part of this Diſtrict, which lies between the *Nieſter* and the *Moldau*, is called *Pocutia*, and in it is the ſource of the river *Nieſter*. Remarkable places in this Diſtrict are

Halicz, a town with a caſtle ſeated on the *Nieſter*, which was formerly a large populous city, and the capital of the kingdom of *Halicz*: but now extremely declined from its ancient grandeur. In the year 1375, the Archi-

epiſcopal See of *Lemberg* was tranſlated hither; but in 1416, it was removed again to *Lemberg*. This city has a Caſtellan and a *Staroſta*; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Juſtice are held here. It is alſo remarkable for its ſalt-works.

Iurow, *Zydaczow*, *Kohatin*, *Kaczowce*, *Martinow*, *Oucze* or *Uſcie*, *Monaſter*, *Zawalow*, *Kakolnic*, and *Buczaw* or *Boczowce*, are ſmall towns of little note.

Brezan a well built town, with a caſtle. In 1698, the *Poles* had an encampment near this place.

Sniatyn, a city of good trade ſituated on the *Pruth*, and the chief town in *Pocutia*.

Staniſlawow, *Zablotow*, *Kolomyja*, *Dobrilow*, *Morcza*, *Ticzemenicze*, *Plomacze*, *Jeſupol*, *Kaluſza*, *Woinlow*, and *Zarnowno*, are all little towns in this Diſtrict.

IV. *PODOLIA.*

THIS is a very fertile country, but has, in all ages, been expoſed to the inroads of barbarous nations, who live on plunder, and have often ravaged it in the moſt cruel manner. *Podolia* abounds with a fine breed of horſes, and horned cattle. The inhabitants are of a warlike diſpoſition, and were formerly governed by their own Dukes or ſovereigns. In the fifteenth century this country was the ſubject of violent conteſts between the *Lithuanians* and *Poles*; till at length by a Diet held at *Lublin*, it was annexed to *Poland* in the year 1569. *Podolia* conſiſts of two Palatinates, namely, that of *Podolia*, and the Palatinate of *Braclaw*.

1. The Palatinate of PODOLIA, in Latin *Palatinatus Podoliæ*, containing the Diſtricts of *Kaminiec*, *Latyczew*, and *Czerwonogrod*. In this Palatinate lies

Kaminiec Podolſki, the capital, which has a caſtle built on a rock. The latter owes its ſtrength more to Nature than to art; however, it is the beſt fortification in *Poland*. A little below it runs the river *Smetricz*, which falls into the *Nieſter*. A Popiſh and an *Armenian* Biſhop, and a Caſtellan reſide in this city; and a Court of Juſtice and Provincial Diet are alſo held here. This epiſcopal See was founded in the year 1375. Here is alſo a college of Jeſuits. In 1651, the *Coſaks* laid ſiege to the caſtle of *Kaminiec*, but without ſucceſs. In 1672, the *Turks* obliged it to ſurrender, and held it till the peace of *Carlewitz*, which was concluded in 1699.

Paniowce, is a fortreſs near *Kaminiec*. The *Turks* attempted, in vain, to make themſelves maſter of this fort in the year 1621.

The following ſmall towns alſo lie in this Palatinate, *viz.*

Grodeck.	*Tornawa.*	*Sarafka.*
Smoſtric.	*Kitaigrod.*	*Werbky.*
Donaioſce.	*Sludzienicza.*	*Zinkow.*

Proczenskow.

Proczenſkow.
Kraſnopol.
Wonhofcze.
Kalus. Here the *Tartars* were defeated in 1672.
Kurilowcze.
Jultokow.
Marianow.
Barkow.
Berlinetz.
Jarowzow.
Mokylow.
Czerniowcze.
Flezce.
Suliaki.
Luccinice.
Szarigrod.
Mezerof.
Bar, remarkable for a college of Jeſuits.
Chmielnick.
Conſtantinowe.
Laticzew.
Deraznie.
Mikutince.
Medziboce.
Plokyrof.
Czarne Oſtro.
Satanow.
Uſiatin.
Scala.
Zwaniec.
Choroſtow.
Probozin.
Borowk.
Kribecz.
Grudec.
Zbaraz. Here the *Poles* encamped in the year 1649, and ſtood out a very cloſe ſiege, being preſſed by the *Coſaks* and *Tartars.*
Tramblow.
Tarnopol.
Nickulincze.
Secrucze.
Ianow.
Czartekow.
Czerwonogrod.
Iaſlowice.
Potok.
Dobrawodi.
Wiczeniecz or *Viſnoviecz.*

2. The Palatinate of BRACLAW, in Latin *Palantinatus Braclavienſis*, conſiſts of the Diſtricts of *Winnica* and *Zwinogrod.* In this Palatinate lies

Braclaw, a city conſiſting of two towns, ſeated on the river *Bog.* It is the reſidence of the *Woiewoda* or Palatine; and is alſo called St. *Peter's* town, its arms being the picture of that Saint. This city was taken from the *Coſaks* in the year 1654.

Winnica is another town on the river *Bog.* Here is a college of Jeſuits; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held in this town. In 1650, the *Coſaks* were totally routed near this place.

In this Palatinate lie alſo the following towns:

Felſztyn.
Samaellowka.
Chmielnick.
Brailow.
Kraſna.
Copigowka.
Muracwa.
Tulczin.
Ladicin.
Kormagrod.
Thomaſpol.
Langrod.
Gruska.
Buſza.
Jaruga.
Jampol.
Kowzeniecz.
Kamiencza.
Raskow.
Czaczanic.
Nowe Koniecpole.
Nowogrod.
Obedowka.
Balanowka.
Bercad.
Alexandrow.
Troczeniecz.
Uman.
Iwangrod.
Sokowlowka.
Woronowka.
Zileke.
Sobrick.
Monaſtericz.
Grudeck.
Kalnik.

Babin.	*Lipowe.*	*Poherwicze.*
Elius.	*Zibotow.*	*Sbaraz.*
Piacześne.	*Spicinea.*	*Priluka* and *Kokanow.*

V. The PALATINATE of *KIOW.*

OF this Palatinate, which makes part of the *Ukraine*, and is inhabited by the *Coſaks*, a fuller account has been given in our Deſcription of *Ruſſia*. In the year 1569, *Kiovia* was annexed to the kingdom of *Poland*. In 1667, that part of it which lies on the other ſide of the *Dnieper*, together with the *Coſaks* who were ſettled on the premiſes, was ceded for ever to *Ruſſia*; which ceſſion was ratified, and the city of *Kiow* entirely given up, in the year 1693.

Poliſh Kiovia, includes the Diſtricts of *Zytomierz* and *Owrucz*; in which are the following towns.

Krylow, a town ſeated on the river *Tazmin* near its influx into the *Dnieper*.

Czebrin, *Woronowka* and *Smila*, ſmall towns of little note.

Borowicz, a town on the *Dneiper*, where the *Coſaks* were beſieged by the *Poles* in 1638, and were obliged to deliver up their General *Paolucco*, and four of their principal commanders to the latter.

Czyrkaſſy, a town with a caſtle, ſituated on the *Dneiper*.

Korſun, a town on the river *Roſs*, which was founded by King *Stephen* about the year 1581.

The following little towns alſo lie in this province.

Boguſlaw.	*Wolodarka.*	*Harmonowka.*
Moſzna.	*Tabarowka.*	*Chwaſtow.*
Olzanka.	*Pawolocz.*	*Bialagrodko.*
Stawiocza.	*Bialacerkiew.*	*Wyzgrod.*
Strzybowka.	Here the *Tartars* were	*Czernobyl.*
Rokitna.	entirely defeated in 1626.	

VI. *VOLHINIA,*

Called in the *Poliſh* language *Wolynien.*

THIS country is ſo fertile as to ſupply the inhabitants with a large ſurplus of grain. Roſemary, aſparagus, *&c.* grow wild in the woods, which can hardly be diſtinguiſhed from thoſe cultivated in the gardens. *Volhinia* was annexed to *Poland* in a Diet held at *Lublin* in 1569. The *Tartars*,

Tartars, beſides a great booty, carried off 30,000 perſons out of this country, to be ſold as ſlaves, in the year 1618.

This Palatinate conſiſts of the two following Diſtricts.

1. The Diſtrict of KRZEMIENEC, in which the places of note are,

Krzeminiec, a town on the river *Irwa*, with a caſtle ſtanding on a high rock. Here is a Court of Judicature.

Wiſniowiecz, a town with a caſtle, which bears the name of a Dutchy.

Baſilia, *Kraſilow*, and *Conſtantinow*, are towns ſituated on the river *Slucz*.

Olanow, a ſmall town.

Berdiczow and *Rodnia*, two old decayed towns.

Zytomiers, a fortreſs.

Korczec, *Kzwiahel*, *Oſtrozek*, *Baranowka*, and *Miropel* are ſmall towns on the river *Slucz*.

Zaſlaw, a town on the river *Horin*, which, including its territory, bears the name of a Dutchy. The Jeſuits have a college here; and a conſiderable Diſtrict, which is a royal demeſne, belongs to this town.

Miedezynzek, a ſmall fortified town on the river *Horin*, where *John*, the laſt Duke of *Oſtrog*, built a handſome convent for *Franciſcan* monks, and a church.

Dubno a fortified town on the river *Irwa*.

2. The Diſtrict of LUCK or LUCEORIEN, in which are the following towns.

Luck, *Luzk*, or *Luceorien*, the capital of *Volhinia*, ſtands on the river *Styr* or *Ster*, and has a caſtle, where the Biſhop of *Volhinia* reſides, and the Jeſuits have a college. This city is alſo the reſidence of a *Ruſſian* biſhop; and has a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature. In the year 1429, a remarkable conference was held here, at which the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, two Kings, and ſeveral Princes, were preſent. In 1752, the greateſt part of this city was deſtroyed by fire.

Wlodcimirz, a city on the river *Bug*, is the See of a *Ruſſian* Biſhop, who has a very large dioceſe. A Court of Juſtice is held here; and the See of *Luck* was firſt erected in this town.

Beretsko, a town ſeated on a ſmall river.

Olika, a handſome town and caſtle belonging to the *Radzivil* family, and the capital of a Dutchy. A ſchool and ſeminary are founded in this town. About one hundred and eleven houſes were conſumed by a fire, which happened in 1752.

Sokal, a town and fortreſs on the river *Bug*. This place is remarkable for a celebrated image of the Virgin *Mary*, for the greater ſecurity of which the *Bernardine* Monks have built a fine church and convent, with ſuitable fortifications, on an iſland in the river *Bug*. In 1651, the *Poles* encamped in this place.

Czartorysk, a town with a caſtle.

The GREAT DUTCHY OF LITHUANIA.

§. 1. THIS country, which is called by the natives *Litwa*, was formerly very woody, and the greateſt part of it lay uncultivated. But by the tranquillity it enjoyed under *Sigiſmund* I. and his ſucceſſors, *Lithuania* was greatly improved by cutting down the woods; and agriculture was duly encouraged. Great quantities of pot-aſh and wood-aſhes are made here; and the country produces a great deal of buck-wheat and other corn. Here is alſo great plenty of honey, with which are made thoſe palatable liquors called *Lippitz*, *Mallinieck*, and mead. The meadows and paſtures in this province are very fertile, and afford nouriſhment to numerous flocks and herds. The ſheep yield fleeces of very fine wool. Here are alſo ſeveral lakes in which are profitable fiſheries. In the foreſts of *Lithuania* are bears, wolves, wild-boars, buffaloes, deer, and prodigious flights of wood-cocks. But notwithſtanding the ſoil is ſo fertile, agriculture is extremely neglected, and the fineſt ſpots of land in the country lie waſte. The luxuriant paſtures in the meadows lie neglected till the graſs rots on the ground; and for want of care, the woods in *Lithuania* are often conſumed by accidental fires. All ſorts of proviſions are ſold at a very low rate; but caſh is ſo ſcarce, that ten *per cent.* is the common intereſt for money in this country.

§. 2. All the common people, excepting the burghers of the royal towns and the *Germans*, are vaſſals. The Nobility are very numerous, and for the moſt part, indigent and poor; and thoſe who are in low circumſtances ſerve the richer ſort as pages, valets, bailiffs, treaſurers, ſtewards, *&c.* Thoſe noble families who are in a better condition, endeavour to mend their fortunes by farming a large eſtate. There is ſcarce a nobleman of any tolerable circumſtances in *Lithuania* without a title, which they are all very fond of; and theſe titles deſcend to their children. The principal Nobility are exceeding rich, and have eſtates equal to the revenues of ſome Princes; ſo that they generally retain ſome hundreds of the poor Nobility in their ſervice. They are alſo inveſted with the higheſt poſts of the kingdom, and live in great pomp and ſplendor; but with ſo little œconomy, that their expences generally exceed their income.

§. 3. Popery

§. 3. Popery is the eſtabliſhed religion in *Lithuania*. Here are alſo many *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, *Jews*, *Turks* and *Socinians*; but the *Greeks* are on a much better footing than any of the other *Diſſidentes* or diſſenters. Notwithſtanding this country is ſo cloſely connected with *Poland*, it ſtill retains its own peculiar laws, offices, and troops.

§. 4. The ancient hiſtory of *Lithuania* is obſcure and fabulous. It was formerly governed by its own Dukes, who were frequently at war with their neighbours the *Poles* and *Ruſſians*. *Ringold*, who lived in the thirteenth century, was the firſt who took upon himſelf the title of Great Duke of *Lithuania*; and *Wolſtinik* was the laſt of the ancient Ducal family. Towards the cloſe of the thirteenth century, *Vitenes*, a *Samogitian*, was promoted to the dignity of Great Duke.

Iagello, *Vitenes*'s great grandſon, in order to accompliſh his deſired marriage with *Hedwig* the dowager of *Lewis* King of *Poland* and *Hungary*, who had been crowned Queen of thoſe kingdoms, promiſed that he and all his ſubjects would embrace the Chriſtian religion; that *Lithuania* ſhould be united to *Poland*; and that he would recover the countries which had been diſmembered from the kingdom. Theſe advantageous offers pleaſed the *Poles* ſo well, that the Great Duke of *Lithuania* was invited into the kingdom by a ſolemn embaſſy; and arrived at *Cracow* in 1386, where he was baptiſed by the name of *Uladiſlaus*; and, after he had eſpouſed the Queen, was advanced to the throne. In the following year, he made a progreſs into *Lithuania*, where he aboliſhed the old ſuperſtitious rites and cuſtoms; prevailed on many thouſands to embrace Chriſtianity; founded the epiſcopal See of *Vilna*; and ſettled the eccleſiaſtical ceremonies and diſcipline. In the year 1392, *Iagello*, created his couſin *Alexander*, or *Vitold*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*; but without prejudice to the union with the kingdom of *Poland*; the ſovereignty or ſupreme authority being lodged in the King. In 1401, the union of *Lithuania* with *Poland* was ratified in the Diet of *Vilna* by a formal Inſtrument. In 1408, the Great Duke took *Samogitia* from the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order.

In 1413, in a Diet held at *Hrodlo*, the *Lithuanians* were placed on an equality with the *Poles*, with regard to public employments, and the protection of the laws; and ſeveral *Lithuanian* families were regiſtered among the *Poliſh* Nobility, and their arms were quartered together. It was alſo enacted that the Great Duke of *Lithuania* ſhould be nominated by the King of *Poland*; and that if the King ſhould die without iſſue or rightful heir, the *Lithuanians* ſhould have the privilege of voting at the election of the new King. Chriſtianity was alſo introduced into *Samogitia*, where a Biſhop's See was founded and other inferior eccleſiaſtical offices.

In the year 1499, the union, concluded with the *Lithuanians* in 1413, was renewed with this additional clauſe, That the *Lithuanians* ſhould not elect a Great Duke without the previous knowledge of the *Poles*; and that

that the latter ſhould not chooſe a King without the concurrence of the *Lithuanians*.

In 1561, the *Enſiferi*, or Sword-bearing Knights, ſubmitted themſelves, and the part of *Livonia* which ſtill remained in their poſſeſſion, to the King of *Poland*, as Great Duke of *Lithuania*; and the new Duke of *Courland* held it as a *Lithuanian* fief.

In a Diet held at *Lublin* in the year 1569, it was agreed between the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, That the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* and Kingdom of *Poland* ſhould be for the future ſo united, as to form but one State under one Prince; that the Sovereign ſhould be elected in *Poland* by both nations; that the general Diet ſhould be always held at *Warſaw*; that the two nations ſhould have a Senate or Council, and a houſe of provincial repreſentatives, in common; that the coin in the Kingdom and Dutchy ſhould be of the ſame value; and that they ſhould be equally concerned in treaties, alliances, &c. It was alſo further enacted, that the *Lithuanian* State-counſellors and noble Repreſentatives ſhould have a ſeat among the States of *Poland*; and at the ſame time *Livonia*, which, hitherto, *Lithuania* claimed as its diſtinct property, ſhould be entirely united to the Kingdom.

By the Acts of 1673, 1677, and 1685, it was decreed, that every third general Diet ſhould be held at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*, except the Diets of the Convocation, Election, and Coronation.

In the year 1697, the *Poliſh* and *Lithuanian* laws were reduced to a conformity with each other.

§. 5. *Lithuania* is, at preſent, divided into nine Palatinates, which, according to precedency, are in the following order, viz. *Wilna*, *Trock*, *Polocz*, *Novogrodeck*, *Witepſk*, *Brzesk*, *Mſcziſlaw*, *Minsk*, and *Livonia*.

The Palatinates of *Wilna* and *Trock* conſtitute proper *Lithuania*, called by the Poles *Litwa Sama*, and the ſix following make *Lithuanian Ruſſia*, or *Rus Litewska*. The latter is ſubdivided into

1. *White Ruſſia*, or *Rus Biala*, including the Palatinates of *Polock*, *Witepsk*, *Mſciſlaw*, and *Minsk*.

2. *Black Ruſſia*, or *Rus Czarna*, which includes the Palatinate of *Novogrodeck*, and the Diſtricts of *Rzeczyki* and *Mozyrski*.

3. *Poleſſia*, or *Poleſie*, to which the Palatinate of *Brzeskie* belongs.

Beſides theſe Palatinates, *Lithuania* alſo includes the Principality of *Samogitia*, called in the *Poliſh* language *Zmuydz*, or *Xieſtwo Zmudskie*; and the Dutchy of *Courland* which is a fief of *Poland*.

Every Palatinate is divided into *Powiats* or Diſtricts; and a parcel of land is always reſerved as the proper Palatinate, which generally lies about the principal town.

There are alſo particular Principalities, governed by their own Princes, in *Lithuania*; as *Sluck*, *Nieſwicz*, &c. In deſcribing this country we ſhall begin with

I. *LITHU-*

I. *LITHUANIA* properly ſo called,

In Poliſh *Litwa ſama.*

THIS country includes the Palatinates of *Wilno* and *Trockie*.

The Palatinate of WILNO, called in the *Poliſh* language *Woiewodztwo Wilenskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Vilnenſis*, contains the following Diſtricts.

1. The Palatine-Diſtrict, in which lies

Vilna, *Wilda*, or *Wilno*, the capital of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, which ſtands on the river *Wilia* near the influx of the *Wilika*. This city lies in a mountainous country on ſeveral little eminences: It is very large, and has two conſiderable ſuburbs called *Antokolla* and *Rudaiſzka*. In the old ruinous royal palace is the arſenal and the hall where the Court of Juſtice is held; and over againſt it is the magnificent church belonging to the caſtle, which was built in the year 1386. The treaſury belonging to this church is very rich; and it is alſo remarkable for the elegant marble chapel of St. *Caſimir*, whoſe ſilver ſhrine is ſaid to weigh thirty quintals. There are upwards of forty churches in this city, and among theſe are, one Lutheran and one Calviniſts church, a Jewiſh ſynagogue, a Tartarian church, and a Greek church; but all the reſt are Popiſh churches.

Not to mention the devaſtations which *Wilna* formerly ſuffered from the *Ruſſians* in 1610 and 1655, and from fire in the year 1737; it was deſtroyed by a dreadful conflagration in 1748, when thirteen churches, the *Jewiſh* ſynagogue, twenty-five palaces, four hundred and ſixty-nine ſtone edifices conſiſting of private houſes, hoſpitals, inns, baths, convents, and mills, with one hundred and forty-ſix tradeſmens ſhops and diſpenſaries, beſides a great number of granaries and warehouſes, were conſumed to aſhes. In 1749, another fire happened by lightning, which conſumed ſix churches, the council-houſe, eight palaces, and two hundred and ſeventy-ſeven other ſtone-buildings. The chapel of St. *Caſimir* was alſo burnt, and the loſs ſuſtained by the deſtruction of this edifice only amounted to ſome millions. The churches have been ſince rebuilt at a very great expence, and ſome of them in a more elegant manner than before; but the city has not recovered its former grandeur.

This Biſhop's See was founded in the year 1387; and the Chapter conſiſts of a great number of ſecular and regular clergy. The Univerſity, founded in 1570 by Biſhop *Valerian Szuſkowſki*, and confirmed by King *Stephen* in 1579, is in the Jeſuits college.

The Tribunal, or High Court of Judicature, which is held here, begins in the ſecond week after *Eaſter*, and continues ſitting for twenty weeks; after which the Judges proceed to *Novogrodeck* or *Minſk*. Beſides this Tribunal, a Provincial Diet and Court of Juſtice are held in this city. The magiſtrates of *Wilna* were, by a particular privilege granted them by King *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, created noble in the year 1568; ſo that their children may purchaſe and enjoy eſtates. As there are great numbers of *Jews* and *Mahometans* in this city, three different Sabbaths are obſerved every week. The inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade, and ſend their commodities as far as *Konigſberg*. *Wilna* was built by the Great Duke *Gedimin* in the year 1305.

The following towns alſo lie in this Diſtrict.

Dubinki, a town belonging to Prince *Radzivil*.

Rudniki, a ſmall town with a beautiful caſtle.

2. *Powiat Lidzki*, or the Diſtrict of *Lida*, in which are,

Lida, a town and caſtle, where a Provincial Diet and a Court of Judicature are held.

Bielica, a ſmall town on the river *Niemen*.

Sczucyn, *Jelna*, *Bialgorod*, *Zermony*, *Blotno*, and *Gieranony*, are ſmall places of little note.

3. *Powiat Oſzmianſki*, or the Diſtrict of *Oſmiana*, in which lies

Oſzmiana, the chief town, where a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held.

Olſiany, *Surwiliſzki*, *Dory*, *Dolhinow*, *Serwecz*, *Zodziski*, *Smorgonie*, *Miedzial*, and *Hlybokie* or *Glebokie*, are ſmall places in this Diſtrict.

4. *Powiat Braſlawski*, or the Diſtrict of *Braſlaw*, in which lies

Braſlaw, the capital. It is a large town and is ſituated near a lake. Here is a *Greek* abbey; and a Provincial Diet is held in this town.

Jezioroſzce, *Dryſwiaty*, *Polikany*, *Daugeliſzki*, and *Koltyniany*, are alſo ſmall places in this Diſtrict.

5. *Powiat Wilkomirski*, or the Diſtrict of *Wilkomierz*, in which lies

The town of *Wilkomierz*, on the river *Swienta*, where a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held.

The Palatinate of TROCKIE, or WOIEWODZTWO TROKIE, in Latin *Palatinatus Trocenſis*, includes the following Diſtricts.

1. The *Palatine Territory*, which contains the following towns, *&c.*

Trocki, a large town ſituated among lakes, and built with wood. It has two caſtles; and in the pariſh-church is a famous image of the Virgin *Mary*. A Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held here. This town was built by the Great Duke *Gedimin* in the year 1321. It was deſtroyed by fire in 1390, and demoliſhed by the *Ruſſians* in 1655. It was formerly the reſidence of the Dukes of *Lithuania*, who, afterwards, removed their ſeat to *Wilna*.

Poporcie, *Olita*, a royal demeſne, *Przeroſt*, and *Wiſchiten*, are ſmall places of little note.

Calvarie, a little town, lies in a foreſt on the river *Szeſzupe*, about five *German* miles from the *Pruſſian* frontiers. The inhabitants conſiſt of one hundred and twenty Chriſtian, and three hundred *Jewiſh* families; and the latter carry on an extenſive trade. This town belongs to the *Sapiehan* family, who are alſo proprietors of the Lordſhip of *Kirſna*, which lies about three *German* miles from it.

2. *Powiat Upitſki*, or the Diſtrict of *Upitski*, in which lie

Birze, a town belonging to the Prince of *Radzivil*. It was taken in 1625 by King *Guſtavus Adolphus*.

Salaty, *Pokroje*, *Ponienumy*, and *Poniewicz*, are ſmall places, in the laſt of which a Diet is held.

3. *Powiat Kowienski*, or the Diſtrict of *Kowno*, which contains

Kowno or *Cauen*, a pretty trading town, ſituated at the influx of the river *Wilia* into the *Niemen*. It is famous for its excellent liquor called *Lippitz*, and mead. There are ſeveral *German* inhabitants in this town, which has a college of Jeſuits with an elegant church, beſides ten Popiſh churches, and one Lutheran.

Pozoyſcie, a ſmall place of little note.

A hill called *Friedenſberg* lies about a *German* mile and a half from *Kowno*, in a wood near the *Wilia*. On this hill ſtands a famous convent inhabited by twenty-four *Eremitical* monks of the Order of *Camaldoli*. It was founded in 1674, by *Chriſtopher Paz*, Great Chancellor of *Lithuania*, and coſt eight *Tons of Gold* *: It has abundance of marble ornaments. The cieling and cupola of the church are finely painted in *freſco*, and the walls are adorned with original pieces by the moſt celebrated maſters. A Diſtrict conſiſting of three hundred peaſants dwellings belongs to this convent. The founder and his wife lie buried in the church.

4. *Powiat Grodzienski*, or the Diſtrict of *Grodno*, in which are the following places of note.

Grodno, a handſome large city, and, next to *Wilna*, the beſt in *Lithuania*. It ſtands on the river *Niemen*, partly on an eminence, and partly on a level, and is ſurrounded with hills. The old caſtle, which is ſurrounded with a deep moat, is now fallen to decay; ſo that only one wing of it is inhabited. The new palace, built by the preſent King of *Poland*, is a large, regular, and beautiful ſtructure conſiſting of two ſtories. The great hall, the Senate-houſe, and the chapel, are the fineſt apartments in this palace. In the court ſtands the Chancery or State-office, an elegant edifice. In the town are nine Popiſh and two *Greek* churches, and a

* *A Ton of Gold*, improperly ſo called, to which the Author ſometimes adds *ſilver money* by way of diſtinction, is nearly equal to 7775 pounds ſterling: However, a *Ton of Gold*, *ſilver money*, is a kind of *Hibernijm*. See p. 260.

ſynagogue for the *Jews*, which is built with ſtone. The Jeſuits college in this city has a ſplendid church; and that belonging to the *Carmelite* nuns is alſo very magnificent. The palace of Prince *Radzivil* is a very large ſtructure and that of the *Sapiehan* family is a ſuperb edifice. Both of them ſtand on the market-place, which, together with the *Caſtle-Street* and the area before the palace, are very clean and well paved; but the other ſtreets are not paved, on which account they are generally very dirty.

In the year 1673, it was enacted, That every third general Diet ſhould be held here for the future. During the Seſſion of the Diet, four apartments, and the ſtables adjoining to them, in a certain part of the town, have been let for two hundred and ſixty ducats a month. A Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are alſo held in this city. Near *Grodno* lies a well-built royal manor-houſe. In the year 1753, almoſt the whole town was conſumed by fire.

Merecz, a royal little town, which ſtands on a river of the ſame name. King *Uladiſlaus* IV. was ſo taken with the delightful ſituation of this town, as to make it his favourite reſidence. That Prince ended his days in this place on the twentieth of *May* 1648. *Merecz* has a wooden caſtle, and three churches.

Douſpouda, *Waſilkow*, and *Grodek*, are ſmall places of little note.

Supraſl, a very opulent convent of *Greek* monks of the Order of St. *Baſil*. It is a place of great antiquity, and is much frequented by pilgrims on account of ſome pretended miracles wrought here. This convent is immediately ſubject to the Pope *.

II. *LITHUANIAN RUSSIA.*

THIS country conſiſts of the following Provinces.

I. POLESIA, or POLESIE, which is alſo called the Palatinate of BRZESKIE, in Poliſh *Woiewodztwo Breſcianskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Breſcienſis*. The moraſſes in this Palatinate are very large, and, according to M. *Adlerfeld*, appear like ſo many extenſive lakes. This Palatinate includes two Diſtricts, namely, thoſe of *Brzesk* and *Pinski*.

1. The Territory of *Brzeſk*, which contains the following towns, *&c.*

Brzesk, a ſtrong town but not very large, with a caſtle built on a rock. The town ſtands on the river *Bug*, in a marſhy ſituation; and near it is a royal palace with a good garden. There is a famous *Jewiſh* ſynagogue in this town, to which the *Jews* reſort from all the countries of *Europe*, both on account of ſtudy, and preferment among their own people. A *Greek* Biſhop reſides, and a Provincial Diet is held in this town.

* It ſeems a little ſtrange that monks of the *Greek* or *Ruſſian* church ſhould be ſubject to the Pope.

Bialla,

Bialla, a ſmall town belonging to Prince *Radzivil*, remarkable for its *Gymnaſium* or Seminary.

Wiſokie, *Kaminiec*, *Kerezew*, *Janow*, *Miedzyrzecze*, *Roſoſze*, *Dukudow*, *Slawaticze*, *Koden*, *Ratno*, *Kobryn*, *Bereza* (where the *Carthuſians* have a convent) *Chomsk*, *Motol*, and *Zukowicze*, are ſmall places of little note.

Ibras, a ſmall fortreſs almoſt ſurrounded with a lake and moraſs; to which there is but one avenue.

2. *Powiat Pinski*, or the Diſtrict of *Pinski*, in which lies

Pinsk, a handſom, large, trading town on the river *Pina*, which belongs to the royal Table-eſtates, as they are called. It lies in the middle of extenſive moraſſes; and is inhabited not only by *Jews*, who have a ſchool here, but alſo by people of all religions; eſpecially by thoſe of the *Greek* religion, who have a Biſhop here. The leather dreſſed in this town after the *Ruſſian* manner is looked upon as the beſt in the whole kingdom. A Provincial Diet is held here.

Wyhoniec, *Pohoſt*, *Lahiſzyn*, *Kozangrodek*, *Wielicze*, *Turow*, *Dawidow*, *Wyſok*, *Dubrowica*, *Rohitno*, *Olewſko*, and *Zablowicze*, are ſmall places in this Diſtrict.

II. Black Russia, called by the Poles *Rus Czarna*, includes

The Palatinate of Nowogrodeck, in Poliſh *Woiewodztwo Nowogrodskie*, which contains the following Diſtricts.

1. The Territory of *Nowogrodek*, in which the places of note are,

Nowogrodek, a town ſituated on a hill. It is not very large; but includes ſeveral Popiſh and *Ruſſian* convents, with a college of Jeſuits. Beſides a Provincial Diet and inferior Court of Judicature, a High Tribunal, after the model of that of *Wilna*, is held alternately here and at *Minsk*, which continues ſitting for five months every year. This town was demoliſhed in 1314, and 1390.

Nieſwiez, a town and ſeat belonging to the *Radzivil*-family, which is alſo the capital of a Dutchy. It ſtands on the river *Uſza*, and has a college of Jeſuits. This beautiful palace was demoliſhed by the *Swedes* in 1706.

Mir, a caſtle from which Prince *Radzivil* has one of his titles.

Naliboki, *Stoupce*, *Swierzno*, *Turzec*, *Lubcz*, *Koralicze*, *Sielut*, *Cyryn*, *Iſkoldz*, *Kleck*, *Darew*, *Slwolowicze*, *Myſz* (with a county,) *Polonka*, and *Lipsk*, are ſmall towns in this Diſtrict.

Lukowicze, a fortified town with a county. Near this place the *Coſaks* and *Ruſſians* were defeated in 1660. This town was taken and deſtroyed by the *Swedes* in the year 1706.

2. *Powiat Wolkowyski*, or the Diſtrict of *Wolkowysk*, in which are,

Wolkowysk, a ſmall town, where a Provincial Diet is held; *Mſcibow*, *Porozow*, and *Nowidwor*, which are inconſiderable places.

3. *Powiat Sloninski*, or the Diſtrict of *Slonim*, in which lies

Slonim, a town ſeated on the river *Sczara*, where a Provincial Diet, and the general aſſembly of the States of *Lithuania* are held. *Bytyn*,

Bytyn, *Zyrcwice*, *Lyskow*, *Koſſow*, *Zelvia*, and *Moſty*, are ſmall places in this Diſtrict. *Rozana* is the chief ſeat of the *Sapiehan* family, and is much frequented on account of a famous image of the Virgin *Mary*.

4. *Xieſtwo Sluckie*, or the Dutchy of *Sluckia*, in Latin *Ducatus Slucenſis*, belongs to Prince *Radzivil*, and in it lies

Sluck, a large town built with timber. It has three caſtles, and ſtands on the river *Slucz*.

Romanowo, *Hrozow*, *Kopyl* (with a Dutchy,) *Cimkowicze*, *Kyewicze*, *Siemiezow*, *Luban*, *Wielczyny*, and *Petrikow*, are ſmall places of little note in this Diſtrict.

MOZYRSKI and RZECZYKI POWIAT belong indeed to *Black Ruſſia*, but are included in the Palatinate of *Minski*.

III. WHITE RUSSIA, called in the *Poliſh* language *Rus Biala*, and in Latin *Ruſſia alba*.

This Province contains the following Palatinates.

The Palatinate of MINSKY, in Poliſh *Woiewodztwo Minskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Minſcenſis*, which includes

1. The Territory of *Minsk*. In this Diſtrict lies

Minsk, a town ſeated on the river *Swiſlocz* with two caſtles. There are ſeveral *Jews* among its inhabitants; and a Provincial Diet is held here, beſides a High-Tribunal once in two years. [See *Wilna* and *Novogrodeck*.] This town was taken by the *Ruſſians* in 1656.

The following are ſmall towns in this Diſtrict, *viz.*

Horodek,	*Horodyſzcz*,	*Oczyce*,
Berezyna,	*Bohuſzowicze*,	*Brodziec*,
Dokſzyce,	*Koydanow*,	*Lubaſzyn*,
Radziwilow,	*Hrebnia*,	*Swiſtocz*,
Boryſow,	*Szack*,	*Sloboda krolowska*.
Zabyn,	*Dukora*,	

2. *Powiat Kzeczyki* or the Diſtrict of *Kzeczy*, contains the following ſmall towns; *viz.*

Bobruysk, *Hlusko Dubrywickie*, *Horwal*, *Rzeczyca*, and *Chelmicz*.

3. *Powiat Mozyrski*, or the Diſtrict of *Mozyr*, in which are,

Mozyr, the chief town on the river *Prypec*, where a Provincial Diet is held; and *Kimborowka*, *Babica Sloboda*, and *Kuzmilock*, which are ſmall places of little note.

4. The Territory of *Robaczow*, or *Ziemia Robaczowska*, in which lie

Robaczow, a town which ſtands on the river *Dnieper* near the influx of the *Druce*, where a Provincial Diet is held; and

Jurzec, *Pobolowo*, *Czeczersk*, *Hanuta*, and *Hieronimow*, which are ſmall places.

The

The Palatinate of MSCISLAW, called in the *Poliſh* language *Woiewodztwo Mſciſlawſkie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Miſciſlavienſis*, in which are the following remarkable places.

Mſciſlaw, a well built frontier town, which was beſieged by the Duke of *Smolensk* in 1386; but without ſucceſs. A Provincial Diet is held here.

Mohilow, a handſom commercial town on the river *Dneiper*, where the *Ruſſians* carry on a conſiderable trade. Prince *Uladiſlaus*, ſon to *Sigiſmund* IV. in 1616, drew together an army of *Poles* in this town, and penetrated into *Ruſſia*. In the year 1654, *Mohilow* was taken by the *Ruſſians*; and though the *Poles* ſat before it in 1660, they were obliged to raiſe the ſiege and retire. However, it was taken from the *Ruſſians* in 1662 by the inhabitants, who ſent off part of the garriſon by ſtratagem, and made the reſt priſoners of war.

Between *Czauſy* and *Szyſzowo*, in this Palatinate, the *Ruſſians* were entirely defeated in the year 1514.

Horki, *Czauſy*, *Dryſſin*, *Chwaſzczowka*, *Wrakalahow nowy* and *Wrakalow ſtary* on the *Nieper*, *Bychow nowy* and *Bychow ſtary*, *Propoysk* and *Radziwilowa*, are ſmall places in this Palatinate.

The Palatinate of WITEPSK, called by the Poles *Woiewodztwo Witepskie* and in Latin *Palatinatus Vitepcenſis* contains two Diſtricts; namely,

1. The Territory of *Witepsk*, in which are the following remarkable places.

Witepsk, a fortified trading town on the river *Duna* or *Duina*, which has two ſtrong caſtles and a college of Jeſuits. A Provincial Diet is held in this town. It was taken by the *Ruſſians* in the year 1654.

Newel, a fortified town, which was taken by the *Ruſſians* in 1653; but fell again into the hands of the *Poles* in 1678.

Uſwiatez, a fortified town ſituated on a lake, which was taken from the *Poles* in the year 1580.

Wieliſz, a ſmall fortified town on the river *Dzwina*, of which the *Poles* made themſelves maſters in 1580. The *Ruſſians*, who had taken this town from the *Poles*, reſtored it to the latter in 1580.

Ozieryzcſze, *Gorczyſlaw*, *Surcz*, *Markowo*, and *Oſtrowo*, are ſmall towns in this territory.

2. *Powiat Orſzanſki*, or the Diſtrict of *Orſza*, which contains the following towns, *&c.*

Orſza, a town and caſtle on the river *Nieper*, in which is a Jeſuits college. Alſo a Provincial Diet is held here.

Dubrowna and *Kopys* are ſmall towns on the *Nieper*; the latter is a Dutchy.

Szklow a ſtrong town, and a County, on the banks of the *Neiper*, near which the *Lithuanian* General *Radzivil* was defeated by the *Ruſſians* in 1653; but when they laid ſiege to the town, they were obliged to raiſe it with a conſiderable loſs.

Holowczyn,

Holowczyn, a ſmall place, where the *Ruſſians* were defeated by the *Swedes* in 1708, after an obſtinate engagement.

Radzyn, *Bialymſie*, and *Krubla* are ſmall towns in this Diſtrict.

Note. That part of the Palatinate of *Smolenſk*, which borders on this *Powiat* or Diſtrict, and belongs to the *Poles*, conſiſts only of the Diſtrict of *Stadorubcz*; and the Diet for this Diſtrict is held at *Wilna*.

The Palatinate of POLOCK, or *Woiewodztwo Polokie*, in Latin *Palatinatus Polocenſis*, contains the following towns.

Polock, a fortified town on the river *Dzwina*, with two ſtrong caſtles. It carries on a conſiderable trade; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held here. The Jeſuits have a college, and the *Greeks* an academy for the ſtudy of philoſophy, in this town. A Popiſh *Greek* Biſhop alſo reſides here. In the year 1563, *Polock* was taken by the *Ruſſians*; but retaken by the *Poles* in 1579.

Kraſne and *Koſtany*, two ſmall towns.

Ula, a fortreſs on the river *Dzwina*. Near this place the *Ruſſians* were defeated in 1564.

Wiazyſzeze and *Boczeykowo*, two ſmall towns of little note.

Czaſzniki, a ſmall town, where the *Ruſſians* were defeated in the year 1567.

Lepel, *Lukomla*, *Krasnyſtaw*, *Czereia*, *Pyſzne*, *Waron*, *Suſza*, *Kamien*, *Kublicze*, *Sielizeze*, *Uſzacz*, *Turowla*, *Bobynicze*, *Pliſzan*, *Machirowo*, *Dzeſna*, *Dryſſa*, *Sokol*, and *Nieſzczerda*, are ſmall towns in this Palatinate, of which mention is made in hiſtory.

III. The *LIVONIAN* PALATINATE,

Called in the *Poliſh* language

WOIEWODZTWO INFLANTSKIE.

THIS country, which is a part of *Livonia*, is alſo called the *Palatinate of Wend*. When the *Poles* by the treaty of *Oliva* delivered up *Livonia* to *Sweden*, they reſerved this part, which had been ſubject to *Poland* ſince the year 1655. There are a Biſhop, a Palatine, and a Caſtellan in this Palatinate; which belongs to *Poland* and *Lithuania*, and ſends ſix deputies to the general Diet. The principal places in this country are,

Marienhaws.	*Roſſiten.*	*Krentzburg.*
Ludzen.	*Duneberg.*	

The Provincial Diet, and Court of Judicature, from which an appeal lies only to the *Aſſeſſorial Tribunal*, are held at *Duneburg*.

IV. *SAMOGITIA* or *SAMOYTEN*,

Called in the *Poliſh* language

ZMUYDS or *XIESTWO ZMUDSKIE.*

THIS country is a Dutchy, which anciently belonged to *Lithuania*, and together with that province, was governed either by one Duke or Sovereign, or formed an oligarchy. In the year 1404, *Samogitia* was ceded to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; but about four years afterwards, it was taken from them. In 1411, the Knights had a promiſe that this Dutchy ſhould again revert to the Order after the death of King *Uladiſlaus Iagello*, and the Great Duke *Alexander*. In 1413, the *Samogitians* embraced the Chriſtian religion; and a Biſhops See, and other ſmall eccleſiaſtical offices were erected in this Dutchy. The country is woody, and has many fertile ſpots: It alſo yields a prodigious quantity of honey.

Samogitia has a Biſhop, an *Upper-ſtaroſta*, who has the authority of a *Woiewoda* or *Palatine*; and a Caſtellan who ſits in the General Diet, and has the power of appointing Provincial Diets at pleaſure.

In this Dutchy lies

Wornie or *Miedniki*, a town where the Biſhop of *Samogitia* reſides; and

Roſienie, a town on the river *Dubiſta*, where the Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held.

The following ſmall towns alſo lie in *Samogitia*, viz.

Novavola.
Wileia.
Srzednik.
Wielona.
Kicydany.
Jurborg or *Georgenburg.*
Widukle.
Szydlow.
Taurogi.
Pottagien.
Garden.
Koltyniany.
Kroze, in which is a college of Jeſuits.
Piatek.
Szawle.
Kurſzany.
Okmiany.
Uzwieda.
Shoden.
Lukinga.
Ambote.
Plotele.
Polangen.
Kretynga.
Korczany.
Gorzdy.

THE

DUTCHY OF PRUSSIA*,

Which is alſo called

POLISH PRUSSIA.

§. 1. THIS country borders on the kingdom of *Pruſſia*, *Poland*, *Pomerania*, and the *Weſſel* or *Viſtula*; and is thirteen *German* miles in length, and twelve in its greateſt breadth; but in ſome places the latter does not exceed four *German* miles and a half. The face of this country is diverſified with mountains, woods, and lakes; but in the ſouth part of it there is but little paſture ground, and conſequently but few cattle; and not much arable land, if we except the four fruitful *Werder*, as they are called, near *Dantzick*. The fiſheries are of great advantage to this country; which alſo yields a vaſt quantity of honey and wax. The woods abound with wild boars, roe-bucks, and wild fowl. A good deal of lime is alſo burnt in ſome parts of this country.

The moſt remarkable heaths in *Poliſh Pruſſia* are thoſe of *Skal*, *Maſura* and *Nicholait*, and the deſert of *Johannesberg*, which is ſeven *German* miles in length, and four in breadth.

§. 2. The inhabitants conſiſt partly of *Poles*, and partly of *Germans*. As to their religion, the Reformation was introduced here early in the ſixteenth century; and in few years, the profeſſors of the Evangelical or Lutheran religion increaſed to ſuch a degree, that in a ſhort time their number far exceeded that of the Papiſts in the principal cities and towns. They had almoſt as great a ſuperiority alſo in the ſmaller towns and villages. But in this particular, ſucceeding times have introduced conſiderable alterations. The Kings of *Poland* have, indeed, granted the inhabitants the free exer-

* This country is termed *Regal Pruſſia*, or *Pruſſia Royal*, in the maps, to diſtinguiſh it from *Ducal Pruſſia*, which is now a kingdom and belongs to his *Pruſſian* Majeſty.

ciſe

ciſe of the Lutheran religion in the cities of *Pruſſia*; but, at preſent there are but few towns in which the Lutherans have churches; and in other towns they have been compelled to give them up to the Papiſts. Beſides, the Proteſtants, or *Diſſidentes*, as they are called, are continually oppreſſed; and promiſes of preferment and other means are employed with too much ſucceſs, in order to ſeduce the *Pruſſian* Nobility from the Evangelical or Lutheran church. The *Arians* are not allowed the free exerciſe of their religion in this country.

§. 3. The Dutchy of *Pruſſia* or *Poliſh Pruſſia* is a proper, and diſtinct political body or ſtate, which has nothing in common with *Poland*, except that it has the ſame Sovereign, and is connected with that Crown by a perpetual alliance. For when the inhabitants of this country put themſelves under the protection of King *Caſimir* IV. in 1466, it was expreſly ſtipulated, that the Dutchy of *Pruſſia* ſhould have nothing to do with the Republic of *Poland:* but that the King ſhould alone, and perſonally, order and determine all matters relating to the former; and to this end ſhould often come among them and ſummon general Diets. Hence this free State enjoys the ſame right as *Poland* and *Lithuania* of voting at the election of a King; who, after his coronation, is obliged to ſwear that he will maintain the *Pruſſians* in their rites and privileges; after which, and not before, homage is paid to the new Sovereign.

The King, in matters of public concern, can determine nothing without the concurrence of the States; who are divided into Spiritual and Temporal Members, and the latter conſiſt of Nobles and Burghers. Of theſe the Senate, or Council of State, is at preſent, compoſed. This Council conſiſts

1. Of two BISHOPS, namely the Biſhop of *Ermland* and the Biſhop of *Culm*.

The Biſhop of *Ermland* is the preſident and chief among the Nobility; and is not under any ſubordination to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, but holds immediately of the Pope. His dioceſe, in which he has the ſupreme authority in all cauſes, as well civil as eccleſiaſtical, is of a very large extent. The revenues of it are divided into three parts, one of which belongs to the Chapter; but the other two, which are computed at 64,000 dollars are aſſigned for the epiſcopal table. The King nominates four canons, one of whom is to be elected Biſhop by the Chapter; and the latter always chooſe the perſon who is moſt ſtrongly recommended by his Majeſty. The oath which the Biſhop takes is ſomething ſingular, as is the form of adminiſtering it, which is done at the cathedral of *Marienburg*. He ſtiles himſelf Prince of the holy *Roman* Empire, not only in public inſtruments, but alſo in private letters, by virtue of the dignity conferred on Biſhop *John* II. by the Emperor *Charles* IV. who created that prelate a Prince of the Empire; and accordingly his ſucceſſors aſſume the title of Highneſs; but they are never addreſſed ſo by the Royal Chancery or State offices. This Prelate alſo ſtiles himſelf Biſhop of *Sammland*; for that place was annexed to the Dioceſe

formerly erected in *Brandenburg Pruſſia*, and the Popiſh churches in it are ſtill ſubject to this Biſhop in eccleſiaſtical matters. This title, however, is not given him by the Electoral houſe of *Brandenburg*.

The Biſhop of *Culm*'s Dioceſe is not near ſo extenſive, and conſequently the revenue of it is very much ſhort of that of the Biſhop of *Ermland*. This Biſhopric the King abſolutely diſpoſes of without calling a Chapter; and the Biſhop of *Culm* is a ſuffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, whom he is to look upon as his Metropolitan. This Prelate ſtiles himſelf Biſhop of *Pomeſan*, partly becauſe ſome Diſtricts formerly belonging to the Dioceſe of *Pomeſan* were, by the peace concluded in 1466, ceded to *Poland*, and the ſpiritual juriſdiction of them aſſigned to the Biſhop of *Culm*; and partly to keep up the remembrance of the Biſhopric of *Pomeſan* in *Brandenburg Pruſſia*, which has been long ſince ſuppreſſed. The *Woiewodtzwos* or Palatinates of *Culm* and *Marienburg* are under the Biſhop of *Culm*'s juriſdiction. By the *Poliſh* laws, this Prelate is qualified to be Chancellor.

2. Three PALATINATES or *Woiewodes*, who are of equal dignity to thoſe of *Poland*, the firſt of theſe is the Palatine of *Culm*, the ſecond that of *Marienburg*, and the third the Palatine of *Pomerellia*. The only difference, between theſe Palatines and thoſe of *Poland*, is that a certain *Staroſty* is always annexed to their poſt; for inſtance, the *Staroſty* of *Kowalevo* belongs to the Palatinate of *Culm*, that of *Chriſtburg* to the Palatinate of *Marienburg*, and that of *Schoneck* to the Palatinate of *Pomerellia*. From theſe *Staroſties*, and the fees of the *Grods*, or courts, their income ariſes. They hold their Courts of Judicature, which are called Caſtle-Courts, and in the *Poliſh* language *Grods*. In the Palatinate of *Culm* the Court is held at *Kowalevo*; in that of *Marienburg* at *Chriſtburg*; and in the Palatinate of *Pomerellia* at *Schonek*. They generally leave the management of theſe courts to the under *Woiewoda*'s. However, they ſee the ſentences paſſed by the courts put in execution, and when it is neceſſary, make uſe of force; and in ſuch caſes may ſummon the Nobility in their reſpective juriſdictions to aſſiſt them.

3. Three CASTELLANS, who are not inveſted with any particular office or employment; but on a general ſummons of the Nobility, they may be looked upon as the Palatine's lieutenants. They are ſubordinate to the great *Poliſh* Caſtellans; and their appointments accrue from the *Staroſties*, over which they alſo preſide.

4. Three VICE-TREASURERS, who have only a bare title; however, as they are Counſellors of State, they take place of the reſt of the Nobility. Theſe are not members of the *Poliſh* Senate; but appear only as provincial repreſentatives in the Diet.

5. Two COUNSELLORS from each of the three Great Cities, as they are called, namely, *Thorn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzick*; and every one of theſe repreſentatives have a vote. Formerly ſeven Great Cities had this privilege.

Of theſe Members the Senate, or Council of State, is compoſed. All the State Counſellors, according to the laws of the country, ought to be native *Pruſſians*;

Pruſſians; but they ſeldom have this qualification. They are nominated by the King of *Poland*, and take a particular oath at their admiſſion. The Biſhops, Palatines, and Caſtellans, are alſo members of the Senate of the kingdom of *Poland*; and particular ſeats were ſet apart for them in that Senate in the year 1569. They are alſo qualified to fill the Crown-offices or poſts at Court. The Biſhop of *Ermland* ſits as preſident in the *Pruſſian* Diet; but in his abſence, his place is ſupplied by the principal perſon among the Nobility that are preſent. Theſe members are ſtiled 'the two States of the Dutchy of *Pruſſia*,' and likewiſe Royal Counſellors. They may be alſo called the *Superior-States* to diſtinguiſh them from the *Inferior-States* compoſed of the lower Nobility and the deputies of the ſmall towns. Thoſe Noblemen that hold of the Biſhop of *Ermland* are not reckoned among the States; but the reſt ſend their repreſentatives to the General Diet. The ſmall towns alſo formerly ſent repreſentatives to the *Pruſſian* Diet; but the Nobility have deprived them of that privilege, by forcibly excluding them from the public deliberations.

King *Caſimir* IV. engaged, for himſelf and ſucceſſors, not to deliberate on, or determine any affair of conſequence relating to this country, without the previous concurrence of the above-mentioned States of *Pruſſia*. By theſe *Affairs of Conſequence* were underſtood the *Regalia*, as they are called, or matters relating to the Royal Prerogatives, and thoſe public acts, which the King, when occaſion requires, reſolves upon in conjunction with the States; as declaring war, impoſing taxes, concluding a peace, making laws, *&c.* To this end, the *Pruſſian* Diets were introduced, which, formerly had no connection with the *Poliſh* Diets. But in the year 1569, by the ordinance of *Lublin*, part of the Senate or Council of *Pruſſia* was united with the Senate of *Poland*; and the States of the former were compelled to appear at the general Diet of the kingdom. From that time, the political conſtitution of *Pruſſia* has undergone great alterations: However, it is not quite interwoven with that of *Poland*, and this country ſtill enjoys its particular rights and privileges.

§. 4. Having treated of the States of *Poliſh Pruſſia*, we now proceed to give a ſhort account of the Diets of this country. Theſe were formerly of two kinds; namely the *Ordinary* and *Extraordinary* Diets. The former have been diſcontinued for theſe laſt hundred years and above; but the latter are ſtill in being and are ſummoned by the King; who alſo appoints the time and place of their meeting. As for the place, they are always held alternately at *Marienburg* and *Graudenz*.

At the ſummoning of the *Pruſſian* General Diet *, the King alſo ſpecifies the time for holding the leſſer Diets, where the repreſentatives for the

* I have added the word *Pruſſian* to diſtinguiſh this from the General Diet held for the whole *Poliſh* Dominions.

former are choſen, and receive their inſtructions. Theſe provincial Diets are held in every Palatinate; *viz.* in that of *Culm* at *Schonſee*; in that of *Marienburg* at *Stum*; and in the Palatinate of *Pomerellia* at *Stargard*. But before the Diet for the Palatinate of *Pomerellia* meets at *Stargard*, the Diſtricts of *Dirſchau*, (which includes that of *Dantzick*,) *Schwetz*, *Tuchel*, *Schlochau*, *Mirchau*, and *Putzig*, hold their reſpective aſſemblies. The happy concluſion of theſe inferior Diets is a preſage of the proſperous iſſue of the general Diet. But if only one of theſe aſſemblies riſes abruptly, the general Diet is ſeldom expected to aſſemble. The number of repreſentatives for every Palatinate is not fixed; but they have of late been more numerous than heretofore. *Pomerellia* generally ſends the greateſt number of repreſentatives, and *Marienburg* the feweſt. The inſtructions which are given them are written in the *Poliſh* language; and during the ſeſſion of the Diet, their expences are defrayed.

The repreſentatives of the Palatinates, and the King's Commiſſioner, are obliged to attend at the opening of the *Pruſſian* General Diet; but the preſence of the State Counſellors and the repreſentatives of the large cities is not requiſite. The Diet is generally held in the Town-houſe, and ſometimes in the church, or ſome other convenient place. It does not always continue ſitting till its proper period; but, on the contrary, is often diſſolved, or prorogued. The Inſtruments, *&c.* publiſhed in the name of all the States of the country are rendered into *Latin* by the Secretaries of *Thorn*, according to the ſenſe of the States aſſembled; and, at the cloſe of the Diet, are publicly read, and ſealed with the ſeal of the Dutchy. All documents, and decrees brought to the Diet, or publiſhed by it, are depoſited in the archives of the State at *Thorn*.

The *Pruſſian* Diets are divided into *Conventus Ante-Comitiales* and *Conventus Poſt-Comitiales*. In the former, the King orders the matters to be deliberated, which muſt be determined in the general Diet of *Poland*, and the repreſentatives are choſen, and receive the money to defray their expences. In the latter, new taxes are impoſed, and the accompts of the former taxes are paſſed; and if any thing detrimental to the Public has been tranſacted at the general Diet of *Poland*, it is verbally cenſured, or a proteſt is entered againſt it in writing.

The *Pruſſians*, beſides their own General Diet, aſſiſt at the General Diet of *Poland*. The three large cities and inferior Nobility are alſo ſummoned to the *Poliſh* General Diet; but as their repreſentatives have no particular place aſſigned them either in the Senate or among the provincial repreſentatives, their particular concerns are generally inſerted in the provincial inſtructions, and recommended to the Senators and repreſentatives.

§. 5. We have already obſerved, that the *Pruſſians* agree to the taxes to be impoſed on them, not in the General Diets of *Poland*, but in their own general Diet. The cities and towns pay the Malt-Exciſe, as it is called, which

is

is two ſhillings for every buſhel of malt which they brew; but the Nobility have introduced a kind of land-tax called *Hufengeld*, or *Poborren*. A *Pobor** is rated at a *Poliſh* guilder. Beſides this land-tax and the Exciſe, other contributions and taxes have ſometimes been impoſed on the *Pruſſians*.

The caſtle of *Marienburg* is appointed for the public Treaſury, which is under the direction of a Treaſurer. The Treaſurer of *Pruſſia* has a Secretary under him, and is not ſubject to the Treaſurer of the kingdom, but to the *Pruſſian* States only.

The *Pruſſians* pay no toll or cuſtom; and when they are in *Poland*, they only pay thoſe of the frontiers which are of long ſtanding. They are not obliged to go upon any military expedition out of the province: however, the Nobility of the country are always ready to appear in arms for their own defence. The Burghers are exempt from this ſervice; only the citizens of *Thorn*, in conſideration of their privilege of purchaſing and holding eſtates like the Nobility, ſend about thirty-two horſemen, *&c.* into the field.

§. 6. Cauſes are tried in *Pruſſia* by the Noble-laws of the country, and thoſe of *Culm*. In *Elbing*, and ſome other places, cauſes are determined by the *Lubeck* law. The Nobility in every Palatinate uſe the Provincial and the Caſtle-law. Of the latter notice has been taken above in our account of the *Woiwodas* or Palatines. The Tribunal at *Peterkau* is the laſt reſort for the Nobility in the country; but from the towns appeals are lodged in the royal *Aſſeſſorial-Court*.

§. 7. *Pruſſia* had formerly its own coin, which was afterwards reduced to the ſtandard of the *Poliſh* money. The three principal cities of *Pruſſia*, by virtue of their particular privileges, are allowed to coin gold and ſilver pieces of various ſorts, impreſſed with the King's head on one ſide, and their reſpective arms on the reverſe, which, after receiving the royal ſanction, are to paſs as the current money of *Pruſſia*.

§. 8. Beſides the Senators, or Counſellors of State, mentioned above, there are ſeveral other public officers in *Pruſſia*; namely,

The Treaſurer, who is the principal, and even the only one who has an annual appointment and ſome other perquiſites already ſpecified.

The Sword-bearer, who has nothing but the bare title.

The Standard-bearer, who carries the ſtandard of the Province when all the Nobility of the country take the field.

The Judges of the land, who are ſeven in number, and their *Aſſeſſores*, or Aſſiſtants.

§. 9. It is to be obſerved of the towns in *Pruſſia*, that they were formerly divided into Great Cities and Small Towns. The Great Cities are, *Thorn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzick*; and the Small Towns, which are alſo called Royal Towns, amount to ſeven-and-twenty: but thoſe belonging to the Biſhops of

* i. e. A Hide of land.

Ermland

Ermland and *Culm* are not included in this number. An aſſociation was formed among theſe ſmall towns under the government of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. By this union, which continues to this day, they are to unite in behalf of their common privileges; to conſult their intereſt as a community in their particular aſſemblies; and to recommend their common concerns in the general Diets of *Pruſſia* to the repreſentatives of the Great Cities. With regard to their deliberations, *Marienburg*, which is the moſt conſiderable among theſe towns, has the Directory; and this town, together with *Graudenz*, *Dirſchau*, *Stargard*, and *Konitz*, are called the Plenipotentiary towns; for, beſides their own concerns, they are charged with the affairs of all the other towns, which they lay before the Directory. The latter repreſents them to the Deputies of the Great Cities, who, on account of the care they take of the affairs of the towns in their Palatinates, are called *Quarterſtadte*. The twenty-ſeven Small Towns are,

Stum,	*Rheden*,	STARGARD,
Neuteich,	*Golub*,	*Schoneck*,
Tolkemit,	*Lautenberg*,	*Berend*,
GRAUDENZ *,	*Schonſee*,	KONITZ,
MARIENBURG,	DIRSCHAU,	*Baldenburg*,
Chriſtburg,	*Mewe*,	*Friedland*,
Straſburg,	*Neuburg*,	*Tuchel*,
Leſſen,	*Schwetz*,	*Hammerſtein*,
Neumark,	*Putzig*,	*Schlochau*.

Theſe towns, at preſent, are far from being in a flouriſhing condition. From the ſentences of the magiſtrates of theſe towns an appeal lies to the *Staroſta*'s, and from the latter to the King. For an account of their rights and privileges, ſee a *Latin* Treatiſe entitled, *Privilegium civitatum minorum Pruſſiæ occidentalis, commentariolo illuſtratum.*

The Dutchy of *Pruſſia*, or *Poliſh Pruſſia*, conſiſts of four Provinces, which are as follows.

I. *LITTLE POMERANIA*, Or *POMERELLIA.*

THIS country was formerly a part of the Dutchy of *Pomerania*, and was governed by its own Princes, of the *Pomeranian* line. The laſt of theſe, who was called *Meſtowyn*, dying without children in 1295, left

* Thoſe diſtinguiſhed by capitals are the Plenipotentiary Towns mentioned above.

his dominions to *Premiſlaus* II. Prince of *Great Poland*. But the Margrave of *Brandenburg* attacked this country, aſſiſted by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; who afterwards united it to their dominions, and kept poſſeſſion of it from the year 1310 to 1466. After this, it fell under the dominion of *Poland*. The natives of *Pomerellia*, in order to diſtinguiſh them from the other inhabitants of that country, were formerly called *Pommerinken*.

This Province has its own Palatine, who is the third among the *Pruſſian Woiwodas* and likewiſe a Vice-Treaſurer, and a Sword-bearer.

There are five *Staroſties* in *Pomerellia*, namely, thoſe of *Schlochau*, *Schwetz*, *Tuchel*, *Dirſchau*, and *Putzig*.

This Palatinate contains five Circles, and has four Provincial Judges: for the Diſtricts of *Dantzick* and *Dirſchau* have one each; the third is for *Tuchel*, and the fourth for *Putzig* and *Mirchau*.

The Biſhop of *Cujavia* has a very large eſtate in this Palatinate; and, indeed, almoſt the whole Province is under his juriſdiction, as to eccleſiaſtical affairs: Hence he is alſo ſtiled Biſhop of *Pomerellia*; but has no ſeat in the *Pruſſian* Senate or Council of State. Some part of *Pomerellia* is under the juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*. The moſt remarkable places in this Province are,

1. *Dantzick*, called in Latin *Dantiſcum* or *Gedanum*, and in the *Poliſh* language *Gdantzk*, a famous commercial city and fortreſs, ſituated on the *Weſſel* or *Viſtula*, about a *German* mile from the *Baltic*. Two ſmall rivers called *Radaune* and *Motlau* run through the city. The *Motlau* divides itſelf into two channels, which run between the *Old* and *New Town*, and afterwards unite again below the city, and with the *Radaune*, fall into the *Viſtula*. It is a large, populous, and beautiful city, and built according to the ancient manner of the *Hanſe-towns*; but moſt of the ſtreets are narrow. This is partly occaſioned by the *Beyſchlage*, or Galleries, which project a good way into the ſtreets. Theſe *Beyſchlage*, to which there is an aſcent by a few ſteps, are even with the houſes; and under moſt of them are good vaults or cellars.

Datzick properly conſiſts of two parts, namely, the *Old Town* and the *New Town*, with their ſuburbs. This city has a beautiful harbour, and the inhabitants carry on a conſiderable trade, eſpecially in corn. The ſhips belonging to this port are very numerous; and the privileges of the city are of great importance. As the third Great City, it ſends repreſentatives to the *Pruſſian* Senate, or Council of State; who have likewiſe a ſeat in the General Diet of *Poland*, and vote at the election of a King. The *Dantzickers* have alſo the privilege of coining money, gathering amber, *&c.*

In the year 1567, King *Caſimir* conferred the title of Noble on the Magiſtrates, *Schoppen* or Judges, and the hundred Burghers of *Dantzick*; ſo that ſince that time they have been ſtiled *Nobiles*.

In this city are twelve Lutheran churches, excluſive of thoſe in the Houſe of Correction and in the alms-houſe, two Calviniſtical churches, and one Popiſh church, with a college of Jeſuits. The Cathedral, or large Lutheran church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is the moſt magnificent, and the principal pariſh-church in *Dantzick*; but is ſubject to pay pecuniary impoſitions to the Biſhop upon any frivolous pretence. The firſt Preacher or Miniſter of this church is called *Senior Miniſterii*: the reſt are equal as to dignity, and two of them muſt always be Doctors in Divinity. There is a Lutheran *Gymnaſium* or Academy in the Gray Fryars convent, in which are ſeven Profeſſors, and one Teacher of the *Poliſh* language. The city Library ſtands in this convent; and the collection of books, with which it is furniſhed, was not only properly arranged, but alſo greatly improved and augmented by M. *Adrian Engelke*. Other public buildings in this city are,

The Council-houſes in the *Old* and *New Town*. In the tower of the latter are very muſical chimes; and under the Council-houſe is the *Pfundkammer*, as it is called, where the duty upon merchandiſe is paid.

The public Weigh-houſe, the Arſenal, and the Exchange, which are very old ſtructures.

The fine mill erected on the river *Radaune*, which has eighteen wheels, is the largeſt in all the city, and is ſaid to have formerly brought in a ducat every hour to the proprietors; but, at preſent, it does not yield near ſo much.

This city was anciently the principal of the *Hanſe-towns*; being one of the firſt that entered into the *Hanſeatic* Aſſociation. The *German* is almoſt the only language ſpoken here; the *Poliſh* being but little uſed by the inhabitants. This city has its own garriſon; and the fortifications make a good appearance, eſpecially towards the South and the Weſt; for thoſe parts of the town are ſurrounded with mountains and eminences. Some of theſe hills are higher than the city-towers; and thoſe called *Biſcholfsberg* and *Hagelsberg* are the moſt remarkable among them. On the latter a caſtle formerly ſtood, which, like the mountain, derived its name from a Nobleman called *Hagel*, who, for his tyrannical behaviour, was ſlain there, after which his caſtle was laid in aſhes. This was alſo the burying-place of the Sovereigns of the country, as is evident from the arms and ſtatues found on this hill about the year 1664. Hard by is ſhewn the place where the *Ruſſians* attacked this city in the year 1734, but without ſucceſs; and likewiſe the large tomb in which a 1000 men, who were killed on this occaſion, are interred.

According to the Bills of Mortality 1846 perſons died in this city in 1752. In the ſame year 1288 *Poliſh* veſſels, ſmall and great, from the *Viſtula*, and 1014 ſhips from the ſea, arrived in this port; and 58,060 Laſts and 40 buſhels of corn was brought into this city for exportation, *&c.*

As for hiſtorical particulars relating to this city, it appears from the ancient records, that *Dantzick*, ſo early as the year of Chriſt 997, was a large

a large commercial city, and not a village or inconſiderable town, as ſome pretend. The *New Town* was founded by the Croſs-bearing Knights * in the year 1311; and was firſt ſurrounded with a wall and moat in the year 1343. This city ſhook off the yoke of the *Teutonic* Knights in 1454, and the inhabitants, under certain reſtrictions, ſubmitted to *Caſimir* King of *Poland*, who among other privileges granted them the right of coining their own money. They afterwards refuſed to do homage to *Stephen* King of *Poland*, without a previous confirmation of their rights and privileges. Upon this, the city was put under the *Ban*, and beſieged by that Prince: However, matters were adjuſted, and, on a public acknowledgment of their error, and paying a large fine to the King, he received the city into favour, confirmed its privileges, and granted the inhabitants the free exerciſe of the Evangelical or Lutheran religion. In 1734, *Staniſlaus* King of *Poland* took refuge in this city; but this occaſioned a hot ſiege and bombardment from the *Saxons* and *Ruſſians*. At length, when there was no hopes of relief from the *French* by ſea, and King *Staniſlaus* had found a way to make his eſcape, *Dantzick* ſubmitted to *Auguſtus* III. Elector of *Saxony*, as its rightful Sovereign. Some violent diſſentions, not long ſince, aroſe betwixt the Magiſtrates and Burghers; but, after great diſputes and animoſities, and a vaſt expence to the city, they were brought to an accommodation in the year 1752, by the *Ordinatio regia civitati Gedanenſi præſcripta*, in which may be ſeen the form of government, laws, and privileges of this city.

Dantzick is in the dioceſe of *Cujavia*; and the inhabitants pay the Popiſh Biſhop all the regard that is conſiſtent with the difference of their religion, and the privileges and immunities of the city. Without the walls lie the following places, which belong to the city of *Dantzick*.

The *Dantziger Werder* †, as it is called, which is ſurrounded by the *Viſtula*, the *Motlau*, and the moraſſes cauſed by theſe rivers. It contains about 1400 Hides ‡ of land, and about thirty-three villages. It is entirely under the government of the magiſtrates of *Dantzick*; and the ſenior Burgomaſter and two of the Senators are the Directors and Superintendents of it. The church-villages in this iſland are twelve in number; and among theſe is one Calviniſtical church and two chapels. The church-village of *Stieblau* or *Stublau*, gives name to *Stiebla-Werder*. In war time, batteries are erected at the church-village of *Gutland*. The inhabitants of the village of *Schmerenblocke* are all *Hollanders*.

The *Friſche Nehrung*, which is a long narrow ſlip of land lying between the ſea and the harbour, and extending almoſt to *Pillau*. There are five church-villages on the *Friſche Nerung:* But the moſt remarkable

* Theſe were the *Teutonic* Knights, who had a black croſs in their ſtandards and colours.

† *Werder* ſignifies an iſland formed by a river, and drained by art.

‡ A Hide of land in *England* was as much as one plough could cultivate in a year.

place in it is the fort called *Munde* or *Weichſelmunde*, in Latin *Viſtulæmunda* *, which ſtands in the *Baltic* at the mouth of the *Viſtula*; and oppoſite to it on the other ſide of the water ſtands a fort called *Weſterſchanze*. The *Munde* is a ſtrong place, and has a church and a commodious harbour. It belongs to the city; and was taken by the *Saxons* in 1734. The fort called *Haupt* alſo deſerves notice.

The *Hohe*, as it is called, on which are eight church-villages and the little town of *Hela* or *Heel*, which alſo belongs to *Dantzick*, is on a point of land, which projects with a curve into the *Baltic*, and forms the *Pautzkerwick* bay. Here ſhips uſually caſt anchor. In 1572, this little town was conſumed by fire.

2. *Oliva*, a celebrated convent, which lies about a *German* mile from *Dantzick*, was founded by Duke *Subiſlaus* in 1170; or, according to others, in the year 1178 by *Samborius* Duke of *Pomerania*, for a fraternity of *Benedictine* monks. In 1224, and 1234 or 1236, it was laid in aſhes by the *Pagans* of *Pruſſia*; and in 1432 or 1433, it was burnt by the *Bohemian* ſoldiers, who were in the ſervice of *Poland*. In 1577, it was demoliſhed by the *Dantzickers*, who were afterwards obliged to pay above 20,000 guilders towards rebuilding it. On the third of *May* 1660, a peace was concluded in this convent between the *Poles* and *Swedes*; and, in the following year, the treaty was regiſtered among the public records and tranſactions of the Kingdom of *Poland*.

This convent is, at preſent, inhabited by *Ciſtercian* monks, who are about fifty in number. The inſide of the convent-church is exceeding ſplendid; particularly the high altar and the pulpit, which are finely gilt, and appear extremely beautiful. It has forty altars, which are all embelliſhed with the richeſt ornaments. It has alſo ſeveral chapels, among which that of the bleſſed Virgin is the moſt magnificent. In the choir, the remains of the founder of the monaſtery and his ſons are depoſited under a marble tomb-ſtone; and the walls are ornamented with the ſtatues of the principal benefactors of the convent. Near the entrance of the church a marble table is ſet up in the wall, in commemoration of the treaty of *Oleva* mentioned above. The diſpenſary belonging to the convent is very elegant, and well contrived. This monaſtery has the privilege of gathering amber on the ſea-coaſt. A pretty village has been gradually built round this convent.

3. *Pauktzke*, or *Putzig*, a little town with a ſtrong caſtle, which is a royal demeſne. On one ſide of it lies a moraſs. It was taken by the *Danes* in 1464, after a long ſiege. In 1626, the *Swedes* made themſelves maſters of it; and in the following year it was recovered by the *Poles*. Between *Dantzick* and *Putzig*, the *Baltic* forms a bay called *Pautzekerwick*.

* This is *Teutonic* Latin: It ſhould rather be called *Viſtulæ oſtium*; for the *German* word *Munde* ſignifies a month.

4. *Zernowitz*,

4. *Zernowitz*, a handſome nunnery belonging to the order of *Præmonſtratentes*, which was founded in the year 1213.

5. *Sluckau*, a convent belonging to the *Bernardine* nuns.

6. *Marien Paradies*, a *Carthuſian* convent which lies between two lakes not far from *Mirchau*. This is the only monaſtery belonging to that Order in all *Pruſſia*.

7. *Dirſchau*, or *Derſau*, a ſtrong little town ſeated on the *Viſtula*. It is ſaid to have been built in the year 1209, and was formerly called *Sau*. It is, at preſent the capital of a county. In 1288, *Mſczugius* founded a convent for a fraternity of *Predicant* monks in this town. In 1310, and 1432 or 1433, *Dirſchau* was laid in aſhes; and in 1577 it was conſumed by an accidental fire. In 1626 and 1655, it was taken by the *Swedes*. A Provincial Court of Judicature, and the royal Court for the *Oeconomie* of *Dirſchau* are held here. There is a Lutheran church in this town.

8. *Schoeneck*, a ſmall town and caſtle on the river *Fers*. It is ſuppoſed to have been built in the year 1180, and to have been deſtroyed by the *Pruſſians* about the year 1186. But it was rebuilt ſoon after; and, either by purchaſe or exchange was given up by the Knight's of St. *John* to thoſe of the *Teutonic* Order. Here is a royal *Poliſh* Chancery; and every month an Aſſembly or Diet is held in this town, in which the Under *Woiewoda* determines ſmall differences; but cauſes of greater conſequence are decided by the *Woiwoda* or Palatine himſelf. Appeals lie from hence to *Peterkau*.

9. *Stargurd*, a ſmall town, which likewiſe ſtands on the *Fers*. When this place was little more than a village, *Subiſlaus*, Prince of *Pomerania*, granted it to the Knights of St. *John*, who founded St. *John*'s church in this town. *Stargard* was rebuilt by the *Teutonic* Knights, in the year 1339, on the ſpot where it now ſtands; but the Knights of St. *John* were not pleaſed with the removal of the town. In 1456, it was taken by the *Poles*, and in 1654, it ſurrendered to the *Swedes*. The Diet for this Palatinate is held in this town.

10. *Meve*, or *Gniew*, a town and caſtle at the conflux of the *Fers* and the *Viſtula*. In the year 1283, it devolved to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who built a fortreſs here. In 1463, this place capitulated to the *Poles*; and in 1626 and 1655, it ſurrendered to the *Swedes*. The Papiſts took poſſeſſion of the principal church at *Meve* in the year 1696. Not long ſince, *John Gertz*, a Lutheran preacher, was obliged to erect a ſtatue in this town to St. *Nepomuc*, againſt whom, it was pretended, he had ſpoke ſome diſreſpectful words.

11. *Neuburg*, or *Neuenburg*, a little town which has the *Viſtula* on one ſide, and a moraſs on the other. Mention is made of this town as a place of ſome note in the year 1310. The Burghers drove out the *Poliſh* garriſon

garriſon in 1458; upon which the *Teutonic* Knights of the Croſs made themſelves maſters of the place: However, it was retaken by the *Poles* in 1364 or 1465. In 1626, and 1655, the *Swedes* took this town, and put a garriſon in it.

12. *Biſchmark*, a ſmall town, which has been ſeveral times conſumed by fire.

13. *Hammerſtein*, a ſmall town near the ſource of the river *Bro*, which, in the year 1466, ſubmitted to *Poland*. This town was reduced to aſhes in 1719 by an accidental fire.

14. *Landeck* and *Friedland*, which are ſmall towns. In the latter is a Lutheran church.

15. *Schwetz*, a town and caſtle on the *Viſtula*. The caſtle was built in 1244 by Duke *Suantopolk*, as a defence againſt the attacks of the *Teutonic* Knights. After this, the town was gradually built; and, in 1340, it was fortified. In 1310, it fell under the dominion of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. In 1454, it was taken by the *Poles*; in the following year the *Teutonic* Knights made themſelves maſters of it; and in 1466, it was taken again by the *Poles*. In the year 1655 the *Swedes* took this place; and the year enſuing it was taken a third time by the *Poles*.

16. *Tauchel*, a little town with a caſtle, ſituated on the river *Bro*. It was famous in the former wars between *Poland* and *Pruſſia*; and a Court of Judicature is held in it.

Bromberg, called in the *Poliſh* language *Bedgotzi*, *Bigodſez*, or *Bidgoſt*, is a ſmall town on the river *Bro*. That river entirely environs the caſtle, which ſtands without the town. In 1613, ſome *Schillings* of baſe metal were coined in this town; which is alſo famous for the treaty which was concluded here in 1657 between the King of *Poland* and the Elector of *Brandenburg*. A Court of Judicature is held here.

18. *Verdon*, *Krone*, *Conitz* and *Sluchau*, four ſmall towns on the river *Bro*.

II. *CULMERLAND*;

Or the PALATINATE of *CULM*.

In Latin *Palatinatus ſeu Præfectura Calmienſis*.

THIS Province has a *Woiewoda*, who is the firſt of the three *Pruſſian* Palatines, a Caſtellan, a Vice-Treaſurer, a Sword-bearer, a Judge, and the eight following *Staroſties*; namely, thoſe of *Strasburg*, *Graudenz*, *Rheden*, *Golub*, *Roggenhauſen*, *Bretchen*, *Schonſee*, and *Engelſburg*. The biſhop-

biſhopric of *Culm* is the moſt ancient See in *Poliſh Pruſſia*, and was founded about the year 1215, or 1222, by *Conrad* Duke of *Maſovia*. The College, or Chapter, of the churches of *Culm* conſiſts only of four canons who are choſen by the Biſhop and the reſt of the Chapter. A fuller account of the Dioceſe and Biſhop of *Culm* has been given above §. 3.

The principal places in the Palatinate of *Culm* are,

1. *Culm* or *Chelmno*, which is the capital of this province, and ſtands on an eminence on the banks of the *Viſtula*. This city was founded in 1239; and was bequeathed by one of the Dukes of *Maſovia* to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. The inhabitants afterwards withdrew themſelves from the obedience of the latter, and ſubmitted to *Poland*. While the *Teutonic* Knights had the Sovereignty of *Culm*, the High Tribunal of *Pruſſia* was held in this city. Hence the *Culmean* law was in ſuch reputation, that there were few plaees in *Pruſſia*, or *Maſovia*, where it was not received. *Culm* is a large city, though but thinly inhabited. It was formerly one of the *Hanſe*-towns, and, under the Kings of *Poland*, was reckoned one of the Great Cities, as they are called; and conſequently had repreſentatives in the Senate, or *Pruſſian* Council: but it is at preſent ſubject to the Biſhop. The *Teutonic* Knights granted this city the privilege of coining money. Here are two monaſteries and a nunnery. In the year 1457, the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, from whom this city had revolted, made themſelves maſters of it again; but in few years after, it was taken by the *Poles*. In 1544, *Culm* ſuffered greatly by fire.

2. *Althaus*, a caſtle on an eminence near the *Viſtula*, with a village or ſmall town. It is called *Starigrod* in the *Poliſh* language.

3. *Culmenſee*, or *Chelmza*, is a ſmall town about a *German* mile from *Culm*, and the reſidence of the Biſhop of *Culm*; who is alſo ſtiled the Biſhop of *Lobau*, where he has a ſeat. This town was built in the year 1251.

4. *Frideck*, in Poliſh *Wambriſna*, a ſmall town, which was founded in the year 1331.

5. *Thorn*, which is the moſt ancient city in either of the two *Pruſſia*'s, and the chief of the three Great Cities of *Poliſh Pruſſia*, ſtands on the *Viſtula*. The magiſtrates and repreſentatives of *Thorn* have the precedence of thoſe of the other Cities; and the records of *Poliſh Pruſſia* are kept in this town. *Thorn* was founded by *Herman Balck*, firſt Grand-maſter of the *Teutonic* Order, who built the caſtle of *Thorn* in 1231. In the following year, the foundation of the town was laid; but the building was diſcontinued in 1235 on account of the inconvenient ſituation, and *Thorn* was built about a *German* mile farther up the river, on the ſpot where it now ſtands. It is ſuppoſed to have been called *Thorn*, becauſe the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order by building this city opened to themſelves a *Thor* or door into *Pruſſia*. This is further confirmed by the maps, and the ſeal of the city which repreſents

preſents a gate thrown open. *Thorn*, ſoon after it was built, became diſtinguiſhed above the other towns of *Pruſſia* by ſeveral valuable privileges; particularly the *Culmiſhe Handveſte*, as it was called. Theſe privileges, which were not granted to other cities till a long time after, conſiſted in the choice of their judges and magiſtrates from among the Burghers; the puniſhment of offenders; the free and independent poſſeſſion of eſtates; and exemption from all taxes. However, an officer ſtiled *Comthur* was appointed by the *Teutonic* Knights, who reſided in a caſtle near the *Viſtula*, and had power over the magiſtracy and Burghers in matters of general concern, till the year 1454.

But when the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order enormouſly abuſed their power throughout all *Pruſſia*, *Thorn* was the firſt city which formed the noble ſcheme of ſhaking off their oppreſſive yoke. The inhabitants, having concerted with the other towns, entered into an alliance for that purpoſe; and the original Inſtrument of that aſſociation is ſtill to be ſeen among the records of this city. This happened in the year 1454, when at once the country now called *Poliſh Pruſſia* expelled the *Teutonic* Knights by force of arms, and aſſerted their freedom. On this occaſion the inhabitants of *Thorn*, having made themſelves maſters of the caſtle, demoliſhed it; and nothing but its magnificent ruins are now to be ſeen. The confederates put themſelves under the protection of *Caſimir the Great*, King of *Poland*; but upon the following advantageous conditions: Their rights, privileges and immunities were to remain entire. They were to honour his *Poliſh* Majeſty as their ſovereign, but without any farther connexion with *Poland* than a cloſe harmony and alliance, by which they engaged to have the ſame allies and enemies, to aſſiſt each other on all occaſions, and reciprocally to promote the welfare and proſperity of both parties. The magiſtrates of the cities acquired great eſteem and authority by this alliance, *&c.* and particularly many privileges were conferred on *Thorn*, *Elbing* and *Dantzick* the three Great Cities, as they are called. But as *Thorn* had moſt ſignally diſtinguiſhed itſelf in ſhaking off the *Teutonic* yoke, it more eminently deſerved thoſe immunities which the two other Great Cities ſhared with it, and had ſome excluſive privileges on that account.

The privileges granted in common to theſe three cities were as follows: They were declared free cities. They were to be governed by their own magiſtrates, which conſiſt of the Council, the chief perſons of which are the *Burgrave* and Preſident; the *Schoppen* or Judges; and a third claſs as repreſentatives of the Burghers. The members of the Council, in regard to their dignity, were to be accounted Noble; and even to be ſtiled *Nobiles* in the inſtruments iſſued by the Royal Chancery and other offices. The Burgomaſters were termed *Præconſules*, and the Counſellors had the title of *Conſules* or conſuls. They were further allowed to hold a Supreme Court of Judicature, and, in criminal caſes, to puniſh capitally even thoſe who were

not inhabitants of the city, if they were taken in the fact; to have their own garriſon; to coin money; but not to ſubmit to the determination of any foreign court; to have their law-ſuits decided only in *Pruſſia*. They were to pay no other cuſtoms in *Poland* but thoſe uſually demanded at the firſt barrier on the frontiers. Laſtly, they were to be members of the State-Council of *Poliſh Pruſſia*; and to have a ſeat and vote in the *Poliſh* Diet, and at the election of a King. The third Jubilee of this happy event was very juſtly commemorated with great rejoicings in the ſchools of all the three great Cities in *February* 1754, when *Thorn* and *Dantzick* even cauſed medals to be ſtruck on the occaſion.

The excluſive privileges, which *Thorn* in particular obtained, are alſo very important; namely, The Recorder of that city is to write down the decrees of the Diet of *Pruſſia*, in the name of the whole country, which are drawn up in the *Latin* tongue according to the intent and meaning of the Counſellors; to read them publicly; and afterwards to depoſit them in the Archives or chamber of records in this city. Two members of the Council of *Thorn* always aſſiſt at the ſeſſions of the *Culmean* Judicature, which is annually held here by the Nobility in the month of *October*. As *Thorn*, for ſome centuries, had been the Staple city, it was confirmed in the inviolable poſſeſſion of that advantageous privilege; and as the *Viſtula* waters its territory, the iſlands and fiſheries in that river were made the property of the city. Laſtly, the Burghers of *Thorn* were rendered capable of purchaſing and enjoying fiefs or eſtates, which privilege none but the Nobility enjoy in this country.

This city has ten gates, and is divided into the *Old* and *New-Town*, each of which had formerly its reſpective Council, Magiſtracy, and Police. But, in 1454, they were incorporated into one city. They are, however, ſeparated from each other by a wall and moat within the town; and without, they are defended in common by a fine double wall and moats. *Thorn* was formerly ſtrongly fortified; and it gradually improved its advantageous ſituation, ſo as to become a place of very conſiderable trade, and one of the principal of the *Hanſe*-towns. It likewiſe carried on an extenſive commerce in the *Baltic*, independently of the other cities of that confederacy; for before the river widened ſo much, and conſequently became ſhallower, ſhips of the greateſt burden could come up to the very city. From this cauſe, and other ſubſequent misfortunes which followed cloſe upon one another, in little more than half a century *Thorn* greatly declined from its flouriſhing condition. For it ſurrendered by capitulation in 1655 to *Charles Guſtavus* King of *Sweden*; and in 1658, after a vigorous ſiege, it was taken by the *Poles* and *Brandenburghers*. In 1703, it was bombarded and taken by *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden*, who not only exhauſted it by the heavieſt contributions; but alſo demoliſhed all the fortifications contrary to the articles of capitulation. Between the years 1708 and 1710, great numbers

of its inhabitants were ſwept away by the plague. In the following years, the revenues of the city ſuffered conſiderably by the *Confederations* in *Poland*, and no leſs by the late commotions occaſioned by the competitors for the Crown of that kingdom. In the year 1734, it alſo ſuſtained great damages by fire; not to mention the immenſe charges of the Royal *Poliſh* Commiſſion in 1718, for determining the differences betwixt the Magiſtrates and Burghers; and particularly that memorable Commiſſion ſent hither in 1724. Beſides, there is no place in *Pruſſia* ſo expoſed to moleſtations and vexatious ſuits from the Nobility as the city of *Thorn*; for it is ſeparated from *Poland* only by the river, and on the *Pruſſian* ſide is ſurrounded by the eſtates of the Nobility. However, *Thorn* might ſtill have ſuch a ſhare of commerce as would prove a fund of wealth and affluence to the inhabitants, if there were merchants of fortune among them; ſince all the commodities with which *Dantzick* carries on ſuch a great trade are conveyed on the *Viſtula* by *Thorn*. It was alſo accounted the handſomeſt city in *Poliſh Pruſſia*, and may ſtill claim that honour; for its ſtreets are broad and regular, and, for the moſt part, planted with rows of trees: The houſes are alſo remarkable for their elegant appearance and cleanlineſs.

The inhabitants of *Thorn* are univerſally commended by foreigners for their civility and politeneſs, beyond thoſe of any other town in *Pruſſia*. It is alſo obſervable, that the *German* language is ſpoken here in the greateſt purity; ſo that even the inhabitants of *Upper Saxony*, candidly acknowlege, that they are at leaſt equalled, if not excelled, in this particular by the commonalty and Burghers of *Thorn*. What is ſtill more remarkable is, that not only the *German*, but even the *Poliſh* language, which is ſo neceſſary for carrying on trade, is alſo ſpoken here in ſuch perfection, that ſeveral *Poles* ſend their children hither, merely to learn their native tongue in its purity and elegance.

The territory belonging to this city is of a conſiderable extent, including above twenty-five villages, among which are ſeveral *noble* eſtates; on this account, the city is obliged to furniſh a ſmall body of horſe in caſe of an expedition for the defence of the country. In one of its dependencies called *Prſzyſzecx*, where a great quantity of beer is brewed, and abundance of ſpirits are diſtilled, an odd cuſtom prevails; namely, that all perſons of whatever rank they be (though their number be ever ſo great and it be repeated every day) that come into the place, muſt be deſired to drink as much beer as they pleaſe gratis *. Not a ſingle drop of the beer brewed in this village is allowed to be ſold here; and the public houſes are obliged to fetch liquor for ſale from other places. As this village lies at a moderate diſtance from the city, it being about two hours walk along a pleaſant road, great numbers reſort to it on foot and on horſeback; and there is a particular building with ſeveral ſpacious rooms erected here for the entertainment of company.

* This is a genuine *Teutonic* cuſtom. *Quere* who finds the beer?

Thorn

Thorn has its own garriſon which generally conſiſts only of one company. The ſoap, gingerbread, &c. of *Thorn* are every where in great requeſt, and accordingly great quantities of them are exported. The aſparagus that grow wild on ſome of the city lands, are not inferior to thoſe which are cultivated with ſo much care in other countries.

The wooden-bridge over the *Viſtula* in this city may juſtly be eſteemed the longeſt, the moſt extraordinary and expenſive bridge in *Europe*, and the city, in order to carry on the trade with *Poland* by land, is obliged to keep it in repair at a great expence. It is unqueſtionably the longeſt bridge in *Europe*; but conſiſts properly of two bridges, the iſland of *Bazar* dividing it in the middle. That part of the bridge which is next to *Thorn* is called the *German*-bridge, and the channel over which it lies the *German Viſtula*; but the other part towards *Poland* is diſtinguiſhed by the name of the *Poliſh*-bridge, which is laid over the channel called the *Poliſh Viſtula*. As the river continually grows wider and wider, the bridge muſt of neceſſity be lengthened; ſo that at preſent it takes up half an hour to walk over it from one bank of the river to the other. It is alſo the moſt ſingular, as to its conſtruction, of any bridge in *Europe*, on account of the quick-ſand into which the piles are driven; for the whole bridge ſhakes and totters whenever any carriages or horſes are upon it, or even when any conſiderable number of foot-paſſengers go over it; ſo that a ſtranger, who is unacquainted with its conſtruction, apprehends himſelf in great danger in paſſing over it. The ice on the *Viſtula*, which is often two or three feet thick, and the rapidity of the current, carry away every year at leaſt one third of this unſtable bridge, and it would be nothing extraordinary if the whole were demoliſhed: Hence we may form an idea of the vaſt expence the city of *Thorn* is at, in keeping it in repair; for the *Poles* contribute nothing towards keeping up the bridge, notwithſtanding the heavy loads they bring over it.

As to the religion of the inhabitants of *Thorn*, by the Reformation in 1520, the Evangelical or Lutheran Profeſſion was ſucceſsfully propagated here, and, in a ſhort time, became the eſtabliſhed religion; ſo that as early as the year 1557, King *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* granted this city very conſiderable privileges in matters of religion, which have been ratified and confirmed by all his ſucceſſors the Kings of *Poland*. By theſe privileges, the Lutherans got poſſeſſion of St. *John*'s church and St. *Mary*'s in the *Old-town*, and St. *James*'s in the *New-town*, beſides St. *George*'s and St. *Catharine*'s in the ſuburbs. On the other hand, the Papiſts were allowed a chapel near St. *John*'s, and the church of St. *Lawrence* in the ſuburbs. The *Dominicans* were alſo to retain their church of St. *Nicholas*, and their convent in the *New-town*; and the Benedictine Nuns their church of the Holy Ghoſt, and their nunnery which ſtands on the *Viſtula*. In the above-mentioned churches, the Lutherans are alſo allowed to adminiſter the ſacrament of the

Lord's Supper in both kinds; and the Council are impowered to nominate and appoint the miniſters of their religion who are to perform every part of the Lutheran religious worſhip. But in the year 1593, St. *John*'s church was transferred to the Papiſts, and Jeſuits were appointed to officiate in it; who, notwithſtanding all the efforts of the magiſtrates to prevent it, continually increaſed in number. In 1605 the Jeſuits built a college at *Thorn*, which has always been much frequented by ſtrangers, and has likewiſe been the occaſion of many calamities and misfortunes to the city; particularly in the year 1724. However, the city has hitherto maintained its right of patronage of the ſaid church, and alternately with the King of *Poland*, nominates the *Roman* Catholic Prieſt who officiates in it. In this church is to be ſeen the epitaph of the celebrated aſtronomer *Nicholas Copernicus*, who was born in this city on the nineteenth of *January* 1472; and another on the tomb of *Alexander*, King of *Poland*.

In the year 1645, King *Uladiſlaus* IV. being deſirous of uniting the three principal Chriſtian ſects, aſſembled the famous *Colloquium Charitativum*, or charitable conference, betwixt the Papiſts, Lutherans, and Calviniſts; which, however, proved entirely fruitleſs.

In the year 1660, it was agreed at the treaty of *Oliva*, that all public inſtitutions, both religious and civil, ſhould remain in *Poland* and *Pruſſia* on the ſame footing as before the war. But in 1667, St. *James*'s church in the *New-town*, together with the hoſpital appertaining to it, was taken away from the Lutherans and given to the *Benedictine* Nuns, whoſe church on the *Viſtula* had been demoliſhed during the ſiege; and the Lutherans of the *New-town* were obliged to convert their town-houſe, which ſtands in the middle of the market, into a place of worſhip, as it has continued to be ever ſince. Laſtly, the Proteſtants were deprived in the ſame unjuſt manner of St. *Mary*'s, the only remaining Lutheran church, and the old adjacent convent, with the celebrated *Gymnaſium* or ſeminary, which was then removed to another edifice, after having flouriſhed there ſince the year 1568. The celebrated *Mecænas* of literature *Henry Stroband* has been a great benefactor of the ſeminary as well as of the whole city, by the fine library, printing houſe, and college where the ſtudents are now maintained, which he erected at *Thorn* in 1594. The Rectors and Profeſſors of this college have always been perſons of great learning and abilities, among whom were *Chriſtopher Hartknoch*, and *Peter Zorn*. The celebrated *Abraham Calov* was alſo educated in this college. It has five profeſſors and one teacher of the *Poliſh* language. But the calamity to which it gave riſe from a trivial circumſtance, on the ſixteenth of *July* 1724, is too well known: and an account of it may be read at large in pamphlets written on the ſubject in ſeveral languages. The ſubſtance of the relation is, that in a proceſſion, a Jeſuit ſcholar furiouſly attacked ſome Lutheran ſtudents, who were ſtanding by, and endeavoured to force them to kneel to the Hoſt. This occaſioned a tumultuous concourſe, which the next day broke out into a moſt unhappy

unhappy quarrel; ſo that the populace being provoked from the Jeſuits college by inſulting language, and even by firing of muſkets, forced their way into the college, where in their rage they did a great deal of damage. Upon this, in purſuance of an unheard of and precipitate ſentence, without hearing the parties accuſed, Preſident *Roſner* and nine Burghers were beheaded on the ſeventh of *December* following. The church of St. *Mary* and the adjoining convent were given to the Bare-footed monks; on the eighth of the ſame month, a heavy mulct was laid on the city; a ſtatue was erected in St. *John*'s church-yard in order to atone for the pretended affront offered to the Virgin *Mary*; and M. *Geret*, the ſenior miniſter of the Proteſtant church, was baniſhed and outlawed. This extremely diſguſted all the Proteſtant powers in *Europe*, eſpecially thoſe who were guarantees of the treaty of *Oliva*: And even the Czaar *Peter the Great* who had been at *Thorn* in 1706 along with King *Auguſtus* II. made very ſerious remonſtrances to the Court of *Poland* againſt this iniquitious and cruel proceeding. But notwithſtanding all this, the Jeſuits obtained leave in the *Poliſh* Diet for the ſpeedy execution of this ſcandalous ſentence, as to the moſt important articles of it; yet the preſſing ſollicitations of thoſe powers were ſo far of ſervice to the city, as to preſerve its rights and privileges from being taken away: And *Auguſtus* II. King of *Poland* ſolemnly reſtored to the inhabitants all their privileges both religious and civil in their former extent, which they have ever ſince bravely maintained. However, the Papiſts remain in poſſeſſion of St. *Mary*'s church with the adjoining convent. In the former is a ſuperb monument of Princeſs *Anne*, ſiſter to *Sigiſmund* III.

The Lutherans of the *Old-town* continued for ſeveral years to perform divine ſervice publicly in the exchange, which ſtands in the market place: But that edifice was too ſmall for the congregation; for the Burghers, who amount at leaſt to a thouſand men, are all Lutherans except about thirty perſons. On this account they have, ſince the year 1755, built on one ſide of the market place a new church one hundred and ſixty feet long and eighty broad, to which the King of *Pruſſia* granted his Protection, and gave Permiſſion to collect money in all his dominions towards defraying the expences of building it; and the exchange is applied to its former uſe. There are alſo four Lutheran churches in the villages belonging to *Thorn*. The clergy conſiſt of a *Senior*, who is generally a Doctor in Divinity, and ſeven Preachers. Here are alſo ſome Calviniſts who have a paſtor, and perform their religious worſhip in a private houſe. The Jews have likewiſe a ſmall ſynagogue in this city.

About a *German* mile from *Thorn* is a Popiſh chapel dedicated to St. *Barbara*, and diſtinguiſhed by many pretended miracles; there is an annual and very ſolemn proceſſion every *Whitſun-Tueſday* from the city to this chapel, for obtaining public indulgences.

Among the public edifices of the city, the Town-houſe in the *Old-town* is well worth ſeeing: It ſtands in the market place, on every ſide of which very handſom

handſom houſes are erected, and forms an elegant quadrangular ſquare ſtructure built in a ſuch a magnificent manner, that, for the beauty of its architecture, foreigners give it the preference to moſt edifices of that kind in *Europe*. The Exchange which alſo ſtands on the market-place, is a very ſuperb ſtructure, and is adorned with towers; and the front of it is embelliſhed with gilded buſto's of the King's of *Poland*. The Popiſh churches in this city, both for their ſpaciouſneſs and ornaments, deſerve particular notice, as does the Jeſuits college. The *Junkerhof*, which ſtands on the bank of the *Viſtula* and belongs to the Exchange, is a delightful place intended for feſtivity, and the entertainment of the principal merchants and other citizens of note. The artiſans and lower claſs of people, both in the *Old* and *New-town*, have alſo a houſe and garden adapted for their recreation and merry meetings. Betwixt the *Old* and *New-town* there is a ſhooting-ground, and the markſmen who frequent this place have conſiderable privileges. Connoiſſeurs look upon the *Leaning tower*, as it is called, as an extraordinary piece of architecture; for as its outſide is built obliquely from the ground, it ſeems as if it was ready to fall: but on the inſide, the floors and cielings are perfectly horrizontal, and the walls perpendicular to the horizon.

6. *Schonſee*, called in the *Poliſh* language *Kovalevo*, is a ſmall town where the Caſtle-court of the Palatine, and the Provincial Diet of this Palatinate are held. Near this place, the *Saxon* General *Boſe* defeated the confederate *Poles* in 1716.

7. *Golup* or *Golub*, a town and caſtle on the river *Drebnitz*, was the favourite reſidence of *Anne* Siſter to King *Sigiſmund* III. to whom the territory round it alſo belonged.

8. *Strasburg*, called in the *Poliſh* language *Brodnitz*, a ſtrong caſtle and town in a good ſituation near the river *Drebnitz*, alſo belonged to the above-mentioned Princeſs, who died here in 1525. It was built in 1285, and has been often beſieged and taken. There is a Lutheran church in this town.

9. *Reden*, called by the *Poles Radzyn*, a town with a caſtle, which has often ſuffered by fire and the ravages of war. A Court of Juſtice is held here.

10. *Engelsburg*, a ſmall town of little note.

11. *Graudenz*, formerly called *Grodeck*, and in the *Poliſh* language *Grudziandz*, is a handſom town pleaſantly ſituated on an iſland formed by the river *Oſſa*, which here runs through two channels into the *Viſtula*. There is a church in the caſtle, which ſtands on an eminence, and another in the town. The Lutherans were deprived of the latter in 1598; ſo that they are now obliged to perform Divine Service in the Town-houſe, where they have alſo their ſchool. In 1645, the Jeſuits erected a college here, which received the ſanction of a general Diet in 1647. This town was founded in 1299; and the *Pruſſian* Diet is held here and at *Marienburg* alternately.

12. *Leſſen*, called in the *Poliſh* language *Laſzin*, a ſmall town built in 1328, which is almoſt ſurrounded with water.

13. *Neumarkt*, in Poliſh *Novomiaſto*, a ſmall town on the *Drebnitz*, built in the year 1254.

14. *Bretchem* or *Bretchen*, in Poliſh *Grathan*, a ſmall town and caſtle on the ſame river, which was built in 1254.

15. *Lavernick*, a ſmall town, which ſtands on the ſame river.

16. *Lobau*, a town and caſtle where the Biſhops of *Culm* ſometimes reſide. This place was conſumed by fire in 1545.

17. *Lautenburg*, a ſmall town of little note.

18. *Rogenhauſen*, a royal *Oeconomie*, or Demeſne.

19. *Michelau*, a ſmall Diſtrict which lies between *Maſovia*, the territory of *Dobrin*, and the river *Drebnitz*. This Diſtrict was mortgaged in 1304 by Duke *Leſzko* to the *Teutonic* Knights, and confirmed to that Order in 1343, 1411, and 1436. *Michelau* has its own Judge; but he is ſubordinate to the juriſdiction of *Culm*.

III. The PREFECTURE of *MARIENBURG*,

In Latin *Prefectura ſeu Palatinatus Marieburgenſis*.

THIS Province has a Palatine, who formerly had the title of *Woiewoda* of *Elbing*; and is the ſecond in rank among thoſe of *Pruſſia*. Here are alſo a Vice-Treaſurer, and a Provincial Judge; and the *Staroſtey* of *Marienburg* is the principal in all *Pruſſia*. This Palatinate contains three *Werders*; of which we ſhall, in the firſt place, give ſome account.

Werder is a fen or moraſs ſurrounded with water, and improved for tillage and habitation *. Theſe *Werders* produce plenty of graſs and corn; but woods or hills are ſeldom found in them. That called the wood of *Elbing* is the moſt conſiderable in this Diſtrict. In many parts of it the only fuel is turf, or even ſtraw and ſtubble. The woods afford very little game except hares, woodcocks and other wild fowl; but they harbour very fierce wolves. The freſh water in the *Werders* is very good; and great numbers of cattle are bred here: the horſes are alſo much eſteemed. The air is tolerably healthful. The inhabitants of the *Werders* have, from time immemorial, been free peaſants, and are ſtiled the *Royal Vaſſals* and *Werderers*. They alſo obtained from the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order both the *Culm-lands* and the privileges of *Culm*: However, thoſe

* It properly ſignifies an iſland formed by a river; for which reaſon I have added the words 'ſurrounded with water.'

who

who are ſubject to the juriſdiction of the cities are under greater reſtrictions, than the royal peaſants who live in the *Marienburg Werders*. They talk the *German* and *Poliſh* languages; and as to their religion, they are for the moſt part Lutherans or Papiſts. There are, however, ſome Calviniſts, and a conſiderable number of *Mennonites* *, among them.

I. The GREAT MARIENBURG-WERDER, in Latin *Inſula major*.

This *Werder* is environed by the *Viſtula*, the *Nogat*, and the bay called *Friſche-haf*; and contains above 2130 Hides of land. The latter are divided into

Zins-Hufen, or 'Taxable Hides,' and

Scharwerks-Hufen, or 'Hides that maintain troops;' and likewiſe into

Schulzen-Hufen, or 'Hides under village-juriſdiction,' and

Kirchen-Hufen, or 'Eccleſiaſtical Hides,' which are under Popiſh juriſdiction in eccleſiaſtical affairs.

This *Werder* alſo includes the forty Hides of land which belong to the city of *Marienburg*, and twenty Hides about the ſmall town of *Neuteich*. Beſides the *Viſtula*, this *Werder* is alſo watered by the river *Tye* or *Tyge*, which riſes in the foreſt of *Montau*, traverſes the *Werder*, divides into two branches which environ the little town of *Neuteich*, and runs into the bay called *Friſche-haf* near *Haberhorſt*. This river is called *Suente* by the inhabitants of the *Upper-Werder*. Two channels alſo run towards the weſt from the *Great Werder* into the *Friſche-haf*, one of which is called *Jungfern-Laacke*, and runs into the bay through the *Werder* of *Elbing*, near the village of *Jungfer*; and the other is called *Stobſche-Laacke* and runs by *Stobe*, a village belonging to *Elbing*, oppoſite to *Marienburg*. The *Great* and *Little Marienburg-Werder* fell under the dominion of *Poland* in the year 1525; and from that time a Palatine or *Staroſta* is always nominated here as ſupreme *Oeconomus*, or Steward, who is, as it were, the royal Governor in *Poliſh Pruſſia:* Hence he takes place of all other *Staroſtas*. Under this officer is a deputy *Oeconomus*, who is alſo a *Poliſh* Nobleman; and both theſe are aſſiſted in law matters by a *Notarius juratus*, or Notary public. Here are alſo a *Vogt*, or Collector, and a Secretary; who receive all the revenues, and take care of the King's intereſt. The law-ſuits between the inhabitants are tried at the caſtle according to the laws of *Poland*, *Culm*, &c. The *Pruſſian* law made in 1620, which is the ſame with the old law of *Culm*, is the ſtandard whereby the *Werderers* are uſually tried in the caſtle at *Marienburg*, and alſo in the territories of *Dantzick* and *Elbing*. The *Teichgrafe*, and other officers belonging to the Dikes, govern according to the laws impoſed on them by the *Teutonic* Knights, and confirmed by the Kings of *Poland* and the officers appointed by him: The number of theſe laws are alſo increaſed from time to time.

* Theſe are a ſort of Anabaptiſts.

The

The *Great Marienburg-Werder* conſiſts of five *Winkels*, as they are called; namely,

1. The *Winkel* of *Montau*.
2. The *Winkel* of *Schonau*.
3. The *Winkel* of *Leichtenau*.
4. The *Winkel* of *Neuteich*.
5. The *Winkel* of *Leſwitz*.

It alſo includes thirteen Evangelical or Lutheran pariſhes.

In the firſt *Winkel* are five village-juriſdictions, and two church-villages; in the ſecond are ſeven village-juriſdictions, and two church-villages; and in the third are ſeven village-juriſdictions, and four church-villages. In the fourth *Winkel*, beſides the little town of *Neuteich*, are eight village-juriſdictions, and three church-villages; and in the fifth are fourteen village-juriſdictions, and only three villages with churches. Theſe *Winkels* alſo include four conſiderable manors, namely, *Klein-Muntau*, *Leſke*, *Kaminke*, and *Calten-hof*. To this part alſo belong

The Diſtrict of *Tiegenhof*, which contains above ſix hundred and thirty-two Hides of land, in which, beſides the ſeat and town of *Weyershof*, are twenty villages: Three of the latter are inhabited by Lutherans.

The Diſtrict of *Barwald*, which is contiguous to the foregoing and contains one hundred and ninety-five Hides and fifteen acres, and five villages, two of which are church-villages, and inhabited by Lutherans.

Laſtly, the *Great Marienburg-Werder* includes the *Winkel* of *Scharpau*, which comprehends ninety-ſix Hides of land, and about fourteen villages; and alſo ſome village-juriſdictions in the territory of *Elbing*.

II. The FISCHAU-WERDER.

This *Werder* derives its name from the village of *Fiſchau* which ſtands in the centre of it; but it is at preſent known by the name of the LITTLE MARIENBURG-WERDER; and in it is the conflux of the rivers *Elbing*, *Drauſen*, and *Nogat*. The *Elbing* has its ſource in the *Drauſen*-lake; runs cloſe by the city of that name; and, after uniting with the *Pfiel* and the *Nogat*, falls into the *Friſche-haf*. Several new rivers or canals diſcharge themſelves into the *Elbing* and the *Drauſen*; and among theſe is the *Fiſchau*, over which there is a ferry near the city of *Elbing*. Part of this *Werder* is under the juriſdiction of the caſtle of *Marienburg*; and in that part are four Lutheran pariſhes. The *Pruſſian* and *Holland* Hides, as they are called, together with the Meadows or paſture-lands in this *Werder*, are computed at nine hundred and ſixty-ſix Hides and twelve acres three quarters of land. On the *Pruſſian* Hides ſtand twenty-one villages; and ſixteen on thoſe of *Holland* and the Meadows.

III. The ELBING-WERDER.

Part of this *Werder* is included in that of *Fiſchau*. The church-villages of *Furſtenau*, and *Groſs-Mauſdorf* with their dependencies, and the

village of *Jungfer* on the *Friſche-haf*; in the *Great Marienburg-Werder*; and alſo the church-villages of *Neuheyde*, *Zeyr*, with which ſeven other villages are incorporated, belong to the *Elbing-Werder*.

The Lutheran congregations in both the *Marienburg-Werders*, have ſuffered many infringements in their civil and religious liberties from the Papiſts. The number of the Lutheran miniſters amount in all to twenty-ſix. Theſe are not united into a body or ſociety, under the government of a *Senior*: but every miniſter is abſolutely independent of all the reſt; which occaſions too many irregularities. Every congregation appoints their own preacher.

The principal places in the Prefecture of *Marienburg* are,

1. *Marienburg*, a well-built town, which ſtands on an eminence near the river *Nogat*, in a pleaſant and fertile country. Oppoſite to this town is the *Werder*-ſluice, which checks the ſtream of the *Nogat*, but is detrimental to the works of the caſtle. The wooden-bridge which is here laid over the *Nogat*, and is five hundred and thirty-nine feet in length, is a very great charge and burden to the city; the fund appropriated for the building and repairing of it being far from ſufficient for that purpoſe. The caſtle was built before the town; for the former is ſaid to have been erected in 1281; whereas the latter was not built till the year 1304, on the ſpot where a village called *Czantrin* ſtood before. In this caſtle is the treaſury in which the revenues of *Poliſh Pruſſia* are kept. The ſtreets of this town are very dirty. Moſt of the inhabitants of *Marienburg* are Roman-catholics. Here, formerly, reſided the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order; and the *Pruſſian* Diets are held alternately at *Marienburg* and at *Graudenz*. In the year 1460, this town was taken by the *Poles*. In 1626 and 1655, the *Swedes* made themſelves maſters of it. In 1644, the caſtle of *Marienburg* was entirely conſumed by fire. There is but one Lutheran church in this town.

2. *Stum*, a ſmall town and caſtle, where the Diet of this Palatinate and a court of Judicature are held. It was built in the year 1249, or, according to others, in 1278. In the years 1410, 1454, and 1416, the *Poles* wreſted this town out of the hands of the *Teutonic* Knights; and in 1626 and 1656, it was taken by the *Swedes*.

3. *Stumdorf*, a village well known for the peace concluded here betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden* in 1635. It does not lie far from the foregoing town.

4. *Chriſtburg*, a conſiderable town, with an old caſtle built on an eminence in 1247. It ſtands on the river *Sirgunen*, which falls into the *Drauſen* over againſt *Elbing*. Here is held the Palatine's Caſtle-court, as it is called. This town was deſtroyed by fire in the year 1400; and the *Swedes* got poſſeſſion of it in 1626.

5. *Neuteich*, a ſmall town ſituated in the *Great Werder* on the river *Suente*. It was built in the year 1329; and ſuffered much by a fire in the year 1400, and likewiſe in the ſeveral wars, in which this country has been involved.

6. *Elbing*,

6. *Elbing*, a handſome, large city, which is fortified after the old way, and ſtands on a river of the ſame name, which has its ſource in the *Drauſen*-lake. It was built in 1239, and is a place of conſiderable trade. This city dates its firſt privilege from the year 1246, when the right of coinage was granted to it. The *Newſtadt*, or *New Town*, received its privileges in 1347. Between the *Altſtadt*, or *Old Town*, and the ſuburbs, where the ſtore-houſes of the merchants are erected, runs the river *Elbing*; and the *Old Town* is ſeparated from the *New Town* by a wall and moat. The houſes are high, narrow in front, and built in the old taſte, almoſt like thoſe at *Dantzick*. The ſtreets are alſo very narrow, occaſioned by the *Beyſchlage* or Galleries which project into them; and before theſe are placed receptacles for all the duſt and filth thrown out of the houſes. Here are ten churches in which Divine Service is performed. That of St. *Nicholas*, which is the handſomeſt and largeſt ſtructure of that kind in *Pruſſia*, was given up to the Papiſts in 1616. The Calviniſts perform Divine Service in a large hall, and the *Mennonites* in a private houſe, in this city. The *Gymnaſium*, or School belongs to the Lutherans. *Elbing* is one of the *Hanſe-towns*; and as it was inhabited by a colony from *Lubeck*, it is governed by the laws of that city; however, the Burghers have their particular rights and privileges. The caſtle, which had been built in 1237, was demoliſhed by the Burghers in the year 1454. The fortifications towards the *Werder* are very ſlight; but, on the oppoſite ſide, they are in a much better conditon: However, this town is looked upon as one of the ſtrongeſt in *Poliſh Pruſſia*. Some companies of the crown army of *Poland* are cantoned in this town; but the Burghers keep guard at the gates, and the ſuburbs have a *Pruſſian* garriſon.

Elbing, in eccleſiaſtical matters, is under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Ermeland*, as far as is conſiſtent with the difference of religion, and without prejudice to the rights and privileges of the city; but, in civil affairs, it is ſubject to the King only.

In the year 1454, the inhabitants revolted from the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, and put themſelves under the protection of *Poland*. In 1626 and 1656, they voluntarily ſurrendered the town to the *Swedes*.

In the year 1658, *Elbing*, indeed, by the convention of *Bromberg*, was promiſed as a mortgage to *Frederick William* Elector of *Brandenburg*, to be held by him as a ſecurity for the payment of 400,000 rix-dollars, and in 1660, it was confirmed to that Prince by a new inſtrument; but he never got poſſeſſion of the town: and though he remitted a fourth part of the ſum, he never received the money. That Elector's ſon, however, took it in 1698; but he reſtored it to *Poland* in the year 1700; and gave up his right to the mortgage, in conſideration of which he was promiſed 300,000 rix-dollars, and, as a ſecurity for the payment of the money, ſome jewels out of the royal treaſury were put into his hands. The town was obliged to enter into an engagement to furniſh 50,000 dollars towards

this ſum; to maintain a garriſon of 300 foot and 50 horſe under the command of an experienced officer, and, in caſe of neceſſity, to augment this number to a corps of 2000 men; never to transfer its ſovereignty without the privity of the King and Republic of *Poland*, and the States of *Pruſſia*; and to ſhew the greateſt reſpect to the Roman-catholic religion. But as the Elector did not receive the ſum ſtipulated, he took poſſeſſion of the Diſtrict belonging to this city by virtue of the above agreement.

In 1703, *Elbing* fell into the poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*, who laid it under contribution; but the *Ruſſians* took it from them by ſtorm in 1710. This town is likewiſe called *Urbs Druſiana* from its vicinity to the *Drauſen*-lake; and is the ſecond of the three *Pruſſian* Great Cities.

IV. *ERMELAND.*

In Latin *Varmia*, or *Epiſcopatus Varmienſis.*

THIS Province is entirely ſurrounded by *Brandenburg-Pruſſia* *, and belongs to no Palatinate; but is entirely ſubject to the Biſhop and Chapter; ſo that neither the Nobility nor the other inhabitants of *Ermeland* can appeal to any other judicature. I have given ſome account of the Biſhop of *Ermeland* above in p. 627, §. 3. Two thirds of this Province belong to the Biſhop, and the remaining third part to the Chapter. Their ſubjects have recourſe to the ſame Courts of Judicature as the reſt of the *Pruſſians*; however, they have particular laws among them which are ſtiled *Landes-Ordnungen*. They have alſo a Provincial Diet in common, to which the Nobility, the Burghers, and country Judges, together with the freemen (who being under no vaſſalage, are in ſome meaſure of a middle rank between the Nobility and the peaſants) are ſummoned. The *Ermelanders* do not aſſiſt at the *Pruſſian* Diets; but the Biſhop is always preſent there, and propoſes whatever is deliberated and determined concerning his dioceſe; particularly in relation to the taxes, according as they have been previouſly agreed upon in a provincial meeting held for that purpoſe, where the *Ermelanders* ſeldom diſſent from their Biſhop and the *Pruſſian* States.

The towns and other remarkable places in *Ermeland* are the following.

1. *Frauenburg*, a town of a moderate extent on the *Friſche-haf*. It was founded in the year 1279; and is governed by the *Lubeck* law. This town is the ſeat of the Chapter. The Cathedral ſtands on an eminence: The celebrated mathematician *Nicholas Copernicus* was a canon of it, and died at *Frauenburg* on the twenty-fourth of *May* 1543.

2. *Braunſberg*, a pretty large and good trading town, ſituated on the *Paſſarge*, which, at a little diſtance from hence, diſcharges itſelf into the

* This is alſo called *Ducal Pruſſia*, and belongs to his *Pruſſian* Majeſty.

bay

bay called *Friſche-haf*. It was built in the year 1255, and derives its name from *Bruno* Biſhop of *Prague*. *Braunſberg* is divided into the *Old* and the *New Town*, and is very populous: the inhabitants uſe the *Lubeck* law. The celebrated Jeſuits college in this town was formerly a *Franciſcan* convent, which was founded by the learned and famous Cardinal *Staniſlaus Hoſius*, who was Biſhop of *Ermeland*, and from his name called *Hoſianum*. There is alſo a nunnery in this town. In the year 1260, the cathedral of *Ermeland* was endowed with ſixteen prebends, for as many prebendaries or canons.

In 1461, the inhabitants expelled the *Poliſh* garriſon out of the city, and afforded an *Aſſylum* to the Biſhop of *Ermeland*, who had declared for the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. In 1637, King *Uladiſlaus*, by a public inſtrument, created the firſt *Patricians* of this city. *Braunsberg* was formerly one of the *Pruſſian* Great Cities, as they are called, and ſent repreſentatives to the Senate or Council of State; but is now under the juriſdiction of the Biſhop.

3. *Tolkemit*, or *Tolmit*, a little town on the *Friſche-haf*, which was built in 1365. It was conſumed by fire in 1456, and has ſince undergone many other calamities.

4. *Melſack*, a ſmall town and caſtle on the river *Walſche*, which runs into the *Paſſarge*.

5. *Warmſtadt*, or *Wormit*, a town and caſtle on the *Paſſarge*. It was built in the year 1316.

6. *Heilsberg*, a beautiful town on the *Alle*, in which ſtands an elegant ſeat belonging to the Biſhop of *Ermeland*. This town is ſaid to have been built in 1240, and was deſtroyed by fire in the year 1521. *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden* had his head quarters here in 1703. There is a college of Jeſuits in this town.

7. *Keſſel*, an elegant little town with a caſtle. It is well ſupplied with proviſions, and carries on a good trade. Here is a college of Jeſuits, to which the church of the Holy Linden-tree in *Brandenburg Pruſſia* belongs.

8. *Biſchofſtein*, or *Biſtein*, a ſmall town, which was built in the year 1325, taken by the *Teutonic* Knights in 1455, and deſtroyed by fire in 1589.

9. St. *Mary in the Wilderneſs*, which lies between *Heilsberg* and *Biſtein*, is reckoned a ſacred place, and much frequented by pilgrims.

10. *Seeburg*, a ſmall town of litte note.

11. *Wartenburg*, a little town with a caſtle on the river *Piſſe*, which was built in 1325. In the year 1455, the inhabitants ſurrendered this town to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; and in 1494 it was conſumed by fire.

12. *Gutſtadt*, a ſmall town, which ſtands on the river *Alle*. It was built in the year 1325, and has been ſince conſiderably enlarged.

13. *Allerſtein*, called in the *Poliſh* language *Olſtineck*, is a ſmall town with a caſtle on the ſame river. It was built in 1367; and belongs to the Chapter of *Ermeland* who keep a *Landvogt* here.

14. *Biſchburg*, or *Biſchofsburg*, a little town which has ſeveral times been deſtroyed by fire.

The

THE DUTCHY OF COURLAND,

In Latin *Curlandia*, or *Curonia*.

§. 1. M. *Barnikel*, chief architect of *Courland*, has favoured the Public with a map of this Dutchy, which is drawn with tolerable accuracy, and was engraven on two ſheets at *Nurenberg* by *Homan*'s heirs.

§. 2. The word *Courland*, or as this Dutchy is called in the language of the country, *Kur*, or *Cur-Semme*, is of the ſame import with *Juhr-Semme*, and ſignifies a maritime country, or a tract of land that projects into the ſea. *Courland* is bounded on the Weſt by the *Baltic*, and on the North by the gulf of *Riga* and *Livonia:* It borders on *Lithuania*, properly ſo called, towards the Eaſt, and on *Samogitia* towards the South. It extends fifty *German* miles in length, and the breadth is in ſome places twenty, in others hardly ten *German* miles; and towards the South-weſt it gradually terminates in a cape, or point of land.

§. 3. The ſoil, *Golding*, *Windaw*, *Alſchwang*, and ſome other Diſtricts excepted, is heavy, fat, and claiey, and the country abounds with woods and ſwamps: Hence the *Courland* roads are remarkably bad. In ſpring and autumn the meadows and low grounds are under water; but this ſerves to improve the land. Some ſkilful farmers have drained ſeveral of the fenny or ſwampy parts of *Courland*, by means of dikes or canals, and converted them into what they call *Staungen*. Theſe *Staungen* are ſown three years ſucceſſively with ſummer ſeeds; and then they are left

left uncultivated for the like term, being laid under water, and ſtocked with fiſh.

Courland, however, contains good arable land, fine paſtures, and produces great quantities of excellent flax. Here is alſo plenty of ſea-fiſh; and the woods abound with bears, wolves, and elks. Amber is found here on the coaſt of the *Baltic*; and *Courland* has its mines of iron-ore and minerals, its quarries of ſtone, chalk, and ſtucco, and its mineral ſprings.

The principal rivers in this country are,

The *Windau*, in Latin *Veta*, which riſes in *Samogitia*, and empties itſelf into the *Baltic* near the town of *Windau*.

The *Aa*, which alſo has its ſource in *Samogitia*, and falls into the gulf of *Riga*.

The ſmaller rivers are,

The *Abau*.

The *Berſe*.

The *Bartau*.

The *Muſſa*,

The *Anger*, &c.

§. 4. The inhabitants of this country are compoſed of *Germans* and *Lettonians*. The latter are not only vaſſals and tenants to the former; but are, in a manner, ſlaves to them. There are two languages uſually ſpoken in *Courland*, *viz.* the *German* and the *Lettonian*. The Reformation or Lutheran religion took place in this Dutchy in the year 1522; and in 1532, *Courland* joined with *Riga* in a particular religious league; ſo that when this country fell under the dominion of *Poland*, the inhabitants were altogether Lutherans, without any Papiſts among them. But the ſubſequent miſunderſtandings between the Dukes and the Nobleſſe of *Courland* having occaſioned ſeveral orders to be iſſued by the court of *Poland*, and Judiciary Commiſſions to be deputed from that crown, a fatal gap was opened for Popery. The Roman-catholics were, at firſt, only permitted to have churches in this country; but they ſoon raiſed themſelves to a level with the Lutherans. In 1717, and 1727, the Papiſts of *Courland* received ſome additional privileges. Several of the *Courlandiſh* Nobility, who had embraced the Popiſh religion, ſignally exerted their zeal to introduce it into the churches within their reſpective juriſdictions; which greatly contributed to the ſpreading of that ſuperſtition. The marriages of the Dukes of *Courland* with Princeſſes who were Calviniſts, alſo introduced that religion into the Dutchy; however, the Calviniſts are excluded from all public employments in this country.

§. 5. The Nobility of *Courland* have great privileges and immunities; and the *old* Nobility are carefully diſtinguiſhed from the *new*: but when *Ritterbanke* or aſſemblies of the Nobles were held in 1620, 1631, and

1634, many of the new families, who are not entered in the regiſters of the *Ritterbanke*, aſſiſted at thoſe meetings. However, by an ancient law which has been frequently confirmed, the old Nobility alone are capable of filling the poſts of honour. The Noblemen in this country generally embrace a military life. A Noble *Courlander* enjoys in *Poland* the ſame rights and privileges as a native, and a *Poliſh* Nobleman has the ſame indulgence in *Courland*. However, neither of them enjoy that privilege, until they are fixed and ſettled in thoſe countries: and, indeed, at preſent a *Courlandiſh* Nobleman very ſeldom holds any eminent poſt in *Poland*, thoſe of the law excepted, unleſs he be a Papiſt. The Nobility of *Courland* have no ſeat in the general Diet of *Poland*.

A Nobleman in this country is by law proprietor of whatever mines are diſcovered on his eſtate; and if it be near the ſea, he has alſo the privilege of *Jetſon*. By an ordinance paſſed in the year 1588, a Nobleman's houſe both in town and country is an *aſylum*, from which no perſon can be forcibly taken; and by an Ordinance of the year 1454, a noble *Courlander* is not to be taken into cuſtody, or his effects confiſcated, till he has been previouſly ſummoned, and legally convicted before a Court of Judicature. By other ordinances paſſed in 1569, 1576, 1587, 1588, and 1650, their tenants, vaſſals, and domeſtics, are exempt from paying any toll, cuſtom, or exciſe, for any goods, *&c.* that belong to them; and no ſoldiers are to be quartered on their eſtates. By an Act of *Ritterbanke* in 1634, and an Ordinance of the year 1676, no new-created noble family, till the third generation, is qualified to hold a poſt of honour, or to be a magiſtrate; nor can he be ſent as an Envoy, unleſs he has diſtinguiſhed himſelf in the ſervice of his country, or is recommended by ſome of the ancient noble families.

Among other privileges, the Nobility here have an unlimited power over their vaſſals, which extends even to life and death; but before they can puniſh a vaſſal with death, they are obliged to hold a regular court under a penalty of one hundred florins *. Hence the reſpect the peaſants ſhew their Lords riſes almoſt to adoration; and whatever property theſe arbitrary Lords require, the wretched vaſſals are obliged to give up, and immediately obey their commands without making any remonſtrances. The Nobility of *Courland* are all on a level, and have, in conjunction with the Duke, the patronage of the pariſh-churches, but the Duke alone is patron of ſome, and the Nobility of other churches. In theſe pariſhes, at the deſire of the Nobility, the Superintendant, aſſiſted by ſome Provoſts, ordains and collates the new incumbents.

The noble *Courlanders* may hunt wherever they pleaſe; and in war time, or when the Union with the Republic of *Poland* requires it, they

* A *Poliſh* florin is equal to 1*s.* 2*d.* ſterling.

appear

appear on horſeback according to the compact, and the ſervice they owe to the Duke as vaſſals. But when ſuch a general military appearance is required, the Duke in perſon is obliged to march at the head of them. They indeed chooſe their own colonels and other officers; but theſe are all under the Duke's command: Nor are they obliged to march beyond the frontiers of *Courland*, unleſs the Duke, out of regard to the King and Republic of *Poland*, voluntarily agrees to paſs beyond the boundaries.

They pay a great reſpect to their Duke; but in order to keep up a due harmony between the Duke and the Nobles, the former muſt carefully avoid giving the leaſt ſuſpicion to the latter of any deſign on their privileges, of which they are extremely jealous.

§. 6. *Courland* formerly belonged to *Livonia*, and, till the thirteenth century, underwent the ſame viciſſitudes with that country; both being maſtered by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who were in poſſeſſion of them till the year 1561. About that time the *Ruſſians* invaded the country; and as the Order was then much declined from its former power and greatneſs, *Gothard Ketler*, the laſt Great Maſter, yielded up *Livonia* to the King of *Poland*, as Great Duke of *Lithuania*. In return for this ceſſion, *Courland* and *Semgallia* were erected into a temporal Dutchy; and *Ketler* was inveſted with it as an hereditary fief in 1561. Such was the origin of the Dutchy of *Courland*; and the new Duke being under the protection of the Kingdom of *Poland*, as united with *Lithuania*, introduced and eſtabliſhed the reformed religion in his Dutchy.

In the beginning of the eighteenth century, under *Frederick William* the ſixth Duke, *Courland* was harraſſed both by the *Swedes* and *Ruſſians*. But in 1710, that Prince married *Anne* a Princeſs of *Ruſſia*; who, after his diſeaſe, which happened in 1711, remained in poſſeſſion of the ſovereignty under the protection of her uncle Czaar *Peter* I. though *Ferdinand*, brother to the late Duke's father, to whom the ſucceſſion belonged, was ſtill living.

The Nobility and *Ferdinand* were, indeed, at variance, not ſo much on account of his changing his religion; but becauſe he generally lived out of the Dutchy, and was for holding the reins of ſovereignty though abſent; and on account of his forcible ejectment of the mortgagees out of the ducal eſtates. This diſpute brought a *Poliſh* Commiſſion into *Courland* in 1717; and a marriage was propoſed between *Anne*, the Dutcheſs Dowager, and Duke *John Adolphus* of *Weiſſenfels*, but to as little purpoſe as another propoſal of marriage with the Margrave of *Brandenburg Schwed.* This put the *Poliſh* States on deviſing the means of incorporating *Courland* with the Kingdom of *Poland* on the demiſe of Duke *Ferdinand*, and of dividing it into Palatinates. This project raiſed ſuch apprehenſions for their religion and liberties in the States of *Courland*, that, notwithſtanding a royal inhibition which was iſſued out, they held an extraordinary Diet

at *Mittau*, about the latter end of *June* 1726, in which the ſucceſſion, on the deceaſe of *Ferdinand*, was ſettled on Count *Maurice* of *Saxony*, as natural ſon to the King of *Poland*, and his male heirs. This election was not only oppoſed by Duke *Ferdinand*; but the *Poles*, in a Diet held at *Grodno* in 1727, voted it null and void; and by a new law confirmed the intended union of this country with *Poland* at the death of *Ferdinand*. Againſt this incroachment on their liberties, the *Courland* patriots ſtrenuouſly proteſted, and maintained, 'That the States of the Dutchy derived from 'their anceſtors the right of electing their Duke; and that they had not 'forfeited that right, notwithſtanding all the attempts of the Diet.' They appealed to the compact of ſubjection, wherein it was acknowleged and declared, that *Courland* ſhould for ever be accounted a mediate *German* Government, and conſequently was impowered in a caſe of neceſſity to elect its own Duke.

But to proceed in our hiſtory of *Courland*. *Anne Iwanowna*, having, on the demiſe of *Peter* II. in 1730, aſcended the throne of *Ruſſia*, Duke *Ferdinand*, who was then in the ſeventy-fifth year of his age, married *Johanna Magdalena* princeſs of *Saxe-Weiſſenfels*; and this Prince is ſtill living. *Ferdinand*, in the perſon of his envoy *Frederick Gothard von Bulow*, received the uſual inveſtiture from the King of *Poland* at *Warſaw* in 1731: But, being unwilling to truſt himſelf in a country which he knew to be irritated againſt him, he never took actual poſſeſſion of *Courland*. In the mean time, on the death of *Auguſtus* II. King of *Poland*, the Czarina *Anne* ordered her troops to march into *Courland*, which ſhe looked upon as very convenient for erecting a place of arms and forming part of the magazines. That Princeſs had before, in the year 1732, ſignified to the Court of *Poland*, that ſhe could never conſent to the abſolute incorporation of the Dutchy with that kingdom; but would protect it in its rights to remain as a fief of the Republic under its own Dukes. The Republic of *Poland*, at length, conformed to this propoſal, and in the Pacification Diet held at *Warſaw* in 1736, it was decreed that, on the failure of the *Ketler* line in Duke *Ferdinand*, the Dutchy of *Courland* ſhould have its own Dukes by the free election of the States.

In the following year, on the deceaſe of *Ferdinand*, the States, at the recommendation of the Empreſs of *Ruſſia*, choſe for their Duke *John Erneſt Biron*, Count of the Holy Roman Empire, and High Chamberlain to her Czariſh Majeſty, whoſe election was accordingly confirmed in 1737, in a *Senatûs Conſilium* at *Frauenſtadt*; and this was followed in 1739 by the uſual inveſtiture of the new Duke in the perſon of his Envoy or repreſentative. But this Prince's dignity was but of a ſhort continuance; for the Czarina *Anne*, in 1740, cauſed him and all his family to be taken into cuſtody, and ſent them into exile in 1741. He is ſtill living at *Iaroſlaw*, where he reſides in a ſmall ſtone houſe conſiſting of three rooms, with a wooden houſe adjoining

joining to it for his lady and two ſons. He is allowed to hunt within thirty *werſts* of *Iaroſlaw*, and very frequently makes uſe of that indulgence. He has alſo a *German* domeſtic chaplain, who is paid by the Crown. He openly correſponds with ſome of his few friends; and the Regency of *Mittau* every year ſend him a congratulating letter, which he anſwers in the ſtile of Duke, and affixes the ſeal of the Dutchy to it.

In 1741, the States of *Courland* choſe for their Duke *Lewis Erneſt* Duke of *Brunſwic Wolfenbuttle*, brother to the Regent of *Ruſſia*'s huſband; but as this election was not compaſſed without force, it has not yet taken its proper effect.

§. 7. The preſent ſtate of *Courland* is very much confuſed and perplexed. The Burghers and Peaſants in general are extremely oppreſſed; but the greateſt part of the Nobility are in very flouriſhing circumſtances. The latter reap vaſt emoluments by farming the Ducal lands and manors at a very low rate; and conſequently are ſo far from having the Duke's releaſment at heart, that it is greatly for their intereſt that this confuſion, under the falſe pretence of the vacancy of the ducal chair, ſhould continue: The ſelfiſh *Majoriſts*, or the *Great Party*, as they are called, have, together with their chief, hitherto fomented the diſtractions of the ſtate, virulently inveighed againſt the Supreme Council and Burghers of the towns, and ſo far embroiled the inhabitants that the real good of the country was no longer thought of. The King of *Poland* has, indeed from time to time, endeavoured to aſſwage theſe diſſentions, by letters written in the moſt perſuaſive and preſſing manner, nor have the High Council and the honeſt part of the Nobility been wanting in ſeconding his Majeſty's exhortations; but the oppoſite party by violent and illegal meaſures have always fruſtrated their good intentions. At length, two ſevere royal reſcripts were ſent hither in the year 1752, in which the King of *Poland* threatened them, in caſe of any further oppoſition, with a judicial enquiry, and conſequently with a *Poliſh* commiſſion. This ſo far humbled the *Majoriſts*, that in a Diet held in the month of *July* * they readily united with the High-Council and the other part of the Nobility. But it is apprehended, that as this union is the effect of fear, it will hardly reconcile the jarring tempers and inclinations of the two parties; and on the very firſt opportunity, the former animoſities will probably revive.

The court of *Ruſſia* keeps in this country 6000 men, and a plenipotentiary who reſides at *Mittau*; but his only employment is to care take of the revenues. During the baniſhment of Duke *Erneſt John*, that court lays claim to the Ducal revenues, and thoſe lands which the ſaid Duke had either purchaſed, or redeemed from the Nobles, to whom they had been mortgaged; alledging, that all this was done by imbezzelments of monies belonging to that Crown, and accordingly near 100,000 rixdollars ariſing from

* In the year 1752, I ſuppoſe.

the farms are paid every year out of the Ducal revenues into the hands of this *Ruſſian* Miniſter. Another demand the court of *Ruſſia* makes on *Courland*, is for the dowery of Princeſs *Anne*, and the jointure of 40,000 rubels ſettled on her by her deceaſed huſband. Nor will its vicinity to *Ruſſia* permit the Czarina to be indifferent with regard to the election of a Duke of *Courland*.

Theſe, and other circumſtances, obſtruct the election of a new Duke, which indeed would be otherwiſe invalid; as *Erneſt John* does not ceaſe to be Duke, though, by his exile, he be deprived of the exerciſe of his power. Be this as it will, the Ducal chair having been declared vacant by the High-Council, all public inſtruments are iſſued out in the name of the King of *Poland*, who at preſent perſonates the Duke, and are ſigned by the four lords of the Regency; and theſe Regents, by virtue of the inſtrument of government, have the diſpoſal of public employments.

§. 8. The arms of *Courland* are quarterly, the firſt and fourth *Argent*, a lion *Gules*, crowned *Or*, for *Courland*; the ſecond and third *Azure*, a demi-elk crowned proper, for *Semigallia*. In the centre is a ſmall eſcutcheon *party per pale* which is reſerved for the particular coat of the Ducal family. The arms are within a Ducal mantle of purple and ermine, and ſupported by two lions crowned *Or*; and the whole is ſurmounted with a Ducal coronet.

§. 9. The revenues of the Duke of *Courland* are ſaid to be very conſiderable, and the Ducal demeſnes make above a third part of the whole country: If to theſe we add the convenient ſituation of the country for a maritime trade, the Duke of *Courland* cannot fail of being very rich if he is a good oeconomiſt. We may form ſome judgment of the wealth of this Dutchy if we conſider, that *James* Duke of *Courland* was maſter of forty-four ſhips of war and ſeventy-five merchant-ſhips; and endeavoured to ſettle colonies in other parts of the world, eſpecially in *America*, at a vaſt expence.

In war time, when this country was oppreſſed by the exactions of foreigners, the Ducal houſe has always furniſhed one third of the contributions: But the Nobility have been ſo far from thinking this ſufficient for his quota, that they propoſed to appoint a court of enquiry to inſpect into the affair, and called it by the name of *Haaken-Reviſion*. However, the Dukes have always found means to ſet aſide ſuch an inquiſition.

§. 10. By virtue of the inſtrument, or form, of Government for the Dutchies of *Courland* and *Semigallia*, which was drawn up in 1670 by a commiſſion from the King of *Poland*, the following officers of State are appointed in *Courland*.

1. Four High-Counſellors, namely, a Steward, a Chancellor, a Burggrave, and a Marſhal.

2. Two

2. Two Civilians, or Doctors, as they are called; and these are the Duke's Council. The High Council, during the absence, minority, or sickness, and upon the demise of the Duke, administer justice, issue orders, pass decrees, and transact all other State-affairs in his name.

3. Four Superior Prefects; namely, two for *Semigallia*, who reside at *Mittau* and *Seelburg*, and two for *Courland*, at *Goldingen* and *Tuckum*. These adminster justice in the *first Instance* both to the Nobles and Commonalty within their respective jurisdictions. From these the vacancies in the High Council are filled up; and under each of them are two inferior Prefects, who, upon occasion, are promoted by the Duke to the office of Superior Prefects. From the court of the latter appeals lie to the Ducal Supreme court, where the Duke assists in person together with the High Council. This is held twice a year, and from it, in causes amounting to above six hundred Florins, an appeal lies to the King of *Poland*.

The criminal causes of the Nobility are decided in the Ducal Supreme Court to which the four superior Prefects are summoned as Assessors. However an appeal lies to the King, except in cases of wilful murder, burning of houses, robbery, rapes, or open violence. Ecclesiastical causes are tried by the Chancellor, assisted by the Superintendent and four Provosts. If any disputes happen to arise between the Duke and Nobility, they are decided only by the King in person. The administration of justice in the towns belongs either to the magistrate, or the Prefect of the District in which the Defendant lives, according to the nature of the cause; and the second and last *Instance*, or hearing, is at the Ducal Court. Suits relating to debts are heard by officers called *Executoriales*.

Every two years a Diet is held at *Mittau*, to which every parish sends a representative with full powers.

§. 11. This Dutchy consists of three Parts or Divisions, namely, *Courland* properly so called, *Semigallia*, and the District of *Pilten*. The last has a particular form of government; but the two first Parts are divided into *Ober-hauptmannschaften* or Prefectures; and these into certain Circles, or Districts, called *Kirchspiele* or Parishes. There are *Great* and *Little Towns*, large and small Seats; and likewise castles, farm houses, inns, and single houses of accommodation in this country: But, as for such villages as are seen in *Germany* and other countries, here are none. The number of towns, castles, seats, *&c.* is about nine hundred. We shall now proceed to describe the above-mentioned Divisions.

COURLAND, properly ſo called.

THIS is the firſt Diviſion and includes,

I. The Prefecture of GOLDINGEN, which conſiſts of nine pariſhes; and theſe are as follows.

1. The Pariſh of *Goldingen*, in which the places of note are,

Goldingen, a ſmall town with an old caſtle on the river *Windau*, which forms a water-fall in this place. It was formerly a town of good trade; and as the Dukes ſometimes reſide here, it is a place of good entertainment. There is a Lutheran and a *Poliſh* church in this town. It was built by *Diterich* of *Groningen*, third Grand Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order. Here is a Ducal manor.

Eden, an iron-work, with a copper flatting-mill.

2. The Pariſh of *Windau*. In this pariſh lies

The town of *Windau*, on a river of the ſame name, which here falls into the *Baltic*. It is of a moderate extent, and has a good harbour; here was formerly alſo a dock for building men of war. This town was for ſometime the reſidence of the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonic* Order; and the Diets and other public aſſemblies were held here.

Rohthof is a Ducal manor in this pariſh.

3. The Pariſh of *Alſchwang*, in which is *Alſchwangen* a caſtle with a town near it.

4. The Pariſh of *Haſenpoth*, in which lies,

Haſenpoth, a market-town, with an old caſtle which ſtands on a hill, oppoſite to another caſtle of the ſame name in the Diſtrict of *Pilten*.

5. The Pariſh of *Durben*, in which are the following places of note.

Durben, a ſmall mean town with an old caſtle and a church.

Libau, a Ducal city, and a port of good trade on the *Baltic*, which is of a middling bigneſs, and conſiſts entirely of wooden houſes but one ſtory high. It was built by the *Lettonians*; and is ſaid to derive its name from the *Lettonian* word *Leepaja*, i. e. a piece of ground planted with linden trees; for a great number of thoſe trees formerly grew here: and, to this day, the *Lettonians* call the town *Leepaja*. So early as the thirteenth century, there were ſome *Germans* among the inhabitants of this town; and at the cloſe of the fifteenth, and the beginning of the ſixteenth century, it greatly flouriſhed, when a great number of *Germans* reſorted hither; and it obtained the privileges of a city in 1625. The old Lutheran city-church falling to decay in 1742, a foundation was laid in another place for the new-church, which is built in the modern *Italian* taſte with a flat roof and a baluſtrade. The town ſchool conſiſts of three claſſes, and has a maſter for writing and

arithmetic. The Papiſts are alſo allowed a church at *Libau*. As the harbour has not a ſufficient depth of water for ſhips of burden, they are unloaded in the road; but ſince Duke *Erneſt John*, in 1737, cauſed it to be cleared, and the future accumulation of mud and ſand to be prevented by a water-work, it is rendered very commodious for light veſſels. Above one hundred and fifty ſhips uſually arrive in this port in a twelve-month, to load with hemp, lin-ſeed, *&c.* A *Strandvogtey* or court of admiralty is held here. Near the town is a freſh water-lake which derives its name from it.

6. The Pariſh of *Gramſden*. In this pariſh the only place of note is *Gramſden* church, of which the Nobility are the patrons.

7. The Pariſh of *Grobin*, in which lies

Grobin, a ſmall town, with a caſtle.

The place called *Heiligen Aa*, or *Holy Aa*, with a church and Court of Admiralty, lies on a river of the ſame name, which is alſo the boundary betwixt *Courland* and *Samogitia*.

8. The Pariſh of *Schrunden*, in which lies

Schrunden, with a ruinous caſtle and a church.

9. The Pariſh of *Frauenburg*. In this Pariſh lies

Frauenburg, which has a decayed caſtle and a church, and is a Ducal manor.

Note. To this Prefecture belong two eccleſiaſtical Provoſtſhips, *viz.*

Golding, containing twelve churches of which the Duke is patron, and nine in the gift of the Nobility; and

Grubin, which contains ſeven churches of which the Duke is patron, and nine belonging to the Nobility.

II. The Prefecture of TUCKUM, containing the following pariſhes.

1. The Pariſh of *Tuckum*, in which lies a ſmall town of the ſame name, with a ruinous caſtle.

2. The Pariſh of *Candau*, which contains

Candau, a ſmall town on the river *Abau*, with a ruined caſtle and a Ducal manor.

Angern, a ſmall place with a church and iron-works.

3. The Pariſh of *Zobeln*, in which lies

Zobeln on the river *Abau*, with ſome remains of a caſtle.

4. The Pariſh of *Talſen*, in which lies

Talſen, with a church.

5. The Pariſh of *Autzi*.

Note. To this Prefecture belongs the Provoſtſhip of *Candau*, which has eccleſiaſtical juriſdiction over nine Ducal churches, and fourteen in the gift of the Nobility.

SEMI-

SEMIGALLIA or SEMGALLEN.

THIS is the ſecond principal Diviſion, and includes the following Prefectures.

I. The Prefecture of MITTAU, conſiſting of nine Pariſhes; and theſe are,

1. The Pariſh of *Mittau*, in which lies

Mittau, in Latin *Mitovia*, the capital of *Courland* and reſidence of the Duke. It ſtands on the river *Aa*, and is an extenſive town, but within its circuit contains a great many gardens and open places or areas. The houſes, for the moſt part, have no particular elegance to attract the eye; and the walls and moats of the town are decayed: However, it is pretty well inhabited. Here are two Lutheran churches, a beautiful Calviniſtical church, compleated in the year 1740, and a Popiſh church. This city is alſo the ſeat of the Regency and Superintendant of both Dutchies. The town-ſchool, though it is the principal in the whole country, is at preſent far from being in a flouriſhing condition.

Juſt without the city ſtands a palace begun by the unfortunate Duke *Erneſt John*; but of this edifice only the façade of one wing is compleated, the reſt is hardly carried up as high as the roof. It is built in a moſt delightful ſituation, on the ſame ſpot where the old caſtle ſtood, and is two ſtories high. This palace, according to the plan of it, would probably have been one of the moſt magnificent ſtructures in all *Europe*, had not the building of it been interrupted by the diſgrace and exile of its unhappy founder. It is, at preſent, a deſolate place, and is gradually falling to decay. The cielings and floors of ſome of the apartments were of a moſt exquiſite workmanſhip; but theſe have been taken away, and the rooms converted into granaries. There is a handſome vault under one wing of this building, in which the remains of the deceaſed Dukes are depoſited. Moſt of them lie in coffins of fine pewter, curiouſly decorated; and among theſe Princes lies a peaſant alſo in a pewter coffin, as a recompence for his heroic fidelity in voluntarily ſuffering himſelf to be ſhot inſtead of Duke *Ferdinand* by ſome noblemen, who had conſpired againſt the life of that Prince.

Annenburg, a town with a caſtle, lies alſo in this Pariſh.

2. The Pariſh of *Ekau*. The principal place in this Pariſh is

Ekau, which ſtands on a river of the ſame name, and has a church.

3. The Pariſh of *Baldonen*, in which lies

Baldonen, a church-town.

4. The Pariſh of *Neugut*, in which lies

Neugut, a ſmall town with a church.

5. The Pariſh of *Seſſau*, in which the only place of note is

Seſſau, which ſtands on a river of the ſame name, and has a church.

6. The

6. The Pariſh of *Bauſke*, in which lies

Bauſke, betwixt the rivers *Maus* and *Mummel*. It has a caſtle built on a rock, which is called *Bauskenburg*, and a Ducal manor.

Near *Great* and *Little Barbern* is a ſpring of mineral water.

7. The Pariſh of *Greuſhof*, in which the principal place is

Grenſhof, which has a church.

8. The Pariſh of *Doblehn*. The principal place in this pariſh is

Doblehn, an old caſtle, with a Ducal manor and a church.

9. The Pariſh of *Neuenburg*, in which lies

Neuenburg, a caſtle, with a church of which the Nobility are the patrons.

Note. To this Prefecture belong three Provoſtſhips; namely, that of *Mittau*, containing eight churches of which the Duke is Patron, and one in the gift of the Nobility; that of *Bauſke* with eleven *Ducal* and five *Noble* churches; and the Provoſtſhip of *Doblehn* with nine churches in the gift of the Duke; and fifteen of which the Nobility are patrons.

II. The Prefecture of SEELBURG, which includes the four following pariſhes.

1. The Pariſh of *Aſcheraden*, in which lies

Aſcheraden, an old palace on the river *Dwina*.

2. The Pariſh of *Seelburg*, in which the only place of note is

Seelburg, a ſmall town and caſtle on the river *Dwina*, where the Biſhops of *Semigallia* formerly reſided: Hence they were ſtiled Biſhops of *Seelburg*. It appears from an ancient inſtrument dated in the year 1245, that when the Arbiſhoprick of *Riga* was founded, all *Semigallia*, except the third part which belonged to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, was aſſigned to the ſaid Archbiſhoprick; and that the biſhopric of *Semigallia* or *Seelburg* was aboliſhed.

3. The Pariſh of *Nerften*, in which are,

The caſtle and church of *Nerften*. The Nobility are patrons of the latter.

4. The Pariſh of *Dunaburg*, in which lies

Danaburg, a caſtle on the river *Dwina*.

Note. To the Provoſtſhip of *Seelburg* belong ten churches in the gift of the Duke, and twenty-three in that of the Nobility.

The DISTRICT of *PILTEN.*

THIS is the third diviſion, which was anciently called the Dioceſe of *Courland*, and lies in *Courland* properly ſo called. It derives its name from the ancient caſtle or palace of *Pilten*, built by *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, about the year 1220, when he founded a Biſhop's See in this country for the more effectual converſion of its Pagan inhabitants. For when that Prince aſked the Biſhop, whoſe reſidence it was deſigned to be, Where the palace ſhould ſtand? the latter made anſwer, 'Where '*Pilten*, i. e. the boy, ſtands;' and this name was given to the palace.

The dioceſe of *Pilten*, ſome years after, together with all *Courland* fell into the hands of the *Germans*, who continued in poſſeſſion of it till the year 1559; when the laſt Biſhop, from a dread of the incurſions of the *Ruſſians*, ſold both the dioceſes of *Pilten* and *Oeſel* to *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*. That Monarch exchanged *Pilten* and *Oeſel* with his brother *Magnus* for his ſhare of *Holſtein*; who took poſſeſſion of it in 1560, ſecularized the biſhoprick, and diſtributed very conſiderable parcels of its lands to his friends and followers. *Gothard Ketler*, having in the following year rendered *Livonia* ſubject to the crown of *Poland*, it was agreed that Duke *Magnus*, inſtead of the dioceſe of *Courland*, ſhould have the caſtle of *Sonneburg* in *Oeſel*; but that the former ſhould be reſigned to *Ketler*, the new Duke. However, at the demiſe of Duke *Magnus*, which happened in the year 1583, the inhabitants of the Diſtrict of *Pilten*, inſtead of ſubmitting again to the Duke of *Courland*, or the King of *Poland*, put themſelves under the protection of *Denmark*.

Theſe conteſts at laſt ſubſided; and matters were adjuſted by *Poland*'s buying off the claim of King *Frederick* II. to this country, for 30,000 rix-dollars. This ſum was advanced by *George Frederick*, Duke of *Pruſſia* and Margrave of *Brandenburg*, to whom this country was mortgaged by *Poland* in 1585. The inhabitants, at the ſame time, were allowed the free exerciſe of the Evangelical or Lutheran religion. In 1617, *Herman Maydel*, a *Courlandiſh* Nobleman, paid off the mortgage; and *Pilten* was granted to him by the King of *Poland*, with the title of a *Staroſta*. In 1556, Duke *Jacob* redeemed it from *Maydel*, and in the ſame year purchaſed it alſo of the *Swedes*, who had poſſeſſed themſelves of this Diſtrict. Upon this, the Nobility of *Pilten* acknowledged him for their Lord, but ſoon after revolted, and continued refractory till the year 1661; when, at the convention of *Grobin* concluded on the twenty-fifth of *February* in that year, they again ſubmitted upon very advantageous conditions to *Frederick Caſimir*. The completion of this agreement was a work of twenty years. By this compact the Diſtrict of *Pilten* had a particular Pre-

fect appointed for it, who reſided at *Haſenpoth*; and under him are ſix Counſellors and the Under-Prefect of *Neuhauſen*. By virtue of the Inſtrument of Regency drawn up for this Diſtrict in the year 1717, the Government is lodged in ſeven *Poliſh* Senators or Counſellors, from whom an appeal lies only to the King. The Biſhop of *Samogitia* ſtiles himſelf alſo Biſhop of *Pilten*.

This Diſtrict includes the ſeven following Pariſhes.

1. The Pariſh of HASENPOTH, in which are,

Haſenpoth, a ſmall town with a ruinous caſtle, a convent, and a ducal manor.

2. The Pariſh of NEUHAUSEN.

3. The Pariſh of SACKENHAUSEN, in which ſtands a caſtle of the ſame name.

4. The Pariſh of AMBOTEN, in which ſtands

Amboten, a caſtle built on a mountain.

5. The Pariſh of PILTEN, in which are,

Pilten, a ſmall town on the river *Windau*. It has a caſtle, and is a *Staroſtey*.

Angermund, which has an old decayed caſtle.

6. The Pariſh of DONDANGEN, in which are the following remarkable places.

Dondangen, a caſtle, the revenues of which were formerly aſſigned for the Archbiſhop of *Riga*'s table. It was afterwards purchaſed by one of the Biſhops of *Pilten*. In the year 1561, it came into the hands of *Magnus* Duke of *Holſtein*, who mortgaged it together with ſeveral other eſtates; and, after a long train of viciſſitudes, it lately devolved to Lieutenant-Colonel *John Ulrick von Sacken*, whoſe ſon is the preſent proprietor of it. Ten villages belong to this eſtate, among which is *Anſtruppen*, remarkable for an excellent medicinal ſpring.

Domeſneſs, a promontory, called by the *Dutch* ſailors *de curſche Vorſt van de blaue berg*, i. e. 'the *Courland* Prince of the blue mountain', projects northward into the gulf of *Livonia*. From this cape a ſand-bank runs four *German* miles further into the ſea, the extreme half of which lies under water and cannot be diſcerned. To the eaſt of this promontory is an unfathomable abyſs, which is never obſerved to be agitated. For the ſafety of veſſels bound to *Livonia*, two ſquare beacons have been erected on the coaſt, near *Domeſneſs* church, oppoſite to the ſand-bank and facing each other. One of theſe is twelve fathoms high; but the other is only eight fathoms and a half. A large fire is kept burning all night on thoſe beacons from the firſt of *Auguſt* to the firſt of *January*, old ſtile. When the mariners ſee theſe two fires appear as one in a direct line, they may conclude that they are clear of the extremity of the ſand-bank, and conſequently out of danger; but if they have a ſight of both beacons, they are in danger of running

running upon it. The quantity of wood burnt on theſe beacons amounts annually to betwixt eight and nine hundred cords of billets, and one hundred cords of bruſh wood. They belong to *Dondangen*, a Nobleman's eſtate, which lies about ſix *German* miles from the beacons; and he receives every year from the city of *Riga* 2500 rix-dollars in ſpecie for keeping them up and ſupplying them with fuel. The large wood that grows in this neighbourhood is very convenient for furniſhing a ſufficient quantity of fuel for this purpoſe. The inhabitants are allowed to trade with the *Hollanders*; and the ſtrand belonging to the manor of *Dondangen* is eleven *German* miles in length.

7. The Pariſh of ERWAHLEN, which is annexed to that of *Pilten*. This *Erwhalen* is called *Great Erwhalen* by way of diſtinction from another place of the ſame name in the Pariſh of *Tuckum*.

End of the FIRST VOLUME.